



Messenger Bot

Messenger Bot Workflow Guide

Contents

- [Messenger Bot Workflow Guide](#)
- [Scope](#)
- [Introduction](#)
- [Requirements](#)
- [Accessing Messenger Bot](#)
- [UI Overview](#)
- [Dashboard](#)
- [Import Account](#)
- [Visual Flow Builder](#)
- [Comment Automation \(Automations\)](#)
- [Subscriber Manager](#)
- [Messenger Bot](#)
- [Broadcasting](#)
- [Social Posting](#)
- [Search Tools](#)
- [Support Desk \(Customer support\)](#)
- [Logout](#)



Scope

This document provides the user with a detailed walk-through of the various workflows of the Messenger Bot web application. The primary focus is to demonstrate step by step processes involved in managing and monitoring the Messenger Bot for marketing, sales, and support.

Introduction

Messenger Bot is a software application that provides an Artificial Intelligence-based service to users to control different customer services, sales, and marketing features. It allows software-based control to revolutionize conventional ways to conduct businesses. It provides an automated comment feature, automated messenger tools for better customer service, and a posting feature.

Messenger Bot consists of a dashboard to help users monitor different statistics of the collected information. The dashboard helps users to visualize the various aspects of the application thus providing better solutions. It comes with search tools, to help its users analyze their website. The Messenger Bot is a user end application used to optimize the social interactions and providing a direct line of communication between the customer and their problem.

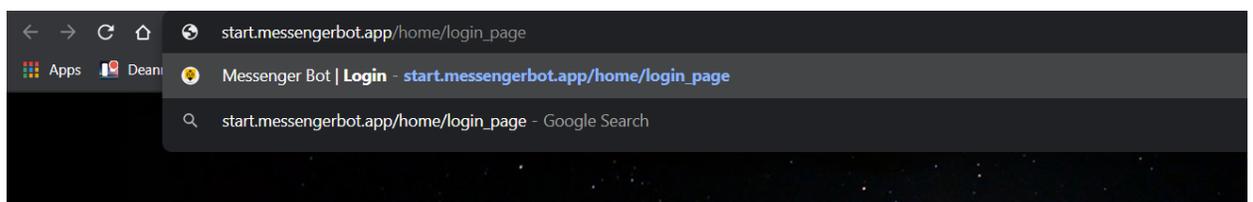
Requirements

- **Internet Connectivity:** Required
- **Recommended Browser:** Google Chrome, Safari, Firefox.

Accessing Messenger Bot

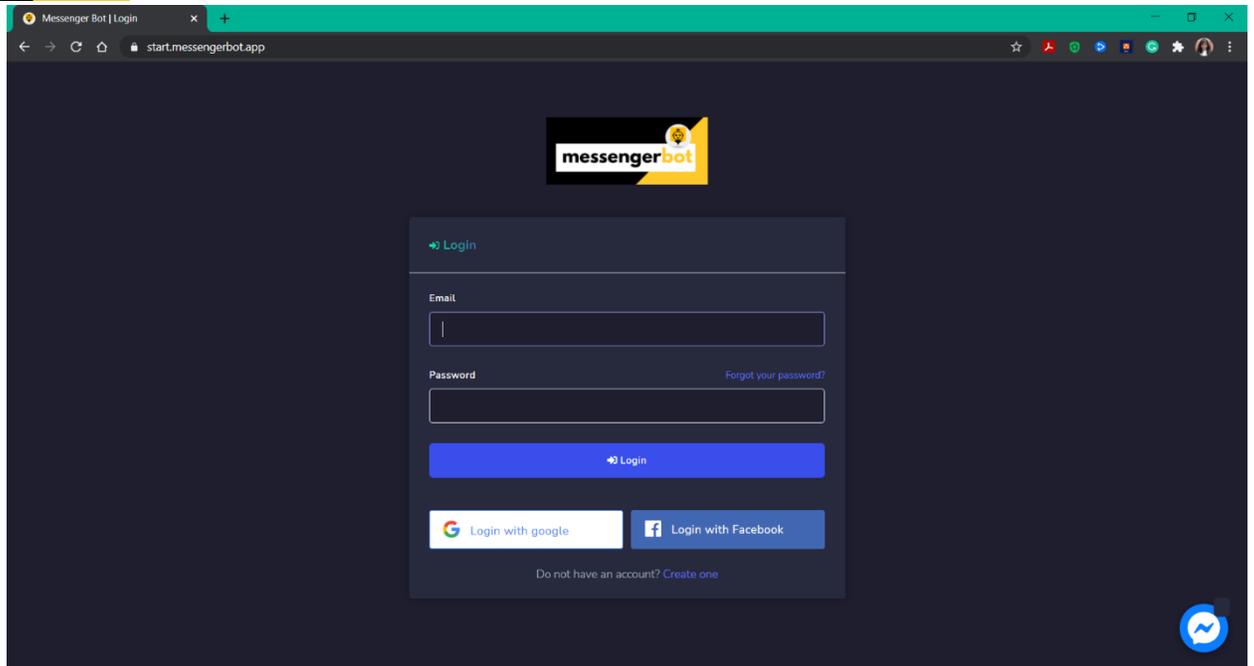
The initial steps for accessing the UI and using Messenger Bot are explained in this section.

1. Enter the https://start.Messenger Bot.app/home/login_page in your Browser.



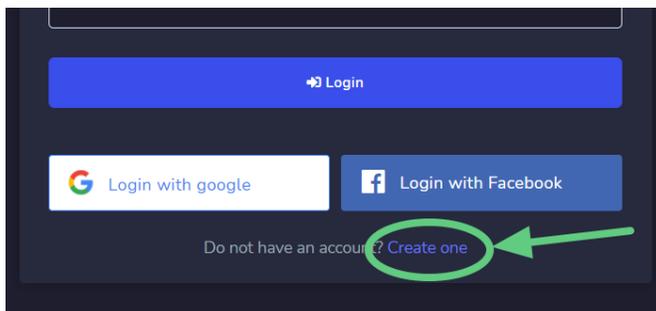
2. The login page of the Messenger Bot will appear on the screen.
3. Enter your credentials to begin.





Note

- If the account doesn't already exist, the user needs to enter the required information after selecting **Create one** option from the login page.



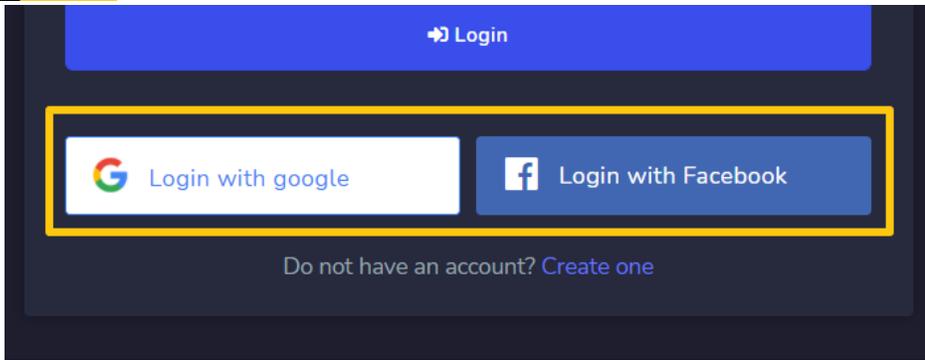


Then fill in every required information for your account.

Be sure to check the terms and conditions, then click "Send" when done.

- For login, users can also use **Login with Google** or **Login with Facebook** options from the login page.

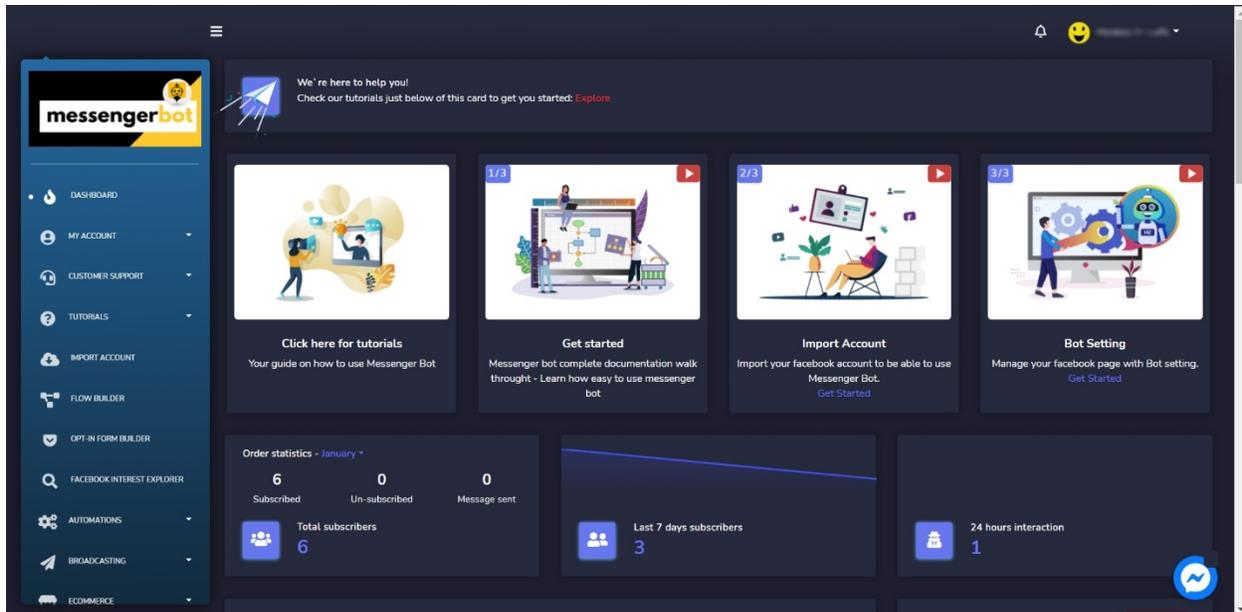






UI Overview

This is the default view of the UI that appears on the screen after user login activity once the account is (required only the first time).



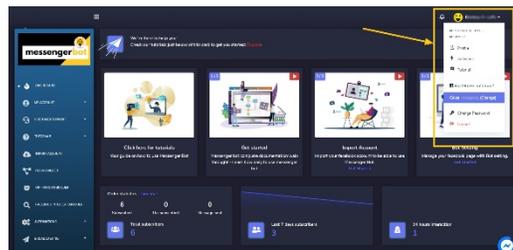
Field Name

Description

Active Profile

It is located at the top left corner of the UI next to Current Profile. It displays the name of the active profile. User can access the following:

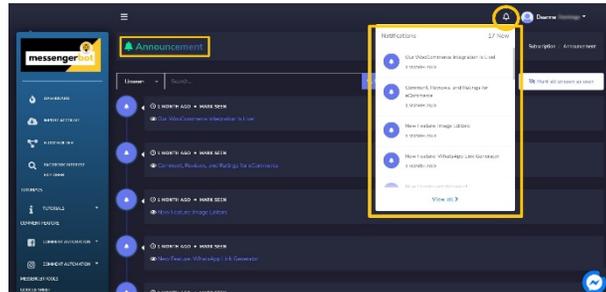
- Profile: Change the profile settings
- Activities: View your calendar
- Tutorial
- Short cut to Facebook profile
- Change password
- Logout





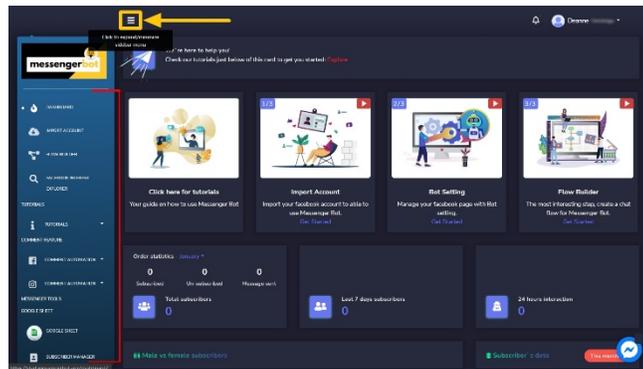
Notifications 

The alarm icon beside the active profile displays all the latest notifications that are either new or unread by a user.



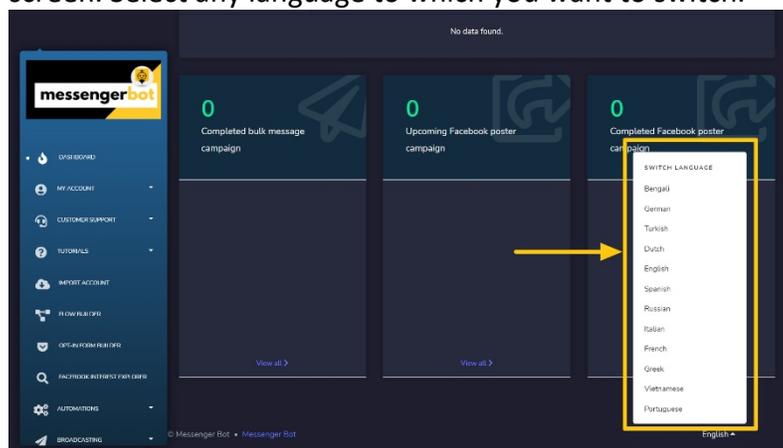
Navigation Sidebar (Hamburger Menu) 

It is located in the top left corner of the UI. Click on the hamburger menu icon  to expand/minimize it. It allows the user to switch between various views provided by Messenger Bot's UI.



Switch Language

It is located at the bottom right of the UI. Click on the already selected language, a list of available languages will appear on the screen. Select any language to which you want to switch.

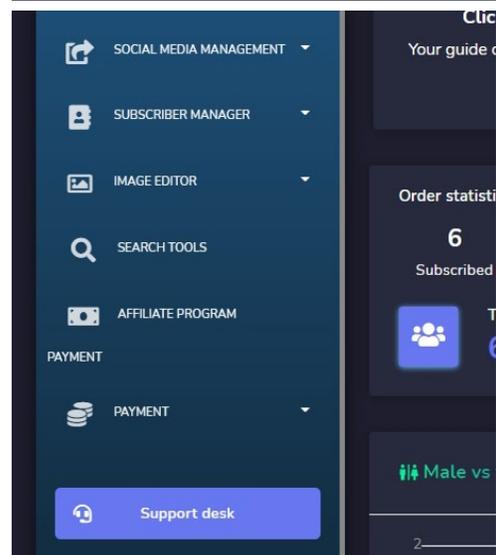
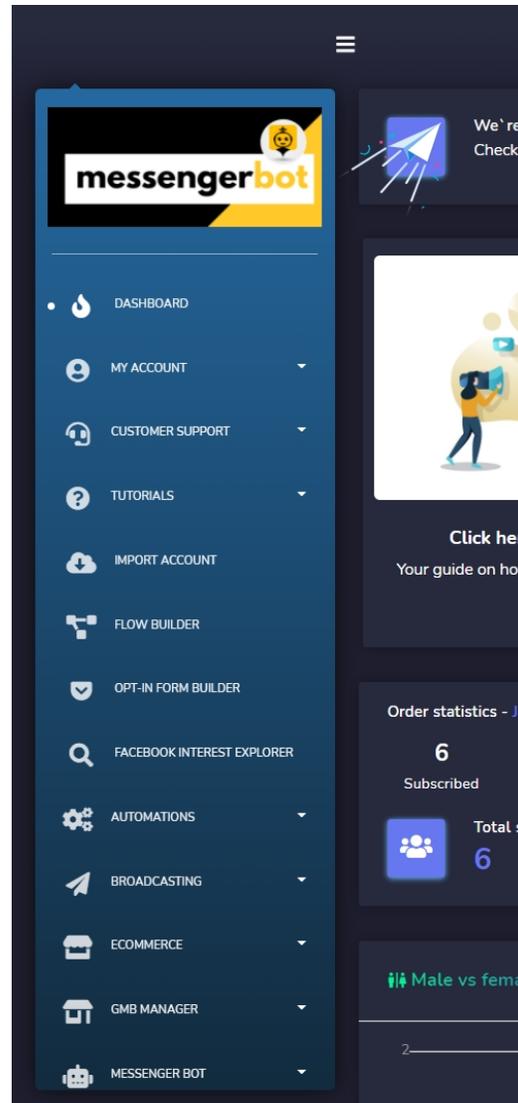


To have a detailed overview for each, click on the respective section name from the list of various views shared below:





- Dashboard
- My Account
- Customer Support
- Tutorials
- Import Account
- Flow Builder
- Opt-in Form Builder
- Facebook Interest Explorer
- Automation
- Broadcasting
- Ecommerce
- GMB Manager
- Messenger Bot
- Social Media Management
- Subscriber Manager
- Image Editor
- Search Tools
- Affiliate Program
- Payment
- Support Desk

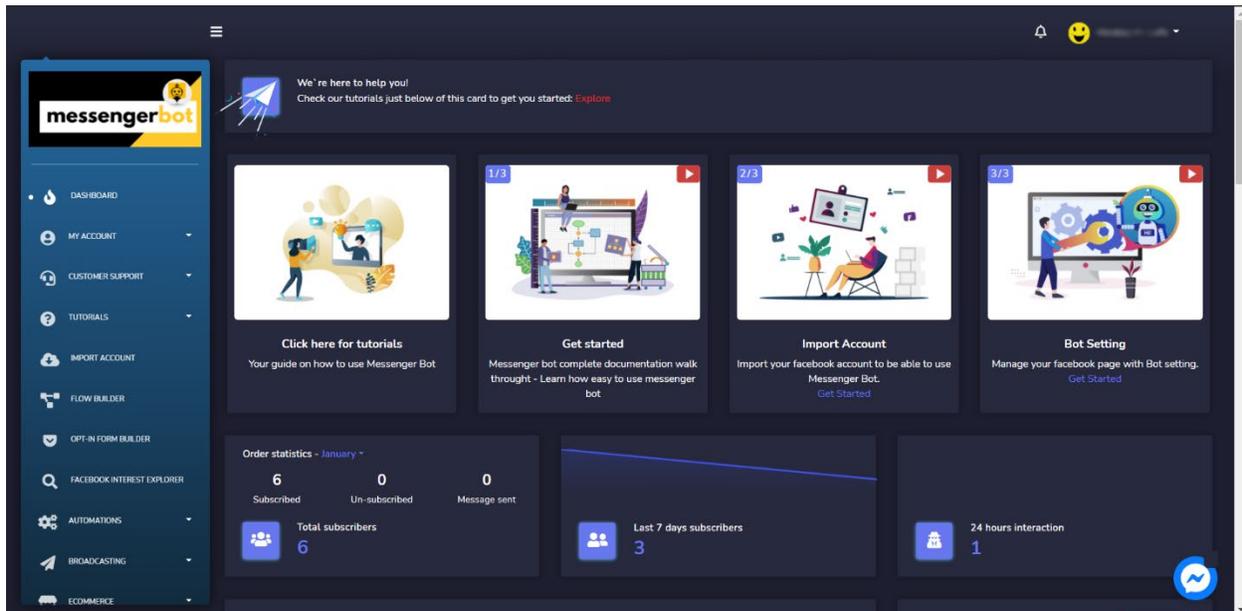




Dashboard

Messenger Bot's dashboard collects user traffic-specific information and helps the user to visualize the various aspects of Messenger Bot in the form of graphs. This dashboard is also the default view of the Messenger Bot application

However, to view the dashboard select the **Dashboard** option from the navigation sidebar. The following screen will appear on the application window:



It is further divided into 15 widgets:

- [Startup Overview](#)
- [Order Statistics](#)
- [Last 7 days subscribers](#)
- [24 hours interaction](#)
- [Male vs female subscribers](#)
- [Subscriber's data](#)
- [Latest subscribers](#)
- [Subscribers from different sources](#)
- [Last auto reply](#)
- [Completed bulk message](#)
- [Upcoming Facebook poster campaign](#)
- [Completed Facebook poster campaign](#)

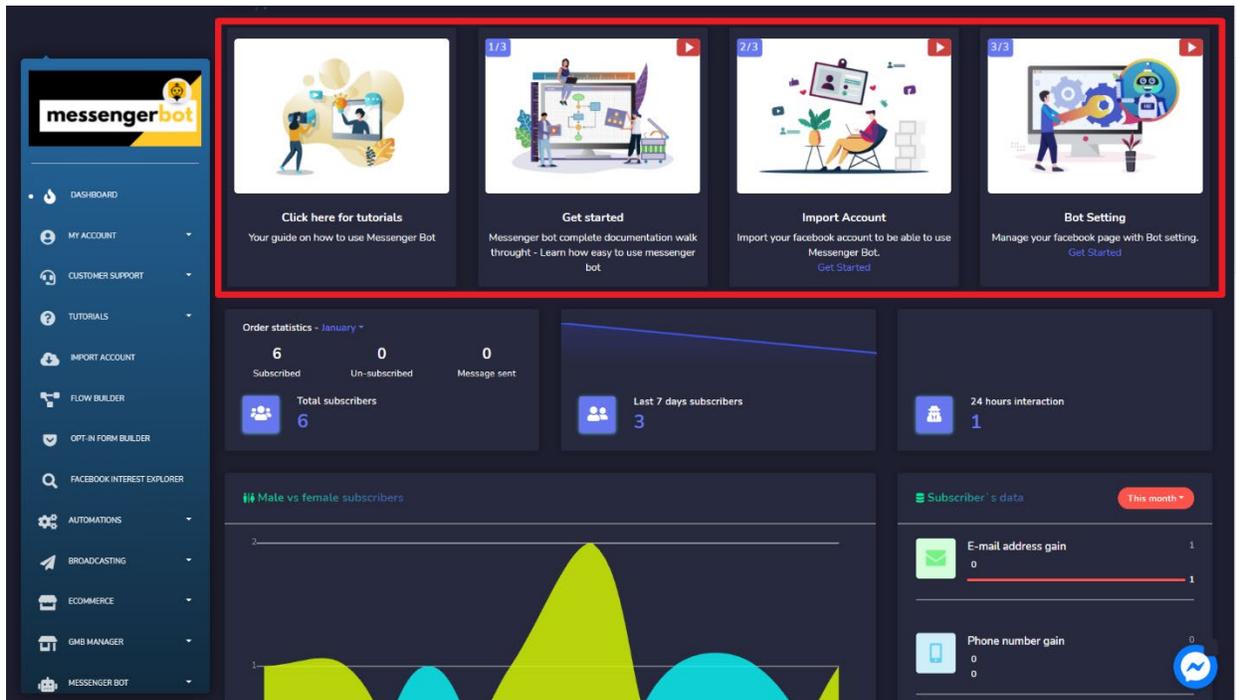




A brief description of each widget is also shared in the section below.

Startup Overview

This is located in the upper row part of the dashboard, the 4 widgets. These are the basics of Messenger Bot that new user needs and most common things a user will use such as Tutorials, Import Account, Bot Settings, and Flow Builder.

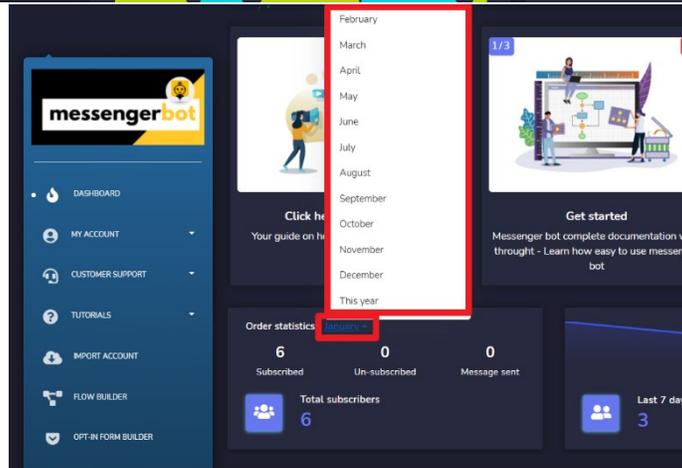
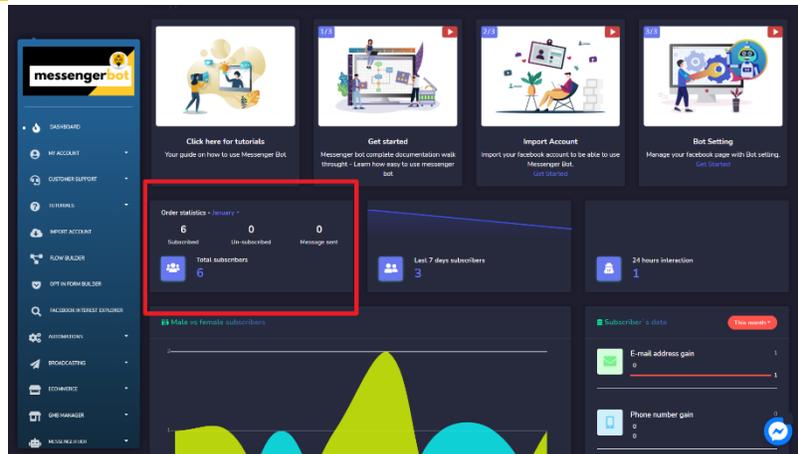


Order Statistics

This widget displays stats based on the number of subscribers the integrated Facebook page has and categorizes them month-wise.

- To view the stats of different months, select the already selected month. A dropdown menu will appear on the screen, select a different month this time.

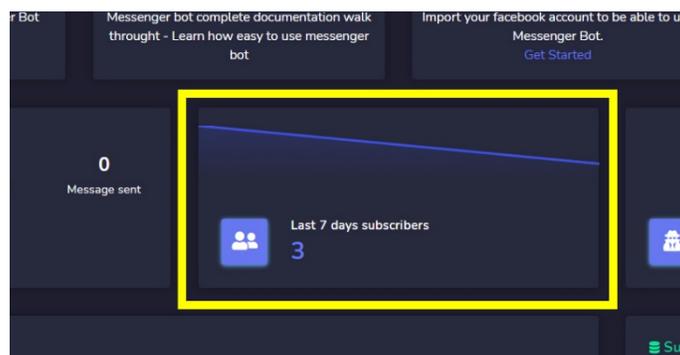


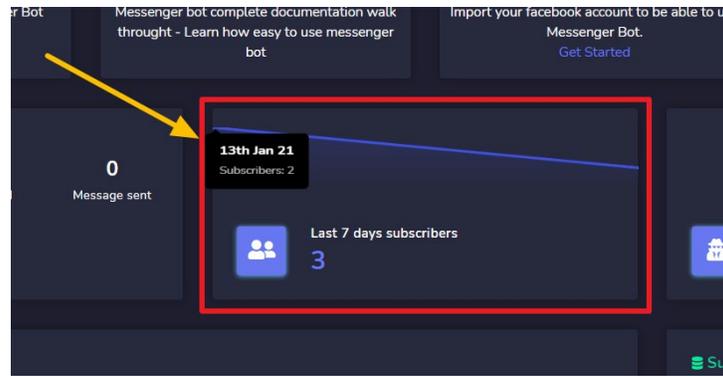


Last 7 days subscribers

This widget displays the total number of subscribers, the integrated Facebook page has in the past 7 days.

- To view the date-wise number of subscriptions, click on this widget.

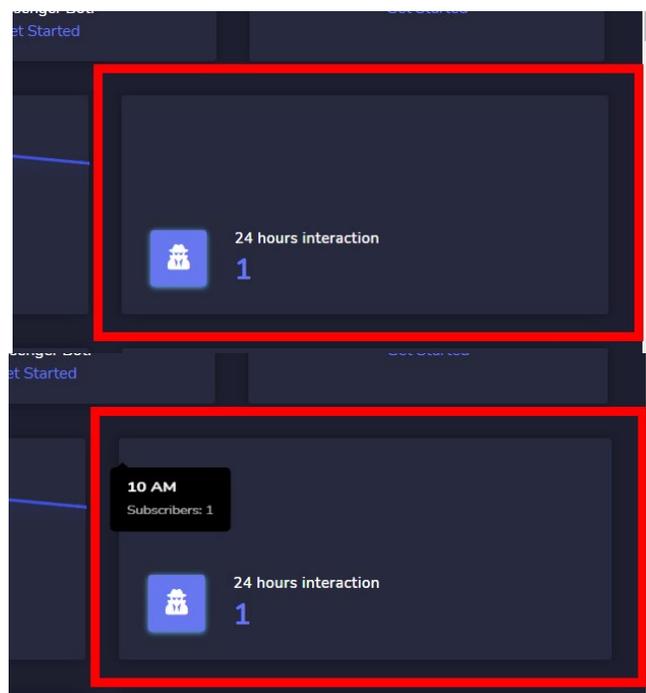




24 Hour Interaction

This modal view displays the interaction made in the past 24 hours. It classifies the number of subscribers based on the time they subscribed to the Facebook page. The widget uses a graph to display this interaction.

1. Hover over the graph to view the number of subscribers per hour.



Male vs female subscribers

This view displays the graphical representation of the existing male subscribers' ratio versus the female subscribers. A gender-wise classification based on the number can be observed by respective dates on hovering the parts of the graph.





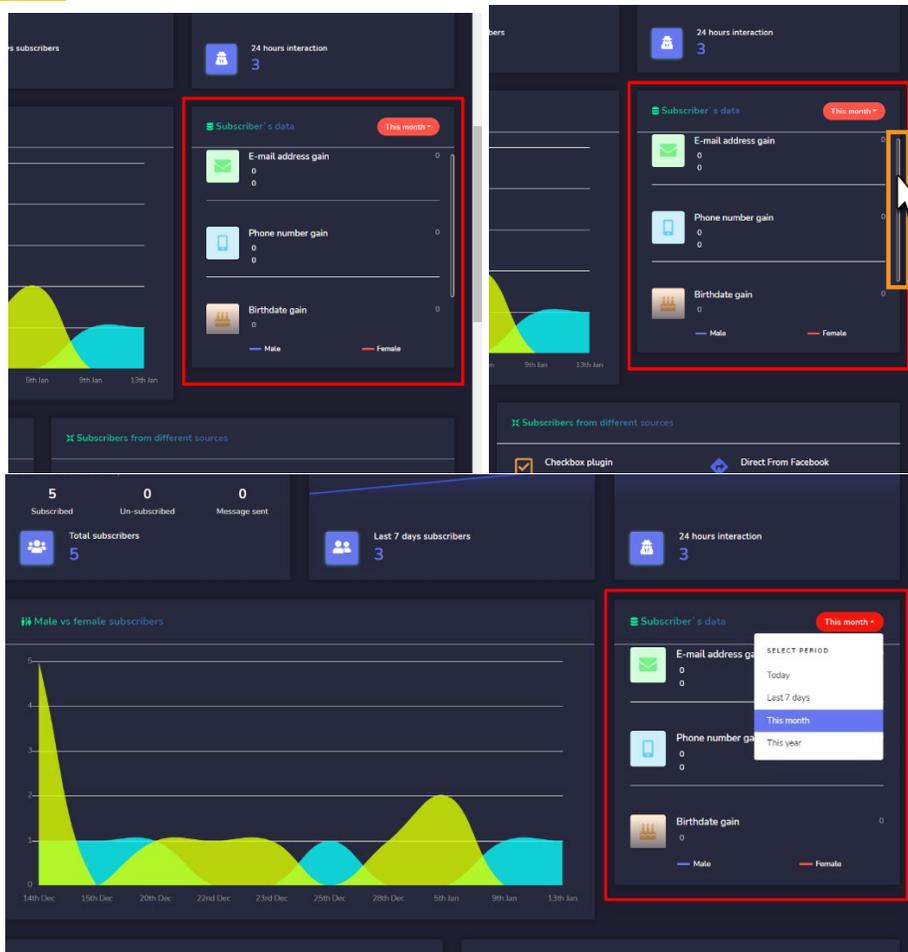
Subscriber's Data

This widget displays a summary of all the subscribers. It provides the following information about the subscribers:

- Email-address gain
- Phone number gain
- Birthdate gain

You can scroll down to access the remaining fields. You can select the time period to narrow down the search.





The widget classifies male data in purple color while female subscriber's data in red color.

Latest subscribers

This section displays a link to all the latest subscribers. You can reach out to them by selecting **Go to inbox**.

This widget also provides a shortcut to the Facebook page to which the subscribers are associated. Click on the page name, as shown **"Demo"** page as an example below:



The image displays a Messenger Bot Dashboard and a Facebook page. The dashboard includes a line graph showing activity over time, a 'Latest subscribers' section with a red box highlighting a 'Go to Inbox' button, and a 'Subscribers from different sources' section. The Facebook page is for 'Anime Lover Page' and features a large anime-themed banner image.

Dashboard Details:

- Latest subscribers:** A red box highlights the 'Go to Inbox' button for the subscriber 'Ivan'.
- Subscribers from different sources:** Includes 'Direct From Facebook' (37), 'Sent to Messenger Plugin' (0), 'Comment Private Reply' (0), 'Customer chat plugin' (0), and 'M.me link' (0).

Facebook Page Details:

- Page Name:** Anime Lover Page (@animeloversinceyoung)
- Category:** Arts & Entertainment
- Banner Image:** A large, colorful anime-themed banner featuring various characters like Goku, Sonic, and Mario.

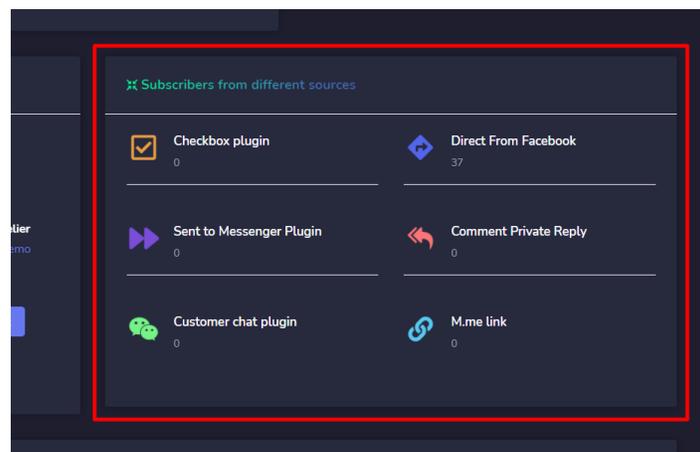




Subscribers from different sources

You can also visualize a summarized view of total number of subscribers from different sources. It displays statistics of subscribers from following sources:

- Checkbox plugin
- Direct from Facebook
- Sent to Messenger Plugin
- Comment Private Reply
- Customer chat plugin
- M.me link



Last auto reply

This section displays a summary of the auto reply feature. It displays the details like:

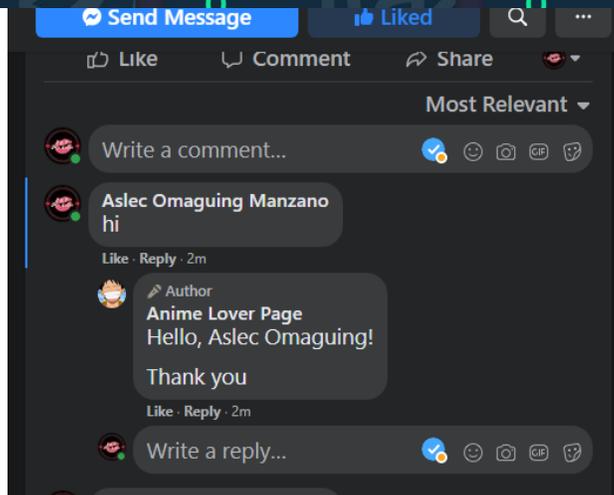
- Reply was sent to whom
- Reply time
- Comment ID
- Comment

You can click on **Comment ID** to redirect to the comment which was auto-replied on your page.



Last auto reply

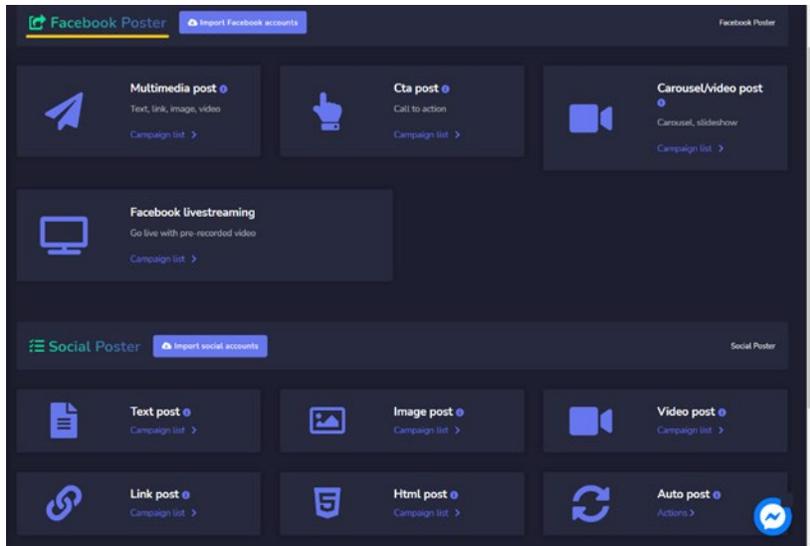
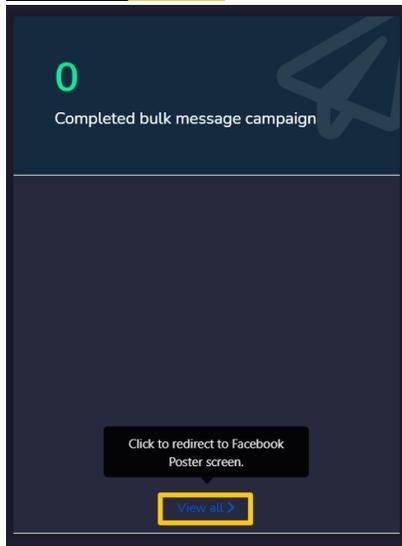
Reply to	Reply time	Comment ID	Comment
Aslec Omaguig Manzano	14th Jan 21 00:54	186604996512605_211824950657276	hi
Aslec Omaguig Manzano	14th Jan 21 00:54	187328976440207_211824883990616	hello
Aslec Omaguig Manzano	14th Jan 21 00:51	185768719929566_211823750657396	hello



Completed bulk message

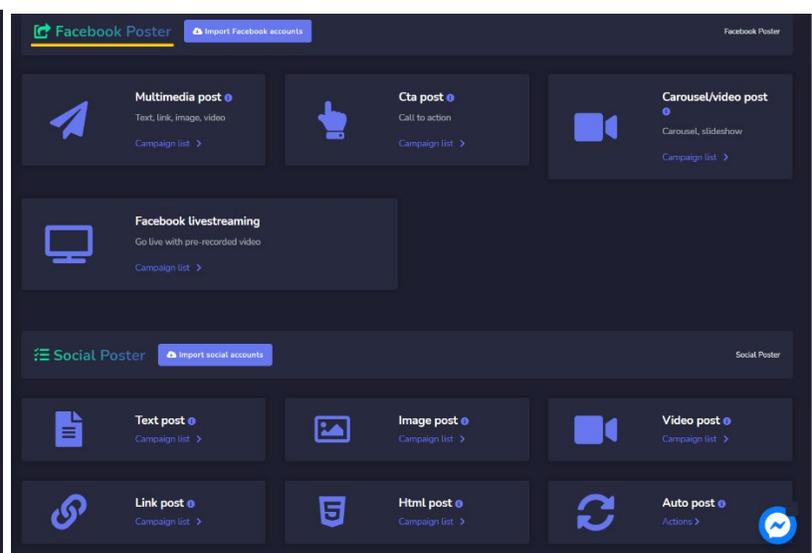
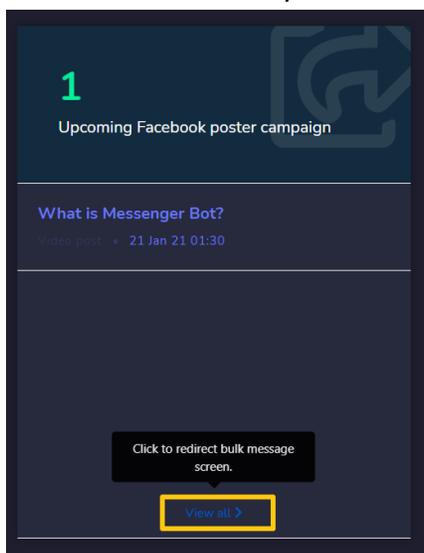
You can view the statistics and exacts the number of the completed bulk messages. Click on **View all** to redirect the bulk message screen to the Facebook Poster screen.





Upcoming Facebook poster campaign

You can view the statistics and exacts the number of upcoming Facebook poster campaigns. Click on **View all** and you will be redirected to the Facebook Poster screen.



Completed Facebook poster campaign

You can view the statistics and exacts the number of completed Facebook poster campaigns. Click on **View all** and you will be redirected to the Facebook Poster screen.



1
Completed Facebook poster campaign

What is Messenger Bot?
Video post • 14 Jan 21 01:35

[View all >](#)

Facebook Poster [Import Facebook accounts](#)

Multimedia post •
Text, link, image, video
[Campaign list >](#)

Cta post •
Call to action
[Campaign list >](#)

Carousel/video post •
Carousel, slideshow
[Campaign list >](#)

Facebook livestreaming
Go live with pre-recorded video
[Campaign list >](#)

Social Poster [Import social accounts](#)

Text post •
[Campaign list >](#)

Image post •
[Campaign list >](#)

Video post •
[Campaign list >](#)

Link post •
[Campaign list >](#)

Html post •
[Campaign list >](#)

Auto post •
[Actions >](#)

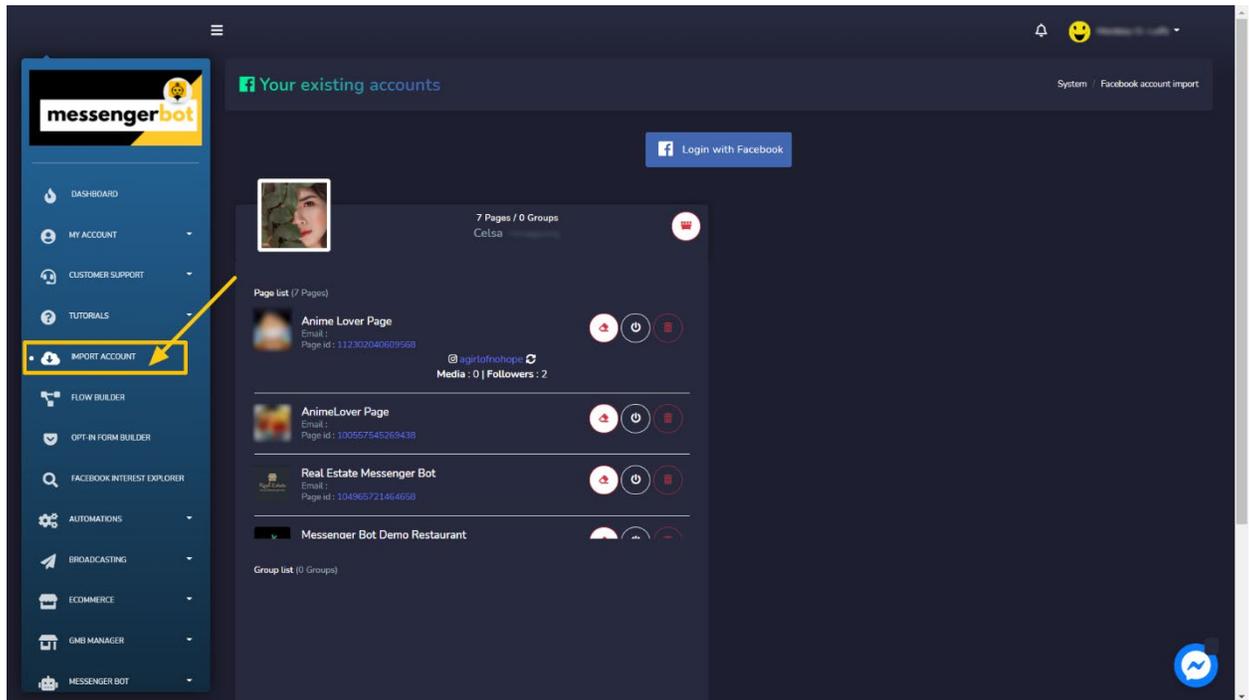




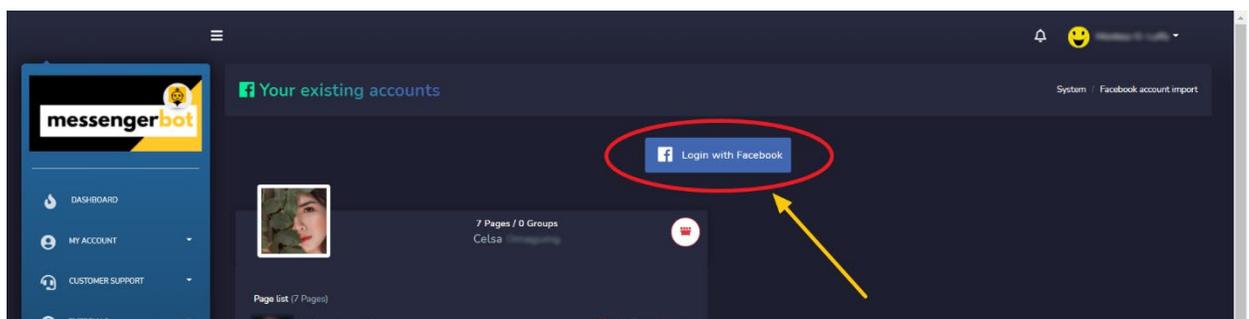
Import Account

To make Messenger Bot application function, you need to import your account to it. You can import your Facebook account by selecting the Import Account option from the side navigation bar.

1. Select the **Import Account** option from the navigation sidebar. A screen containing **Login with Facebook** will appear.

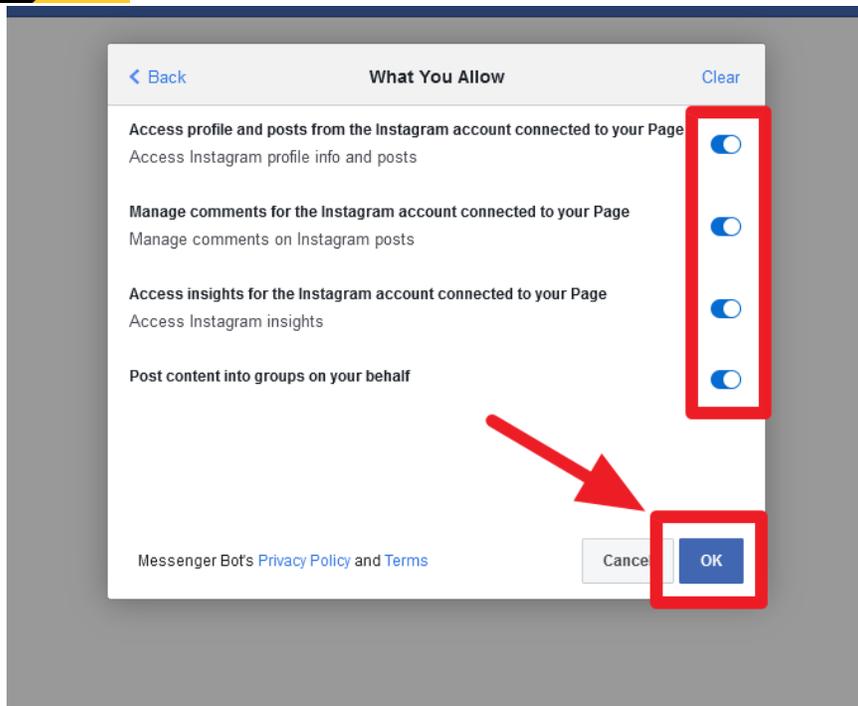


2. Select **Login in with Facebook** option.
3. Continue with your Facebook user profile.



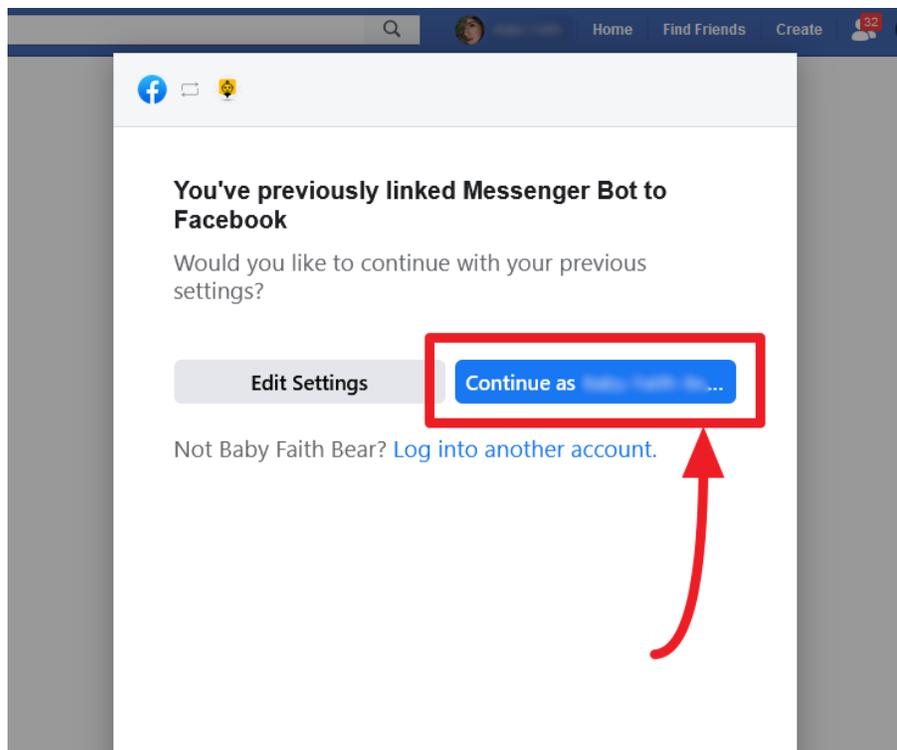
Allow all the things that you need then click "OK".





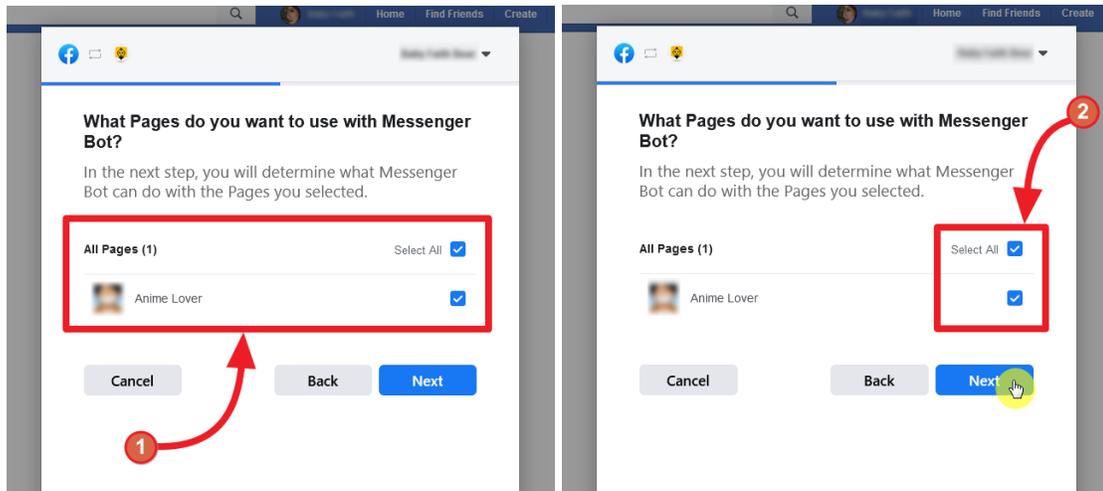
Note

- If you are not logged in, then you need to login to your Facebook account to continue.





- Once logged in, a list of pages will appear that are associated with your imported Facebook account. Select the pages you want to import by clicking on the square checkboxes next to the names of available pages. Select **Next**.



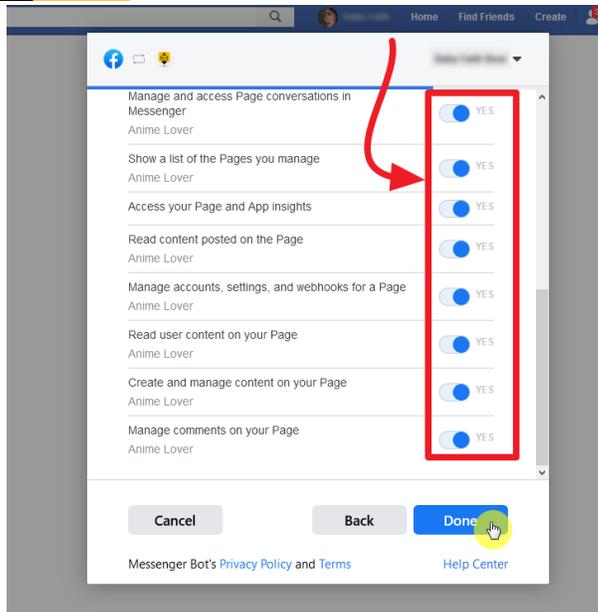
- Turn on the slider button against the options you want to allow the Messenger Bot Application to perform actions to. The options include, receive your email address, manage your pages, and other management-related permissions.

Note

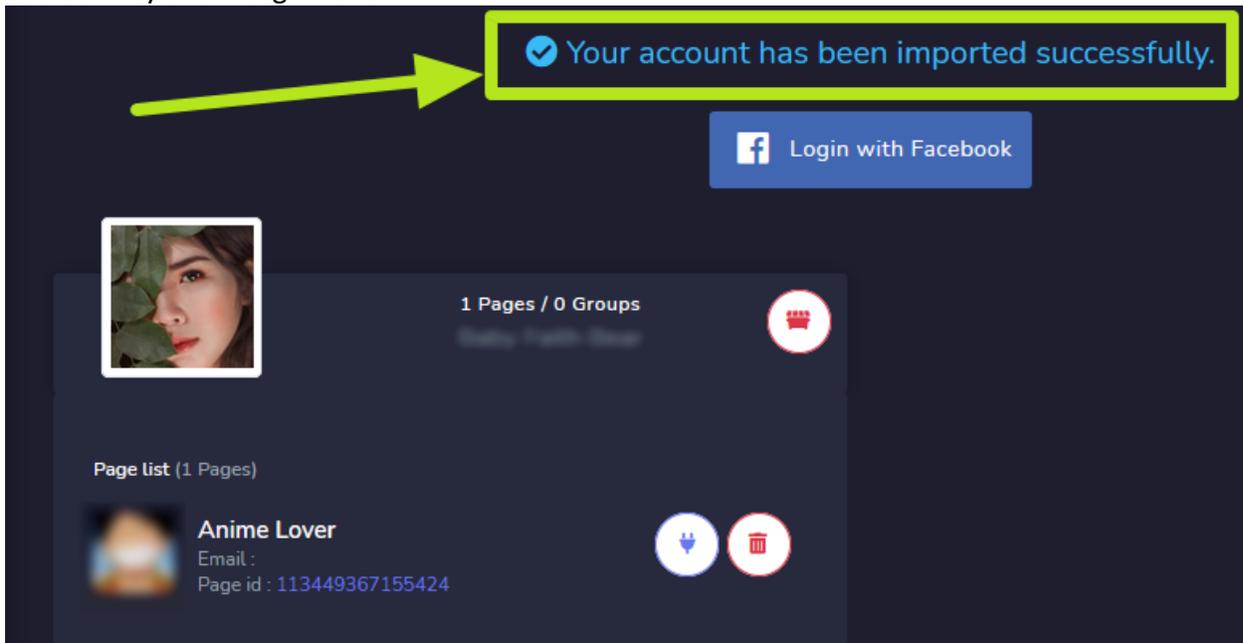
- To make the Messenger Bot application perform most adequately, allow all management permissions.

- Once given the application all permissions, select **Done**.





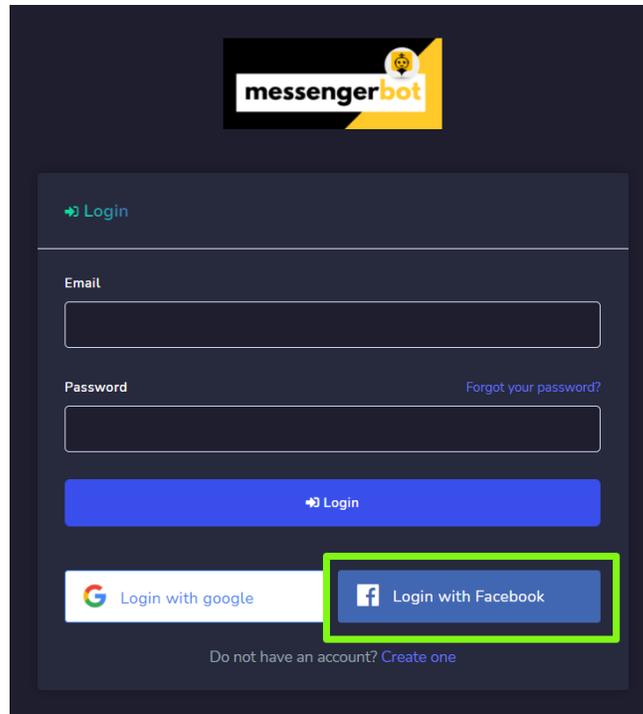
Your existing Facebook account will be imported to Messenger Bot along with different rights of accessibility and integrations.



Login with Facebook

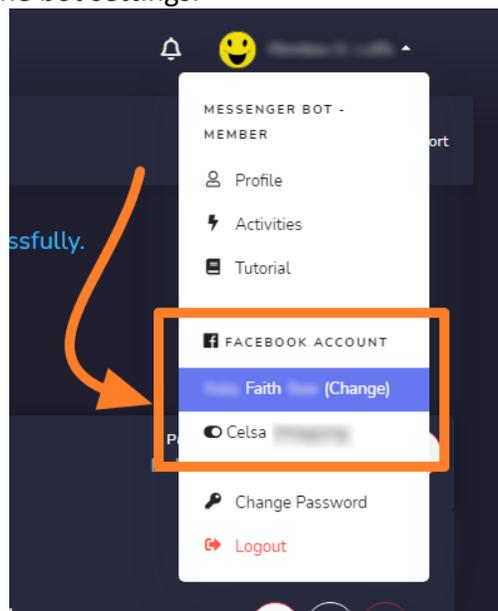
As mentioned in [Accessing Messenger Bot](#) section, one way to access the Messenger Bot application is to login with your Facebook account.





Switch accounts

Once logged in with Facebook, you can manage multiple accounts as well. Select your account profile from the top right of the screen. A dropdown menu will appear containing multiple accounts that are logged in already. You can select any of your accounts based on your requirements and manage the bot settings.



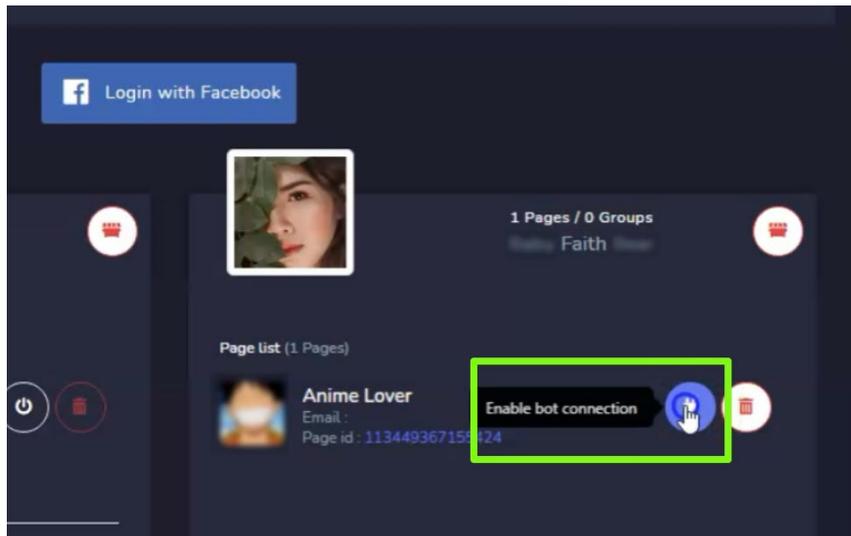
Enable Messenger Bot

Once the account is imported, you need to enable the Messenger Bot application.

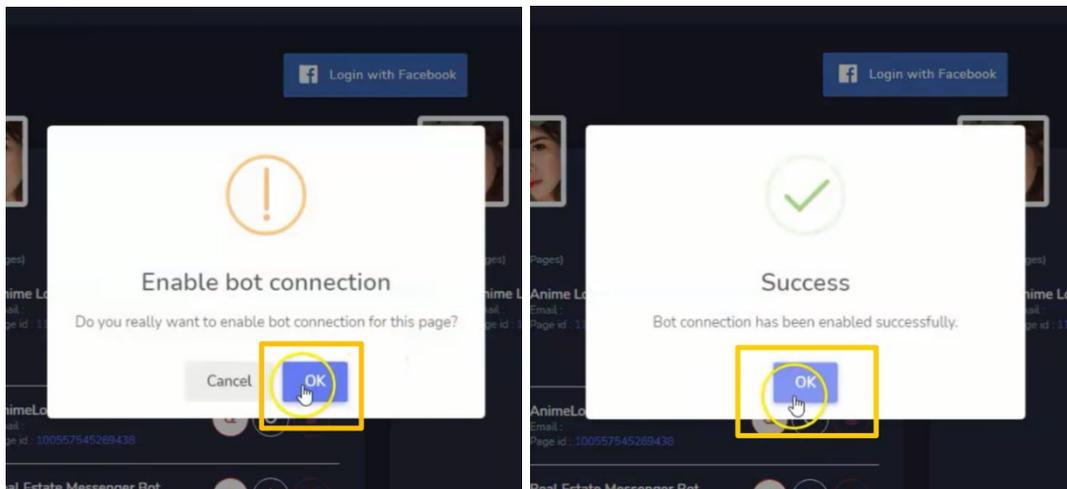




1) Select the  icon next to the page name.



2) A dialogue box will appear, then select **OK** to proceed.

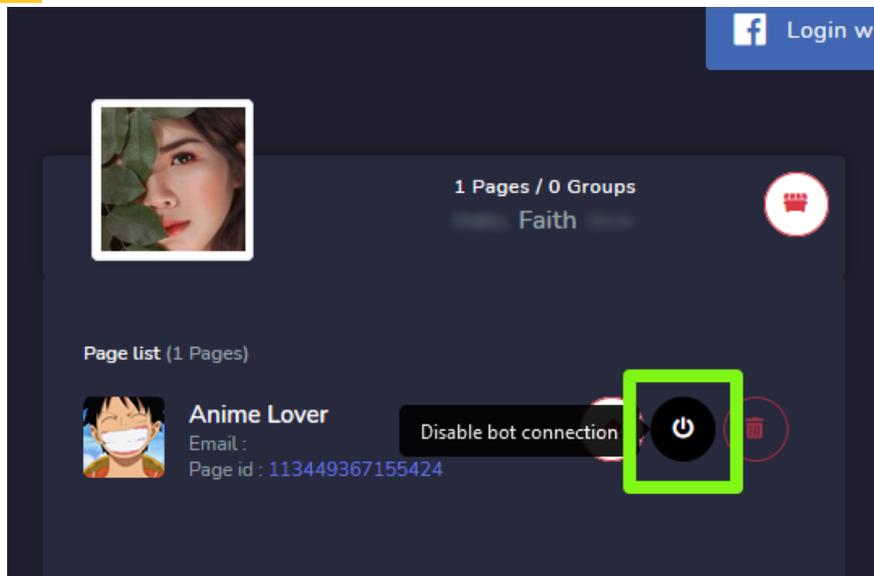


Bot connection will now be enabled.

Disable bot connection

To disable the bot connection, you need to select  icon next to the name of your Facebook page.

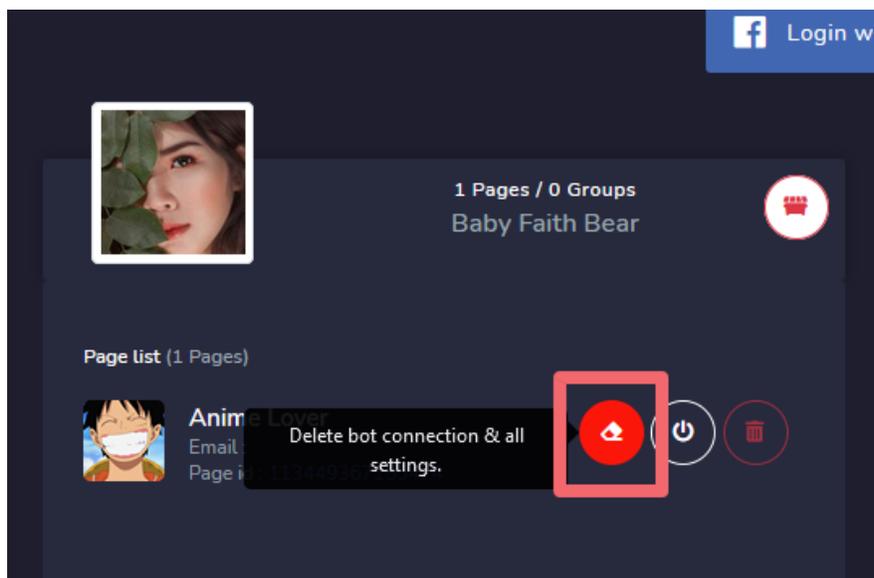




Bot connection will be disabled.

Delete bot connection

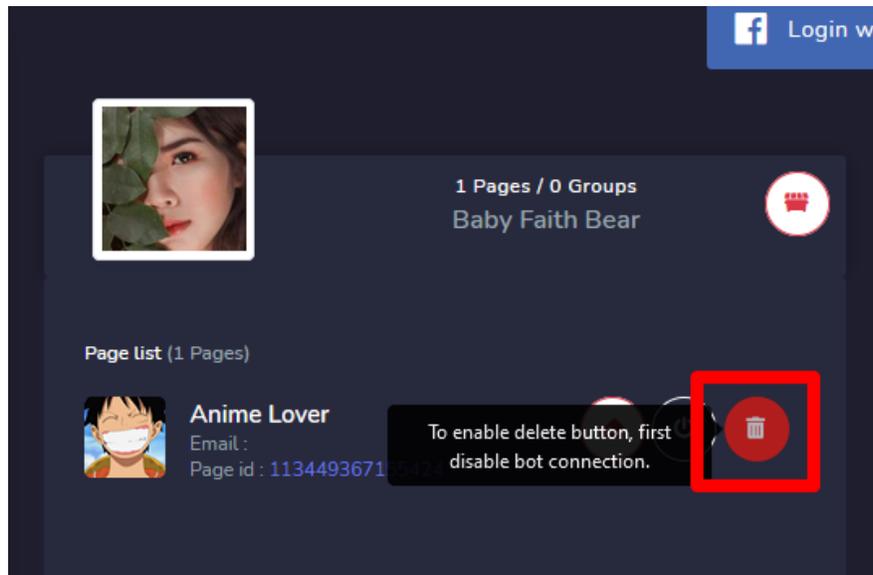
You can delete all bot connections and reset the settings once again by selecting the  icon next to the name of your Facebook page.





Delete Facebook Page

You can delete your page from the database by select  icon against the page name in the page list.



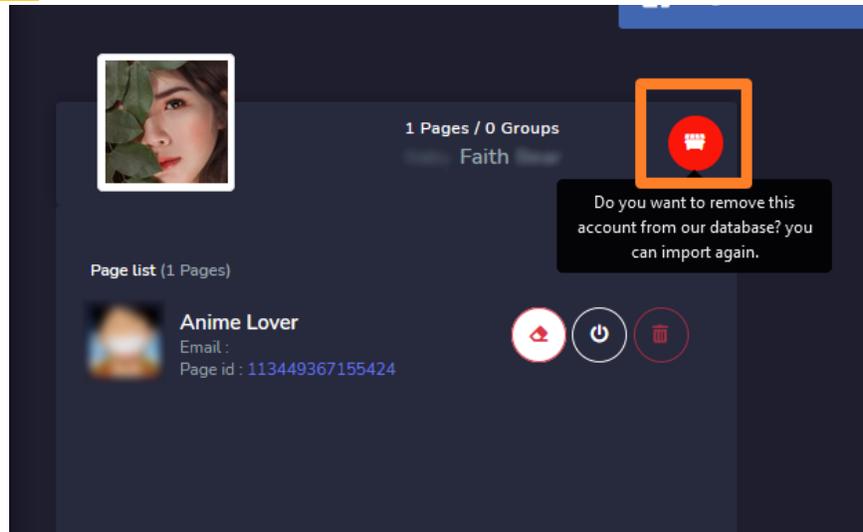
Note

- To delete any page you need to enable the delete button you need to disable the bot connection by selecting  icon.

Delete Facebook account

To delete the Facebook account, select the  icon, next to the account's user name. Deleting the user account will also remove the pages associated with that account.





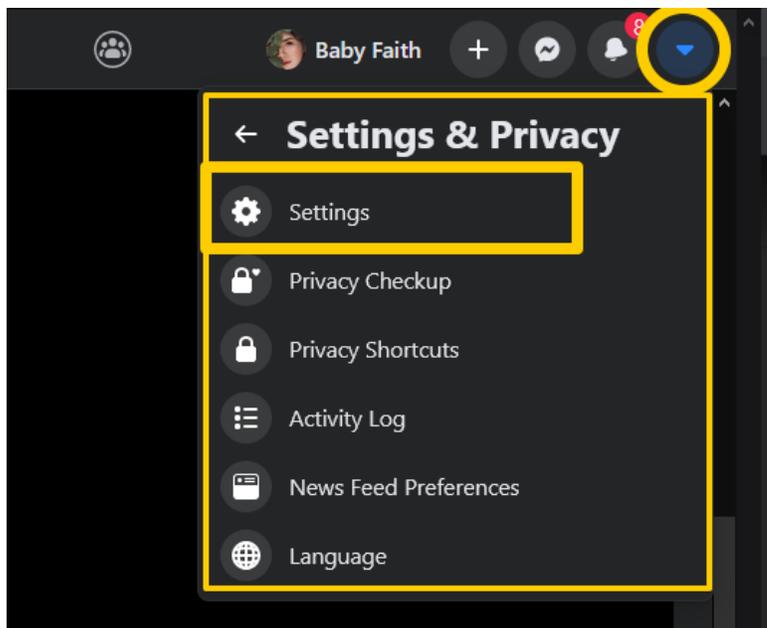
Note

- Once deleted, you can still import your account once again and reconfigure it.

Messenger Bot Integration from Facebook

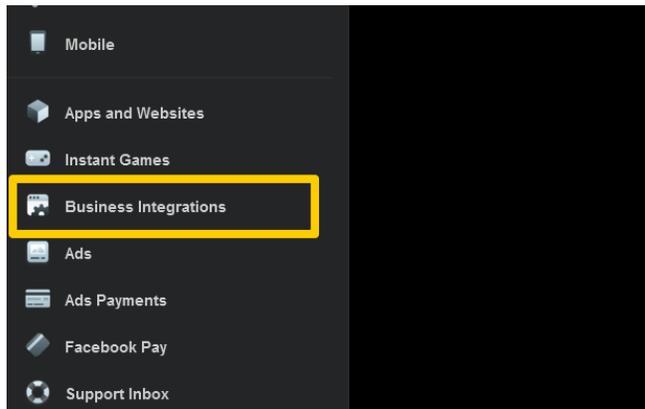
To integrate the Facebook account and manage Messenger Bot permissions from the Facebook platform, follow the steps given below:

1. Log into Facebook and click  in the top right of Facebook.
2. Click **Settings**.

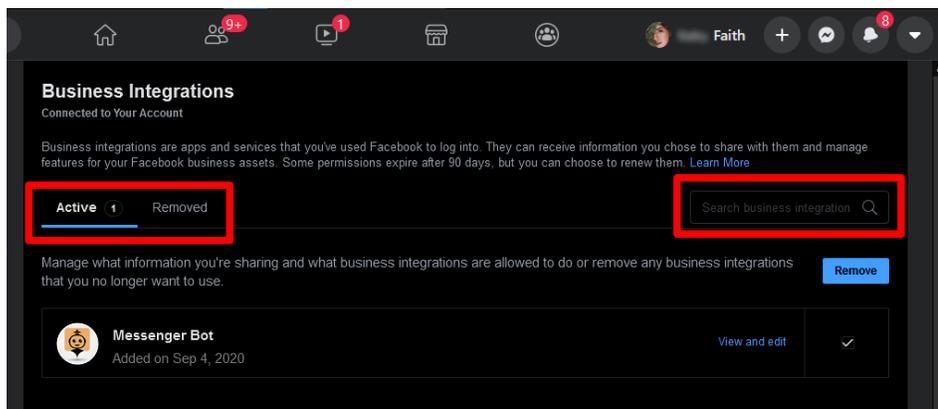




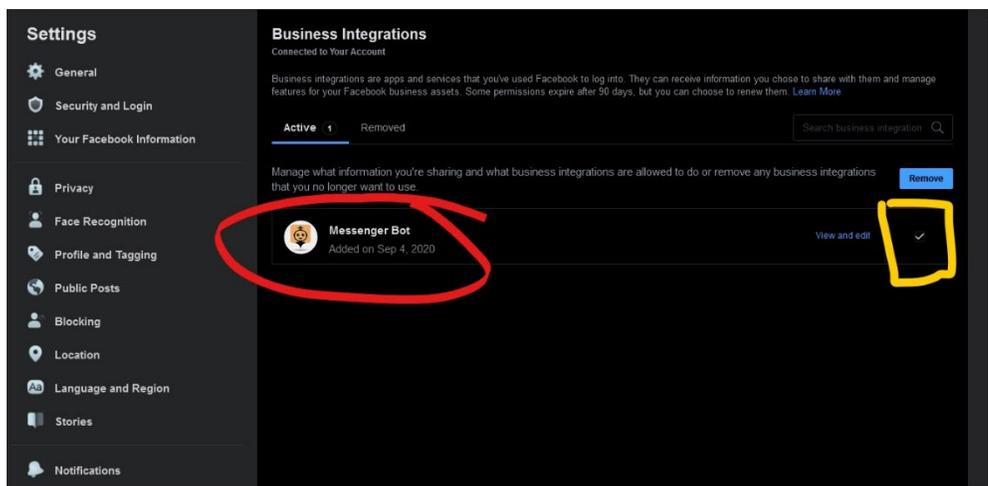
3. Click **Apps and Websites** on the left.
4. Click **Business Integrations** on the left side.



5. Filter between **Active** or **Removed** at the top, or search for Messenger Bot business integration using the search bar to the right.

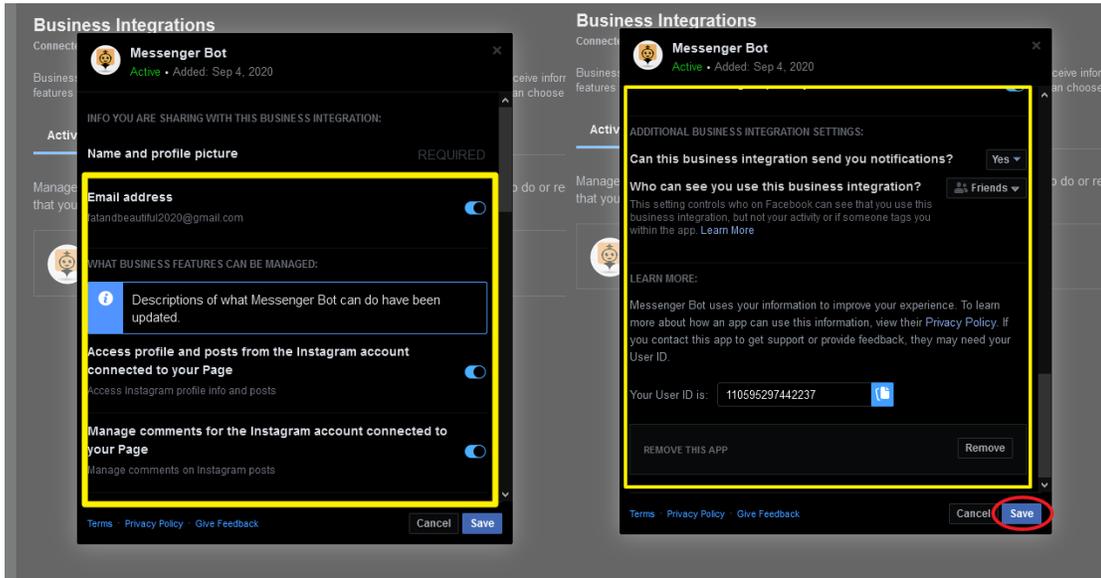


6. Click **View and Edit** next to the Messenger Bot business integration to control the info it has access to.





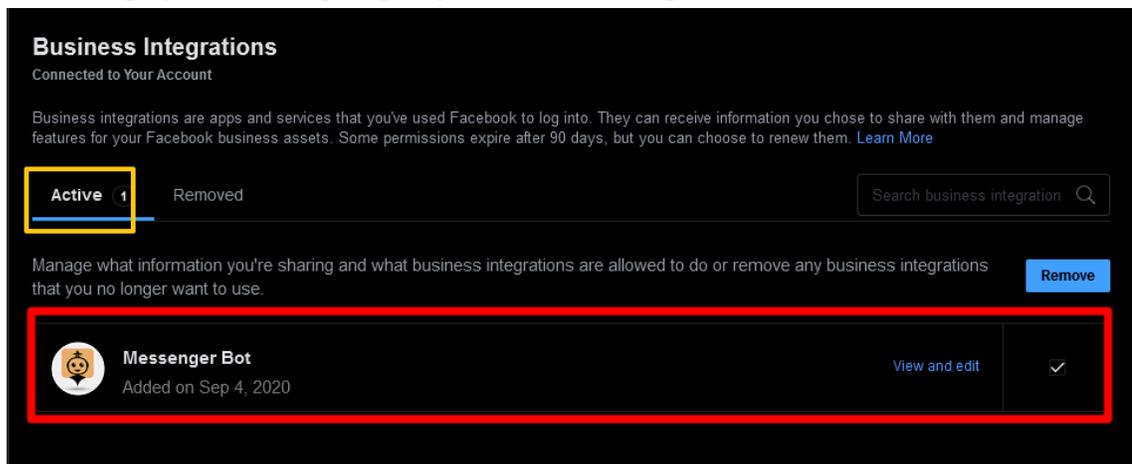
Adjust your settings by checking or unchecking the boxes next to your information or using the dropdown menus, and then click **Save**.



Remove Messenger Bot integration

To remove Messenger Bot integration, select Messenger Bot then click **Remove > Remove**.
If a business integration is:

- **Active:** You've connected Messenger Bot integration to your account. Messenger Bot can manage your ads, Pages, groups, events, messages, or other business info.



- **Removed:** You've disconnected Messenger Bot integration from your account. It can no longer manage your ads, Pages, groups, events, messages, or other business info. It'll





also no longer be able to request private info about you, but it may have the info you've previously shared.

Business Integrations
Connected to Your Account

Business integrations are apps and services that you've used Facebook to log into. They can receive information you chose to share with them and manage features for your Facebook business assets. Some permissions expire after 90 days, but you can choose to renew them. [Learn More](#)

Active 1 Removed

Search business integration

Manage what information you're sharing and what business integrations are allowed to do or remove any business integrations that you no longer want to use.

Remove

 **Messenger Bot**
Added on Sep 4, 2020

View and edit

✓





Visual Flow Builder

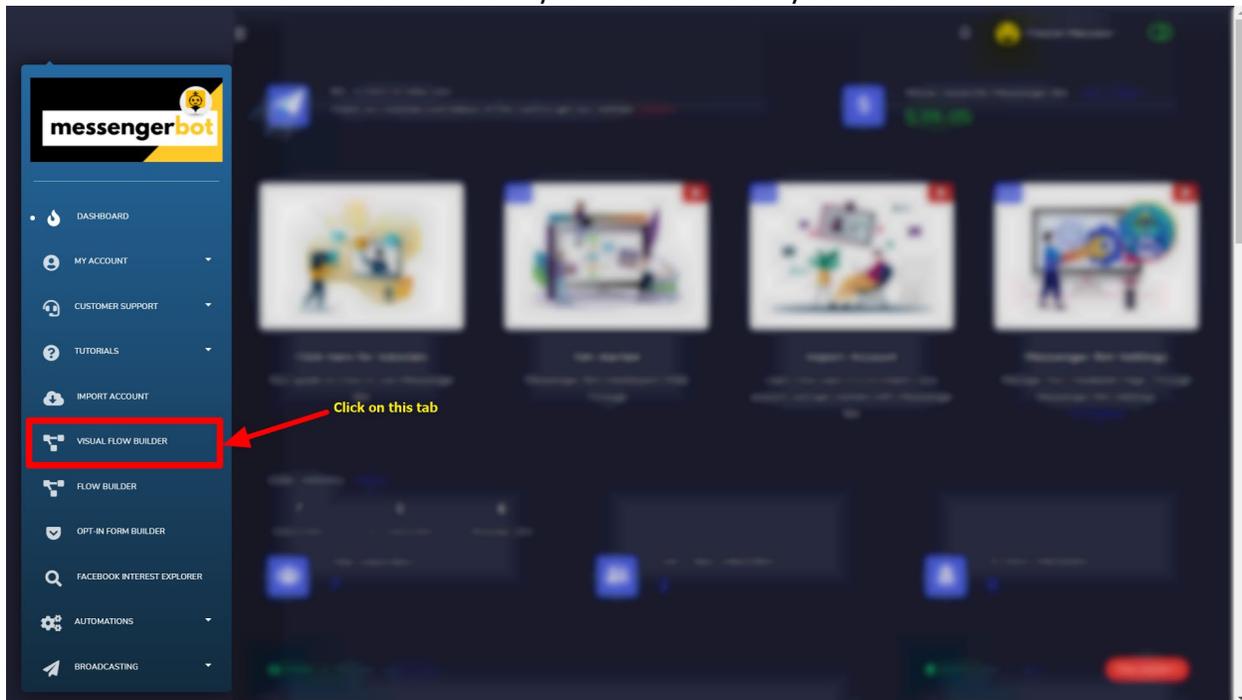
INTRODUCTION: Getting Started is Easy!

Welcome to Messenger Bots Flow Builder. This documentation guide you that how you can effectively use the Flow Builder feature.

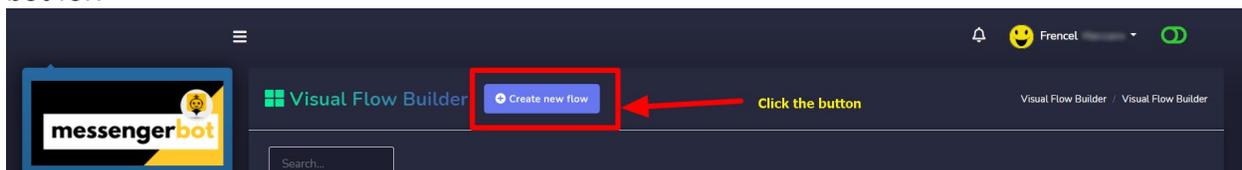
Get Started

In this section, we will be introduced to the features that come with **Messenger Bot Flow Builder**. So let's start.

Click on the **Visual Flow Builder** menu in your dashboard on your left.



Click again on the **Create new flow** button and select the Facebook page you want to create a bot for.

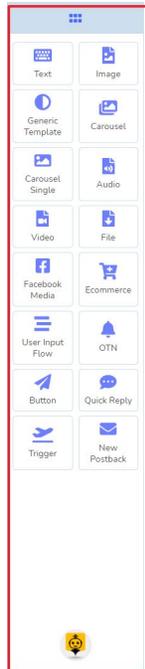


Now, click on the **Ok** button.

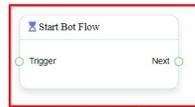
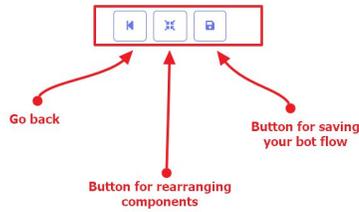


It will then take you to the **visual flow builder interface** like the screenshot below:





Dock menu



Default component to start off

Now you can see the **dock menu** marked in a red box. From this dock menu, you can **drag** the **Text** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Dock Menu contains **components**. You can use them arbitrarily to create your bot flow. No matter how long the bot flow is. So, you can reuse those components again and again.

The **dock menu** comes with the following **components**:

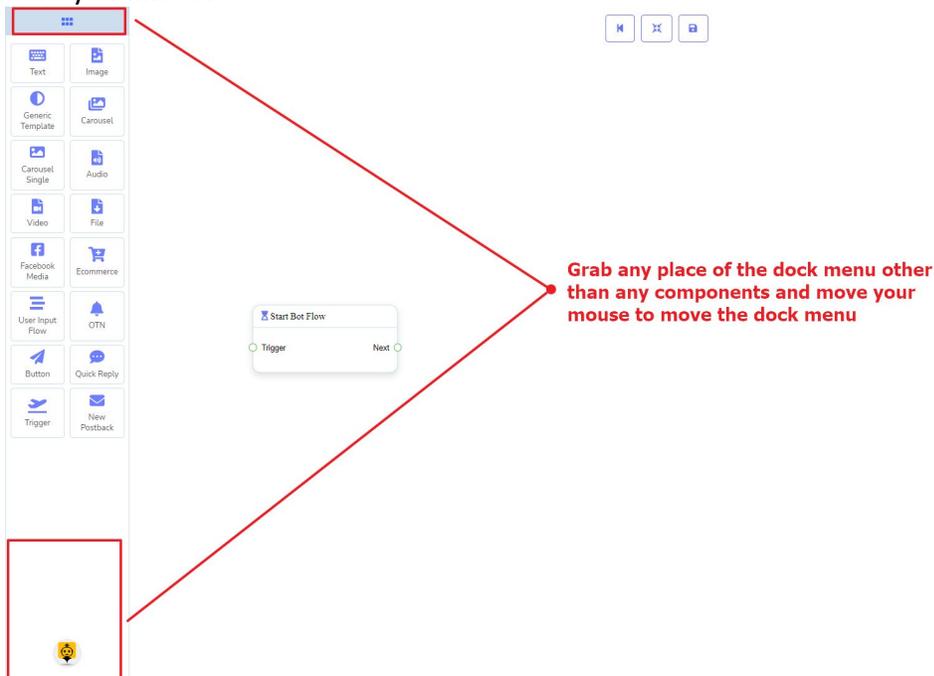
1. **Text**
2. **Image**
3. **Generic Template**
4. **Carousel**
5. **Carousel Single**
6. **Audio**
7. **Video**
8. **File**
9. **Facebook Media**
10. **Ecommerce**
11. **User Input Flow**
12. **OTN**





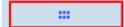
- 13. Button
- 14. Quick Reply
- 15. Trigger
- 16. New Postback

The can be **moved over** to the editor. **Grab the dock menu's header** by the mouse pointer or **any position** with the components and try to move the **mouse position**. Thus you can put it where you like to.

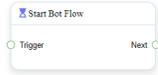


To **minimize** the dock menu, **click twice** on its header. You will see a tiny red box after minimizing the dock menu. **Click twice on it to reopen** the dock menu again.





Double click on the dock menu header to minimize



You will see this when you minimize the dock menu. You can drag it anywhere on the workspace

Double click on it again to maximize.





Trigger Component

Introduction

The Trigger component will allow you to get started with the bot. All you need to connect it to a **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback**. It has only **1 output** socket.

- Output: **Next**

Connections

Next may be connected to one of the following components:

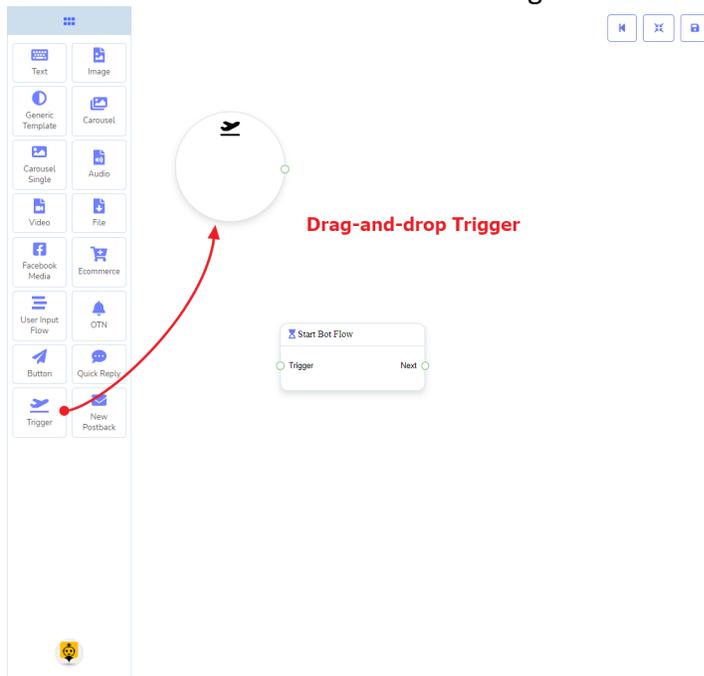
- **Start Bot Flow**, and **New Postback**

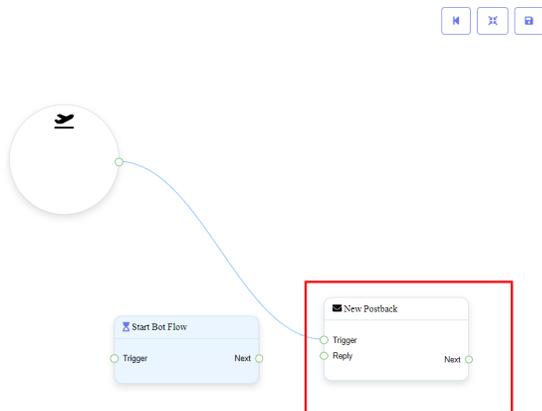
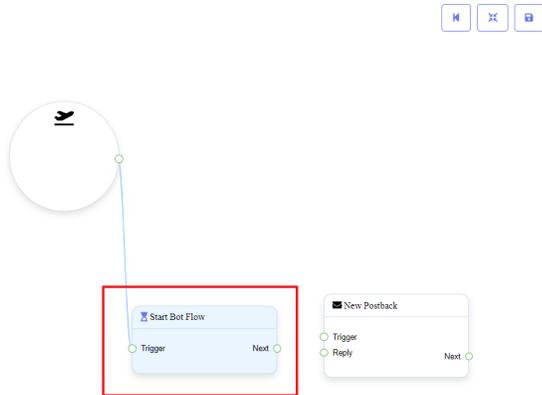
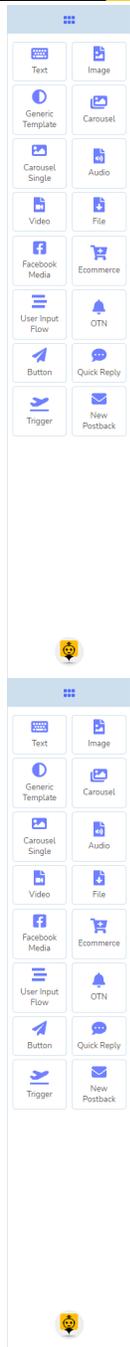
How to create Trigger component

Let us see how we can get started a bot.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Trigger** component and **drop** it on the editor and connect to either **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback** component. Once you're done with making the bot. **Save** the bot flow and start with a messenger.

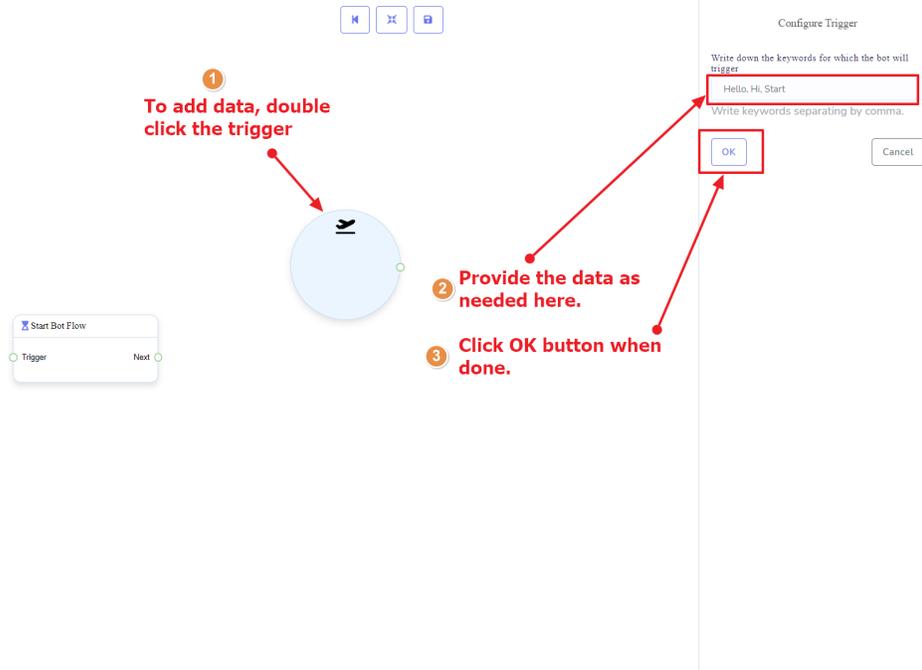
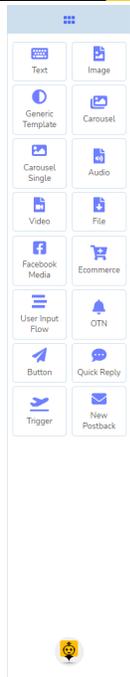




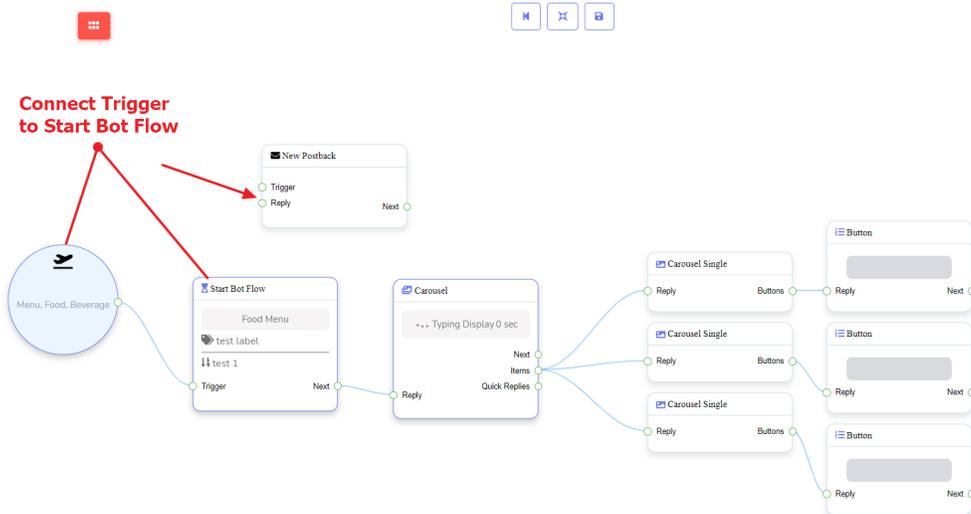
Adding Data

To add data to the **Trigger** component, click twice on the body of the **Trigger** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Now provide some keywords there separating by a comma. In our case, we're providing single keyword **products**. Now click on the **OK** button.





Then connect it to either **Start Bot Flow** or **New Postback** component.





New Postback Component

Introduction

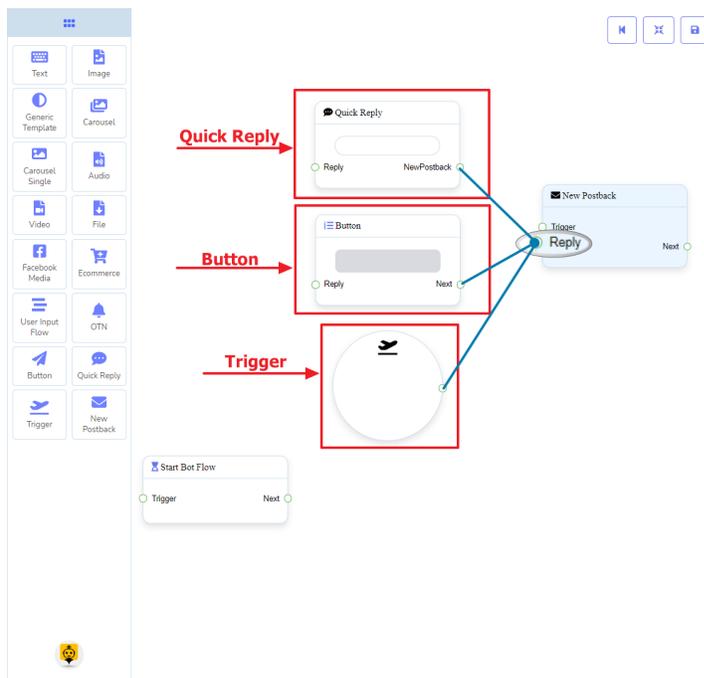
The New Postback component will allow you to make multiple postbacks through a single bot flow. Each postback will be stored as a standalone postback under the hood. So, you may trigger them later via trigger components if you want. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**

Connection

The **Reply** may get a connection from one of the following components:

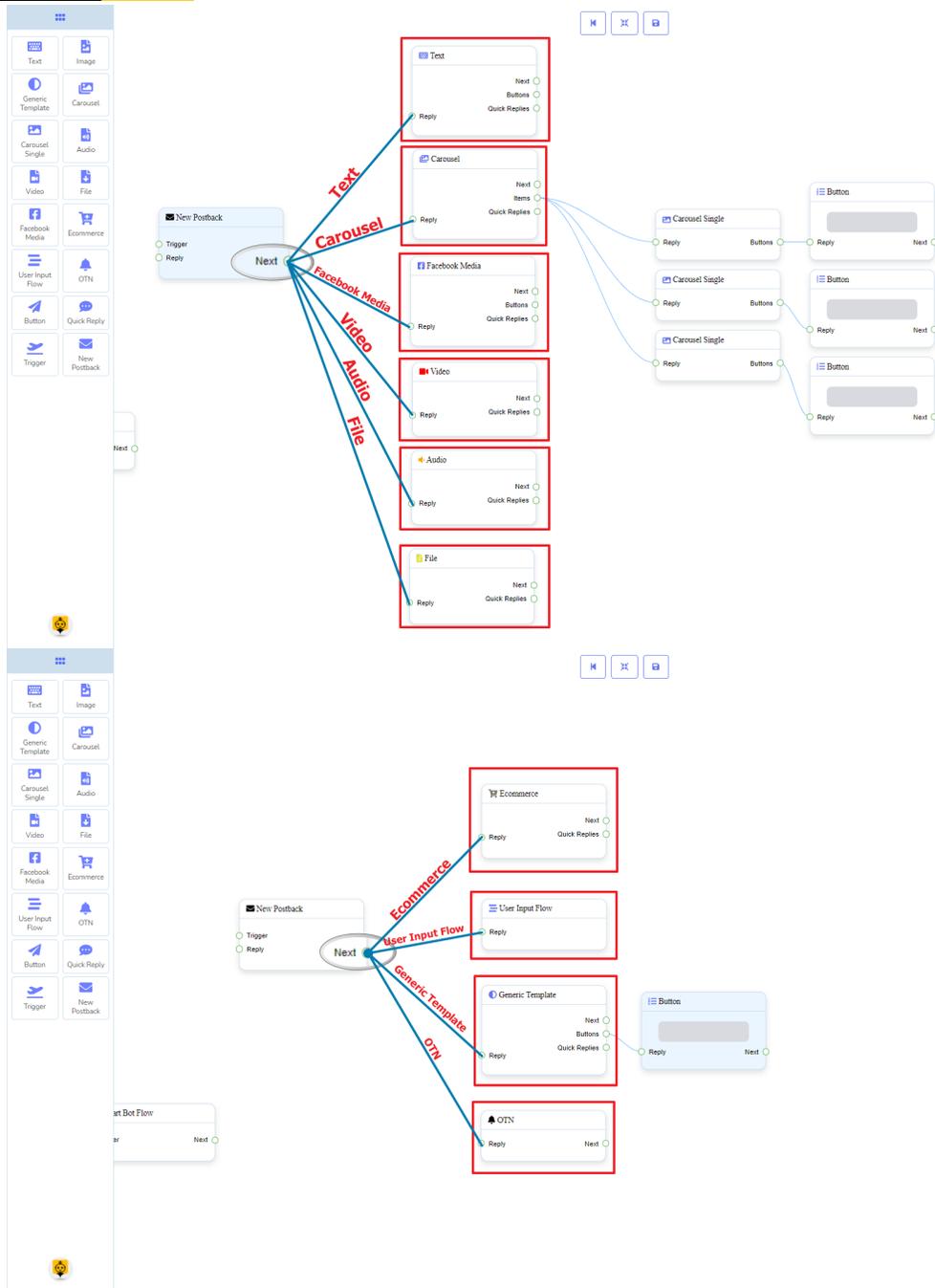
- **Quick Reply, Button, and Trigger**



The **Next** may be connected to the following component:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN**





How to create a New Postback component
 Let us see how we can create a new postback component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **New Postback** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data





To add data to the **New Postback** component, click twice on the body of the **New Postback** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Give it a name. You may choose a label(s) or sequence if you need.

Once done, click on the **OK** button.

The image shows two screenshots of the Messenger Bot builder interface. The top screenshot illustrates the process of adding a 'New Postback' component to a flow. A red arrow points from the 'New Postback' icon in the left-hand component palette to a 'New Postback' component in the flow canvas. A red text label 'Drag-and-drop New PostBack' is positioned above the arrow. The bottom screenshot shows the configuration process. A red arrow points from a 'New Postback' component in the flow canvas to a 'Configure New Postback' sidebar. A red text label 'Double-click on New Postback' is positioned above the arrow. The sidebar contains fields for 'Title', 'Choose label(s)', and 'Choose sequence' (with a dropdown menu). A red text label 'Provide the data needed here' points to these fields. Below the sidebar, a red text label 'Click the OK button when done' points to the 'OK' button. The 'OK' button is highlighted with a red box.



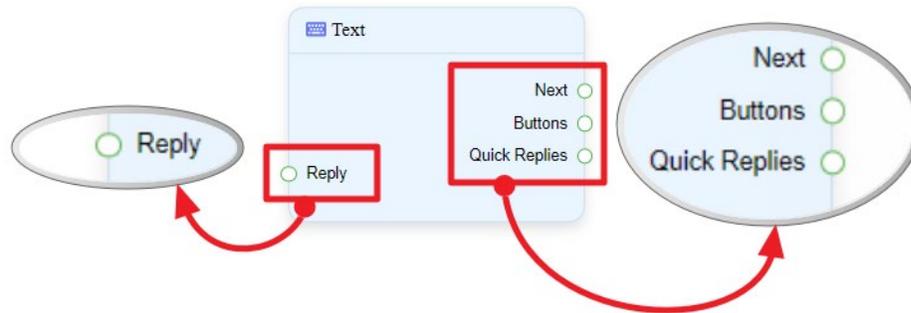


Text Component

Introduction

The Text component will allow you to reply with text content only. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Buttons, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

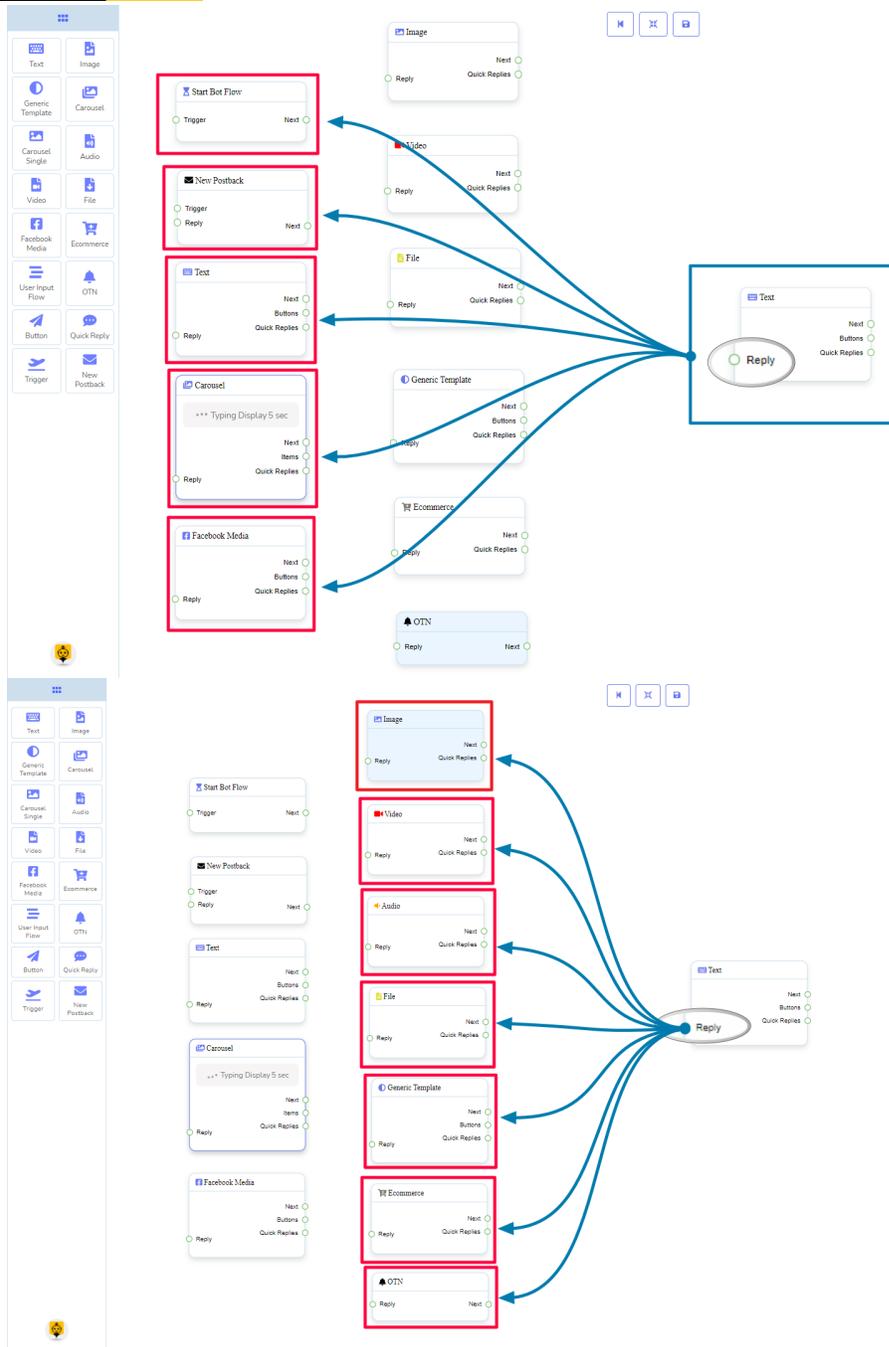
There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.

Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN**

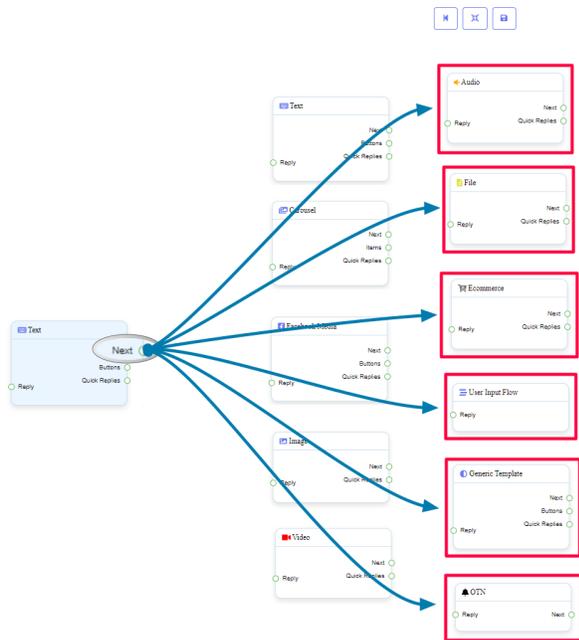
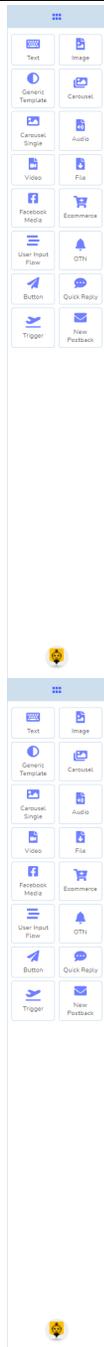




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, User Input Flow, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN.**

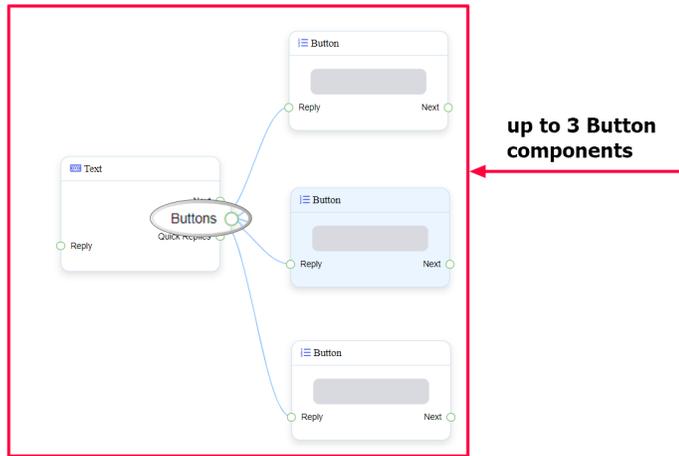
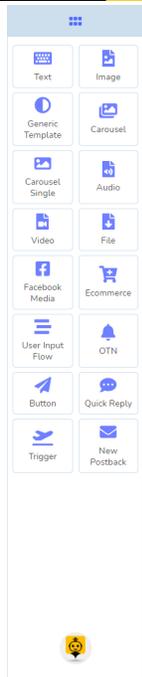




Buttons may be connected to the following component:

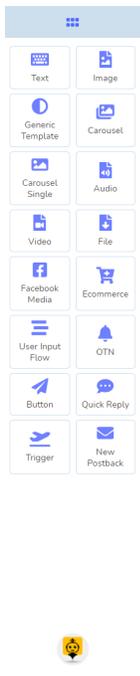
- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Text** component.



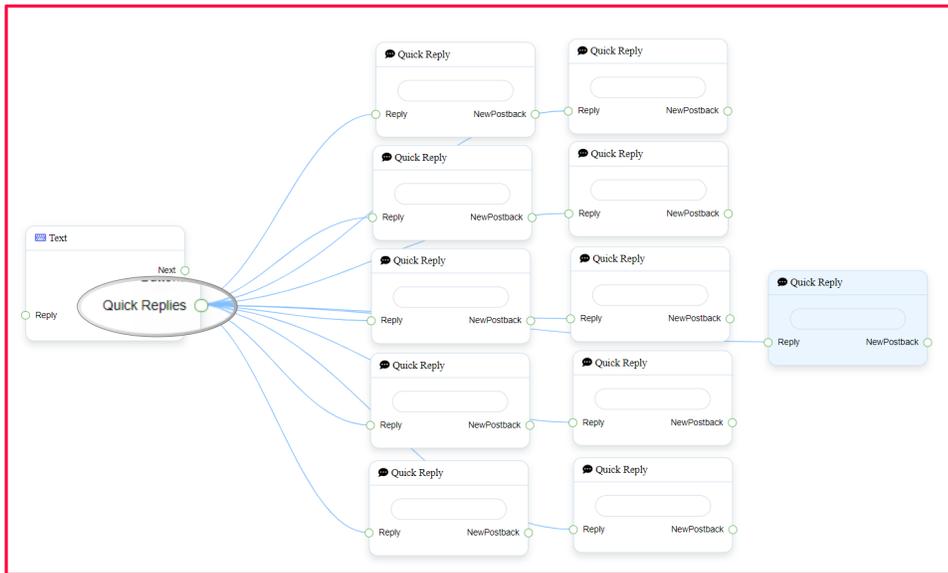


Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Reply** components to the **Text** component.



up to 11 Quick Reply



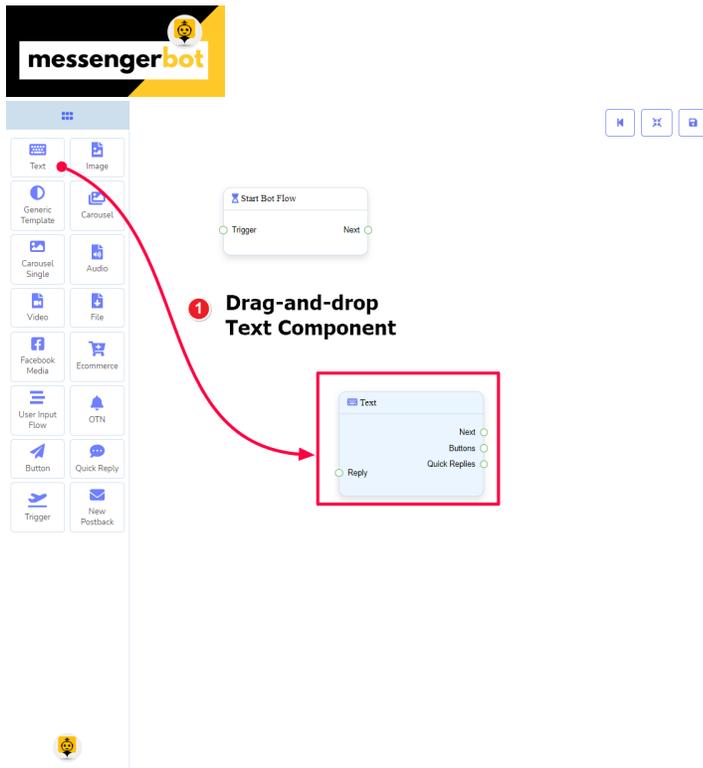
How to create a Text component

Let us see how we can create a reply with text.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Text** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

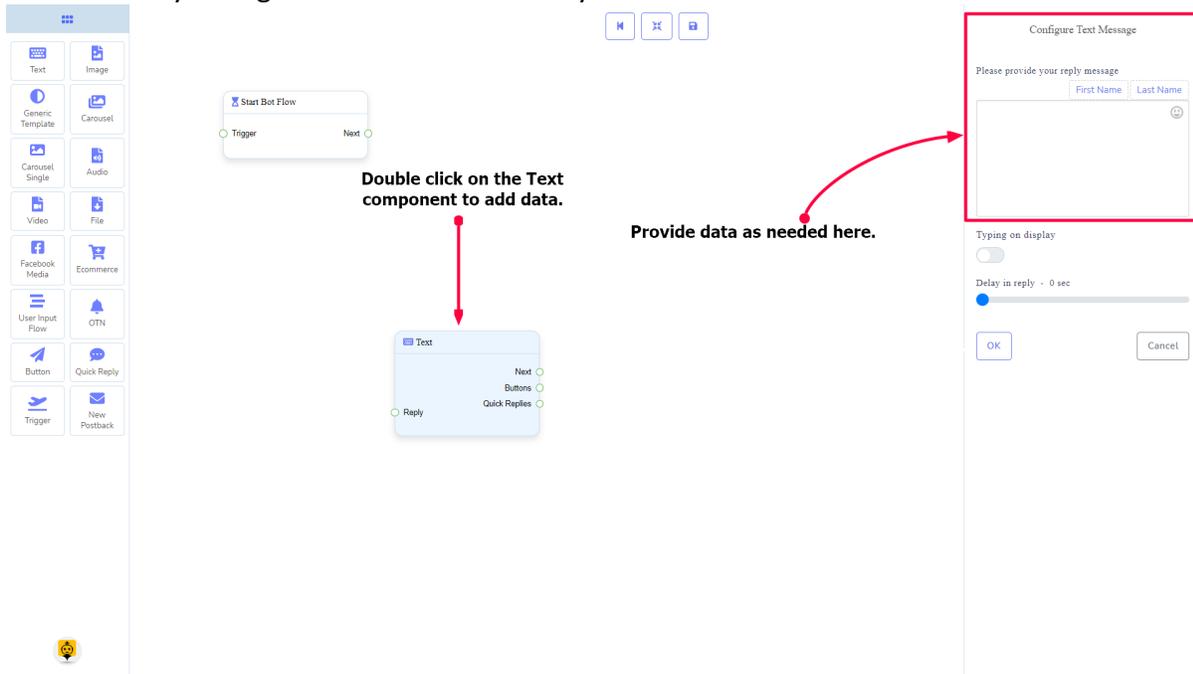




1 Drag-and-drop Text Component

Adding Data

To add data to the **Text** component, click twice on the body of the **Text** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.



Double click on the Text component to add data.

Provide data as needed here.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



- Text
- Image
- Generic Template
- Carousel
- Carousel Single
- Audio
- Video
- File
- Facebook Media
- Ecommerce
- User Input Flow
- OTN
- Button
- Quick Reply
- Trigger
- New Postback



On/Off Typing display and set the seconds on your delay in reply.

Click OK button when done.

Configure Text Message

Please provide your reply message

First Name Last Name

Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK Cancel

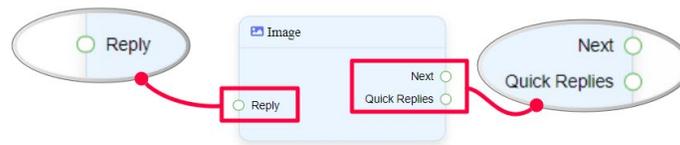


Image Component

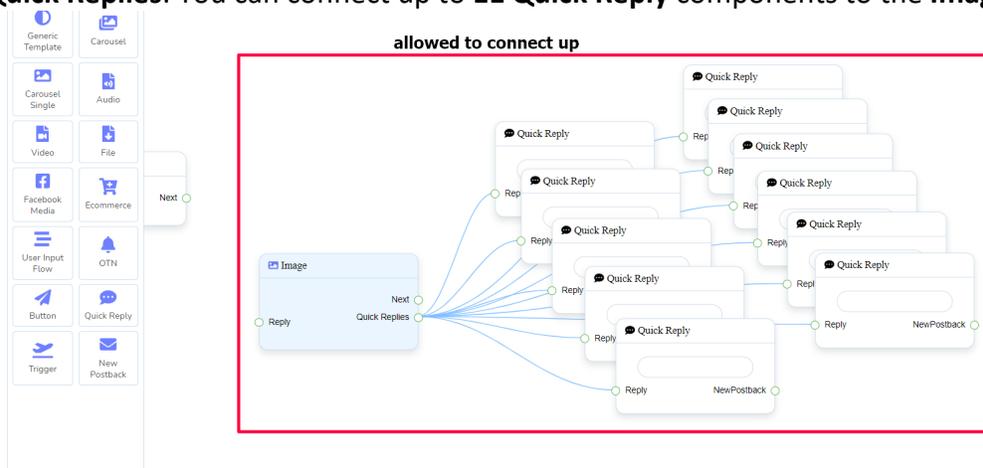
Introduction

The Image component will allow you to reply with an image. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



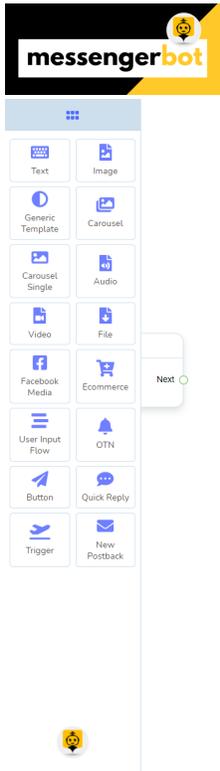
Quick Replies: You can connect up to **11 Quick Reply** components to the **Image** component.



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.





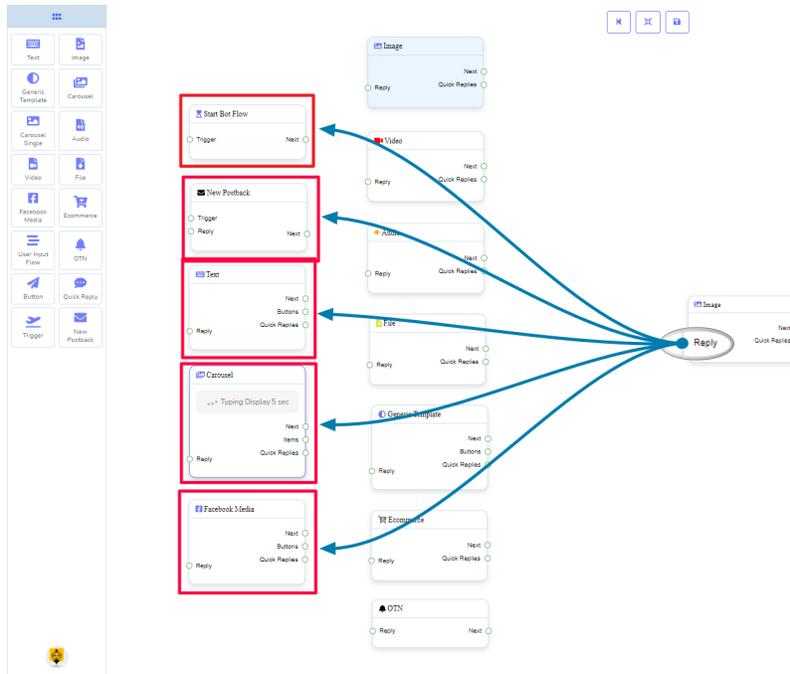
Next or QuickReply?

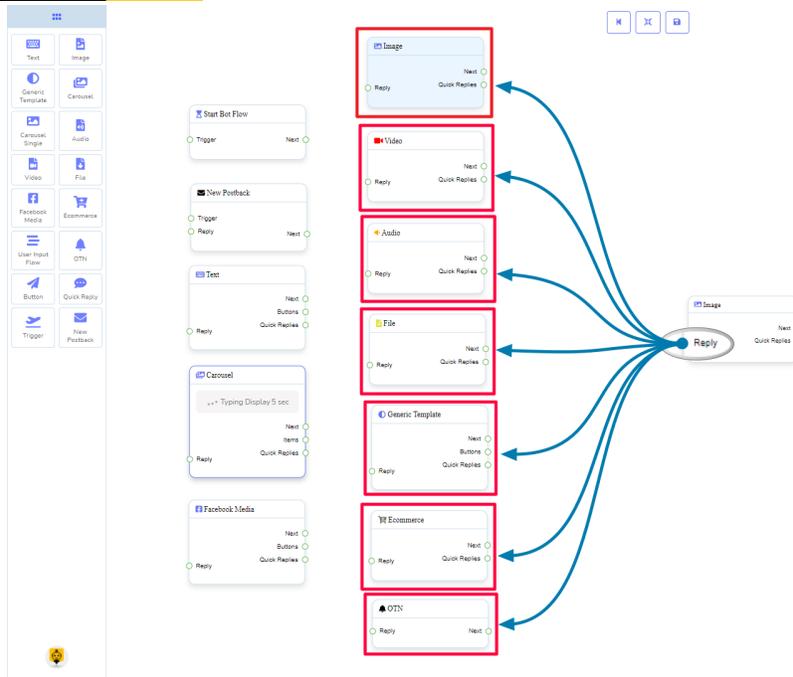


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

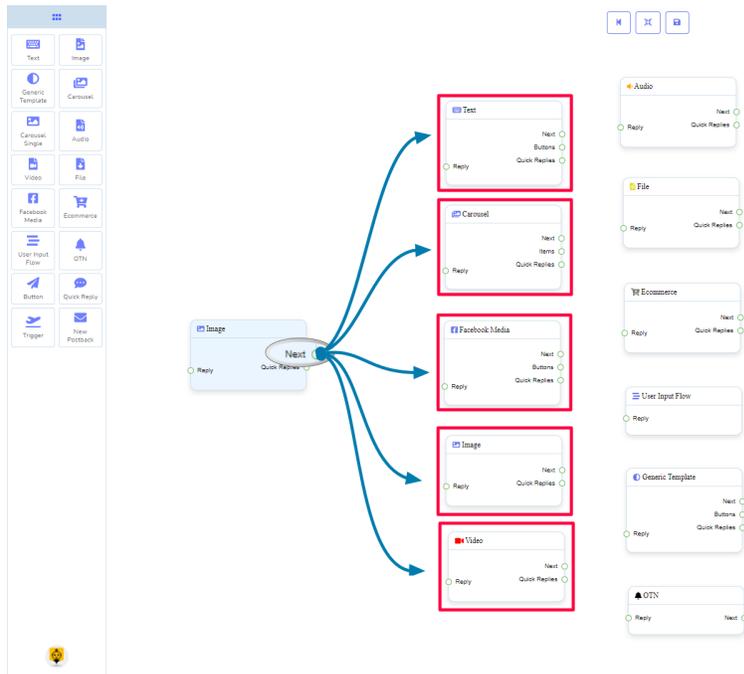
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Generic Template, Ecommerce, and OTN**

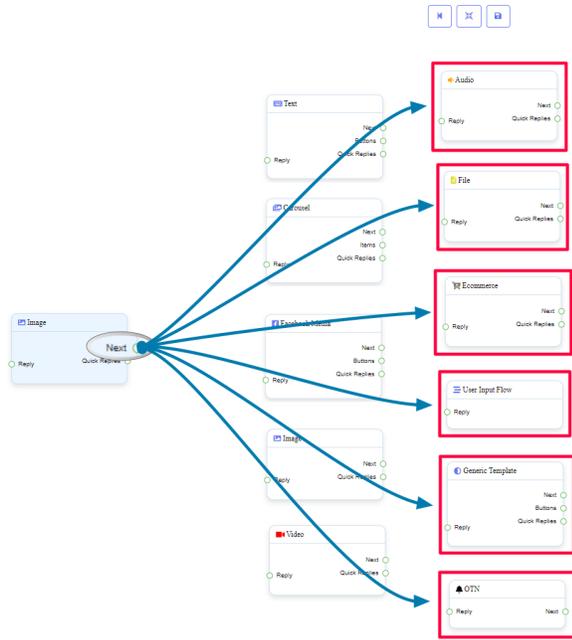
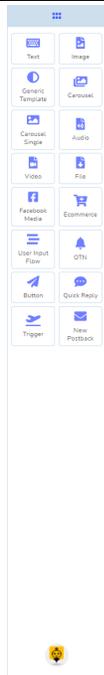




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

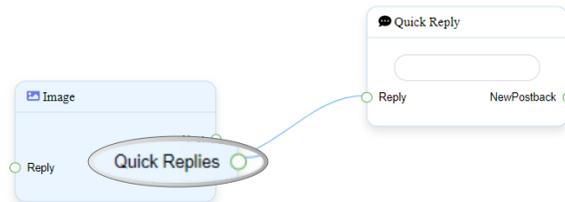
- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- Quick Reply



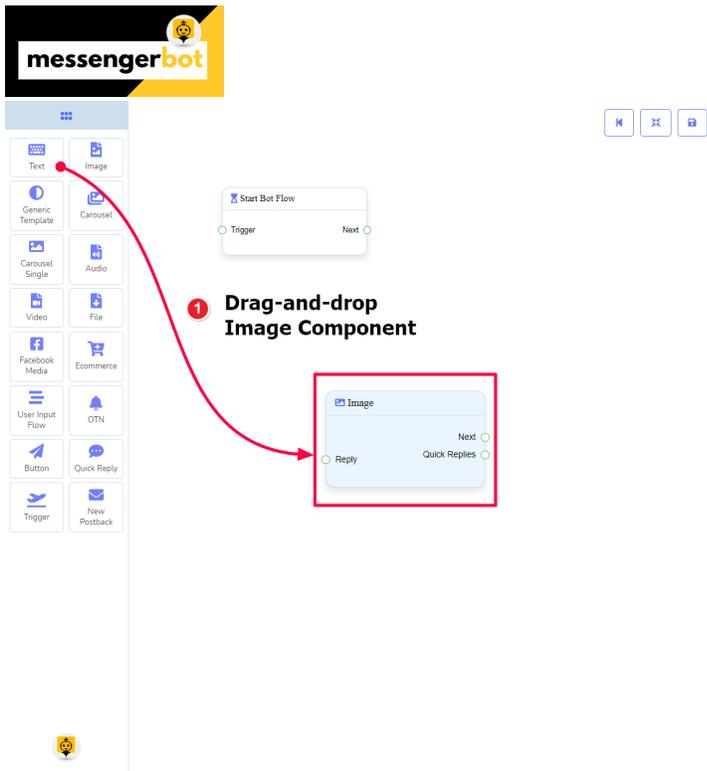
How to create an Image component

Let us see how we can create a reply with an image.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Image** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.





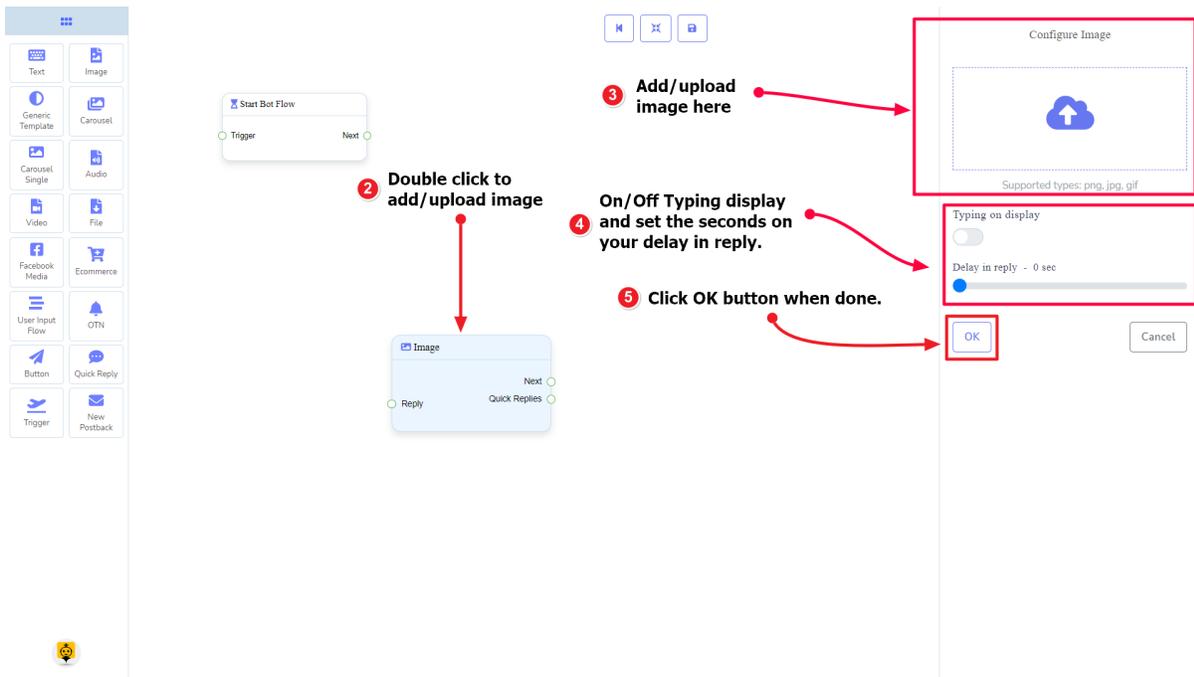
1 Drag-and-drop Image Component

Adding Data

To add data to the **Image** component, click twice on the body of the **Image** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.

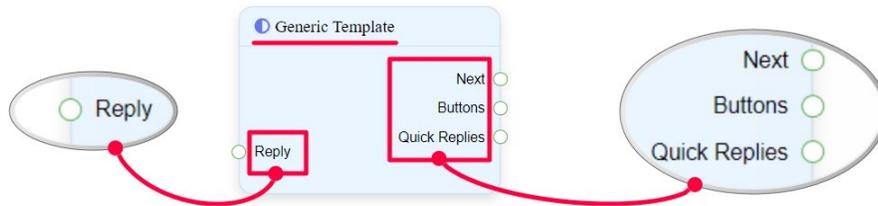


Generic Template Component

Introduction

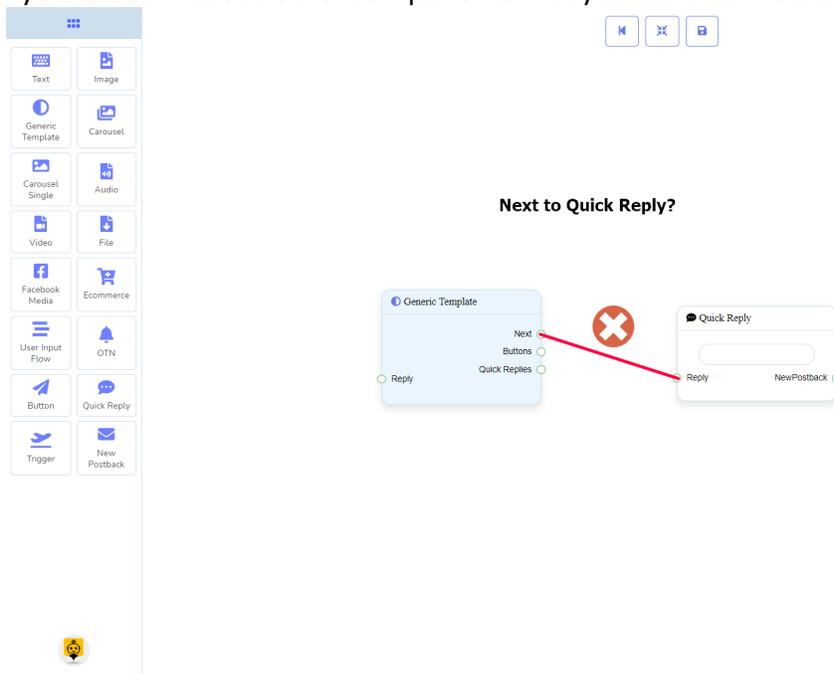
The Generic Template component will allow you to reply with an image, or title and subtitle, or all. It has **1 input socket** and **3 output sockets**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Buttons, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



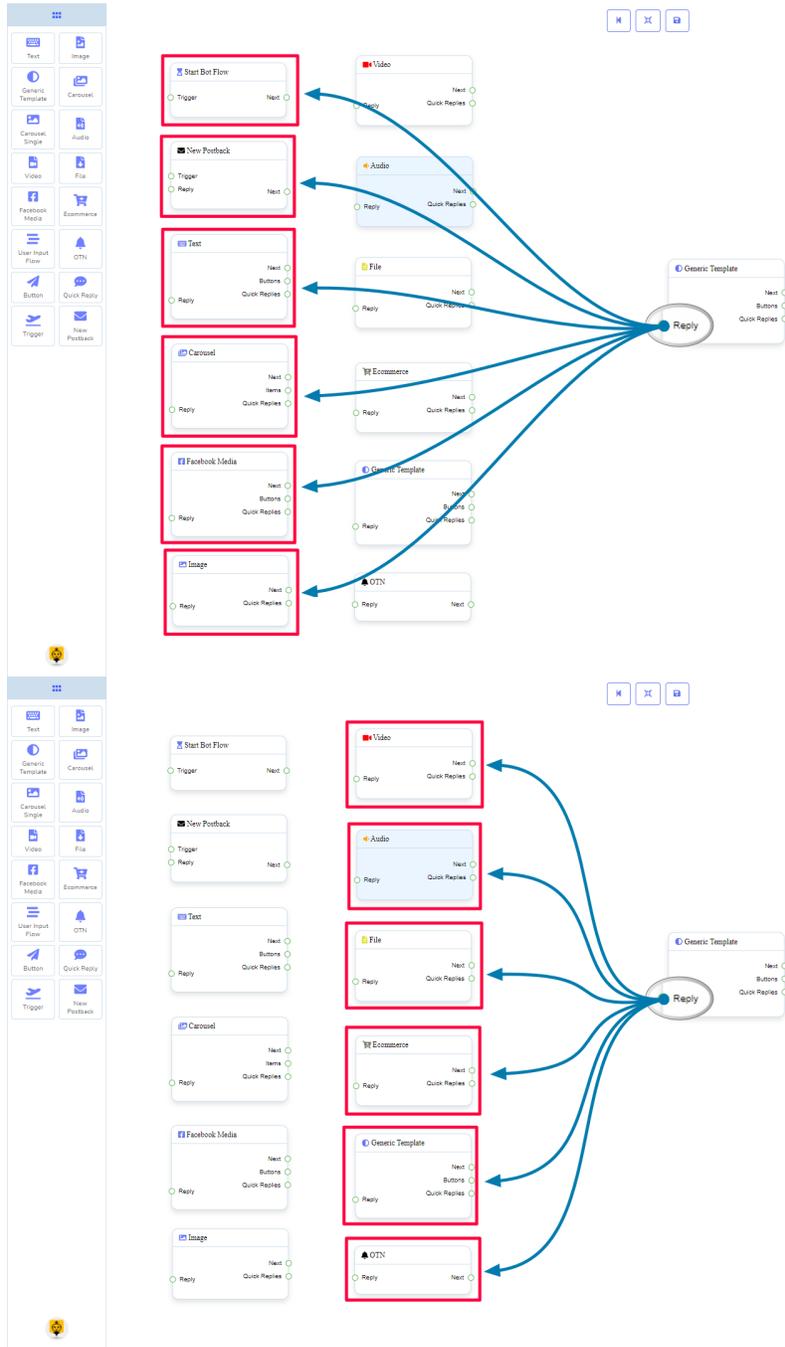
Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:





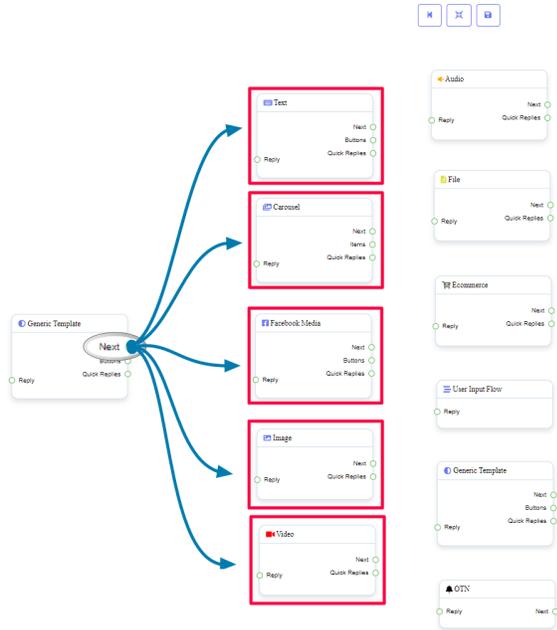
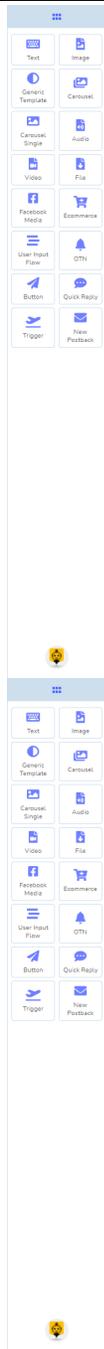
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN**



Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN**

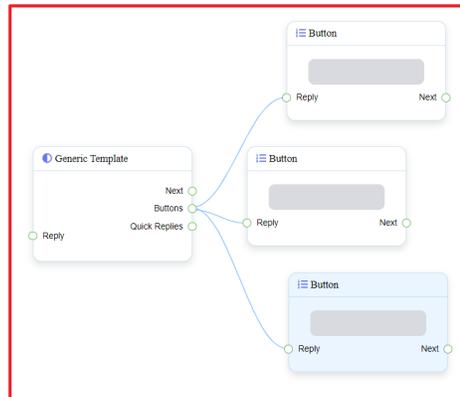
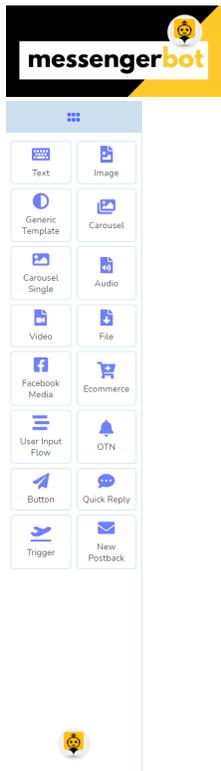




Buttons may be connected to the following component:

- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Buttons** to the **Generic Template** component.

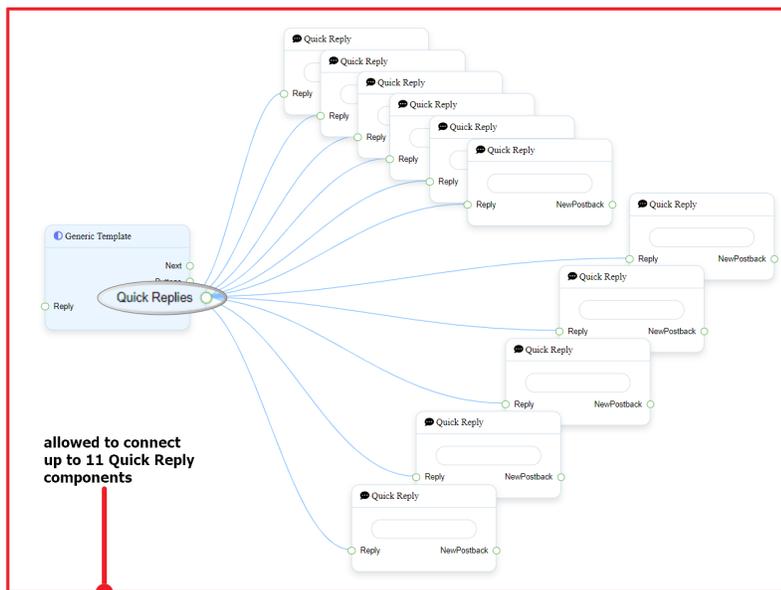
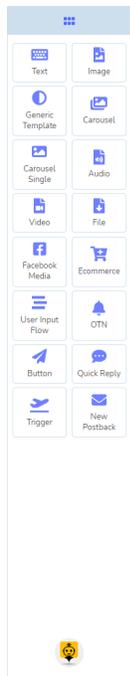




connect up to 3 buttons components

Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to 11 Quick Replies to the Generic Template component.



allowed to connect up to 11 Quick Reply components

How to create a Generic Template component

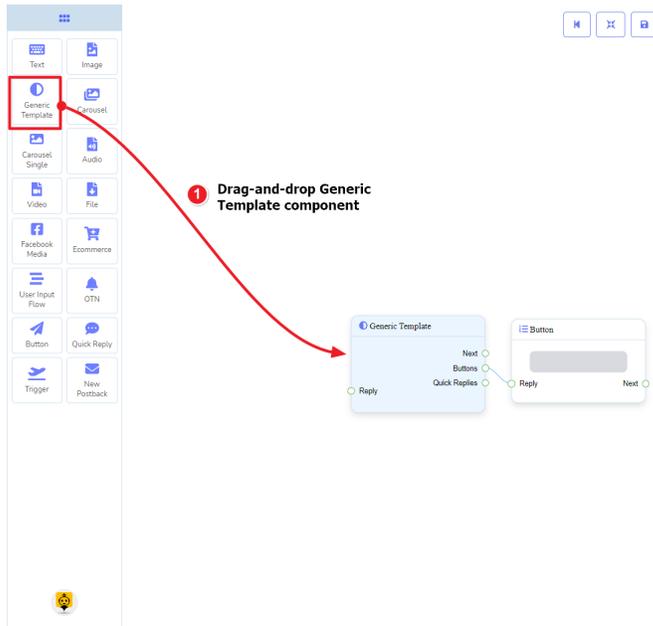
Let us see how we can create a reply with a generic-template.

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag the Generic Template component and drop** it on the editor at any place.

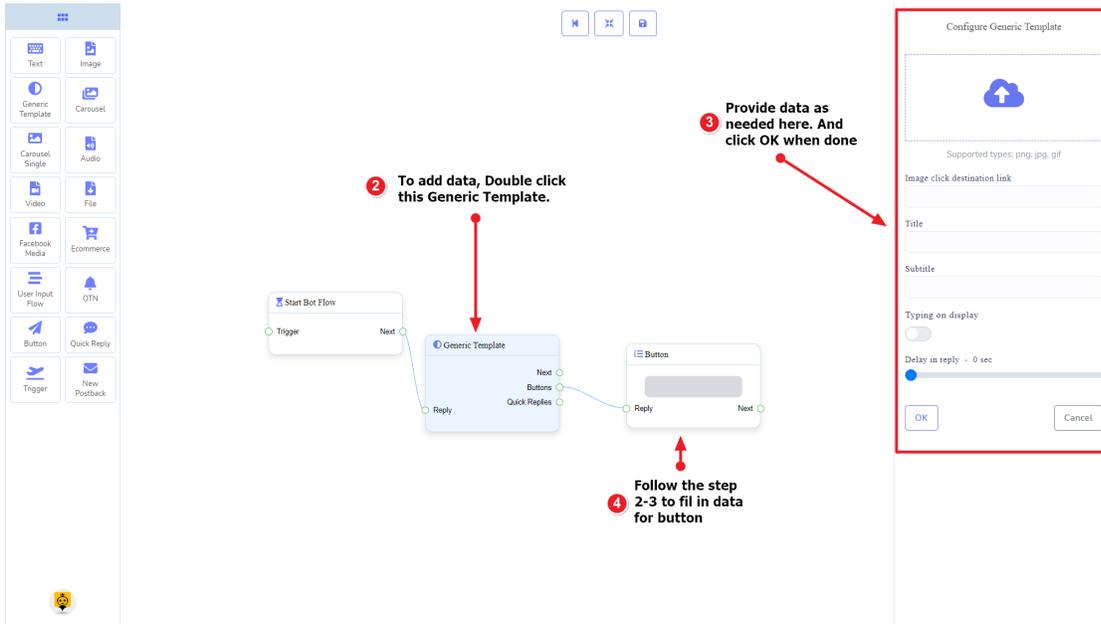


Adding Data

To add data to the **Generic Template** component, click twice on the body of the **Generic Template** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



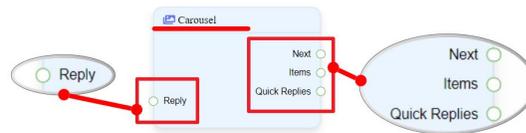
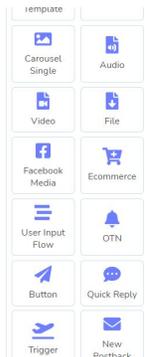


Carousel Component

Introduction

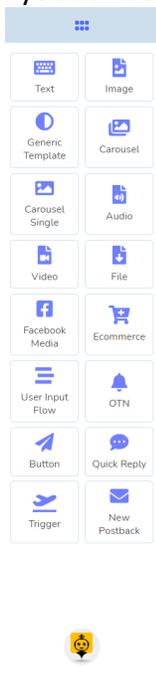
The Carousel component will allow you to reply with a carousel. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Items, and Quick Replies**

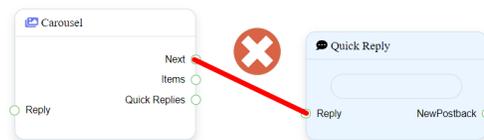


Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?



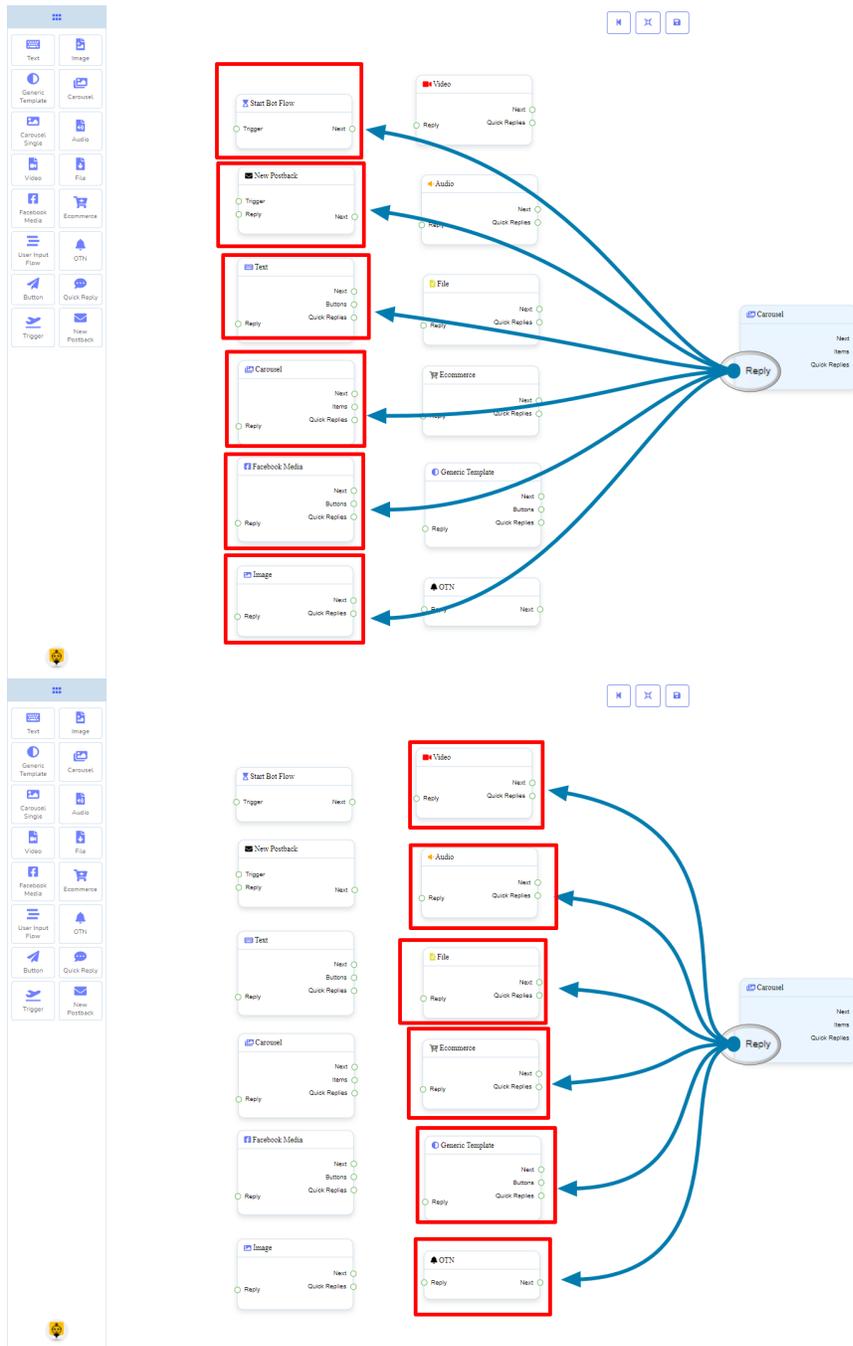
Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:





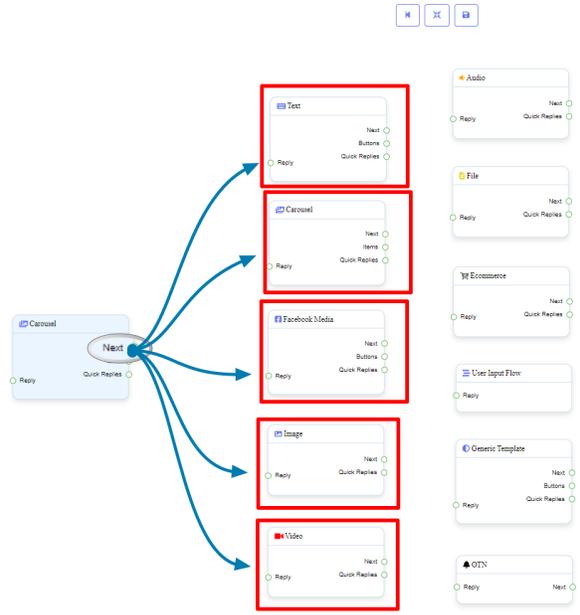
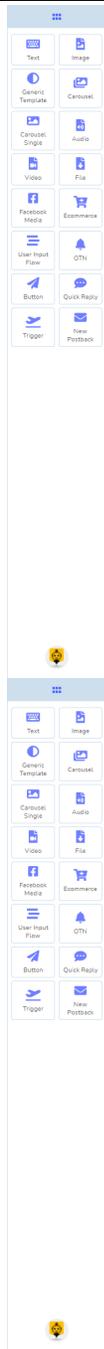
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN**



Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

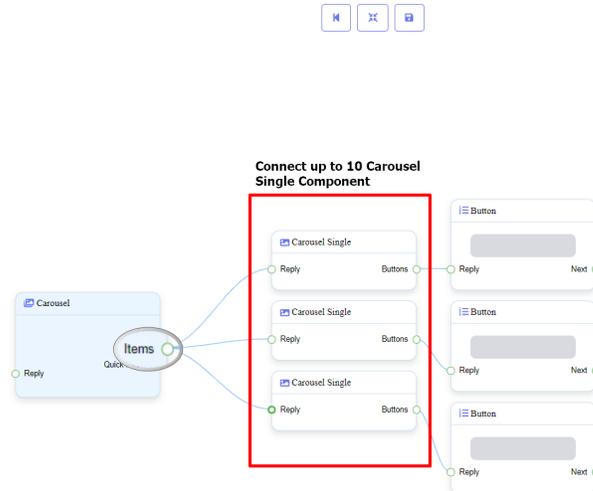
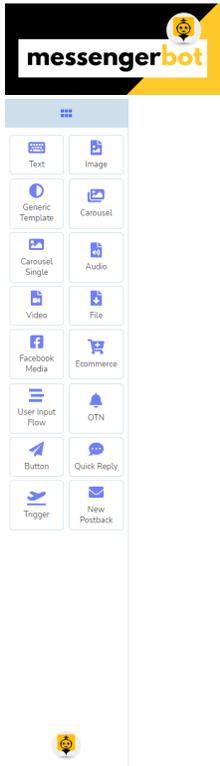




Items may be connected to the following component:

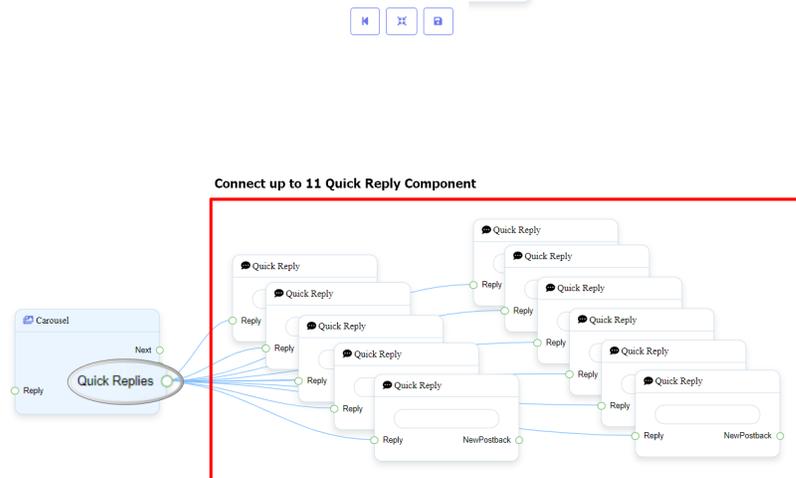
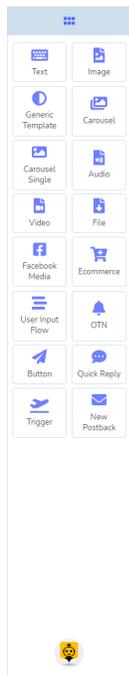
- **Carousel Single** - you may connect up to **10 Carousel Single** components to the **Carousel** components.





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to 11 Quick Replies to the **Carousel** component.



How to create a Carousel component

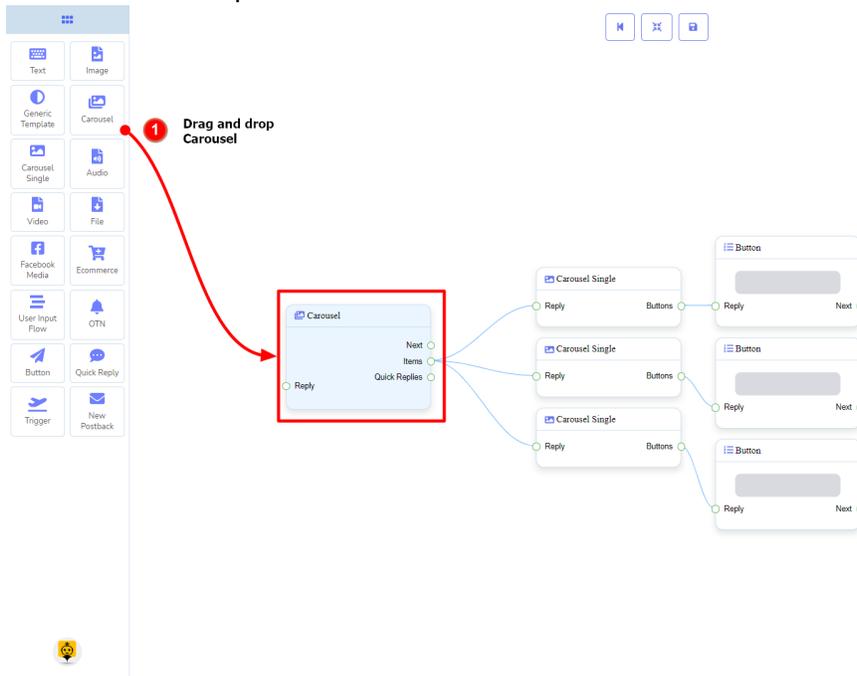
Let us see how we can create a reply with carousel

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag the Carousel component and drop** it on the editor at any place. Next, you see **3 Carousel Single** components and **3 Button** components have been created with the **Carousel** component.



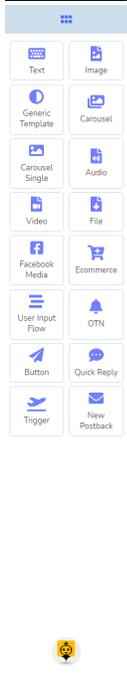
Adding Data

To add data to the **Carousel** component, click twice on the body of the **Carousel** component. It will open a sidebar on your right with only fields asking reply-delay and type-state. Interact with them if you need.

By default, we provided 3 carousel single items. You can add more if you wish. Now it's time to prepare a carousel single component. Make double-click on each of them to provide data as you need.

Having done with filling in carousel single, you may go for button component to be provided with your carousel. Make double-click on the button component to fill in data as you need.





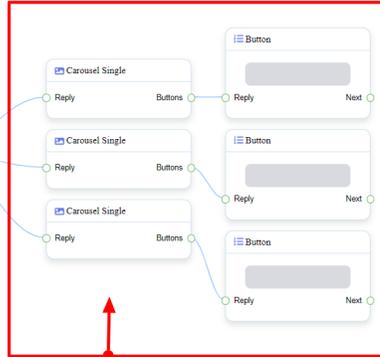
3 Provide the data as needed here. Click OK when done.

Configure Carousel

Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec

2 Double click Carousel component.



4 Follow step 2-3 to add data for Carousel Single and Button





Carousel Single Component

Introduction

Carousel Single component will allow you to reply with an image, or title and subtitle, or all. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Button**



Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from the following component:

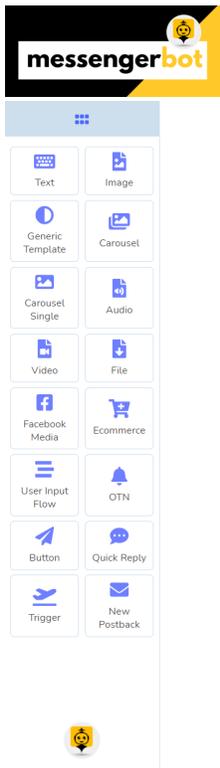
- **Carousel**



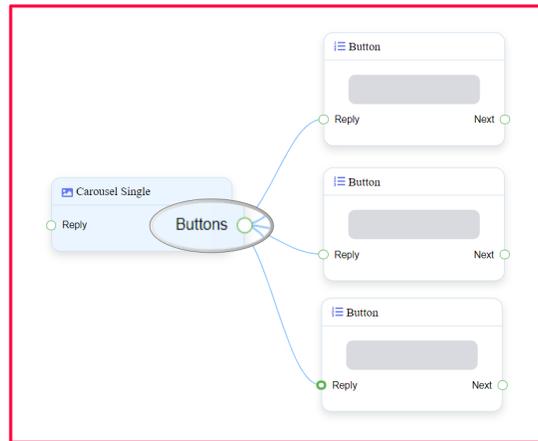
The **Button** may be connected to the following component:

- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Carousel Single** component.





Connect up to 3 Button components



How to create a Carousel Single component

Carousel Single is dependent on the **Carousel** component. So we make it prepare to be connected to the **Carousel** component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Carousel Single** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Carousel Single** component, click twice on the body of the **Carousel Single** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields as you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.

1 Drag-and-drop the Carousel Single component

2 Double click the body to add data

3 Upload an image file and provide the data as needed here.

4 Click "OK" when done.



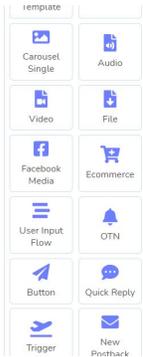


Audio Component

Introduction

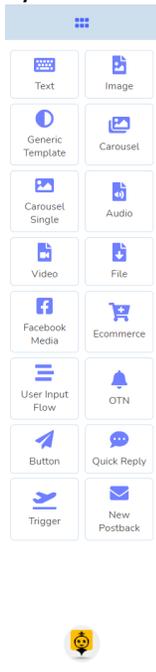
The Audio component will allow you to reply with an audio file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?

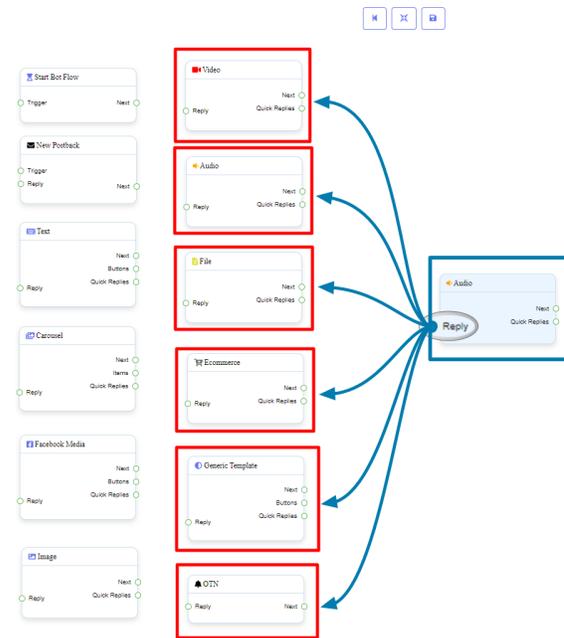
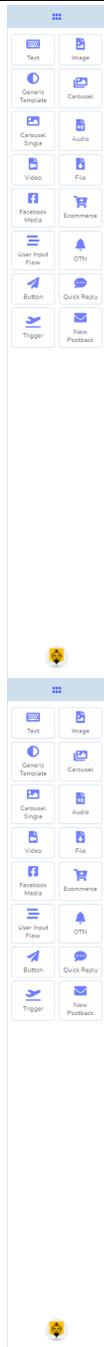


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

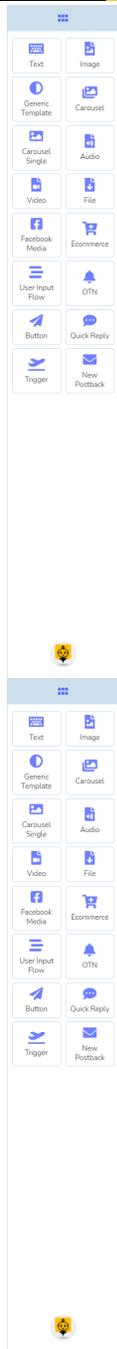




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

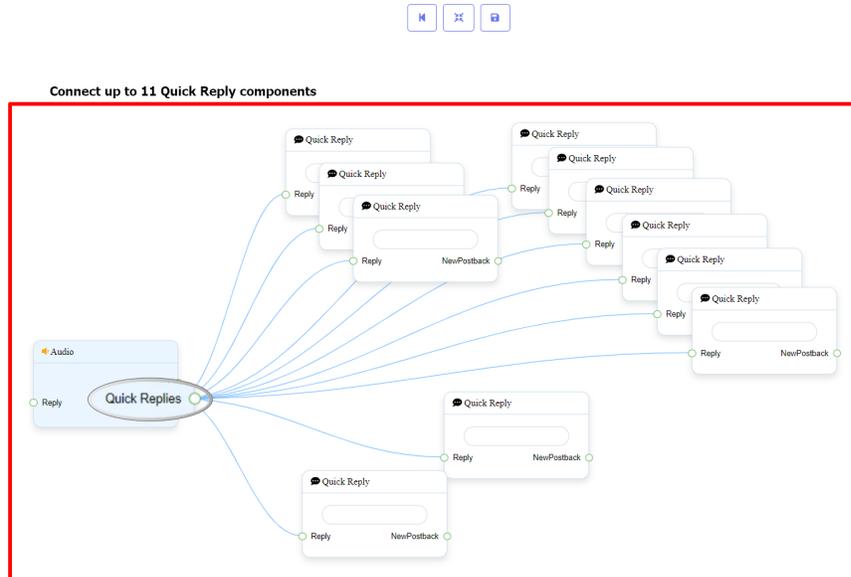
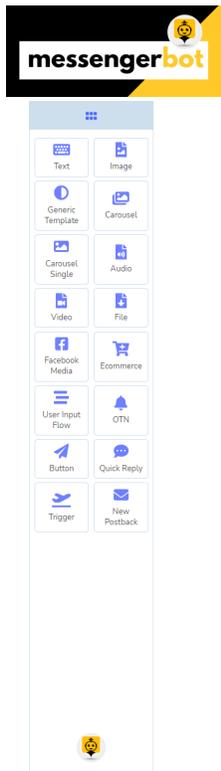




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Audio** component.





How to create an Audio component

Let us see how we can create a reply with an audio component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Audio** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

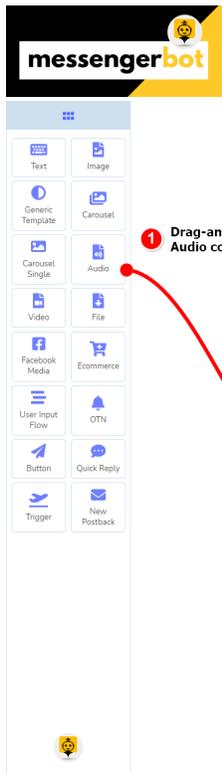
Adding Data

To add data to the **Audio** component, click twice on the body of the **Audio** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the Audio component here.

2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload audio file here.



4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.



5 Click OK button when done.



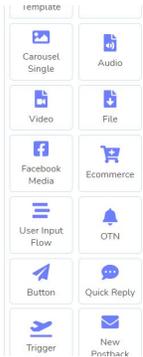


Video Component

Introduction

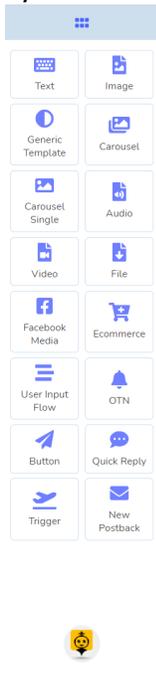
The Video component will allow you to reply with a video file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?

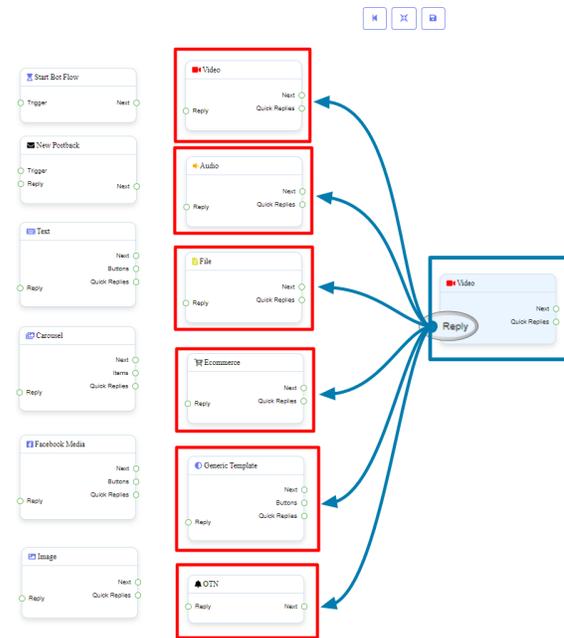
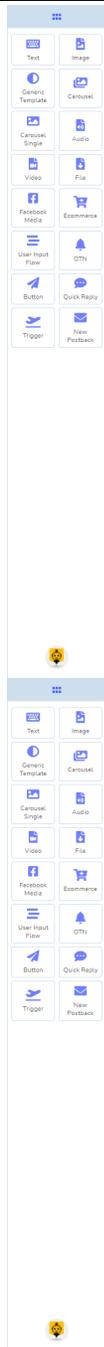


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

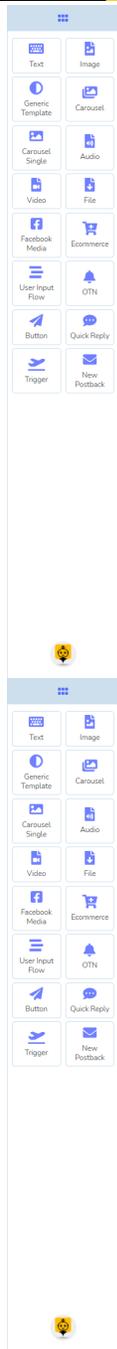




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

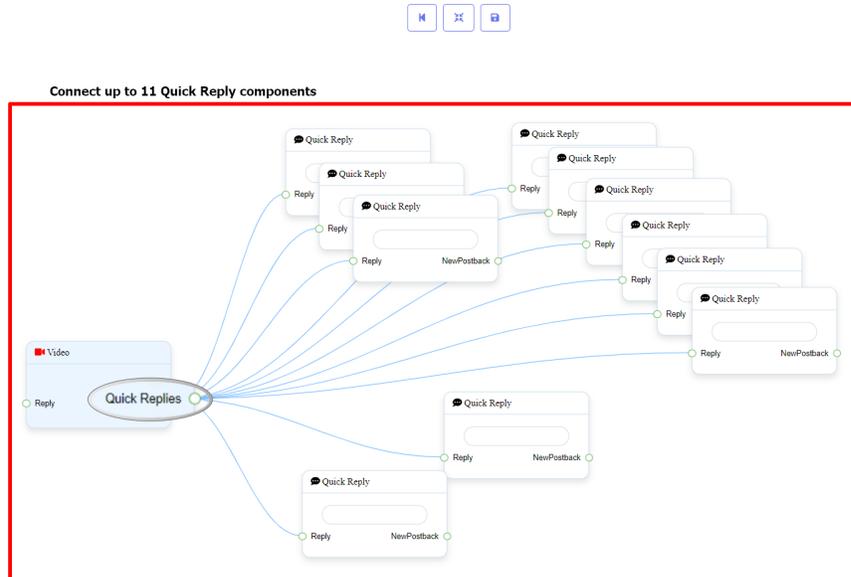
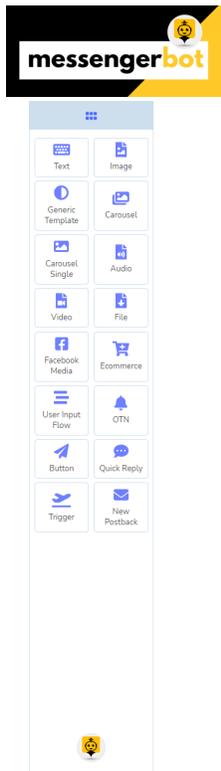




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Video** component.





How to create a Video component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a video component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Video** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

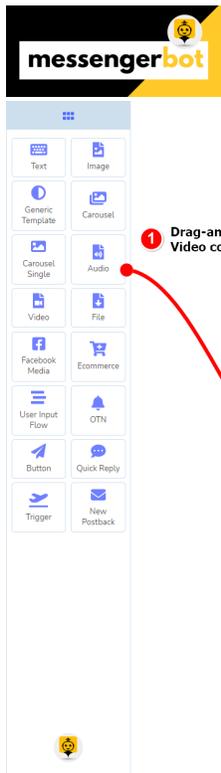
Adding Data

To add data to the **Video** component, click twice on the body of the **Video** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

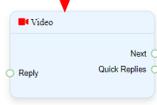
If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the Video component here.

2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload video file here.



4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.



5 Click OK button when done.



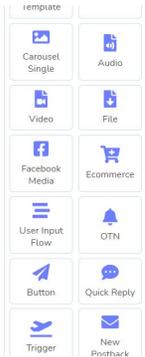


File Component

Introduction

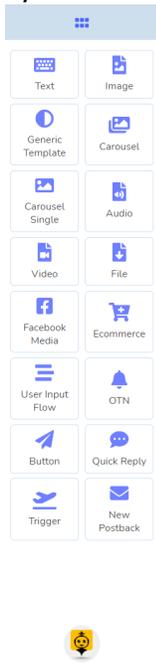
The File component will allow you to reply with a file. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?

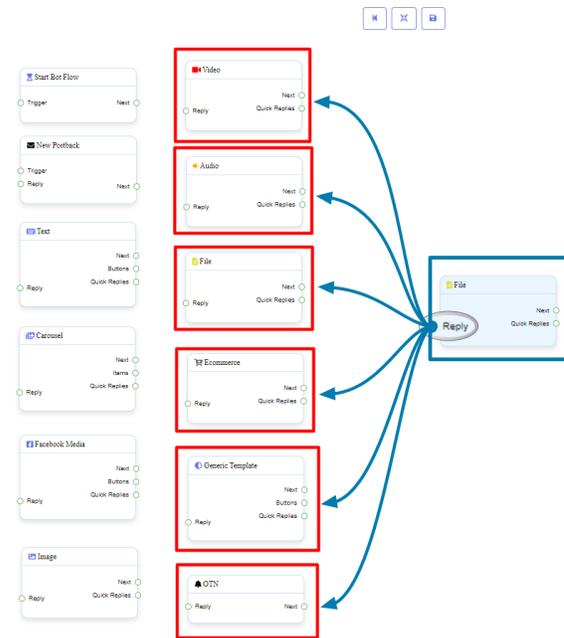
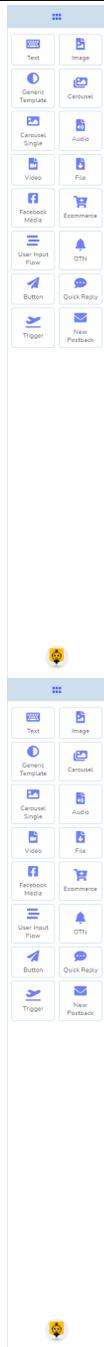


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

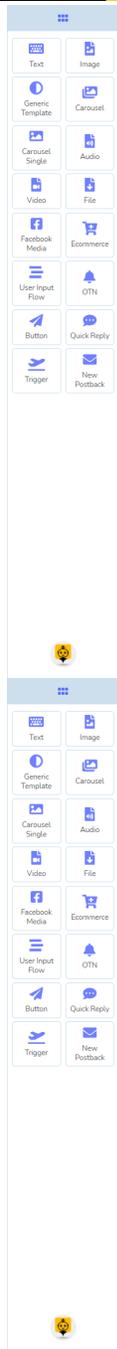




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

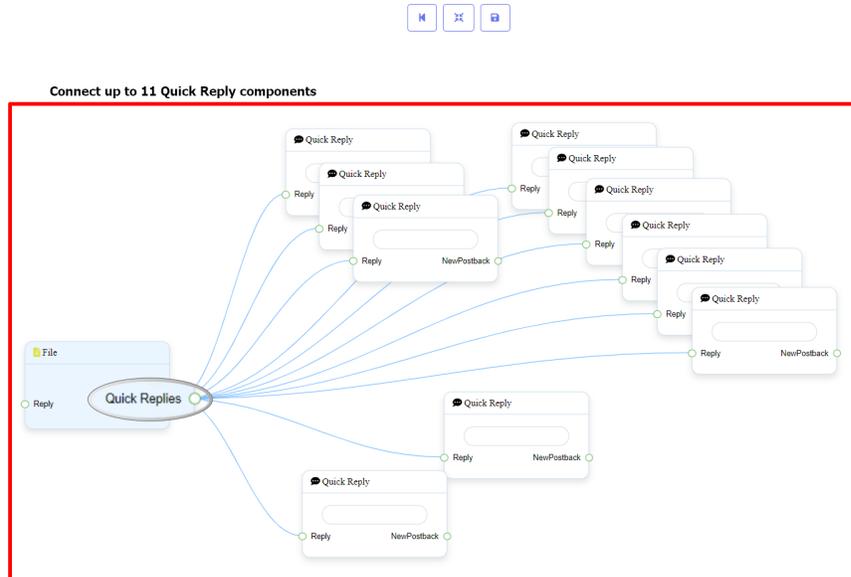
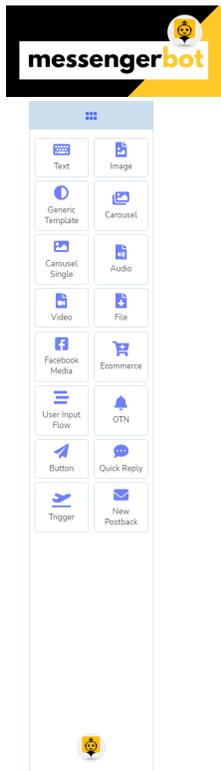




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **File** component.





How to create a File component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a file component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **File** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

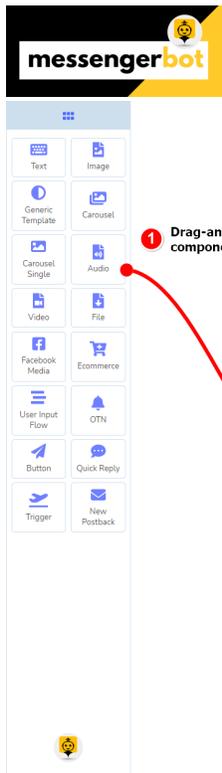
Adding Data

To add data to the **File** component, click twice on the body of the **File** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop the File component here.

2 To add data, double click the component.



3 Add/upload file here.



4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.



5 Click OK button when done.



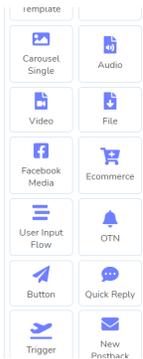


Facebook Media Component

Introduction

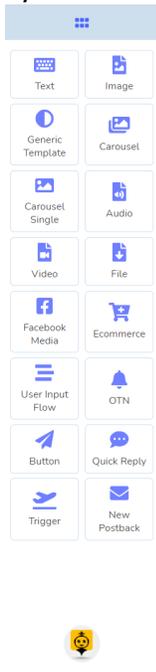
Facebook Media component will allow you to reply by referring to a Facebook page. It has **1 input** socket and **3 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next, Buttons, and Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?

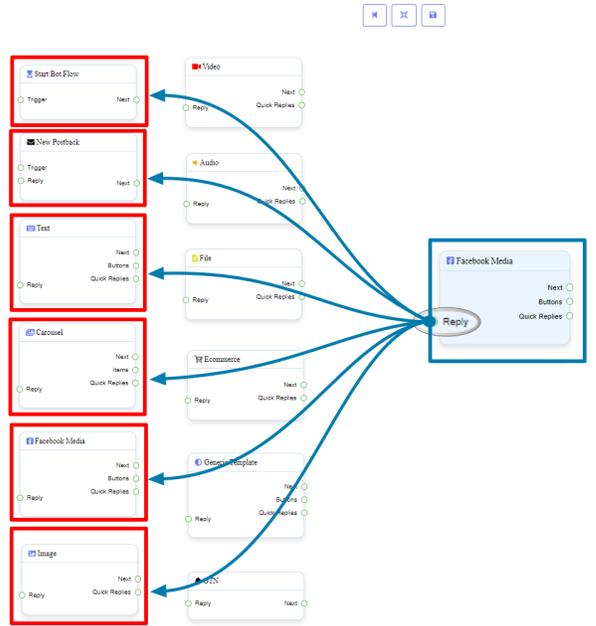
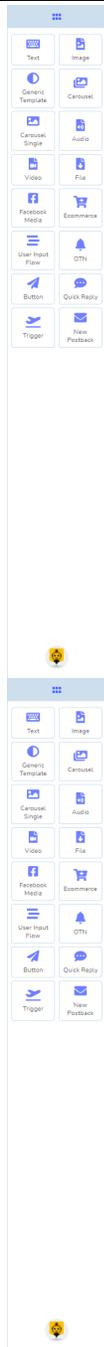


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

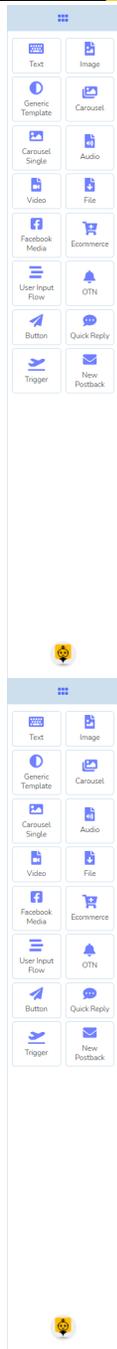




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

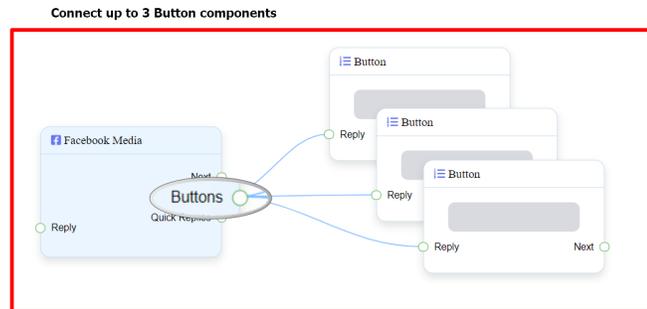
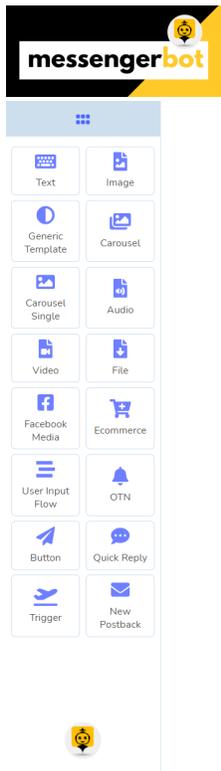




Buttons may be connected to the following component:

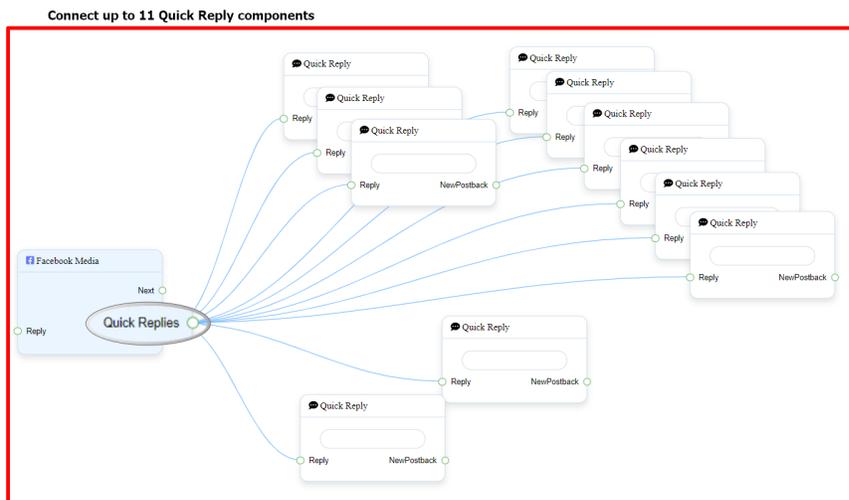
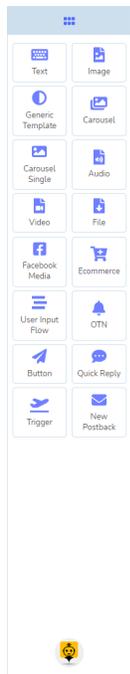
- **Button** - you may connect up to **3 Button** components to the **Facebook Media** component.





Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Facebook Media** component.



How to create a Facebook Media component

Let us see how we can create a reply with a Facebook page.

Dragging and Dropping





From the dock menu, **drag** the **Facebook Media** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Facebook Media** component, click twice on the body of the **Facebook Media** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.

The image shows a two-part process for configuring the Facebook Media component in a bot editor. On the left, a dock menu contains various components like Text, Image, Generic Template, Carousel, Audio, File, Video, Facebook Media, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, OTN, Button, Quick Reply, Trigger, and New Postback. A red arrow labeled '1' points from the Facebook Media component in the dock to a 'Facebook Media' component placed in the editor. A second red arrow labeled '2' points to the 'Facebook Media' component in the editor, indicating it should be double-clicked. On the right, a configuration sidebar for the 'Facebook Media' component is shown. It has a title 'Facebook Media URL' and a text input field. Below this is a 'Typing on display' section with a toggle switch and a 'Delay in reply' slider set to 0 seconds. At the bottom of the sidebar are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. Red arrows and numbered steps (3, 4, 5) point to these elements: '3' points to the URL input field, '4' points to the 'Typing on display' toggle and slider, and '5' points to the 'OK' button.

- 1 Drag-and-drop the Facebook Media
- 2 To add data, double click the component.
- 3 Paste your Facebook Media URL here.
- 4 On/Off typing display and set seconds on delay in reply as desired.
- 5 Click OK button when done.



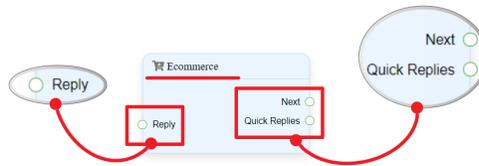
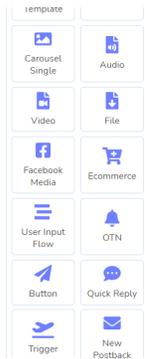


Ecommerce Component

Introduction

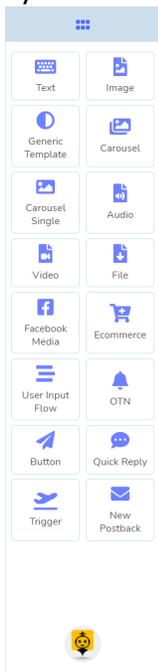
Ecommerce component will allow you to reply by referring to an ecommerce shop and its products as a carousel or generic reply. It has **1 input** socket and **2 output** sockets.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**, and **Quick Replies**



Note: Next to Quick Replies!?

There is a condition between Next and Quick Replies. Using either Next or Quick Replies, you can connect to other components. But you can't connect to others from both.



Next to Quick Reply?

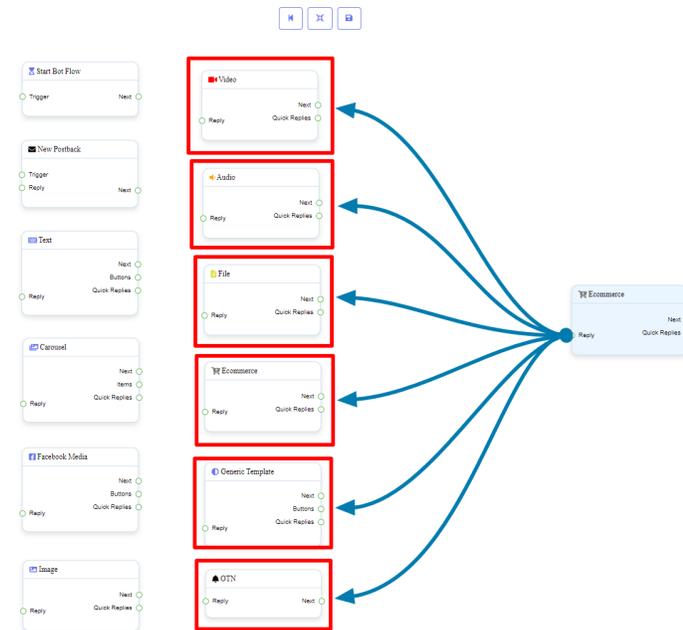
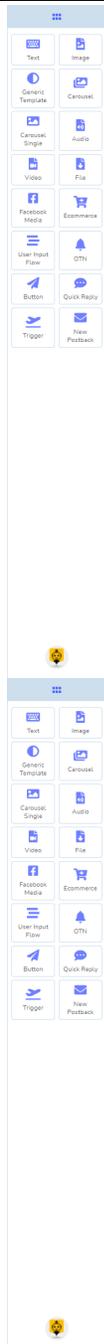


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

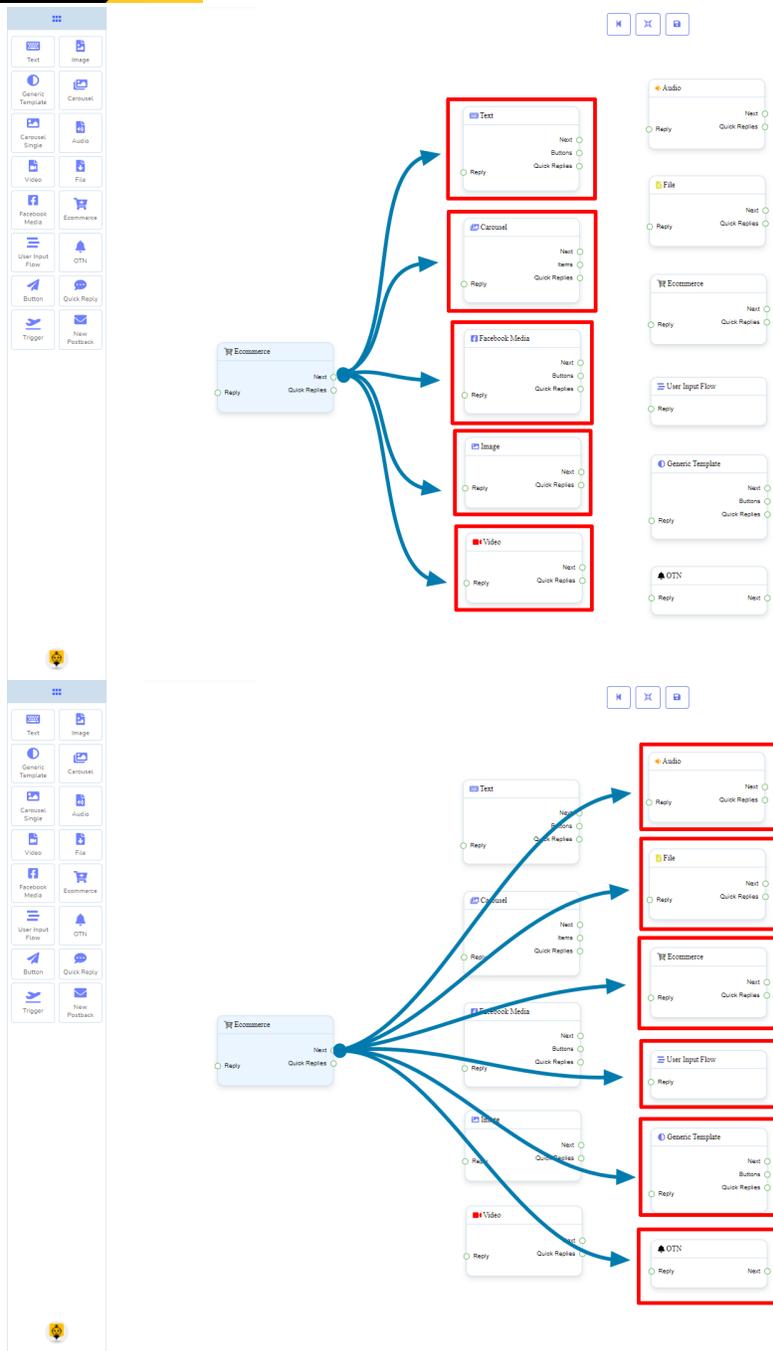




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**

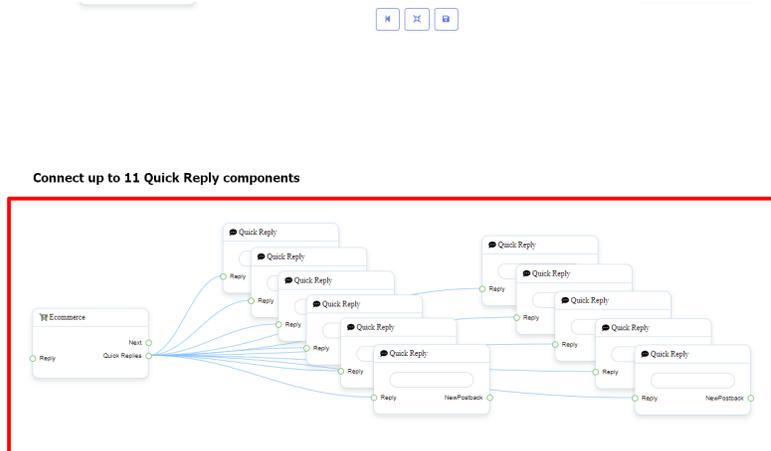
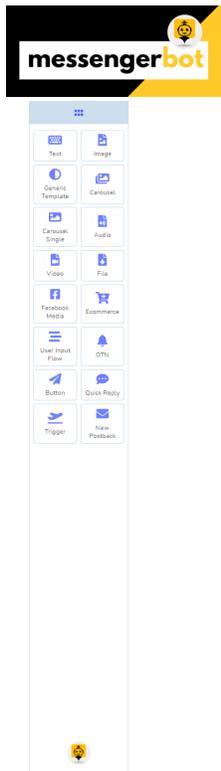




Quick Replies may be connected to the following component:

- **Quick Reply** - you may connect up to **11 Quick Replies** to the **Ecommerce** component.





How to create an Ecommerce component

Let us see how we can create an ecommerce.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Ecommerce** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Ecommerce** component, click twice on the body of the **Ecommerce** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing gif image on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





- Text
- Image
- Generic Template
- Carousel
- Carousel Single
- Audio
- Video
- File
- Facebook Media
- Ecommerce
- User Input Flow
- OTN
- Button
- Quick Reply
- Trigger
- New Postback

1 Drag-and-drop the Ecommerce component

2 Double click the component to add data

Ecommerce

Reply

Next

Quick Replies



3 Provide the data as needed here

Configure Ecommerce

Select your ecommerce store

Select a store

Select products for carousel generic reply

Buy now button text

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec

5 Click OK button when done

OK

Cancel



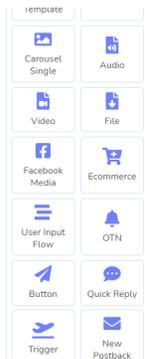


User Input Flow Component

Introduction

User Input Flow component will allow you to reply with a user input flow. It has only **1 input socket**.

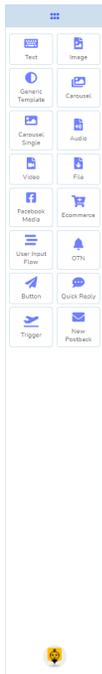
- **Input: Reply**

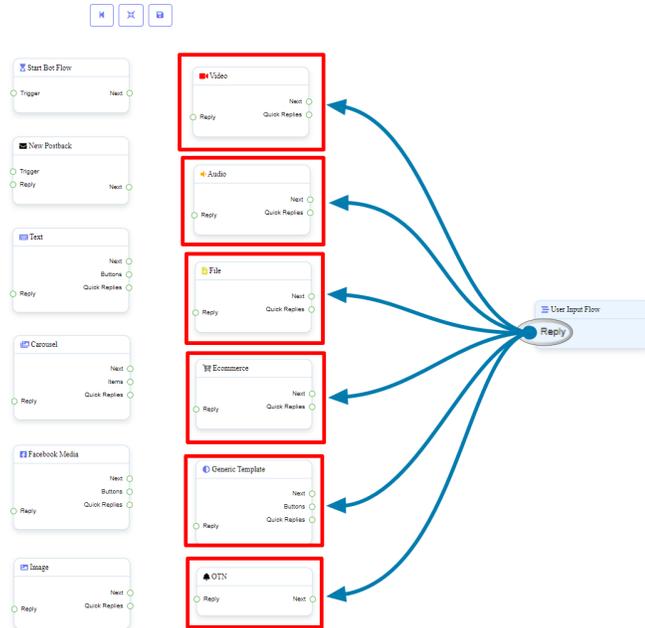
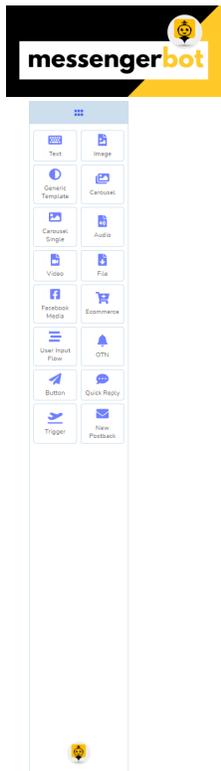


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**





How to create a User Input Flow component

Let us see how we can create a reply using the user-input-flow component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **User Input Flow** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **User Input Flow** component, click twice on the body of the **User Input Flow** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.





- Text
- Image
- Generic Template
- Carousel
- Carousel Single
- Audio
- Video
- File
- Facebook Media
- Ecommerce
- User Input Flow
- OTN
- Button
- Quick Reply
- Trigger
- New Postback

1 Drag-and-drop the User Input Flow component

2 Double click the component to add data

User Input Flow

Reply



3 Provide the data as needed here

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

5 Click OK button when done

Configure User-Input-Flow

User input flow
Select flow campaign

Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec

OK Cancel



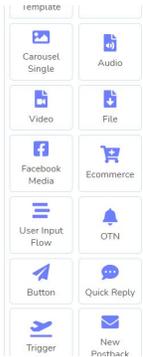


OTN Component

Introduction

The OTN component will allow you to reply with **One Time Notification**. It has **1 input** socket and **1 output** socket.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**

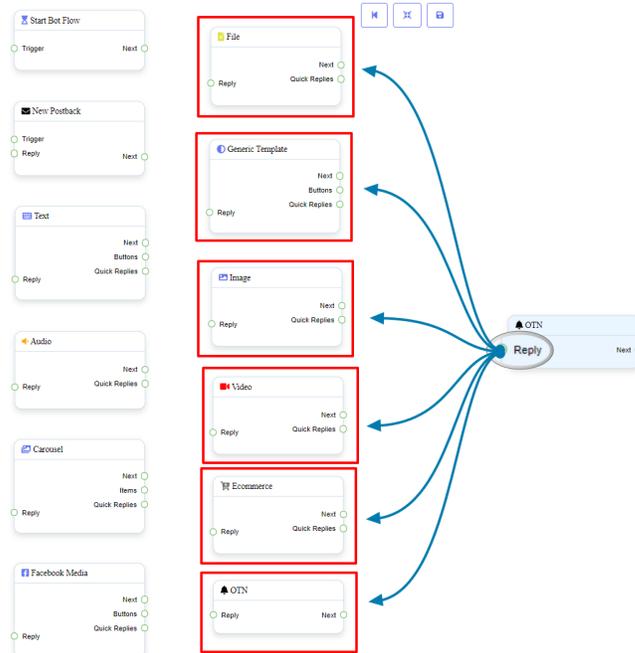
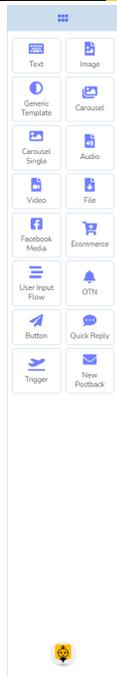


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

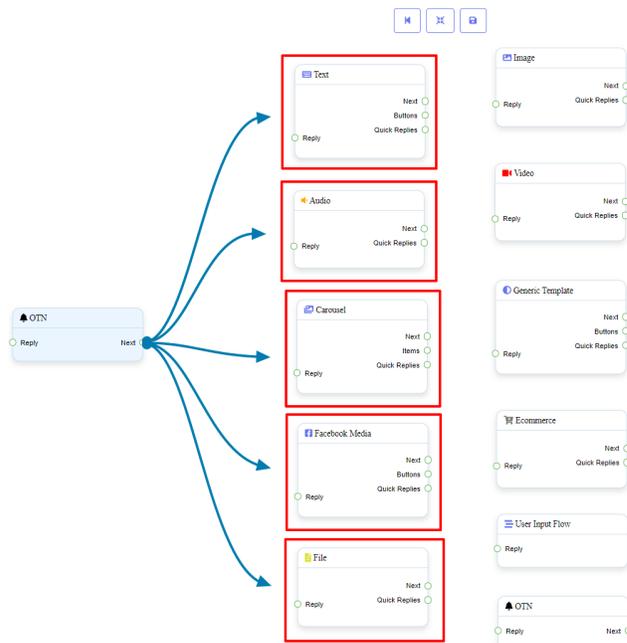
- **Start Bot Flow, New Postback, Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, Generic Template, and OTN.**

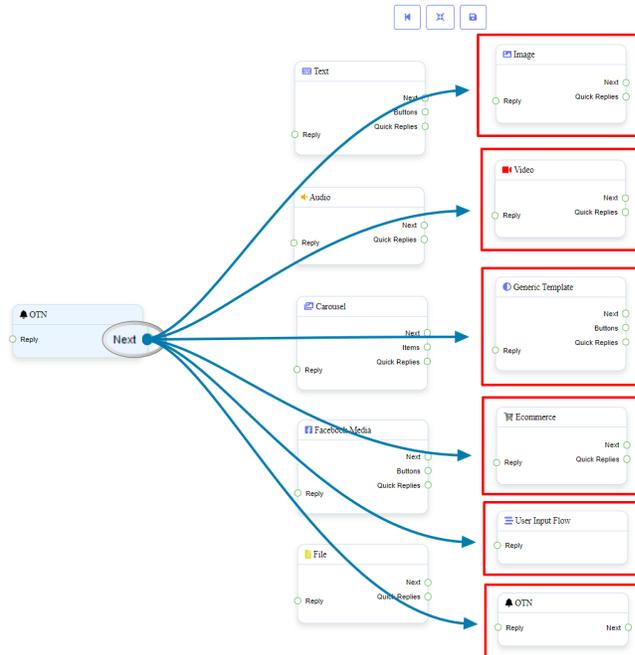
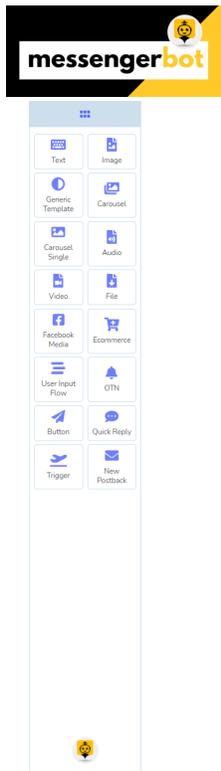




Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, User Input Flow, Generic Template, and OTN.**





How to create an OTN component

Let us see how we can create a reply with one-time-notification.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **OTN** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

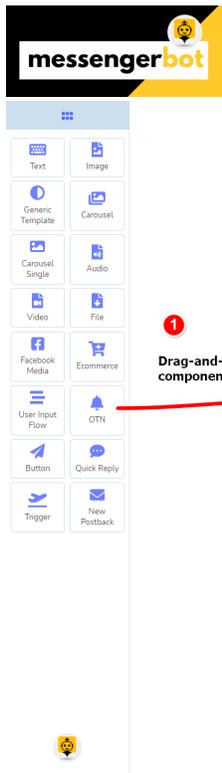
Adding Data

To add data to the **OTN** component, click twice on the body of the **OTN** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. **Fill in** the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.





1 Drag-and-drop OTN component

2 To add data, double click the component



3 Provide the data as needed here

4 On/Off typing display and set the seconds of Delay in reply

5 Click OK button when done

Configure One Time Notification

Title

OTN postback ID

Typing on display

Delay in reply - 0 sec



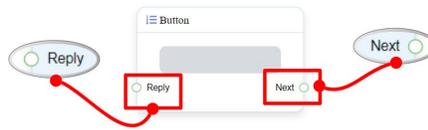
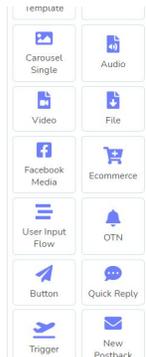


Button Component

Introduction

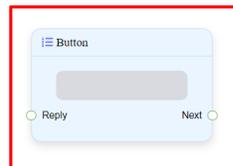
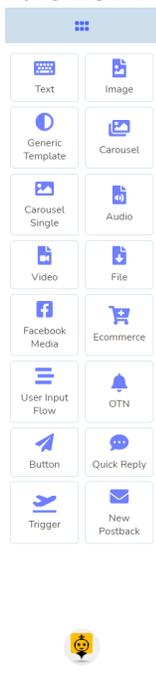
The Button component will allow you to reply with a button. It has only **1 input** and **1 output**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **Next**



Note: Button Type Clarification

If the button type is something other than **New Postback**, then you can NOT connect this **Button** component to other components via its **Next** output socket. Because it only allows the **New Postback** component to be connected. See the connections section.

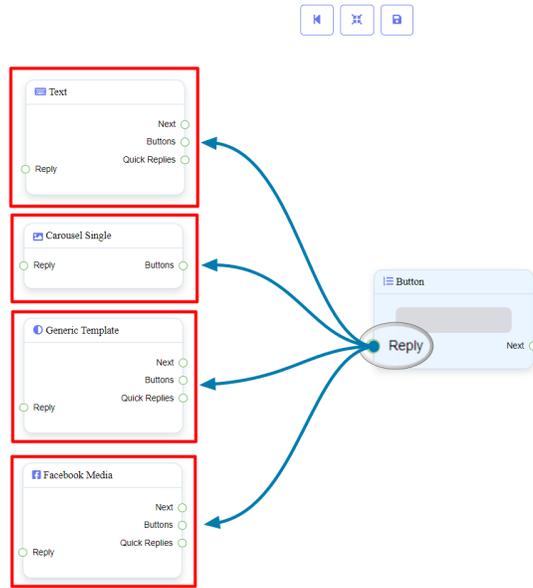
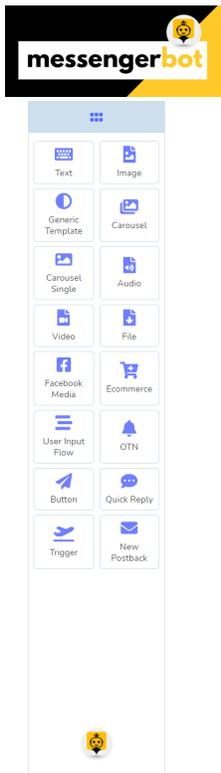


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

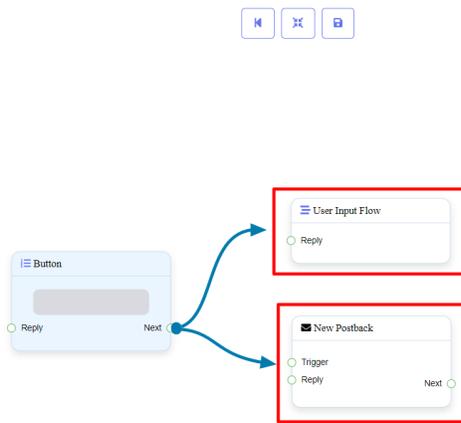
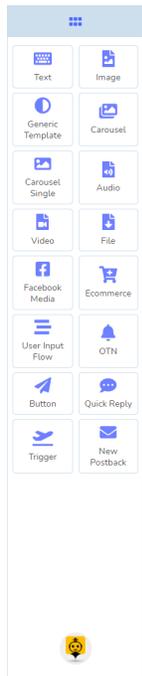
- **Text, Carousel Single, Generic Template, and Facebook Media Button**





Next may be connected to one of the following components:

- **User Input Flow and New Postback.**



How to create a Button component

Let us see how we can create a reply with the help of the button component.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Button** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

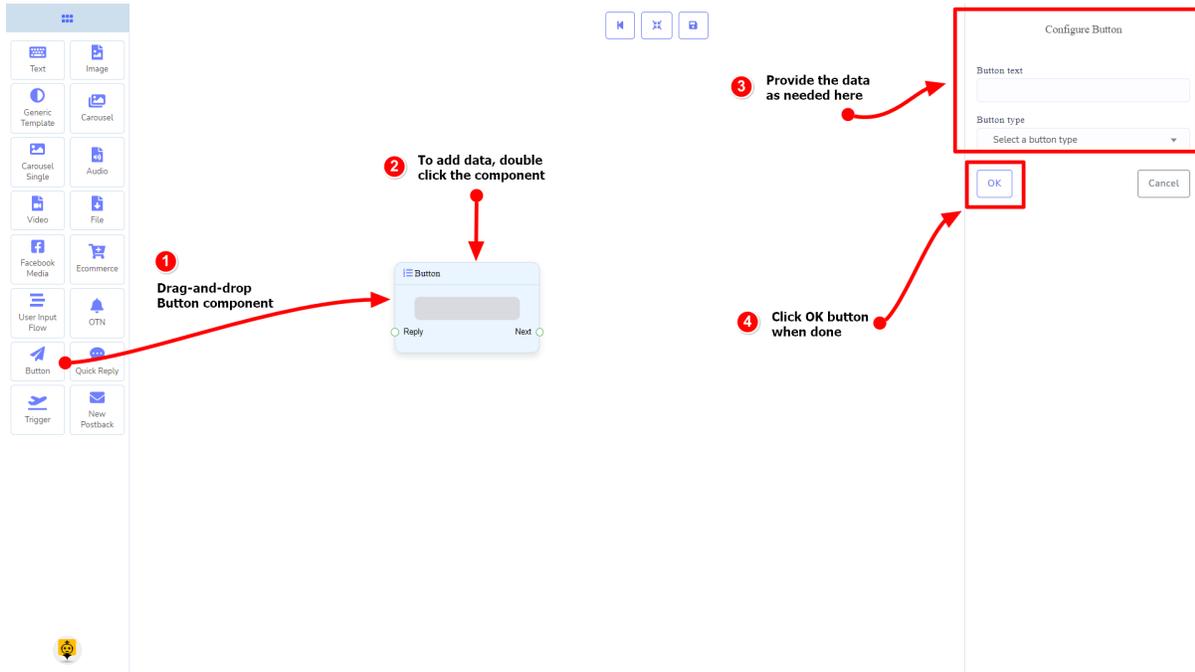


Adding Data

To add data to the **Button** component, click twice on the body of the **Button** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

Delay in Reply

If you want to show the typing state on the bot or delay in replying, then you can use those fields.



The image illustrates the process of adding data to a Button component in the Messenger Bot interface. It is divided into four numbered steps:

- 1 Drag-and-drop Button component:** A red arrow points from the 'Button' component in the left sidebar to the main workspace.
- 2 To add data, double click the component:** A red arrow points to the 'Button' component in the workspace.
- 3 Provide the data as needed here:** A red arrow points to the 'Configure Button' dialog box, which contains fields for 'Button text' and 'Button type' (with a dropdown menu).
- 4 Click OK button when done:** A red arrow points to the 'OK' button in the dialog box.



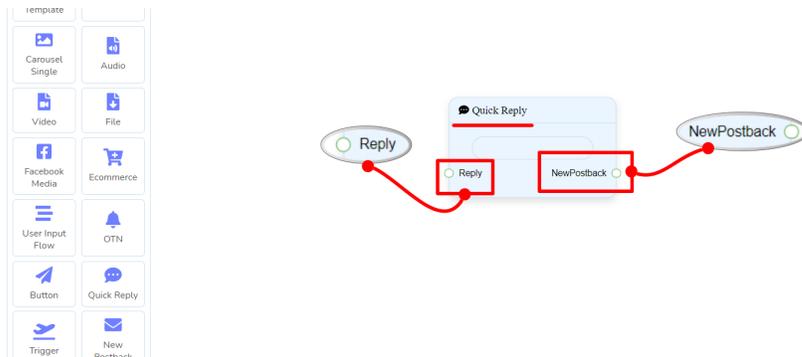


Quick Reply Component

Introduction

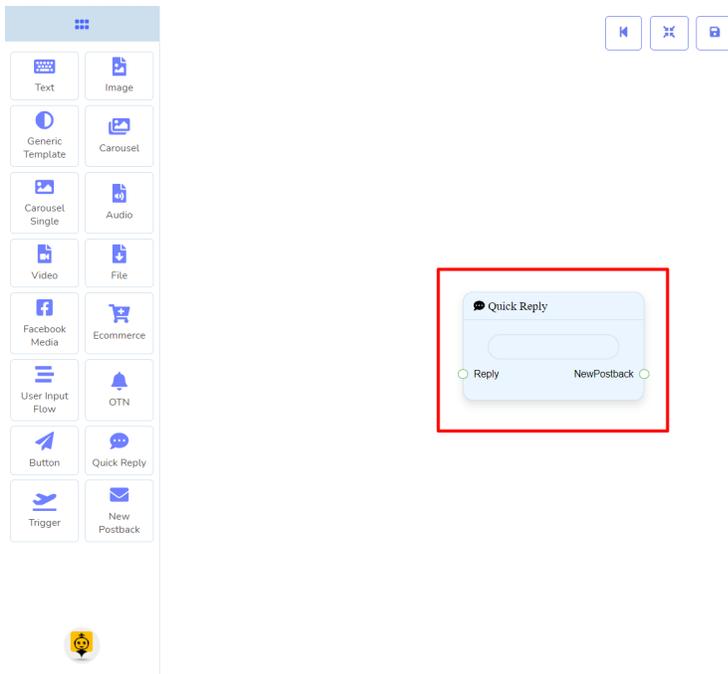
The Quick Reply component will allow you to reply quickly creating a **New Postback**, using an existing **Postback**, using your Facebook page's **Phone** number or **Email** address. It has only **1 input socket** and **1 output socket**.

- Input: **Reply**
- Output: **NewPostback**



Note: Quick Reply Type Clarification

If your quick-reply type is something other than **New Postback**, then you can NOT connect this **Quick Reply** component to other components via its **New Postback** output socket. Because it only allows the **New Postback** component to be connected. See the connections section.

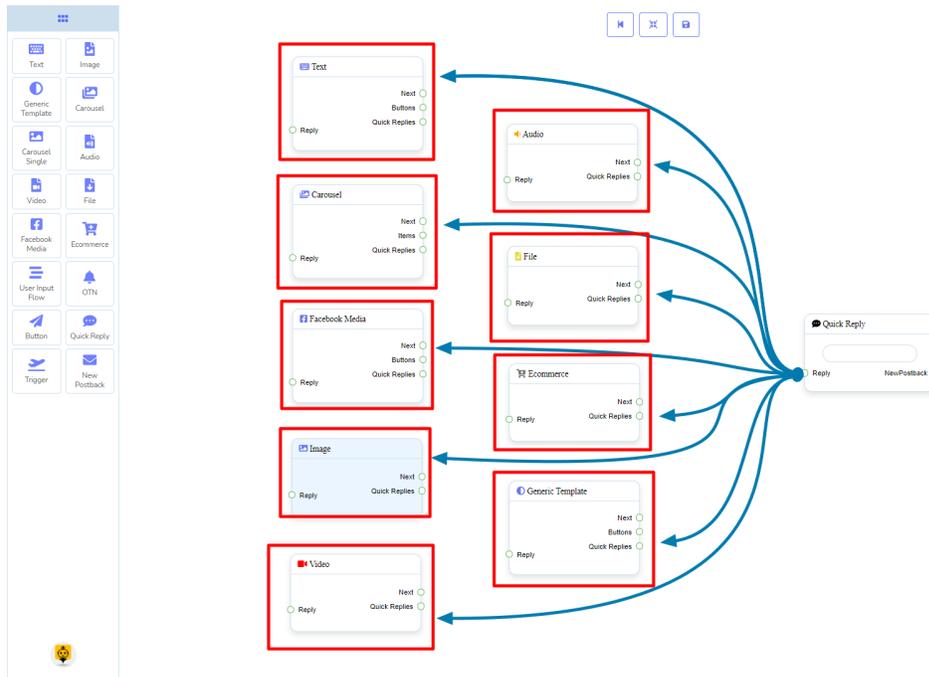


Connections

The **Reply** may get connection from one of the following components:

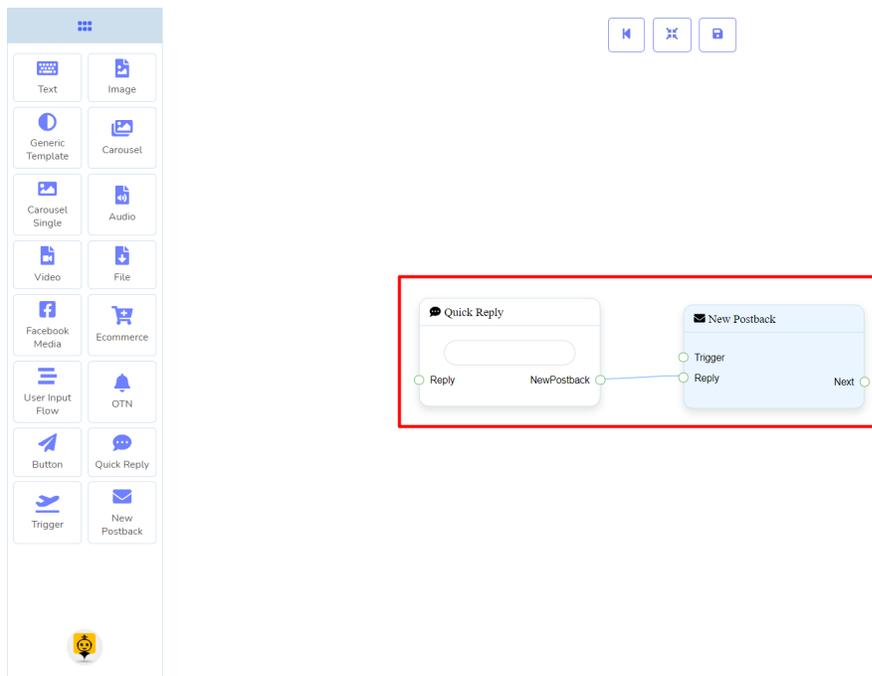


- **Text, Carousel, Facebook Media Button, Image, Video, Audio, File, Ecommerce, and Generic Template,**



Next may be connected to the following components:

- **New Postback.**





How to create a Quick Reply component
Let us see how we can create a quick reply.

Dragging and Dropping

From the dock menu, **drag** the **Quick Reply** component and **drop** it on the editor at any place.

Adding Data

To add data to the **Quick Reply** component, click twice on the body of the **Quick Reply** component. It will open a sidebar on your right. Fill in the fields that you need.

The image shows a step-by-step guide for adding data to a Quick Reply component in the Messenger Bot editor. It consists of four numbered steps:

- 1 Drag-and-drop Button component**: An arrow points from the 'Quick Reply' component in the dock menu to a 'Button' component on the editor canvas.
- 2 To add data, double click the component**: An arrow points to the 'Button' component on the canvas.
- 3 Provide the data as needed here**: An arrow points to the 'Configure Button' sidebar, which contains a 'Button text' input field and a 'Button type' dropdown menu.
- 4 Click OK button when done**: An arrow points to the 'OK' button in the sidebar.

The 'Configure Button' sidebar is highlighted with a red box and contains the following fields:

- Button text:
- Button type:
- OK button
- Cancel button



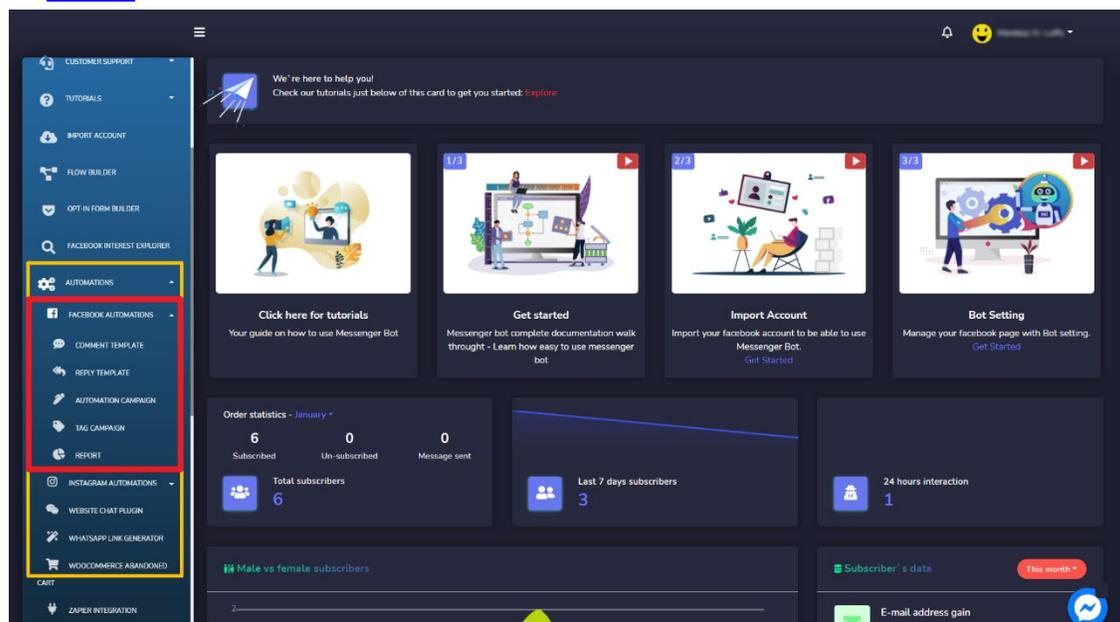


Comment Automation (Automations)

Comment Automation allows a user to create, edit and delete comment and reply templates. This view gives full control of comment automation and tagging. It gives a summarized report of existing campaigns and templates. For this tutorial, we will use Facebook Automations as a demo.

To view this section, navigate to the navigation menu located at the left under the Automations section. Tab on Facebook Automations. The following options will appear in the sub-menu:

- [Comment Template](#)
- [Reply Template](#)
- [Automation Campaign](#)
- [Tag Campaign](#)
- [Report](#)



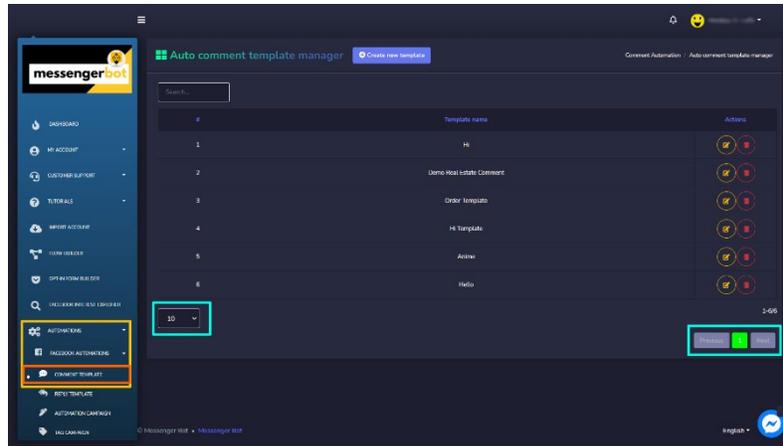
A brief description of these views is shared in their relevant sections, below.

Comment Template

First, Comment Template. To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Comment Template** as shown.

The **Auto comment template manager** view consists of multiple templates. You can select the number of templates to be viewed per page. You can also search for a particular template by using the search bar.

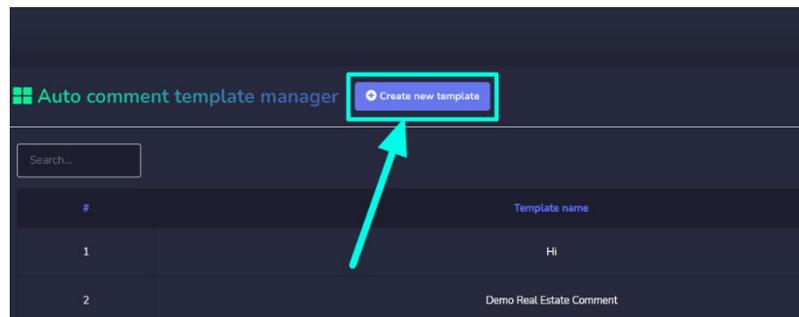




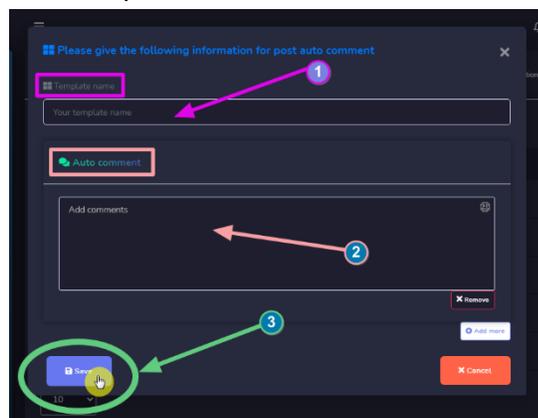
Create new template

To create a new template, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create a new template** option located at the top of the Auto comment template manager view.



- 2) Provide the information for post auto comment, that includes:
 - Template name: Name of your template
 - Auto comment: The automatic reply to a comment.
- 3) Select **Save** to create a new template.

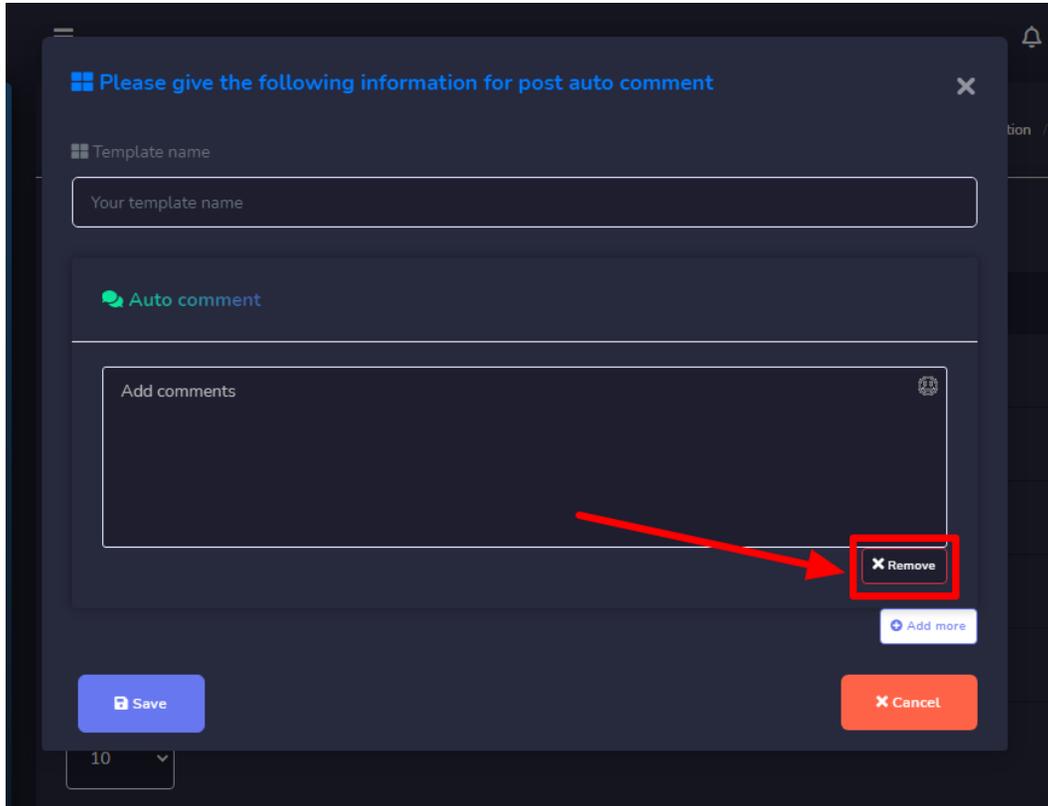




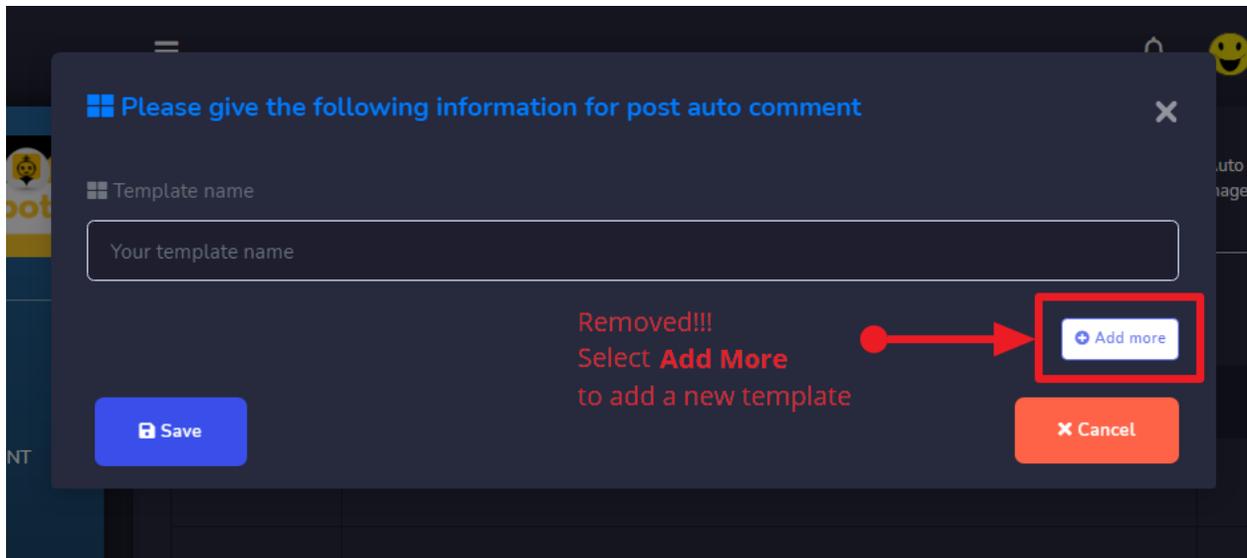
Comment Template Options

You can perform the following actions on the Auto comment template manager screen:

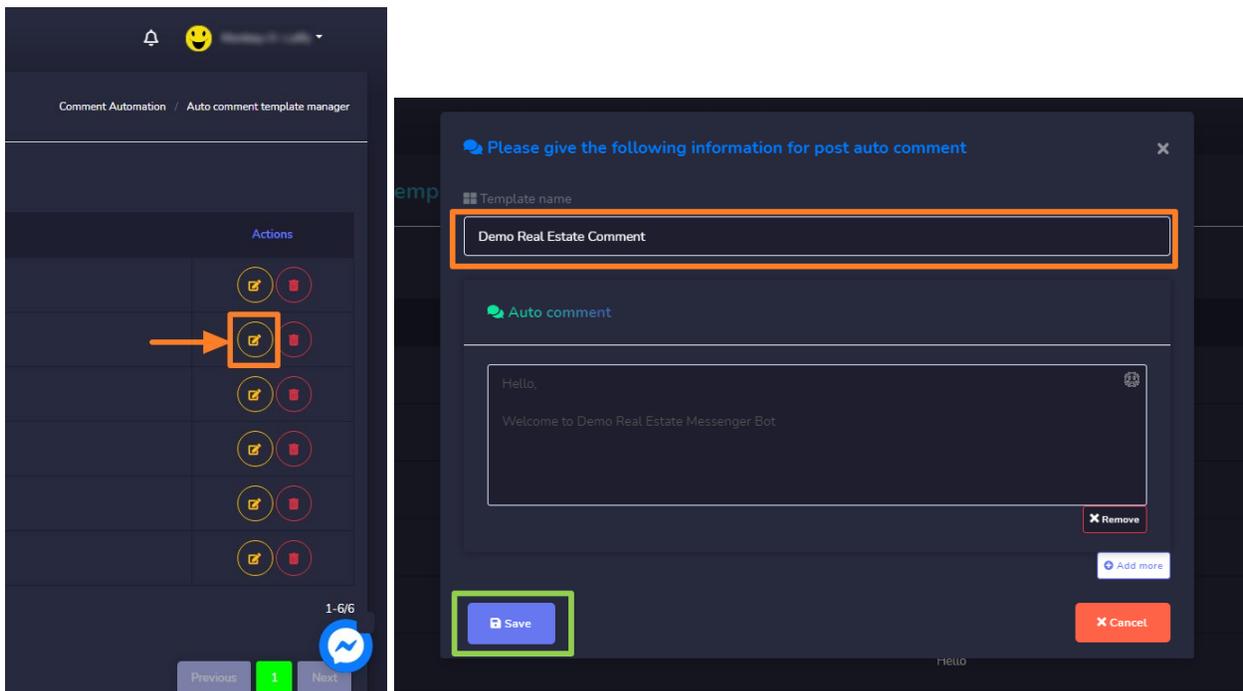
Remove the comment: You can remove the comment from the information providing screen by selecting  button at the bottom.



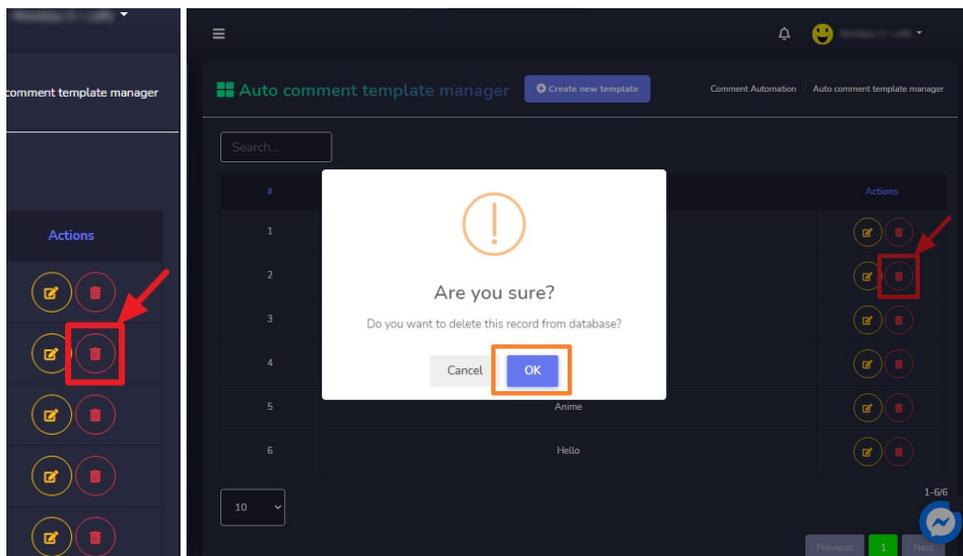
Now it has been removed, you can now select **Add more** to add a new template.



Edit the template: You can edit the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be edited. Perform changes you wanted to do here, then Save when done.



Delete the template: You can delete the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be deleted.

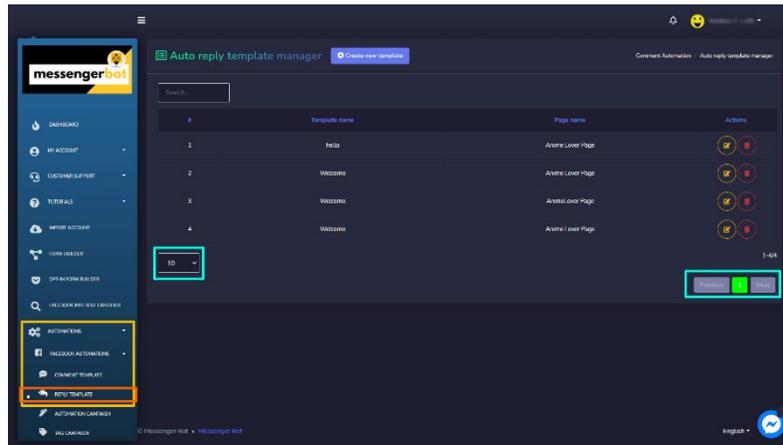




Reply Template

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Reply Template**.

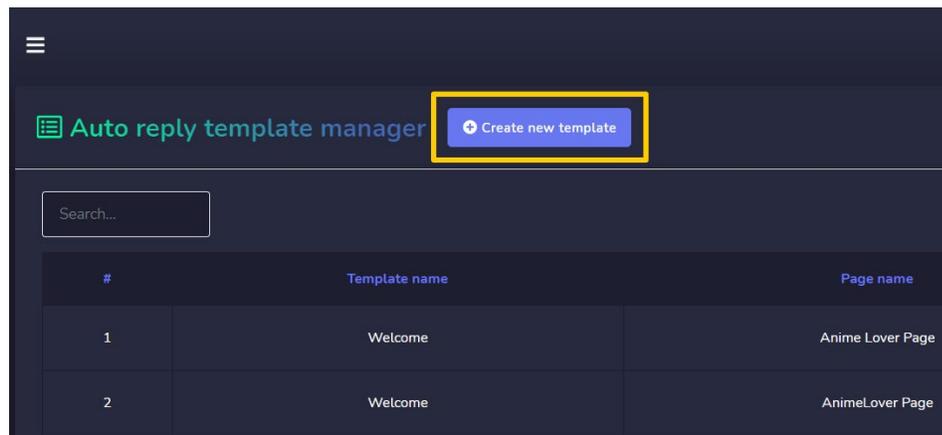
The **Auto reply template manager** view consists of multiple reply templates. You can select the number of templates to be viewed per page. You can also search for a template using the search bar.



Create new template

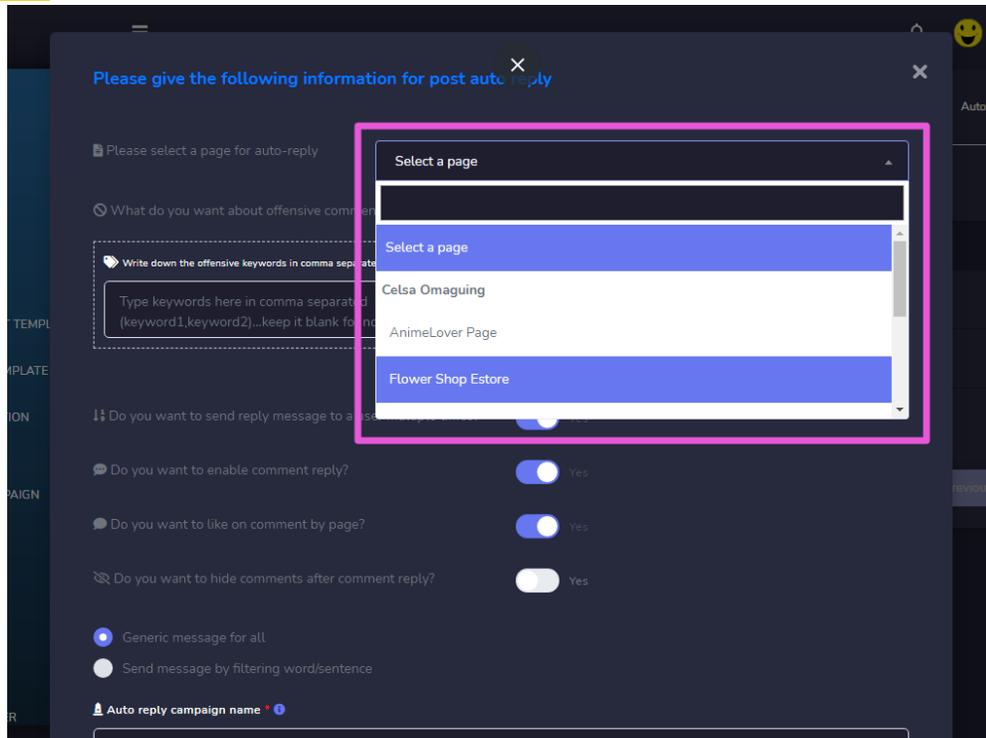
To create a new template, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create a new template** option located at the top of Auto reply template manager view.

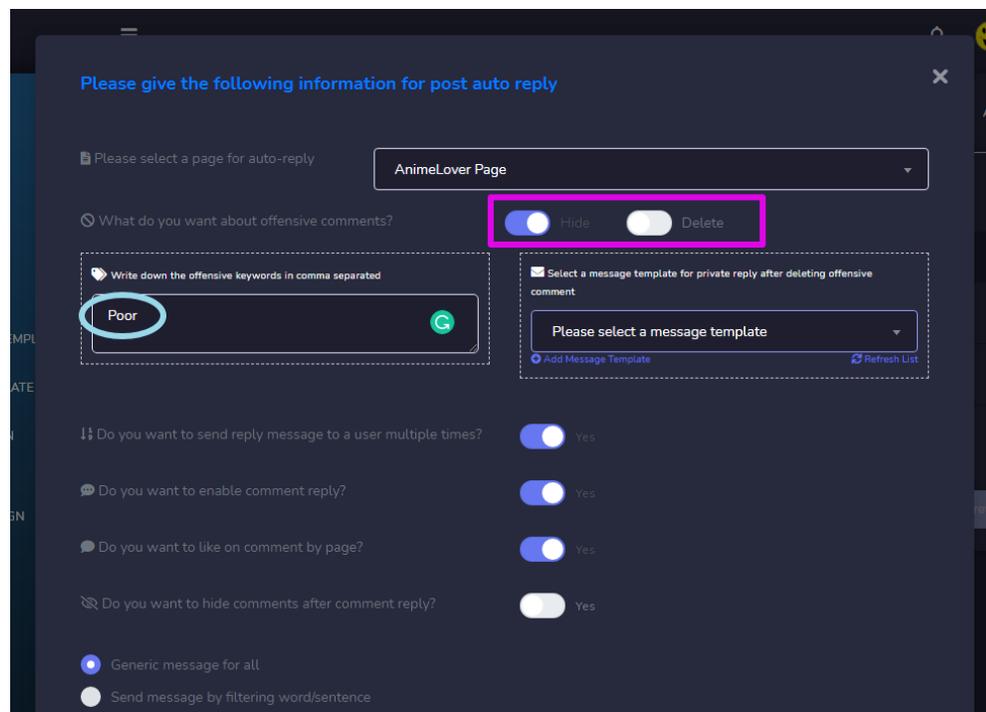


- 2) Select the page for which you want to apply auto-reply.

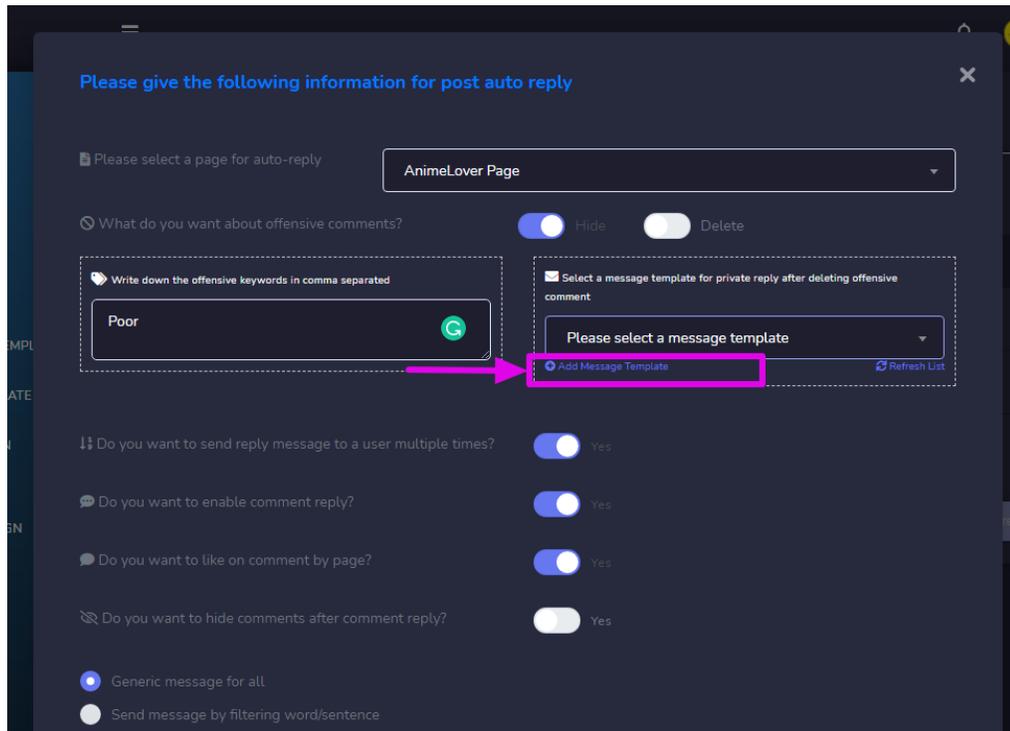




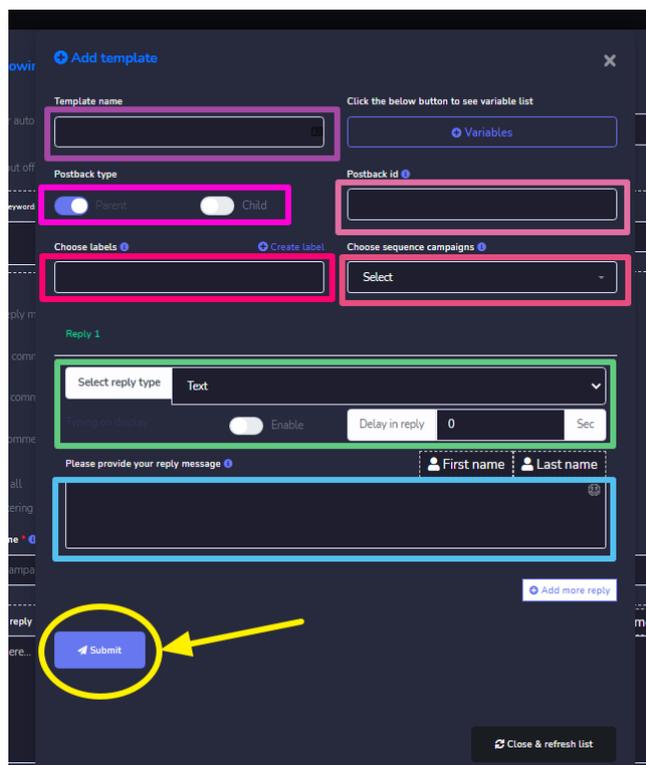
3) Add the offensive remarks in inverted commas and select the action corresponding to those remarks.



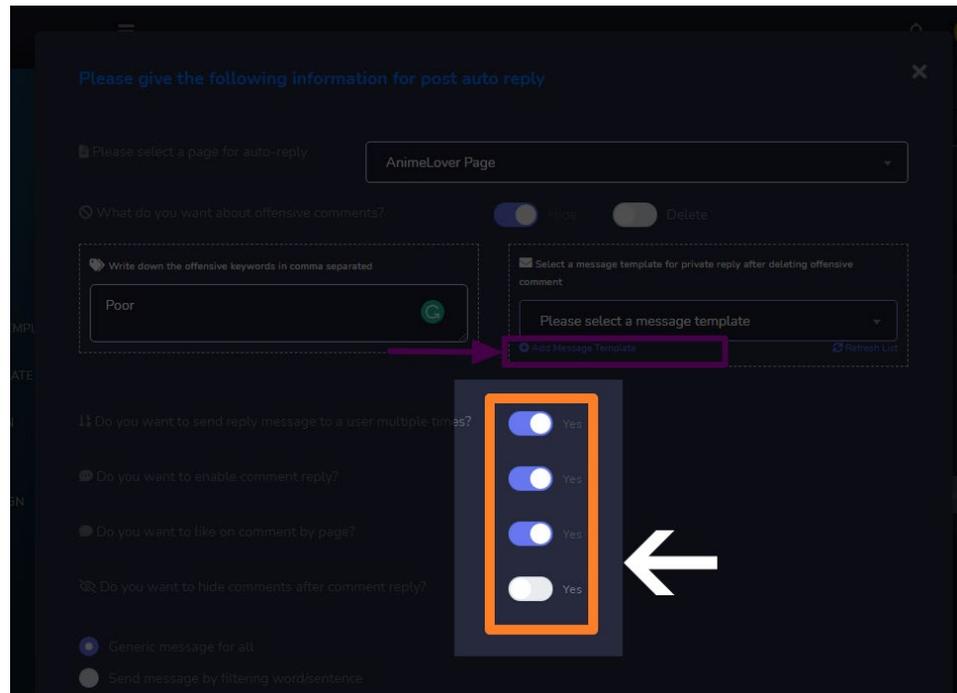
- 4) Select a message template you want to reply to the person with. Or you can also add a template by selecting "Add Message Template".



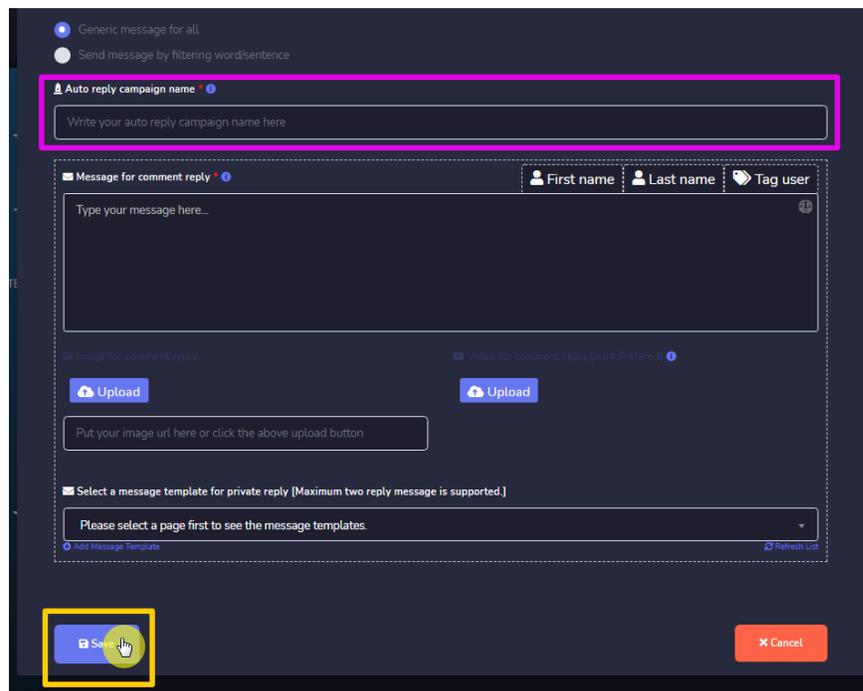
Fill up everything needed for your template, then select "Submit".



5) Select all options based on your choice by selecting the toggle button to either Yes/No.



6) Provide a name for your auto-reply campaign, then select **Save**.

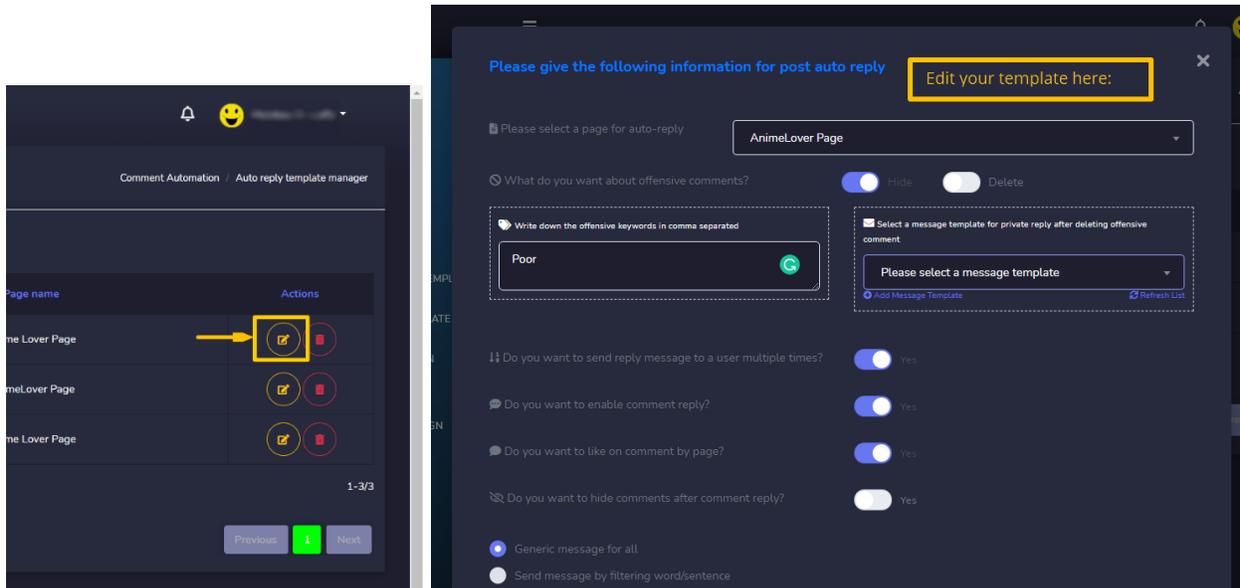




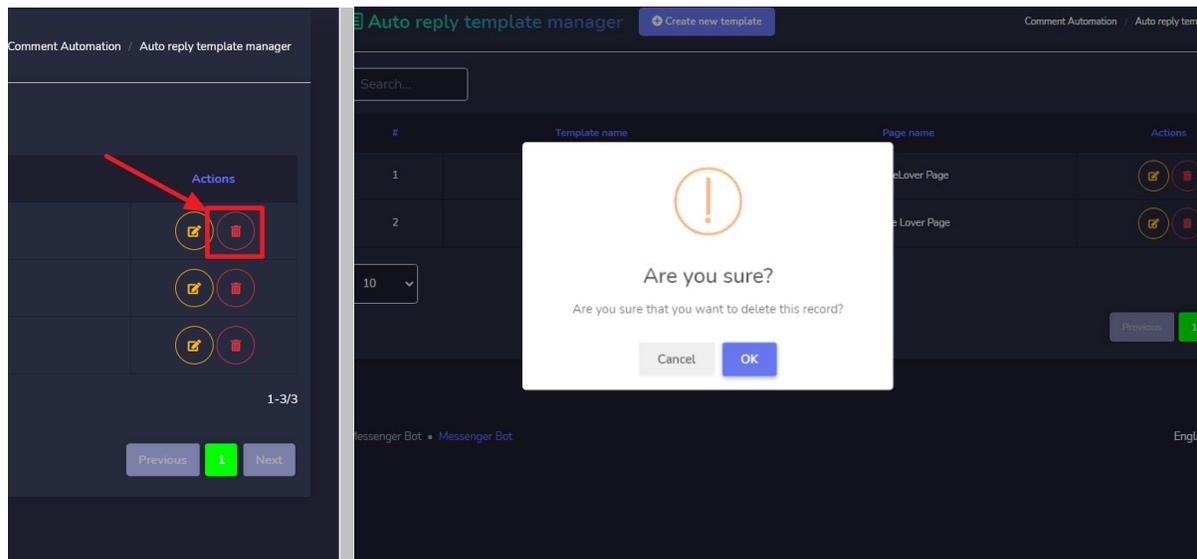
Reply Template Options

You can perform following actions on Auto reply template manager screen:

Edit the template: You can edit the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be edited.



Delete the template: You can delete the template by selecting the  icon against the template to be deleted.



Automation Campaign

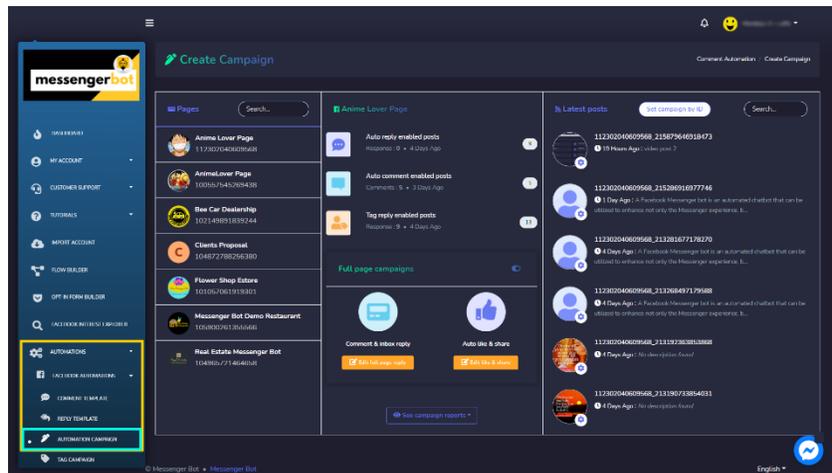
To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Automation Campaign**.





The **Create Campaign** view consists of multiple options. This view is divided into two sections. The left side allows user to run **Full page campaigns**. The right side is used for **setting the campaigns by ID**.

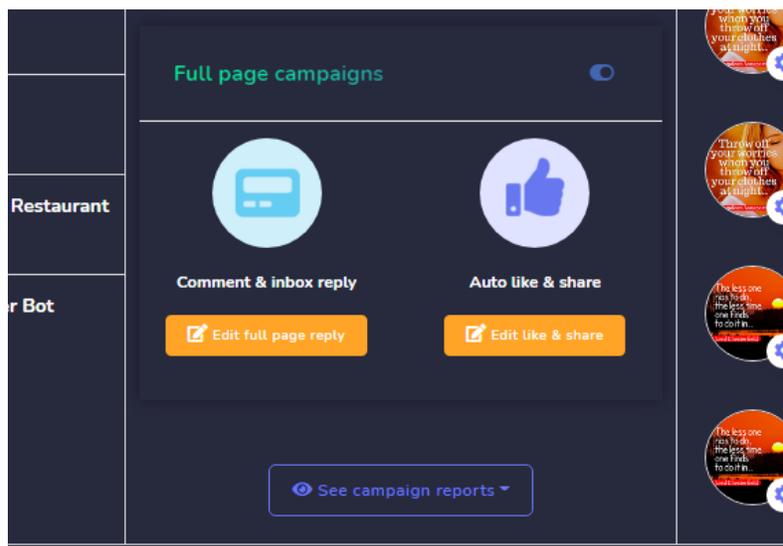
A summarized view of numbers of how many total **Auto comments**, **Auto replies** and **Auto campaigns** created can be found in the left section. You can create different campaigns, enable auto replies and comments on several posts from this view.



Full page campaigns

Campaigns can be set for Facebook pages. This helps a user to run an overall campaign for their page. The settings apply throughout the Facebook page and for all posts. To set a full page campaign, a user has two methods:

- Comment & inbox reply
- Auto like & share

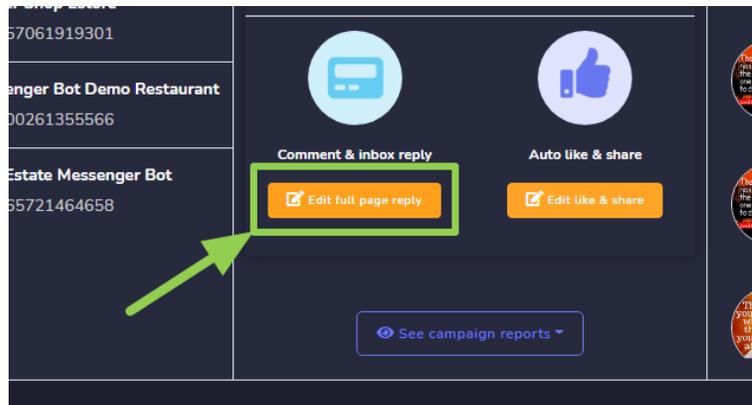




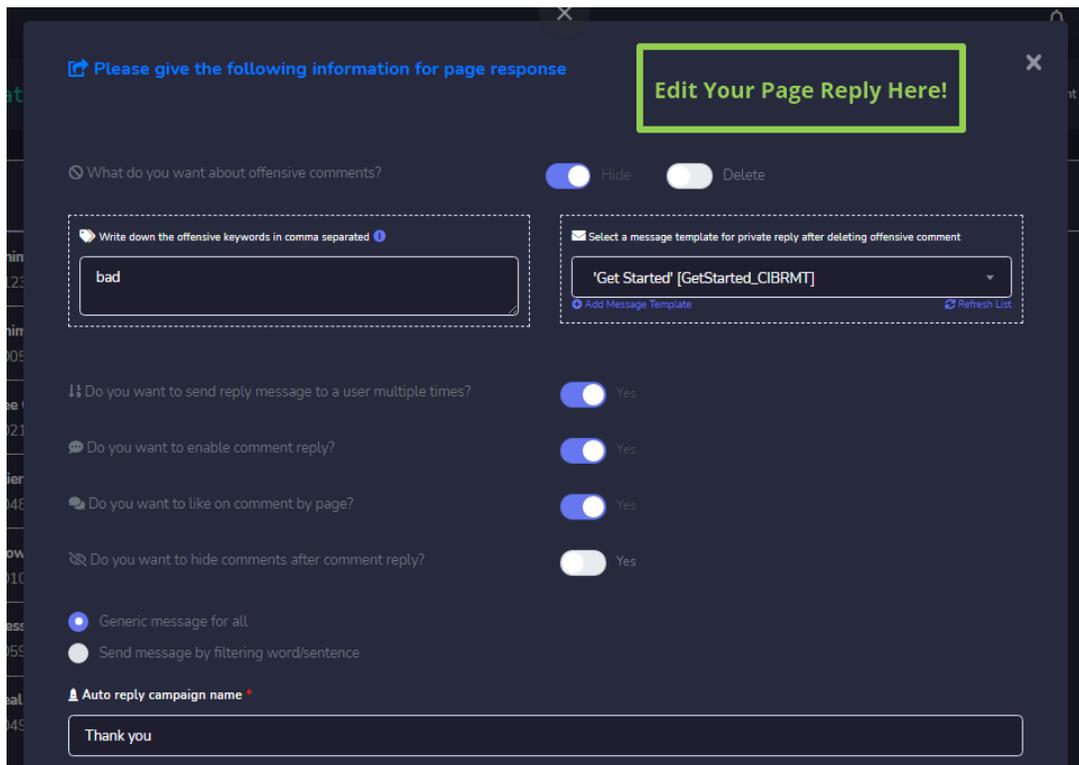
Comment & inbox reply

To comment & give inbox reply, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **Edit Full page reply** option from **Full page campaigns** section.

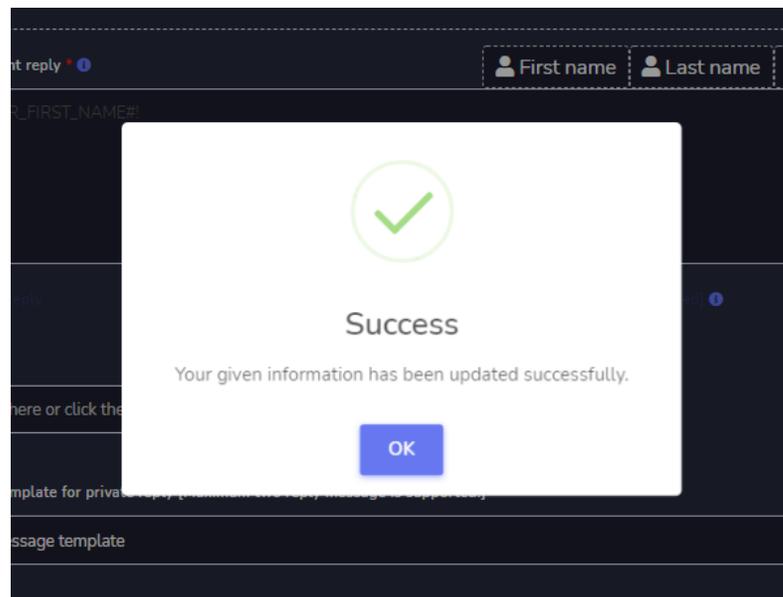
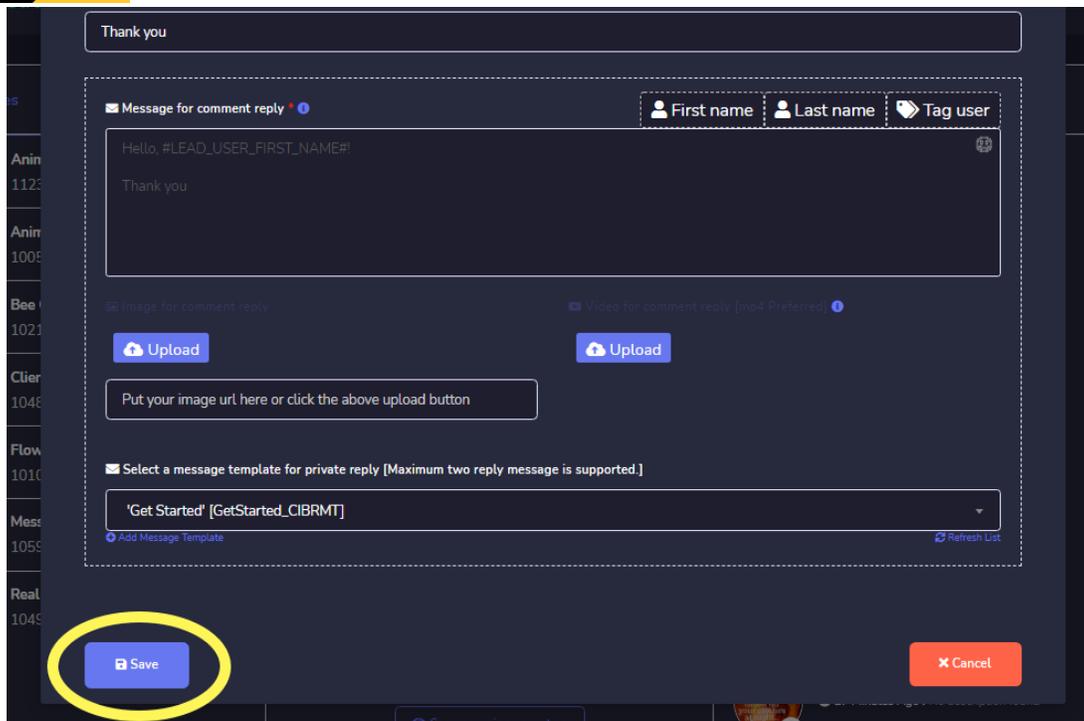


- 2) Now edit your information for **page response**, and make updates.



- 3) Select **Save**, your information will be updated.



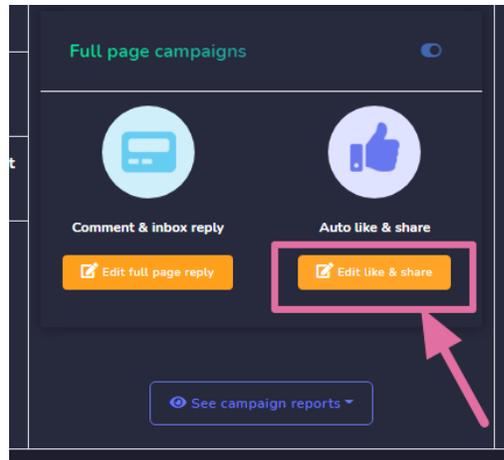


Auto like & share

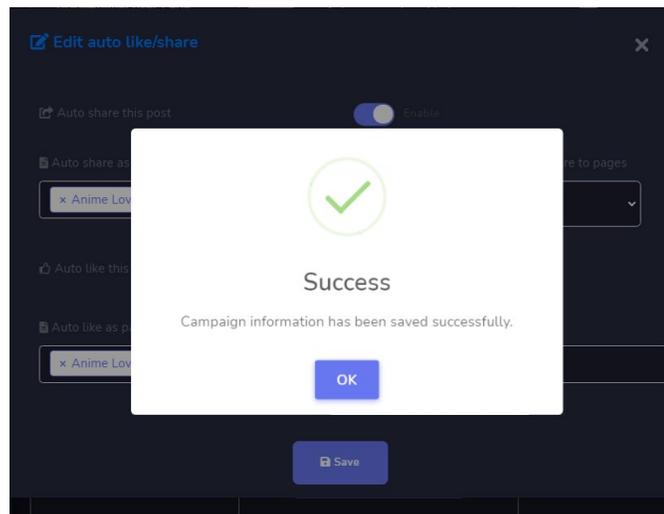
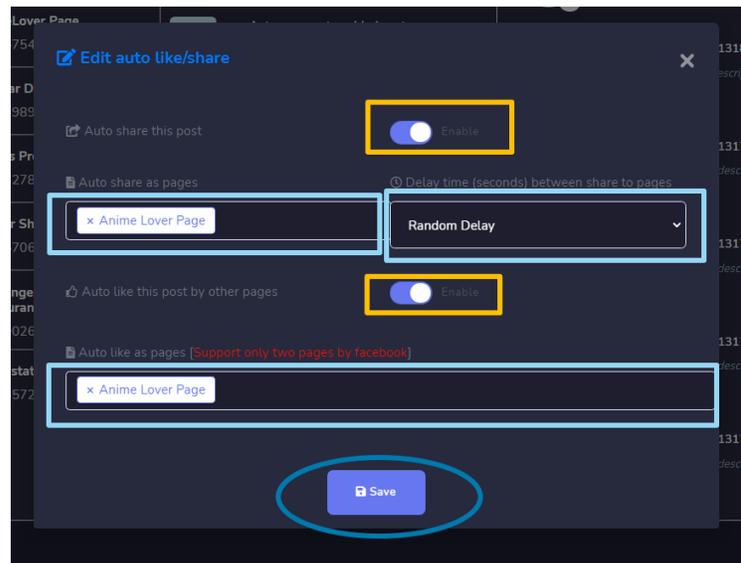
To auto like & share the page, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **Edit like & share** option from **Full page campaigns** section.





- 2) Now edit the fields available on the **Auto like and share** screen, and make updates.
- 3) Select **Save**, your information will be updated.



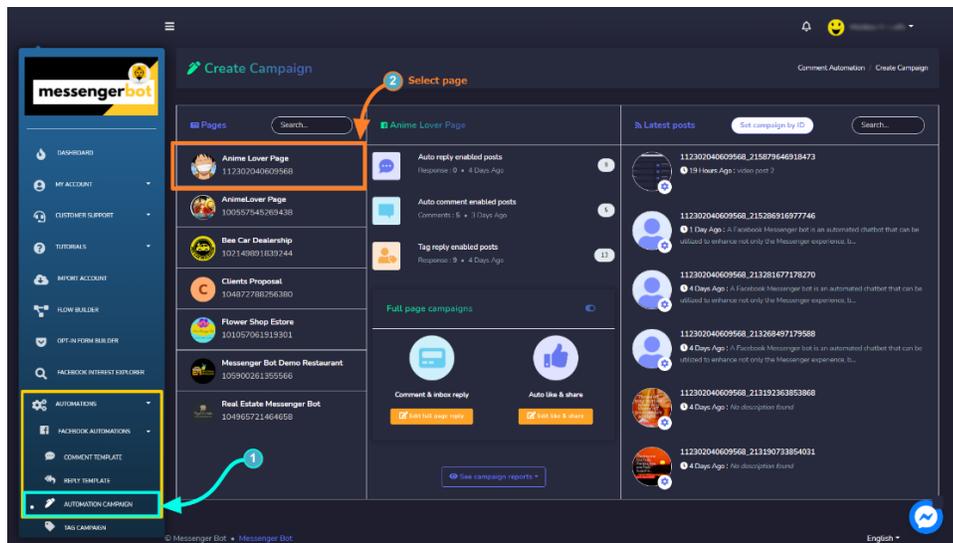
Note

- Auto like as page option, supports only two pages at a time.

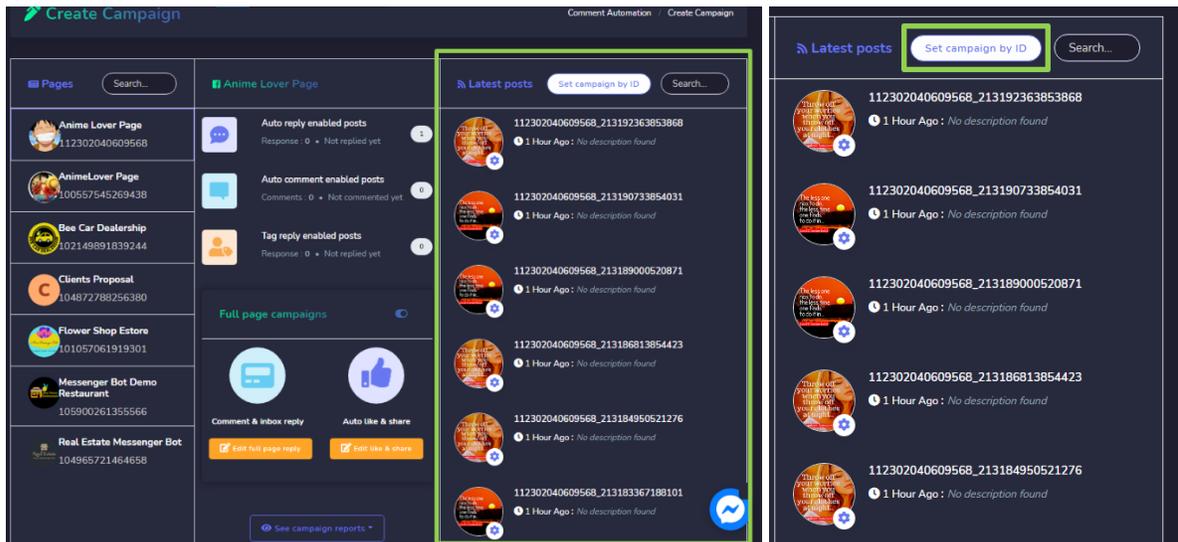
Set campaign by ID

You can also set a campaign for a particular post by using its ID. Just follow the steps given below:

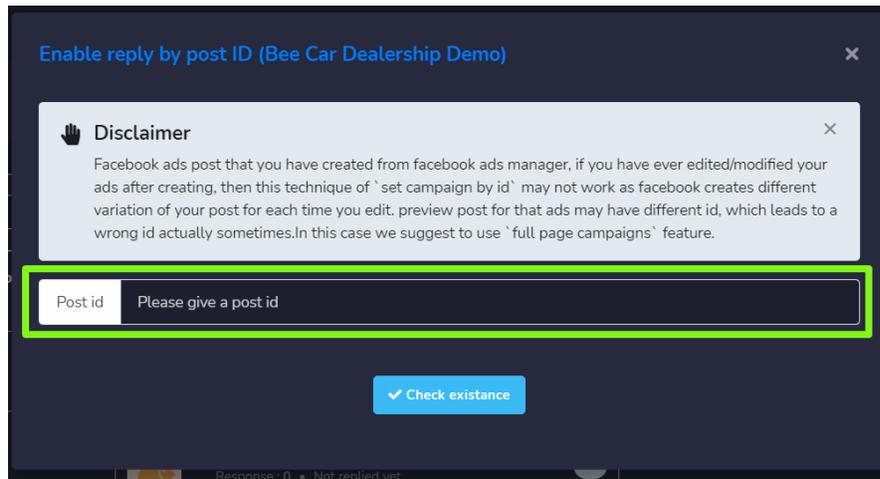
- 1) Select the Facebook page for which you want to create this campaign.



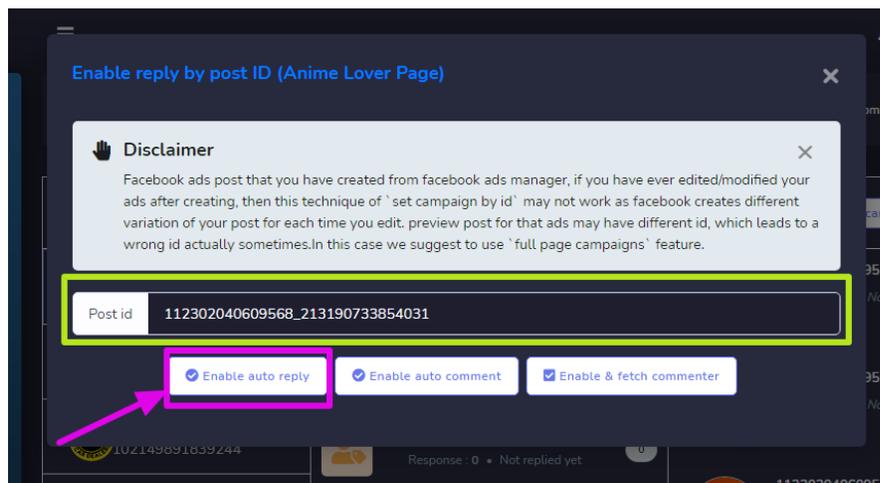
- 2) Select the **Set campaign by ID** option available on the right section of the screen.



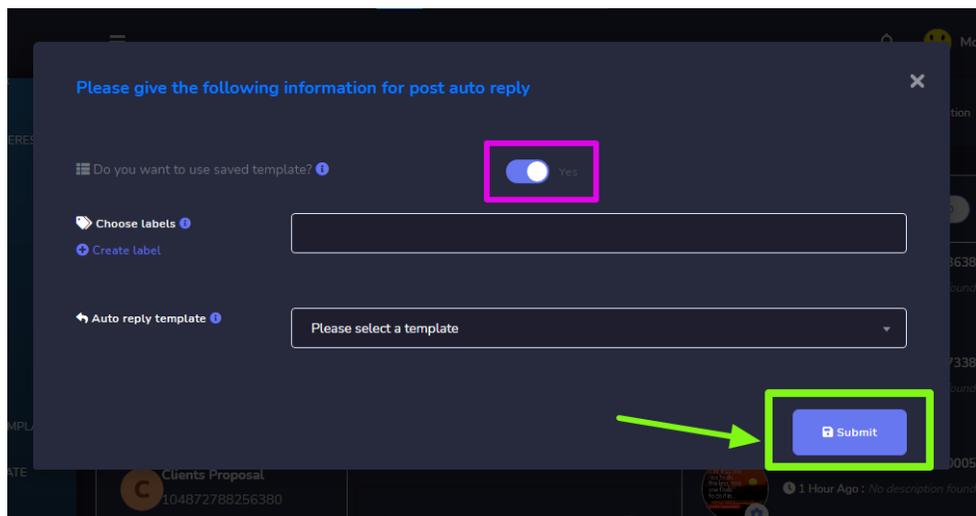
3) Enter the **Post ID** of the post for which you want to set the campaign.



4) Enable the options you want to be available for your campaign.

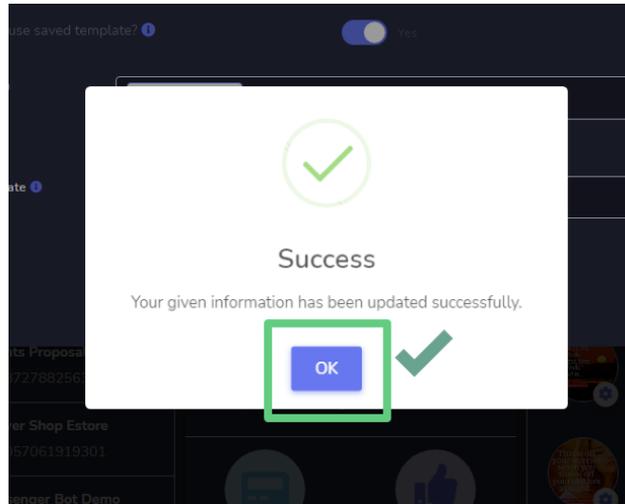


5) Provide further information based on your selection from Step 4, then select **Submit**.



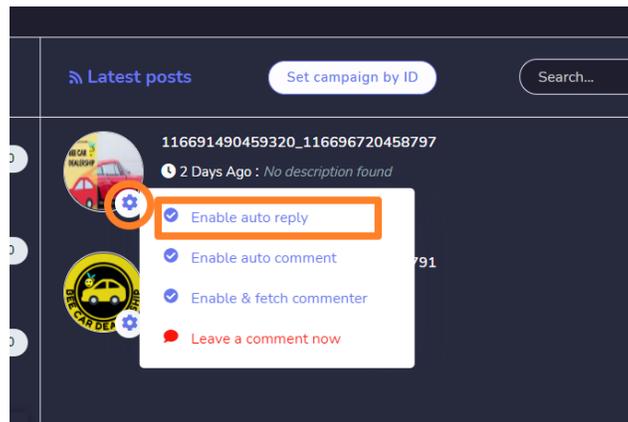


A new campaign will be created.



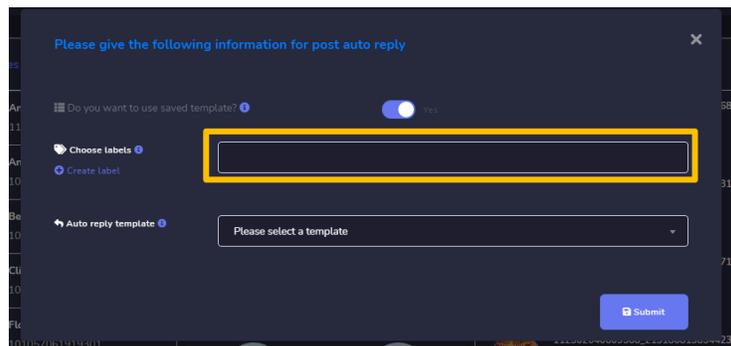
On selecting the  icon, users can perform the following actions:

- **Enable auto reply:** You can enable the auto comment feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable auto reply** option.



Provide the following information for **post auto reply**:

- Choose the labels you created from [Labels](#) section.



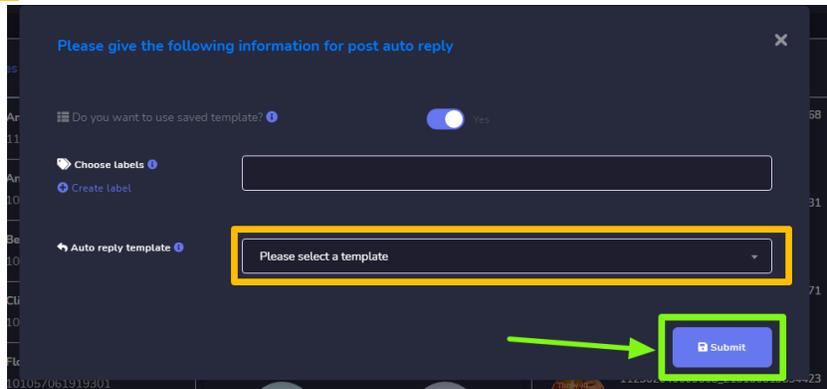


- Select the template you want to choose.

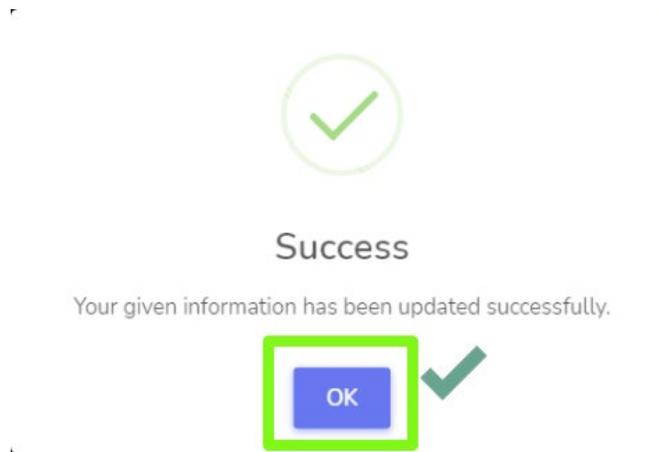
If you want to choose an already created one, turn the slider button **YES**.

- Select the auto reply template from the dropdown menu.
- Select **Submit**.

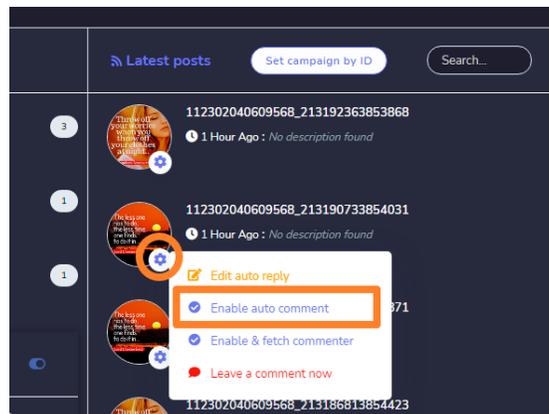




Your auto reply will be enabled.



- **Enable auto comment:** You can enable the auto comment feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable auto comment** option.



Provide the following information for **post auto comment**:

- Auto comment campaign name



Please give the following information for post auto comment

Auto comment campaign name *

Write your campaign name here

Auto comment template *

Please select a template

Schedule type *

One time Periodic

- Select an Auto comment template

Please give the following information for post auto comment

Auto comment campaign name *

Test reply

Auto comment template *

Hello

Please select a template

Hello

Anime

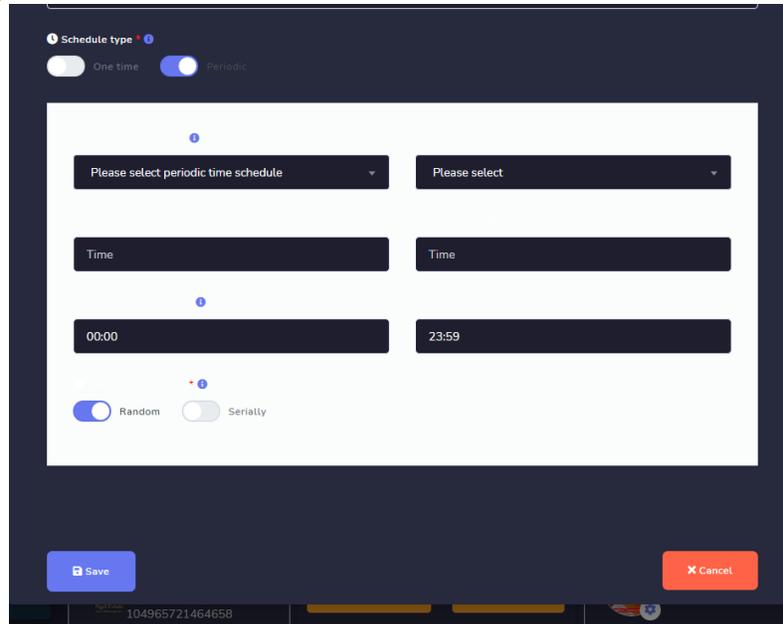
Hi Template

Save

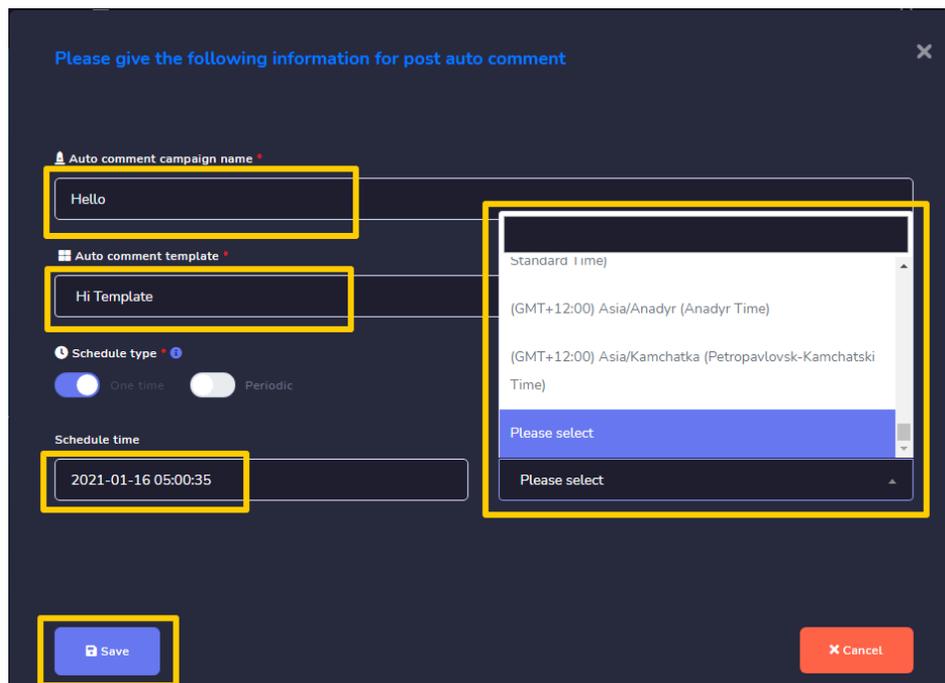
Cancel

- Schedule a type for your post auto comment.



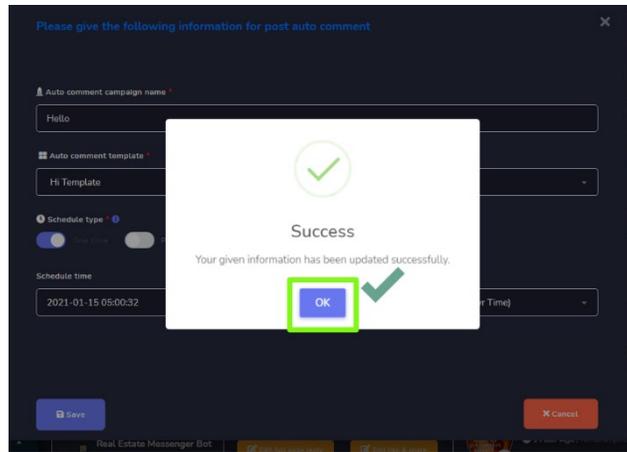


- Schedule a time for the post
- Select your time zone based on your location.
- Click **Save**.

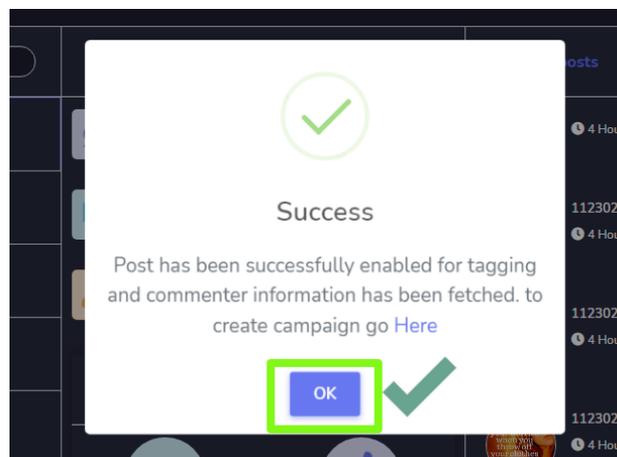
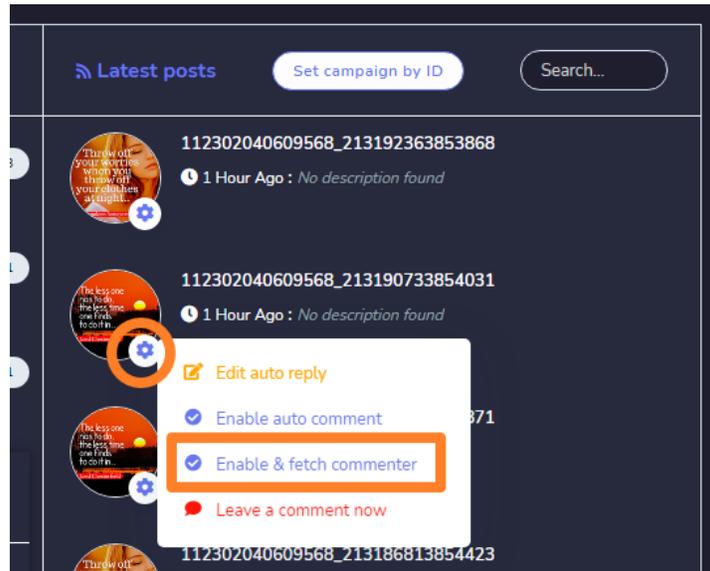


Your auto comment will be enabled.



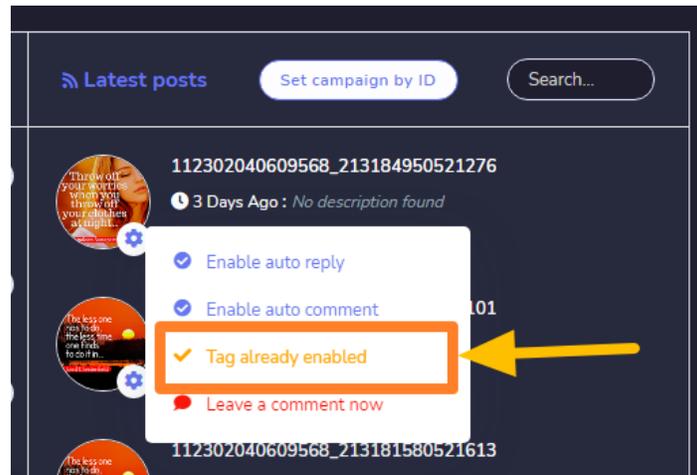


- **Enable and fetch commenter:** You can enable the auto tag feature by selecting  icon. A dropdown menu will appear, now select the **Enable and fetch commenter** option.



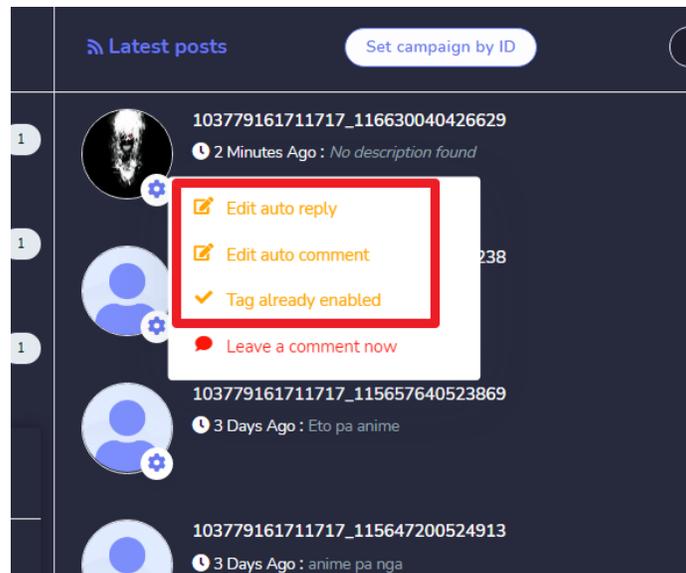


Your auto tag feature will be enabled.



Automation campaign output

You can see the comment of the user is liked, replied and the message is redirected to the inbox. The end user is notified as well about the reply from the admin side. The admin's comment and reply in this demo are automated.





← Hello World - Anime Lover Second | Facebook

A Anime Lover Second
3 mins · 🌐

Hello World

Like Comment Share

Boost Post

Comment as Anime Lover Second... Post

Arvin
Good
1 min Like Reply More

Anime Lover Se... replied · 1 reply

Arvin + 1

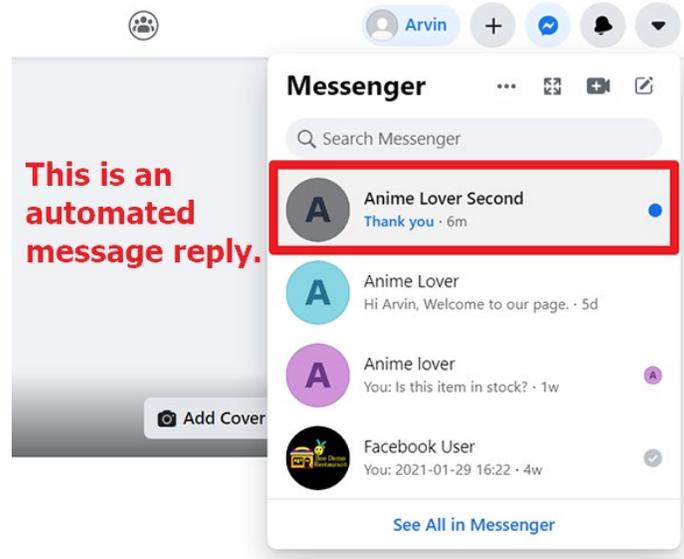
Notifications

New

- Anime Lover Second likes your comment: "Good".
a few seconds ago
- Anime Lover Second replied to your comment on their post.
5 minutes ago
- Anime Lover has an unread message from [redacted].
Get back to him soon.
5 days ago
- Anime Lover Second also commented on their post.
3 days ago

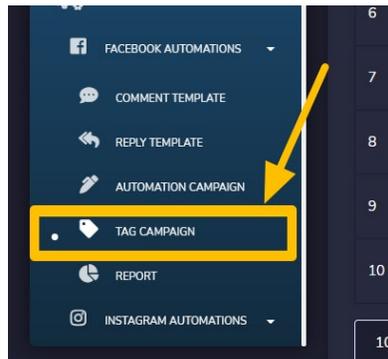
This is an automated comment reply.





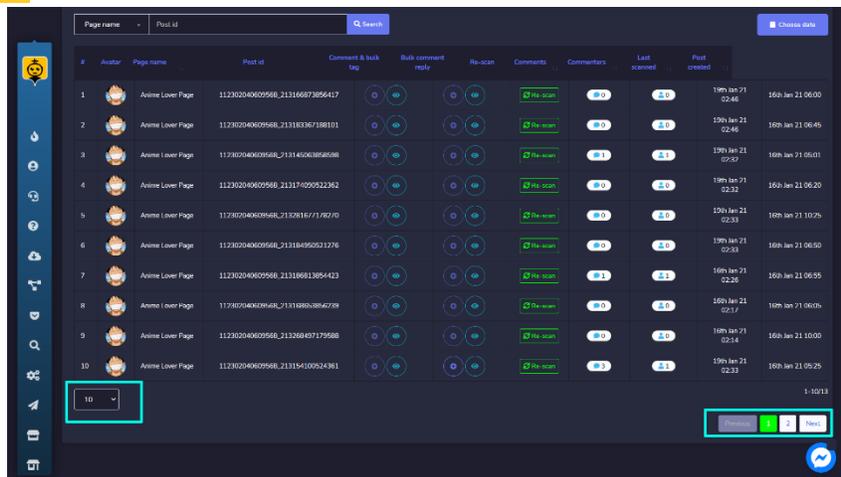
Tag campaign

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located at the left side and select **Tag campaign**.

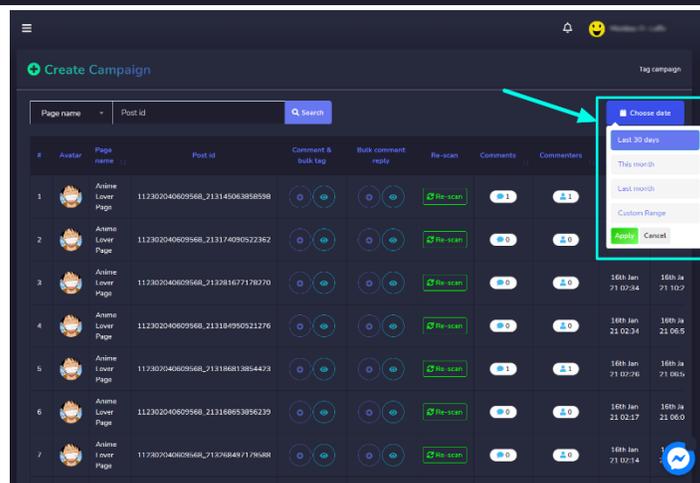


The **Create campaign** view consists of a campaign list. You can select the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can also choose the date range for which you want to view the list. In order to access the hidden fields of the table, move the bottom slider towards the right side. You can also search for a particular campaign using the Post ID in the search bar.





#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last viewed	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113166873956417						19th Jan '21 02:46	16th Jan 21 06:00
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113183367198101						19th Jan '21 02:46	16th Jan 21 06:45
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113142063856058						19th Jan '21 02:52	16th Jan 21 05:01
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211317405522362						19th Jan '21 02:32	16th Jan 21 06:20
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113291817178070						19th Jan '21 02:33	16th Jan 21 10:29
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318496521276						19th Jan '21 02:33	16th Jan 21 06:50
7		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113196813954423						16th Jan '21 02:26	16th Jan 21 06:55
8		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318883896279						16th Jan '21 02:17	16th Jan 21 06:06
9		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211326887179568						16th Jan '21 02:24	16th Jan 21 10:00
10		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113154100524361						19th Jan '21 02:25	16th Jan 21 05:25



#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last viewed	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113145063856598						16th Jan 21 02:54	16th Ja 21 10:2
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113174090522362						16th Jan 21 02:34	16th Ja 21 06:5
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113281677178270						16th Jan 21 02:26	16th Ja 21 06:5
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318490521276						16th Jan 21 02:27	16th Ja 21 06:0
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_2113186813954423						16th Jan 21 02:14	
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211318683896229							
7		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211326887179568							

Create Campaigns

Users can perform following actions from create campaign screen:

- **Create campaign for comment & bulk tag:** For the posts with multiple comments, you can bulk tag the subscribers. Just follow the steps given below:
 - Select the  icon against the ID for which the campaign is to be created.



☰ Create Campaign Tag campaign

Page name Post id

#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Comme
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213184950521276	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="0"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="1"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213168653856239	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="0"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>
4		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213268497179588	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="0"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>
5		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213154100524361	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="3"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>
6		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871	<input type="button" value="Comment & bulk tag"/>	<input type="button" value="Bulk comment reply"/>	<input type="button" value="Re-scan"/>	<input type="button" value="1"/>	<input type="button" value="User"/>

- A modal will pop up, Enter the **campaign name**, select the **range of commenters** from the drop-down menu. Provide the **content to bulk tag** the commentators.
- You can restrict the tags for some people.
- Select the **schedule** for your campaign.
- After adding all information, select **Create Campaign**.

Comment & bulk tag campaign

Campaign name *

Select commenter range *

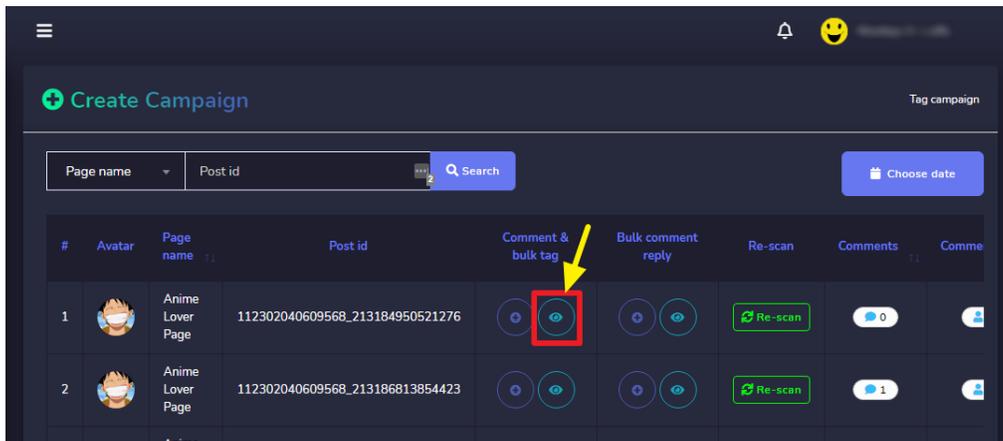
Tag content *

Do not tag these commenters

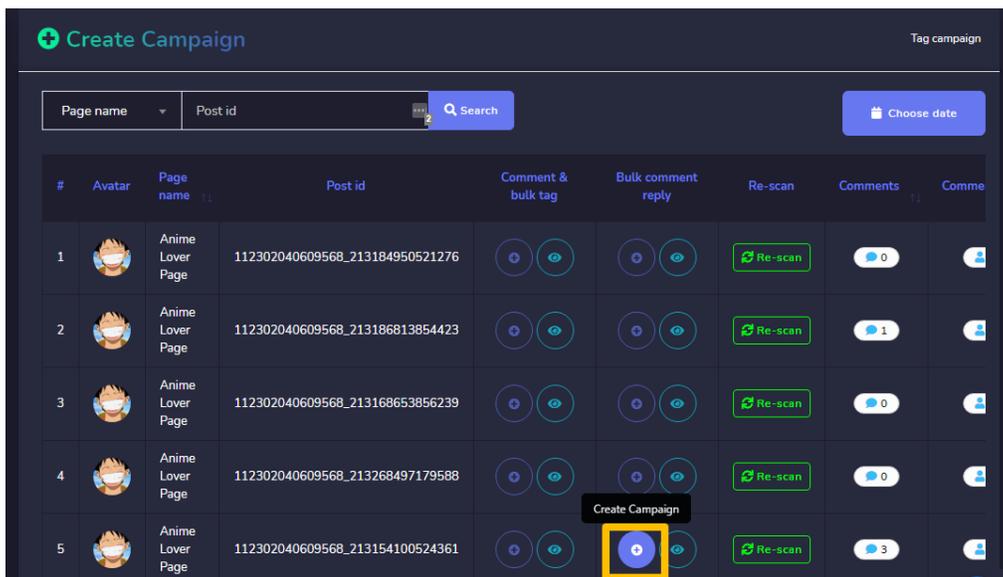
Image/video upload



- **View report for comment & bulk tag:** By selecting the  icon against the ID for which the report is to be viewed as shown in the [comment bulk tag report](#) section.



- **Create campaign for bulk comment reply:** For comment replies in a bulk, follow the steps given below:
 - Select the  icon against the ID for which the campaign is to be created.

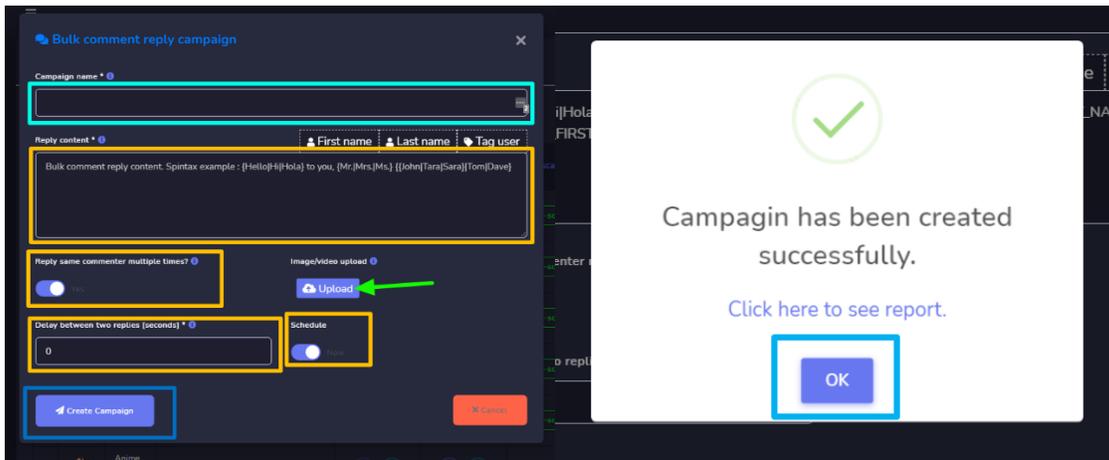


- A modal will pop up, enter the **campaign name**.
- Provide the **reply content** in reply content field.
- To enable the same reply multiple times, turn **ON** the slider button.
- You can schedule the campaign right now or sometime later.
- You can add delay between the replies as well.

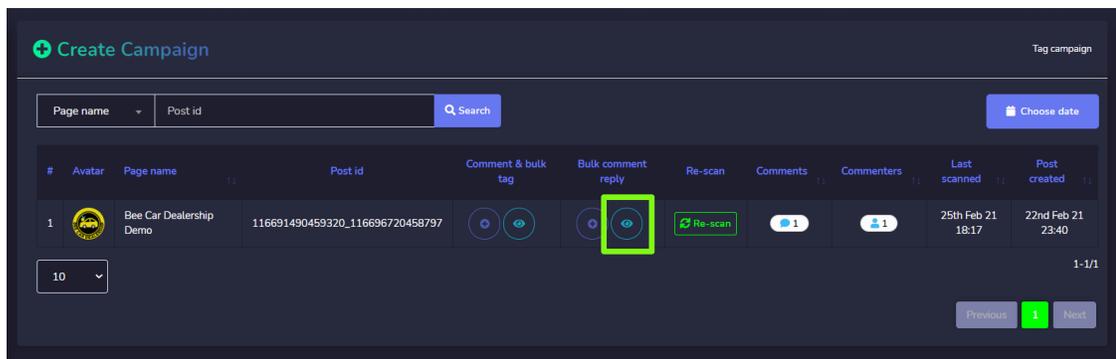




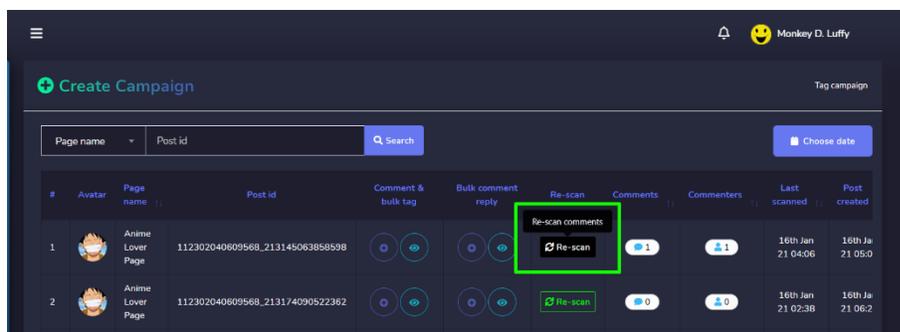
- After adding all information, select **Create Campaign**.



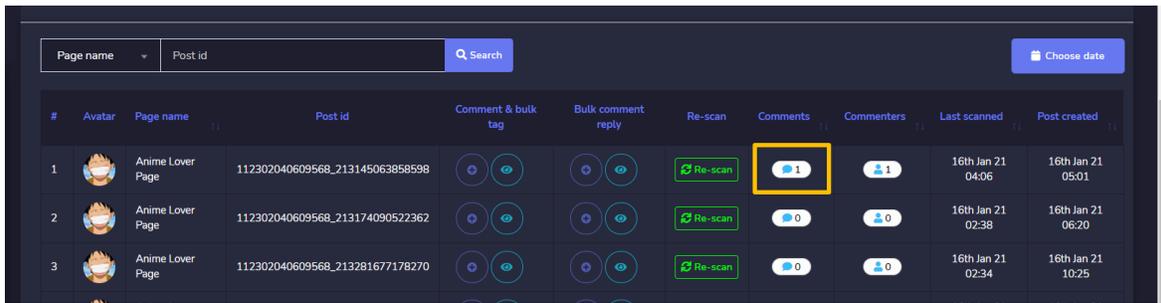
- **View report for bulk comment reply:** By selecting the  icon against the ID for which the report is to be viewed as shown in [bulk comment reply report](#) section.



- **Rescan the existing comments:** By selecting the **Rescan** option against the **Post ID** whose comments are needed to be scanned. A dialogue box will appear for confirmation.



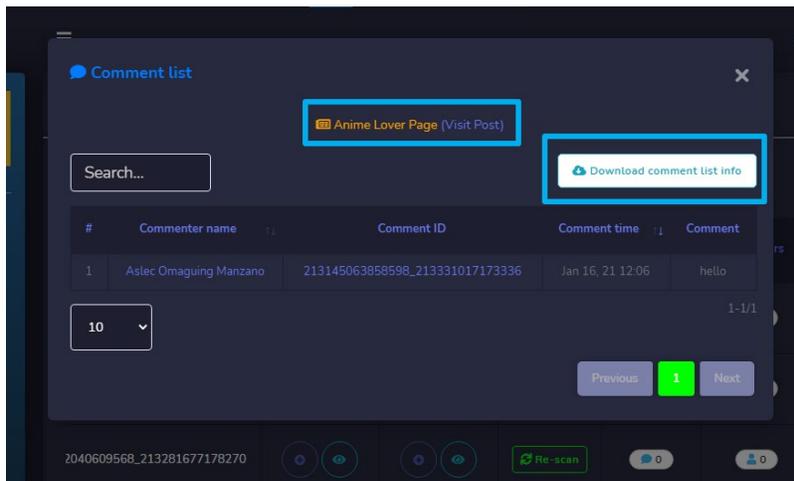
- **View the comments:** By selecting the **number of comments**,



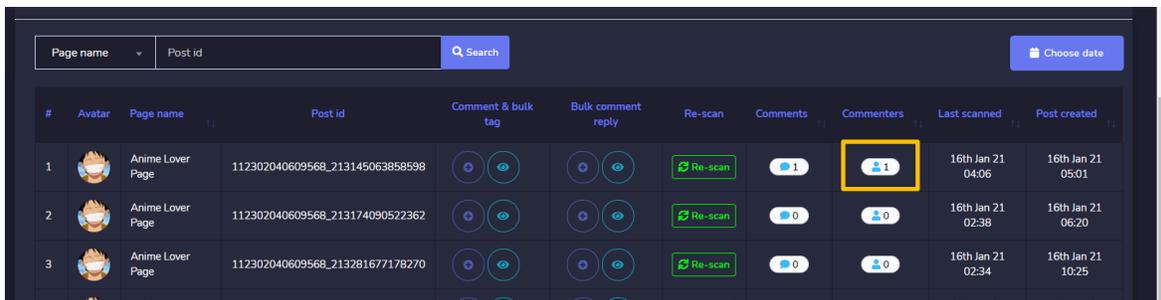
#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last scanned	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213145063858598						16th Jan 21 04:06	16th Jan 21 05:01
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213174090522362						16th Jan 21 02:38	16th Jan 21 06:20
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213281677178270						16th Jan 21 02:34	16th Jan 21 10:25

a modal will appear which allows you to:

- You can visit the Facebook page.
- You can go the post by selecting the **Visit Post** option.
- You can also download the comment list in .CSV file.



- **View the commenters:** by selecting the **number of commenters**, a modal will appear which allows you to:

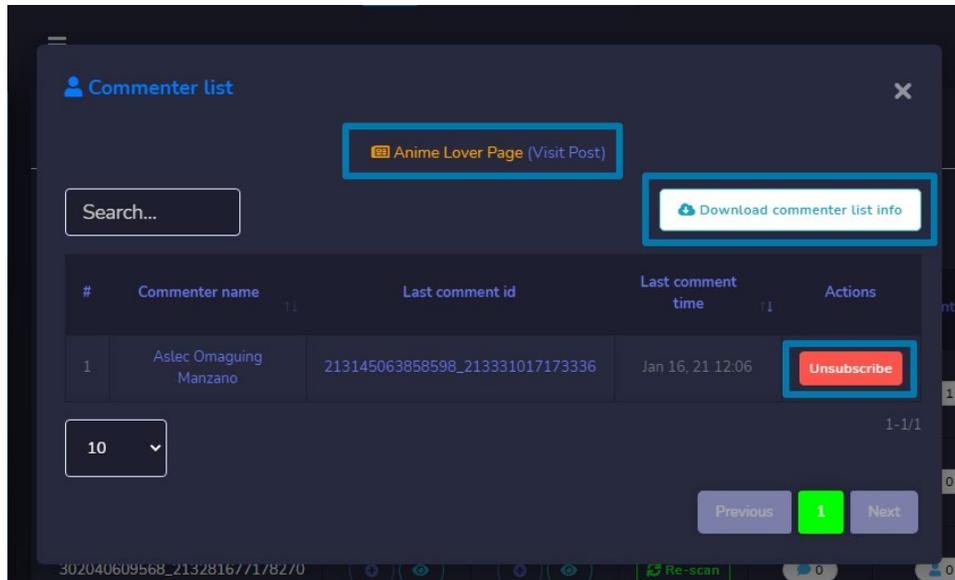


#	Avatar	Page name	Post id	Comment & bulk tag	Bulk comment reply	Re-scan	Comments	Commenters	Last scanned	Post created
1		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213145063858598						16th Jan 21 04:06	16th Jan 21 05:01
2		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213174090522362						16th Jan 21 02:38	16th Jan 21 06:20
3		Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213281677178270						16th Jan 21 02:34	16th Jan 21 10:25

- You can visit the Facebook page.
- You can go the post by selecting the **Visit Post** option.

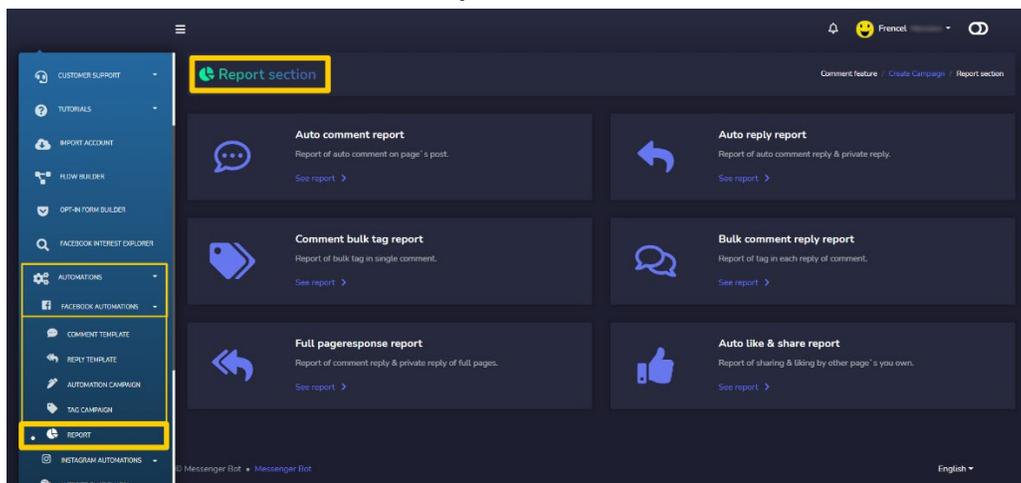


- You can also download the commenters list in .CSV file.
- You can also unsubscribe the commentator by selecting **Unsubscribe** option.



Report

To view this section, navigate to **Automations > Facebook Automations** from the navigation menu located on the left side and select **Report**.

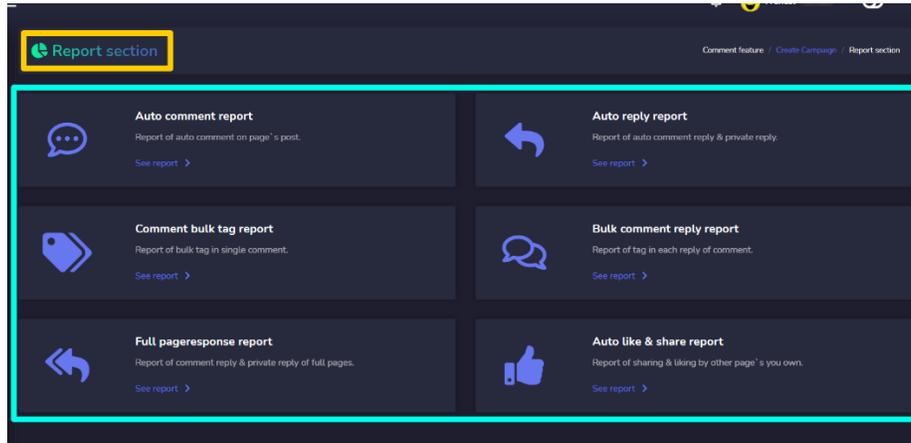


The Reports view allows the user to view the different report categories that can be viewed, edited, and exported. This section displays the following six types of reports:

- Auto comment report
- Auto reply report
- Comment bulk tag report
- Bulk comment reply report



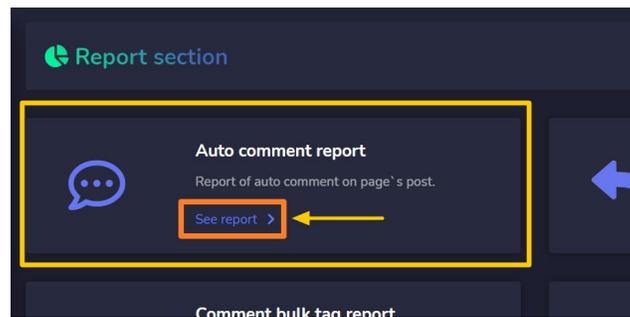
- Full page response report
- Auto like & share report



Auto comment report

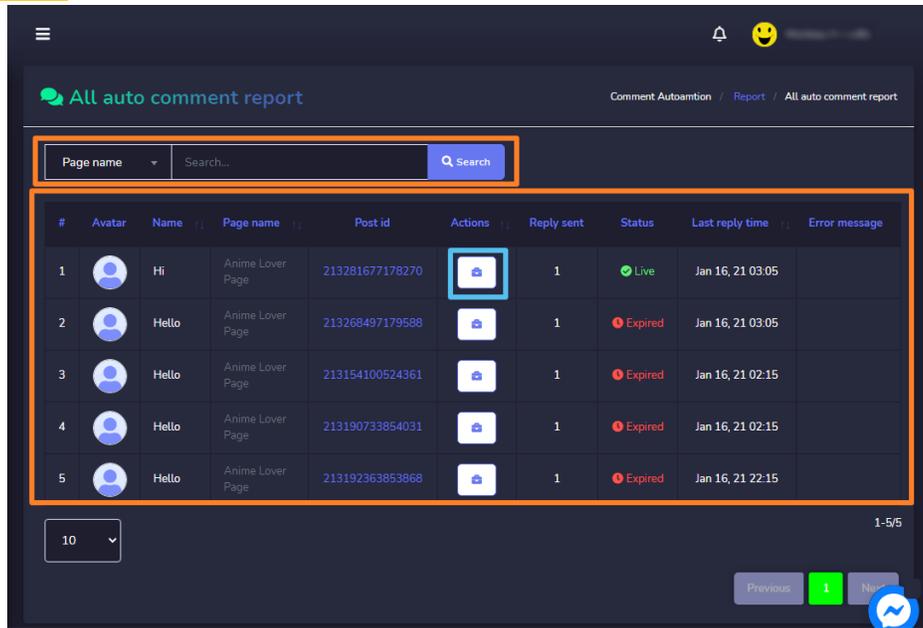
To access, the auto comment report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto comment report** modal.



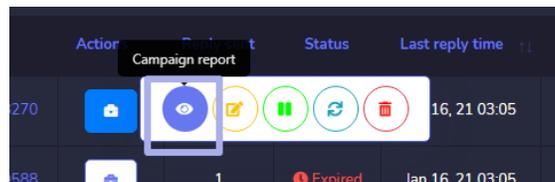
- 2) An **All auto comment report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar.
- 3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.



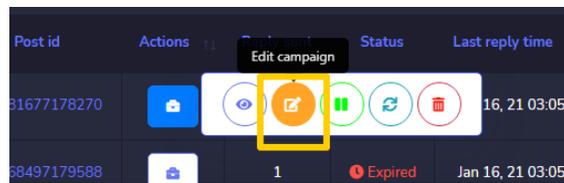


#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Actions	Reply sent	Status	Last reply time	Error message
1		Hi	Anime Lover Page	213281677178270		1	Live	Jan 16, 21 03:05	
2		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213268497179588		1	Expired	Jan 16, 21 03:05	
3		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213154100524361		1	Expired	Jan 16, 21 02:15	
4		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213190733854031		1	Expired	Jan 16, 21 02:15	
5		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213192363853868		1	Expired	Jan 16, 21 22:15	

4) Select the  icon to create the campaign report.



5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.



Please give the following information for post auto comment

Edit information then click "Save".

Auto comment campaign name
Hi

Auto comment template
Hi Template

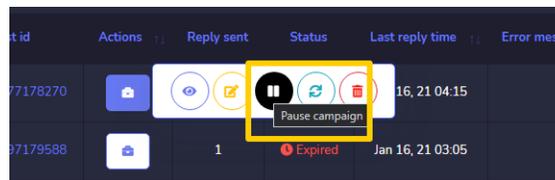
Schedule type
 One time Periodic

Schedule time
2021-01-16 03:00:56

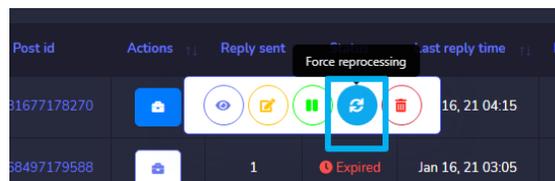
Time zone
(GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles (Pacific Standard Time)

Save **Cancel**

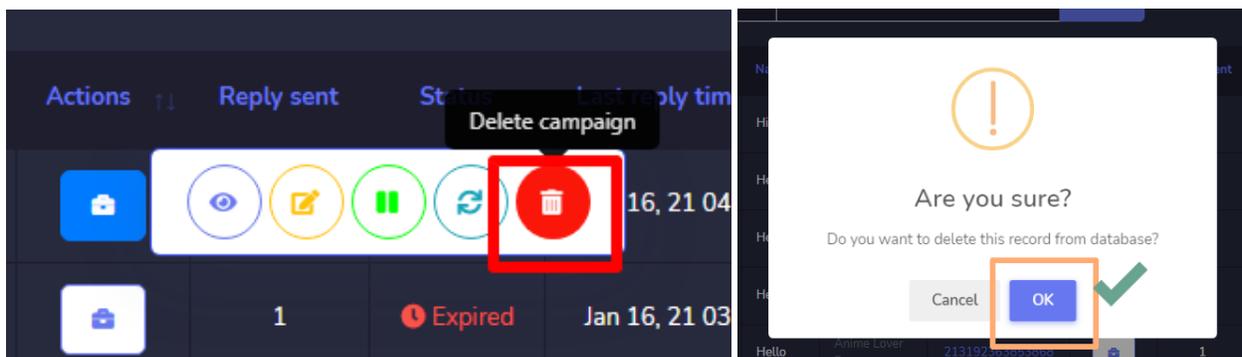
6) In order to pause the campaign, select  icon against the selected campaign.



7) For force reprocessing, select  icon against the selected campaign.



8) Select  to permanently delete a particular campaign.

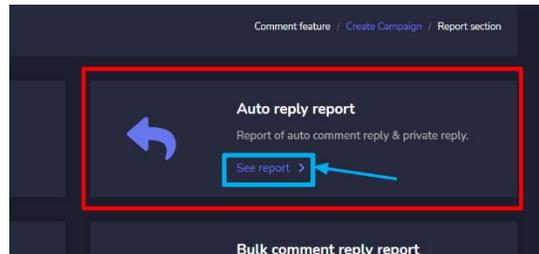




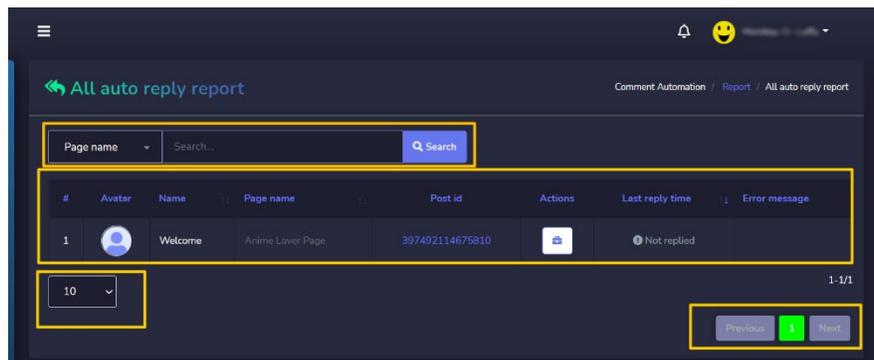
Auto reply report

To access, the auto comment report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto reply report** modal.

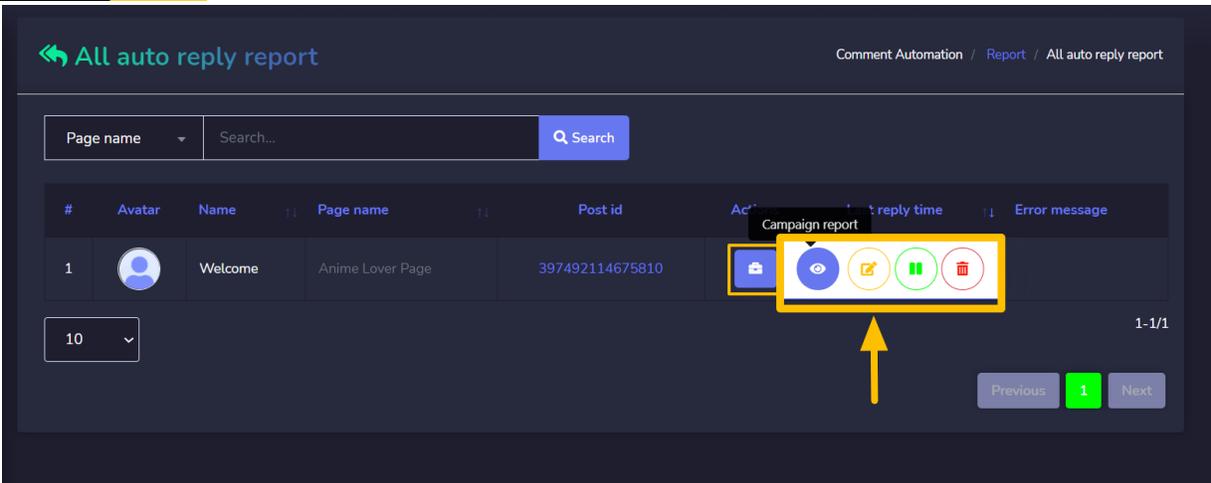


- 2) An **All auto reply report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. User can search for a particular post by using the search bar.



- 3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.
- 4) Select the  icon to view the campaign report.
- 5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.
- 6) In order to pause the campaign, select  icon against the selected campaign.
- 7) Select  to permanently delete a particular campaign.

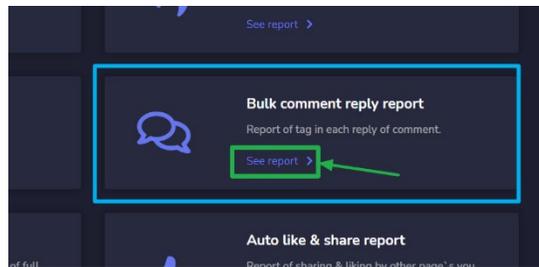




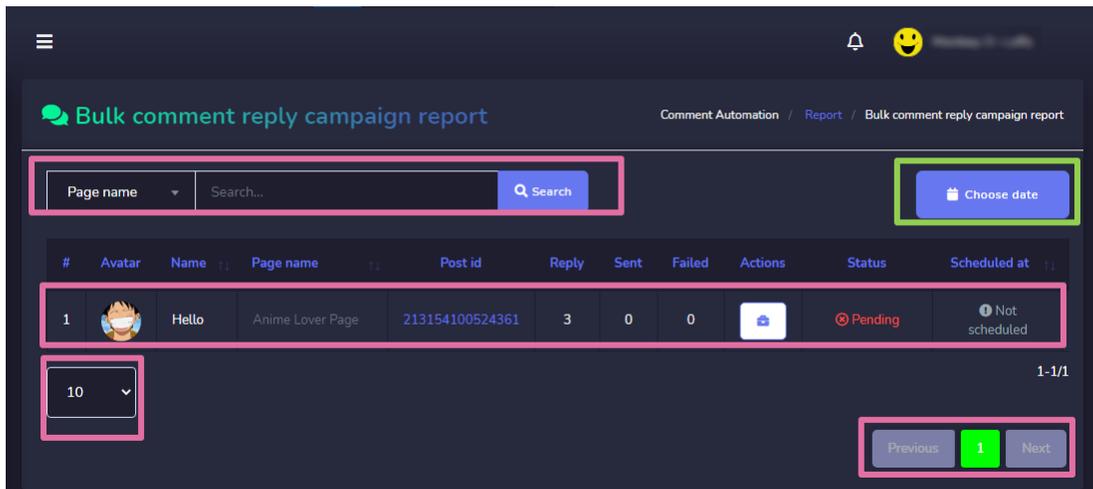
Bulk comment reply report

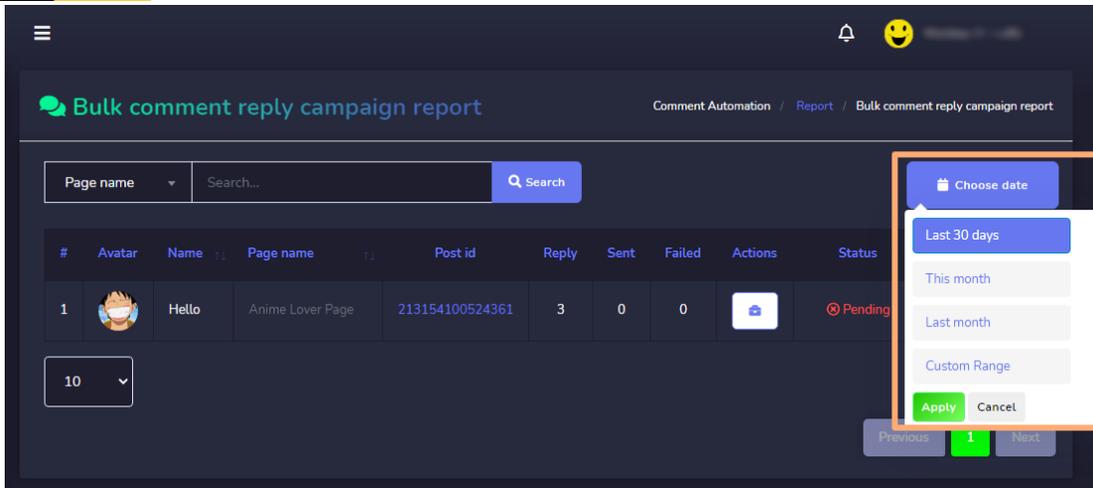
To access, the bulk comment reply report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Bulk comment reply report** modal.



- 2) A **Bulk comment reply campaign report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.





Bulk comment reply campaign report Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

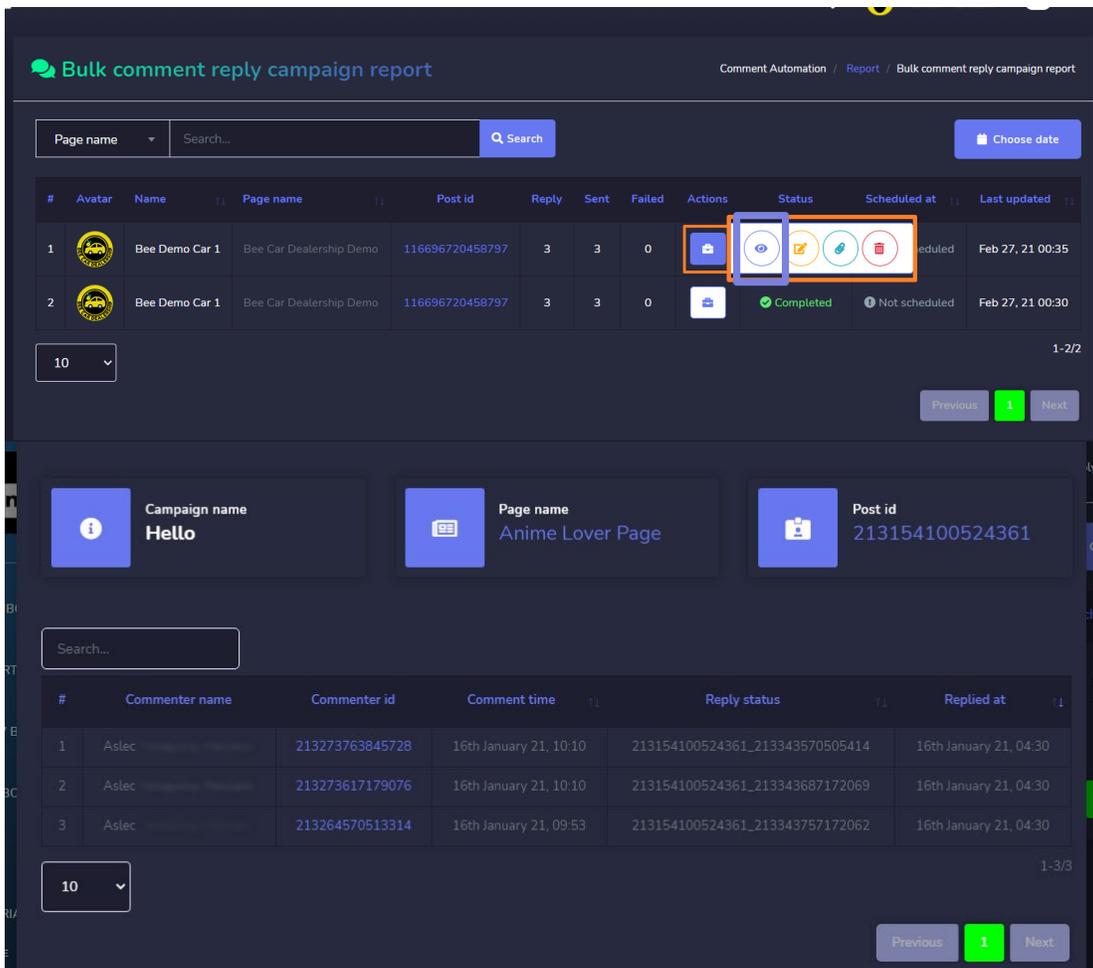
Page name

#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status
1		Hello	Anime Lover Page	213154100524361	3	0	0		Pending

10

3) Select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.

4) Select the  icon to view the campaign report.



Bulk comment reply campaign report Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name

#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Pending	Feb 27, 21 00:35	Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10

Campaign name
Hello

Page name
Anime Lover Page

Post id
213154100524361

Search...

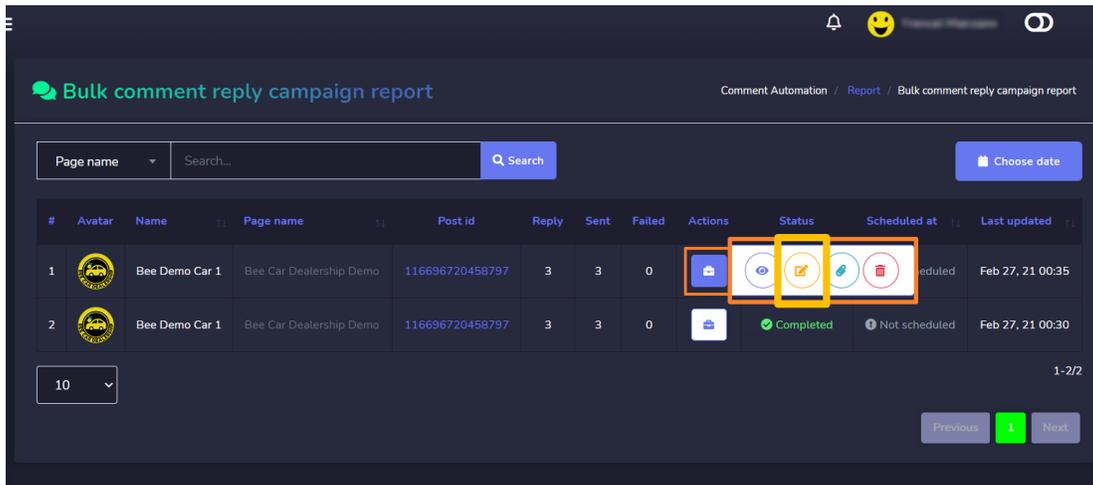
#	Commenter name	Commenter id	Comment time	Reply status	Replied at
1	Aslec	213273763845728	16th January 21, 10:10	213154100524361_213343570505414	16th January 21, 04:30
2	Aslec	213273617179076	16th January 21, 10:10	213154100524361_213343687172069	16th January 21, 04:30
3	Aslec	213264570513314	16th January 21, 09:53	213154100524361_213343757172062	16th January 21, 04:30

10

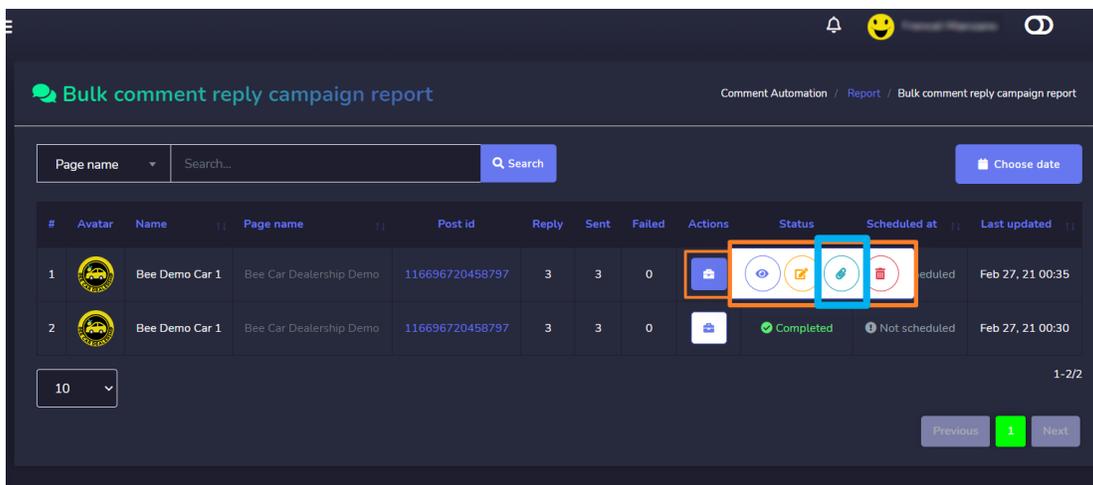




5) Select  icon to edit the campaign and make relevant updates.



6) Select  icon to see the attachment added to the campaign.



7) Select  icon to permanently delete a particular campaign.



Bulk comment reply campaign report Comment Automation / Report / Bulk comment reply campaign report

Page name Search...

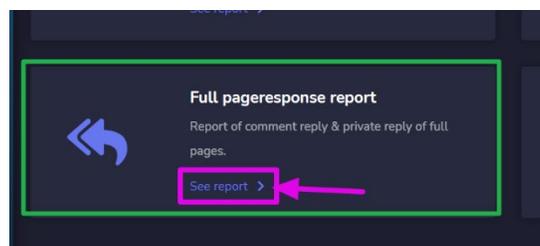
#	Avatar	Name	Page name	Post id	Reply	Sent	Failed	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Last updated
1		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0	    	Scheduled		Feb 27, 21 00:35
2		Bee Demo Car 1	Bee Car Dealership Demo	116696720458797	3	3	0		Completed	Not scheduled	Feb 27, 21 00:30

10 **1**

Full page response report

To access, the full page response report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Full page response report** modal.



- 2) A **Full page response - report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the search bar. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.

Full page response - report Comment Automation / Report / Full page response - report

Page Post id

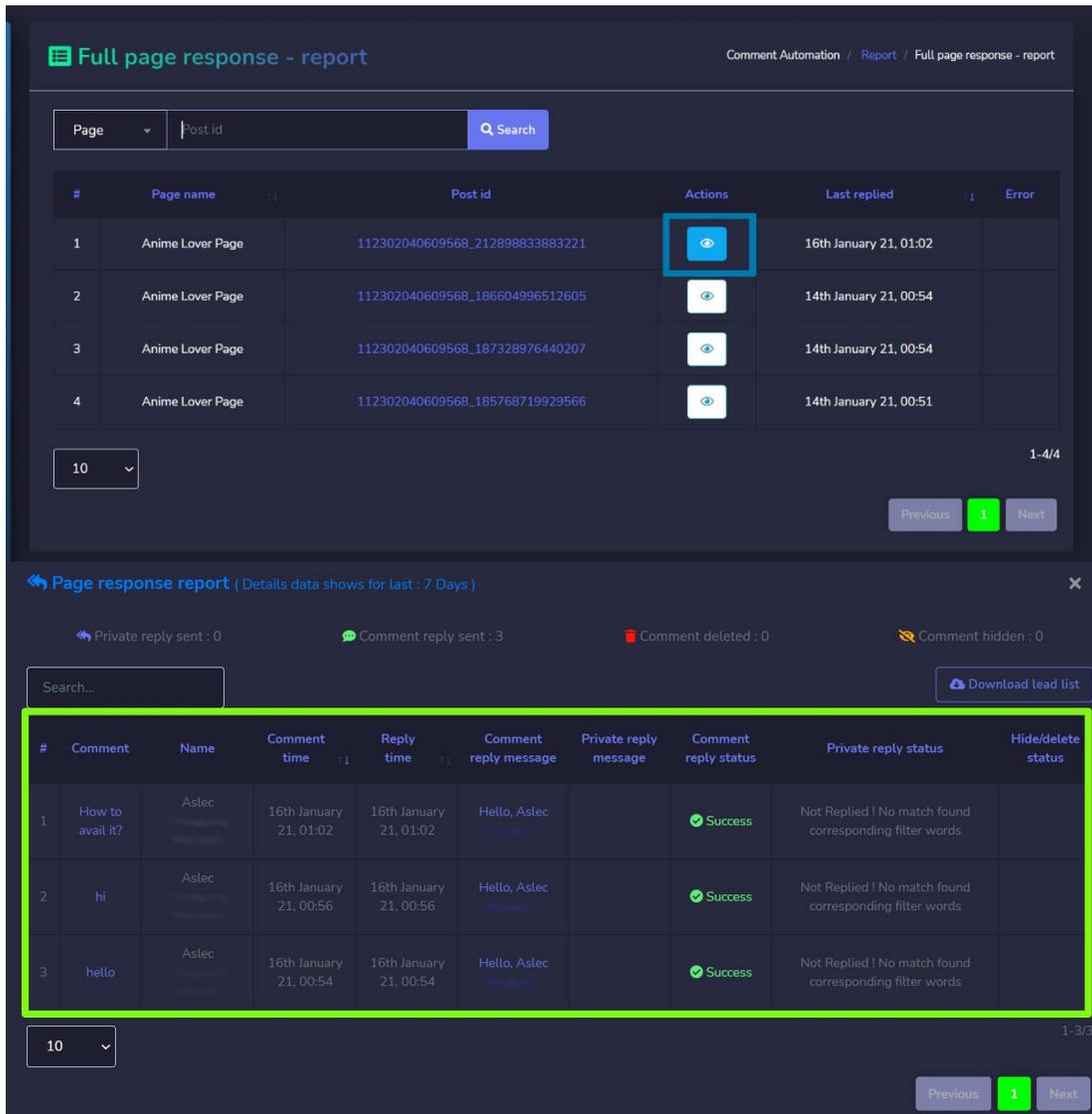
#	Page name	Post id	Actions	Last replied	Error
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_212898833883221		16th January 21, 01:02	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_186604996512605		14th January 21, 00:54	
3	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_187328976440207		14th January 21, 00:54	
4	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_185768719929566		14th January 21, 00:51	

10 **1**





3) Select the  icon to view the **page response report**.



Full page response - report Comment Automation / Report / Full page response - report

Page

#	Page name	Post id	Actions	Last replied	Error
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_212898833883221		16th January 21, 01:02	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_186604996512605		14th January 21, 00:54	
3	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_187328976440207		14th January 21, 00:54	
4	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_185768719929566		14th January 21, 00:51	

10 1-4/4

Page response report (Details data shows for last: 7 Days)

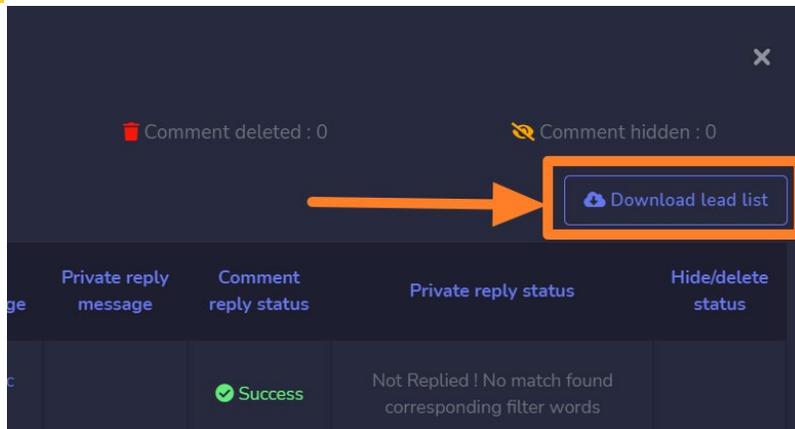
Search...

#	Comment	Name	Comment time	Reply time	Comment reply message	Private reply message	Comment reply status	Private reply status	Hide/delete status
1	How to avail it?	Aslec	16th January 21, 01:02	16th January 21, 01:02	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	
2	hi	Aslec	16th January 21, 00:56	16th January 21, 00:56	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	
3	hello	Aslec	16th January 21, 00:54	16th January 21, 00:54	Hello, Aslec		Success	Not Replied ! No match found corresponding filter words	

10 1-3/3

4) You can also download the lead list in .CSV file by selecting button from the page response report screen.

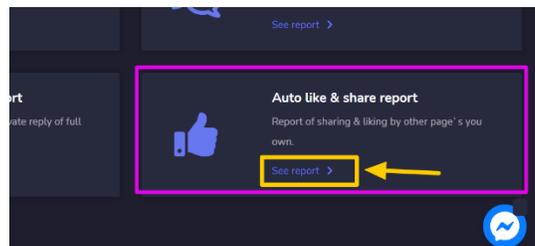




Auto like & share report

To access, the auto like & share report and perform different actions follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See report** option from the **Auto like & share report** modal.



- 2) An **Auto like/share - report** view will appear on the screen containing a list of posts. Users can search for a particular post by using the **search bar**. Users can choose and narrow down the search by selecting the dates for which the posts are to be viewed.





Auto like/share - report

Comment Automation / Report / Auto like/share - report

Post id Page name Search

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions	Last share try	Last like try
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:30:08
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:25:05
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:20:05
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:15:06
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828703990234	1	1		2021-01-14 01:10:06	2021-01-14 01:10:10
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828747323563	1	1		2021-01-14 01:15:10	2021-01-14 01:15:13
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211830833990021	1	1		2021-01-14 01:20:12	2021-01-14 01:20:10
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211832460656525	1	1		2021-01-14 01:25:13	2021-01-14 01:25:09
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834413989663	1	1		2021-01-14 01:30:12	2021-01-14 01:30:14
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834450656326	1	1		2021-01-14 01:35:06	2021-01-14 01:35:10

10

1-10/557

Previous 1 2 3 4 5 56 Next

3) Mark the checkboxes individually or perform bulk action by selecting them from the header of the table.

Auto like/share - report

Comment Automation / Report / Auto like/share - report

Post id Page name Search

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions	Last share try	Last like try
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:30:08
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:25:05
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213189000520871	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:20:05
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213186813854423	1	0		0000-00-00 00:00:00	2021-01-15 23:15:06
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828703990234	1	1		2021-01-14 01:10:06	2021-01-14 01:10:10
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211828747323563	1	1		2021-01-14 01:15:10	2021-01-14 01:15:13
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211830833990021	1	1		2021-01-14 01:20:12	2021-01-14 01:20:10
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211832460656525	1	1		2021-01-14 01:25:13	2021-01-14 01:25:09
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834413989663	1	1		2021-01-14 01:30:12	2021-01-14 01:30:14
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_211834450656326	1	1		2021-01-14 01:35:06	2021-01-14 01:35:10

10

1-10/557

Previous 1 2 3 4 5 56 Next

4) Select the  icon to view the auto like/share report.





Auto like/share - report

Post id Page name Search

#	Page name	Post id	Auto like	Auto share	Actions
1	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213192363853868	1	0	
2	Anime Lover Page	112302040609568_213190733854031	1	0	

Auto like/share report

Page name: Anime Lover Page

Post id: 112302040609568_213192363853868

Auto like

Status: N/A

Auto like report

1. Anime Lover Page : Success

Auto share

Status: N/A

Auto share as pages

Instagram Auto Comment Reply With Messenger Bot

At this time, Instagram is one of the most popular social media among all social media and it has also become more popular day by day. So as a popular media, Instagram has given some opportunities for third-party app developers to integrate through Instagram API. Messenger Bot has integrated these features. So to get the Instagram features with Messenger Bot, you've to first integrate your Instagram business account with Messenger Bot.

This is written to provide instruction on how you can integrate Instagram business account and how you can use Auto Comment Reply feature with Messenger Bot.

As Instagram is associated with Facebook, so at the very first stage you've to connect your Instagram business account with your Facebook page.

Connect Instagram Business account with Facebook Page:

>>> First of all go to the **Settings** of your Facebook page.

>>> Now go to **Instagram** menu from left-sided menus.

>>> Click on the **Connect Account** button to get started off adding Instagram account. Provide all information and connect your Instagram business account with your Facebook page.





Page Inbox Manage Jobs Notifications **30** Insights More ▾

Edit Page Info **4** **Settings** Help ▾

- Page Info **4**
- Messaging
- Templates and Tabs
- Notifications
- Advanced Messaging
- Facebook Badges
- Page Roles
- People and Other Pages
- Preferred Page Audience
- Branded Content **+**
- Instagram**
- Featured
- Page Support Inbox

Connect to Instagram

Get additional features to reach more of your community.



Connect your Facebook Page to an Instagram account. [Learn More](#)

Connect Account

Depending on their Facebook Page roles, people who help manage your Page may have access to help manage things on both Facebook and Instagram like:

- Content, ads and insights
- Messages and comments
- Settings and permissions

You can review roles later in Facebook Page Settings.

Import Instagram business account with Messenger Bot:

After connecting your Instagram account with your Facebook page, now go to the **Import Account** menu of your Messenger Bot application and import your facebook account again by click on **Login with Facebook** button. After that, you'll see your Instagram business account under connected Facebook page.





The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard with a sidebar on the left and a main content area. The sidebar includes sections for ADMINISTRATION, COMMENT FEATURE, MESSENGER TOOLS, POSTING FEATURE, and UTILITY TOOLS. The main content area is titled 'Your existing accounts' and shows a list of connected Facebook pages. Red arrows point to the 'Import Account' button, the 'Login with Facebook' button, the 'Enable Bot' button, and the 'Instagram business Account' button. The list of pages includes '26 Pages', 'Exciter', and 'club'.

Now **Enable Bot Connection** by click on the enable bot connection button if it's not enabled before. Without enabling, you won't see your instagram account in instagram features section of Messenger Bot.

Auto Comment Reply with Messenger Bot:

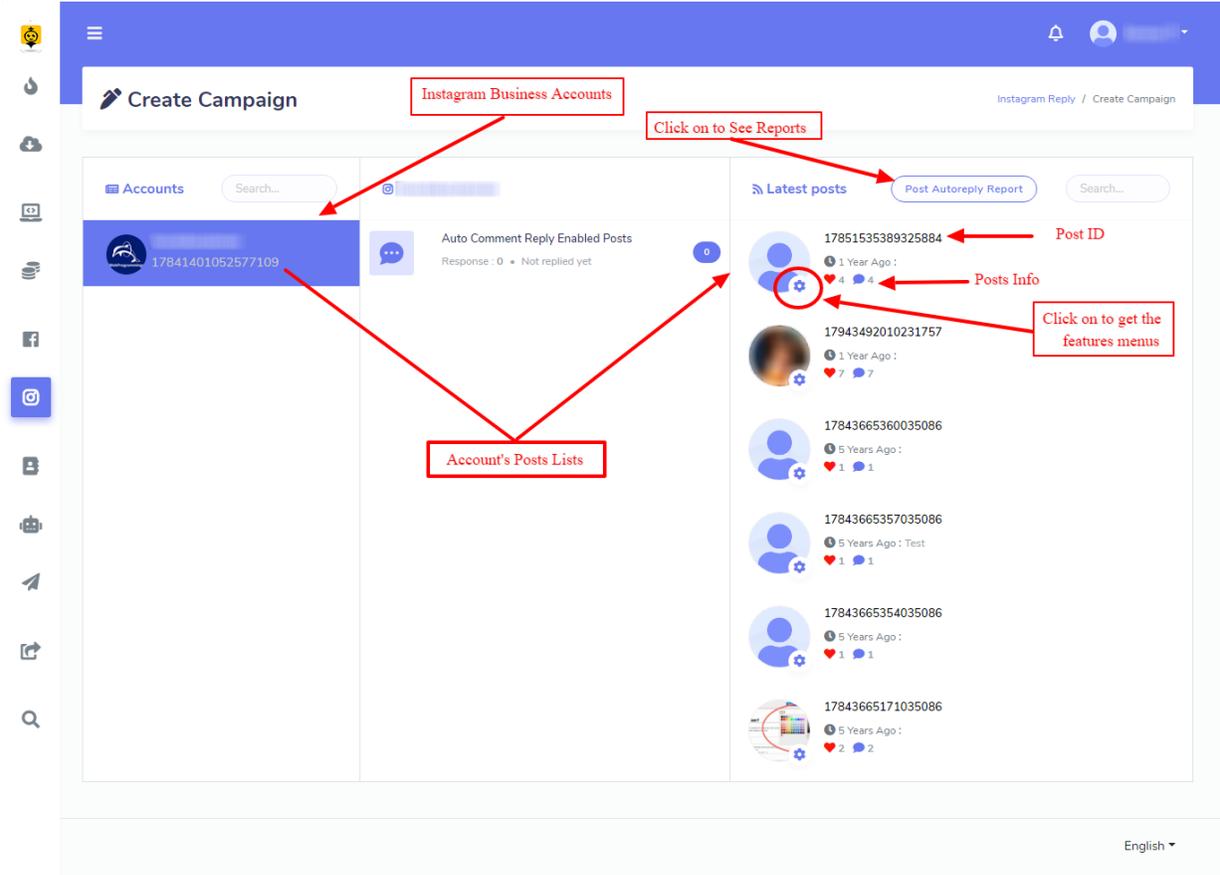
There is also a menu available called **Comment Automation** for instagram under facebook Comment Automation menu.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard with a sidebar on the left and a main content area. The sidebar includes sections for ADMINISTRATION, COMMENT FEATURE, and UTILITY TOOLS. The main content area is titled 'Order statistics - September' and shows various metrics. The 'Subscriber's data' section shows 'E-mail address gain' and 'Phone number gain'.





Go to **Comment Automation -> Automation Campaign** menu and you'll see your instagram business accounts here with the latest posts of corresponding business account. You can also see how many posts are enabled for auto comment reply from the middle column. At the right column, you can see the posts lists with posted time with posts description and also posts reaction, comments.



To enable Auto Comment Reply for Posts, click on the mini icon with the post's thumbnail, you'll see the dropdown, click on **Enable Auto Comment Reply**.



Latest posts Post Autoreply Report Search...

- 17851535389325884
1 Year Ago :
Enable auto comment reply **Click on to get Auto comment Reply form**
Leave a comment now **For Instant Comment on Instagram**
- 17843665360035086
5 Years Ago :
Analytics **Posts Analytics**
- 17843665357035086
5 Years Ago : Test

A modal with form will appear, fill up the information to complete the enabling auto comment reply for the post.

Please give the following information for post auto reply

Do you want to reply comments of a user multiple times? Yes

Generic comment reply for all **Select for Generic Reply On Comment**
 Send comment reply by filtering word/sentence **Select for Filter based Comment Reply**

Auto comment reply campaign name *

Write your auto comment reply campaign name here

Comment reply text *

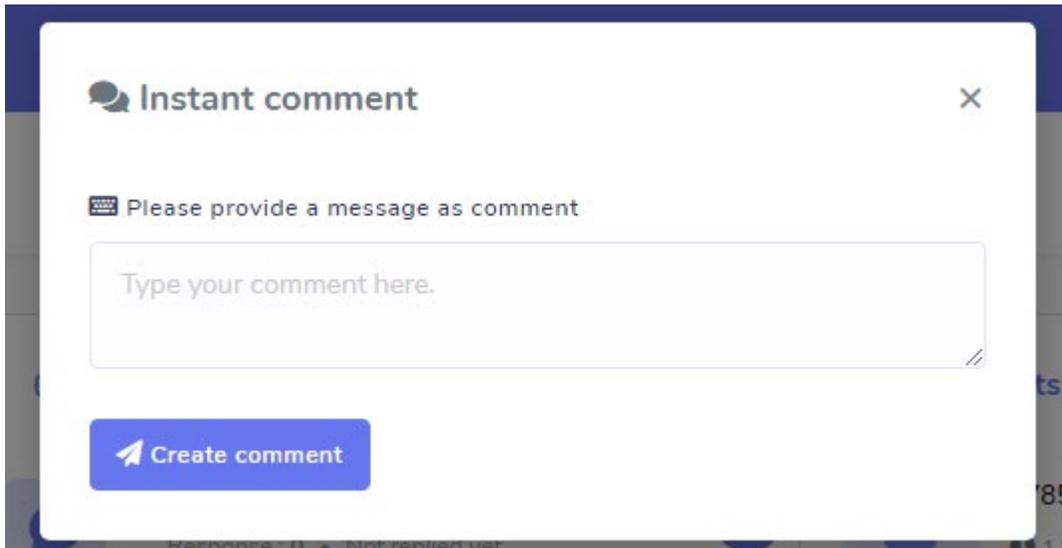
Username Mention user

Type your comment reply here...

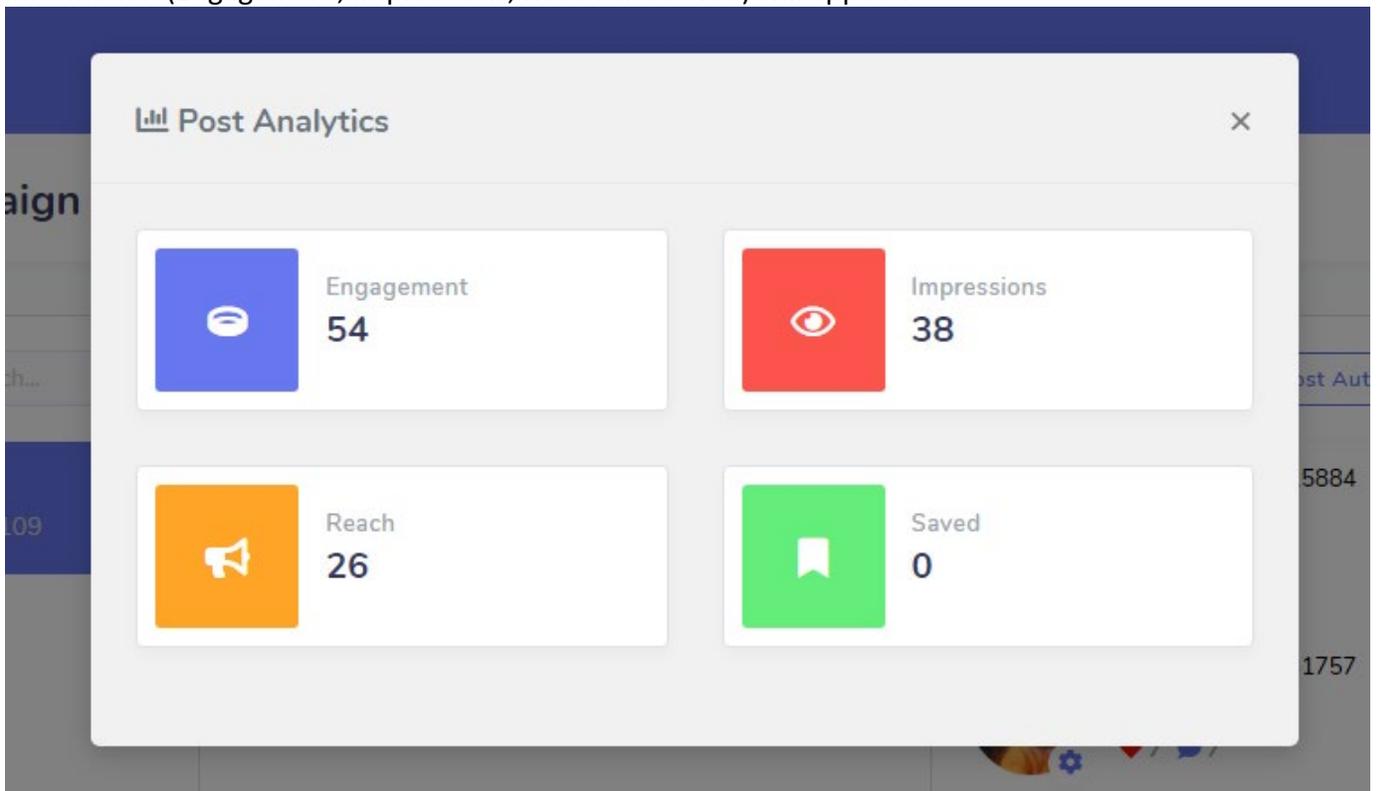
Submit Cancel



You can comment instantly on a post by **Leave a comment now** option from the dropdown.



To see the post's analytics, click on **Analytics** option and a modal with Post's analytical information (Engagement, Impressions, Reach and Saved) will appear.



Reports: Click on **Post Autoreply Report** Button at the top of the right column to see the auto comment reply reports for the corresponding business account's posts.





To see all business accounts reports in one place, then go to **Comment Automation -> Report** from the left sided menu and go to **Auto Comment reply reports** section to see all reports.

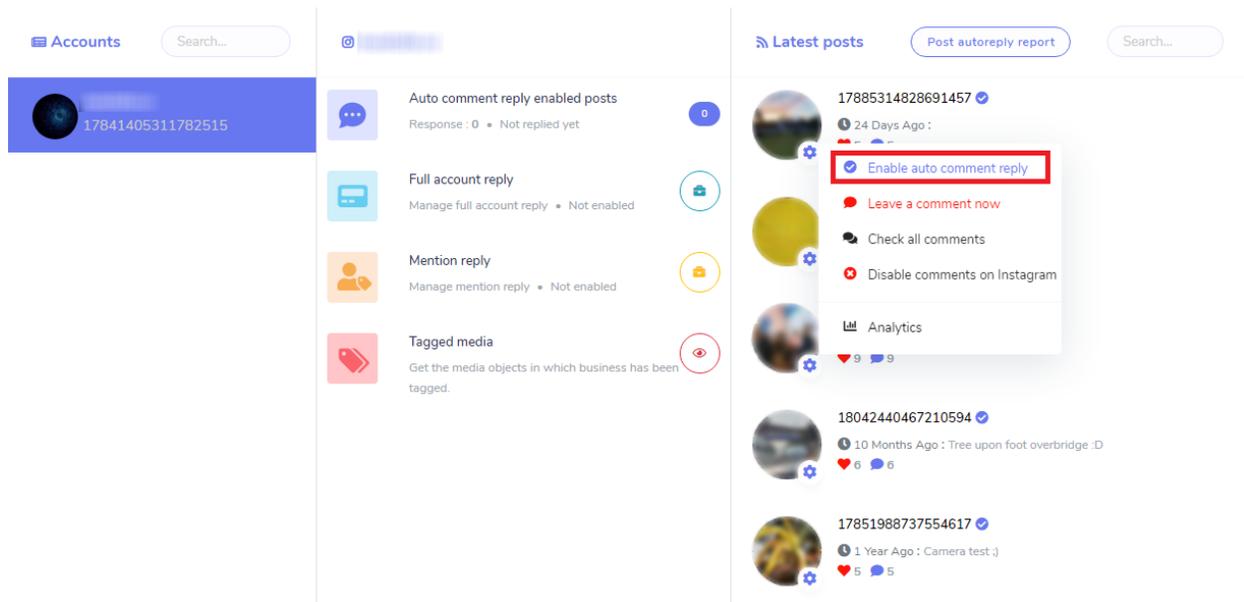
Instagram Reply Enhancers

Instagram is one of the most popular social media among all social media and it has also become more popular day by day. So as a popular media, Instagram has given some opportunities for third-party app developers to integrate through Instagram API. Messenger Bot has integrated these features. Messenger Bot has provided some features with main application and now it has integrated some exciting features as an add-on.

Hide/delete Comments

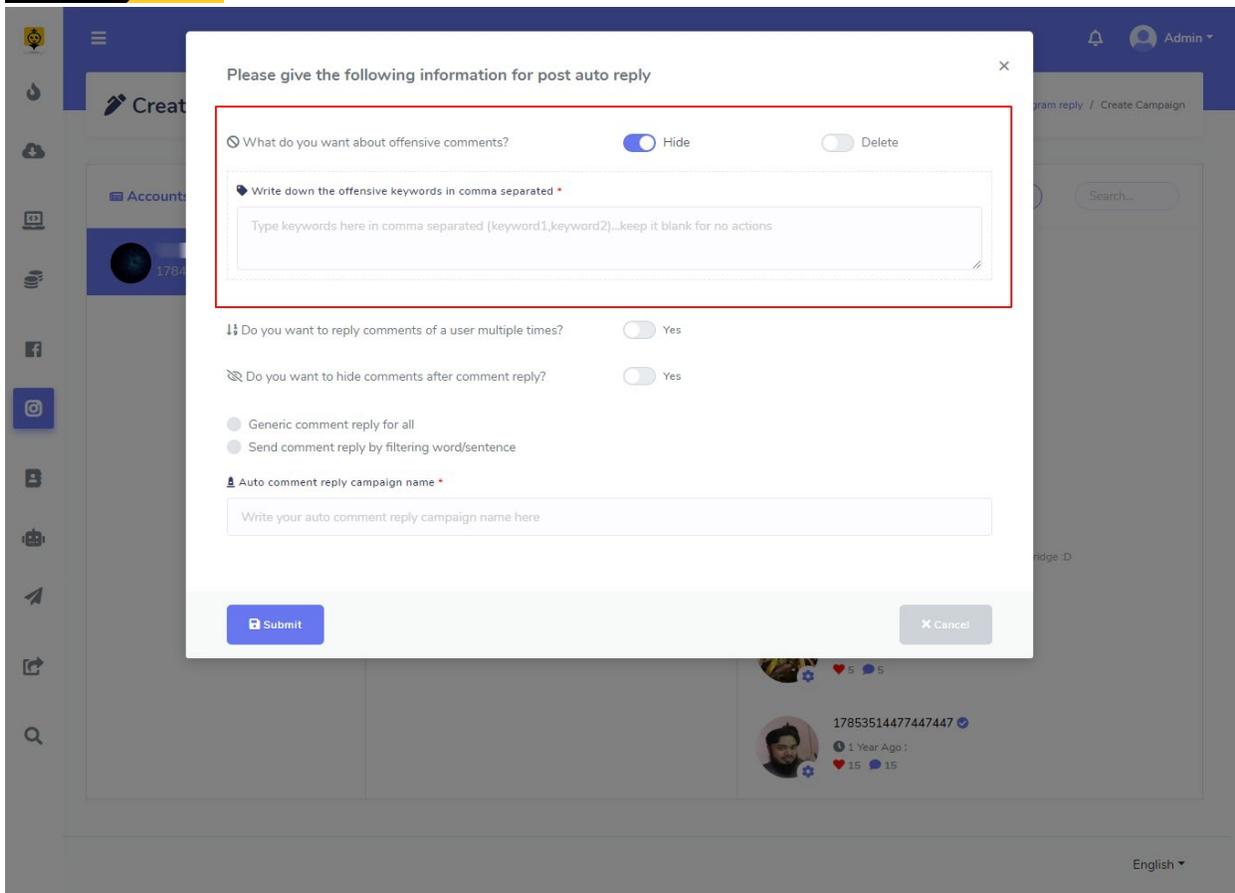
After Installing Instagram Reply Enhancers Add-on, you'll see of Choosing field for what do you want to do with offensive comments - hide or delete and also you'll be able to provide keywords as comma separated for hiding or deleting comments that matches with these keywords.

Click on the icon under posts thumbnail to get the option called **Enable Auto Comment Reply**, now click on the option.



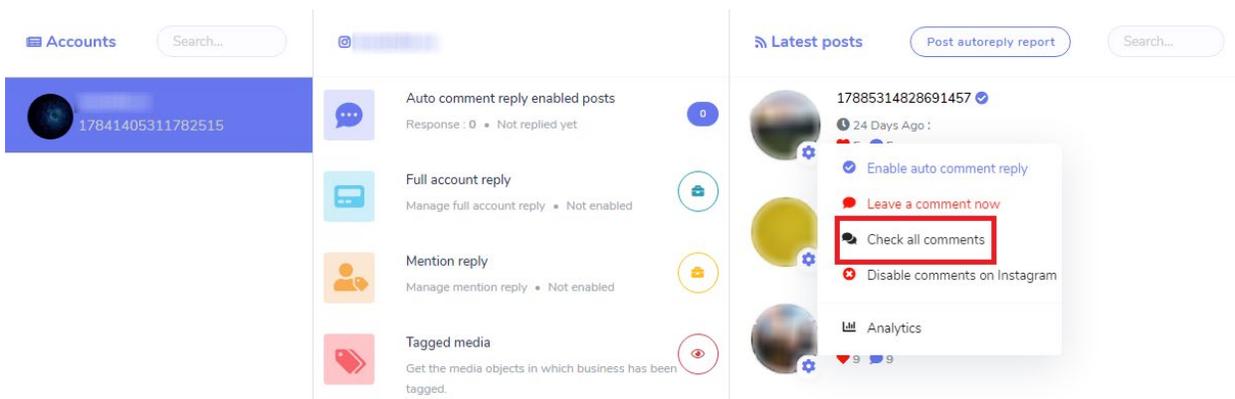
A modal of auto reply to comments will appear including this hide/delete for offensive comments. By default, the hide option is selected but you may toggle the options. Under this option, you've to provide the keywords with whom you want to perform hide/delete actions.

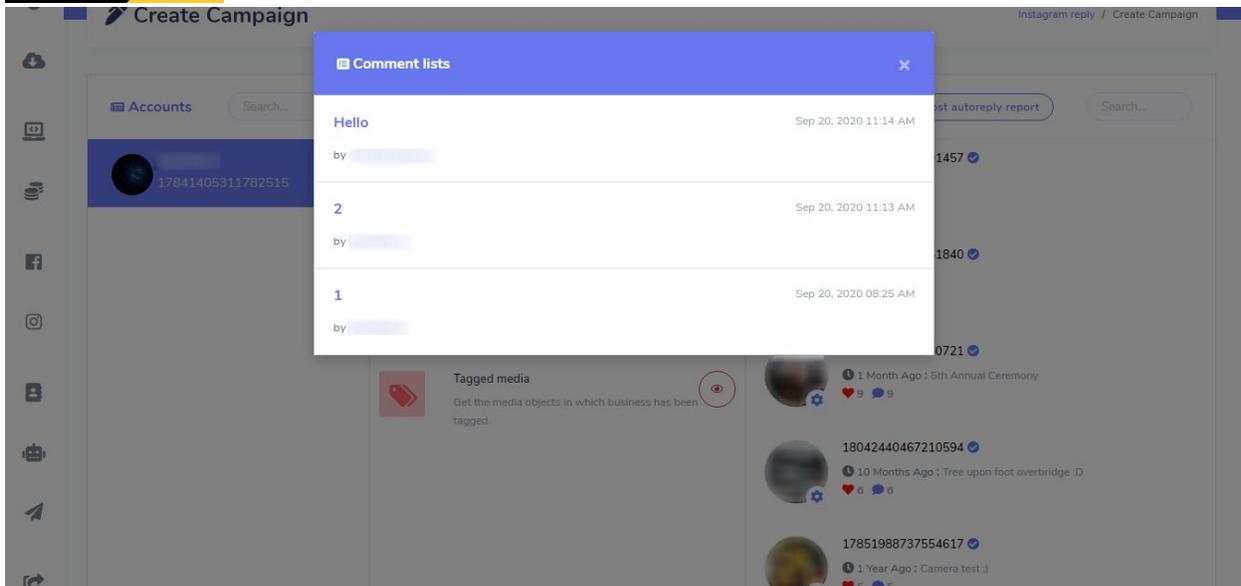




Check All Comments

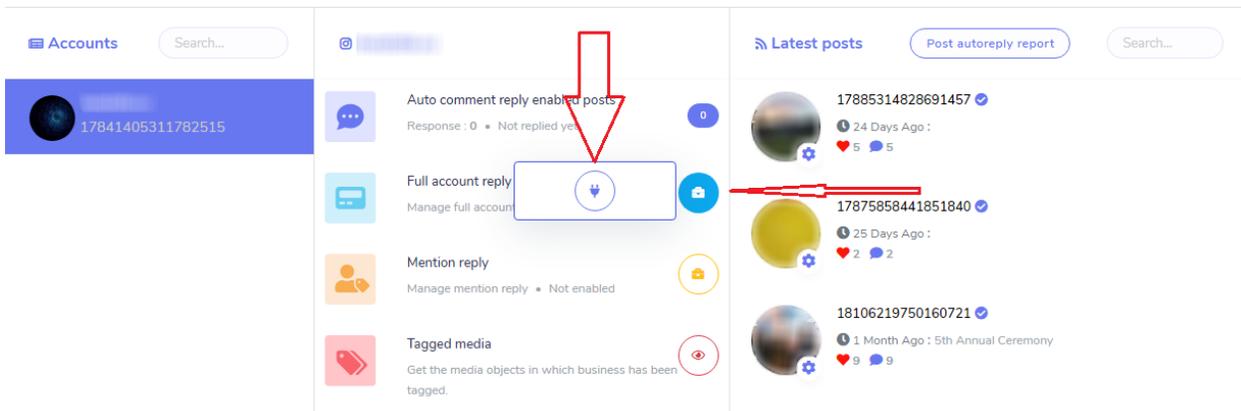
As the above description, you'll also able to see an option called **Check All Comments**, which is for getting all comments of a post in one place. Click on the option and you'll see all the comments of that post.





Full Account Reply Settings

Besides enabling Auto reply to Comments of Single post's, now Messenger Bot has integrated Full Account Reply. You can now enable full account reply for your all posts of instagram business account. To enable it, you'll need to just fill up the auto reply form. Click on the icon and then click on **Enable** icon.



A modal for full account reply information will appear and you've to provide all necessary information. After enabling Full Account reply for your Instagram business account, system will send replies to comments whenever new comment comes for any of the posts of your corresponding Instagram business account. You can set Generic or keyword filter-based settings for full account reply.





Please give the following information for full account reply ✕

🕒 What do you want about offensive comments?

Hide

Delete

📌 Write down the offensive keywords in comma separated

Type keywords here in comma separated (keyword1,keyword2)...keep it blank for no actions

⬇️ Do you want to send reply message to a user multiple times? Yes

🔇 Do you want to hide comments after comment reply? Yes

- Generic message for all
- Send message by filtering word/sentence

🏷️ Auto reply campaign name *

Write your auto reply campaign name here

Submit

Cancel

After enabling full account reply, you'll able to see the list of actions button for full account reply settings. You can see Report, edit, pause/play and also delete the reply settings button.

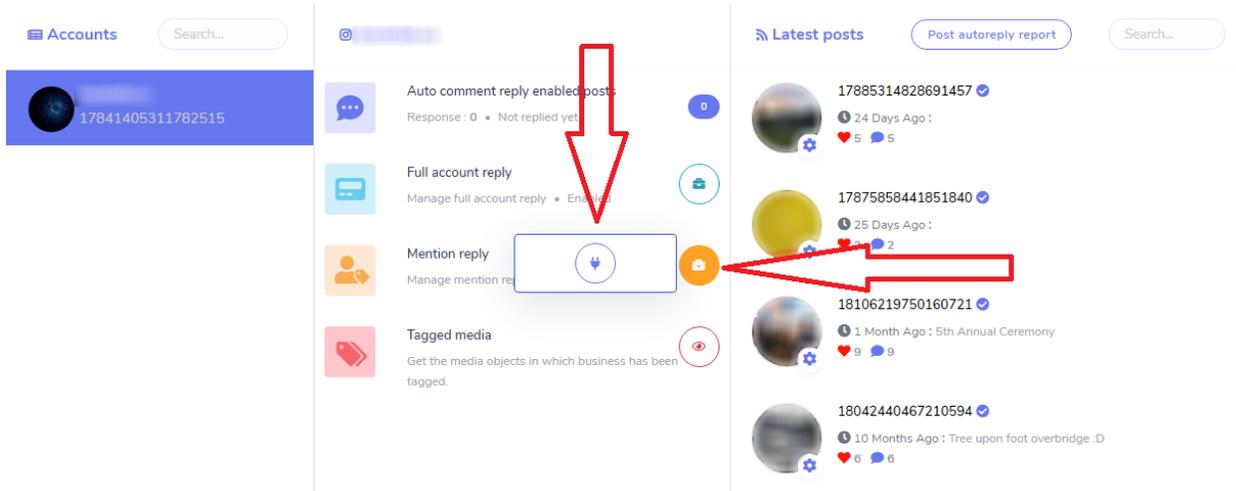
The screenshot shows the dashboard interface with three main sections: 'Accounts', 'Full account reply', and 'Latest posts'. The 'Full account reply' section is expanded, showing settings for 'Auto comment reply enabled posts', 'Full account reply', 'Mention reply', and 'Tagged media'. A red arrow points to a row of four action buttons: a blue circle with a white eye and slash (Report), a yellow circle with a white pencil (Edit), a grey circle with a white vertical bar (Pause/Play), and a red circle with a white trash can (Delete). The 'Full account reply' section is highlighted in blue.

Mention Reply Settings

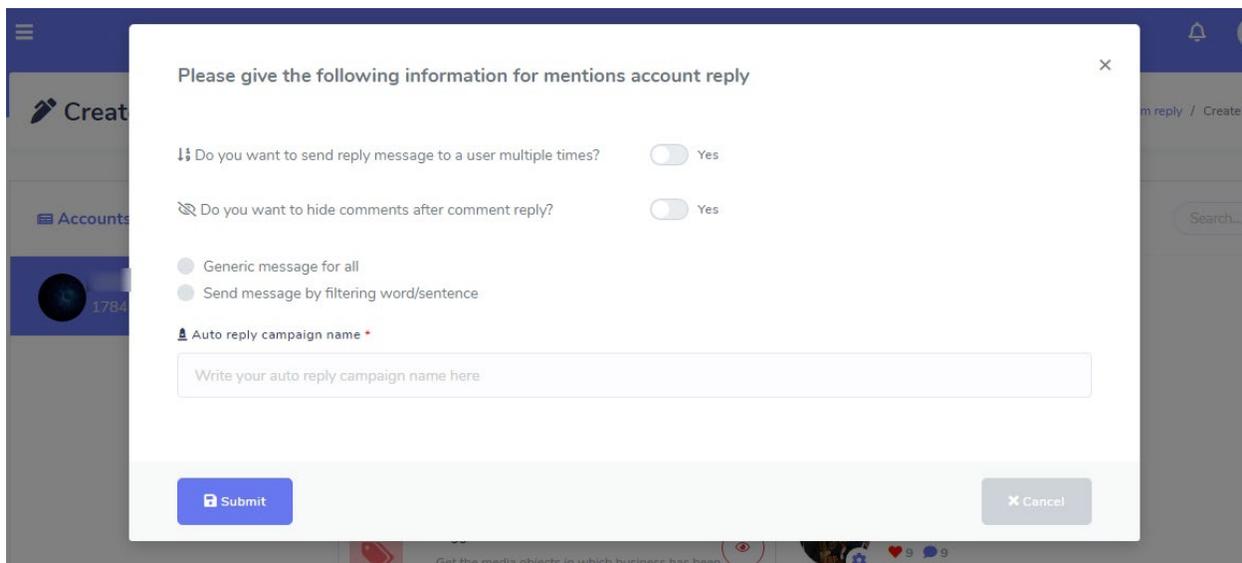




Beside full account reply, you can also be able to set mention reply for your instagram business account. As full account reply click on the icon beside mention reply and click on the enable mention reply button to get the mention reply form.

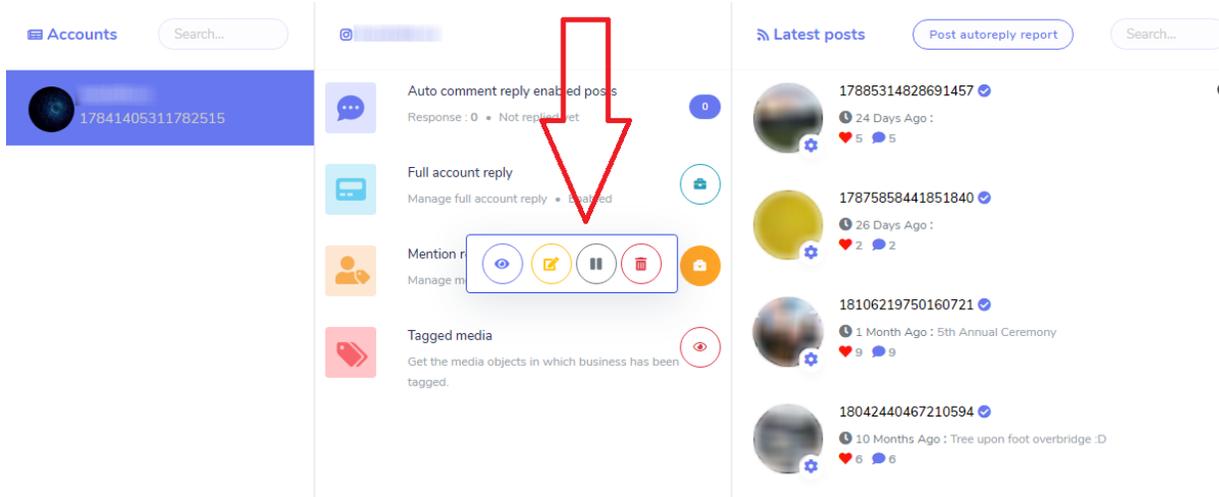


Fill up the information and hit **Submit** button. If you enable mention reply settings for your Instagram business account, whenever you get mentioned in any comments of any posts of Instagram account by any user, then system will send reply to the mentioned comments.



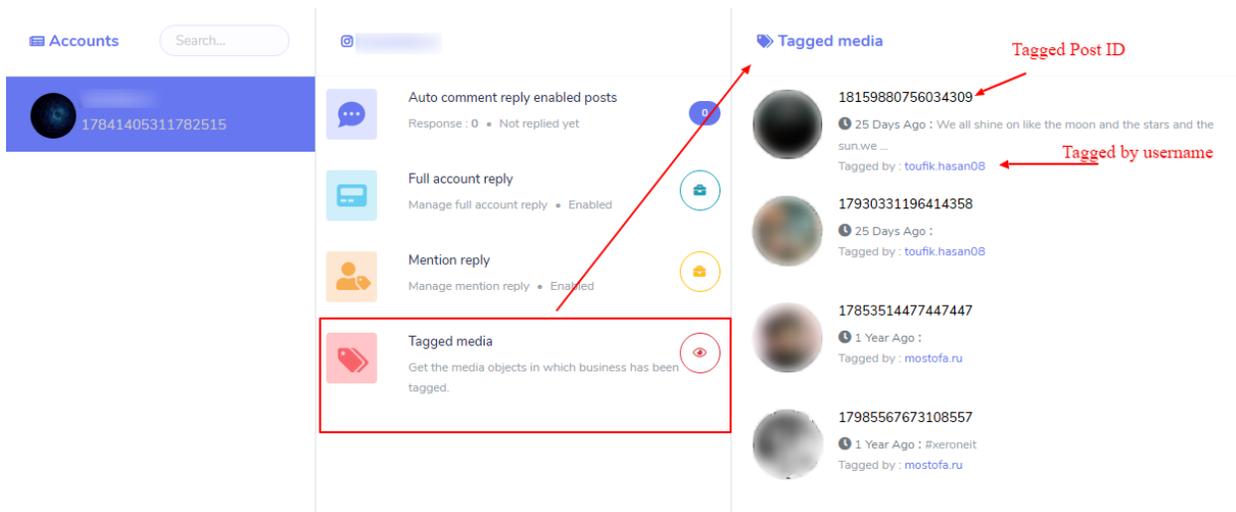
After enabling full account reply, you'll able to see the list of actions button for mention reply settings. You can see Report, edit, pause/play and also delete the reply settings button.





Tagged Media

Tagged Media features refers to the posts that you're tagged/mentioned by instagram users. Click on the **Tagged Media** part or on the **Icon** to get the tagged posts lists, lists will be shown at the right-sided column. See the below image please.



Reports

You can see the reports of full and mention reply settings from two sides. If you want to see the individual account reports then you've to go to report section from Campaign Create section for full and mention reply settings.





Accounts Search...

17841405311782515

Auto comment reply enabled posts
Response : 0 • Not replied yet

Full account reply
Manage full account reply

Mention reply
Manage mention reply • Not enabled

Tagged media
Get the media objects in which business has been tagged.

Latest posts Post autoreply report Search...

17885314828691457
24 Days Ago :
5 5

17875858441851840
25 Days Ago :
2 2

18106219750160721
1 Month Ago : 5th Annual Ceremony
9 9

Full Autoreply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Full Autoreply report

Individual account

Search... Search

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594		27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM

10

1-2/2

Accounts Search...

17841405311782515

Auto comment reply enabled posts
Response : 0 • Not replied yet

Full account reply
Manage full account reply • Enabled

Mention reply
Manage m

Tagged media
Get the media objects in which business has been tagged.

Latest posts Post autoreply report Search...

17885314828691457
24 Days Ago :
5 5

17875858441851840
26 Days Ago :
2 2

18106219750160721
1 Month Ago : 5th Annual Ceremony
9 9

18042440467210594
10 Months Ago : Tree upon foot overbridge :D
6 6





Full Autoreply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Full Autoreply report

Individual account

Details Report

Post's Analytics

Delete Report

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594		27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM

10

1-2/2

Previous 1 Next

You may also visit to the reports pages to see all of your Instagram business accounts full and mention reply reports in one place. Go to Comment Automation > Reports section and then visit Full or mention reply reports to see all accounts report.

The screenshot shows the 'Report section' dashboard. On the left is a sidebar menu with categories: Dashboard, Import Account, ADMINISTRATION (System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation, Comment Automation, Automation Campaign, Report), and MESSENGER TOOLS. The main content area has a blue header with 'Report section' and 'Admin'. Below the header are three report cards: 'Auto comment reply report', 'Full account reply reports', and 'Mention reply report'. Each card has a description and a 'See report >' link. The 'Full account reply reports' and 'Mention reply report' cards are highlighted with red boxes.





Full Reply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Full Autoreply report

Instagram accounts

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		18042440467210594		27, 2020 09:02 AM
2		17885314828691457		Sep 27, 2020 09:03 AM

10

1-2/2

Mention Reply report

Instagram reply / Create Campaign / Mention Autoreply report

Instagram accounts

#	Thumbnail	Post id	Actions	Last replied at
1		17889350893615836		27, 2020 09:04 AM
2		18114940318095355		Sep 27, 2020 09:04 AM

10

1-2/2

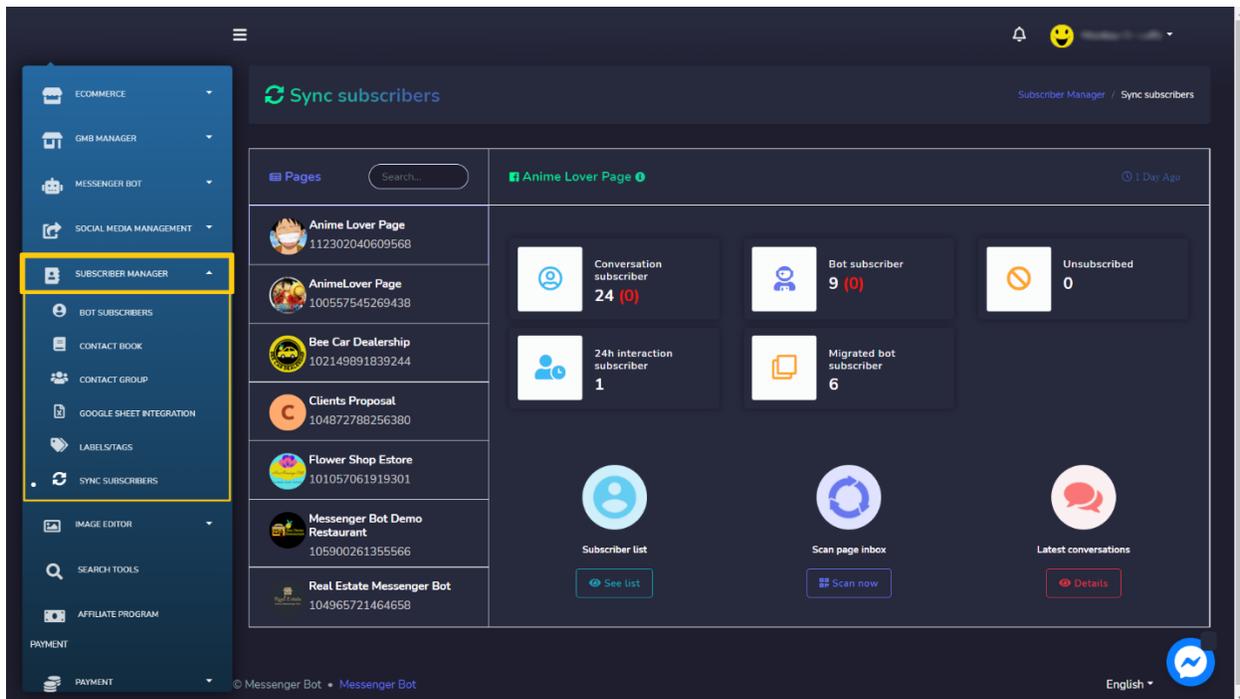




Subscriber Manager

Subscriber Manager allows you to get the synchronization of subscribers, view bot subscribers, view labels, and manage the messaging/emailing activities in different contact groups. This view gives a full control messenger subscriber. It allows you to create new contacts and contact groups.

To view this section, navigate to **Subscriber Manager** from the navigation menu located at the left under **Social Media Management** section. Tab on **Subscriber Manager**.



Under Subscriber Manager, we have:

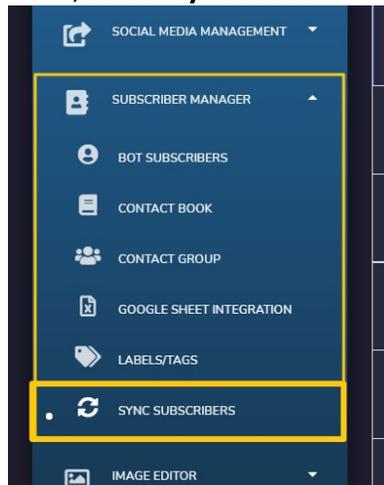
- Bot Subscribers
- Contact Book
- Contact Group
- Google Sheet Integration
- Labels/Tags
- Sync Subscribers





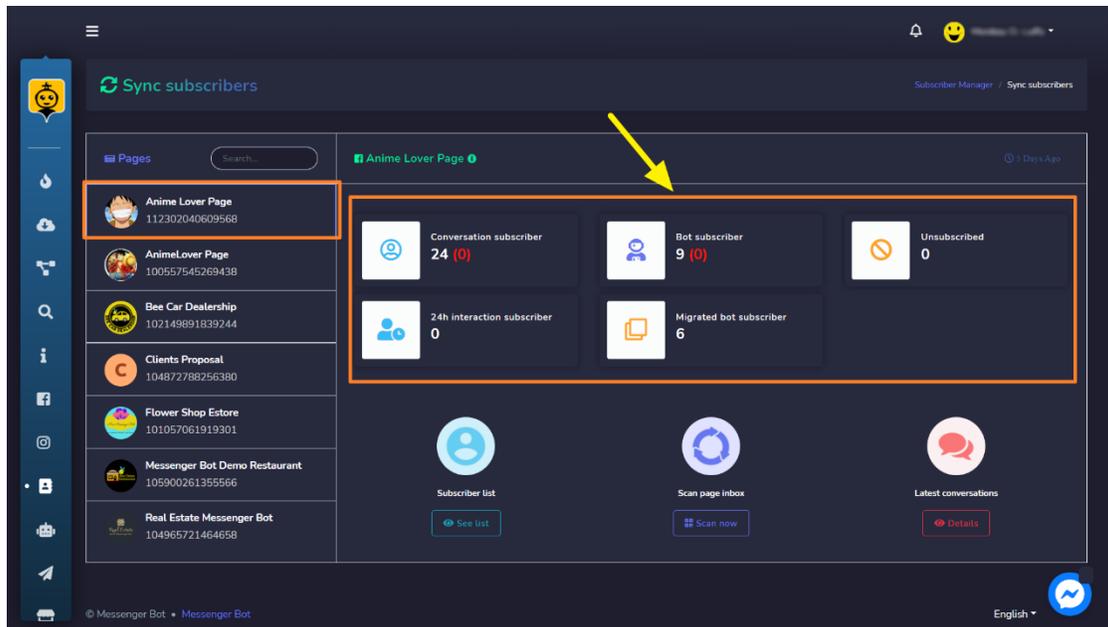
Sync subscribers

To access the sync subscribers section, select **Sync subscribers** as shown below.



A dashboard will appear containing a number of each of the following subscribers:

- Conversation subscriber
- Bot subscriber
- Unsubscribed
- 24h interaction subscriber
- Migrated bot subscriber



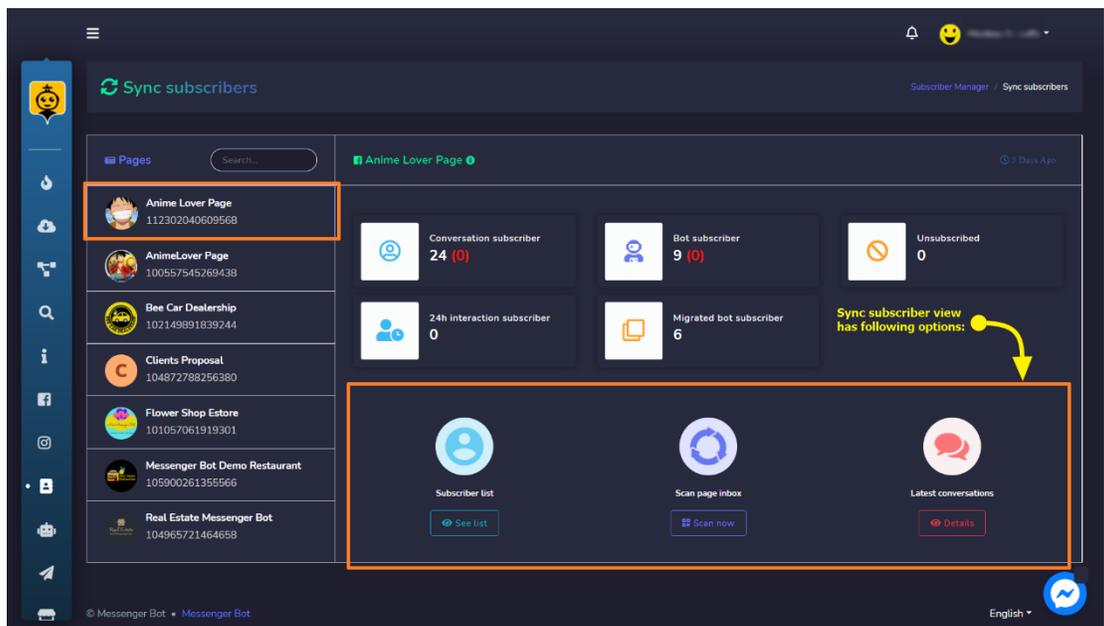
The **Sync subscriber** view has the following options:

- Subscriber list





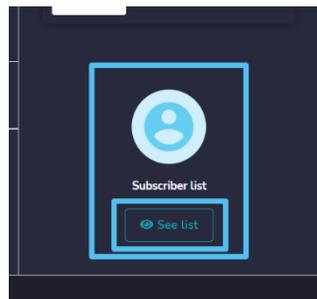
- Scan page inbox
- Latest conversation



Subscriber list

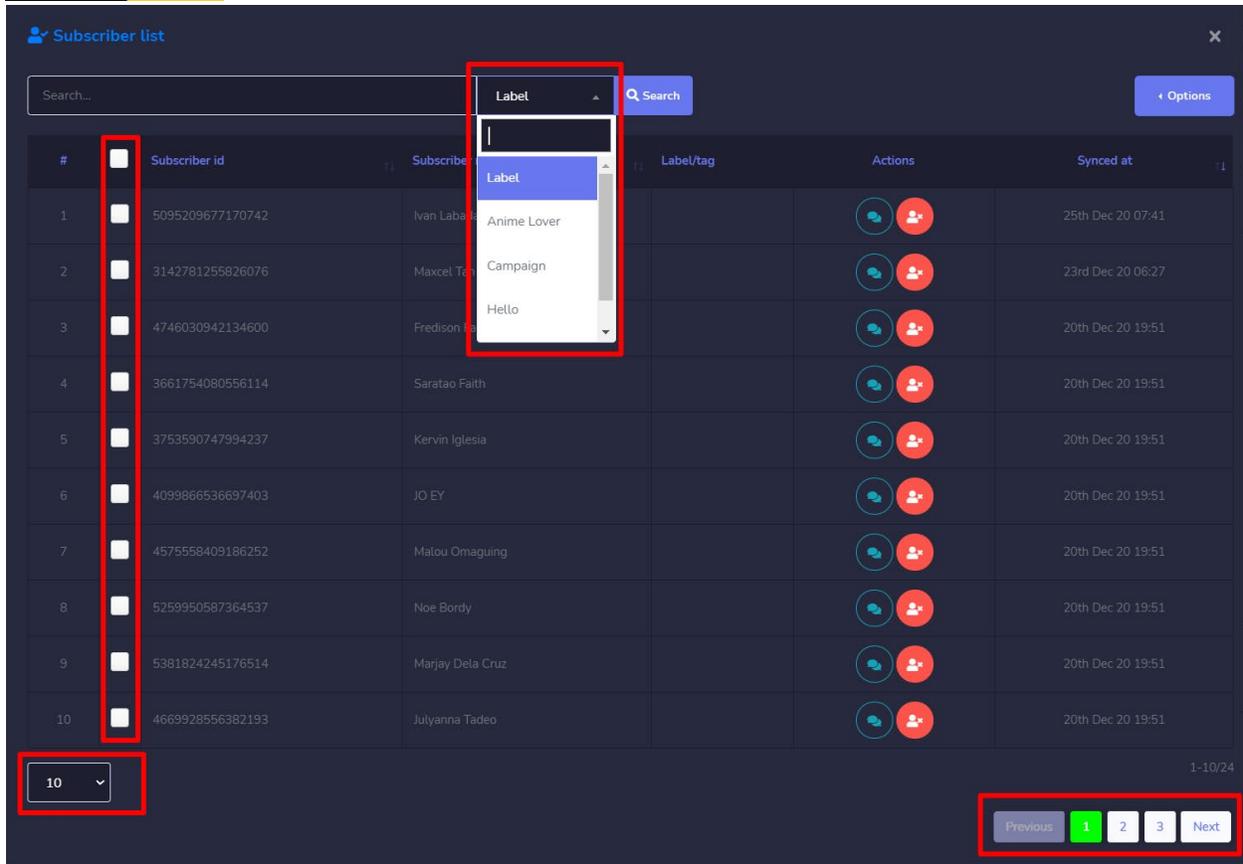
You can view the subscriber by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **See list** option from the **Subscriber List**.



- 2) A modal containing a list of all subscriber's names and IDs will appear on the screen. Users can search for a particular subscriber by using the **search bar**. Users can also bulk select the subscribers to perform different actions like **Assign label**, **Download list**, etc. Users can also search for a particular label for a narrow search.





Subscriber list

Search...

Label

Label

Anime Lover

Campaign

Hello

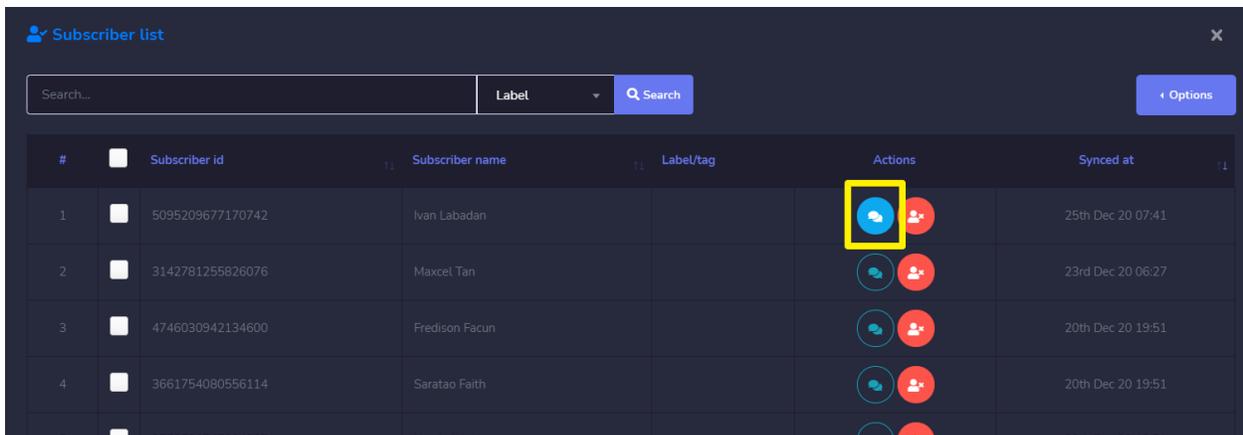
#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	4575558409186252	Matou Omaguing			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	5259950587364537	Noe Bordy			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	4669928556382193	Julyanna Tadeo			20th Dec 20 19:51

10

1-10/24

Previous 1 2 3 Next

3) To visit the comment, select  against the subscriber whose comment you want to view.



Subscriber list

Search...

Label

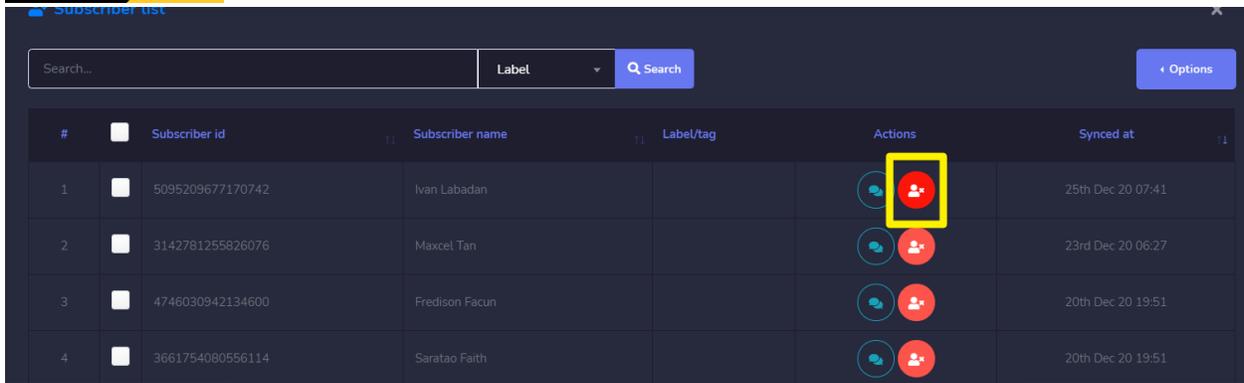
Search

Options

#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51

4) To unsubscribe the subscriber, select  against the subscriber you want to unsubscribe. A toast message will appear at the right bottom of your screen.

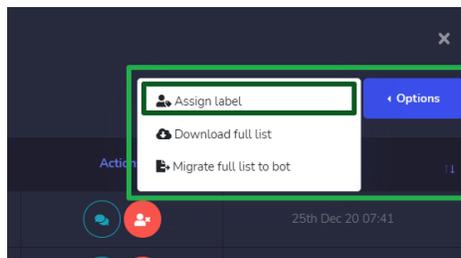




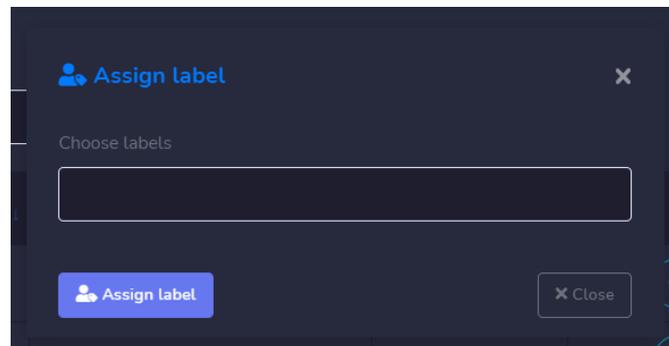
#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	Synced at
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan		 	25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan		 	23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredison Facun		 	20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754080556114	Saratao Faith		 	20th Dec 20 19:51

✓ Subscriber has been unsubscribed successfully. ✕

5) To perform different actions on subscriber list, you can either bulk select or select separately the subscribers and perform following actions by selecting **Options** button:

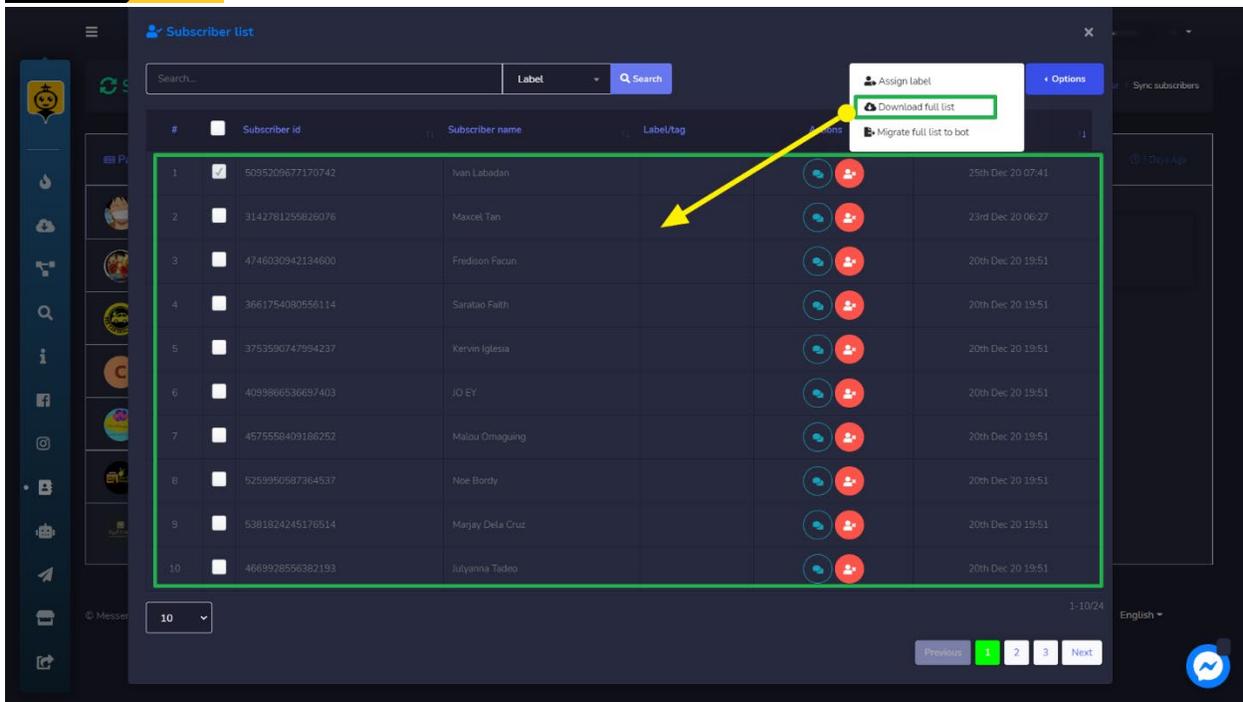


- **Assign label:** You can select individually or bulk select the subscribers and then assign the label to selected subscribers.



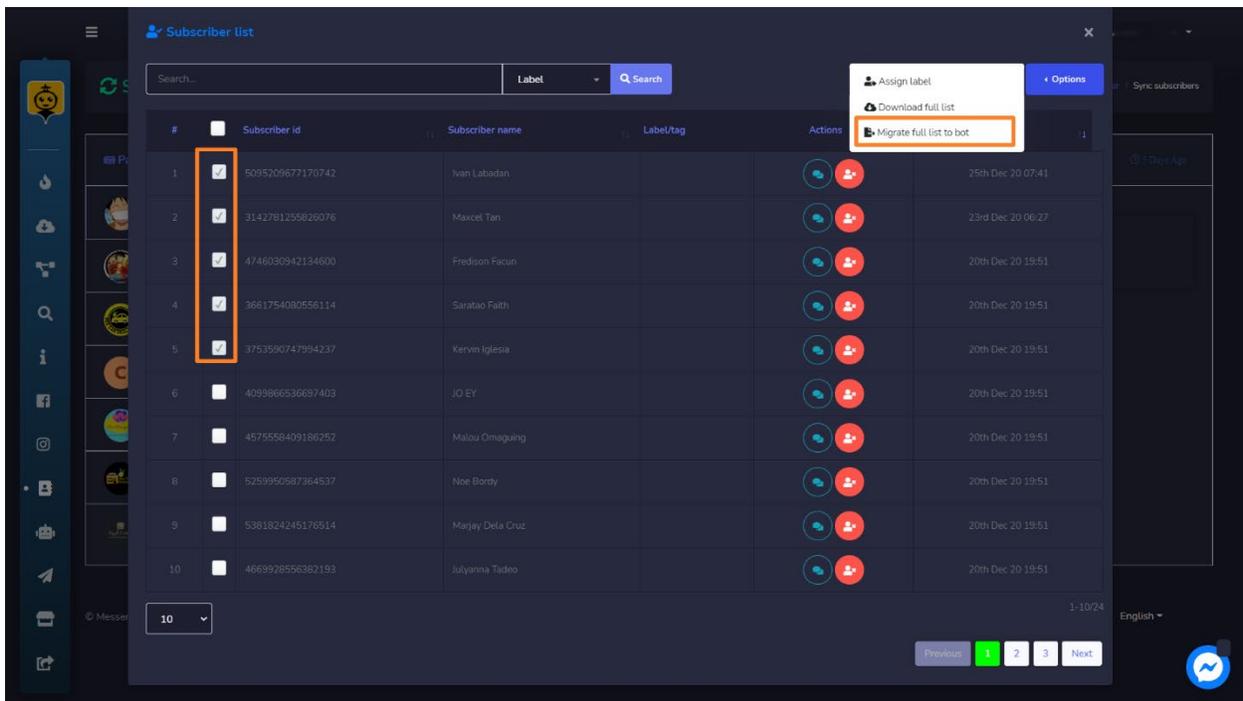
- **Download full list:** You download the .CSV file version of the list of subscribers using this option.





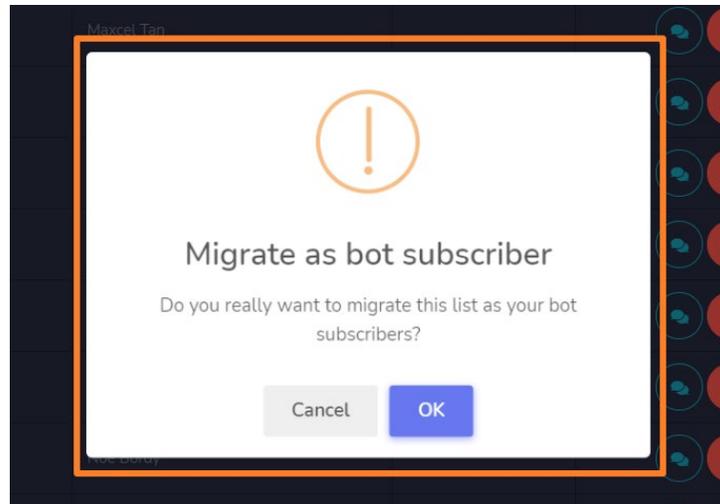
#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredson Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754090556114	Saratiao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	4575558409186252	Malou Omaguang			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	5259950597364537	Noe Bordy			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	4669978556382193	Julyanna Taddo			20th Dec 20 19:51

- **Migrate full list to bot:** You can select individually or bulk select the subscribers and then migrate the list to bot subscribers list.



#	Subscriber id	Subscriber name	Label/tag	Actions	
1	5095209677170742	Ivan Labadan			25th Dec 20 07:41
2	3142781255826076	Maxcel Tan			23rd Dec 20 06:27
3	4746030942134600	Fredson Facun			20th Dec 20 19:51
4	3661754090556114	Saratiao Faith			20th Dec 20 19:51
5	3753590747994237	Kervin Iglesia			20th Dec 20 19:51
6	4099866536697403	JO EY			20th Dec 20 19:51
7	4575558409186252	Malou Omaguang			20th Dec 20 19:51
8	5259950597364537	Noe Bordy			20th Dec 20 19:51
9	5381824245176514	Marjay Dela Cruz			20th Dec 20 19:51
10	4669978556382193	Julyanna Taddo			20th Dec 20 19:51





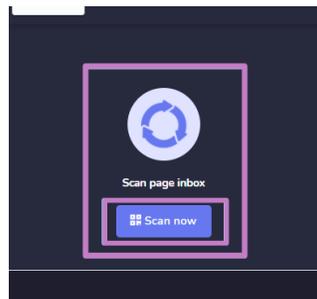
Note

- In case if you don't have selected any subscriber then it will not assign any label or migrate list to bot

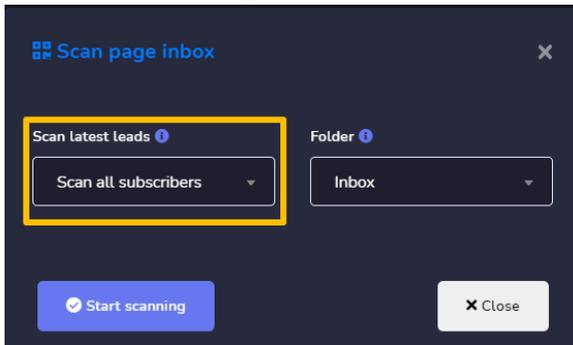
Scan page inbox

You can import the subscribers and scan the page inbox by following the steps given below:

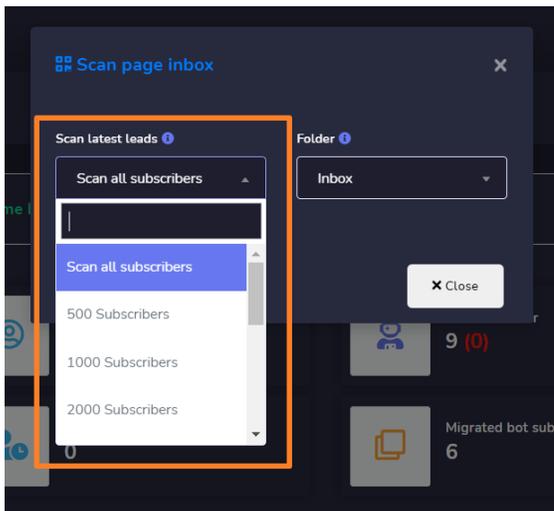
- 1) Select **Scan now** option from the **Scan page inbox**.



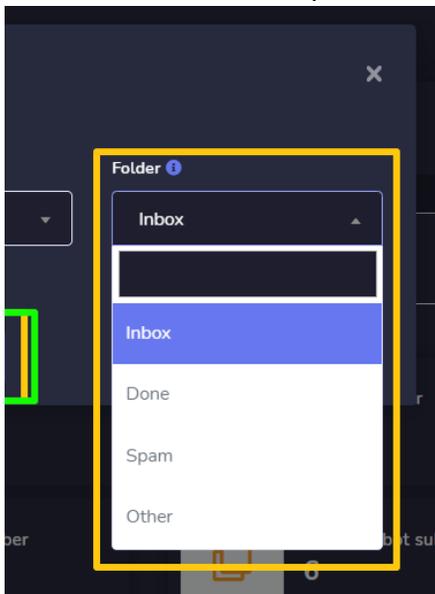
2) A modal containing **Scan latest leads** and **Folder** options will appear.



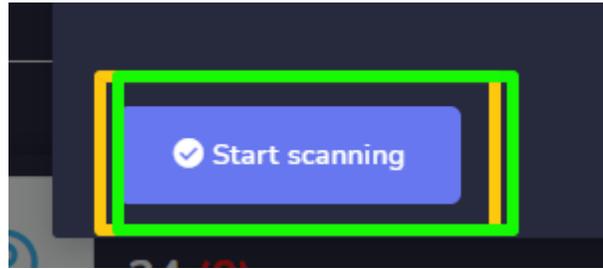
Select the number of subscribers in **Scan latest leads field** from the dropdown menu.



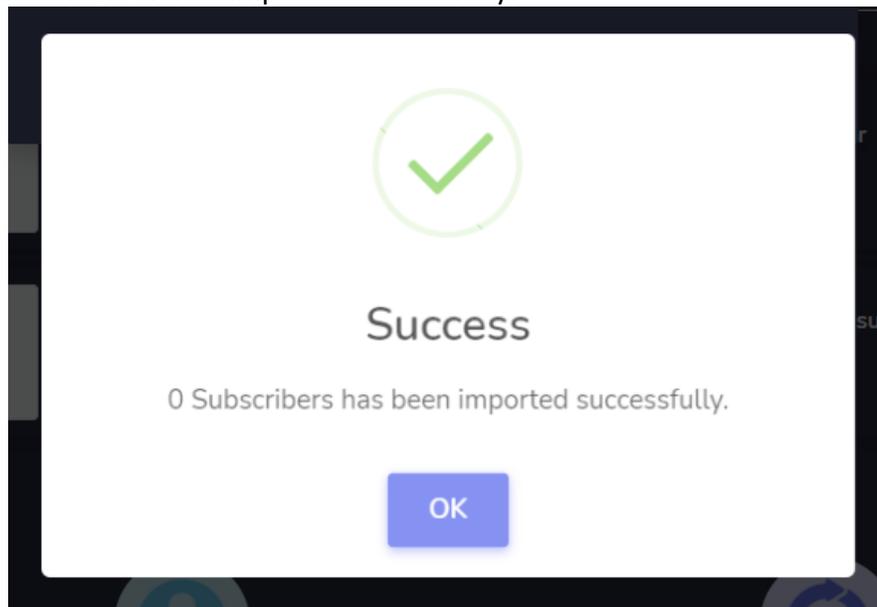
Select the folder which you want to scan from the **Folder** dropdown menu.



3) Select **Start scanning**.



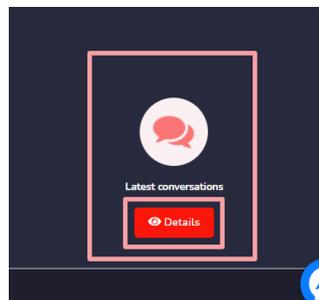
All selected subscribers will be imported successfully.



Latest Conversations

You can access the latest conversations by following the steps given below:

1) Select **Details** option from **Latest Conversations** section.

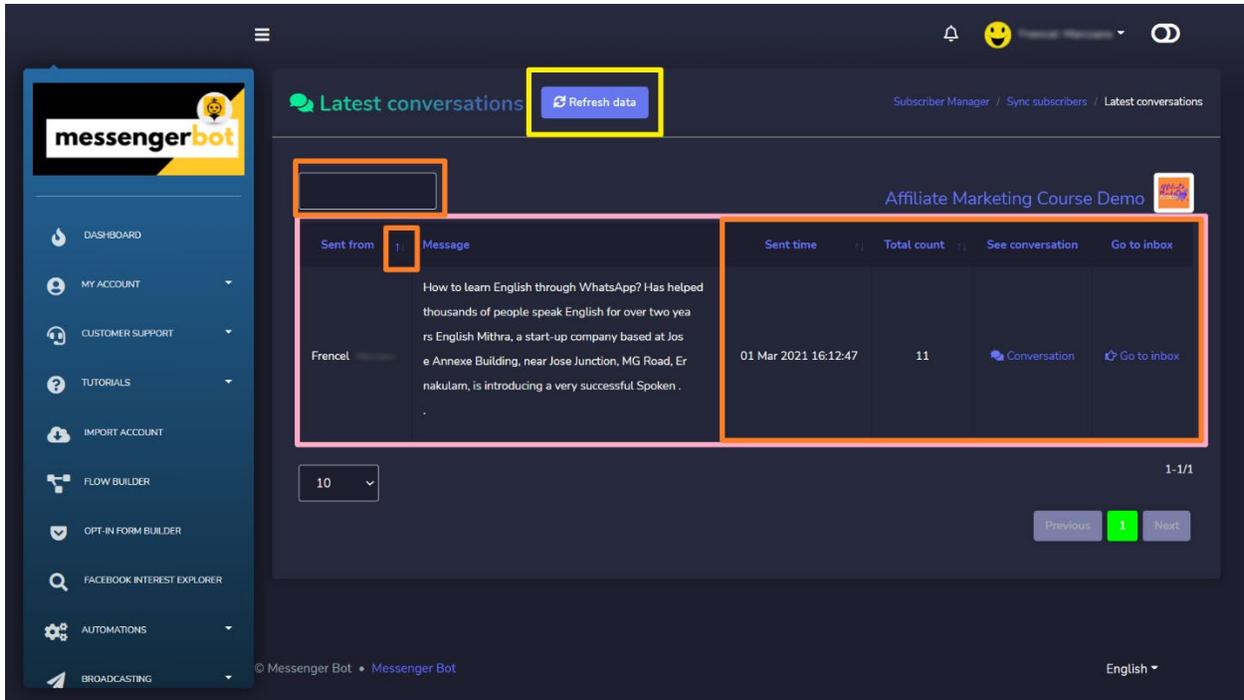


2) A modal will appear containing a list of messages from different subscribers. You can order the list by selecting the arrows in ascending or descending order. You can refresh the list by

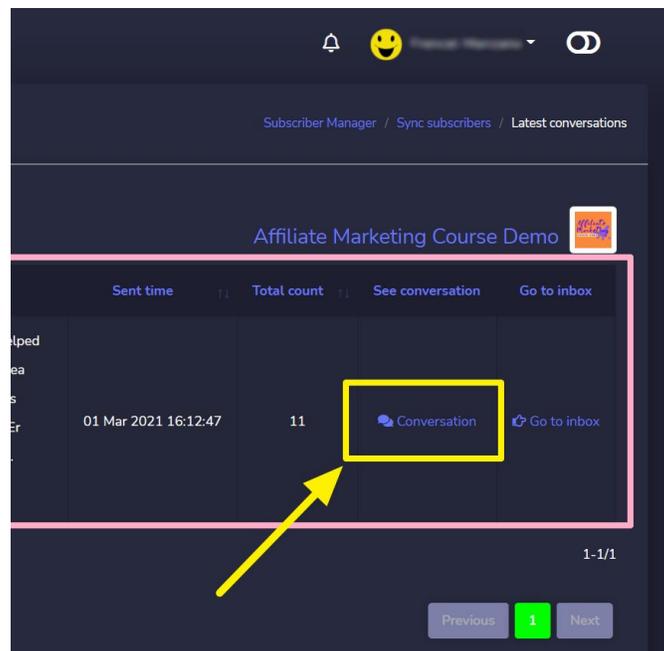


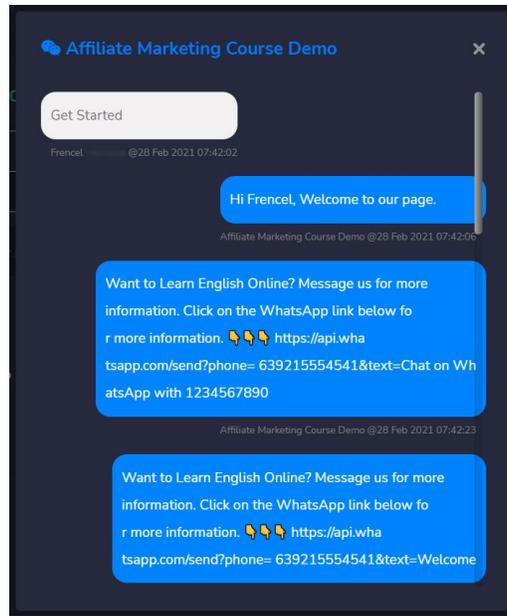


selecting [Refresh data](#) option. You can search for a particular message using the **search bar**. The table provides a **total count** of the message along with the summary of **time**, when it was sent, and the **conversation link**.

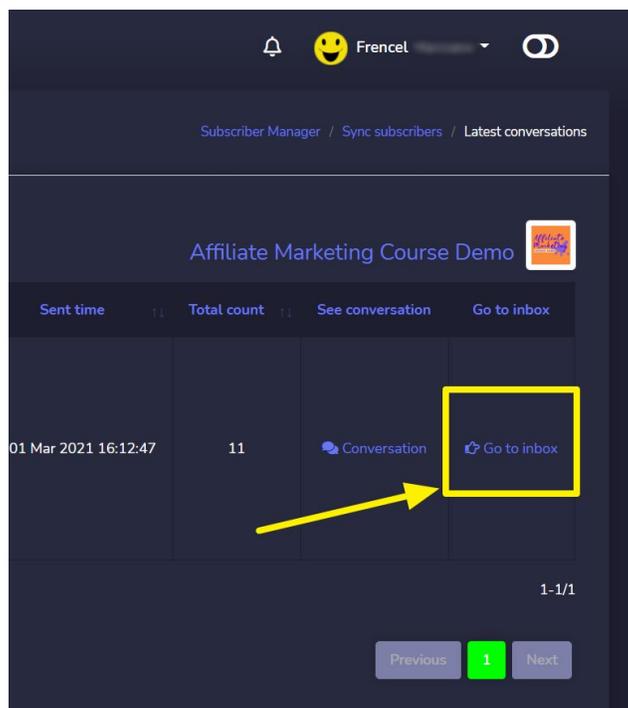


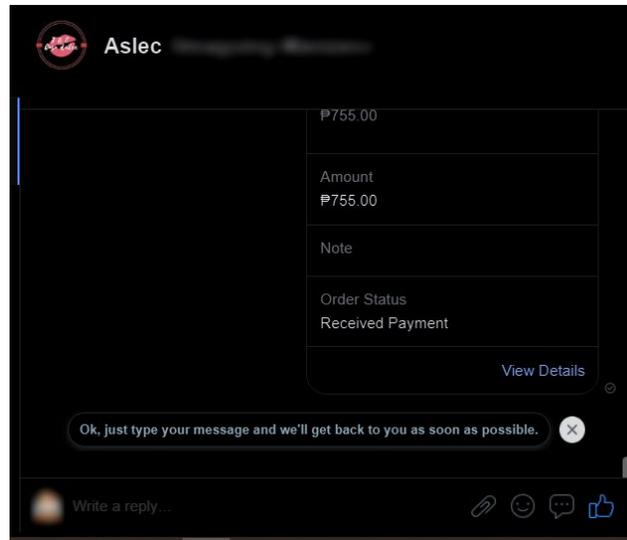
3) You can access the conversation by selecting the **conversation option** against the comment you want to view.





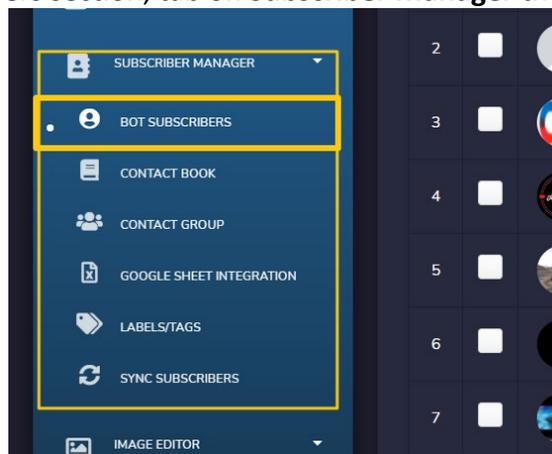
- 4) You can access the conversation and redirect to the inbox as well from this modal by selecting **Go to inbox** option against the comment you want to view.





Bot subscribers

To access the bot subscribers section, tab on **Subscriber Manager** then select **Bot Subscribers**.



A list of bot subscribers will appear on your screen. It will provide information of your bot subscribers, which includes the avatar, first & last name of the bots, and the time they synced. You can arrange the list in **ascending** or **descending** order by selecting the arrows from the table header. You can search for a particular bot by using the **search bar**. You can **limit the number of bots** you want to **view per page**.



messengerbot

Subscriber Manager / Bot subscribers

Page Gender Search... Search Options

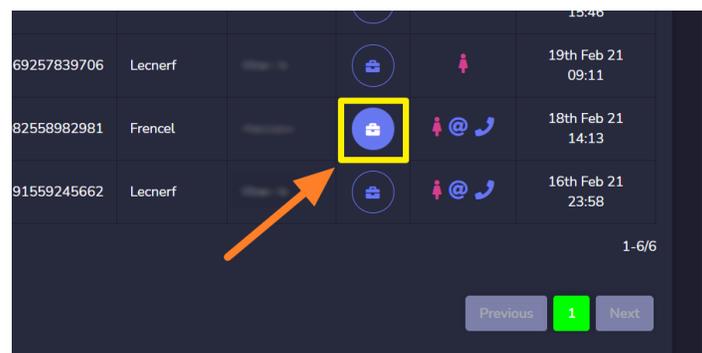
#	Avatar	Page	Subscriber id	First name	Last name	Actions	Quick info	Synced at
1		Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	5092077037500998	Frencel				28th Feb 21 07:42
2		Clients Portal Demo	3730845146952261	Frencel				25th Feb 21 13:18
3		Bee Car Dealership Demo	3605320326252772	Frencel				22nd Feb 21 15:46
4		Messenger Bot Fashion Demo	3489369257839706	Lecnerf				19th Feb 21 09:11
5		Bee Demo Restaurant	2578082558982981	Frencel				18th Feb 21 14:13
6		Bee Demo Restaurant	3941191559245662	Lecnerf				16th Feb 21 23:58

10 1-6/6 Previous 1 Next

Subscriber Actions

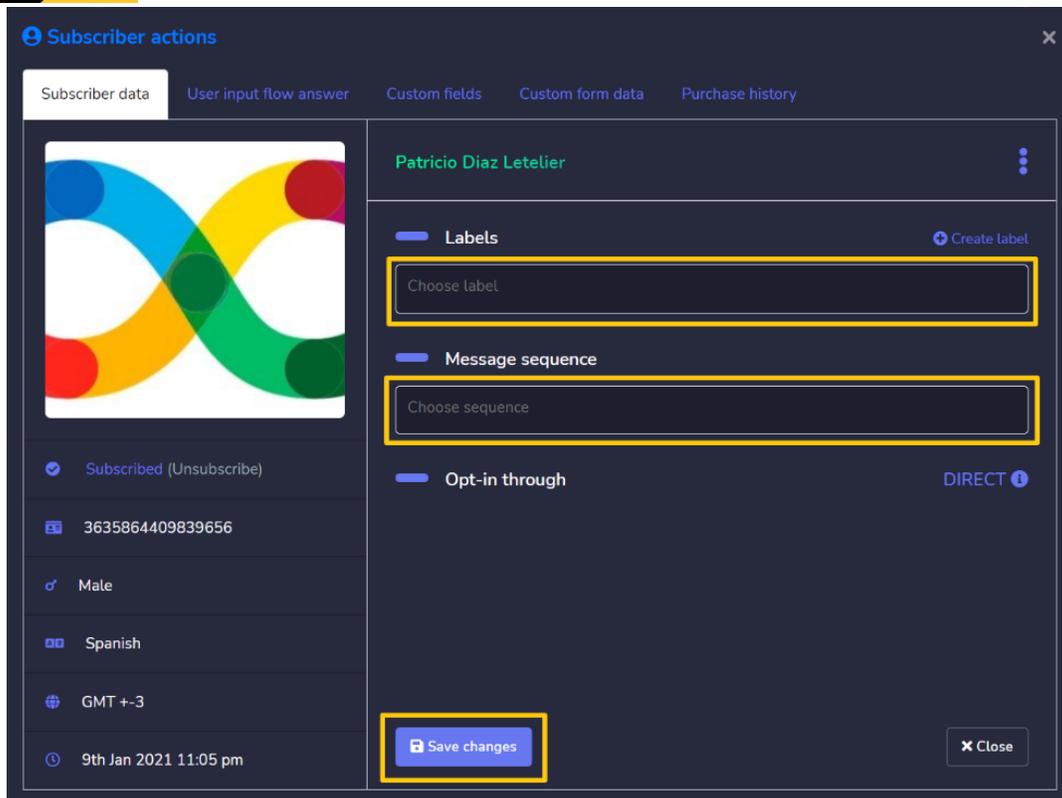
To perform different bot subscriber actions, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Click on  icon to perform different subscriber actions.

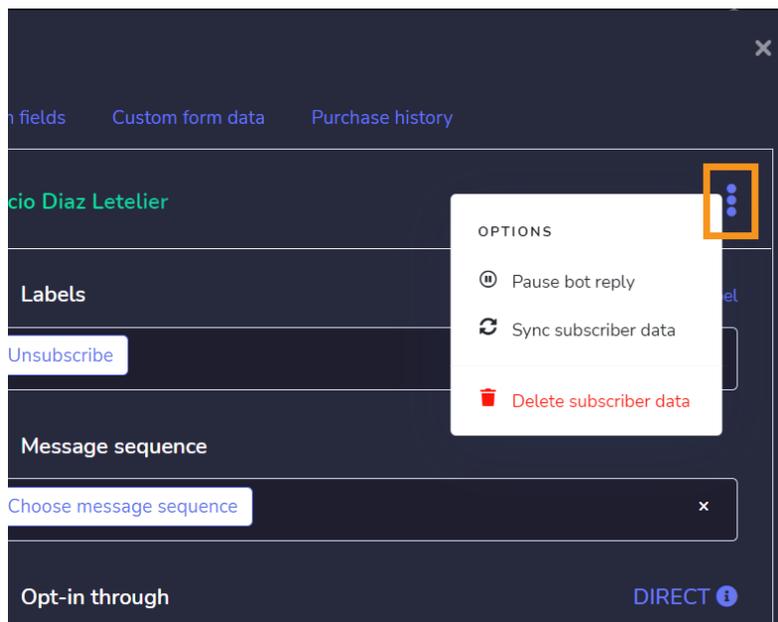


- 2) A subscribers actions window will appear. Enter the subscribers data in **Labels** field. You can also create a new label by selecting **create label**.
- 3) Choose a sequence for **Message sequence** field from the dropdown menu.



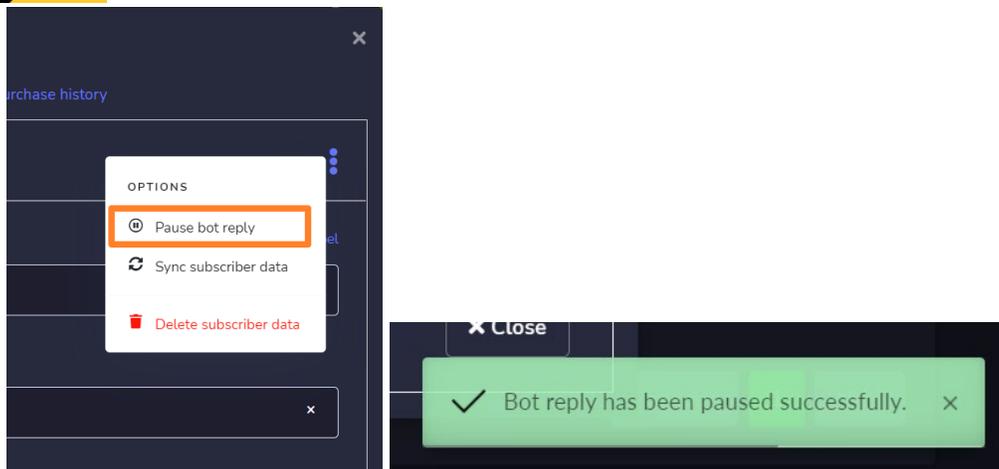


4) To perform further actions, select  icon against the name of the subscriber. It has three options:

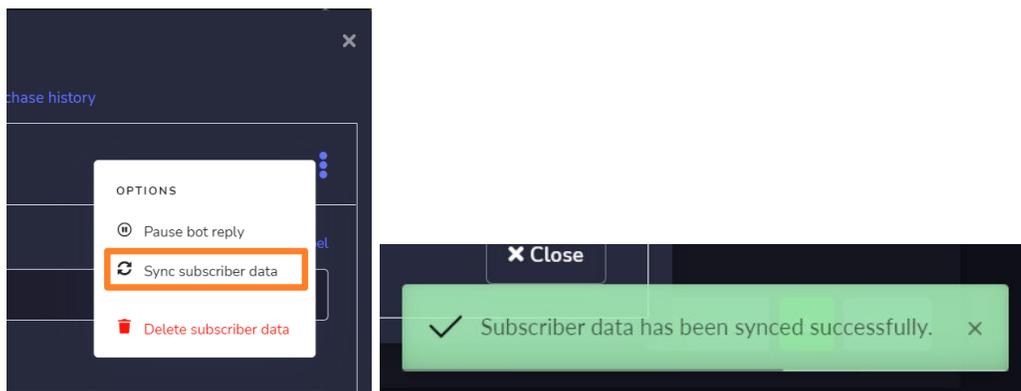


i. **Pause bot reply:** You can pause the bot reply by selecting  **Pause bot reply** option from the dropdown menu.

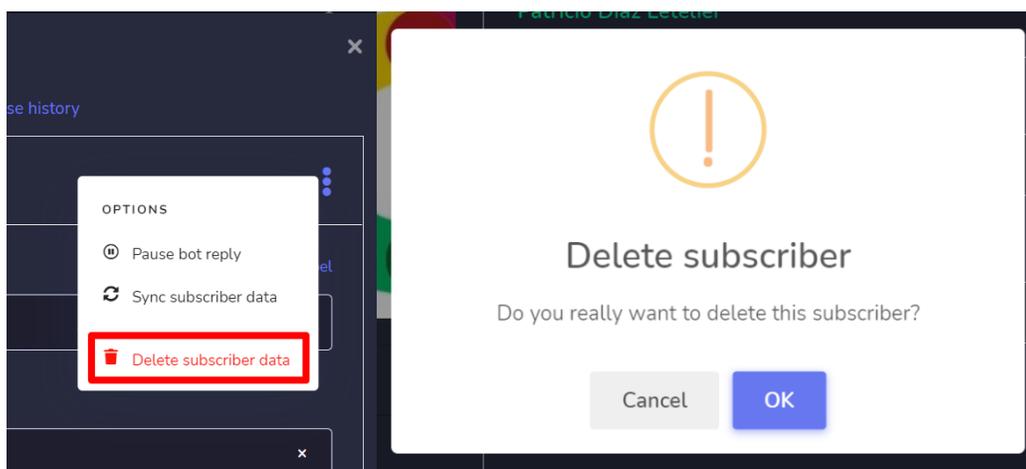




- ii. **Sync subscriber data:** You can synchronize the data of your subscriber by using **Sync subscriber data** option from the dropdown menu.

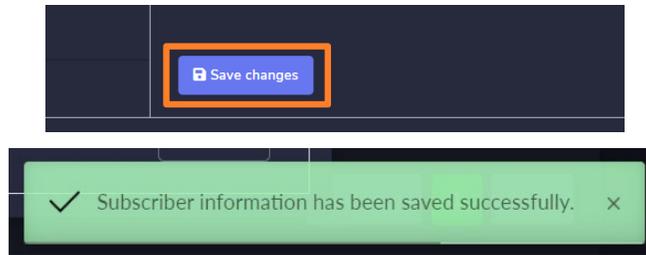


- iii. **Delete subscriber data:** You are also allowed to permanently delete the subscriber from the database by selecting  **Delete subscriber data** option from the dropdown menu.



- 5) Select **Save changes** option to save your actions in **Subscriber data**.

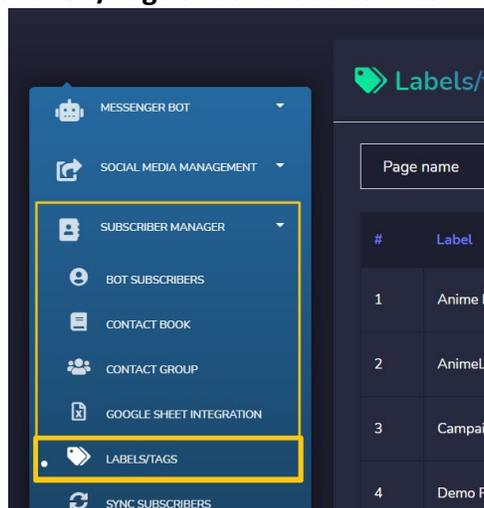




Labels/tags

You can create new labels/tags and use them in your posts and comment. Each label has a specific ID. These labels can be used throughout multiple features of the Messenger Bot application.

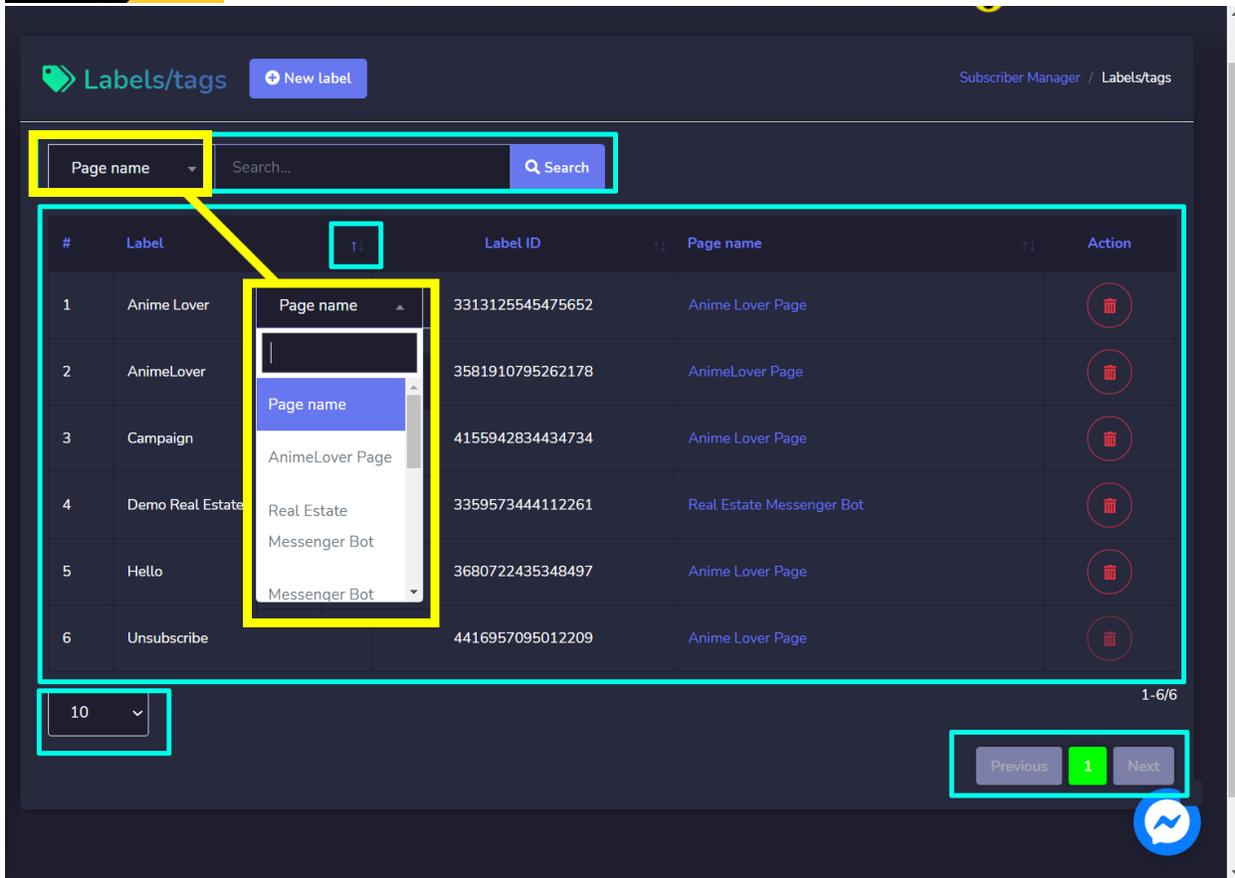
To access this section, select **Labels/Tags** under the **Subscriber Manager** tab on the left menu.



A list of labels/tags will appear on your screen. It will provide information about your created labels along with their IDs.

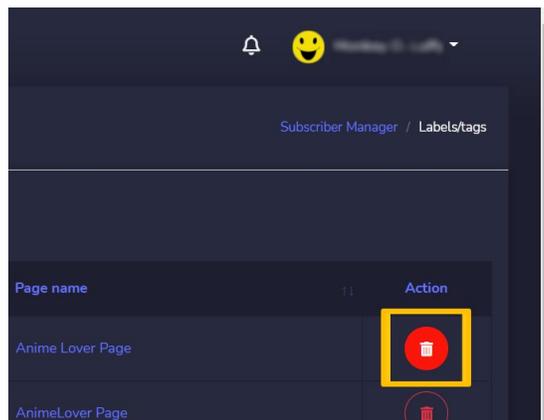
You can arrange the list in **ascending** or **descending** order by selecting the arrows from the table header. You can search for a **particular label** by using the **search bar**. You can limit the **number of labels** you want to view **per page**. You can **select the page** for which you want to view the labels.





#	Label	Label ID	Page name	Action
1	Anime Lover	3313125545475652	Anime Lover Page	
2	AnimeLover	3581910795262178	AnimeLover Page	
3	Campaign	4155942834434734	Anime Lover Page	
4	Demo Real Estate	3359573444112261	Real Estate Messenger Bot	
5	Hello	3680722435348497	Anime Lover Page	
6	Unsubscribe	4416957095012209	Anime Lover Page	

You can **delete** the label by selecting the  icon against the label you want to delete.

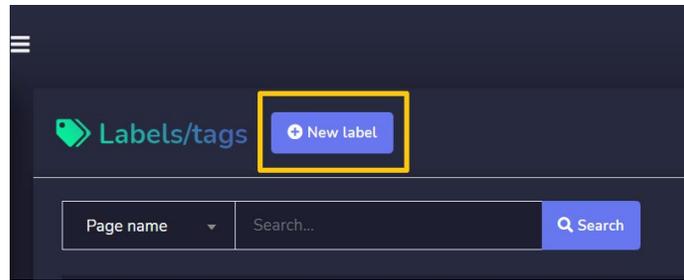


Create New Label

You can create a new label from the **Labels/tags** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

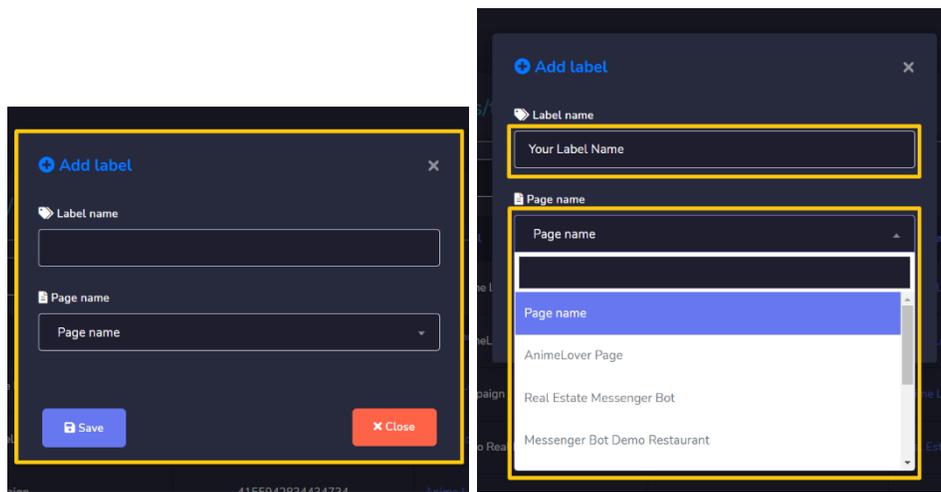
- 1) Select **New label** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.



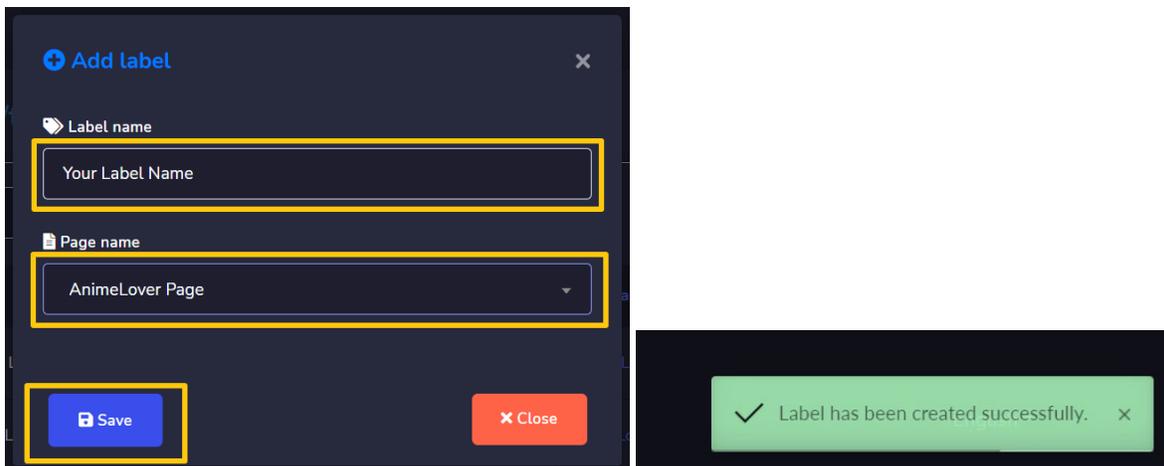


2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide:

- **Label name:** a new label name
- **Page name:** for which you want to make this label



3) Select **Save**, your new label will be created successfully.



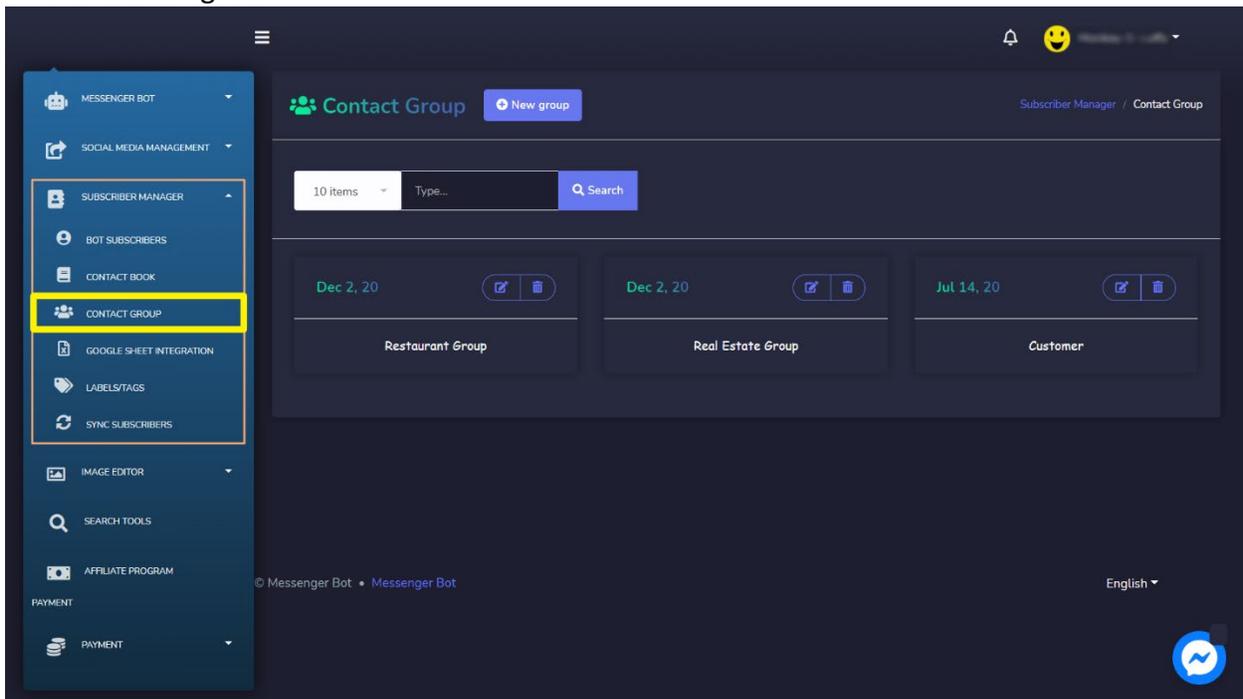
Contact Group

You can create a contact group to perform different bulk actions and manage the SMS/emails group wise. Each group will have multiple contacts.



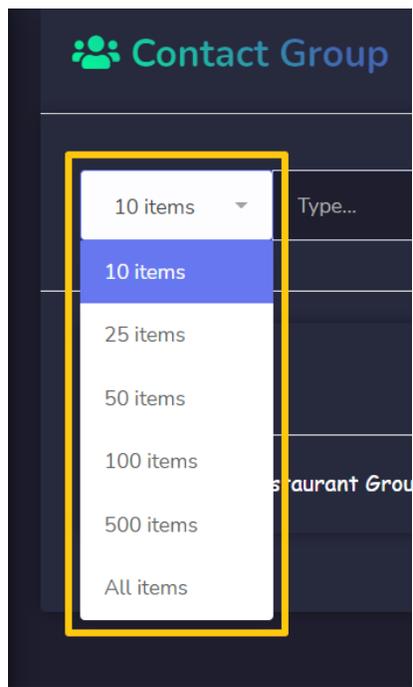


To access the contact group section, select **Contact Group** under **Subscriber Manager** located on the left navigation.

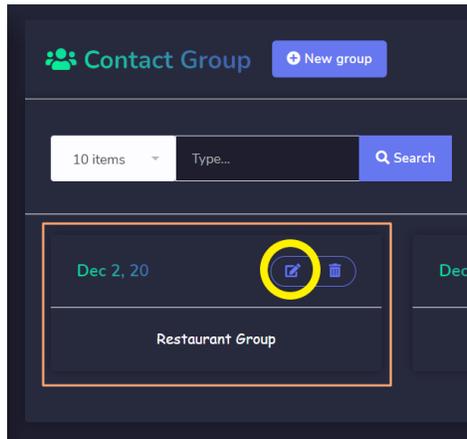


All existing groups will appear on your screen. It will provide information on your existing groups.

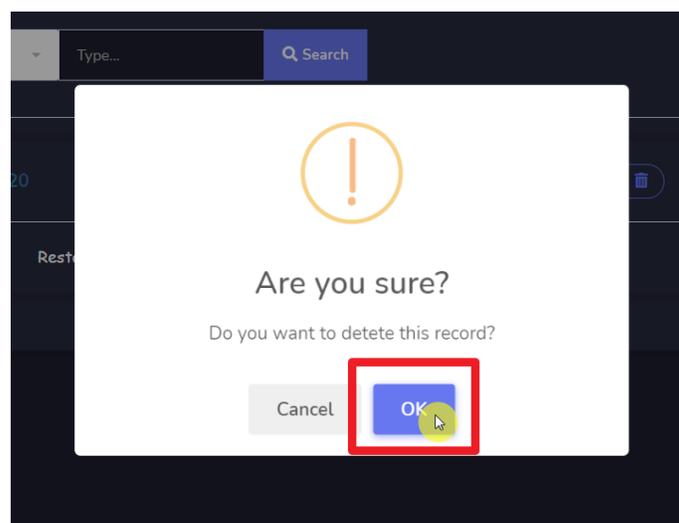
- You can adjust the number of groups to be viewed at a time.



- You can edit the group by selecting the  icon for a particular contact group.



- You can delete the group by selecting the  icon for a particular contact group.

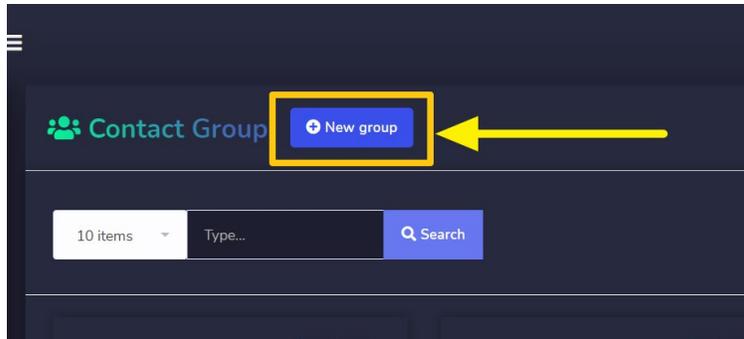




Create New Group

You can create a new group from the **Contact Group** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

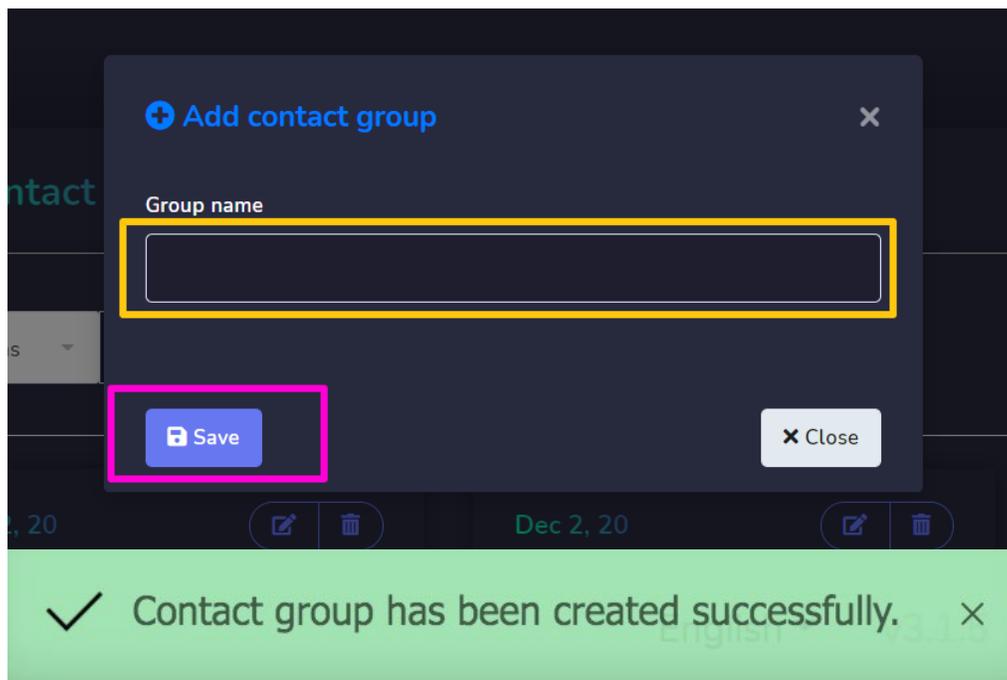
- 1) Select **New group** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.



- 2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide in **Add contact group** screen:

- **Group name:** a new name of the group

- 3) Select **Save**, your new group will be created successfully.



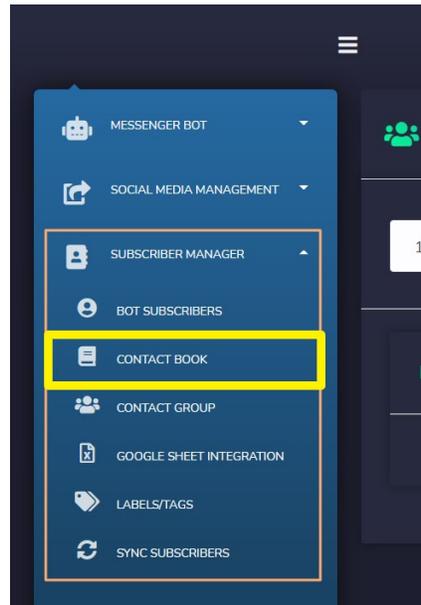
Contact Book

You can create a contact list to perform different bulk actions and manage the SMS/emails group wise. Each contact is made a part of a group.

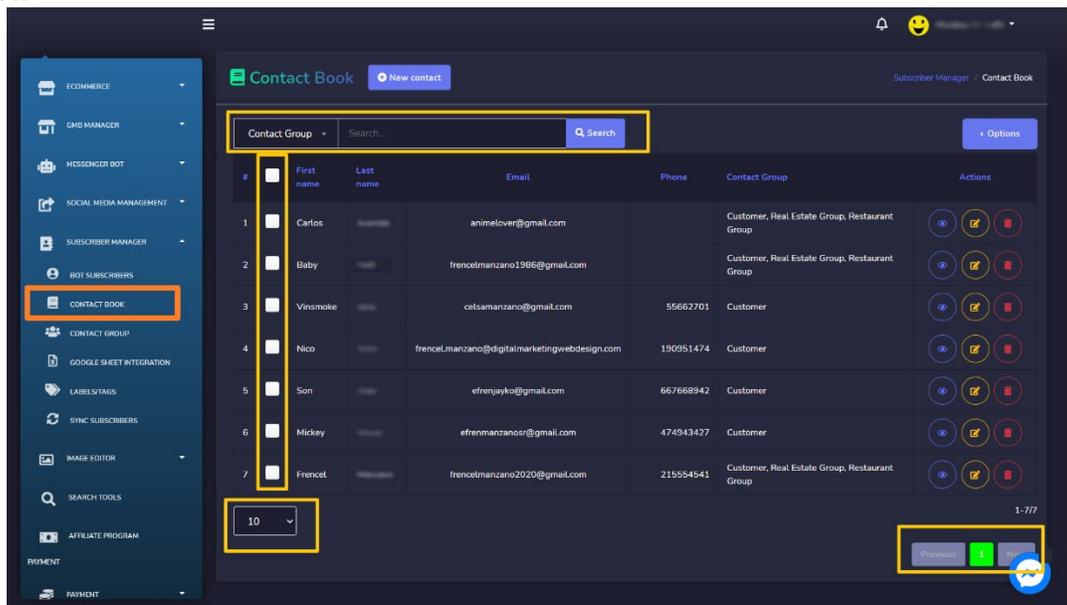




To access the contact group section, select **Contact Book** under **Subscriber Manager** located on the left navigation.

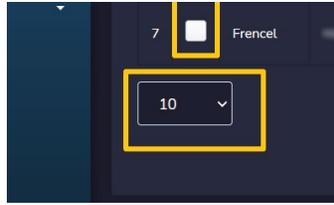


All existing contact will appear on your screen. It will provide information about your existing contacts.

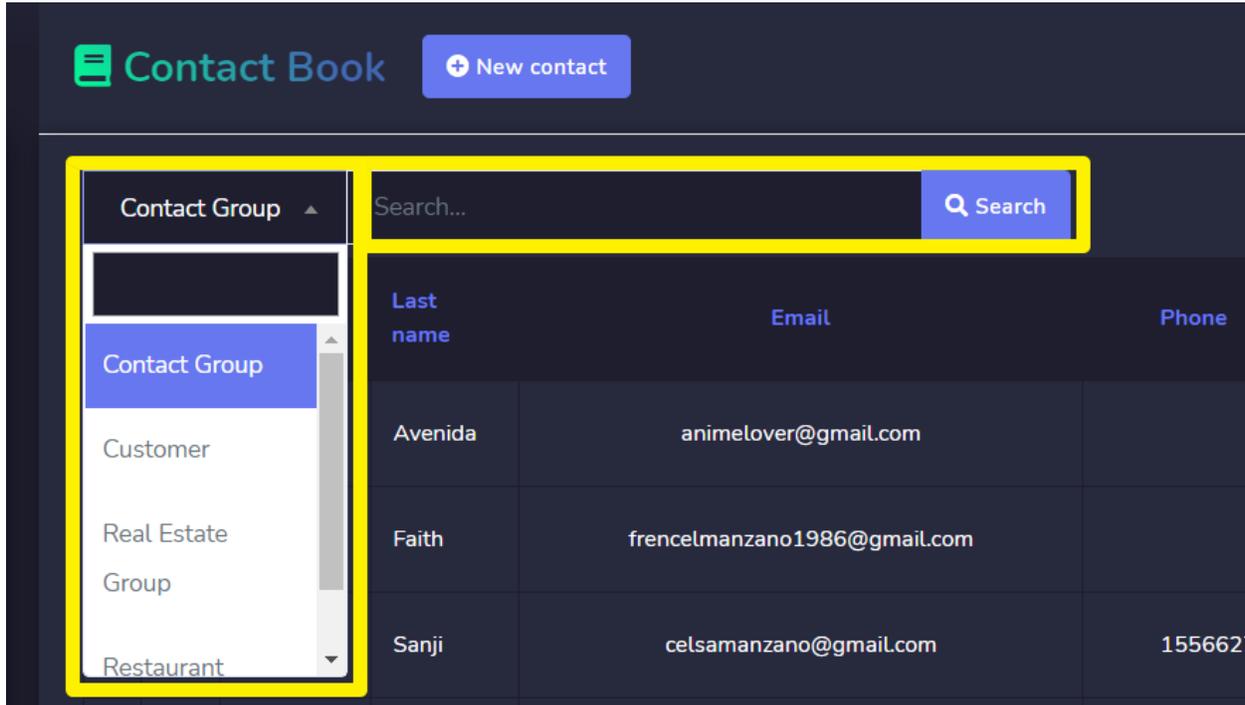


- You can adjust the number of contacts to be viewed at a time.

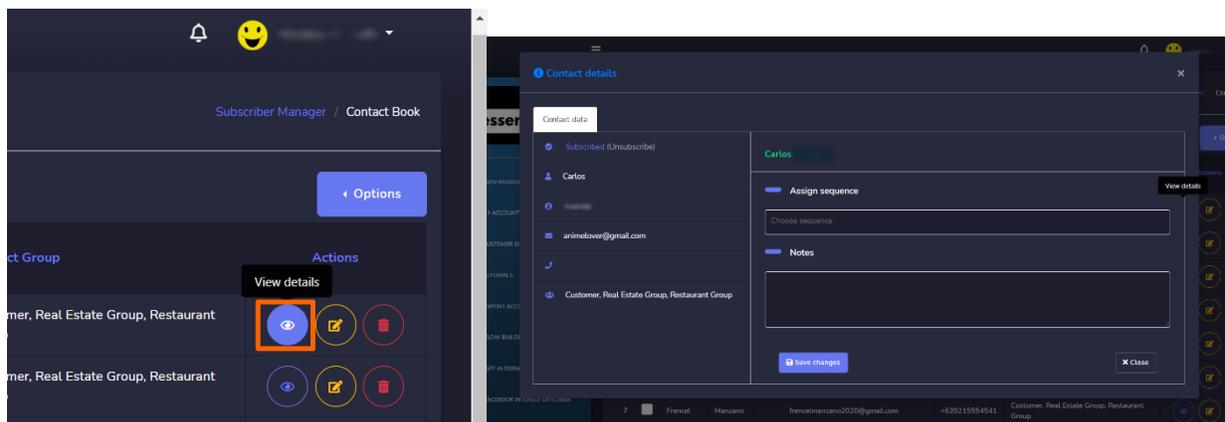




- You can search for a particular contact and contact group by using the search bar.

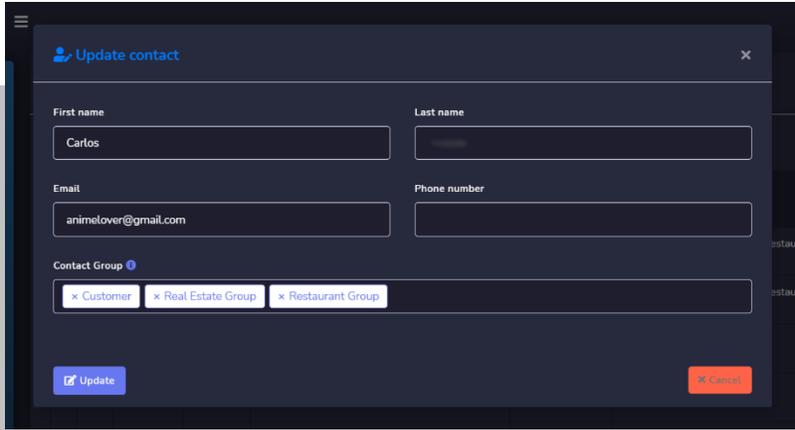
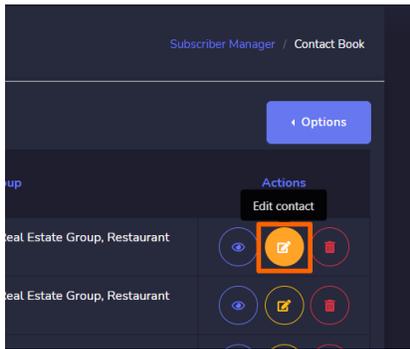


- You are able to view the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

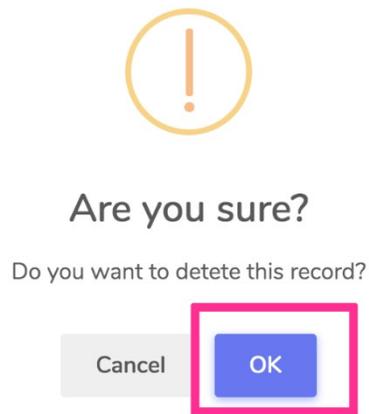
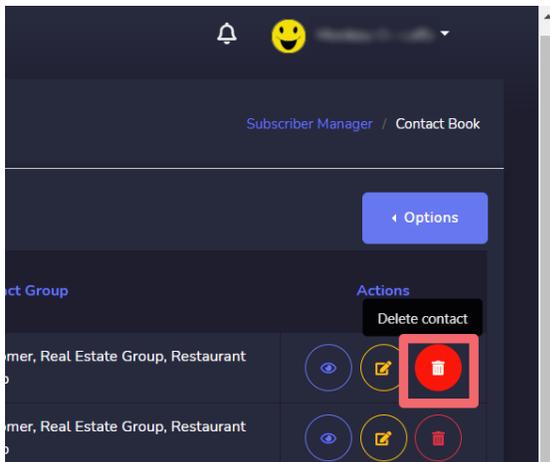


- You can edit the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

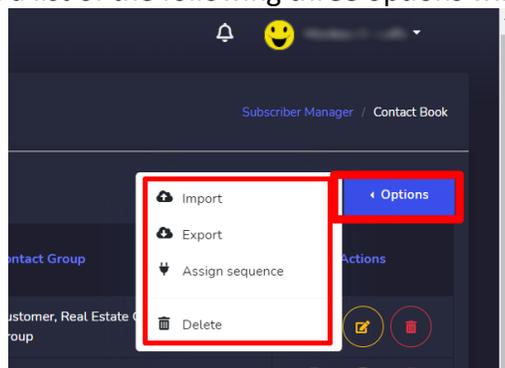




- You can delete the contacts by selecting the  icon for a particular contact.

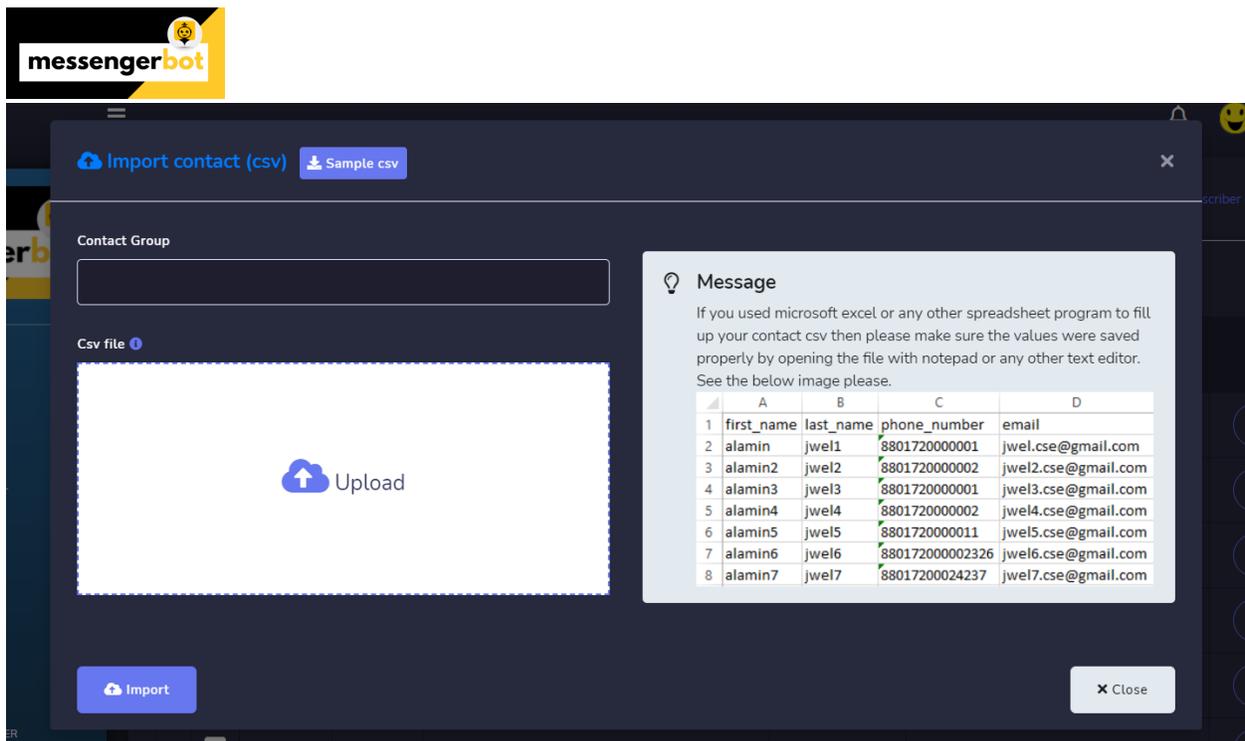


Click on  button a list of the following three options will appear:

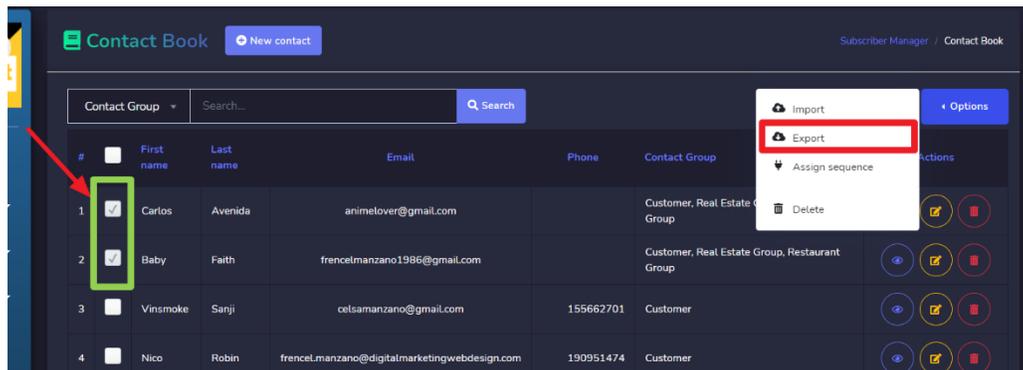


- Import**-You can import the .CSV file to import a set of contacts in application database. Provide the name of the **Contact group** and import the file into it.



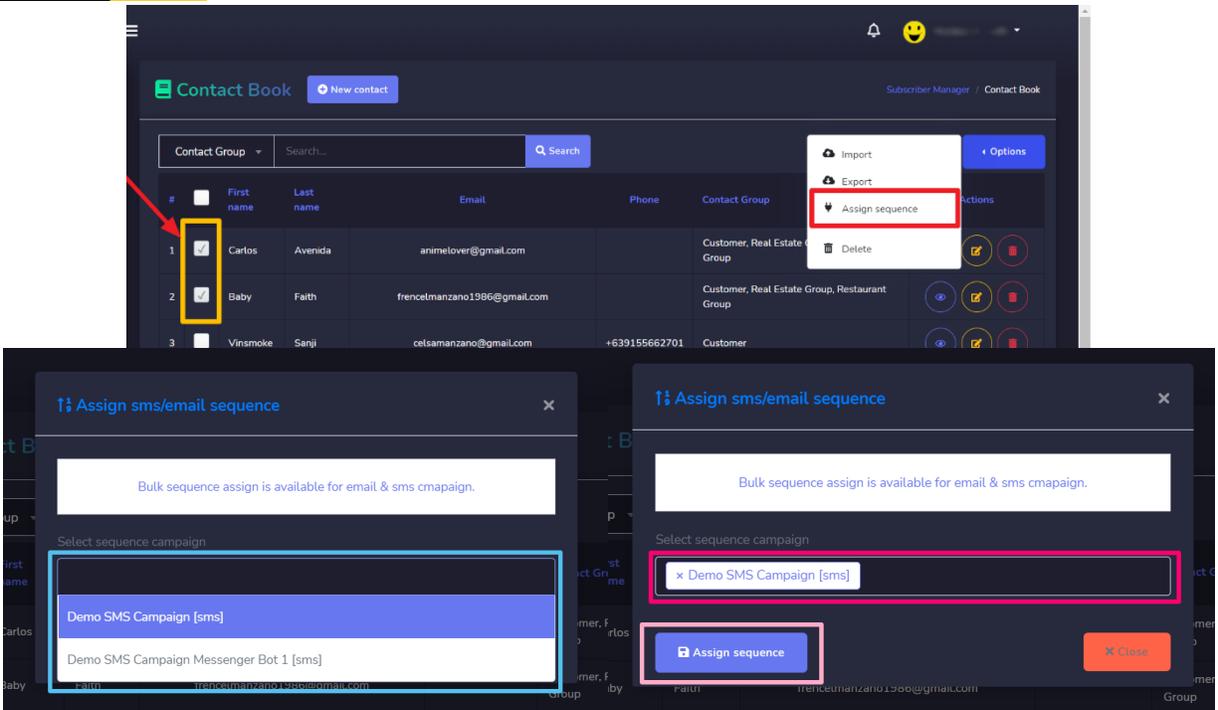


- **Export-** You can also export the .CSV file by selecting the names which you want to export. Mark the checkboxes against the contacts you plan to export.

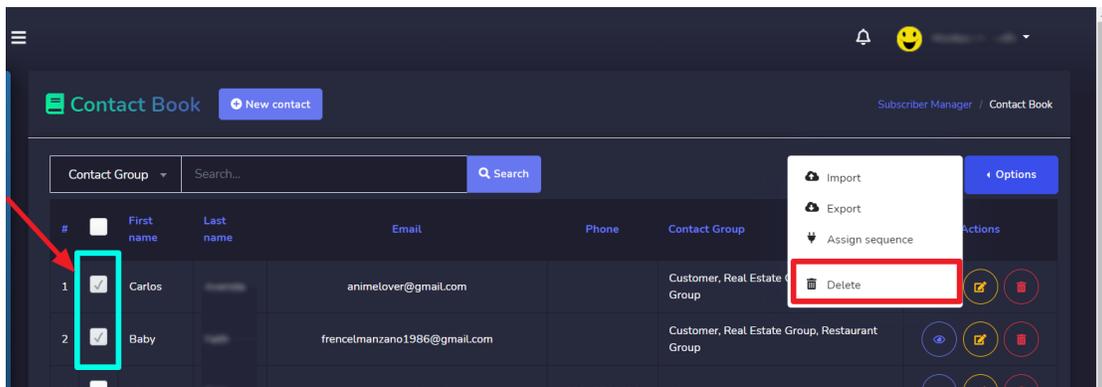


- **Assign Sequence-** You can assign the sequence to a contact by selecting the contact(s) you want to assign then click Assign sequence. Now select your sequence campaign like this as shown below, then select Assign sequence button when done.





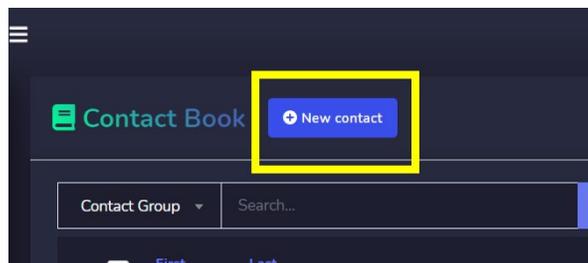
- **Delete**- You can also delete the contact by selecting the names which you want to delete. Mark the checkboxes against the contacts you want to delete.



Create New Contact

You can create a new group from the **Contact Book** screen. Just follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select **New contact** from the top of the Labels/tags screen.

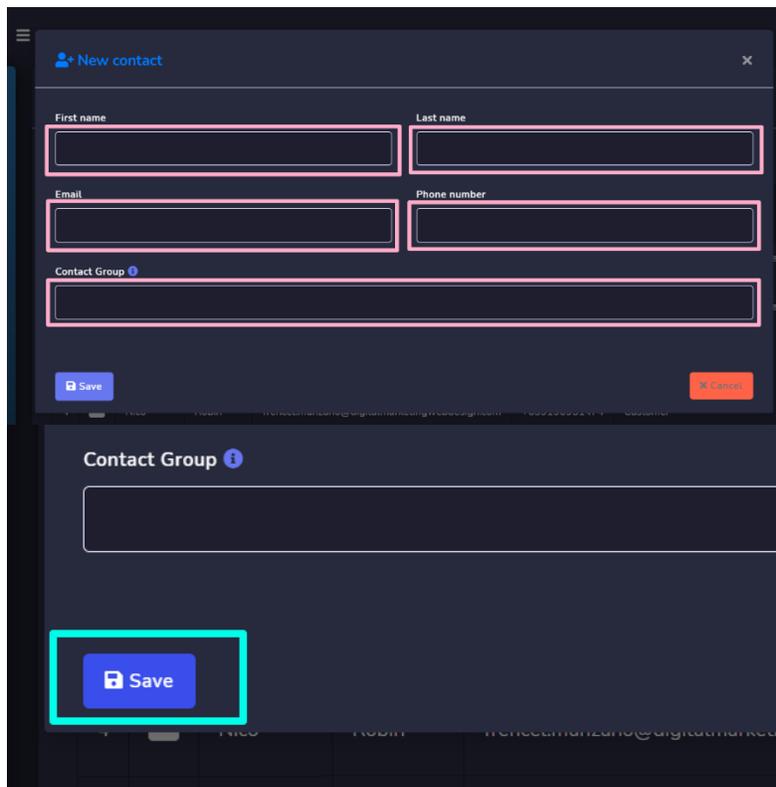




2) A modal Add label will appear on the screen. You need to provide in **Add contact group** screen:

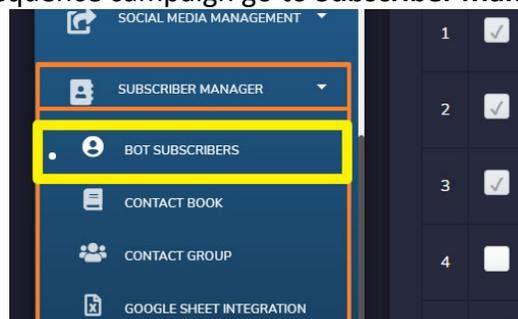
- **First name**
- **Last name**
- **Email**
- **Phone number**
- **Contact group:** to which the contact will be added

3) Select **Save**, your new contact will be created successfully.



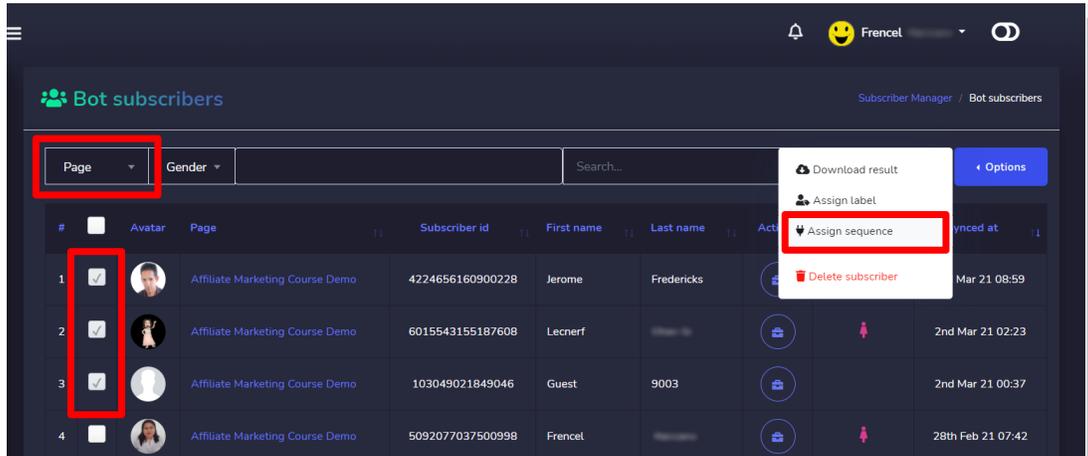
Bulk Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign

To assign bulk email/sms sequence campaign go to **Subscriber Manager -> Bot Subscribers,**

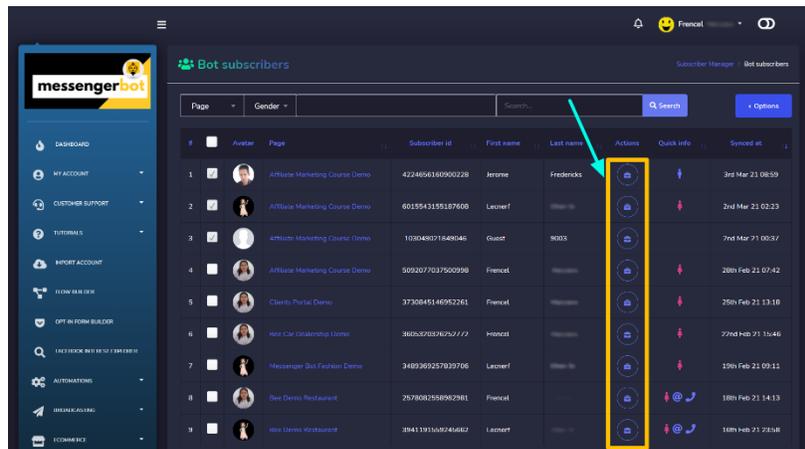




select your **page** and select your **bot subscriber(s)**, either 1 or more. Then choose **Assign Sequence** from the Option button. Select **sequence campaigns** and hit **Assign Sequence** button to save.

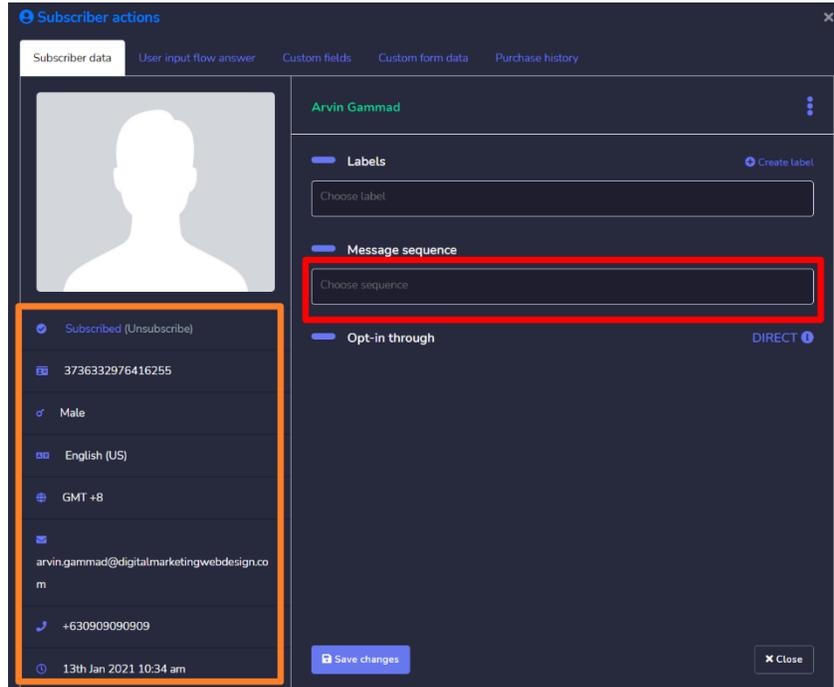


See the assigned sequence on the subscriber's details modal by click on the subscriber's action button.





You can also assign sequence campaigns manually to subscribers by click on the individual Subscribers action button.

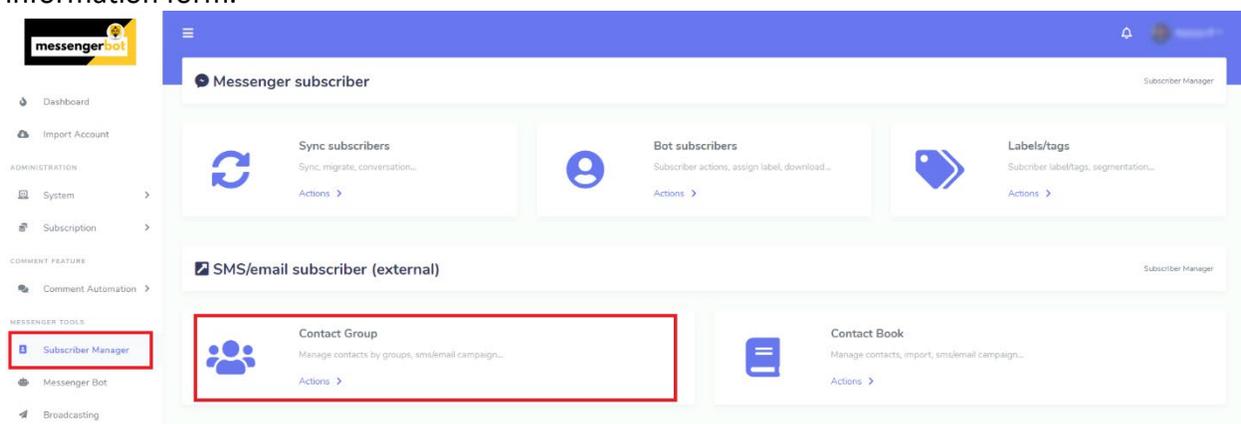


How to Import External Email SMS contact in Messenger Bot.App:

You can add contact (Email, Phone Number) in Messenger Bot.App in two ways.

1. Manual Contact Add
2. Contact Import From CSV File Upload

For both, you must have contact group. So please, first of all, go to Subscriber Manager -> Contact Group menu and add your contact groups. Groups will be shown in the contact information form.





Contact Group

New group

Subscriber Manager / Contact Group

10 items Type... Search

Jan 15, 20	SFSFSF
Nov 5, 19	Boss
Nov 5, 19	dddd'fdfd

Manual Contact Add:

To add email contact manually, go to **Subscriber Manage** -> **Contact Book** menu and click on the **New Contact** button add your contact by providing the required information.

Contact Book

New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

#	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	66			323	Group 2	
2	fffd	fdfd	fdffd@gmail.com		Group 2, Group 3	
3	dddd	sdsdsf	ddd@gmail.com	132	Group 3, Group 4	
4	test	user	test@gmail.com		Group 2	
5	sfg	gs	gs@ff.com	eg	Group 2	

+ Add contact group

X

Group name

Save

X Close

Contact Import From CSV File Upload:

You can upload a huge number of email contact by uploading CSV with Messenger Bot.App. First of all go to **Subscriber Manager** -> **Contact List** menu and click on option dropdown, select **Import**. A modal form will appear for CSV file upload. Messenger Bot.App has a format of csv





file. So you've to upload contact csv file with that format. Please download the sample csv file and create your csv file as the sample.

The screenshot shows the 'Contact Book' interface. At the top, there's a 'Contact Group' dropdown and a search bar. Below is a table with columns: #, First name, Last name, Email, Phone, and Contact Group. A red box highlights the 'Import' button in the top right corner. Below the table, there's an 'Import contact (csv)' section with a 'Sample csv' button highlighted in red. To the right, a 'Message' box provides instructions and a sample CSV table.

	A	B	C	D
1	first_name	last_name	phone_number	email
2	a	1	8801720000001	.cse@gmail.com
3	a	2	8801720000002	2.cse@gmail.com
4	a	3	8801720000001	3.cse@gmail.com
5	a	4	8801720000002	4.cse@gmail.com
6	a	5	8801720000011	5.cse@gmail.com
7	a	6	880172000002326	5.cse@gmail.com
8	a	7	88017200024237	7.cse@gmail.com

Email Phone Opt-in Form Builder

Getting Subscribers through an opt-in form from an external site is very common. But the most exciting part of this add-on is beside collecting subscribers through an opt-in form, it's providing the freedom of making opt-in forms by drag & drop the fields. The form will generate an embedded URL which you can use your site or any site from where you want to collect email/phone subscribers into your Messenger Bot application.

Manage Opt-in Form

To use an opt-in form, first of all, you've to create the form first. So to get the opt-in form section, please go to **Subscriber Manager -> Email/Phone Opt-in Form** section.



messengerbot

Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

- System >
- Subscription >

COMMENT FEATURE

- Comment Automation >
- Comment Automation >

MESSENGER TOOLS

- Subscriber Manager**
- Messenger Bot

SMS/email subscriber (external) Subscriber Manager

Contact Group
Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...
[Actions >](#)

Contact Book
Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...
[Actions >](#)

Opt-in Form Builder
Custom Subscribers opt-in Form builder.
[Actions >](#)

English ▾

Build Opt-in Form

Email/Phone Opt-in section will allow you to build, view, update, and also will be able to delete the form in the very easiest way from the actions section of the Form Lists table. press on **Create Opt-in Form** button and a form will appear with some required information fields and drag & drop form builder.

★ Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder

[+ Create opt-in form](#)

Subscriber Manager / Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder

Search...

Name	Embedded code	Form position	Interval time(sec)	Contact Groups	Created at	Actions
Form 4	<code></> Js code</code>	Direct	0	10th Bari Shop Campaign	Oct 1, 2020 12:35 PM	View Form Edit Delete
Form 3	<code></> Js code</code>	Fixed	0	Boss, Hello	Oct 1, 2020 12:34 PM	View Form Edit Delete
Form 2	<code></> Js code</code>	Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	View Form Edit Delete
Form 1	<code></> Js code</code>	Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	View Form Edit Delete

10 ▾ 1-4/4

Previous **1** Next

In the form you'll have to fill up some required information with form builer options. A short description on form's field are given below.





+ Create Email/Phone Opt-in Form

Subscriber Manager / Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder / Create opt-in form

Form name ⓘ

Contact Group ⓘ [+ Create group](#)

Email sequence ⓘ

Sms sequence ⓘ

Form position ⓘ

Background image (Max 1MB) ⓘ

FORM BUILDER

- Header
- First Name
- Last Name
- Email
- Phone number
- Subscribe button
- Paragraph
- Agreement Text

First Name *

Last Name *

Email *

I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the [data privacy statement](#)

Form Name:

This is the form name that will only for displaying in the application's form table.

Contact Group:

In this field contact groups that had been created at the **Subscriber Manager > Contact Groups** section will be shown here. This field is a required field because subscribers who will come through the opt-in form will be added as external subscribers lists. So when a new subscriber comes by Opt-in form, he/she will be assigned to those contact groups which has been selected during form creation. You can select multiple groups, subscribers will also be assigned to multiple groups.

Anyway, you can also create a group from here too by click on **Create Group** on the right side of this field.





Email Sequence:

This field will show the email sequence campaign lists that had been created at **Broadcasting > Sequence Campaign (External Contacts)**. This section will only be available if you have an Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner: A Messenger Bot Add-On.

However this field is not required, you may select or not. If you select any email sequence campaign, then subscribers come through that form will be assigned to these sequence campaign automatically. You can see the output of what's said from the **Subscriber Manager -> Contact Book** section and click on the view icon, you'll see the assigned sequences in modal.

SMS Sequence:

As Email Sequence field this field will show the SMS sequence campaign lists that had been created at **Broadcasting > Sequence Campaign (External Contacts)**. This section will only be available if you have an Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner: A Messenger Bot Add-On.

However this field is not required, you may select or not. If you select any SMS sequence campaign, then subscribers come through that form will be assigned to these sequence campaign automatically. You can see the output of what's said from the **Subscriber Manager > Contact Book** section and click on the view icon, you'll see the assigned sequences in modal.

Form Position:

This field is a required field. Besides building a form, you will also have the facilities of selecting at which position you want to make visible your form. Anyway, there are four types of positions which are :

1. Bottom-right: If you select the Bottom-right position, then your form will be visible at the bottom-right position of the site where you put this embedded form.
2. Center Position: If you select Center position, then your form will be visible at the Center position of the site where you put this embedded form.
3. Fixed Position: If you select the Bottom-right position, then your form will be visible at the fixed position of the site where you put this embedded form.
4. Direct URL: This is not a position type. It's different from the above three positions. If you select this position, then you'll get a URL, through this URL you or your user can directly access the created form. Copy the URL and paste it into your browser and you'll see your created form.





⊕ Create Email/Phone Opt-in Form

Subscriber Manager / Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder / Create opt-in form

Form name ⓘ <input type="text"/>	Contact Group ⓘ + Create group <input type="text"/>
Email sequence ⓘ <input type="text" value="Select email sequence"/>	Sms sequence ⓘ <input type="text" value="Select sms sequence"/>
Form position ⓘ <input type="text" value="Bottom-Right"/>	Background image (Max 1MB) ⓘ <input type="button" value="Upload"/>
Interval time ⓘ <input type="text"/>	

Time Interval:

Time interval refers to after how much time your form will be visible and it will work as a second, for example, if you put 1 in the field then the form will be visible after 1 second. At the initial stage of the form, this field won't be shown. Time interval is required for Bottom-right and Center position.

Background Image: This field is optional. If you upload an image, then this image will be used as the background image of the form body.

Form Builder

Build your Opt-in Form with the beautiful drag & drop form builder. There are two sections in the builder body, one is a sidebar with draggable & droppable options at left and another is for the options field at right.

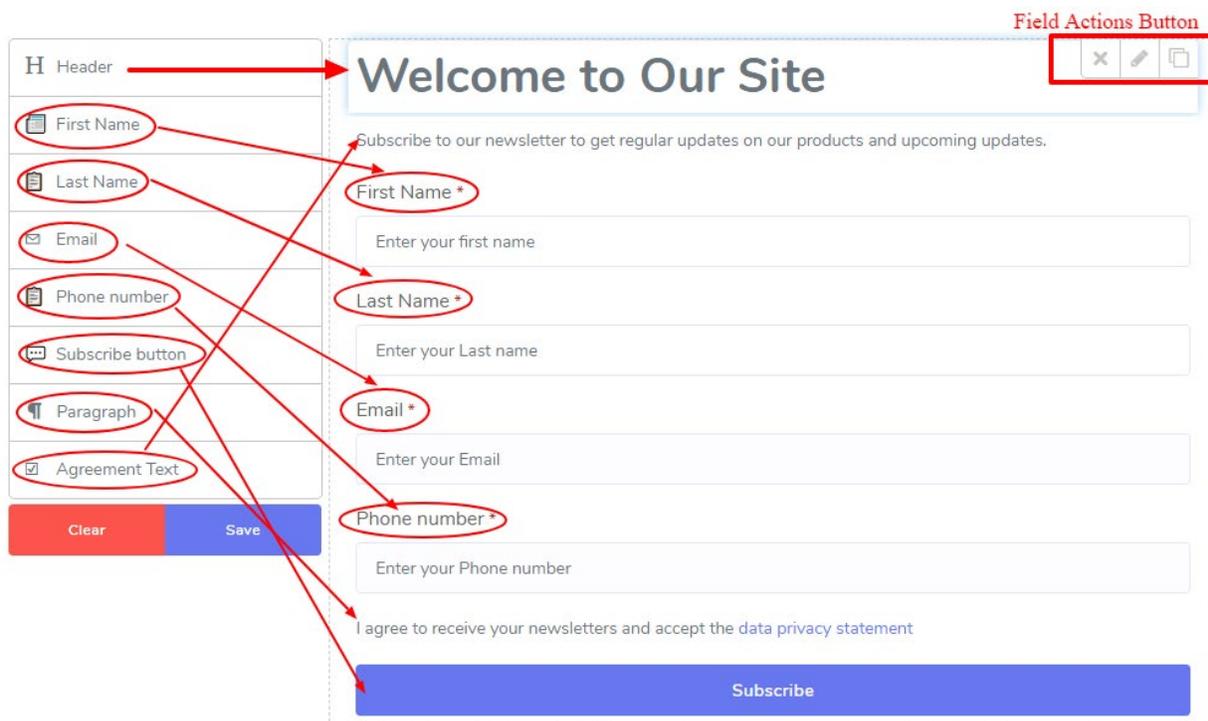
H Header	First Name * <input type="text" value="Enter your first name"/>
📄 First Name	Last Name * <input type="text" value="Enter your Last name"/>
📄 Last Name	Email * <input type="text" value="Enter your Email"/>
✉ Email	I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement
📄 Phone number	<input type="button" value="Button"/>
🗨 Subscribe button	
📄 Paragraph	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Agreement Text	
<input type="button" value="Clear"/> <input type="button" value="Save"/>	



Drag & Drop Options:

As it's called Email Phone Opt-in form builder, so there are several options are available to build a standard form for subscriber's email or phone collection.

- Header: Drag & drop header option for Form header. You can choose different header types.
- Paragraph: Drag & Drop paragraph as a text field to set short information for the form.
- First Name: Drag & Drop First Name option to set and get the first name of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Last Name: Drag & Drop last Name option to set and get the last name of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Email: Drag & Drop email option to set and get the email address of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Phone Number: Drag & Drop Phone Number option to set and get the phone number of the Subscriber. You can make it required or not by editing the field.
- Agreement Text: Drag & Drop this field to make the subscribers agreed with your terms & conditions or any other agreement, so before check they can't submit the form.
- Subscriber Button: After all, now the form needs a submit button, so drag & drop the Subscribe Button and update the button name by editing the button option. You can choose different types of button colors.

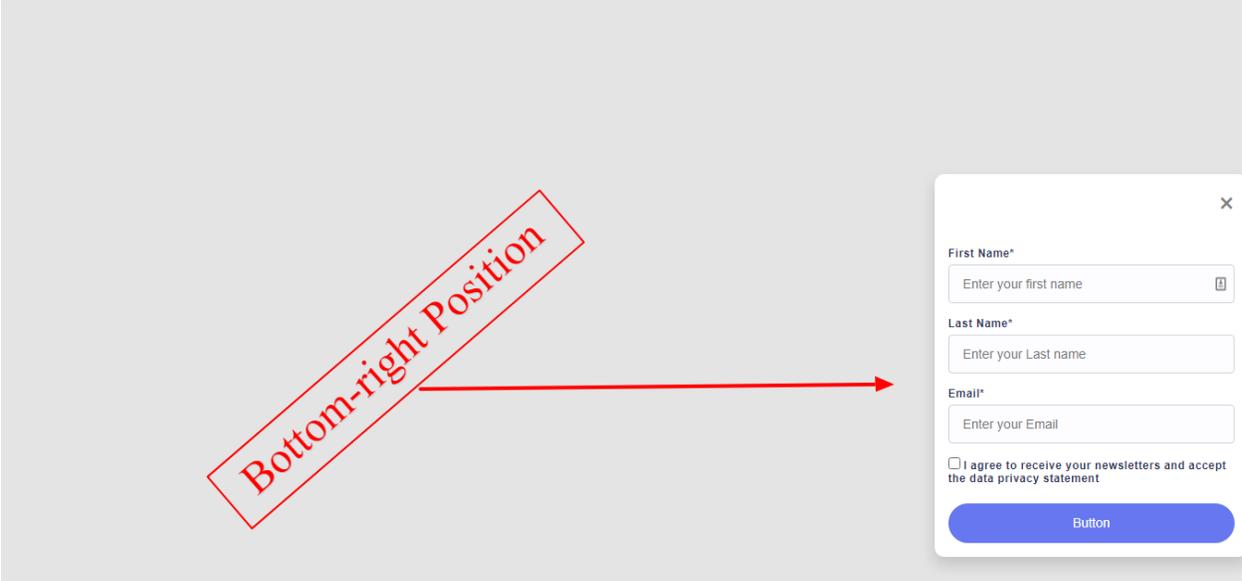


The screenshot shows a drag-and-drop interface for building a form. On the left is a menu of components: Header, First Name, Last Name, Email, Phone number, Subscribe button, Paragraph, and Agreement Text. On the right is a preview of the form titled "Welcome to Our Site". Red arrows show the following mappings: Header to the title, First Name to the "First Name *" field, Last Name to the "Last Name *" field, Email to the "Email *" field, Phone number to the "Phone number *" field, Paragraph to the "Subscribe to our newsletter..." text, and Agreement Text to the "I agree to receive your newsletters..." text. A "Field Actions Button" (containing delete, edit, and copy icons) is highlighted in the top right of the preview. At the bottom of the preview are "Clear" and "Save" buttons.

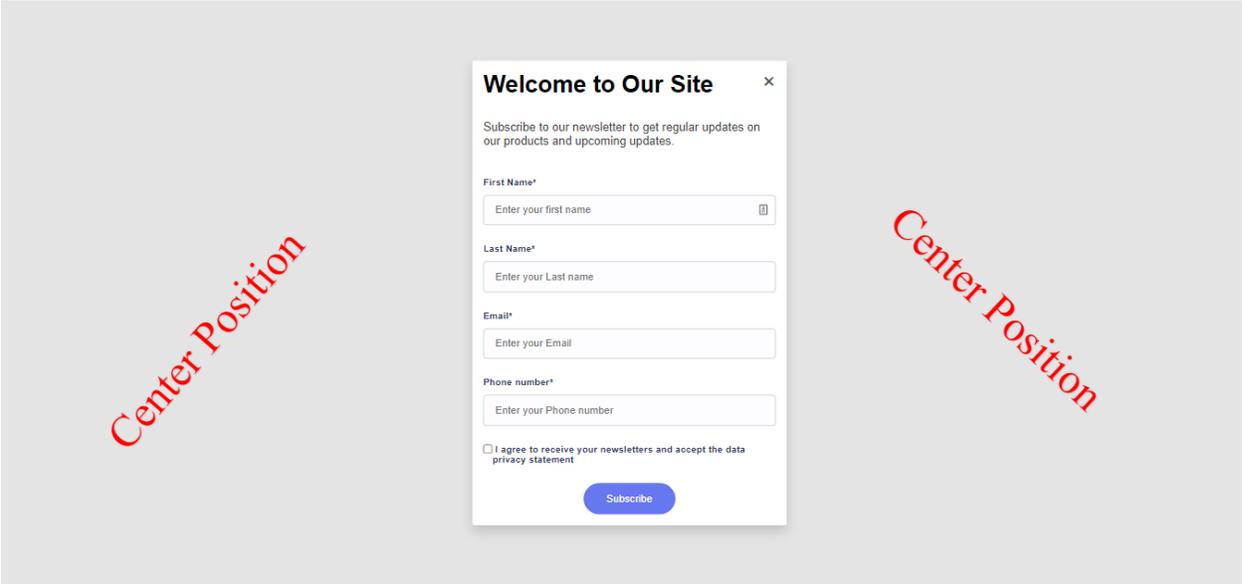
Form Examples

1. Bottom-right Position





2. Center Position



3. Fixed Position





Email*

I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement

Subscribe

Fixed Position

4. Direct URL

example.com

Direct URL

Welcome to Our Site

Subscribe to our newsletter to get regular updates on our products and upcoming updates.

First Name*

Last Name*

Email*

Phone number*

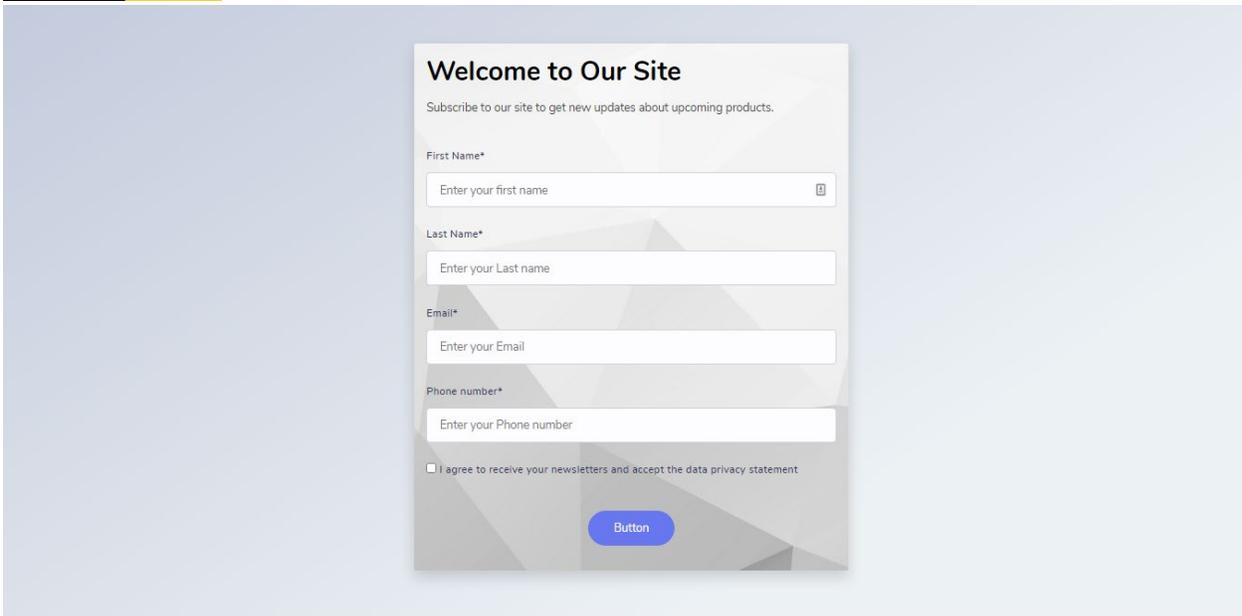
I agree to receive your newsletters and accept the data privacy statement

Subscribe

Rendered Form

5. Form With Background Image

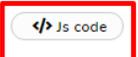
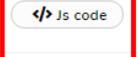
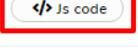




How to Use Embedded URL & Direct URL

After Build a form, click on the  from the embedded Column, a modal will appear with the embedded URL. Now copy the embedded URL and then paste it into your website where you want to show this form.

Note: If you copy the direct positioned URL, then you've to copy it and then paste it into your browser to get the form.

Name	Embedded code	Form position	Interval time(sec)	Contact Groups	Created at	Actions
example 3		Fixed	0	dasdsad	Oct 4, 2020 10:48 AM	  
Exmable 2		Bottom-right	1 sec	Updated Contact Group	Oct 4, 2020 09:29 AM	  
example 1		Center	1 sec	Group 1	Oct 4, 2020 09:22 AM	  
Form 4		Direct	0	10th Shop Campaign	Oct 1, 2020 12:35 PM	  
Form 3		Fixed	0	Boss, Hello	Oct 1, 2020 12:34 PM	  
Form 2		Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	  
Form 1		Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	  





Get embed code

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div class="bg-modal" id="demo"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://example.com/"></script>
```

Copy this URL

Close

Form	Js code	Position	Duration	Groups	Date	Actions
Form 2	</Js code>	Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:22 PM	[Eye] [Edit] [Delete]
Form 1	</Js code>	Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	[Eye] [Edit] [Delete]

10

Subscriber Manager

Previous 1 Next

Get embed code

Copy the below URL and paste it into your browser tab to get your Page.

https://example.com/

Direct URL

Close

Form	Js code	Position	Duration	Groups	Date	Actions
Form 2	</Js code>	Bottom-right	1 sec	Group 6, Group 7	Oct 1, 2020 12:34 PM	[Eye] [Edit] [Delete]
Form 1	</Js code>	Center	0.5 sec	Group 1, Group 4, Group 3	Oct 1, 2020 06:19 AM	[Eye] [Edit] [Delete]

10

Subscriber Manager

Messenger Bot

Previous 1 Next

Opt-in Form Subscribers

As they are subscribed from external source, so they will be stored as external subscriber's inside the application. You can see your opt-in form subscribers lists at **Subscriber Manager > Contact Book** Section.





messengerbot

- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System >
 - Subscription >
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation >
 - Comment Automation >
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager**
 - Messenger Bot

SMS/email subscriber (external) Subscriber Manager

Contact Group
Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...
Actions >

Contact Book
Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...
Actions >

Email/Phone Opt-in Form Builder
Custom Subscribers opt-in Form builder.
Actions >

English ▾

Contact Book + New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group ▾ Search... Search Options

#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	John	Doe	[REDACTED]	88 2421 32152415	10th Shop Campaign	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Michael	Bolton	[REDACTED]	0172224816054	Group 6, Group 7	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Test	User	[REDACTED]	880172556568	Updated Contact Group	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Moti	Mia	[REDACTED]	0171839535	Updated Contact Group	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	uncle	[REDACTED]	[REDACTED]	0123456789	Group 1	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>

10 ▾ 1-5/5

Now you can use these subscribers for sending Bulk Email/SMS or you can assign them manually to Email/SMS sequence campaign.





How To Pause & Resume A Messenger BOT For a Specific Subscriber

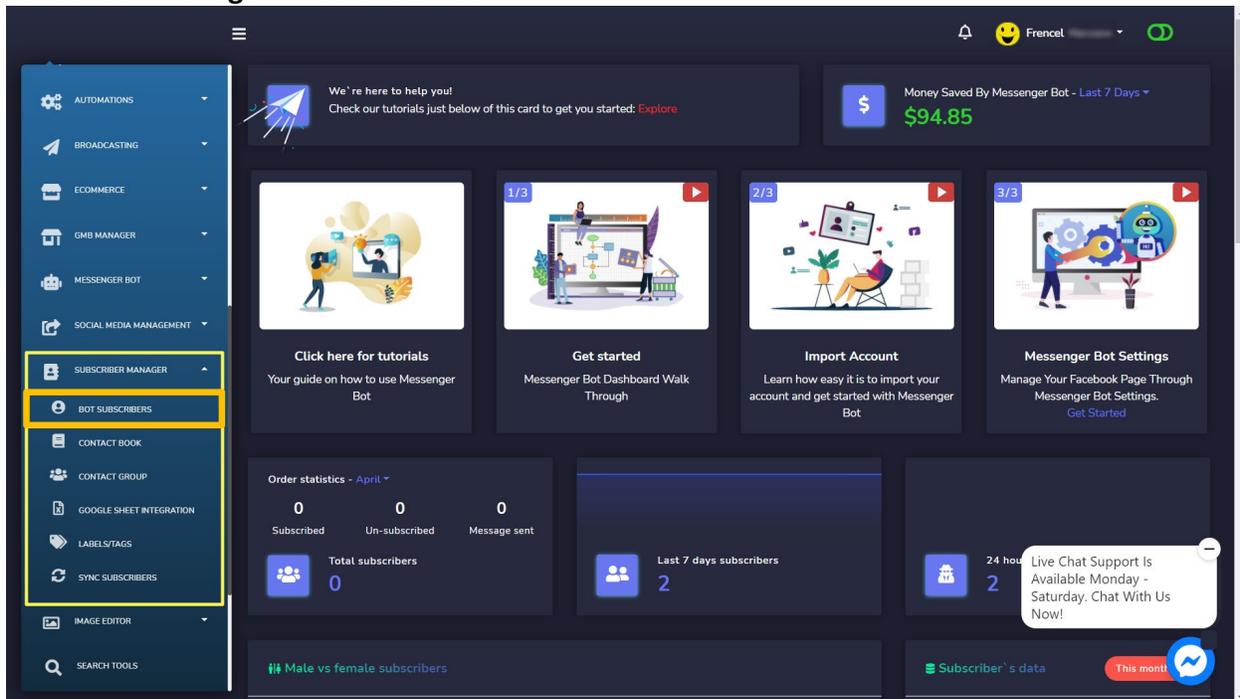
Once in a while, you may want to stop the Messenger Bot for a specific subscriber and take control over the chat. You can not just stop the Bot, if you stop the bot then the bot will stop working for everyone. There are two ways, you can pause and resume the bot for a specific person or subscriber.

You can do it from the Subscriber Manager and the Messenger Bot settings.

From Subscriber Manager:

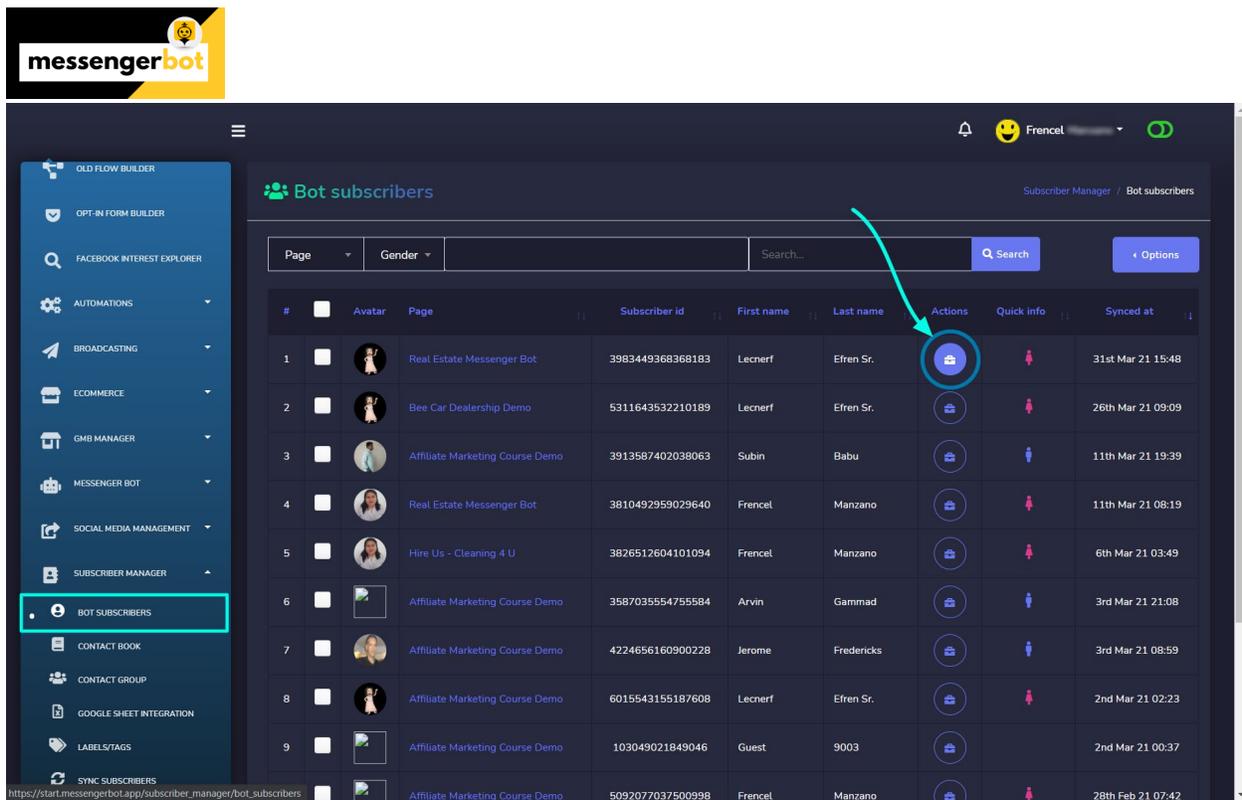
First, go to the dashboard of Messenger Bot, in the left navigation menu you will find the **Subscriber Manager** option, click on that, & the Subscriber Manager interface will appear, click on the **Bot Subscriber**.

Subscriber Manager > Bot Subscriber.

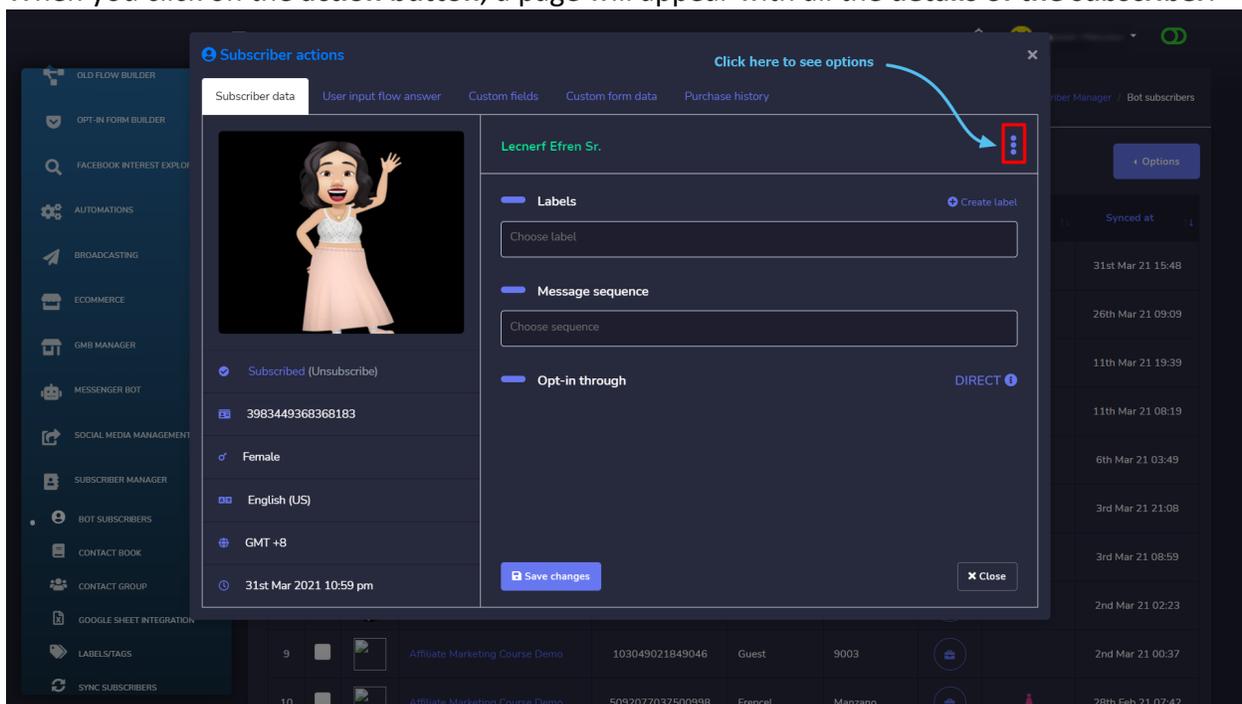


As soon as you click on **Bot Subscriber** you can see a list of subscribers. From the list, you can **select a specific subscriber to pause or resume the bot for. Select the subscriber and click on the action button to pause or resume the bot for that specific subscriber**



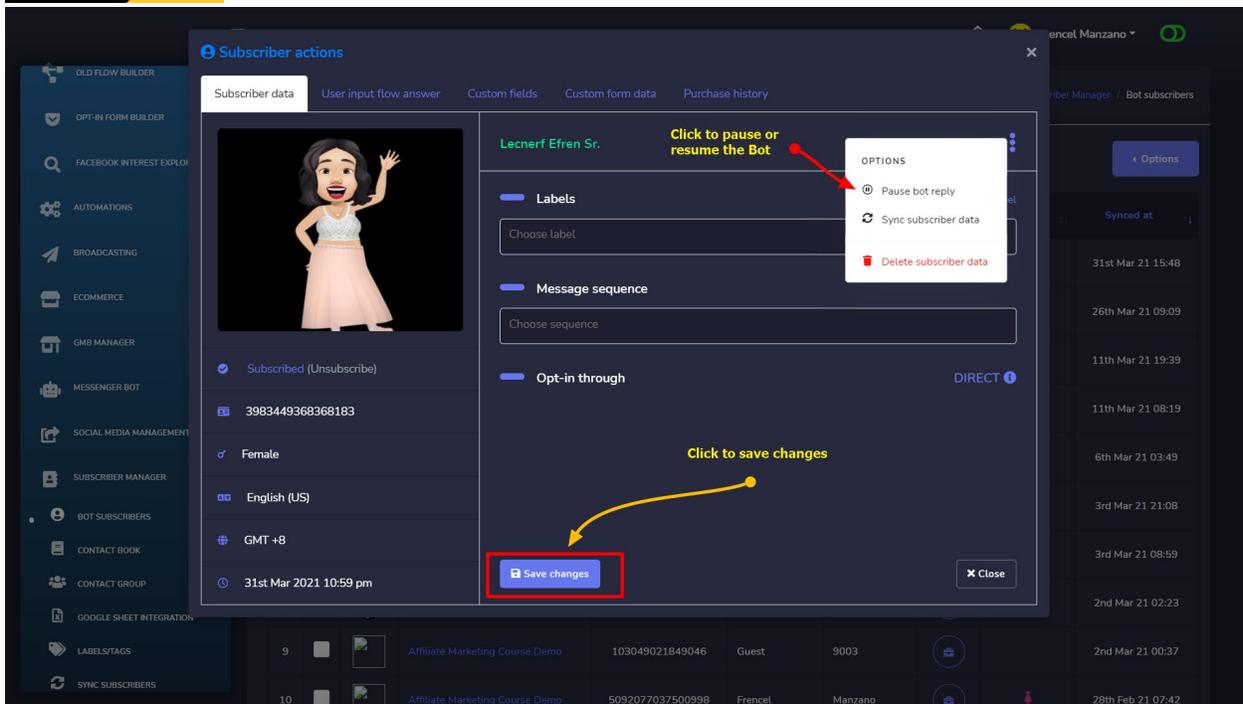


When you click on the **action button**, a page will appear with all the **details of the subscriber**.



On the **right side** of the Subscriber's name there is a **3 dot button**, click on that **button** to get the options to pause and resume the bot for this specific subscriber. You can **pause and resume the bot for this subscriber** from here.

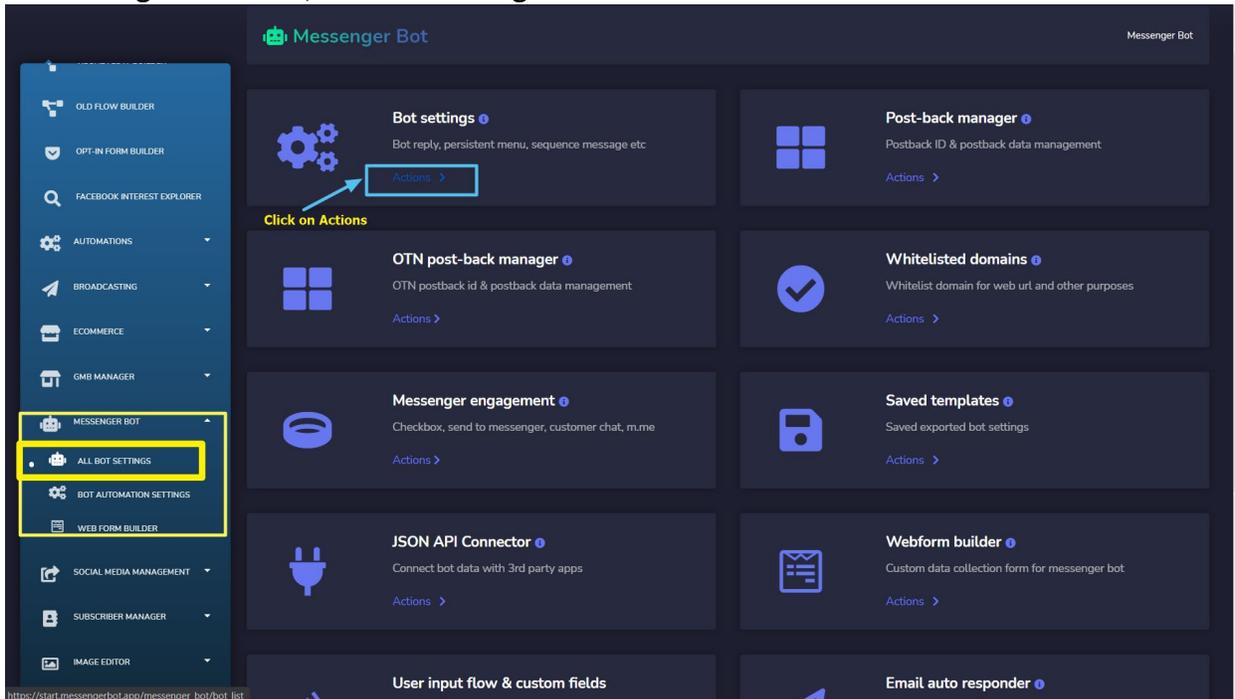




Now from Messenger Bot:

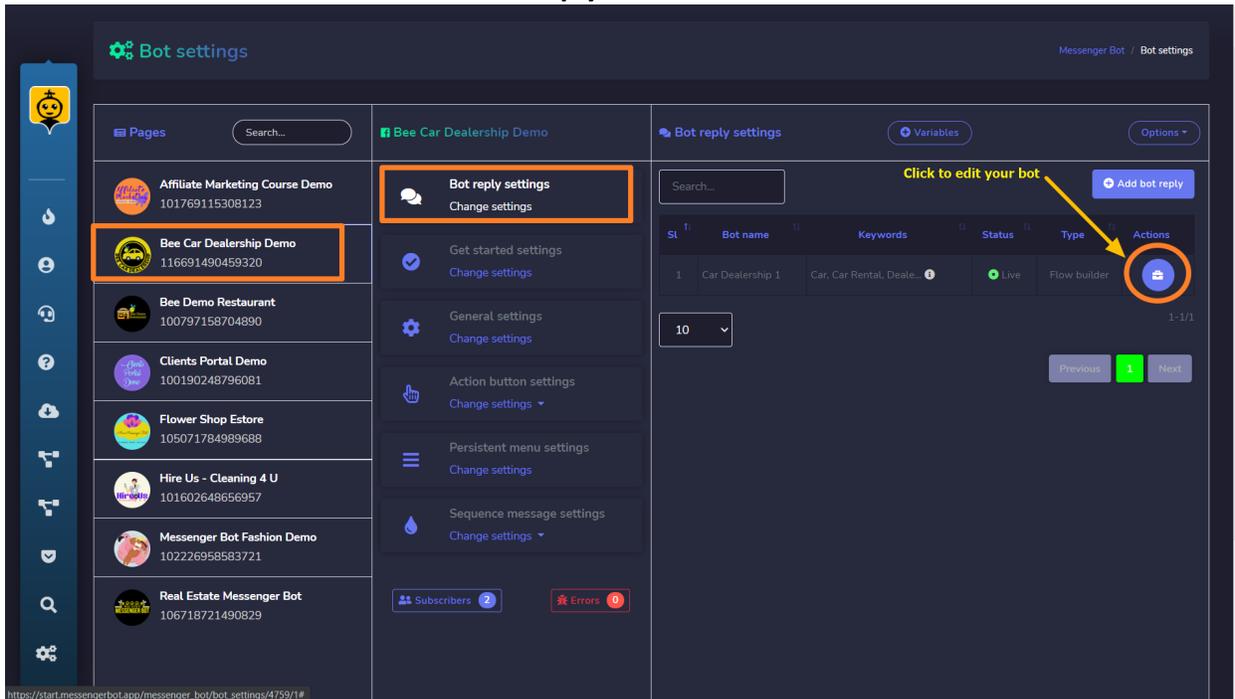
You can pause and resume the bot from Postback template, Keyword-based template, and get started template.

From the **left navigation menu of Messenger Bot's dashboard**, click on **Messenger Bot** then **All Bot Settings**. After that, click **Bot settings' Action**.

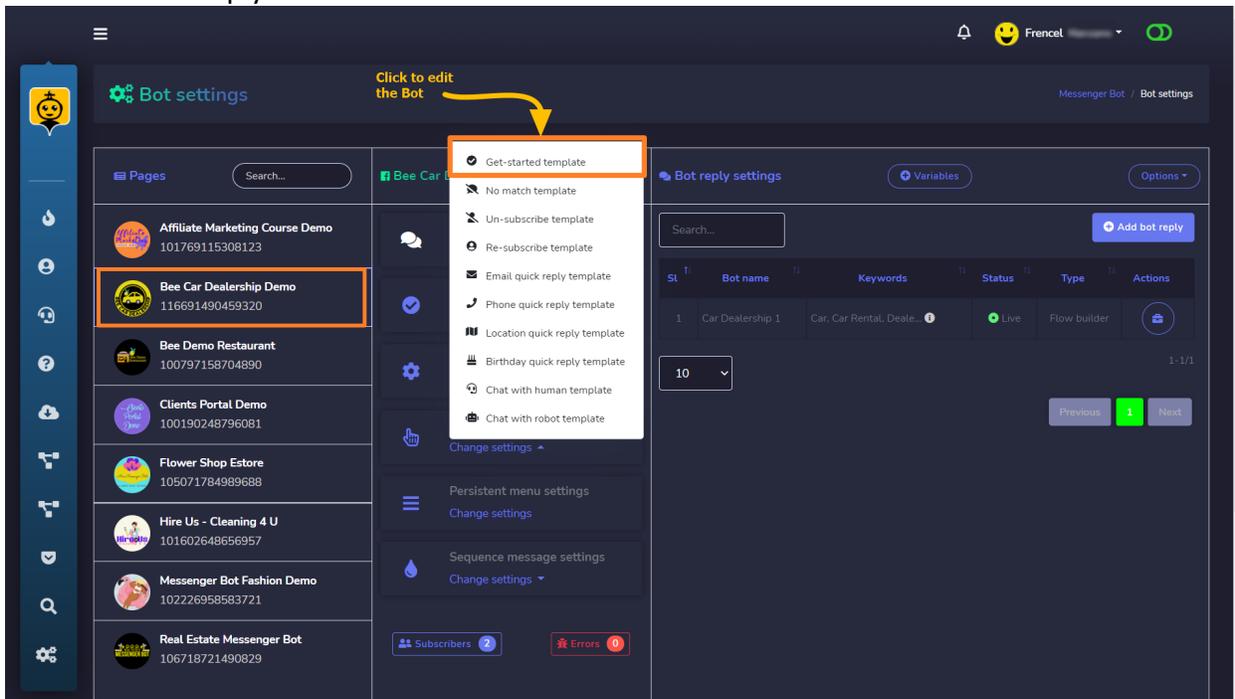




it could be your keyword-based bot or Get started bot. For keyword-based bot click on the **action button** and then click on **edit bot reply**.

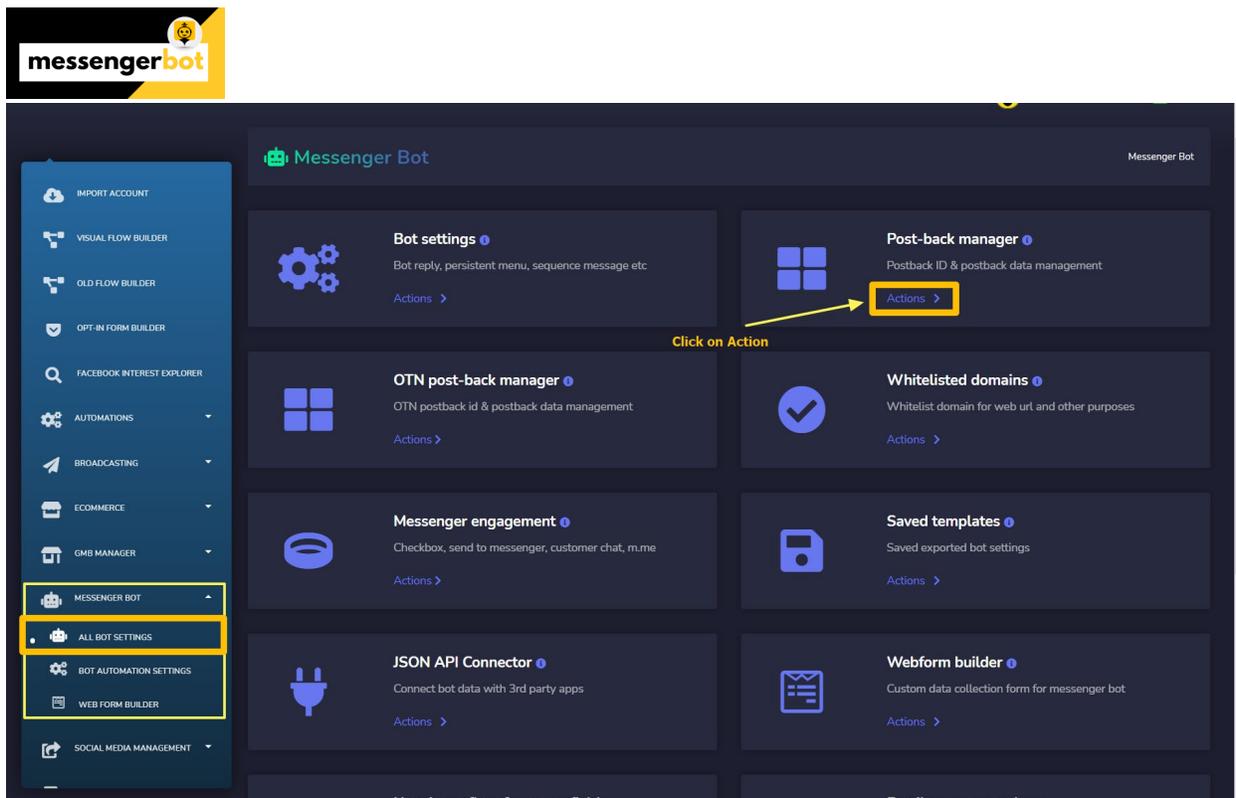


For Get started template click on **Action Button Settings** and then go to **Get started template** to edit the bot reply.

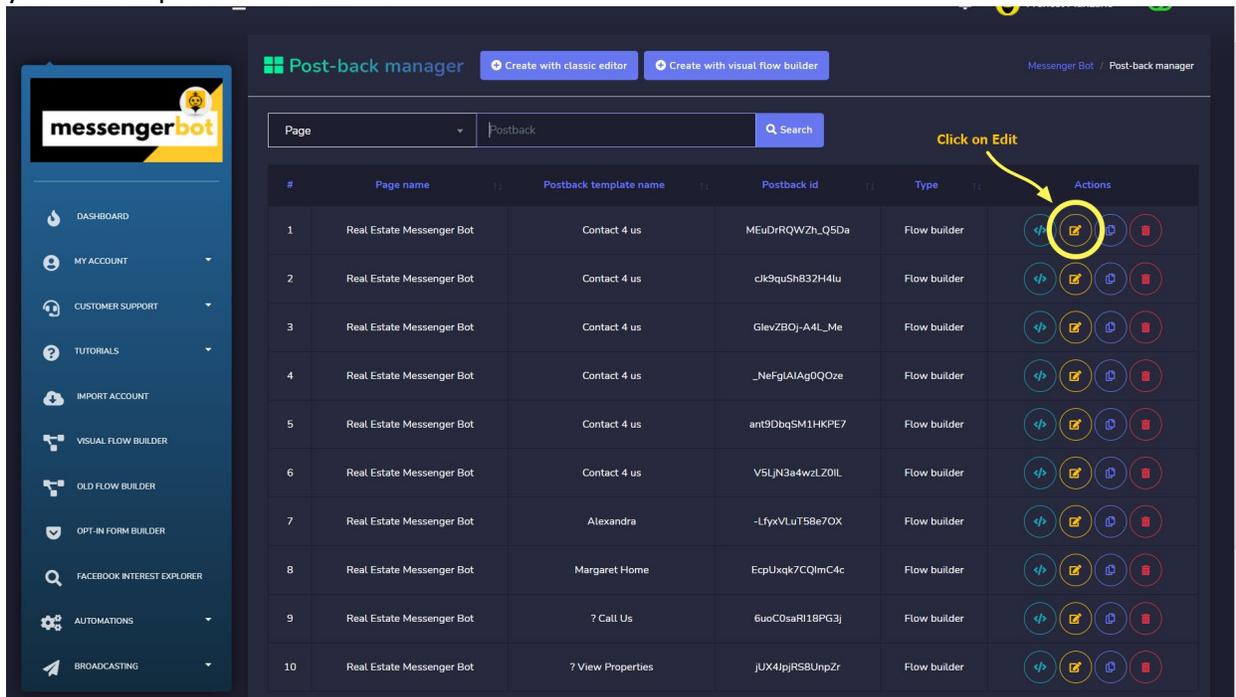


For the Postback template go to **Messenger Bot>Post-back manager** by clicking on its **Action**.



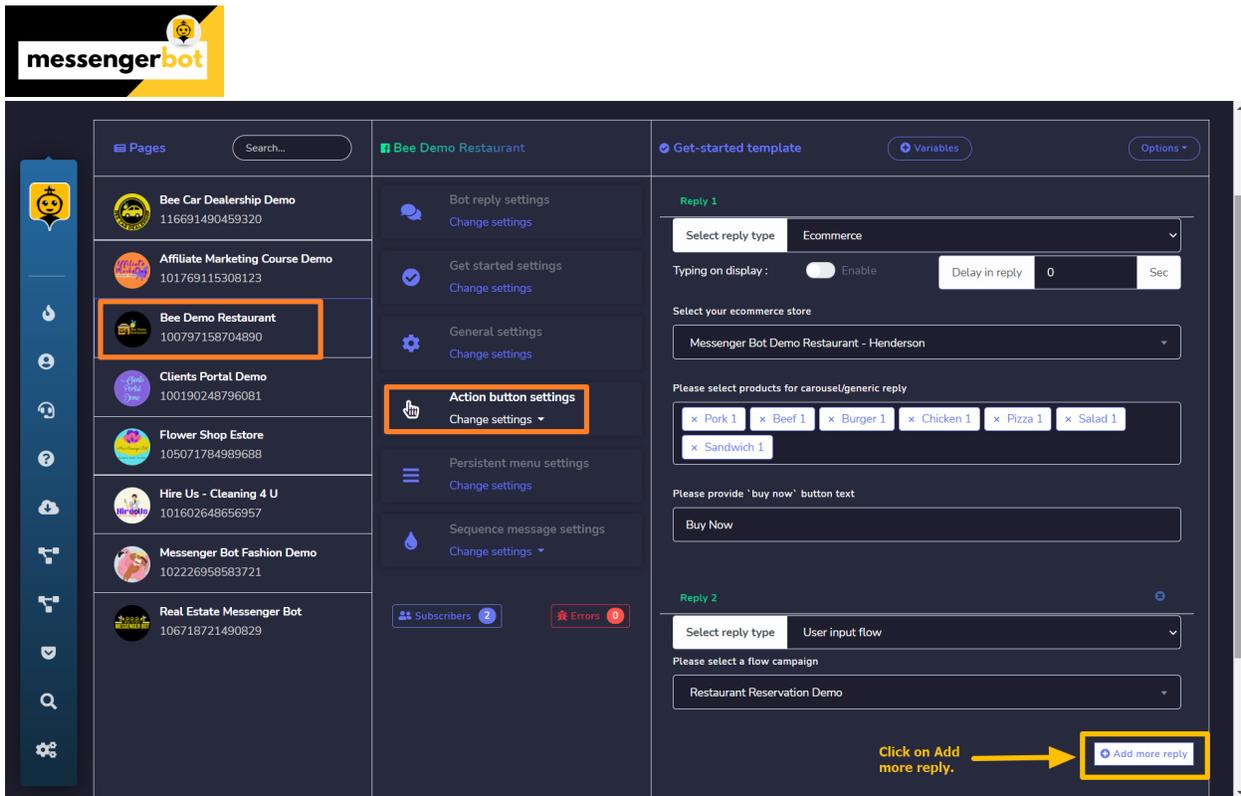


A list of Postback templates will appear, **click on Edit under actions** for the template you want your bot to pause and resume.

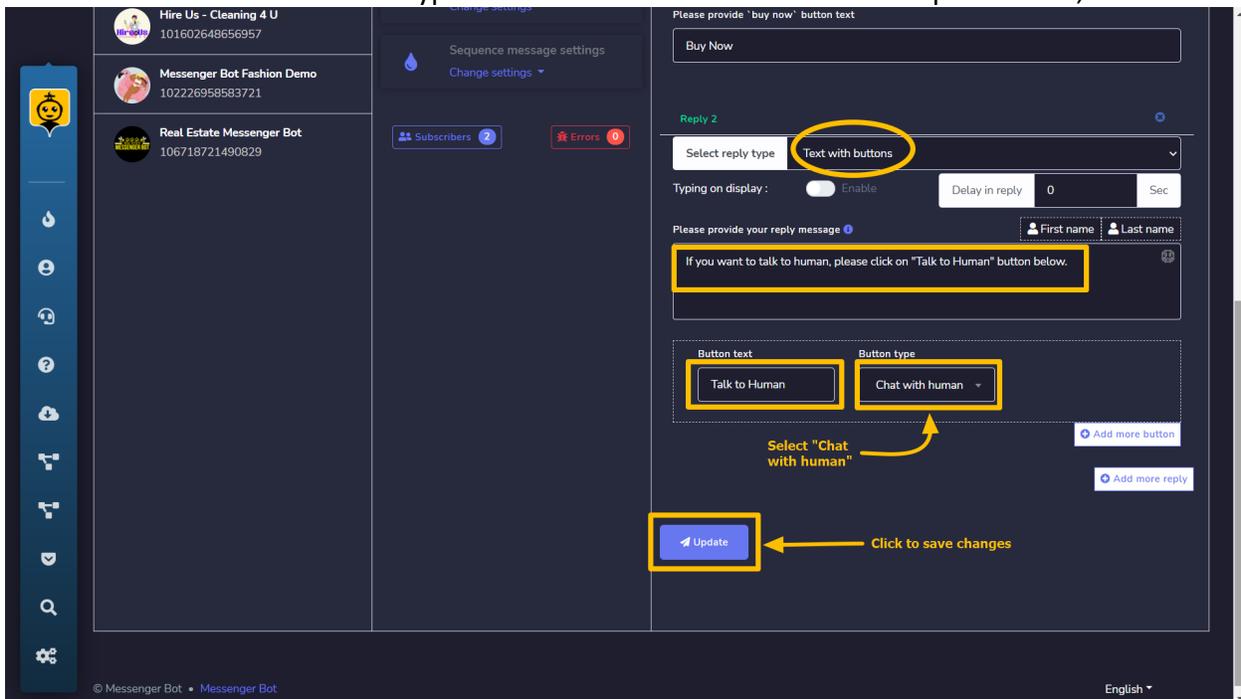


From a reply template, it could be a **Postback template**, **keyword-based**, or **get started template**, where you want to take control over the chatbot, add a new reply by **clicking** on the **“Add more reply”** button.



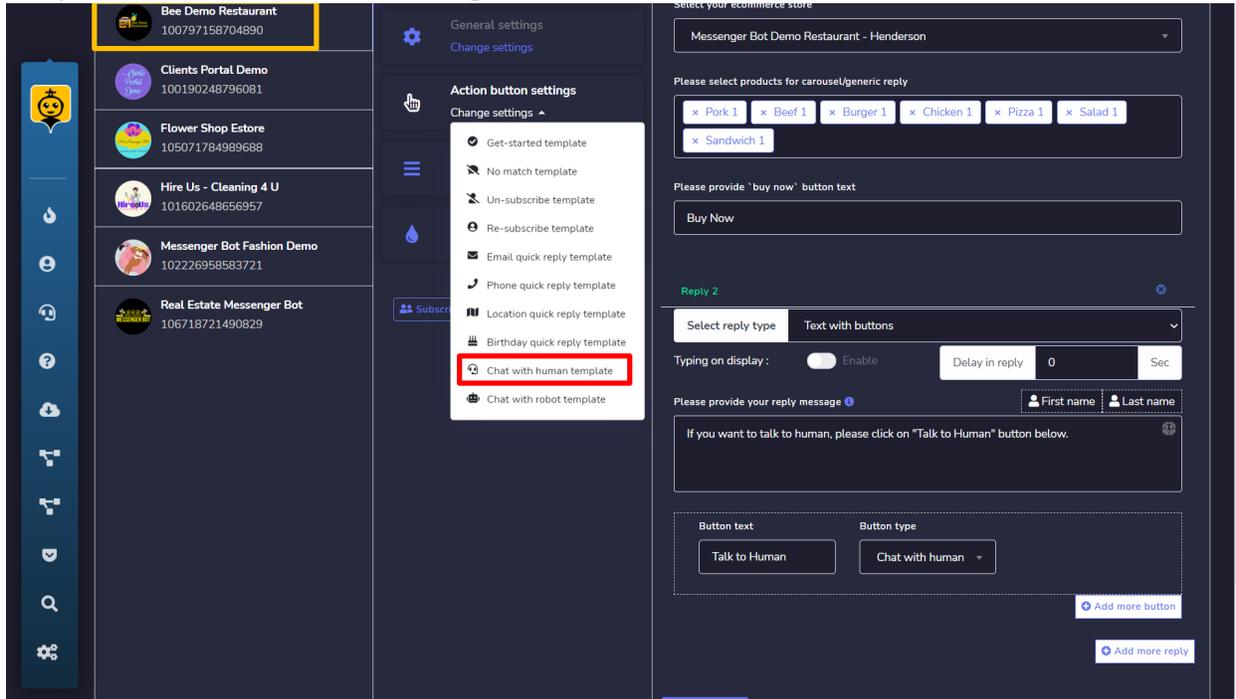


Select the Reply type to **“Text with the button”**. Type a message on the message box, after that you can see there is a **Button text** and **Button type** field. Name the button as **“Talk to Human”** and select the button type as **“Chat with human”** from the drop-down list, and save it.

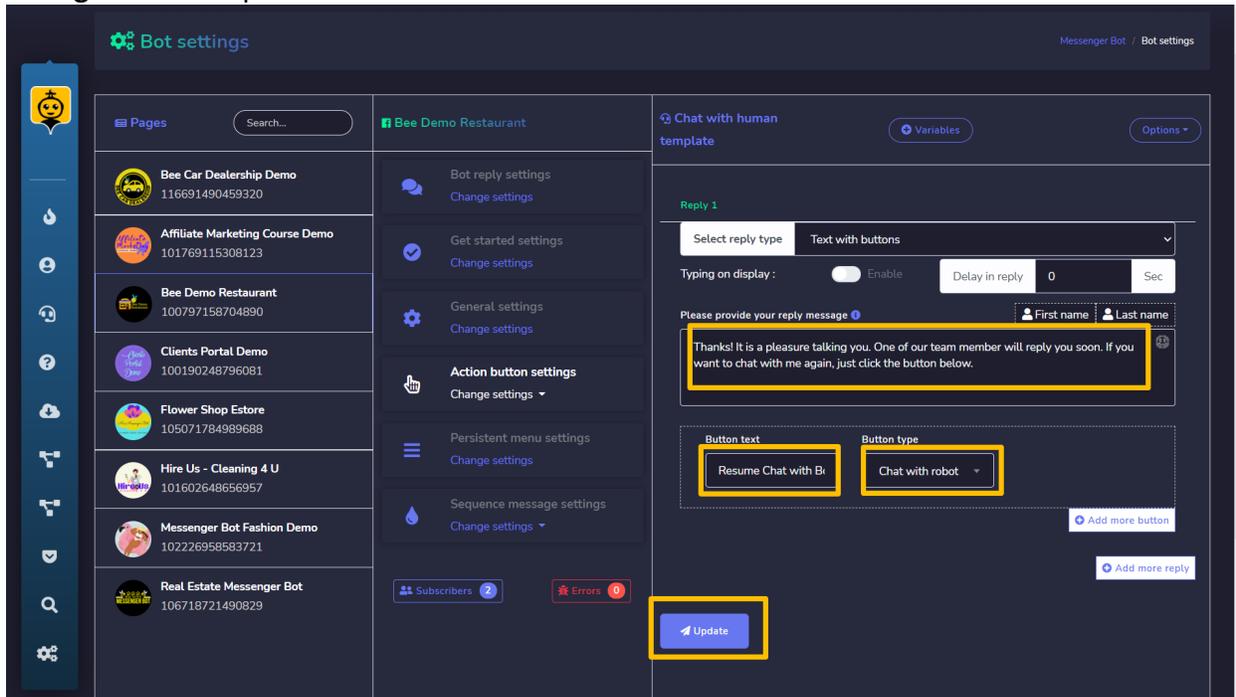




When your subscriber will click on this button, they will get a predefined message by the Messenger Bot system, that is **“Chat with human template”**. You can **check or edit** this template from **Action Button settings**.



In this **Reply template**, there is a **button to start with the Bot** again. So, this will **resume the bot** again for that particular subscriber.





And these are the two ways you have learned, you can stop and resume the chatbot for a particular customer or subscriber.



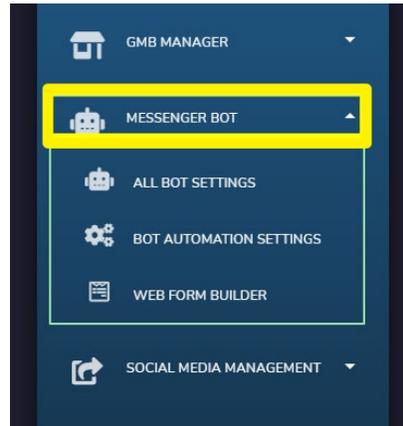


Messenger Bot

Messenger Bot to manage different bot activities, post back data, enlist the whitelisted domains, do messenger engagement, view the already created templates. This view also helps you to connect the bot data with 3rd party applications, helps you generate web forms, and integrates with auto email responders. Messenger Bot helps you run your E-commerce and WooCommerce business through this platform.

To view this section, navigate to **Messenger Bot** from the navigation menu located at the left. Tab on it and under this it has another 3 parts. Here we have:

- ALL BOT SETTINGS
- BOT AUTOMATION SETTINGS
- WEB FORM BUILDER



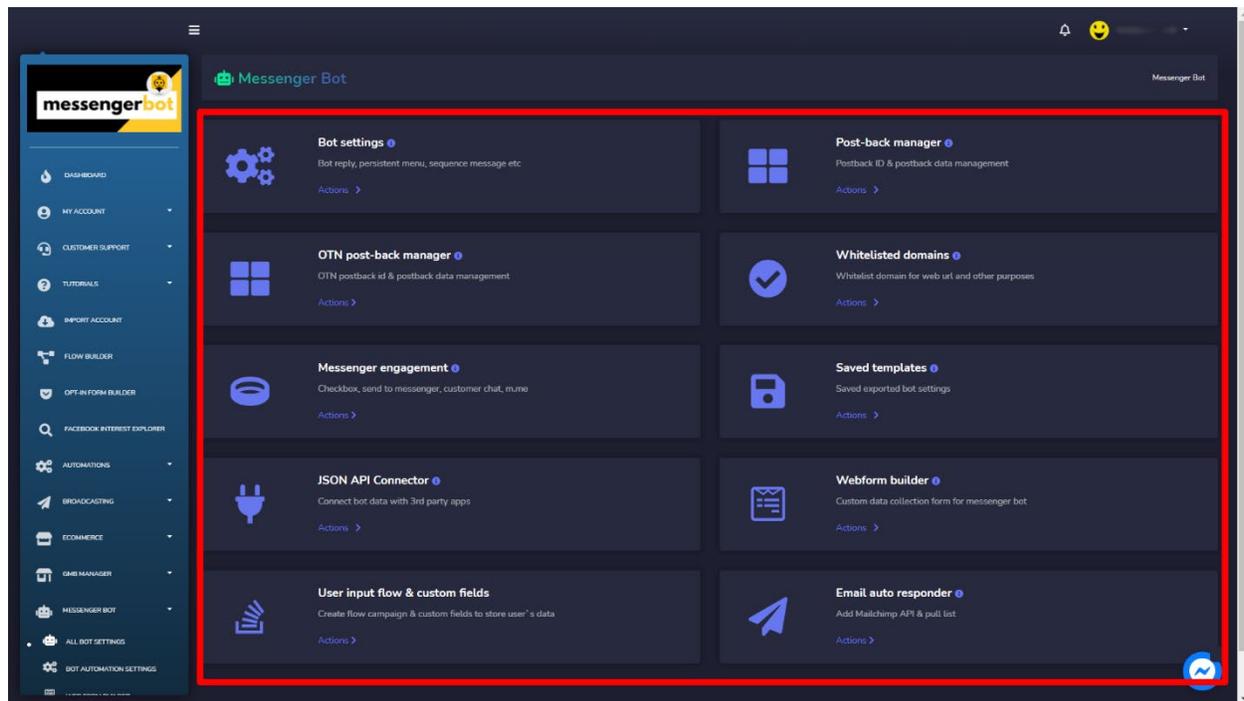
. First, let's go through All Bot Settings. A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

- [Bot settings](#)
- [Post-back manger](#)
- [OTN post back manager...](#)
- [Whitelisted domains](#)
- [Messenger engagement](#)
- [Saved templates](#)
- [JSON API connector](#)
- [Webform builder](#)





- [User input flow & custom fields...](#)
- [Email auto responder](#)

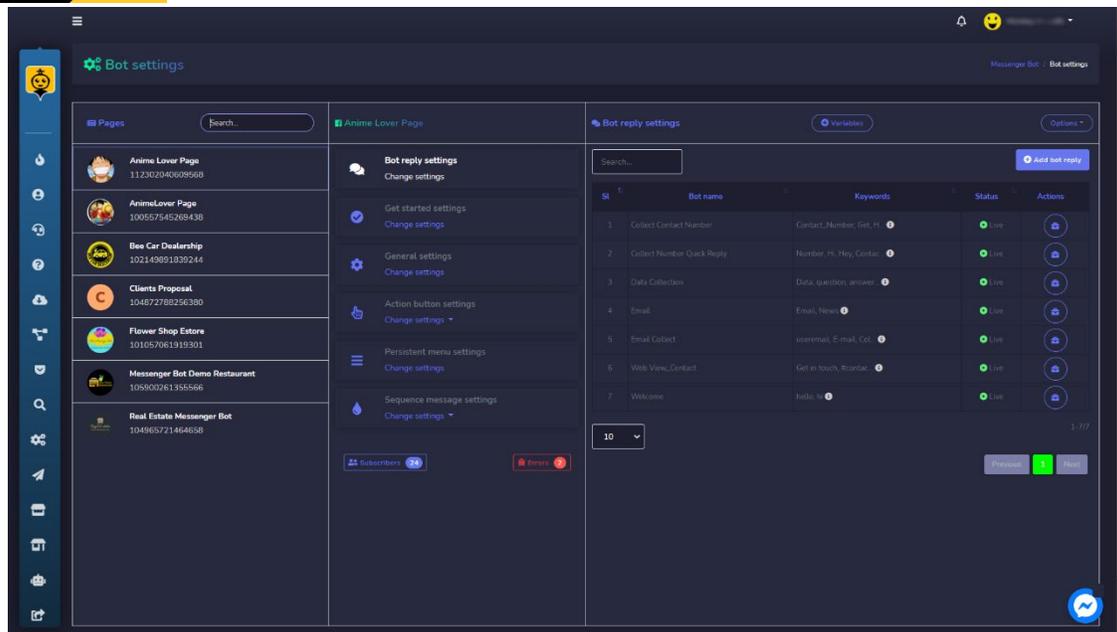


A brief description of these views is shared in their relevant sections, below.

Bot settings

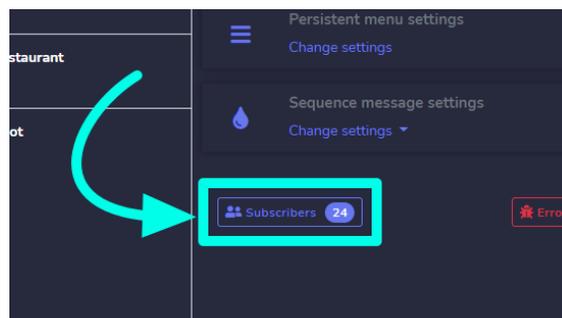
To access the bot settings section, select **Bot settings**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen. The following screen will appear.





This view allows you to perform following actions:

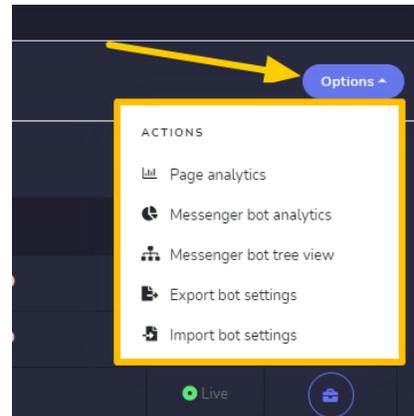
- 1) Select  from the bottom of the settings menu. This option will redirect you to [Bot Subscribers](#) workflow.



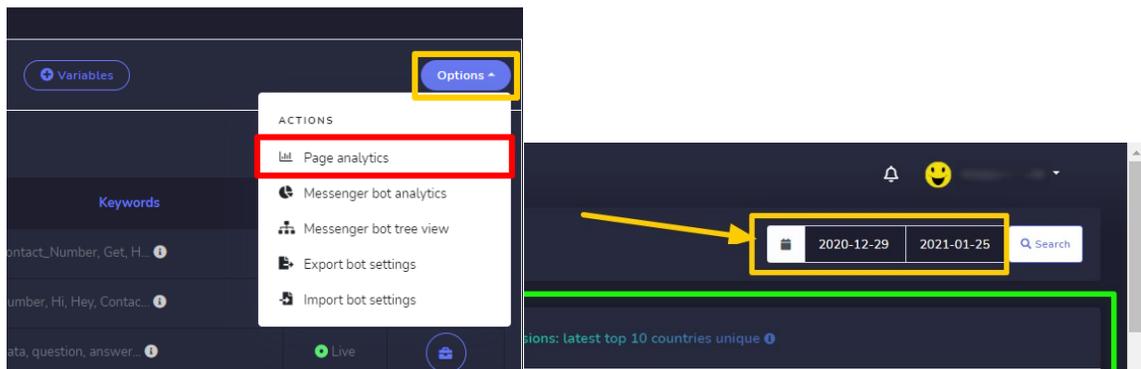


2) Select **Options** from the right side of **Bot settings** screen. A list of the following options will appear:

- Page analytics
- Messenger bot analytics
- Messenger bot tree view
- Export bot settings
- Import bot settings



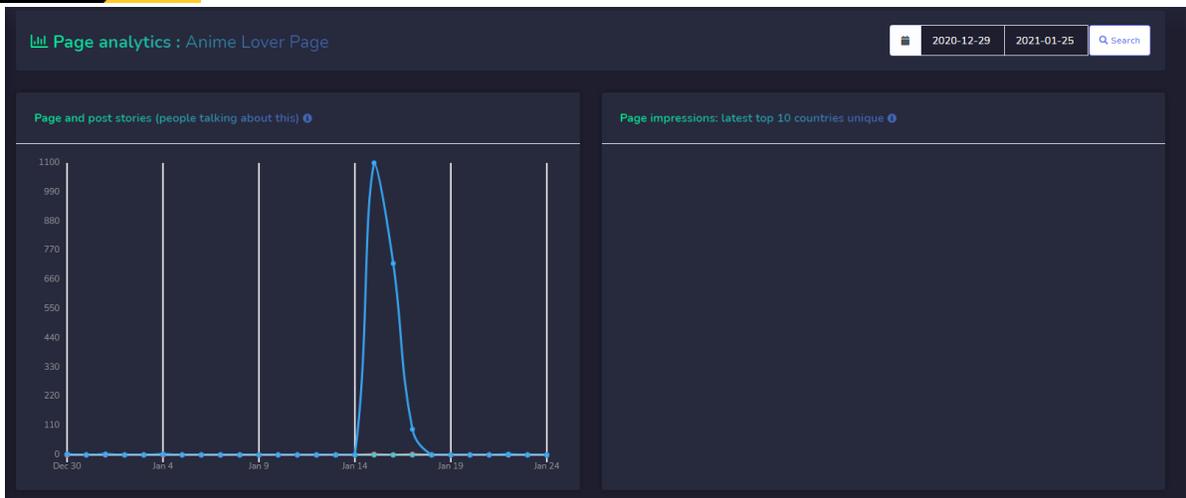
3) Select **Page analytics** option, you will be redirected to the analytics of your page based on different parameters. You can adjust the date as per your requirement.



Following are the different graphs that can be demonstrated:

- Page and post stories (people talking about this)
- Page impressions: latest top 10 countries unique

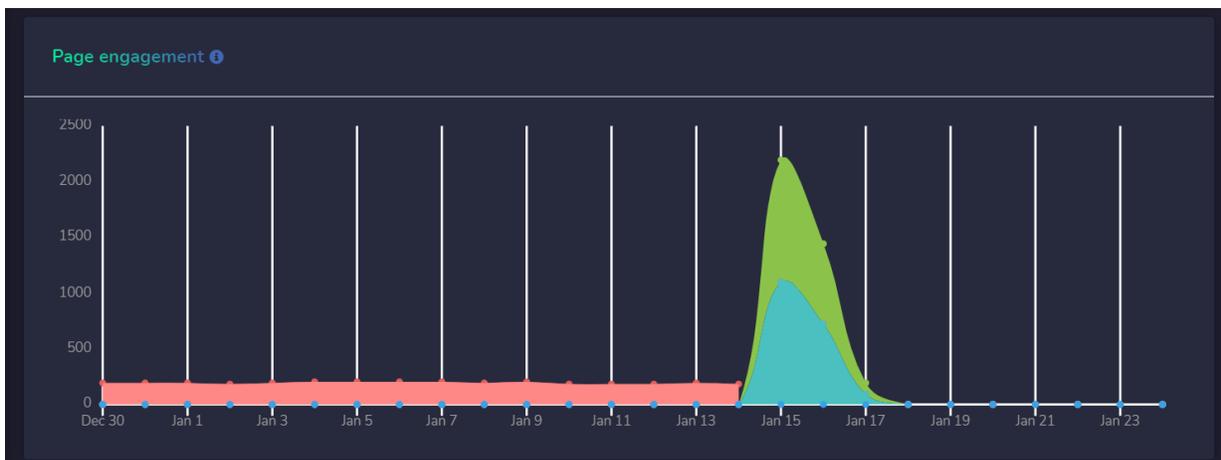




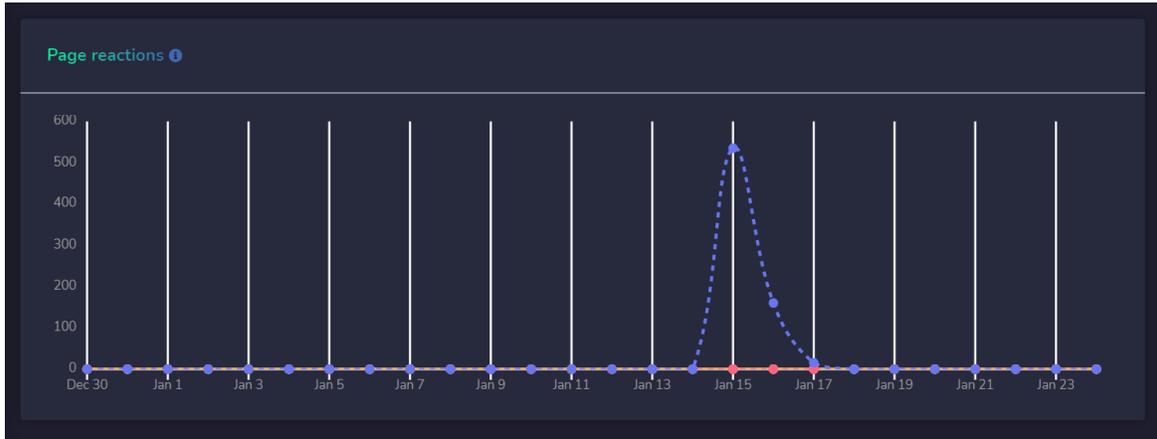
- Page impressions
- Page impressions: paid vs unpaid



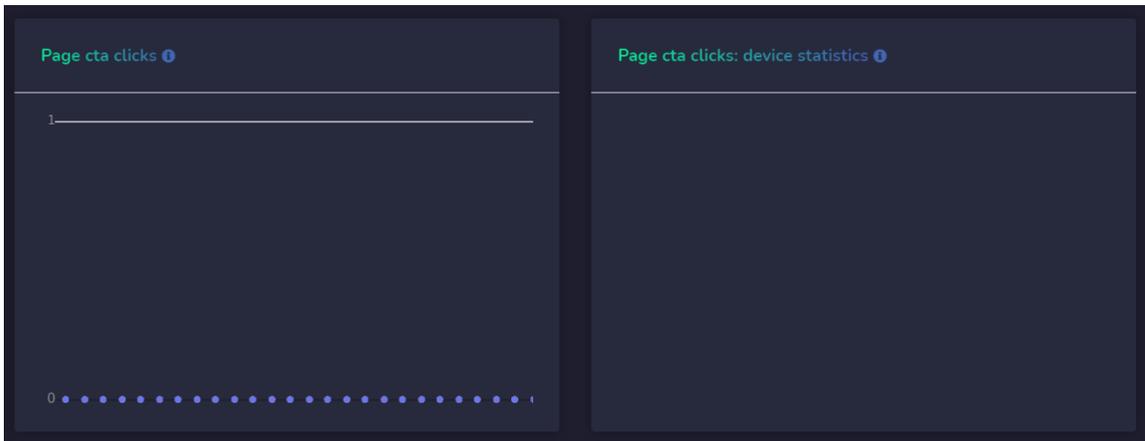
- Page engagement



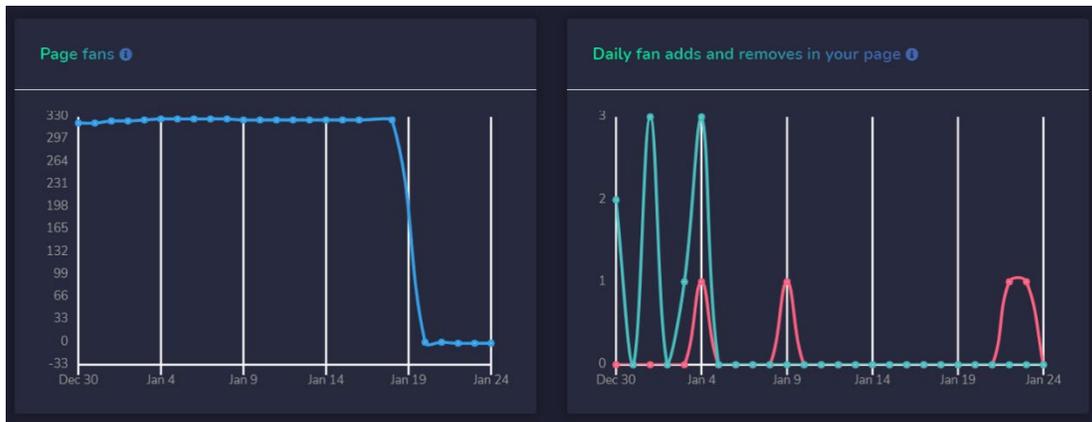
- Page reactions



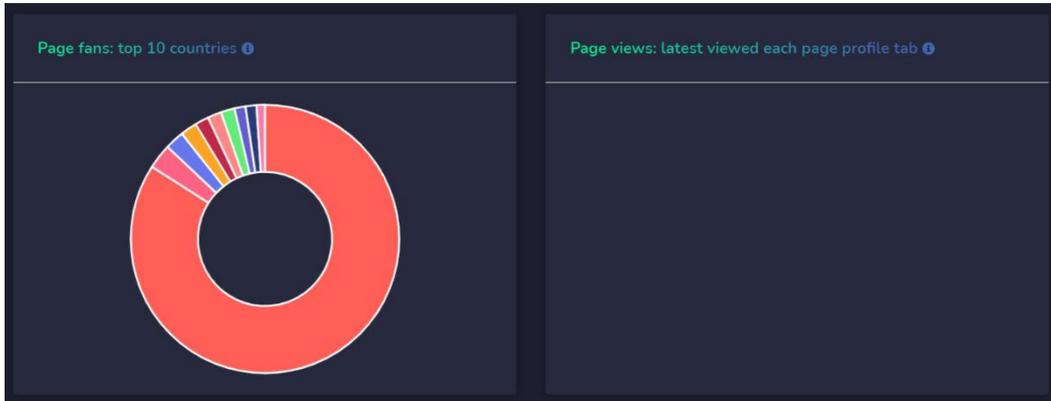
- Page cta clicks
- Page cta clicks: device statistics



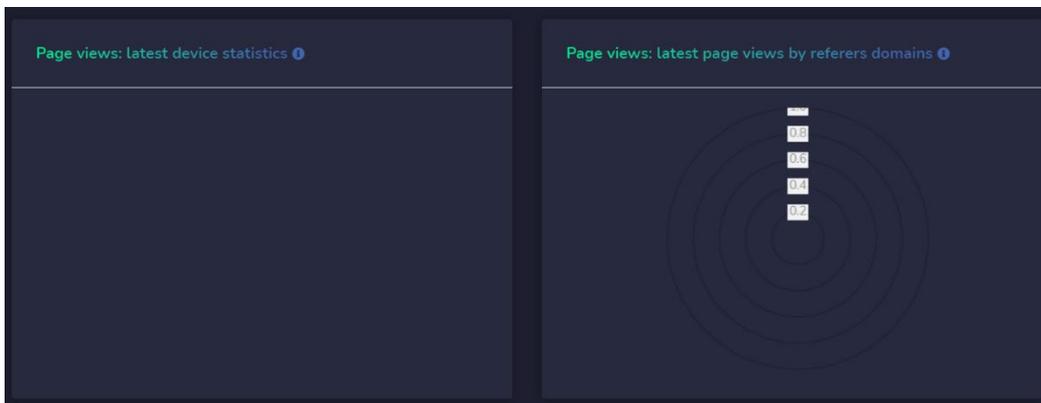
- Page fans
- Daily fan adds and removes in your page



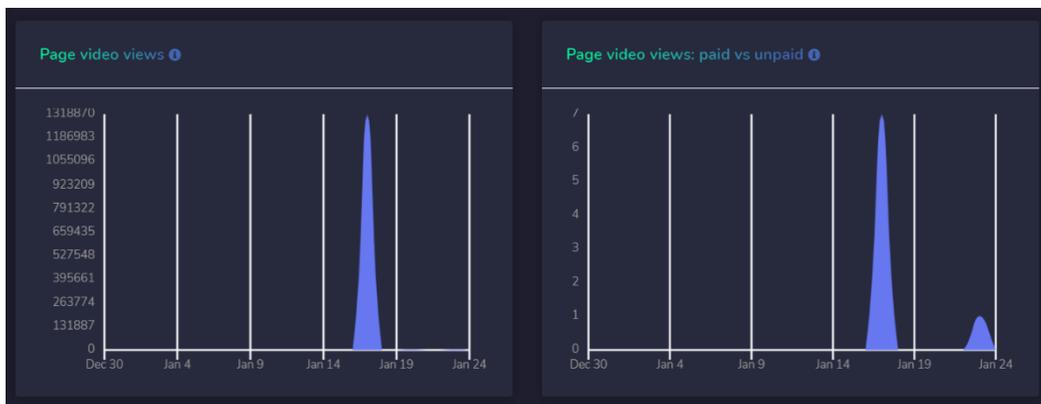
- Page fans: top 10 countries
- Page views: latest viewed each page profile tab



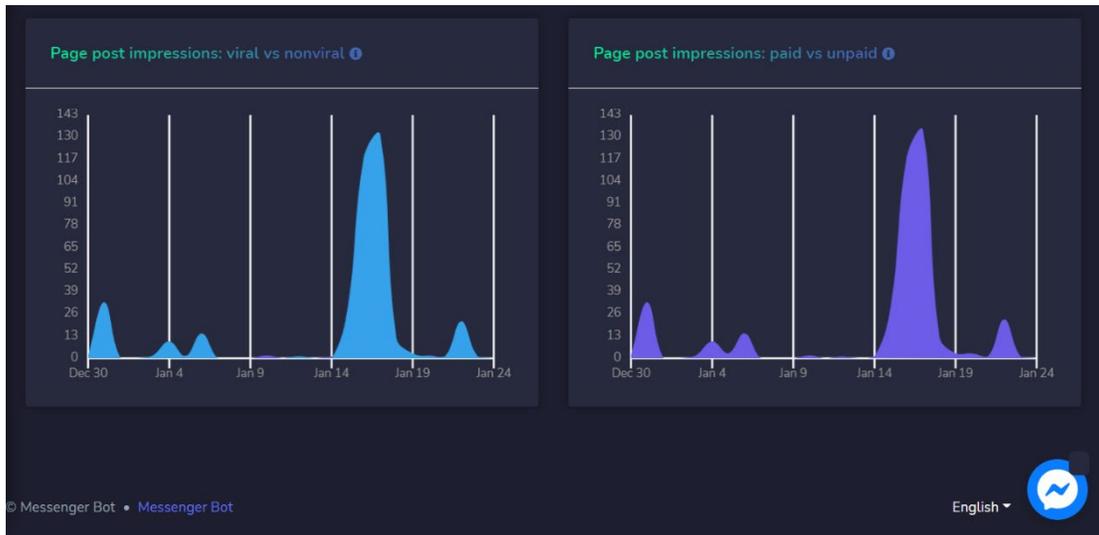
- Page views: latest device statistics
- Page views: latest page views by referrers domains



- Page video views
- Page video views: paid vs unpaid



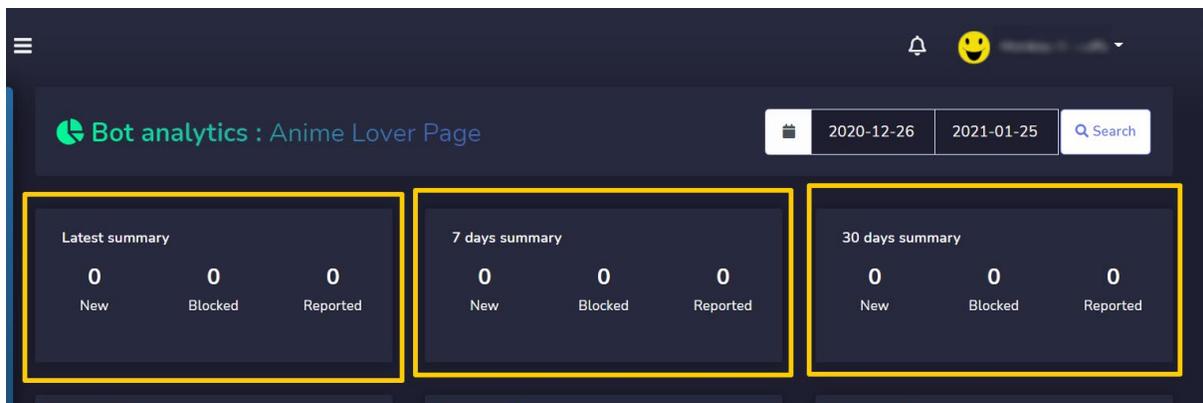
- Page post impressions: viral vs nonviral
- Page post impressions: paid vs unpaid



You can select  against each graphical view to know more about it.

4) Select the **Messenger bot analytics** option, you will be redirected to the bot analytics of your page based on different parameters. You can view the following details:

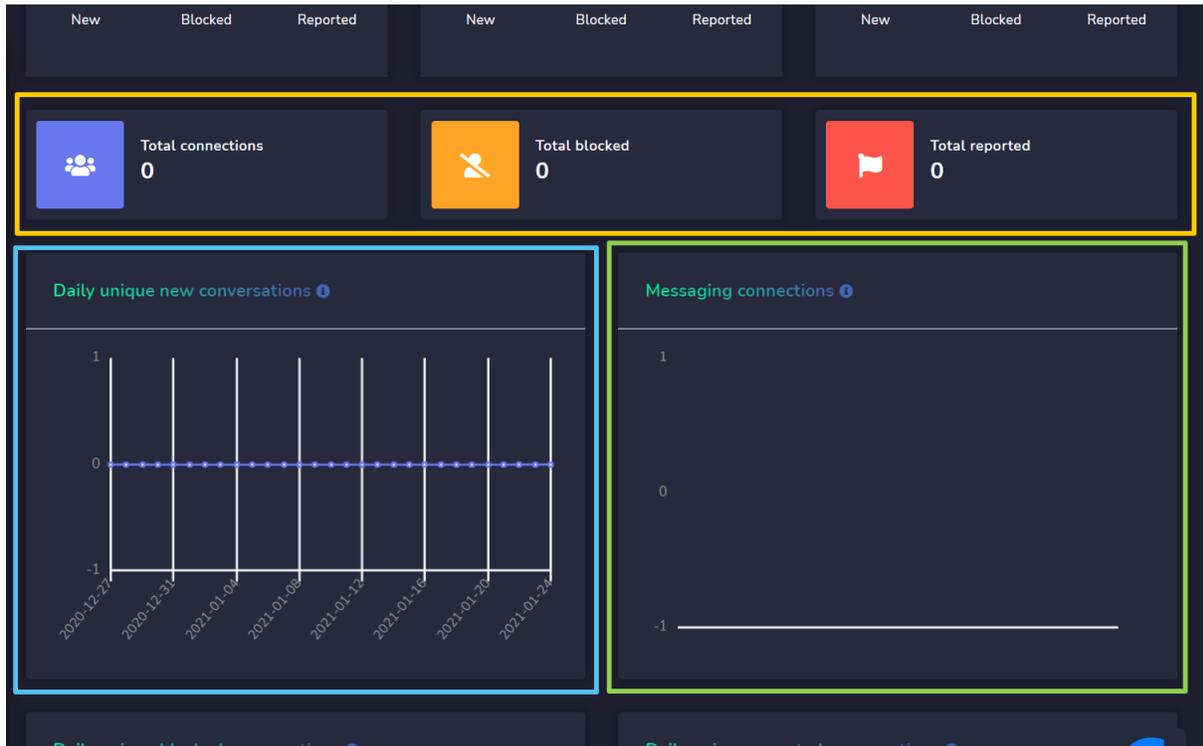
- Latest summary
- 7 days summary
- 30 days summary



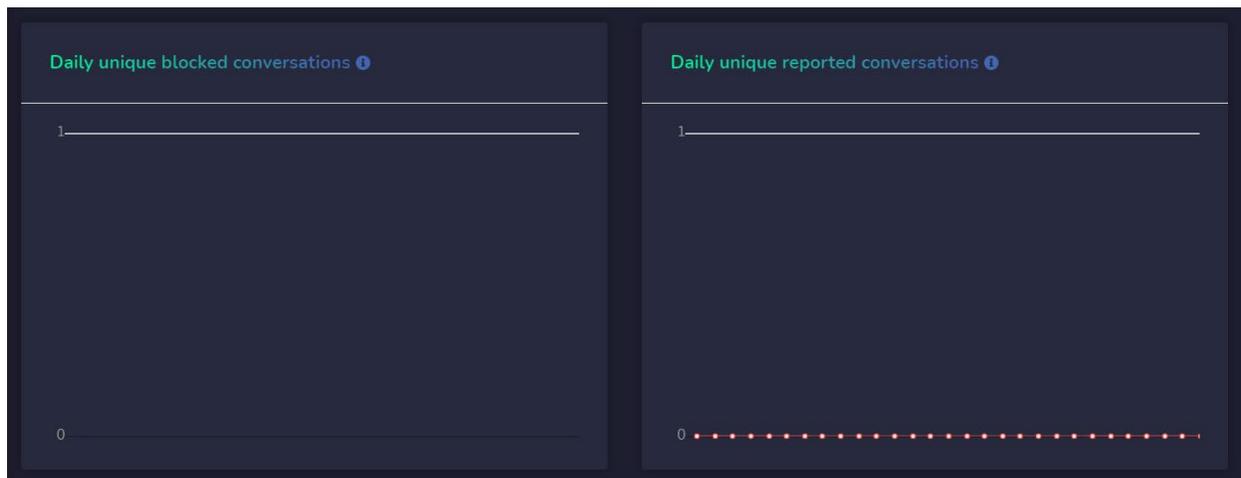
- Total connections
- Total blocked
- Total reported
- Daily unique new conversations



- Messaging connections



- Daily unique blocked conversations
- Daily unique reported conversations



- Daily unique reported vs blocked conversations

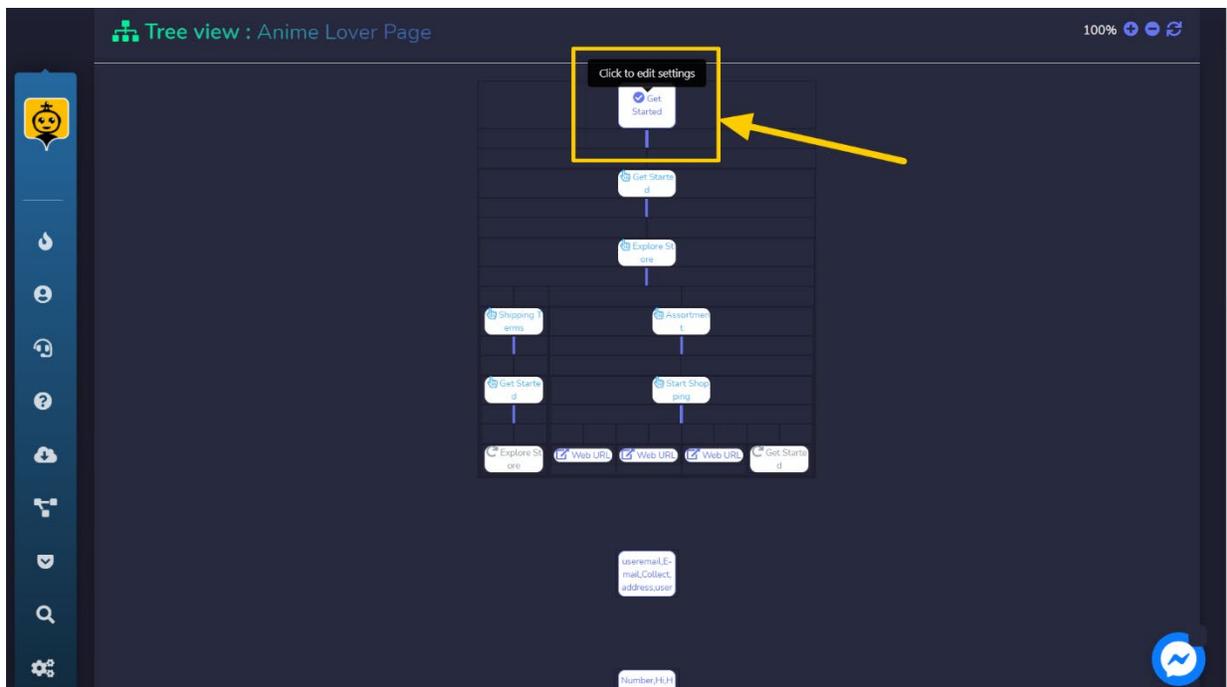




You can select  against each graphical view to know more about it.

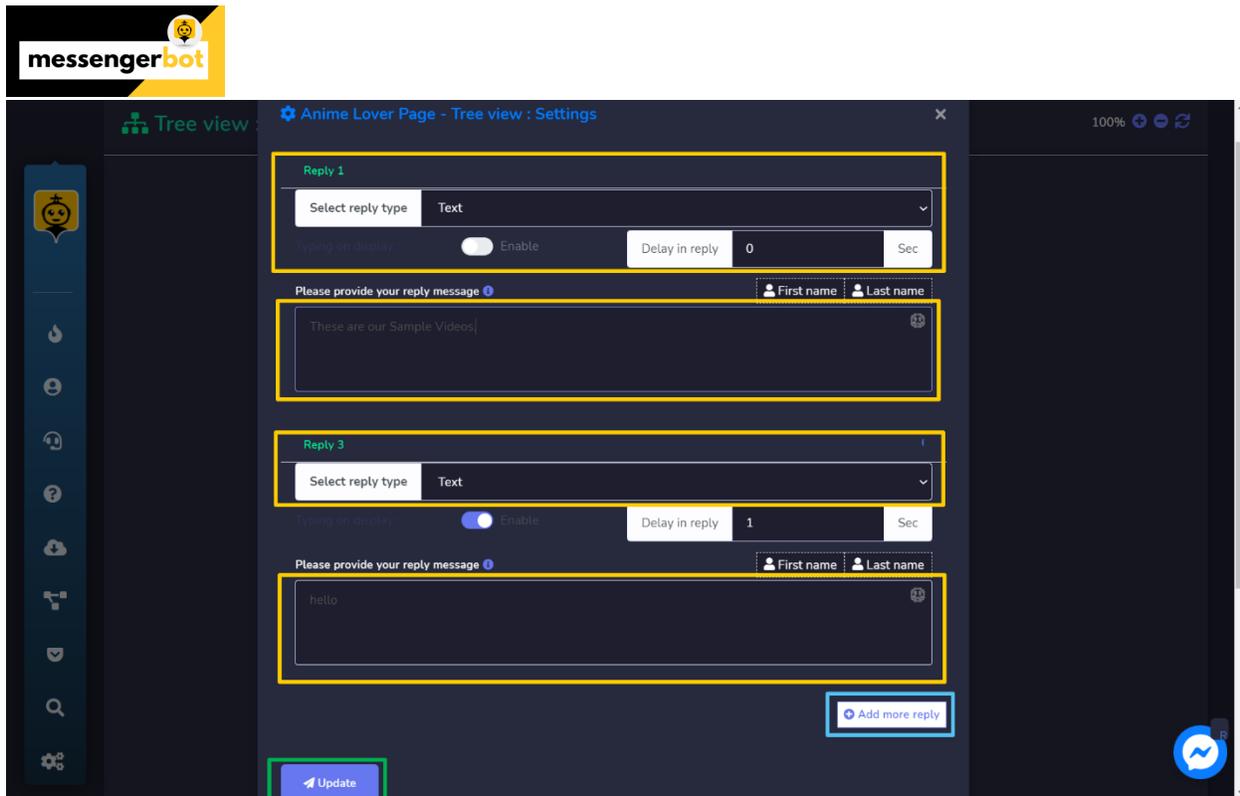
5) Select **Messenger bot tree view** option, you will be redirected to a bot tree view of all existing bots. You can click on each bot to make the edits.

- Select the bot you want to edit, **Tree view: Settings** screen will appear.

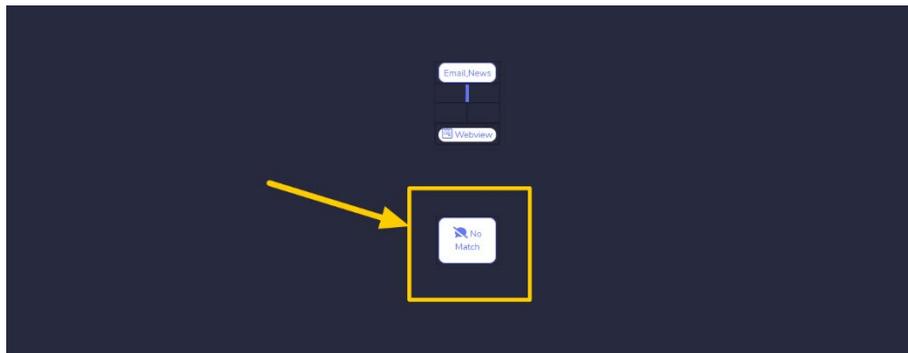


- Once updated, select the **Update** button, your bot settings will be updated.



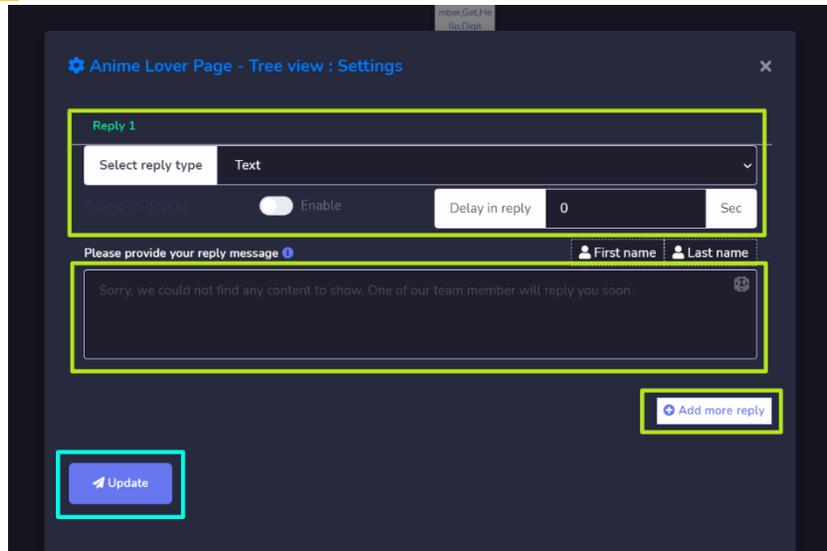


- This demo "No Match" would be your second bot option.

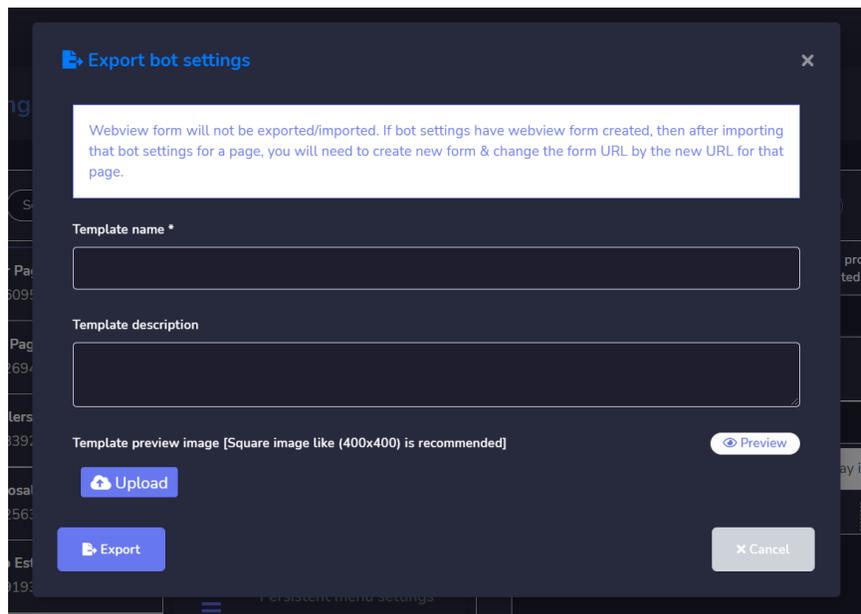


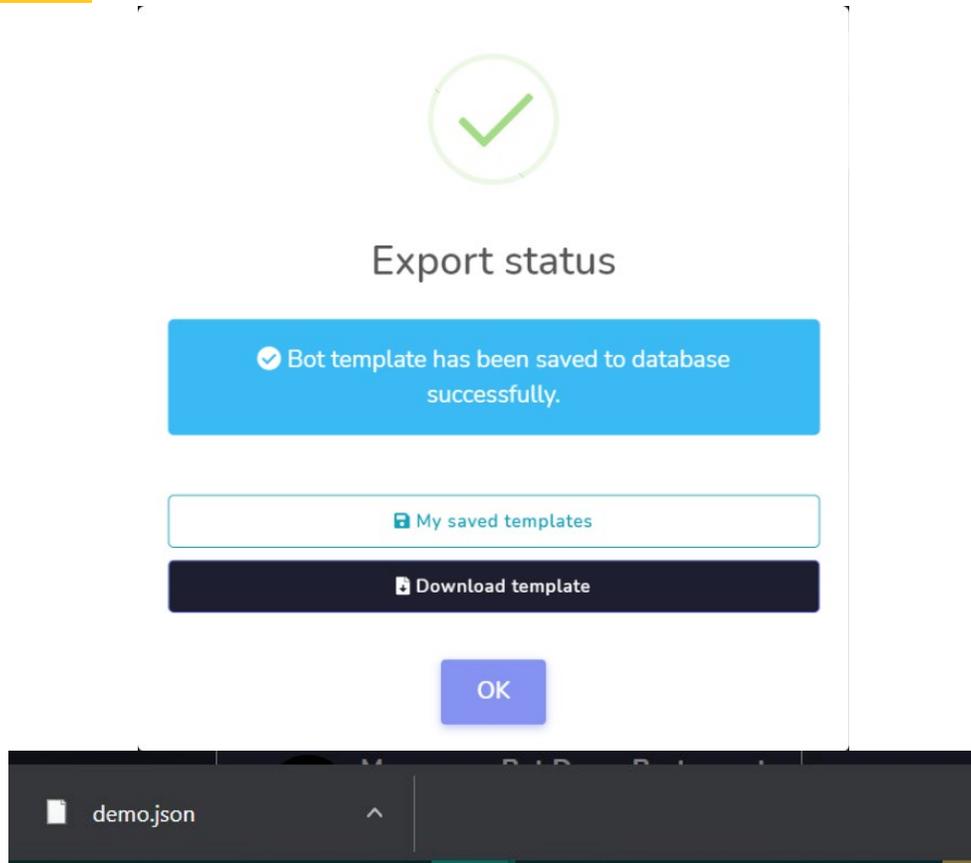
- Update your bot reply message for no match here then click **Update** when done.





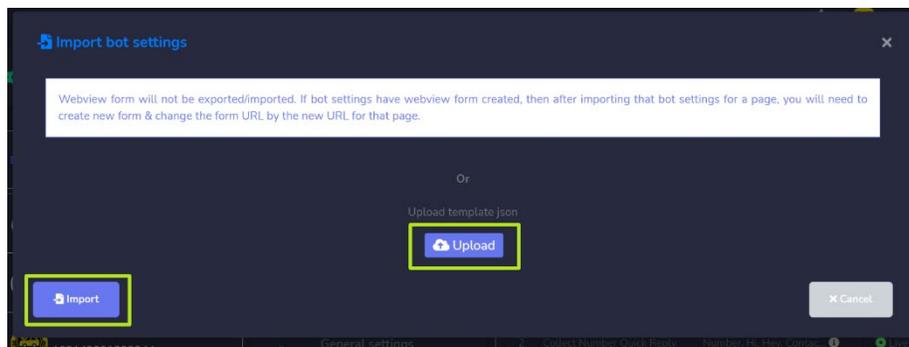
- 6) Select **Export bot settings** option, a modal will appear on your screen.
- Edit your **template name** and **template description**.
 - Select **Export** to export the bot settings.

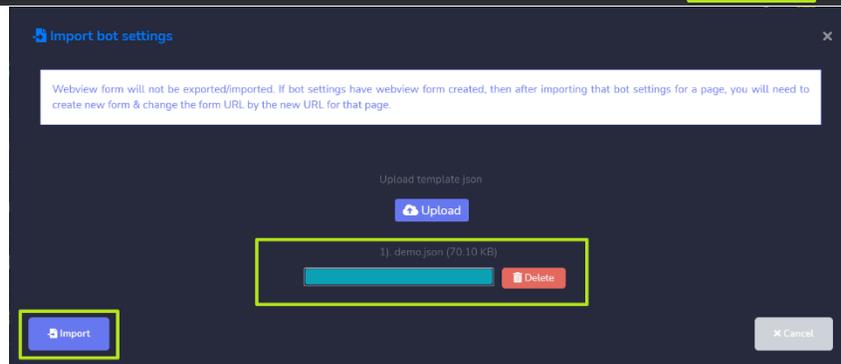
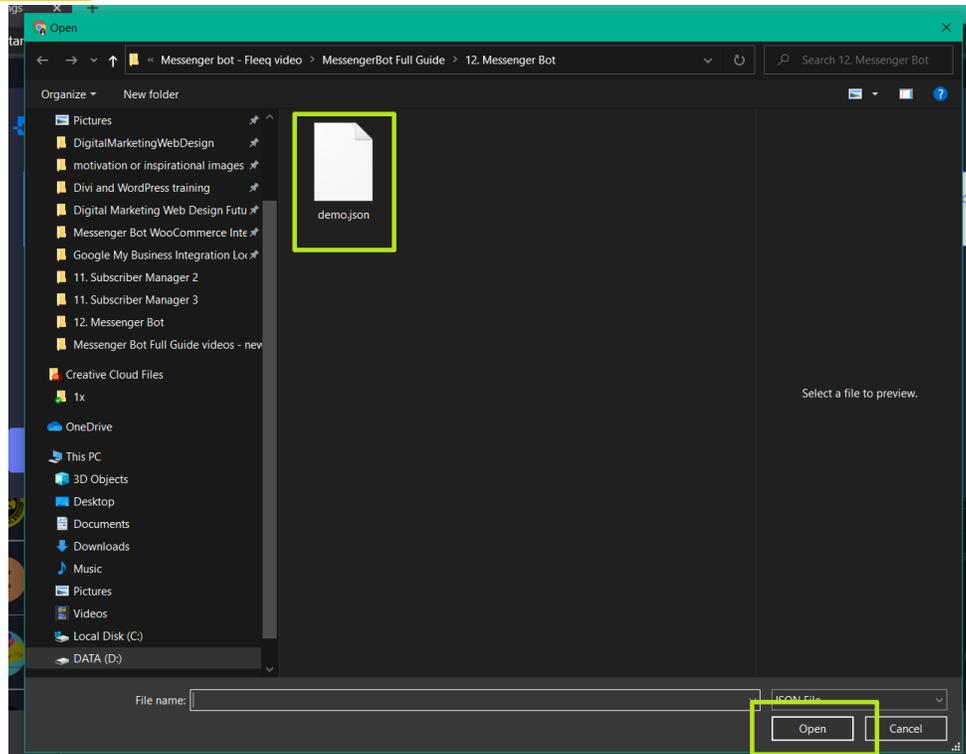




7) Select **Import bot settings** option, a modal will appear on your screen.

- Select **Upload** option, and attach the file to be uploaded.
- Select **Import** to import your bot settings.

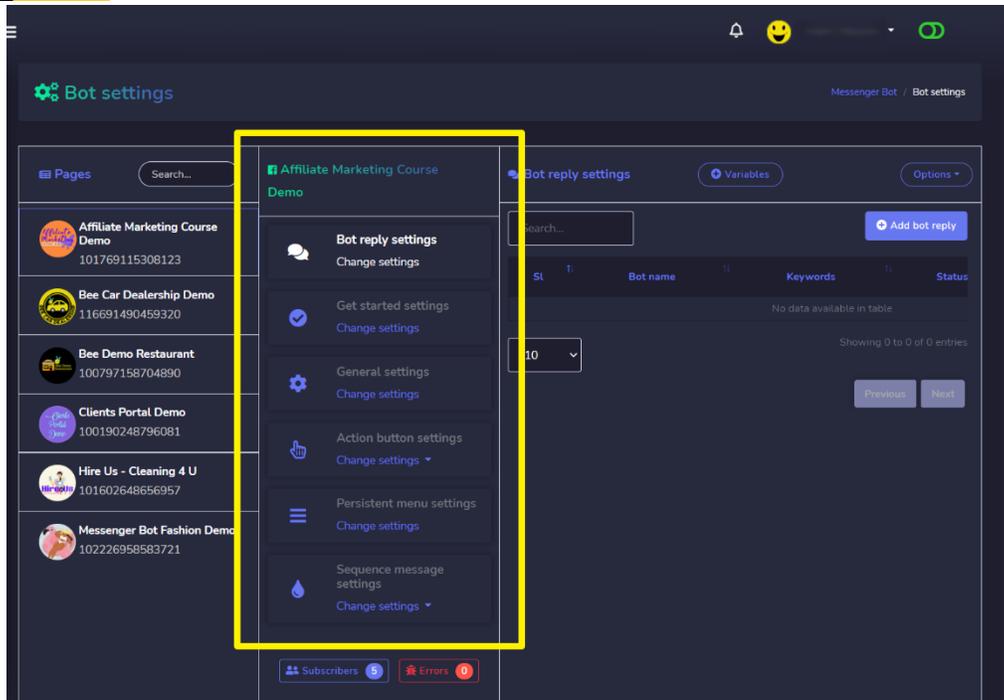




You can adjust the following Bot settings:

- Bot reply settings
- Get started settings
- General settings
- Action button settings
- Persistent menu settings
- Sequence message settings

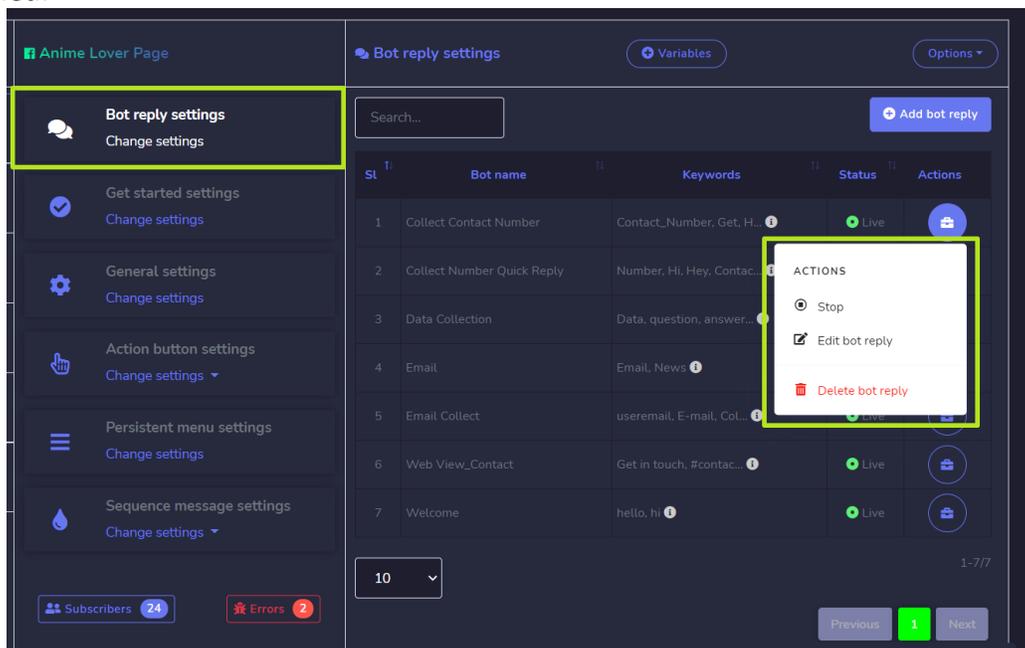




A detail of these settings can be found in next headings.

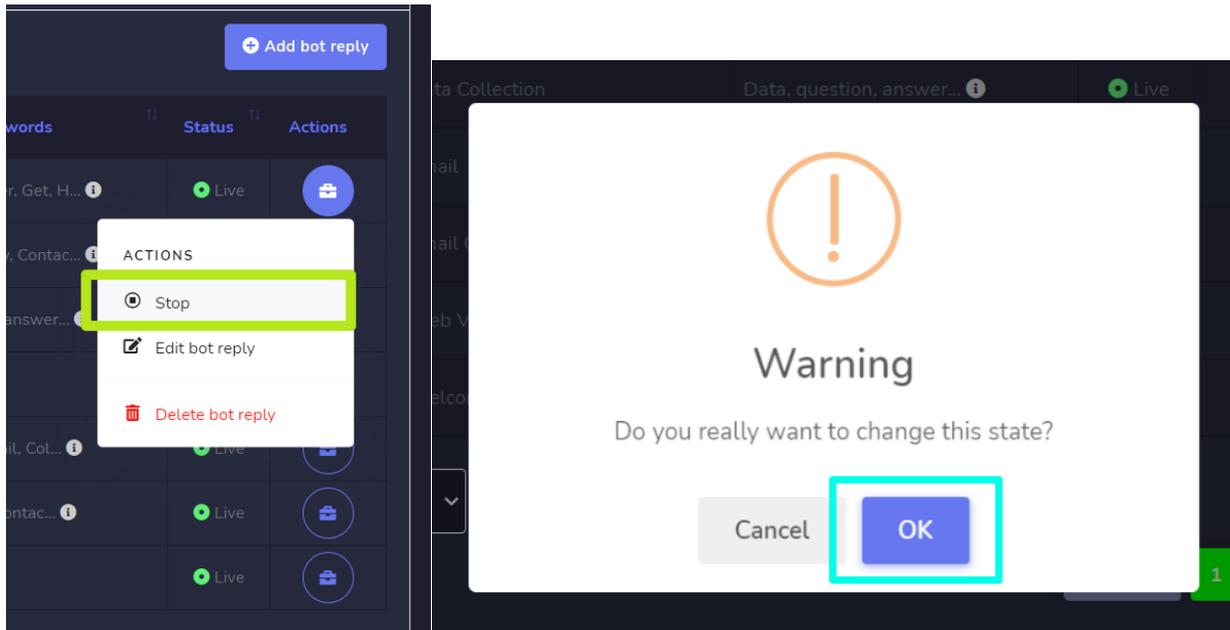
Bot reply settings

Select **Bot reply settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**. A list of bot replies will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on a bot reply, select  option against the reply you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

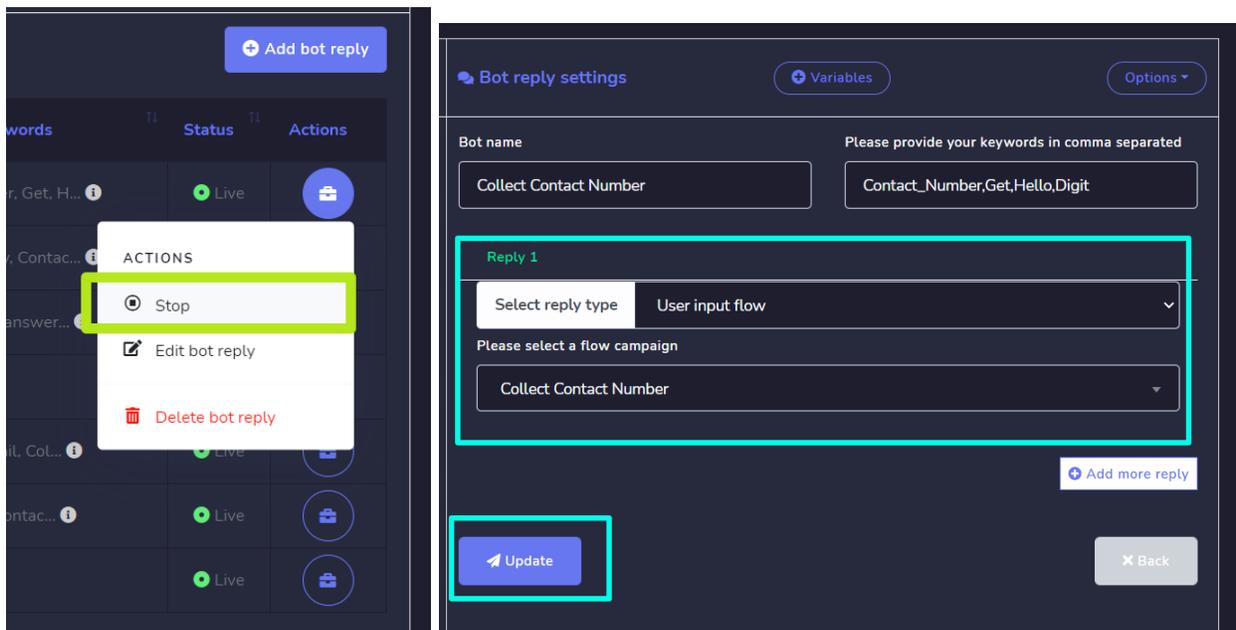




- **Stop:** change the state.

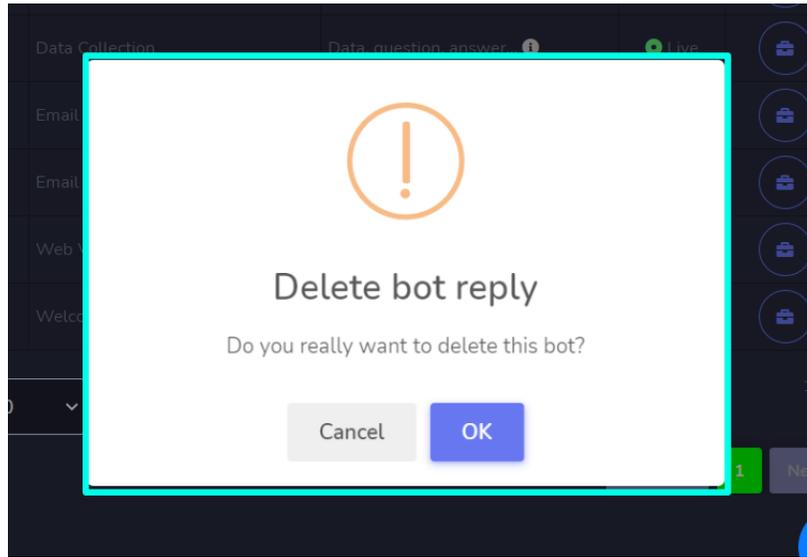
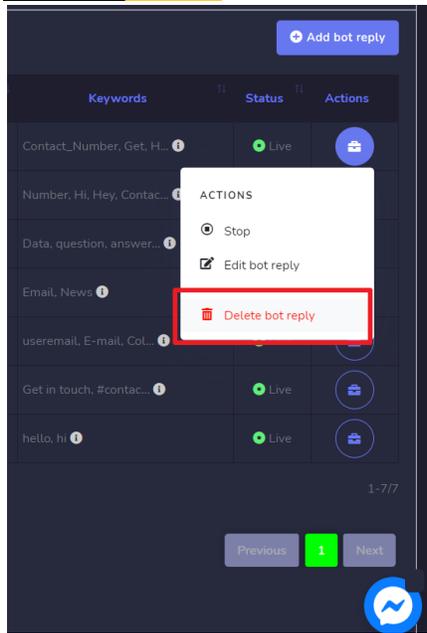


- **Edit bot reply:** make changes in the bot reply then select Update



- **Delete bot reply**

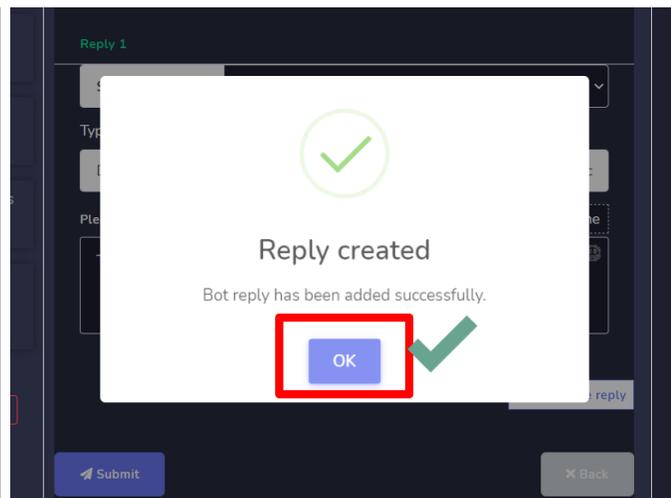
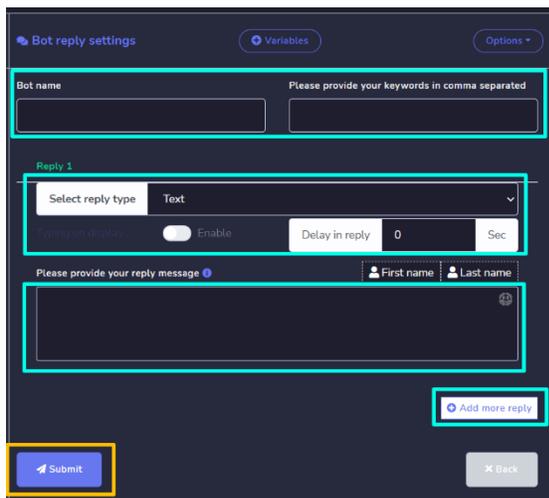
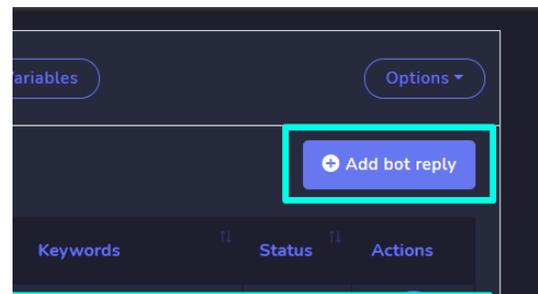




Add a bot reply

You can add a bot reply by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.
- 2) Enter **Bot name**, provide your **keywords**.
- 3) Provide a reply in **Reply** field, first select the **type** then enter your reply.
- 4) Select **Submit** to save your bot reply.





Types of bot reply

Bot replies are of the following different types:

Text

For the bot reply to be a text type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide the **reply message** in the field provided.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.

A screenshot of the "Bot reply settings" interface. The form is dark-themed with light-colored text and input fields. At the top, there are tabs for "Variables" and "Options". The main form area is divided into sections. The first section, "Bot name", has a text input field and a label "Please provide your keywords in comma separated". The second section, "Reply 1", includes a "Select reply type" dropdown menu set to "Text", a "Enable" toggle switch, and a "Delay in reply" field with a value of "0" and a "Sec" unit. Below this is a large text area for the "Please provide your reply message" with a "First name" and "Last name" label. At the bottom right of the form is an "Add more reply" button. At the bottom left is a "Submit" button, and at the bottom right is a "Back" button.

Image

For the bot reply to be an image type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **image**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.





Bot reply settings

Bot name: [] Please provide your keywords in comma separated: []

Reply 1

Select reply type: Image

Typing on display: [] Enable Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply image

Put your image url here or click the upload button.

Upload

Add more reply

Submit

Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Bot reply settings

Bot name: [] Please provide your keywords in comma separated: []

Reply 1

Select reply type: Image

Typing on display: [] Enable Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply image

https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/image/372/image_372_1611646034605032.png

Upload

1. messengerbot favicon.png (58.60 KB)

Delete

Add more reply

Submit

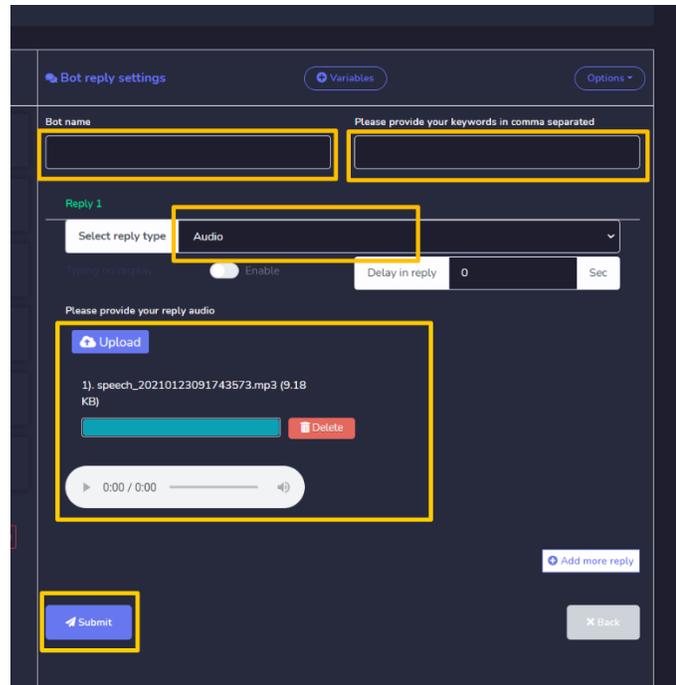
Back

Audio

For the bot reply to be a audio type, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **audio**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.



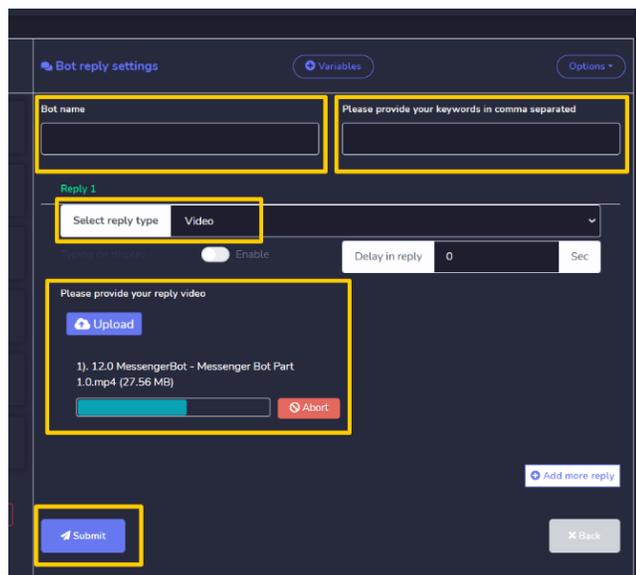


The screenshot shows the 'Bot reply settings' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Variables' and 'Options'. Below, there are two input fields: 'Bot name' and 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated'. Under 'Reply 1', the 'Select reply type' dropdown is set to 'Audio'. There is an 'Enable' toggle switch and a 'Delay in reply' field set to '0' seconds. Below this, there is an 'Upload' section for the audio file, showing a progress bar and a 'Delete' button. At the bottom, there is a 'Submit' button and a 'Back' button.

Video

For the bot reply to be a video type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **video**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.



The screenshot shows the 'Bot reply settings' interface for a video reply. The 'Bot name' and 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated' fields are highlighted. Under 'Reply 1', the 'Select reply type' dropdown is set to 'Video'. There is an 'Enable' toggle switch and a 'Delay in reply' field set to '0' seconds. Below this, there is an 'Upload' section for the video file, showing a progress bar and an 'Abort' button. At the bottom, there is a 'Submit' button and a 'Back' button.





File

For the bot reply to be a file type, you need to provide the following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide and upload the **file**.
- 4) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 5) Hit **Submit**.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot reply settings' interface. At the top, there are buttons for 'Variables' and 'Options'. Below this, there are two input fields: 'Bot name' and 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated'. The 'Reply 1' section includes a 'Select reply type' dropdown menu set to 'File', an 'Enable' toggle switch, and a 'Delay in reply' field set to '0' seconds. Below these is a file upload section with an 'Upload' button, a file preview showing '1). Messenger Bot Documentation Updated 01072021.docx (94.78 MB)', and an 'Abort' button. At the bottom, there is a 'Submit' button and a 'Back' button. A 'Add more reply' button is also visible on the right side.

Quick Reply

For the reply to be quick reply, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide your **reply message** in available field.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.





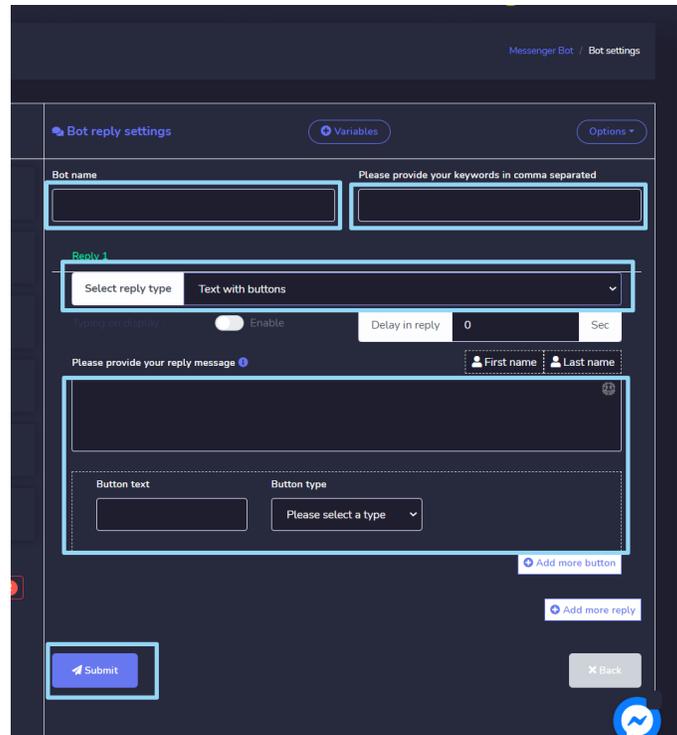
6) Hit **Submit**.

Text with buttons

For the reply to be a text with buttons, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) Provide your **reply message** in available field.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 6) Hit **Submit**.



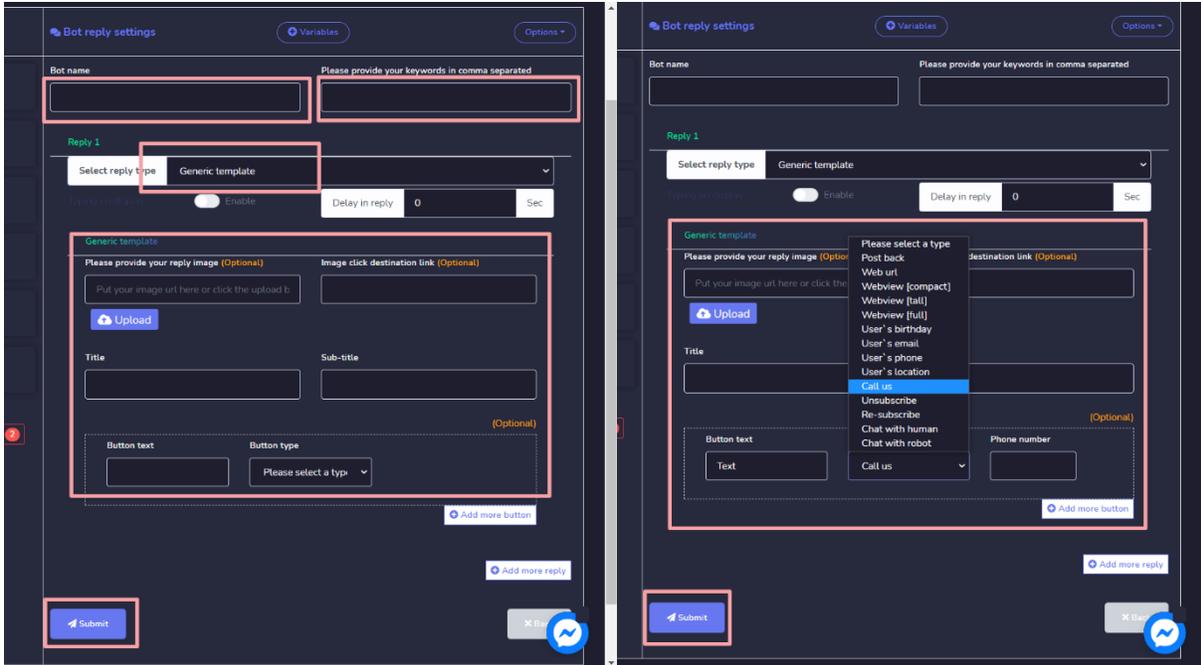


Generic template

For the reply to be a generic template, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide **image click destination link**.
- 4) If needed, provide your **reply image**.
- 5) Provide a **title** and a **sub-title** to your template.
- 6) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 7) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 8) Hit **Submit**.





Carousel

For the reply to be a carousel, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide **image click destination link**.
- 4) If needed, provide your **reply image**.
- 5) Provide a **title** and a **sub-title** to your template.
- 6) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.
- 7) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 8) Hit **Submit**.





The screenshot shows the 'Bot reply settings' interface. At the top, there are fields for 'Bot name' and 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated'. Below this, there's a 'Reply 1' section with a 'Select reply type' dropdown set to 'Carousel', an 'Enable' toggle, and a 'Delay in reply' field set to '0' seconds. The 'Carousel template 1' section includes fields for 'Please provide your reply image (Optional)' and 'Image click destination link (Optional)', both with 'Upload' buttons. Below these are fields for 'Title' and 'Sub-title'. At the bottom, there are fields for 'Button text' and a 'Button type' dropdown menu. The dropdown menu is open, showing options like 'Please select a type', 'Post back', 'Web url', 'Webview [compact]', 'Webview [full]', 'User's birthday', 'User's email', 'User's phone', 'User's location', 'Call us', 'Unsubscribe', 'Re-subscribe', 'Chat with human', and 'Chat with robot'. There are also 'Add more template', 'Add more button', and 'Add more reply' buttons. A 'Submit' button is at the bottom left.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard on the left, listing various bots such as 'AnimeLover Page', 'Bee Car Dealership', 'Clients Proposal', 'Flower Shop Estore', 'Messenger Bot Demo Restaurant', and 'Real Estate Messenger Bot'. The main area shows configuration options for a bot, including 'Get started settings', 'General settings', 'Action button settings', 'Persistent menu settings', and 'Sequence message settings'. A 'Reply 1' configuration window is open, showing a 'Select reply type' dropdown set to 'Carousel'. Below this, there's a 'Select' dropdown menu with a list of options including 'Assortment', 'Explore Store', 'Get Started', 'Shipping Terms', 'Start Shopping', 'Anime', 'Data Collection', 'Email Opt-In Final Reply', 'Final Reply Contact Number', 'Final Reply Opt-In in Contact Number', 'review 1-2', 'review 1-1', 'welcome', and 'Welcome'. There are also 'Post back' and 'Select' buttons, and 'Add more button', 'Add more template', and 'Add more reply' buttons. A 'Submit' button is at the bottom left.

Media

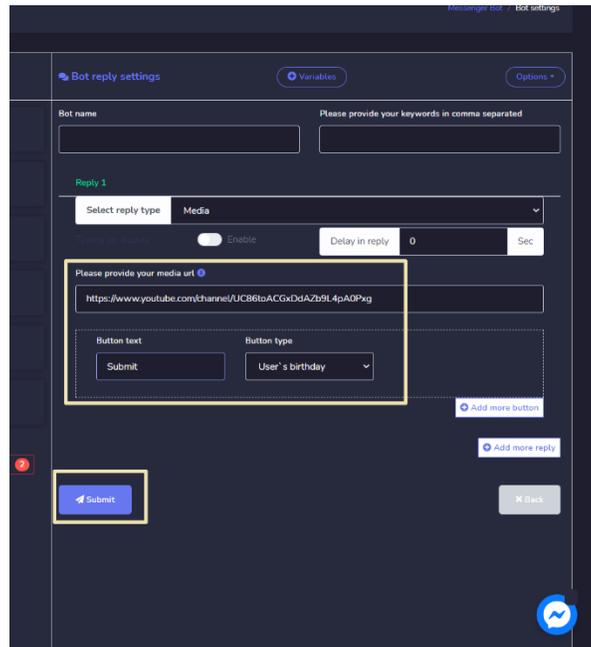
For the reply to be media, you need to provide following information.

- 1) Provide a **Bot name**.
- 2) Provide your **keywords**, separated by commas.
- 3) If needed, provide your **Media URL**.
- 4) Provide a text for the **button** and choose the type of the button based on your requirements.





- 5) You can enter a **delay time** as well in seconds.
- 6) Hit **Submit**.



Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign during Opt-in

After Creating SMS/Email Sequence campaign, now you need to know how you can assign it for subscribers during collecting email or phone numbers inside messenger through quick reply and webview.

In Bot Reply Settings, set a bot reply to collect the user's email or phone number through quick reply.





Bot reply settings

Bot name: [] Please provide your keywords in comma separated: []

Reply 1

Select reply type: Quick reply

Enable: Delay in reply: 0 Sec

Please provide your reply message: [] First name: [] Last name: []

Button text: [] Button type: User phone number

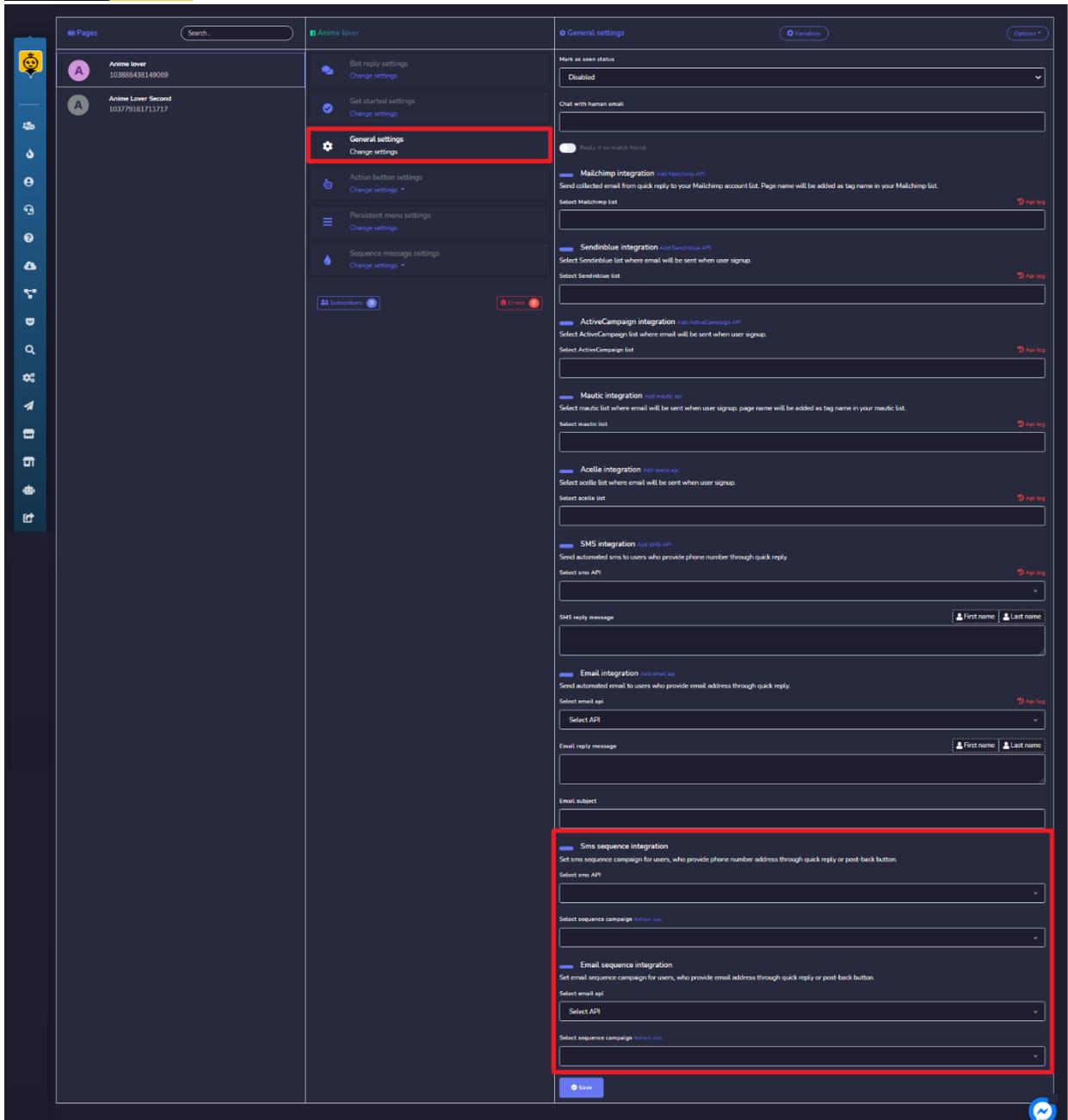
Buttons: Add more button, Add more reply

Submit, Back

Now go to **General Settings** of Bot settings section and you'll find **SMS sequence** integration (Set SMS sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button) and **Email Sequence integration** (Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button).

Now, select **SMS/Email API** first. Then select **SMS/Email Sequence campaign** for the corresponding reply and hit **Save** button. Now whenever your page gets the subscriber's email or phone number through quick reply, then those subscribers will automatically assign to your selected sequence campaigns.



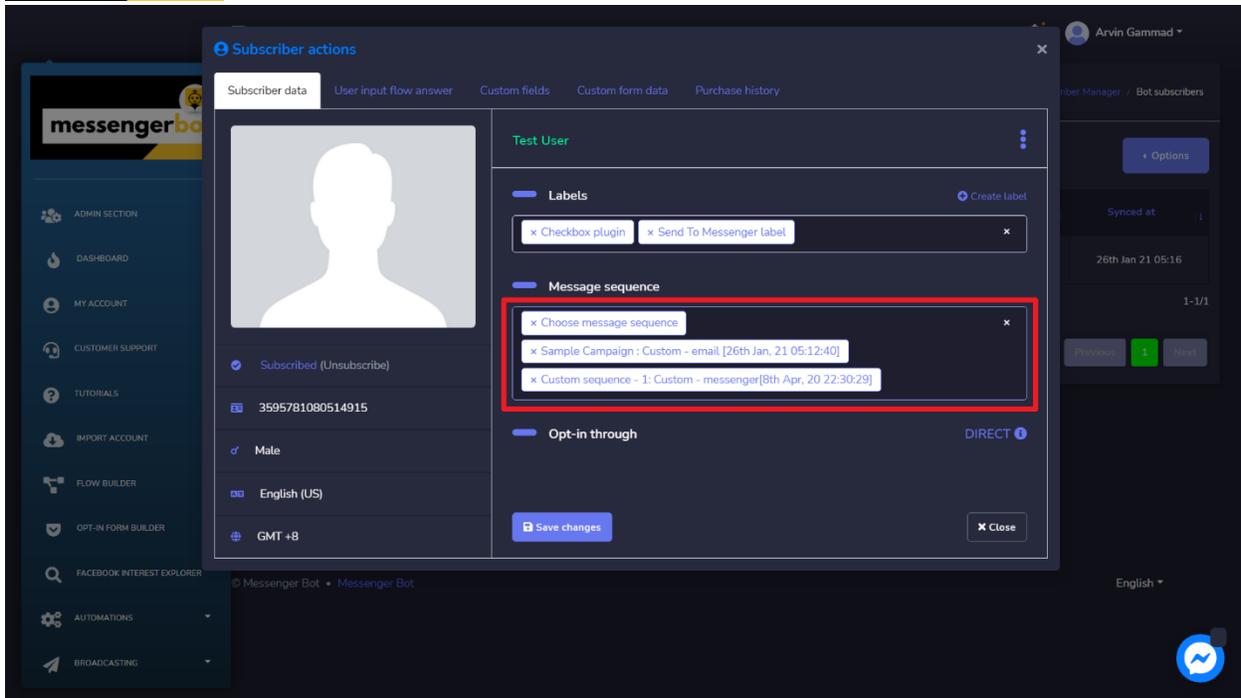


The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot dashboard for a bot named "Anime Lover". The interface is divided into three main sections:

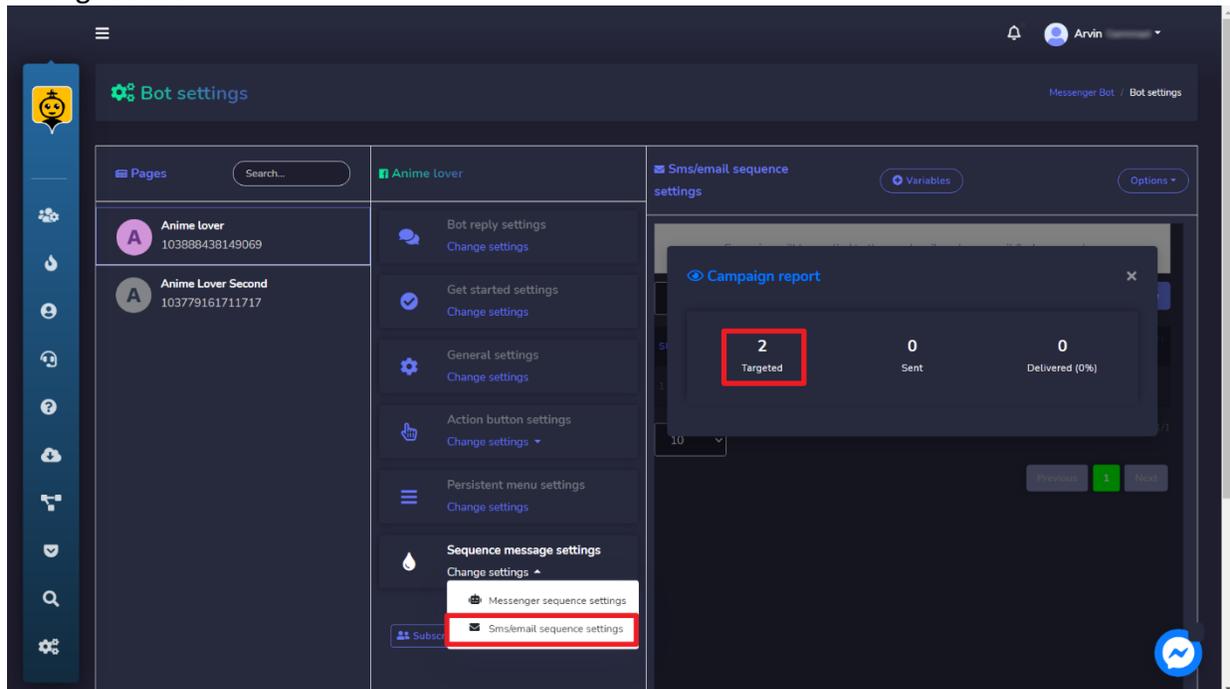
- Pages:** A list of pages including "Anime lover" (ID: 103888438149009) and "Anime Lover Secord" (ID: 10377916171717).
- Bot Settings:** A menu of settings for the bot, including "Bot reply settings", "Get started settings", "General settings" (highlighted with a red box), "Action button settings", "Persistent menu settings", and "Sequence message settings".
- General settings:** A detailed configuration page for the bot's general settings, including:
 - Mark as seen status:** Disabled.
 - Chat with human email:** A text input field.
 - Reply if no match found:** A toggle switch.
 - Mailchimp integration:** A section for connecting to Mailchimp, including a "Select Mailchimp list" dropdown.
 - Sendinblue integration:** A section for connecting to Sendinblue, including a "Select Sendinblue list" dropdown.
 - ActiveCampaign integration:** A section for connecting to ActiveCampaign, including a "Select ActiveCampaign list" dropdown.
 - Mautic integration:** A section for connecting to Mautic, including a "Select mautic list" dropdown.
 - Acelle integration:** A section for connecting to Acelle, including a "Select acelle list" dropdown.
 - SMS integration:** A section for connecting to an SMS API, including a "Select sms API" dropdown and a "SMS reply message" field with "First name" and "Last name" placeholders.
 - Email integration:** A section for connecting to an email API, including a "Select API" dropdown and an "Email reply message" field with "First name" and "Last name" placeholders.
 - Sms sequence integration:** A section for setting up an SMS sequence campaign, including a "Select sms API" dropdown and a "Select sequence campaign" dropdown.
 - Email sequence integration:** A section for setting up an email sequence campaign, including a "Select API" dropdown and a "Select sequence campaign" dropdown.

Check the result from **Subscriber Manager** -> **Bot Subscribers** -> **Subscribers Action** (see below image)





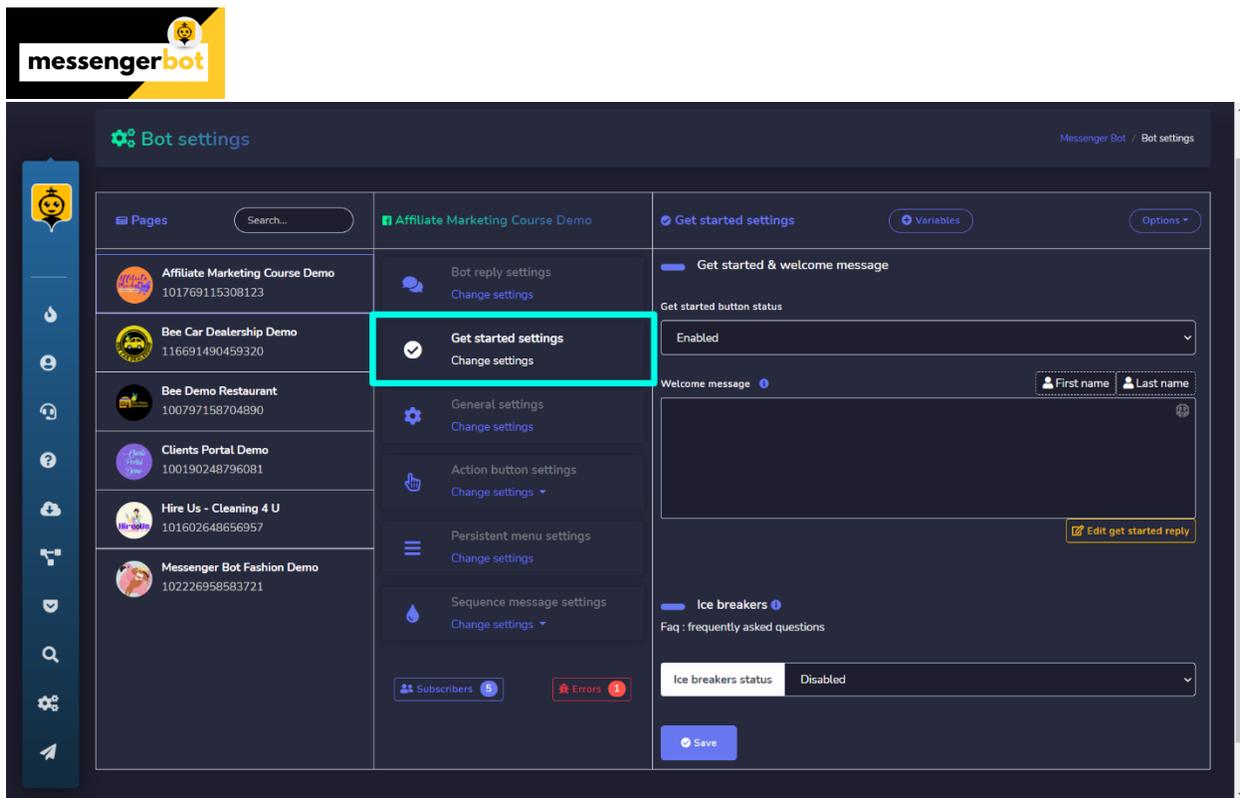
You can see the targeted subscribers of the sequence campaign also in the report at SMS/Email Settings section.



Get started settings

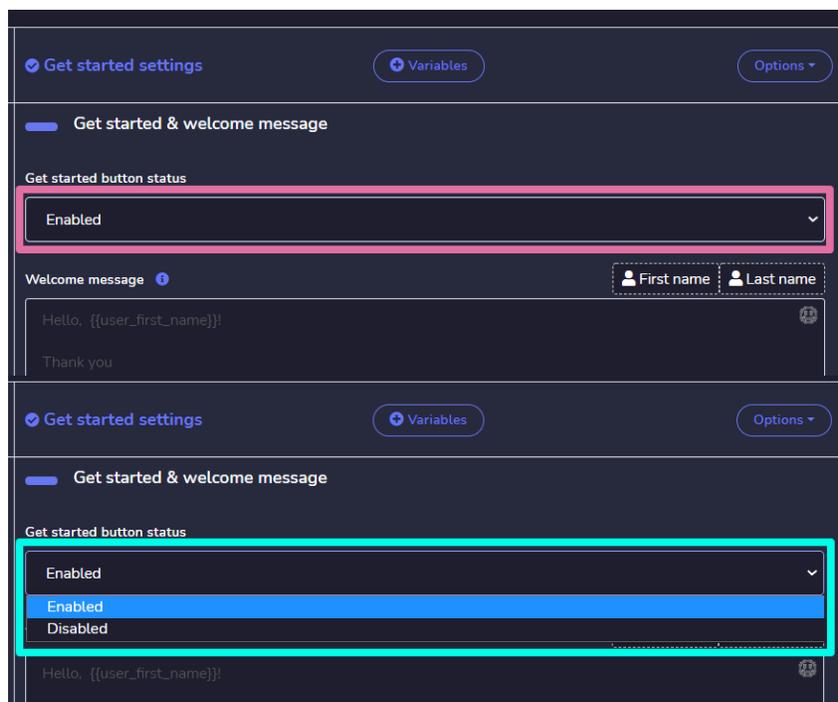
Select **Get started settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.





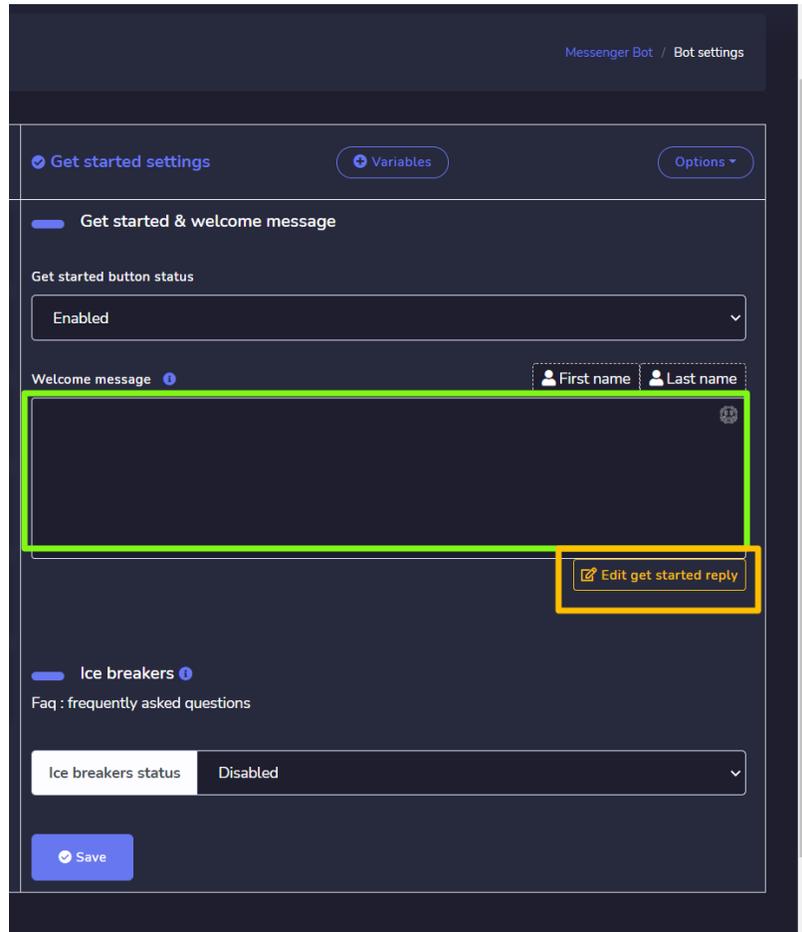
A Get started settings screen will appear, you can perform the following steps to enable your settings:

- 1) Select your **get started button status**.

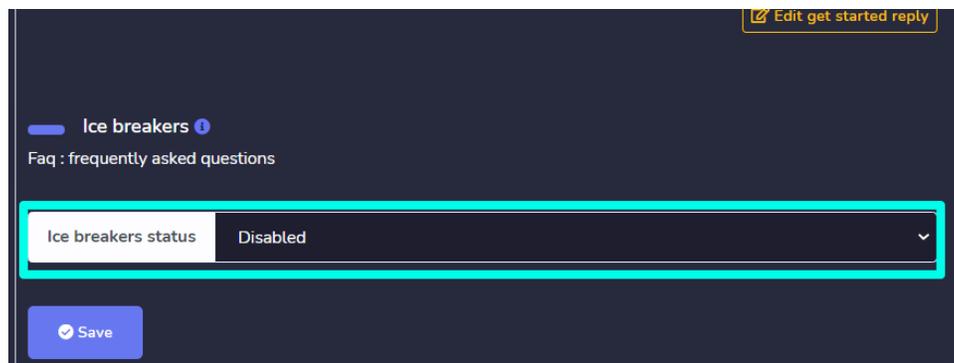




- 2) Provide a **Welcome message**. You can edit your get started message reply by selecting the **Edit get started message reply** button from the bottom of the message field.

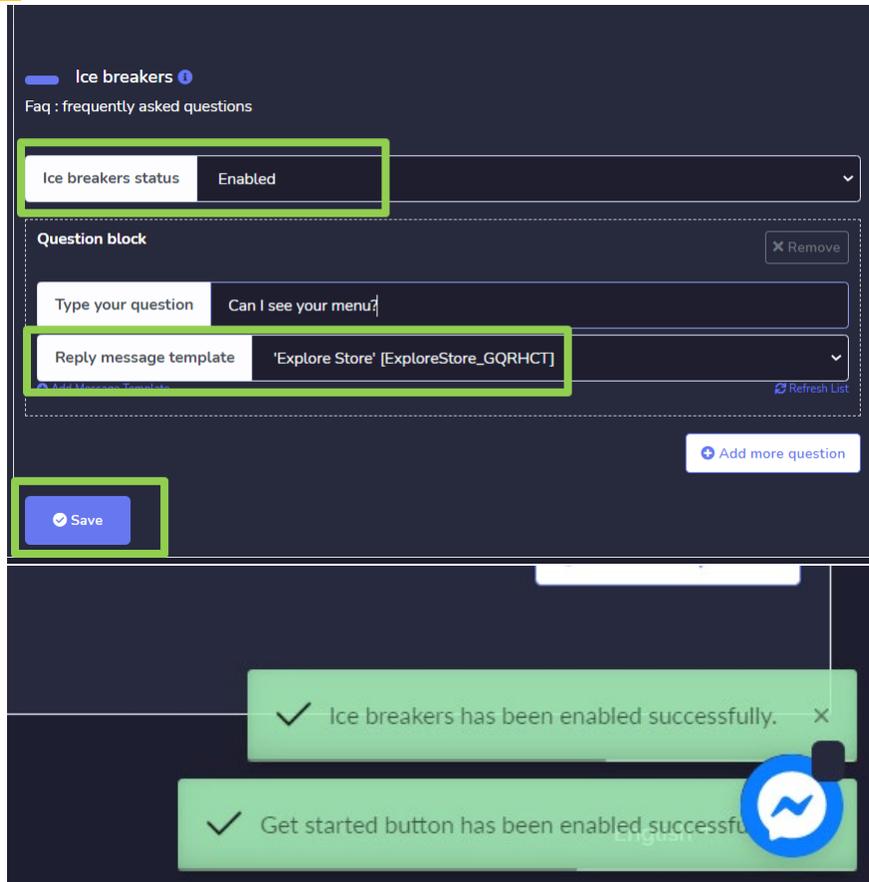


- 3) You can provide a frequently asked question as well in the **Ice breakers** section. At first, you change its **status**.



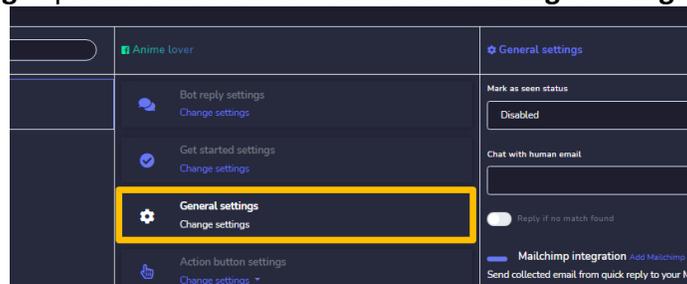
- 4) Once enabled, type a question along with a reply in the **Question block**.
- 5) Select **Save** to proceed.





General settings

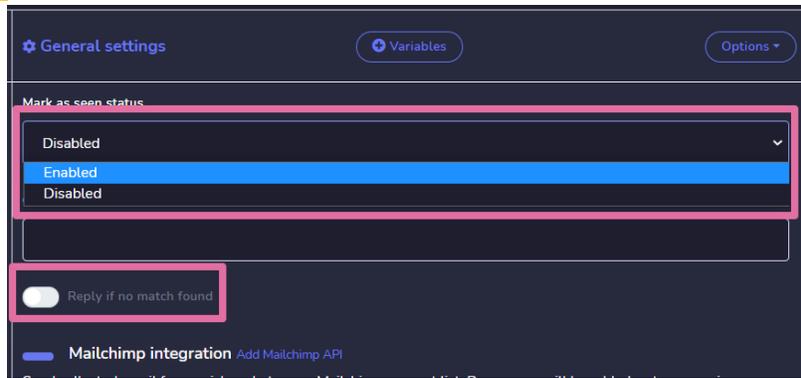
Select **General settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.



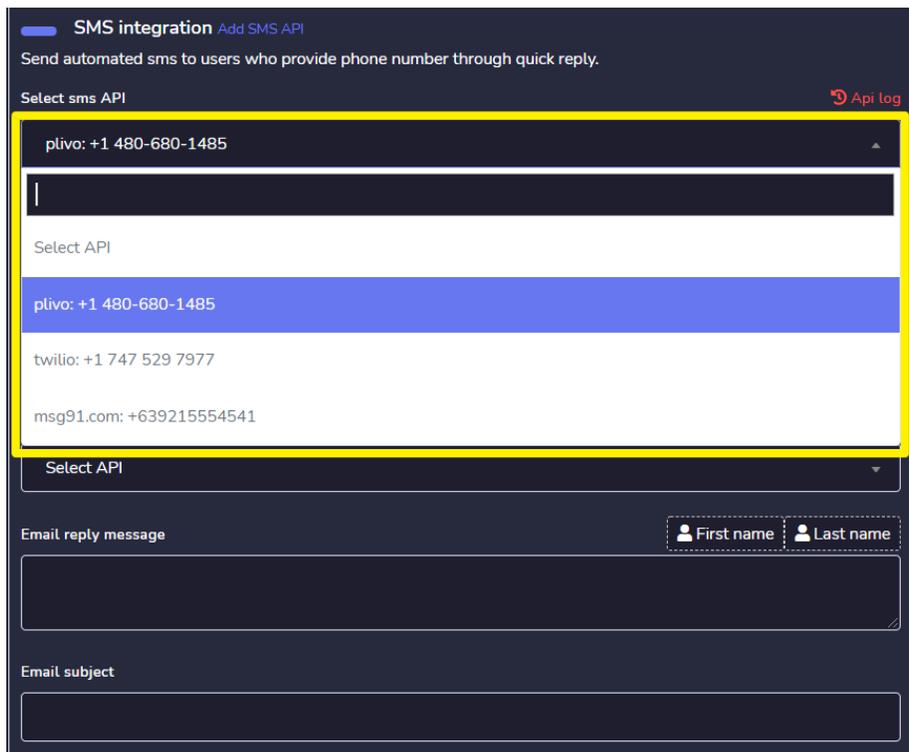
A General settings screen will appear, you can perform the following steps to enable your settings:

- 1) Select your mark as seen **status**.





- 2) Select the **respective integration** based on your requirements.
- 3) Once you select an integration e.g. **SMS integration** a dropdown menu will appear, select the option you want to choose.



- 4) You can also add a new API by selecting the **New API** option against each integration's settings.



Mailchimp integration [Add Mailchimp API](#)

Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.

Select Mailchimp list 🔗 Api log

Frencel [blurred]

Messenger Bot

Select Sendinblue list 🔗 Api log

ActiveCampaign integration [Add ActiveCampaign API](#)

Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.

Select ActiveCampaign list 🔗 Api log

5) Select **Save** to proceed.



Action button settings

Select **Action button settings** option from the menu then select **change settings**.

Anime Lover Page

- Bot reply settings
Change settings
- Get started settings
Change settings
- General settings
Change settings
- Action button settings**
Change settings ▾
- Persistent menu settings
Change settings
- Sequence message settings
Change settings ▾

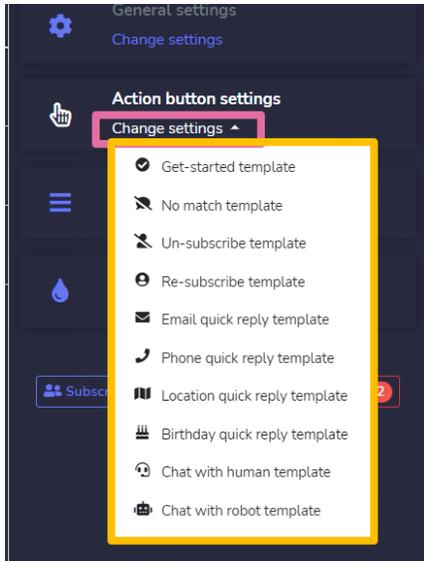
👤 Subscribers 24 🚫 Errors 2



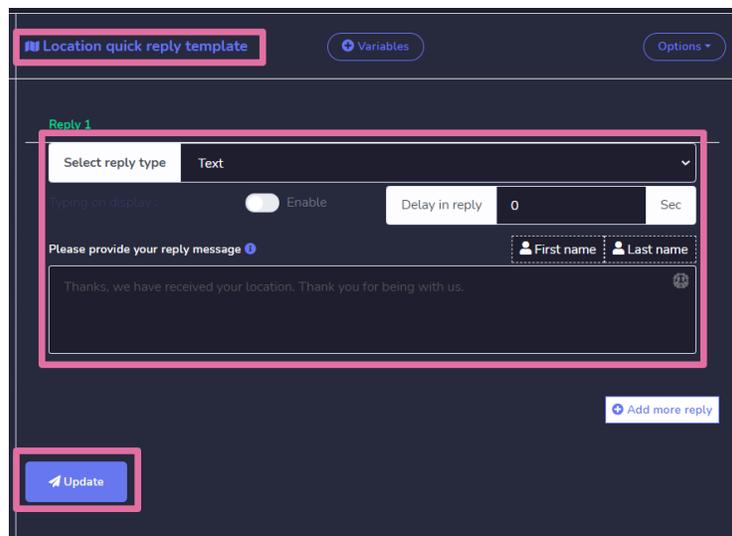


A list of different template options will appear. Select the template you want to choose then adjust its settings by providing:

- 1) The **type** of the reply.

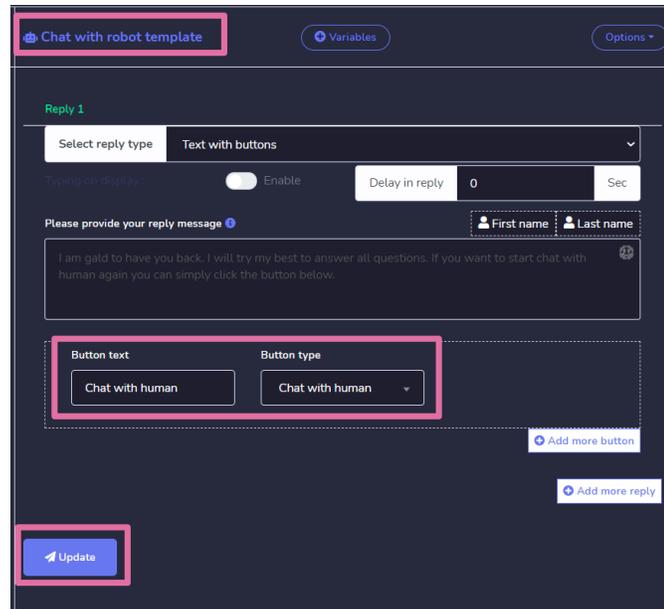


- 2) Provide your **message**.
- 3) If there exists, provide a **reply delay** option as well.



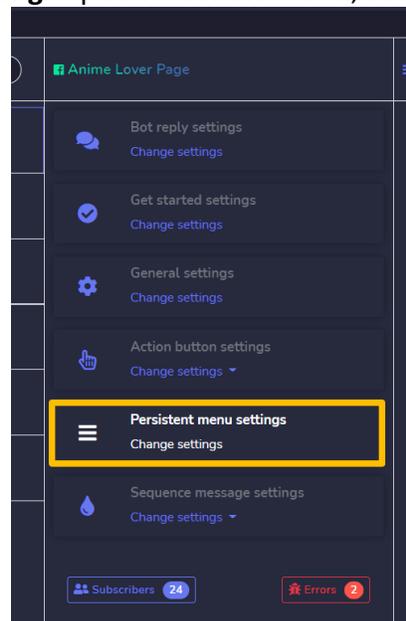
- 4) If there exists, a typing on display then turn it to **ON or OFF** based on your requirement.
- 5) If there exists a **button**, then adjust its text and type as well.





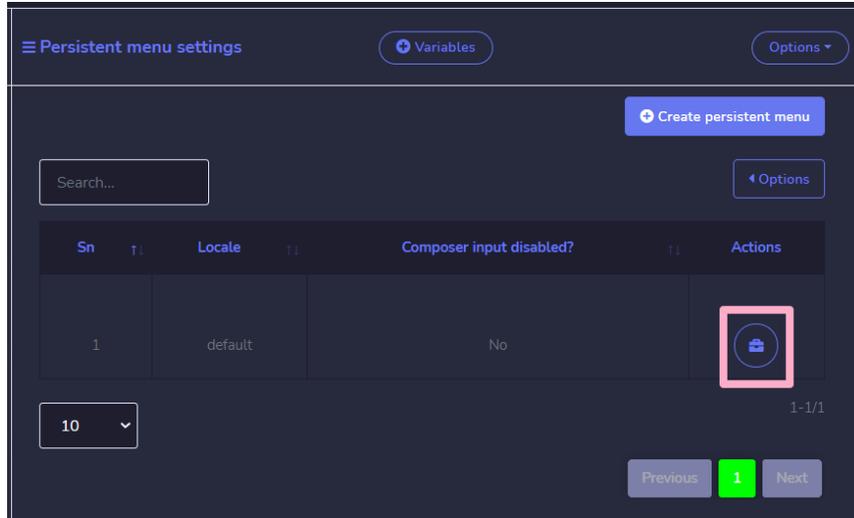
Persistent menu settings

Select the **Persistent menu settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**.



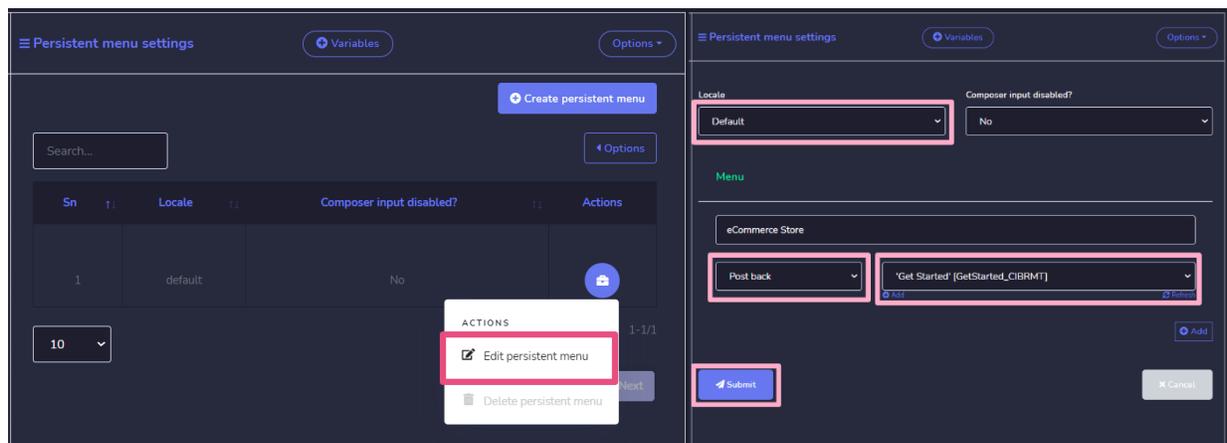
A list of locales will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on a locale, select option against the locale you want to perform actions on.



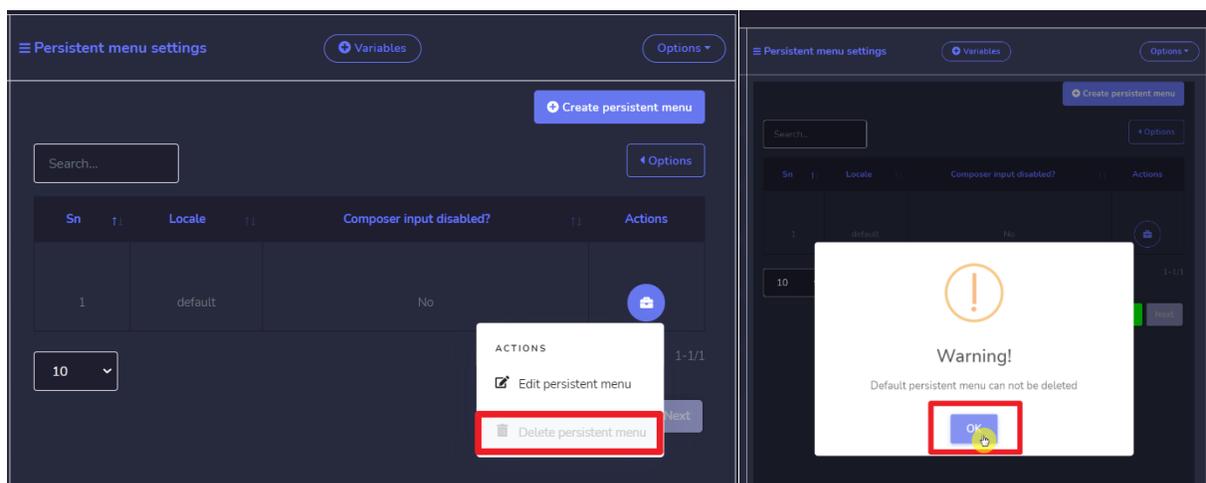


The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **Edit persistent menu:** make changes in the persistent menu settings



- **Delete persistent menu**

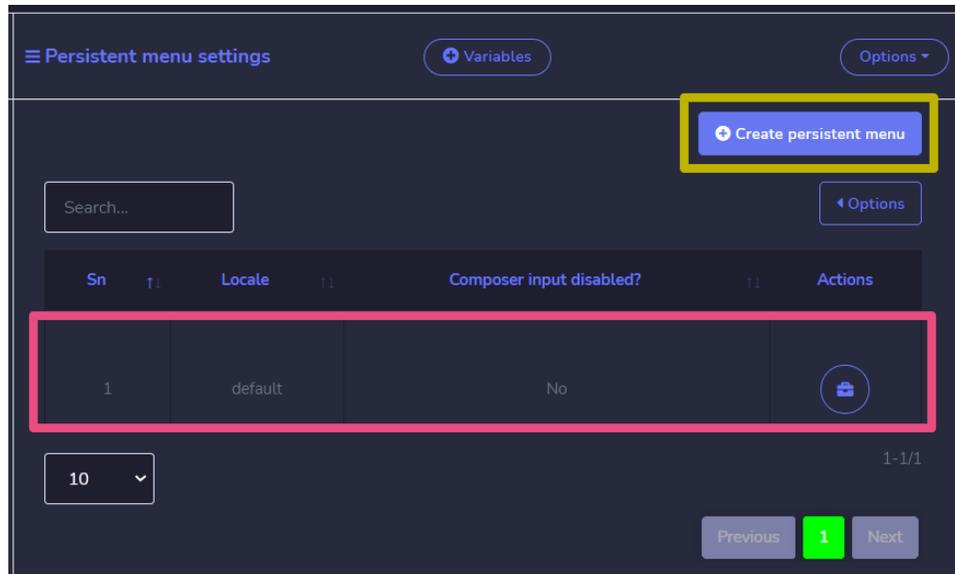




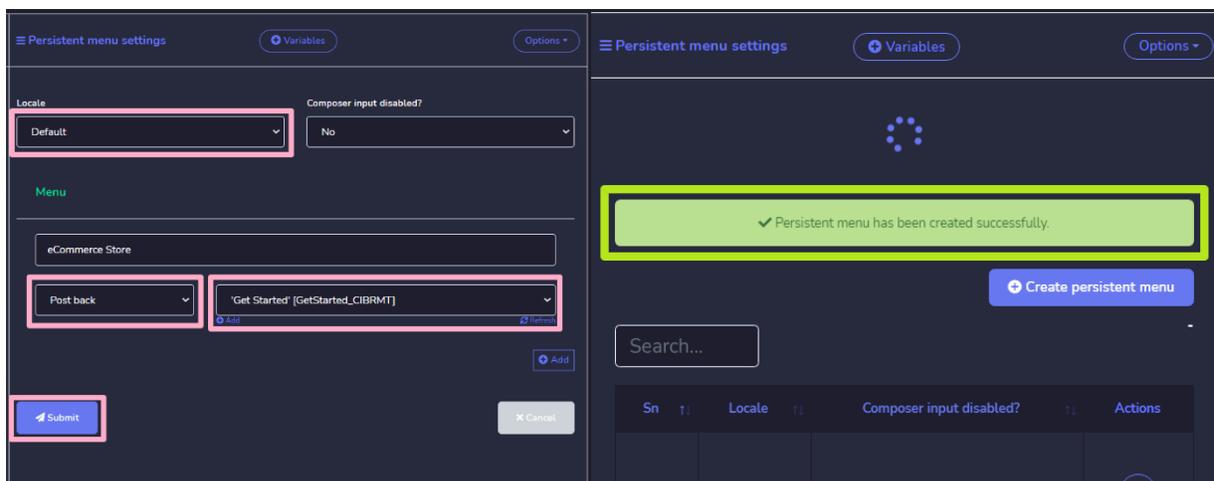
Create persistent menu

You can create a persistent menu by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create persistent menu** from the top right of the screen.



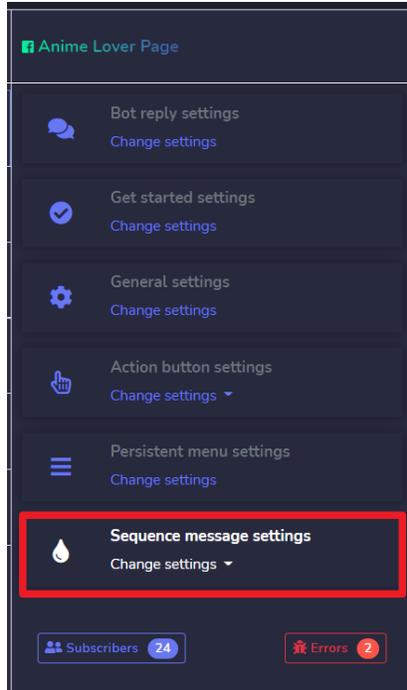
- 2) Provide **Locale** information.
- 3) Provide the status of **composer input**.
- 4) Provide **Menu title** and **web URL**.
- 5) Select **Submit** to create your persistent menu.



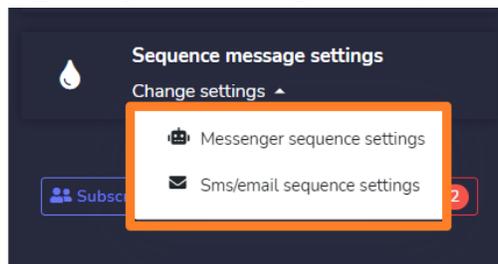
Sequence message settings

Select **Sequence message settings** option from the menu, then select **change settings**.

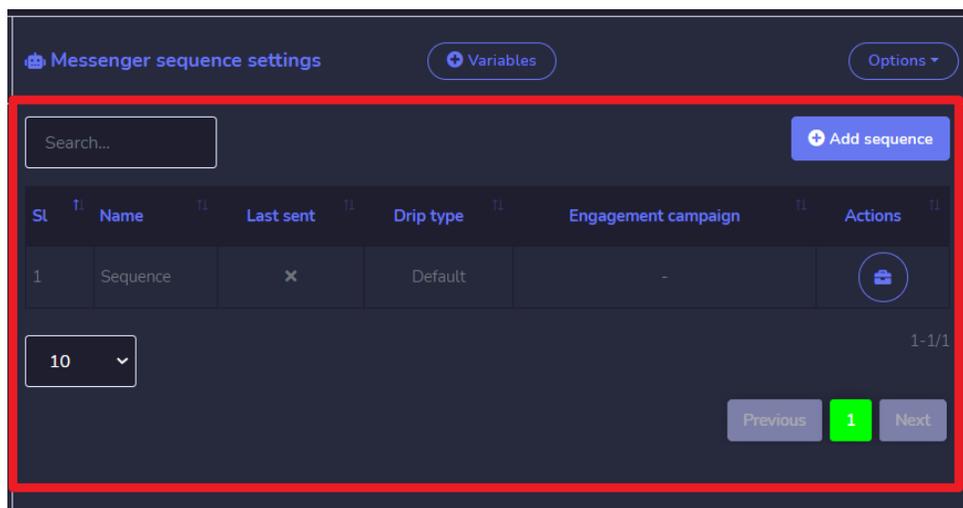




You can choose either **Messenger sequence settings** or **SMS/email sequence settings**.



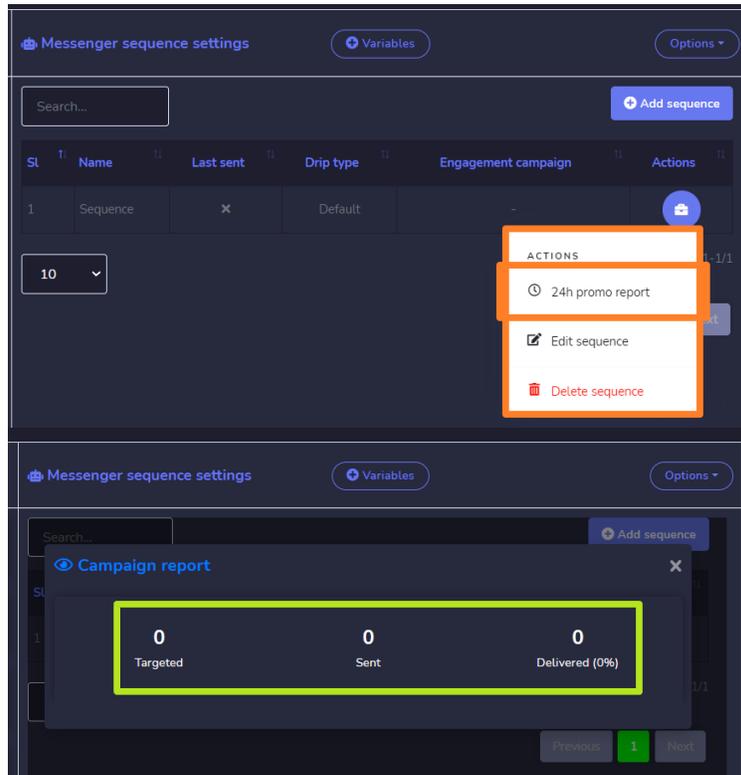
First, **Messenger sequence settings**. A list of sequence messages will appear on the screen. To perform different actions on them, select  option against the message you want to perform actions on.



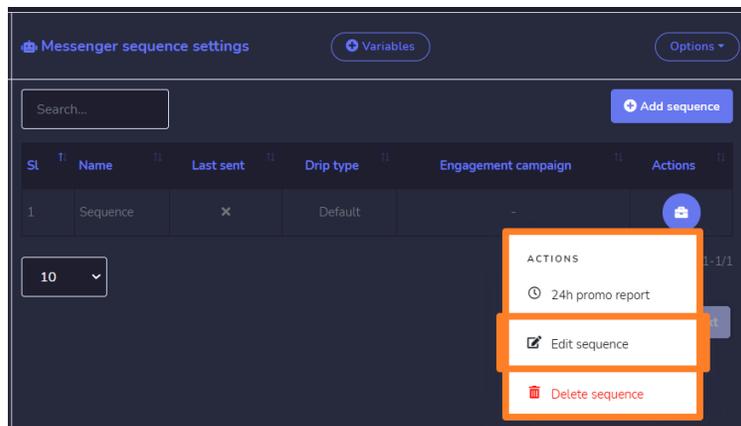


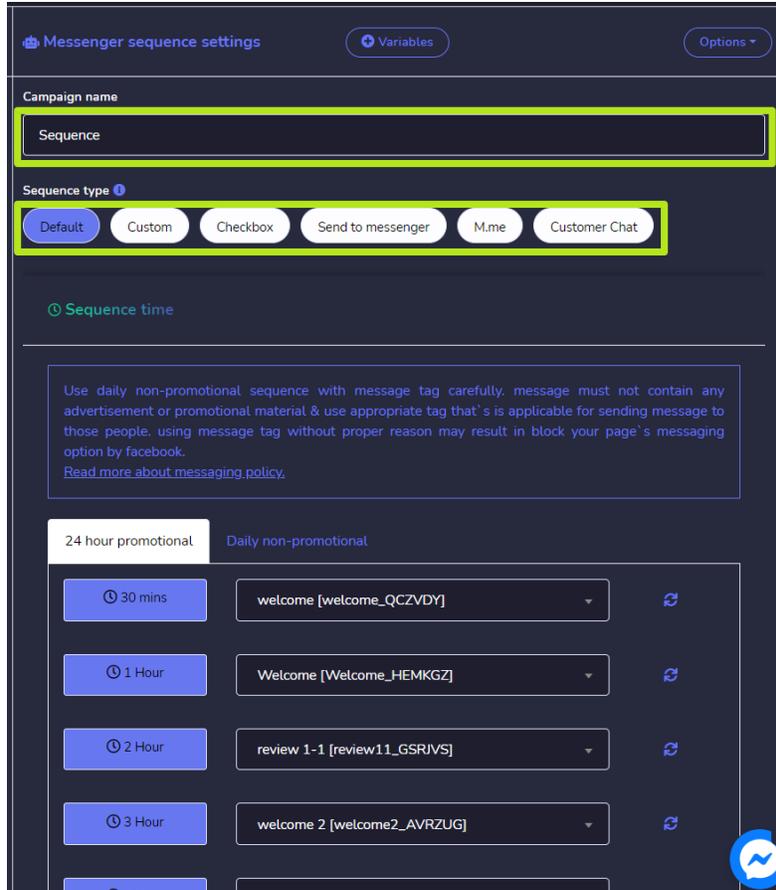
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **24h promo report:** A report on targeted, sent and delivered messages.

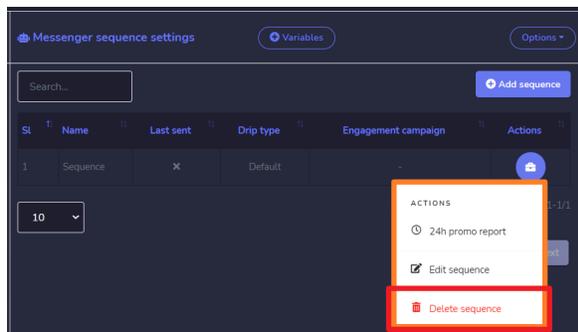


- **Edit sequence:** You can edit and update the sequence message.





- Delete sequence



Delete campaign

Do you really want to delete this campaign?

Cancel

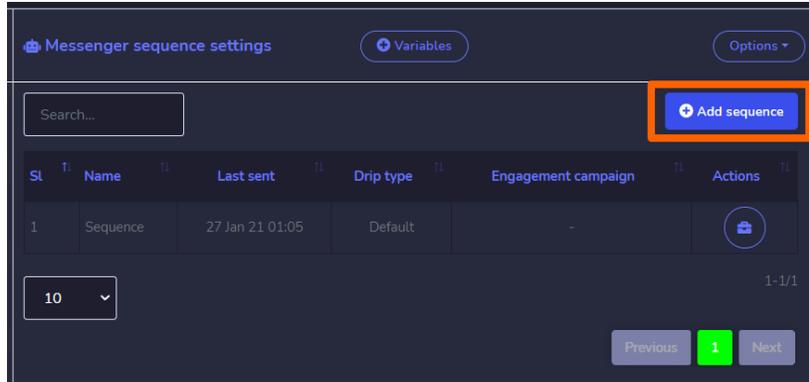
OK

Add sequence

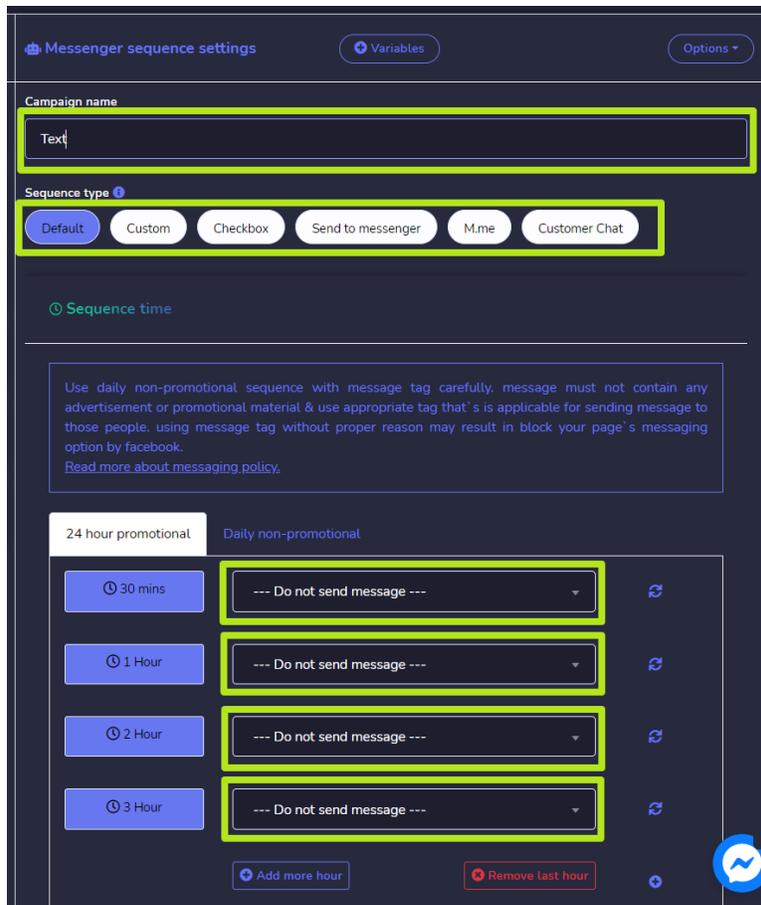
You can add sequence by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **+ Add sequence** from the top right of the screen.





- 2) Provide **Campaign name** and **sequence type**.
- 3) Select the timer settings.



- 4) Select the pages for which you want to apply sequence settings.
- 5) Select **Create campaign**.



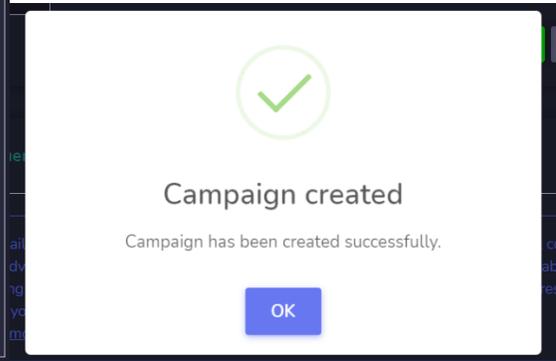


24 hour promotional Daily non-promotional

30 mins	--- Do not send message ---	↻
1 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻
2 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻
3 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻

[Add more hour](#) [Remove last hour](#)

[Create Campaign](#) [Back](#)



For **SMS/email sequence settings**, things work the same as **Messenger sequence settings**. This is how it differs when you create **SMS/Email sequence settings**.

Sms/email sequence settings Variables Options

Campaign name

Sequence type
 Email Sms

Sequence time

24 hour Daily

30 mins	--- Do not send message ---	↻
1 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻
2 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻
3 Hour	--- Do not send message ---	↻

[Add more hour](#) [Remove last hour](#)

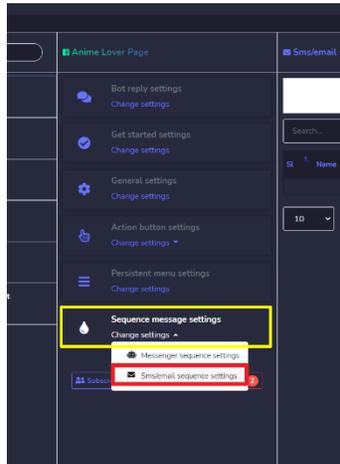
[Create Campaign](#) [Back](#)



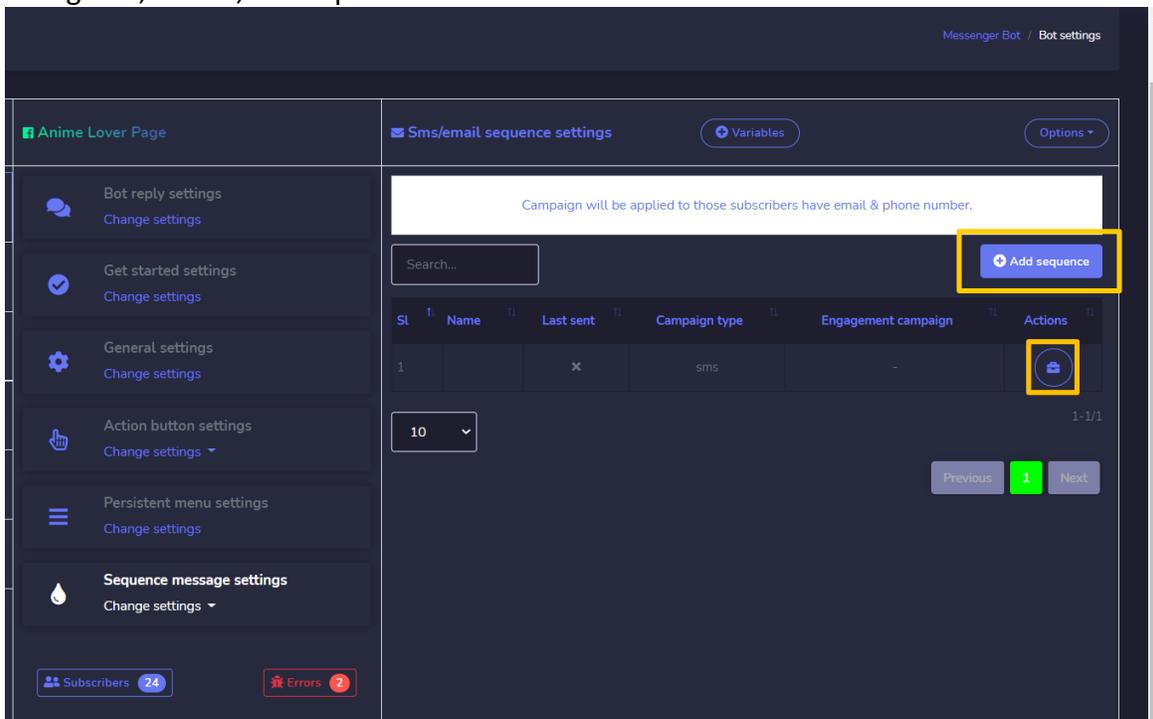


Create Email & SMS Sequence Campaign

To create Email & SMS Sequence Campaign, go to SMS/Email Sequence Settings from the dropdown menu.

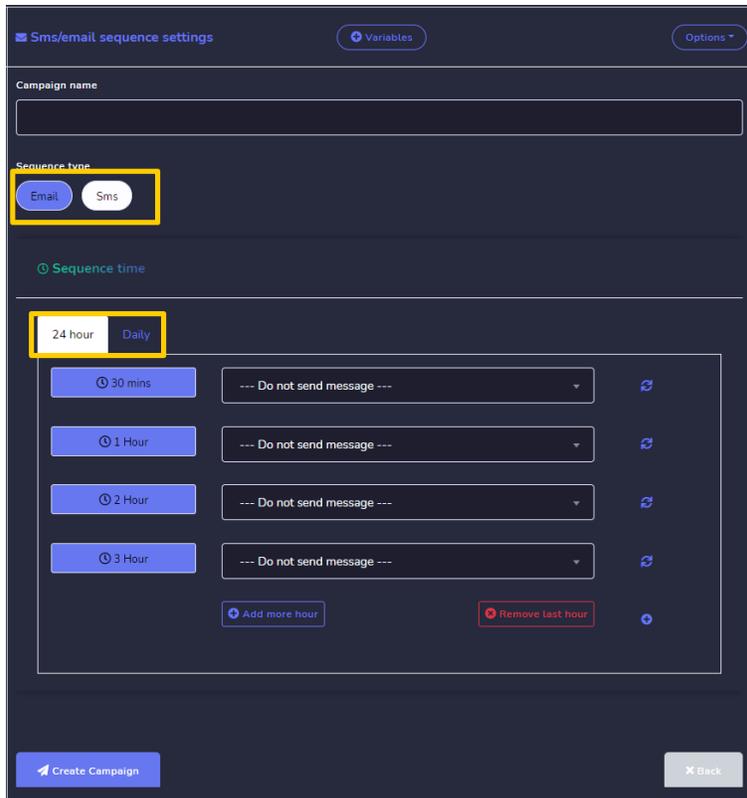


You'll find existing campaigns on the table. You'll find existing campaigns on the table. The list will also show a briefcase icon beside every sequence settings that will expand action buttons including edit, delete, and reports.

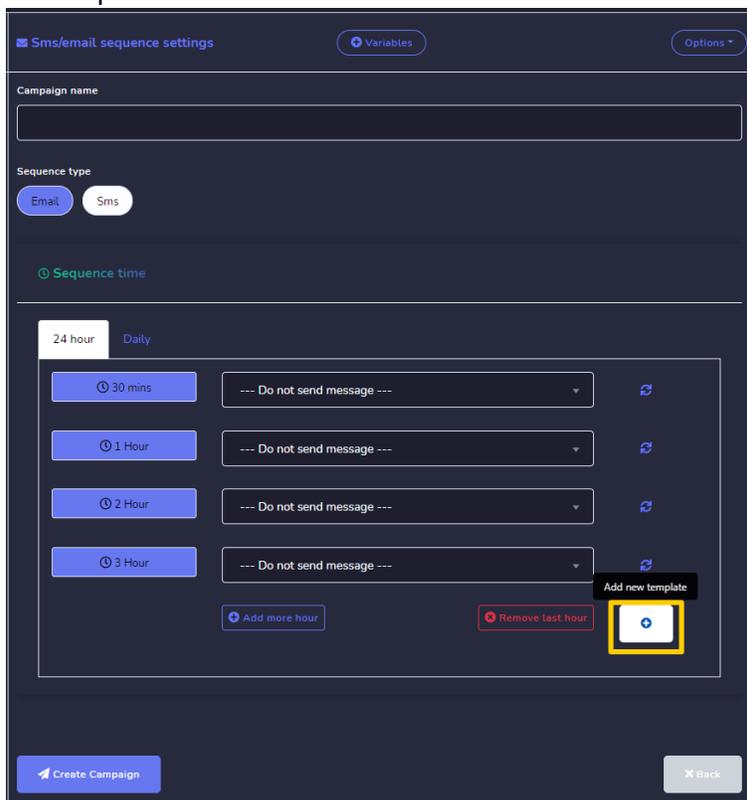


Now Click on the Add Sequence button to add a new sequence. In the form, you can choose SMS or Email Sequence type. You can set 24H hoURLY and Daily SMS or Email Sequence campaigns by selecting templates.



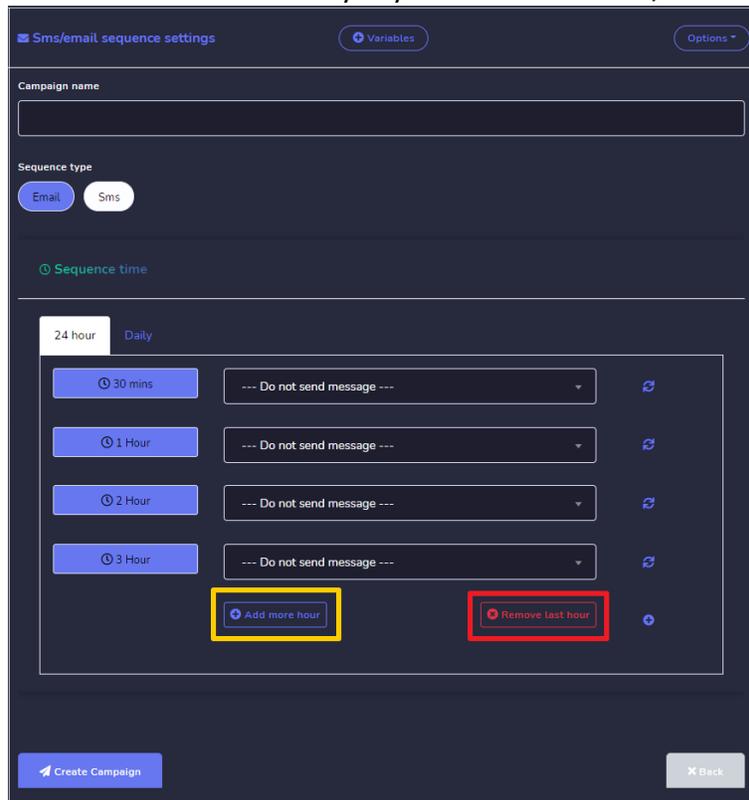


You can add SMS/Email Templates by click on icon at the bottom right corner and then click on icon to get the added template.



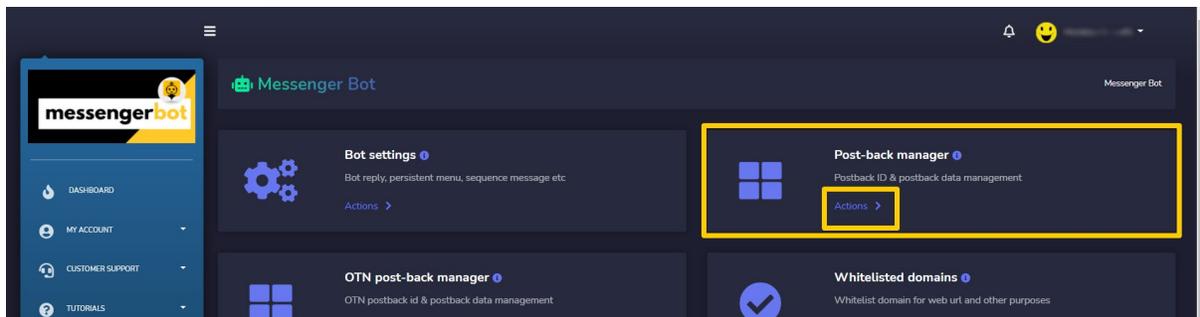


You can also add or remove more hour or days by click on Add more / remove last hour button.



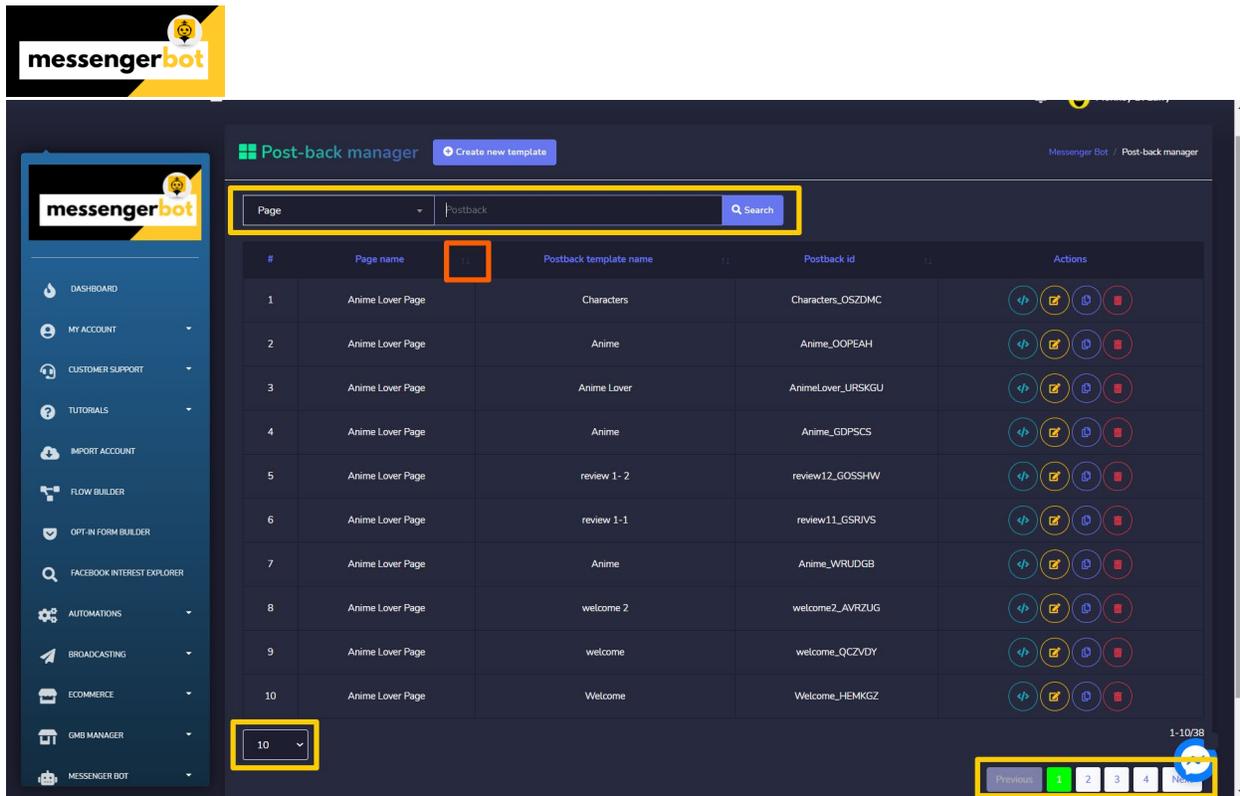
Post-back manager

To access the post-back manager section, select **Post-back manager settings**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.



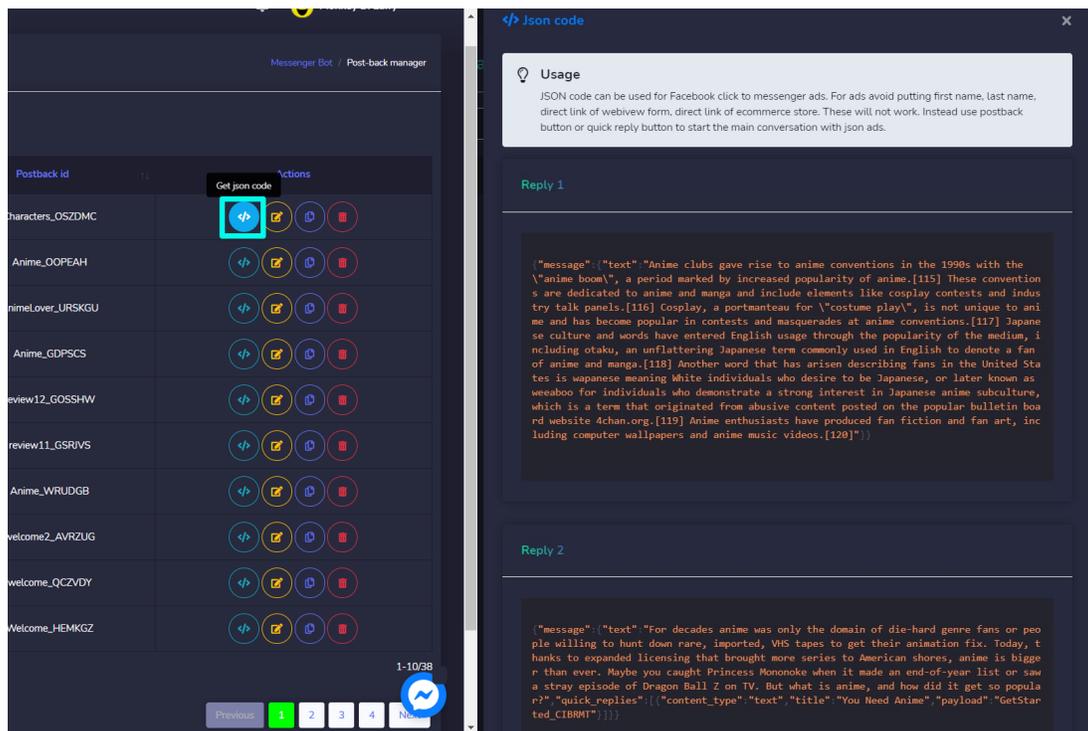
Post-back manager screen consists of a list of templates, you can search for a specific template by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of templates to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





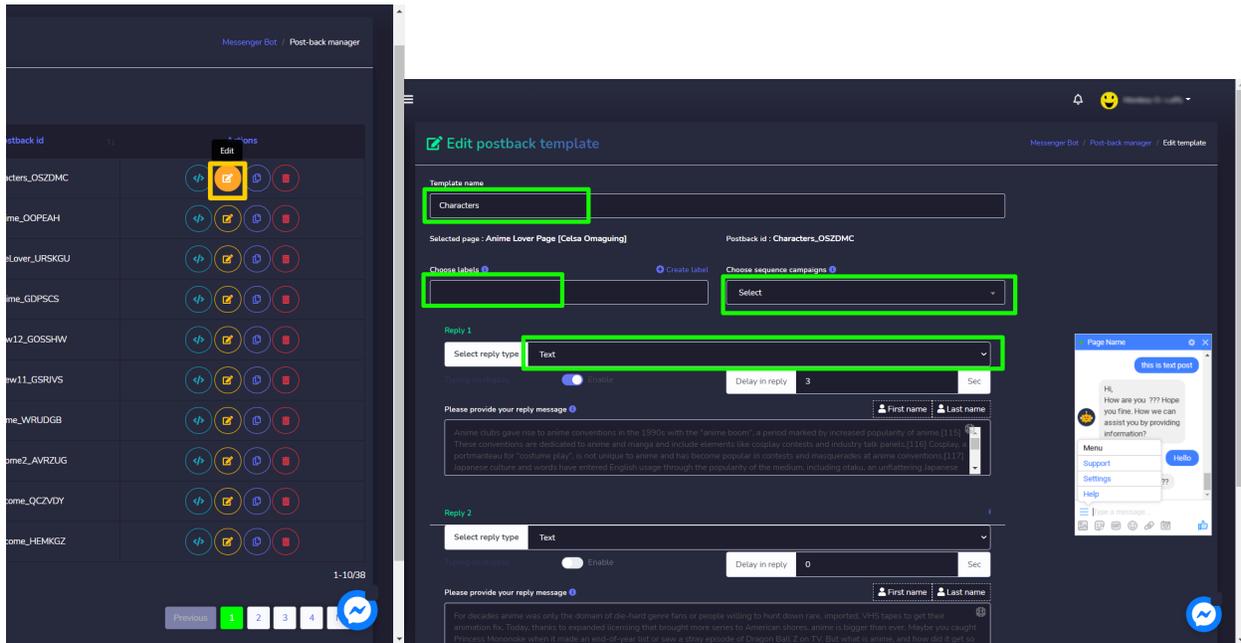
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- 📄
Copy post-back template: Select 📄 to copy the json code which can be used in Messenger or Facebook ads.

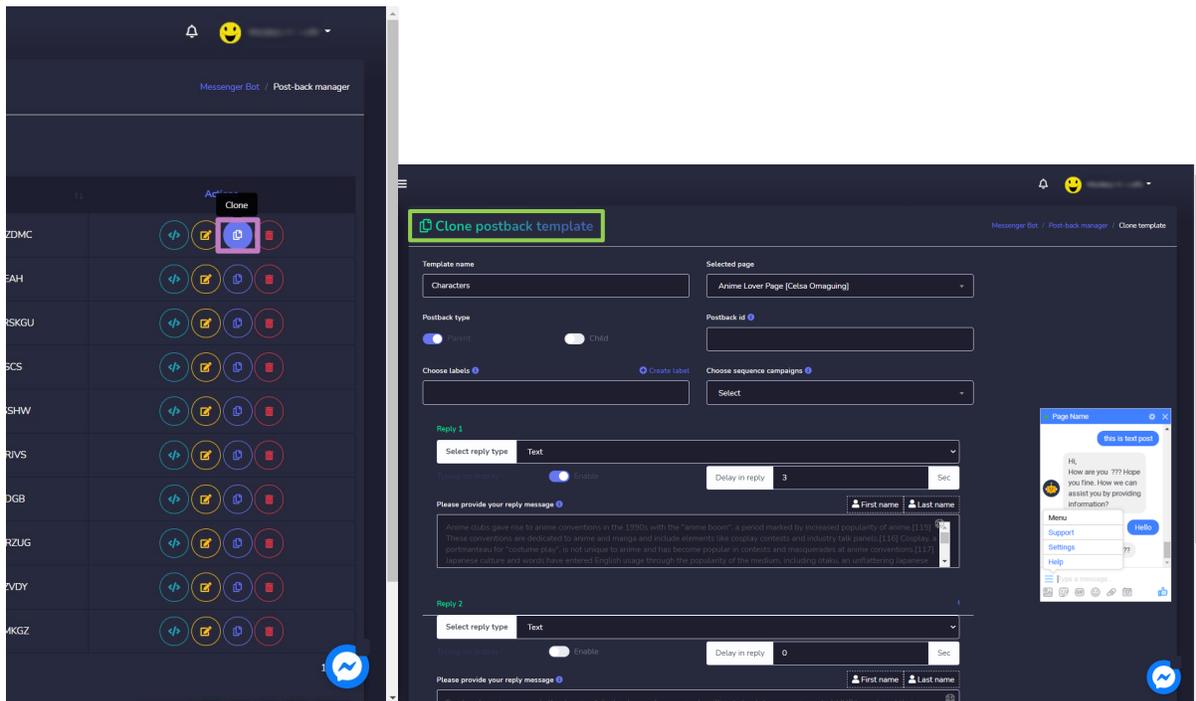


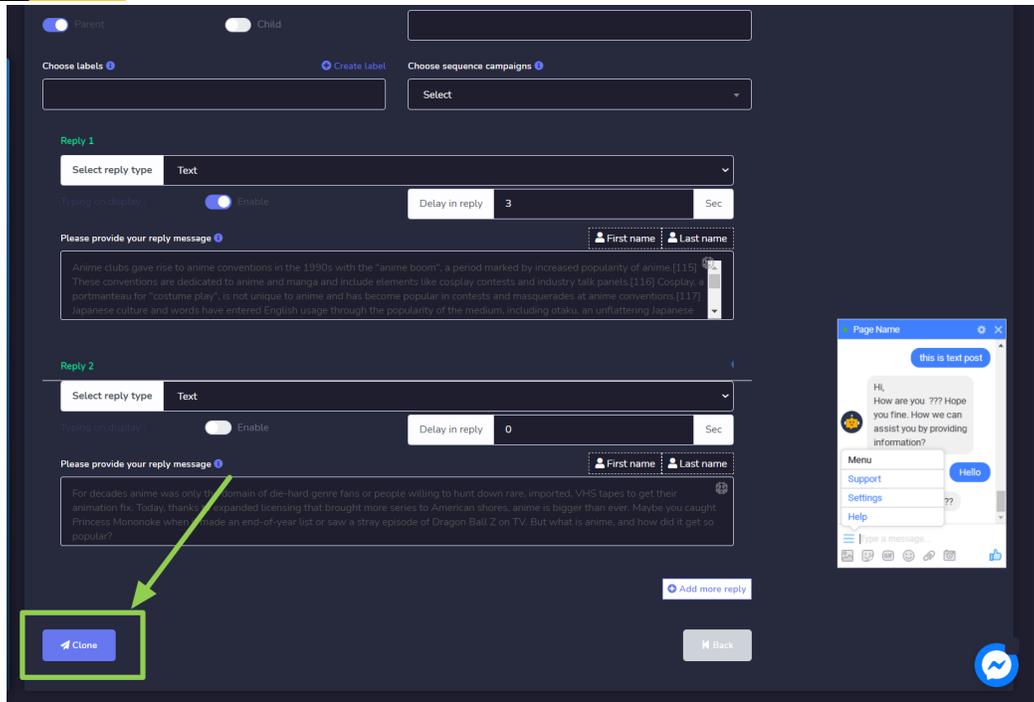


- **Edit template:** You can edit and update the template

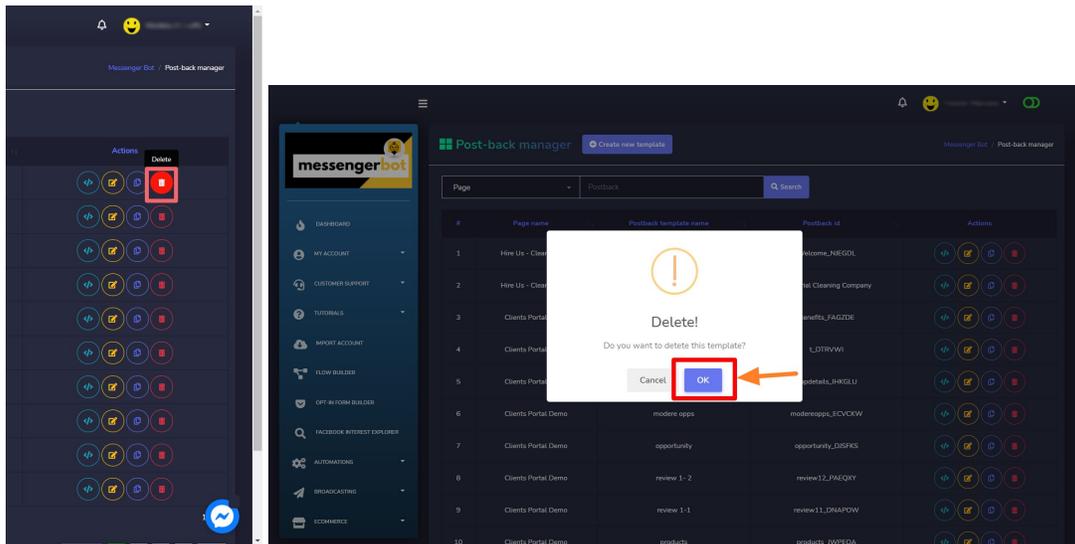


- **Clone post-back template:** Select  to clone the post back template. Select the **template name, postback type, postback id, sequence campaign**. Provide a reply and your reply message, then select **Clone**.





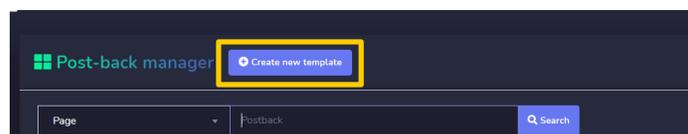
- Delete the template



Create new template

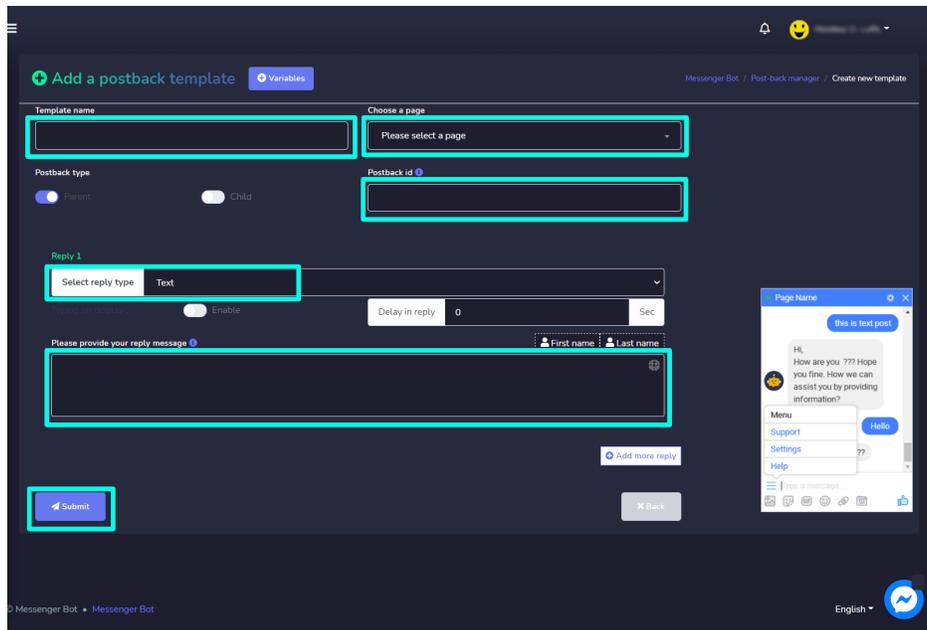
You can create new template by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create new template** from the top right of the screen.



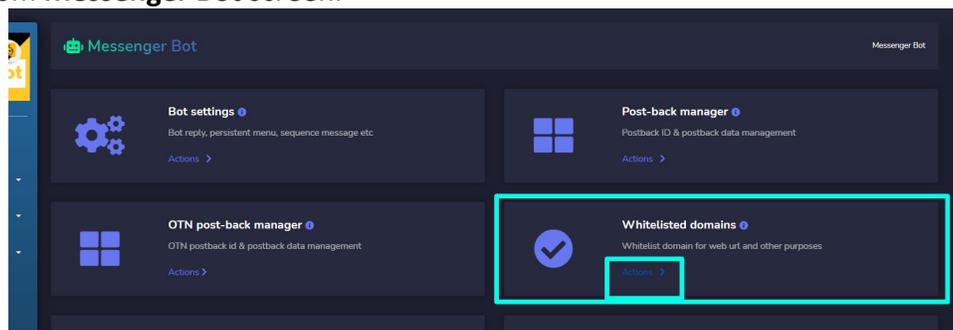


- 2) Provide **Template name**.
- 3) Select a **page** for which you want to create a template.
- 4) Select the **type of postback**, and turn on the **toggle button** for that option.
- 5) Provide a **Postback id**.
- 6) Select a **reply type** and provide your **message**.
- 7) Select **Submit**.



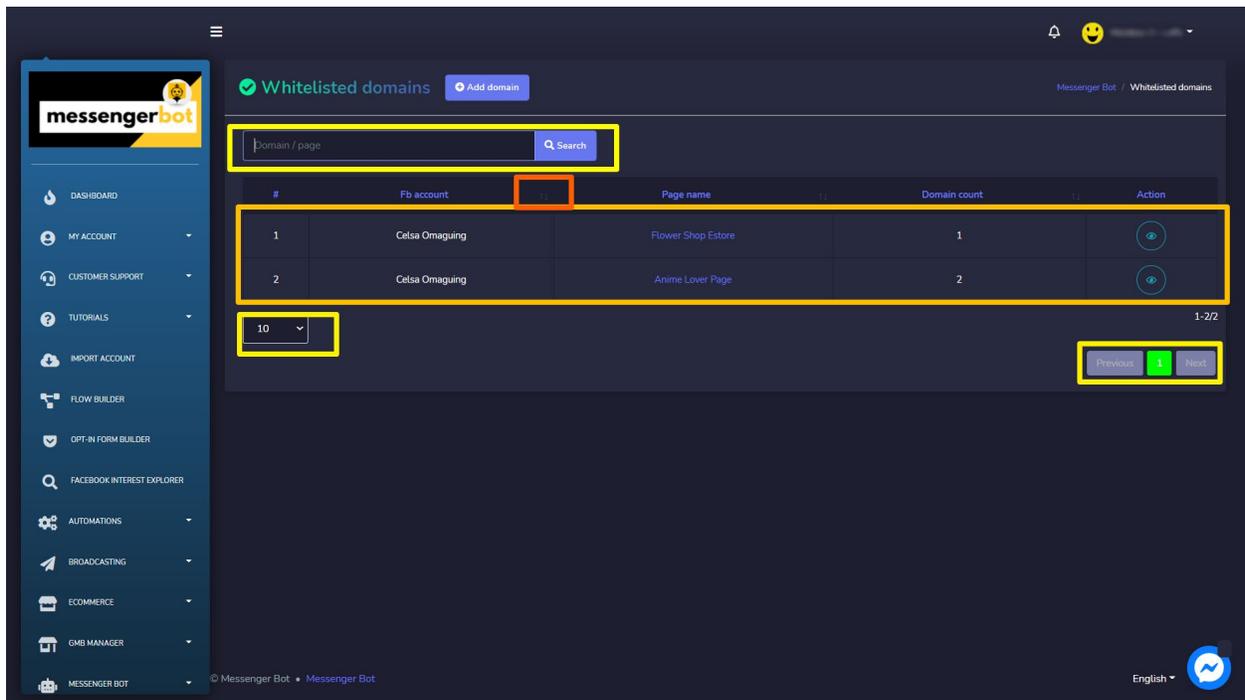
Whitelisted domains

To access the post-back manager settings section, select **Whitelisted domains**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.

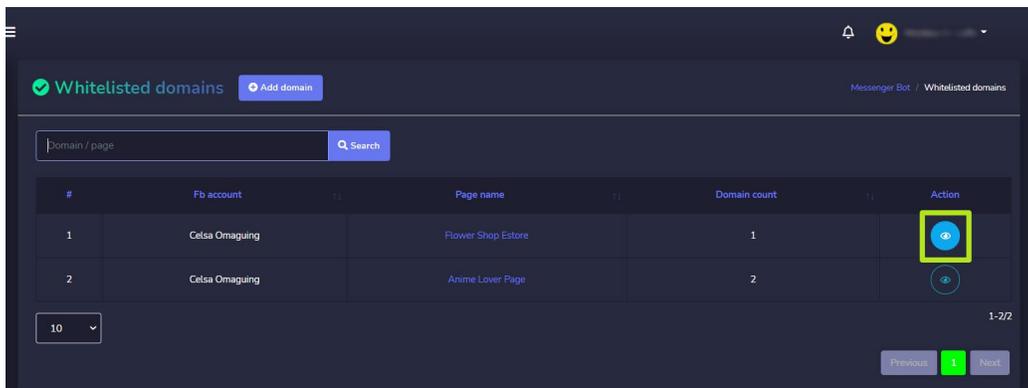


Whitelisted domain screen consists of a list of domains that are added in the white list, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



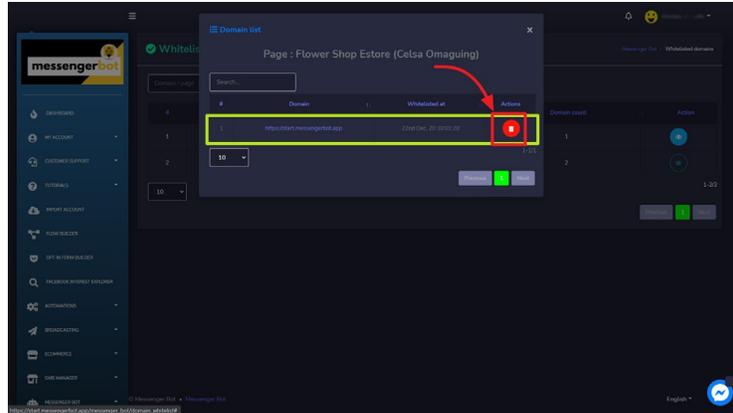


To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the domain you want to perform actions on.



A modal will appear containing the domain list. This displays the time at which the domain was added and the domain name. You can delete the domain by selecting the  icon.

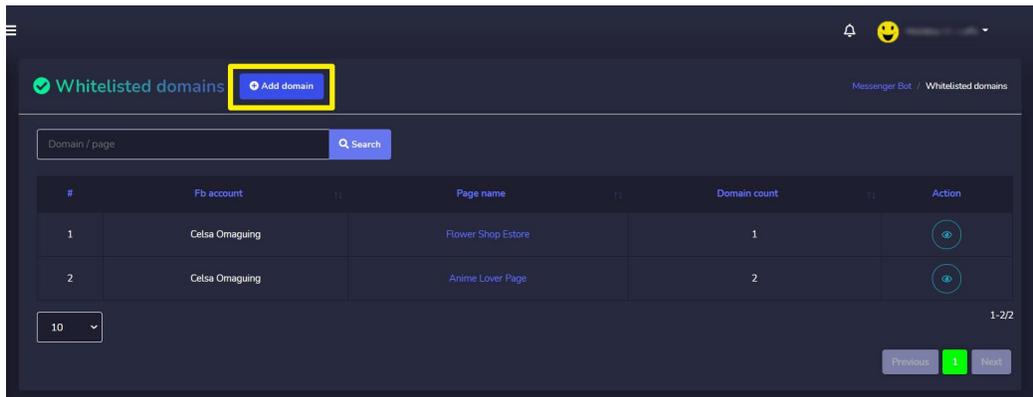




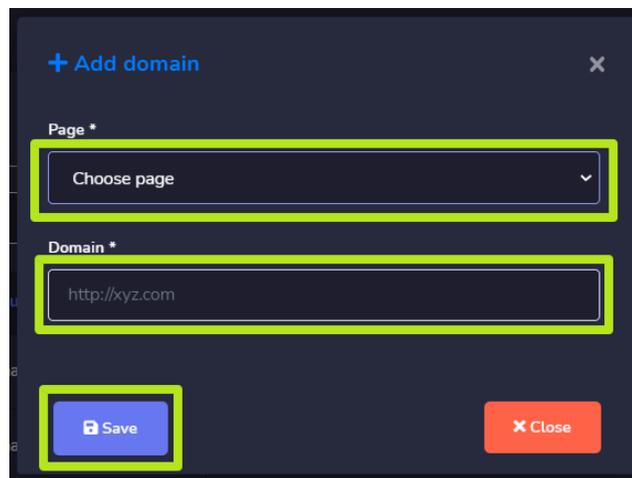
Add domain

You can add a new domain in your whitelisted category. Follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top of the whitelisted domain screen.



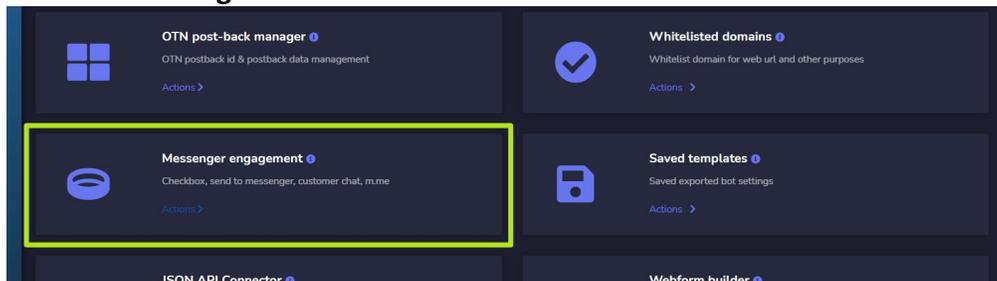
- 2) A modal will appear. Select the **page** for which you want to add a new domain.
- 3) Provide the **domain** which is to be added in whitelisted list.
- 4) Select **Save** to make changes.





Messenger engagement

To access the messenger engagement section, select **Messenger engagement**, then select **Actions** from the **Messenger Bot** screen.

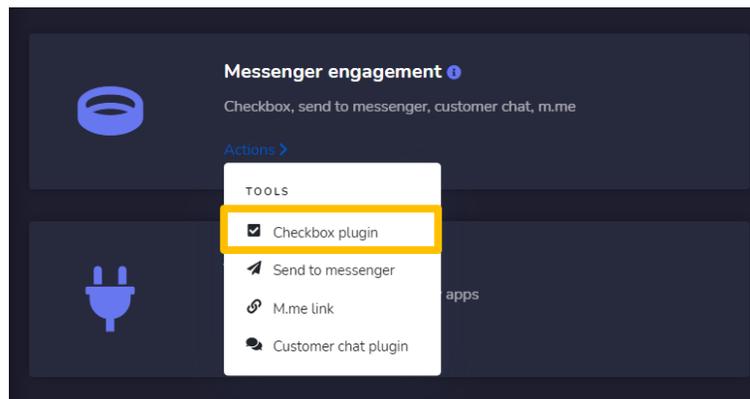


A dropdown menu containing the following options:

- Checkbox plugin
- Send to messenger
- M.me link
- Customer chat plugin

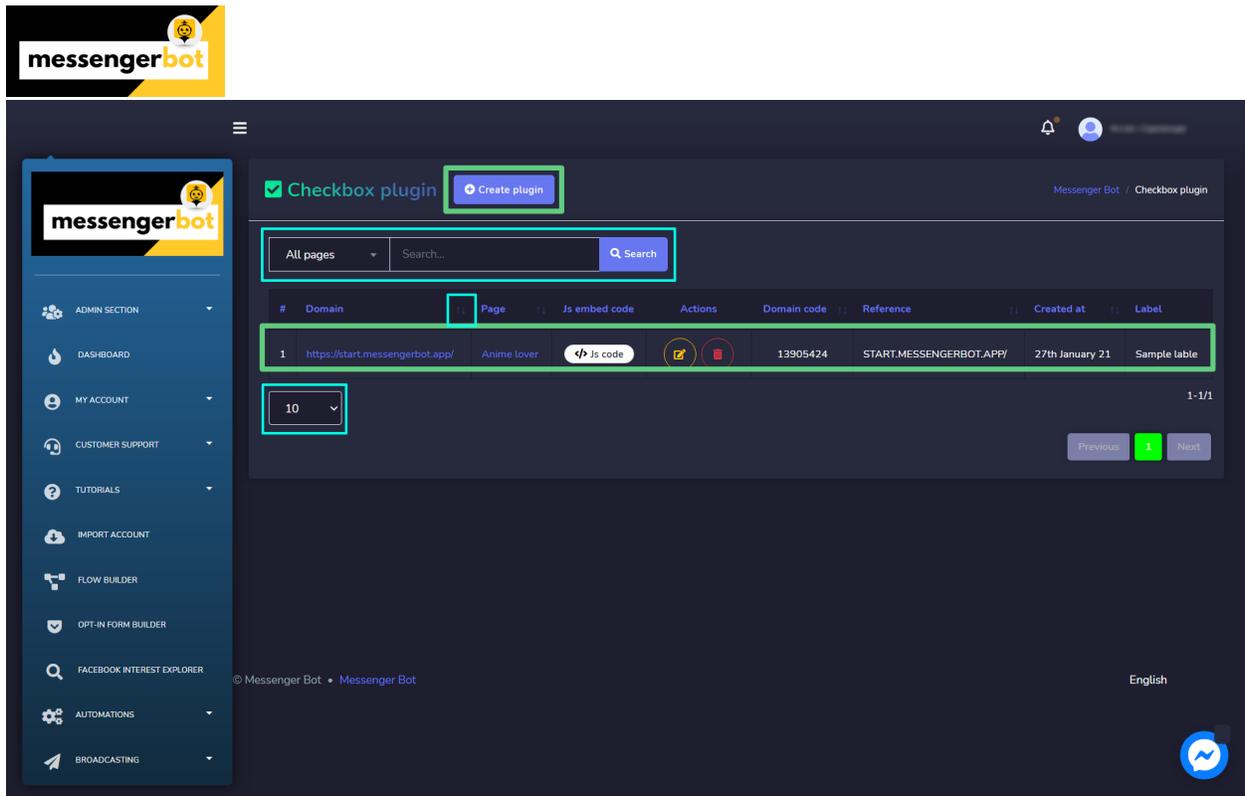
A detail of these settings can be found in the next headings.

Checkbox plugin



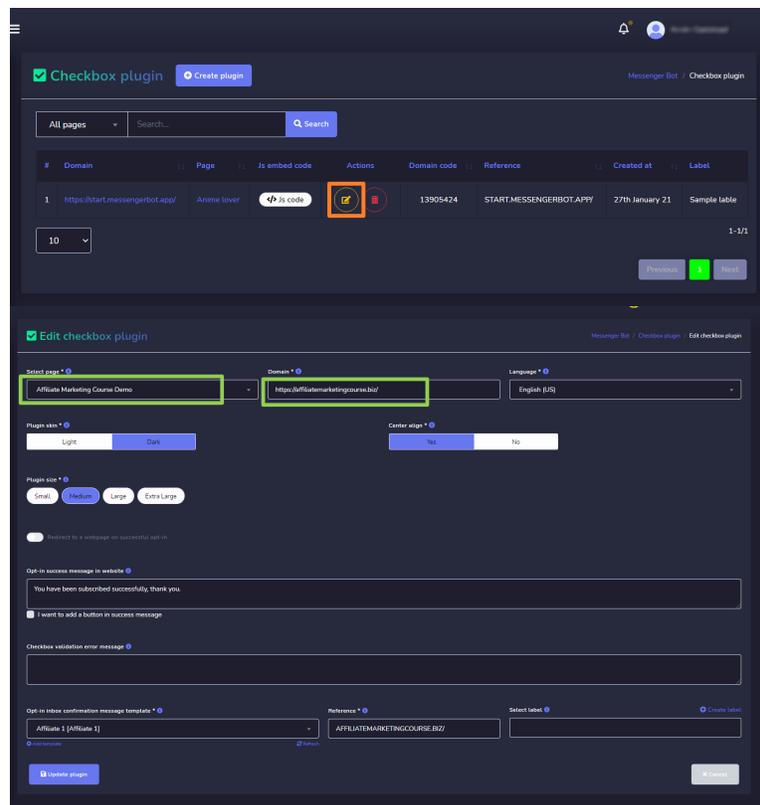
Checkbox plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of domains** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in **either ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





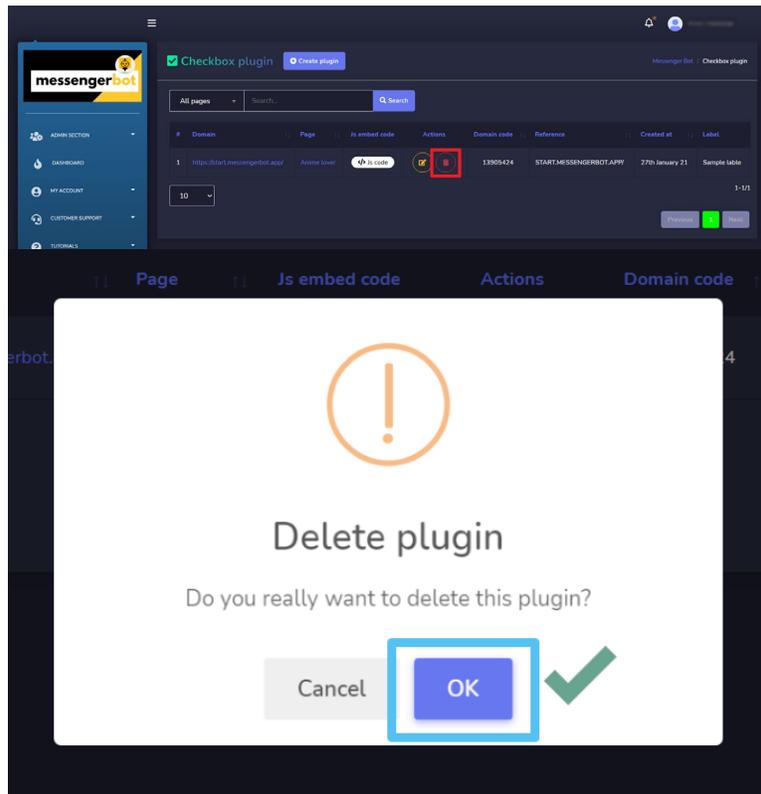
Following actions can be performed from the checkbox plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit checkbox plugin and select **Update plugin**.





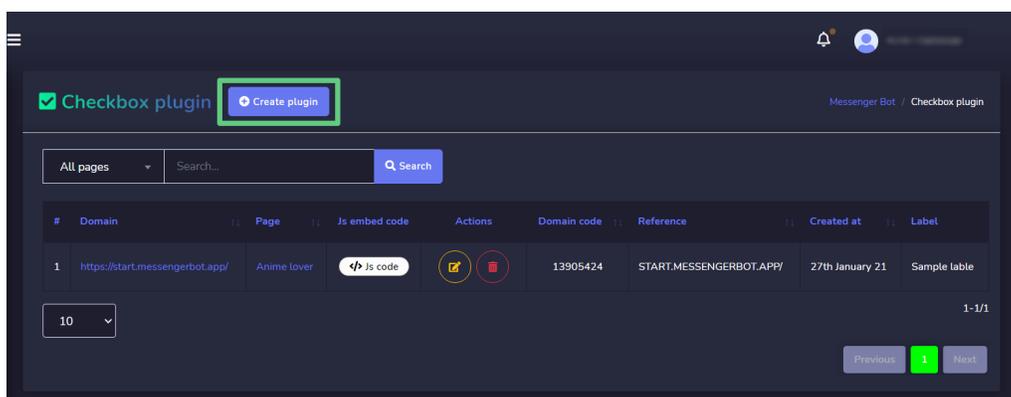
- Delete the plugin



Create plugin

You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **domain**.
- 4) Select the **language**.





- 5) Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either light or dark and **center align** option.
- 6) Select the **Plugin size**.
- 7) Write an **Opt-in success message in website** and a **Checkbox validation error message**.
- 8) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template**, **reference**, and **label**.
- 9) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.

✓ Add checkbox plugin

Select page * Domain * Language *

Plugin skin * Center align * Plugin size *

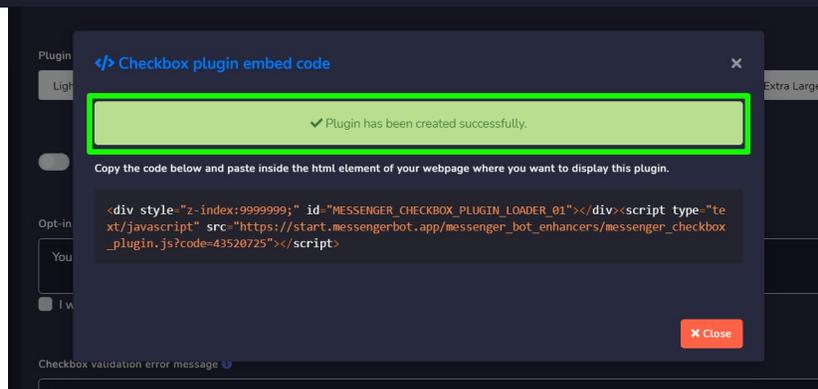
Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website

I want to add a button in success message

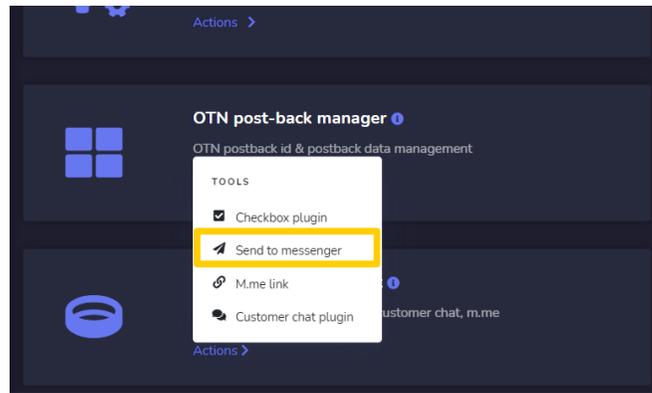
Checkbox validation error message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * Reference * Select Label

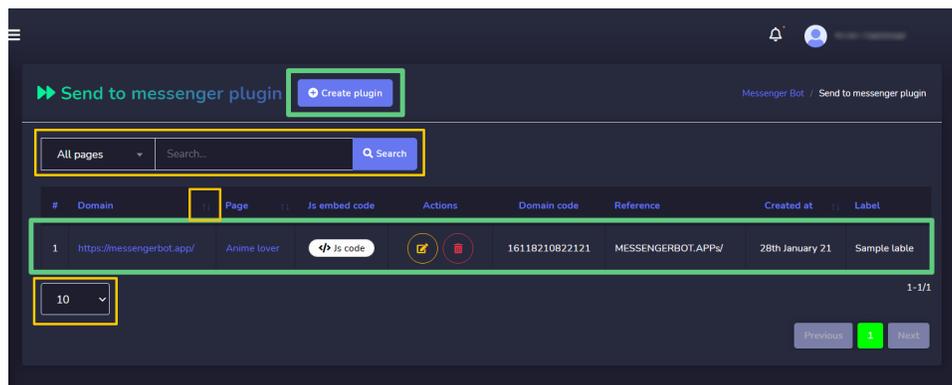




Send to messenger

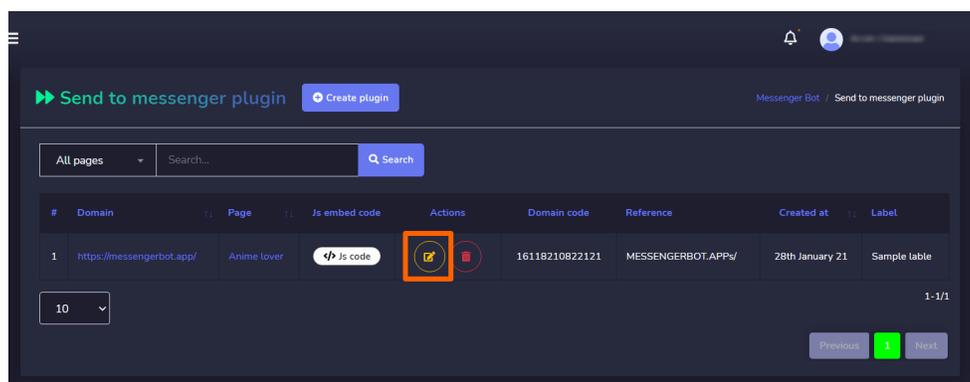


Send to messenger plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of domains to be viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order by selecting the arrows** from the header.



Following actions can be performed from the send to messenger plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit messenger plugin and select **Update plugin**.





Edit send to messenger plugin

Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin / Edit send to messenger plugin

Select page * **Anime lover** | Domain * **https://messengerbot.app/** | Language * **English (US)** | Cta button text * **Default**

Plugin skin * **White** | **Blue** | Plugin size * **Standard** | **Large** | **Extra Large**

Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website * **You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.**

I want to add a button in success message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * **Sample Template [Sample Template]** | Reference * **MESSENGERBOT.APPS/** | Select label * **Sample table [5205266692880249]**

Update plugin | **Cancel**

- **Delete the plugin**

Send to messenger plugin **Create plugin**

All pages | Search...

#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover			16118210822121	MESSENGERBOT.APPS/	28th January 21	Sample table

10 | 1-1/1

Delete plugin

Do you really want to delete this plugin?

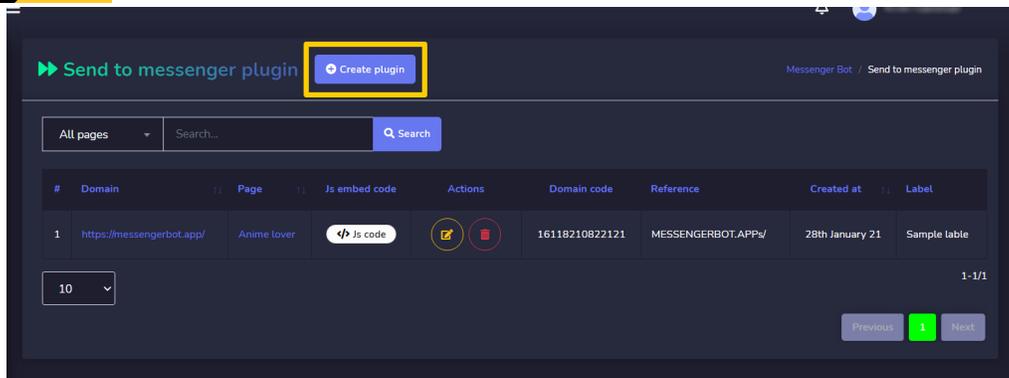
Cancel **OK**

Create plugin

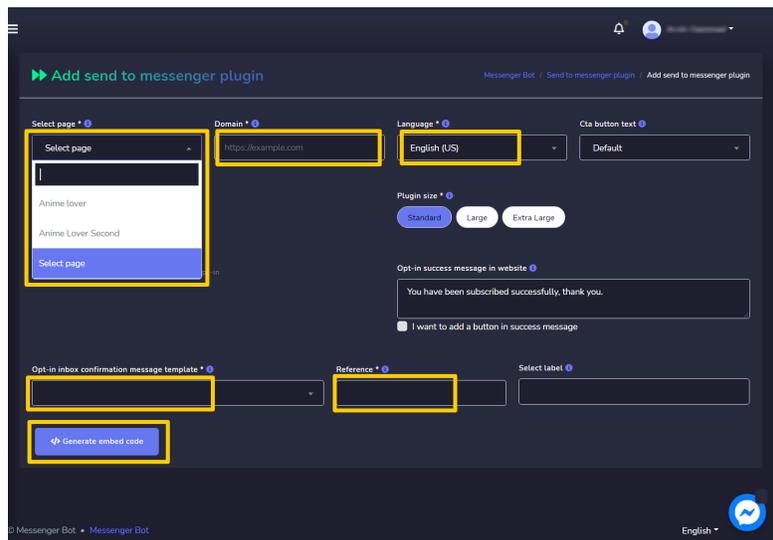
You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

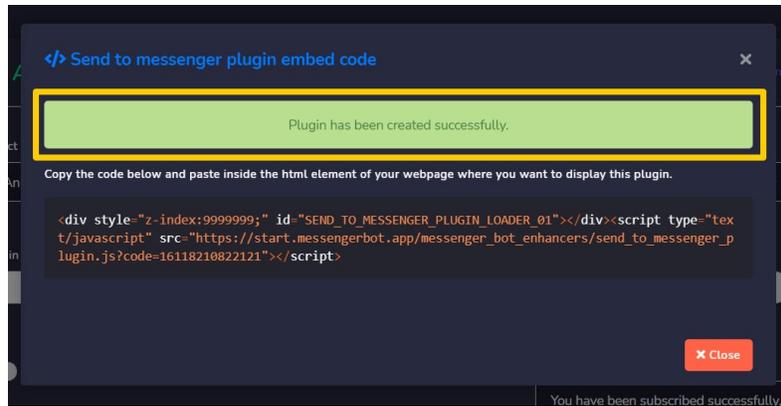
- 1) Select **Create plugin** from the top right of the screen.



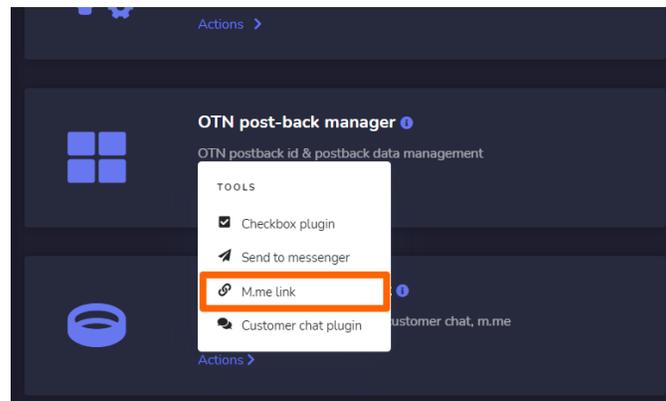


- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **domain**.
- 4) Select the **language** and **Cta button text option**.
- 5) Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either **white or blue**.
- 6) Select the **Plugin size**.
- 7) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template, reference, and label**.
- 8) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.

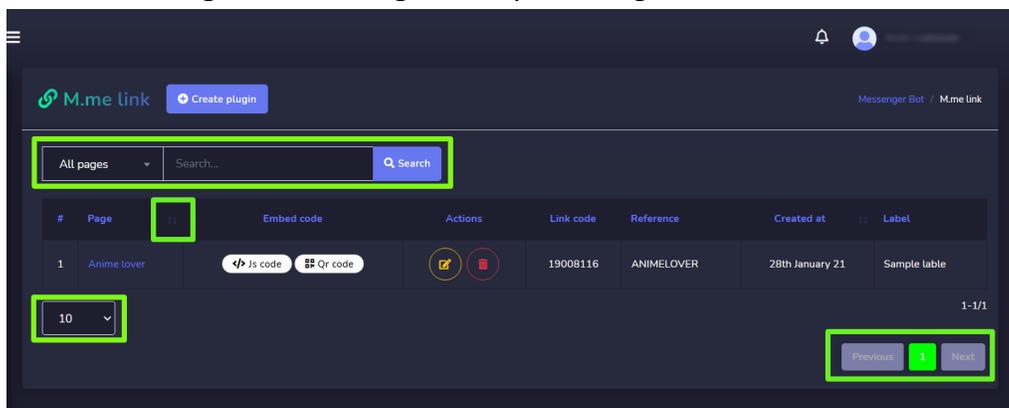




M.me link



M.me link screen consists of a list of pages you can search for a specific page by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per view**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



Following actions can be performed from the M.me link view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit M.me link and select **Update plugin**.





M.me link [Create plugin](#) Messenger Bot / M.me link

All pages Search Search

#	Page	Embed code	Actions	Link code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Anime lover	Js code Qr code	 	19008116	ANIMELOVER	28th January 21	Sample table

10 Previous 1 Next

Edit m.me link Messenger Bot / M.me link / Edit m.me link

Select page * Anime lover Button text * Send us Message

Button background * #0084ff Button text color * #ffffff Button hover background * #367fa9 Button text hover color * #ffffdd

Button size * Small Medium Large Extra Large

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * Sample Template [Sample Template] Reference * ANIMELOVER Select label * Sample table [5205266692880249] [Create label](#)

[Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[Update plugin](#) [Cancel](#)

- Delete the plugin

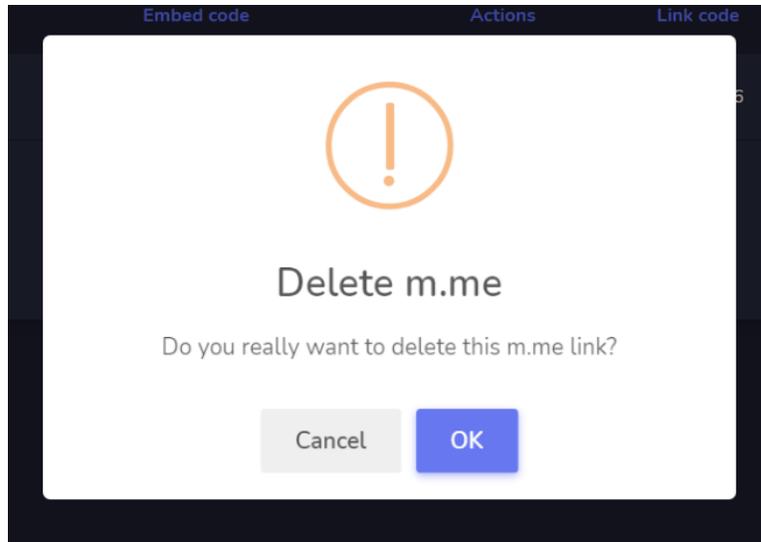
M.me link [Create plugin](#) Messenger Bot / M.me link

All pages Search Search

#	Page	Embed code	Actions	Link code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Anime lover	Js code Qr code	 	19008116	ANIMELOVER	28th January 21	Sample table

10 Previous 1 Next

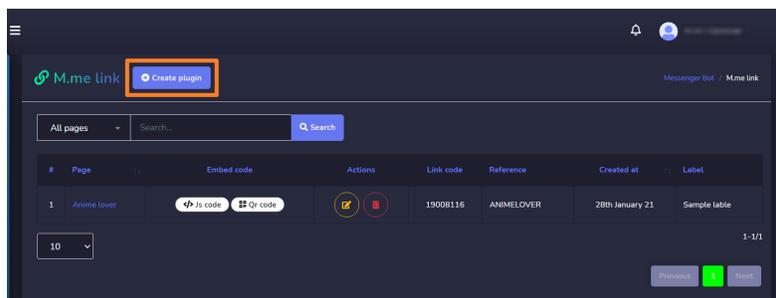




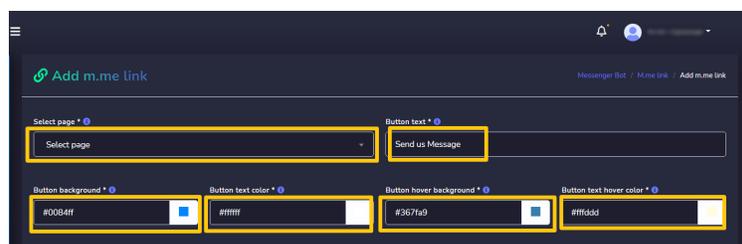
Create plugin

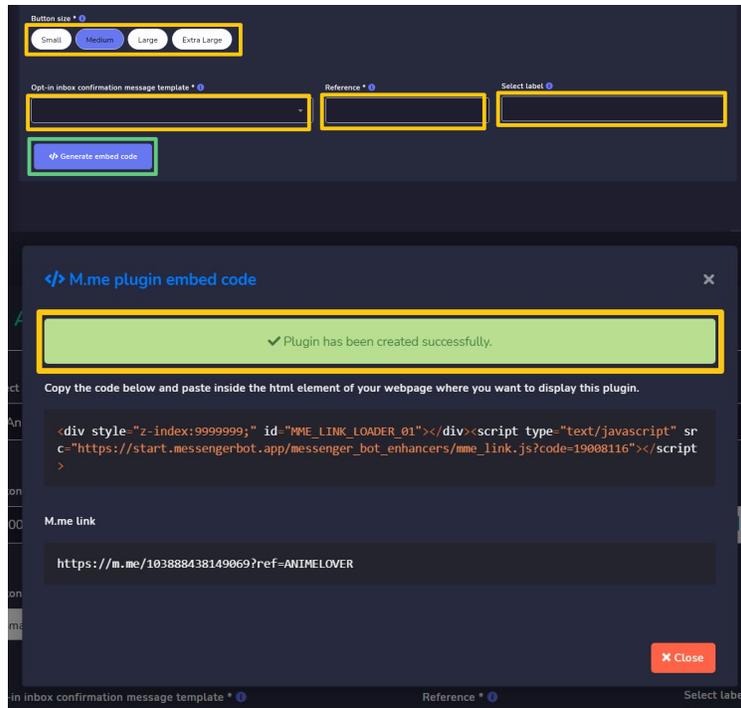
You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.

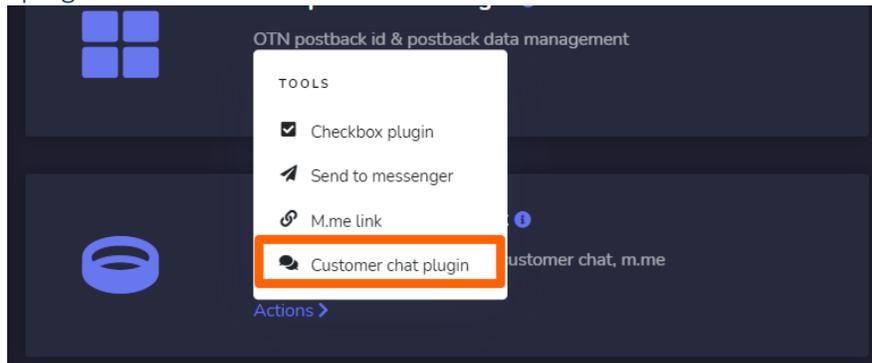


- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Provide the **Button text**.
- 4) Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**.
- 5) Select the **Button size**.
- 6) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template, reference, and label**.
- 7) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.



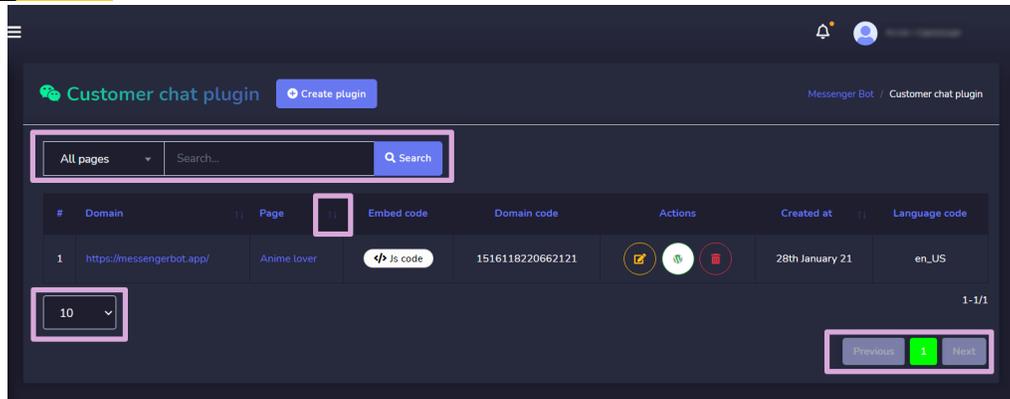


Customer chat plugin



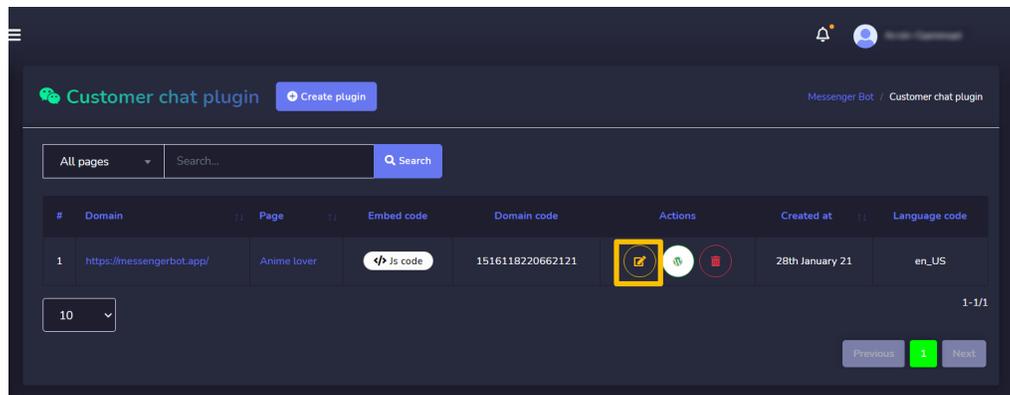
The customer chat plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of domains to be viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





Following actions can be performed from the Customer chat plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit customer chat plugin and select **Update plugin**.



- **Download WordPress plugin:** Download the WordPress plugin by selecting  .



messengerbot

Customer chat plugin

All pages Search...

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover	Js code	1516118220662121	 	28th January 21	en_US

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

EasyEmbedChat-21...zip

- Delete the plugin

Customer chat plugin

All pages Search...

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://messengerbot.app/	Anime lover	Js code	1516118220662121	 	28th January 21	en_US

10

Previous 1 Next

erbot.app

Page Embed code Domain code

!

Delete 2-way chat plugin

Do you really want to delete this 2-way chat plugin?

Cancel OK

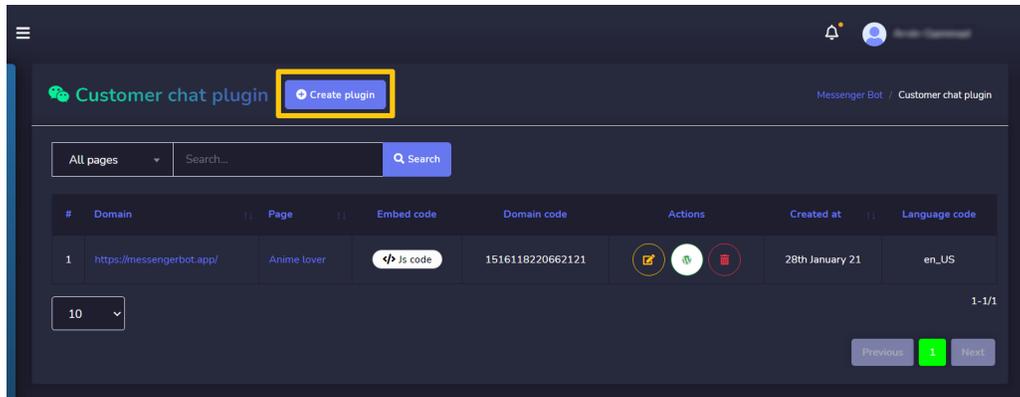




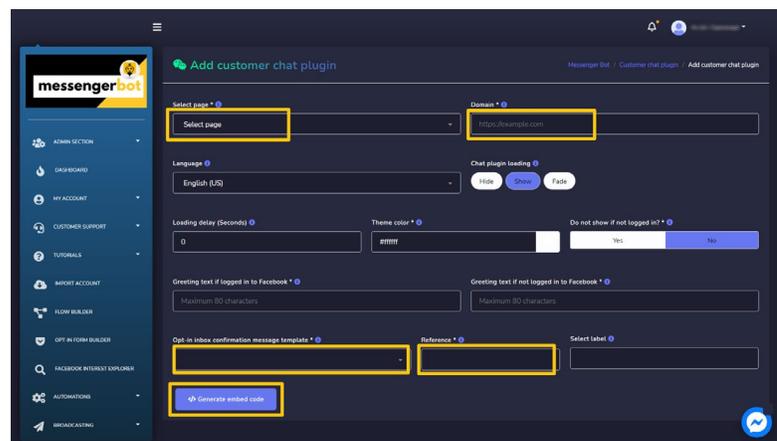
Create plugin

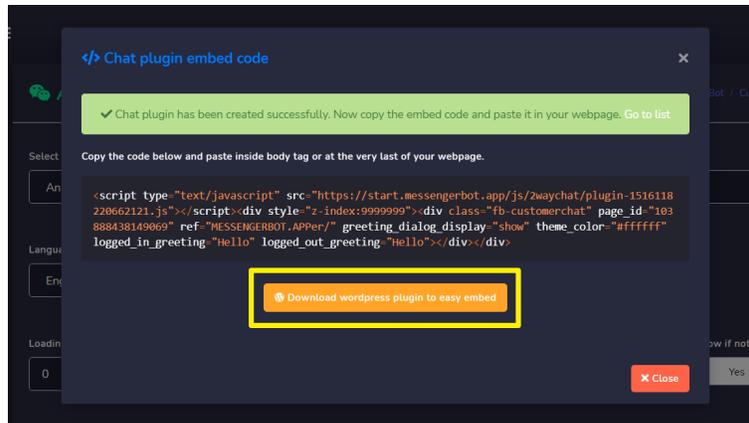
You can create a plugin by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **Create plugin** from the top right of the screen.



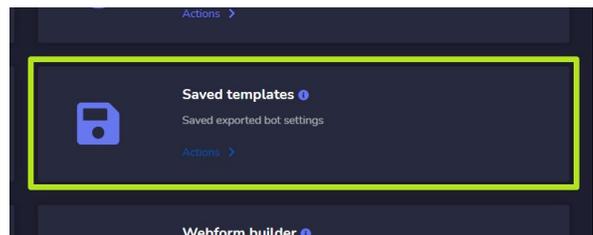
- 2) Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Enter the domain to be added in the **domain** field.
- 4) Select the **language** and **chat plugin loading** option.
- 5) Provide the **Delay**.
- 6) Provide the **theme color**.
- 7) Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template, reference, and label**.
- 8) Select **Generate embed code** option to create the customer chat plugin.



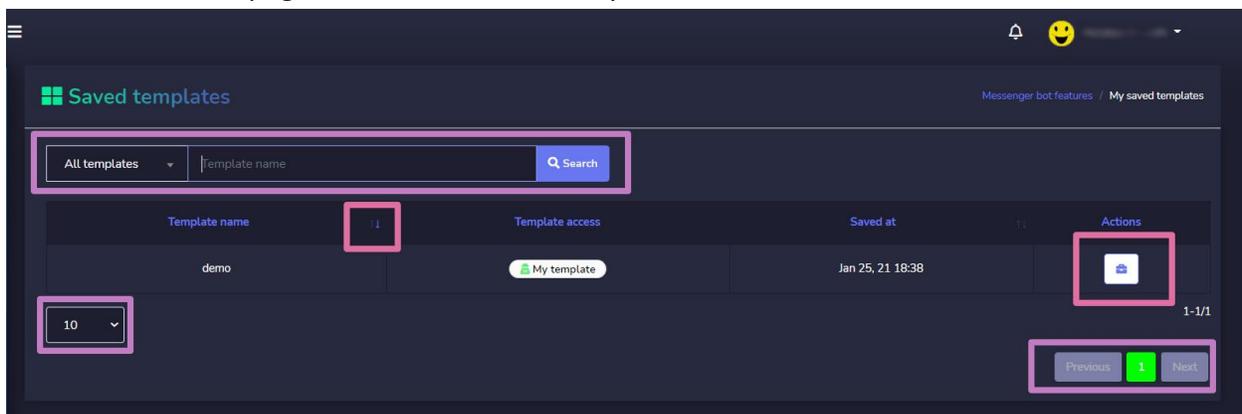


Saved templates

To access the post-back manager settings section, select **Saved templates**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.

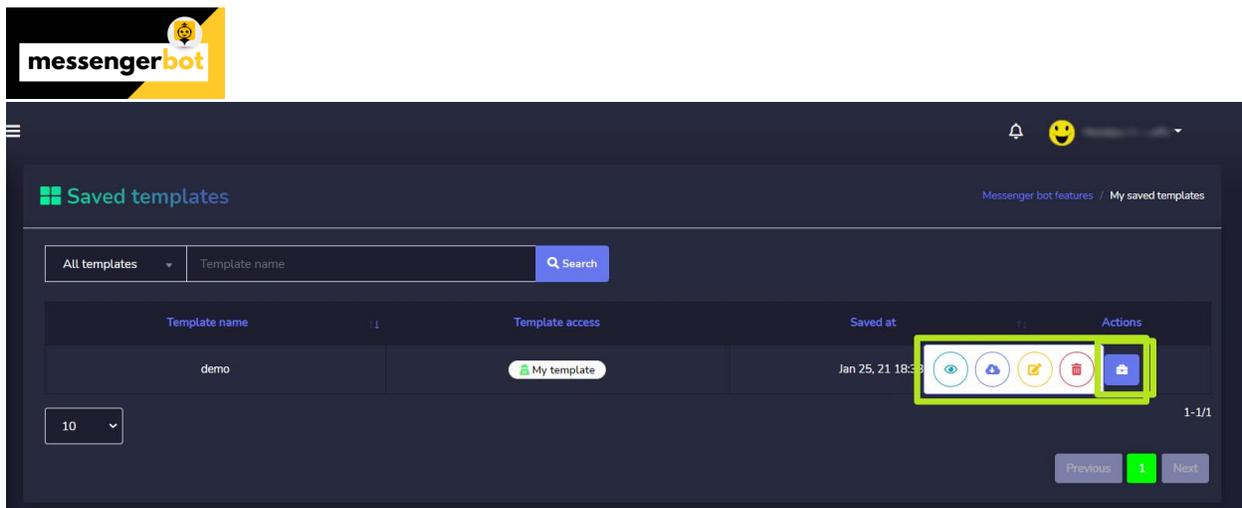


Saved templates screen consists of a list of templates, you can search for a specific template by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header. Select the page filter to **narrow down** your search.



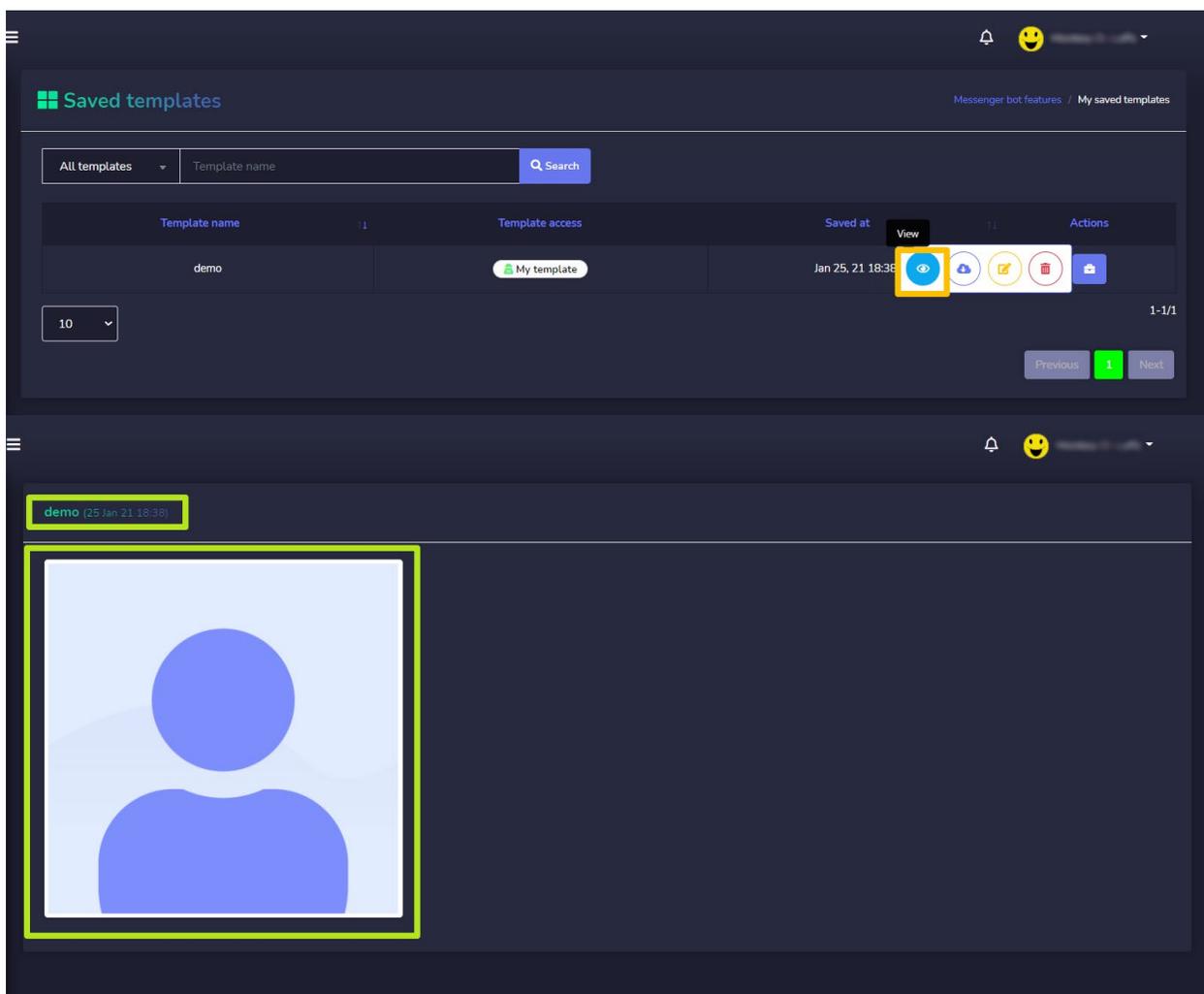
To perform different **actions** on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on.





The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **View** the template by selecting .



- **Download the template files** by selecting .





Saved templates Messenger bot features / My saved templates

All templates

Template name	Template access	Saved at	Download	Actions
demo	My template	Jan 25, 21 18:38		

10 1-1/1

demo.json

- Edit the template

Saved templates Messenger bot features / My saved templates

All templates

Template name	Template access	Saved at	Edit this template	Actions
demo	My template	Jan 25, 21 18:38		

10 1-1/1

Edit saved template ✕

Template name *

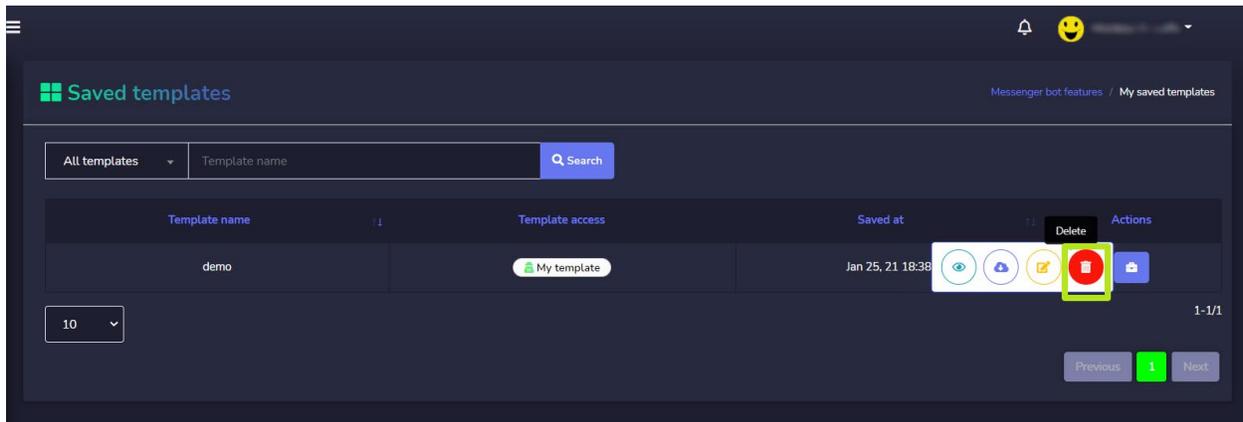
Template description

Template preview image [Square image like (400x400) is recommended]



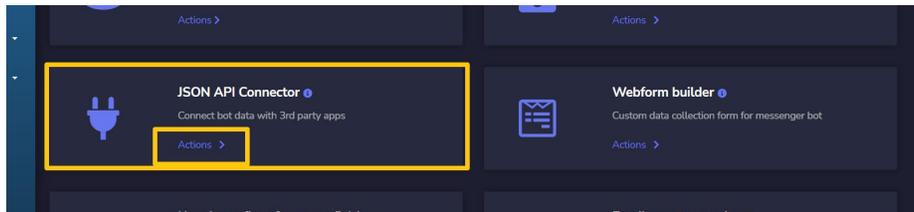


- Delete the template

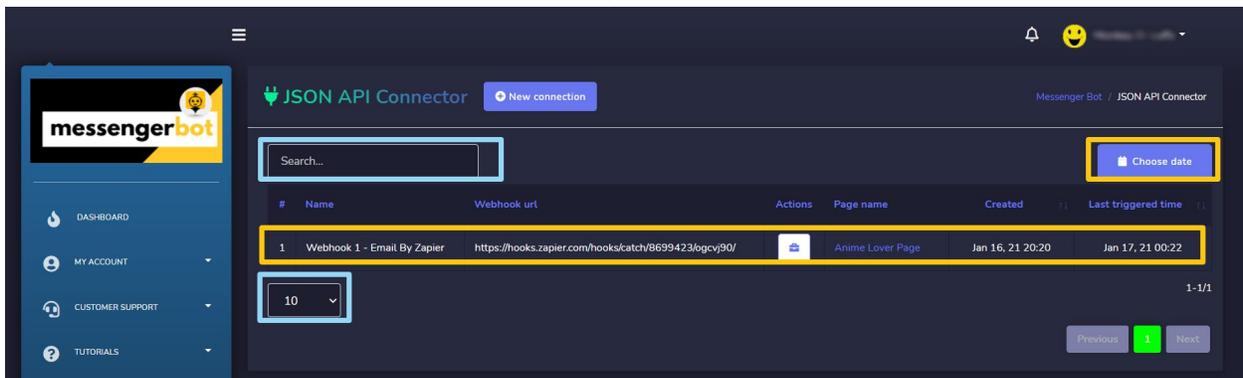


JSON API Connector

To access the JSON API Connector section, select **JSON API Connector**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.



JSON API Connector screen consists of a list of webhook URLs, you can search for a specific URL by using the **search bar**. You can **adjust** the number of URLs to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header. Select the **date** filter to **narrow down** your search.



To perform different actions on the Webhook URLs, select  option against the URL you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **View report** by selecting .





JSON API Connector New connection Messenger Bot / JSON API Connector

Search... Choose date

#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	   		Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 Previous 1 Next

Report

Campaign details

NAME	PAGE NAME
Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	Anime Lover Page
WEBHOOK URL	LAST TRIGGERED TIME
https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	2021-01-17 00:22:36
TRIGGERED WEBHOOK	DATA TO SEND
birthdate, email, phone number	psid,subscribed at,postbackid,first name,last name,email,page id,page name,phone number

Last 10 activities

#	Http code	Curl error	Post data	Post time
No data available in table				

10 Previous Next

- Edit campaign

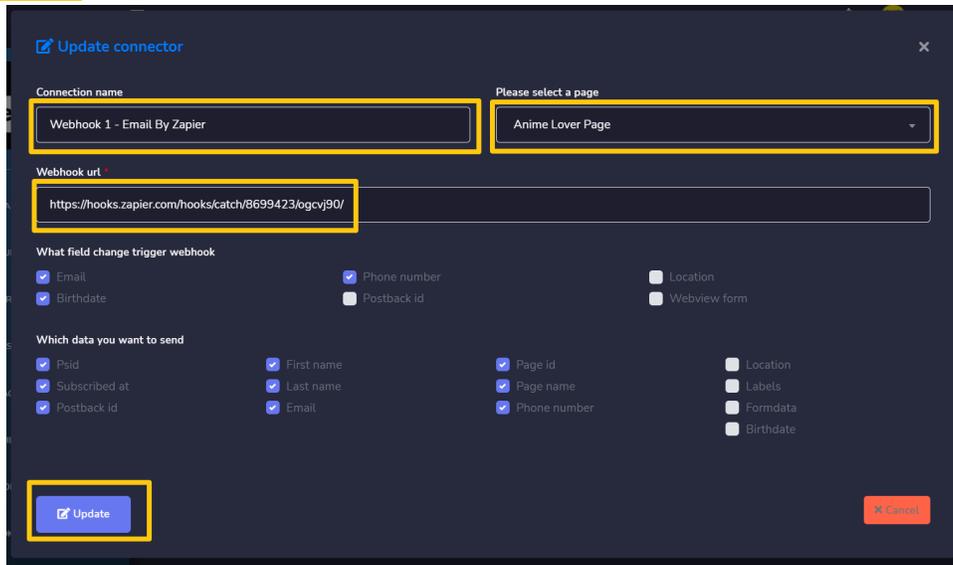
JSON API Connector New connection Messenger Bot / JSON API Connector

Search... Choose date

#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/	   	Edit campaign	Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 Previous 1 Next





Update connector

Connection name: Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier

Please select a page: Anime Lover Page

Webhook url: `https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/`

What field change trigger webhook

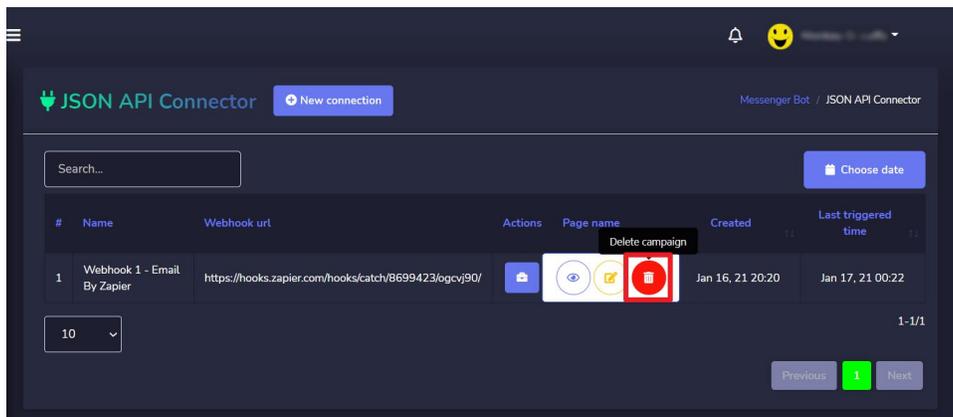
- Email
- Birthdate
- Phone number
- Postback id
- Location
- Webview form

Which data you want to send

- Psid
- Subscribed at
- Postback id
- First name
- Last name
- Email
- Page id
- Page name
- Phone number
- Location
- Labels
- Formdata
- Birthdate

Update Cancel

- Delete record

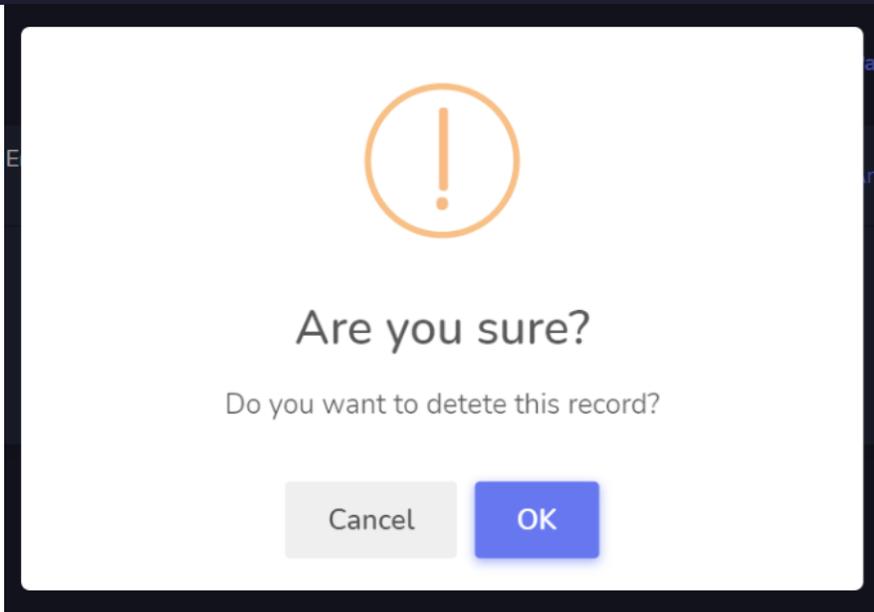


JSON API Connector

Search... Choose date

#	Name	Webhook url	Actions	Page name	Created	Last triggered time
1	Webhook 1 - Email By Zapier	<code>https://hooks.zapier.com/hooks/catch/8699423/ogcvj90/</code>	   	Delete campaign	Jan 16, 21 20:20	Jan 17, 21 00:22

10 Previous 1 Next



!

Are you sure?

Do you want to detete this record?

Cancel OK

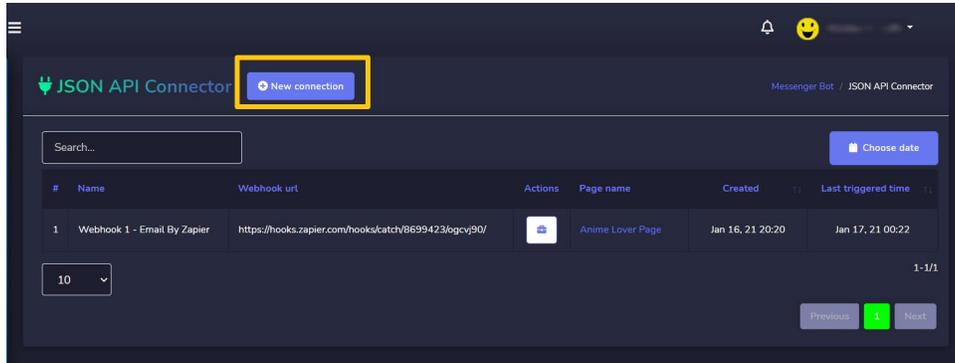




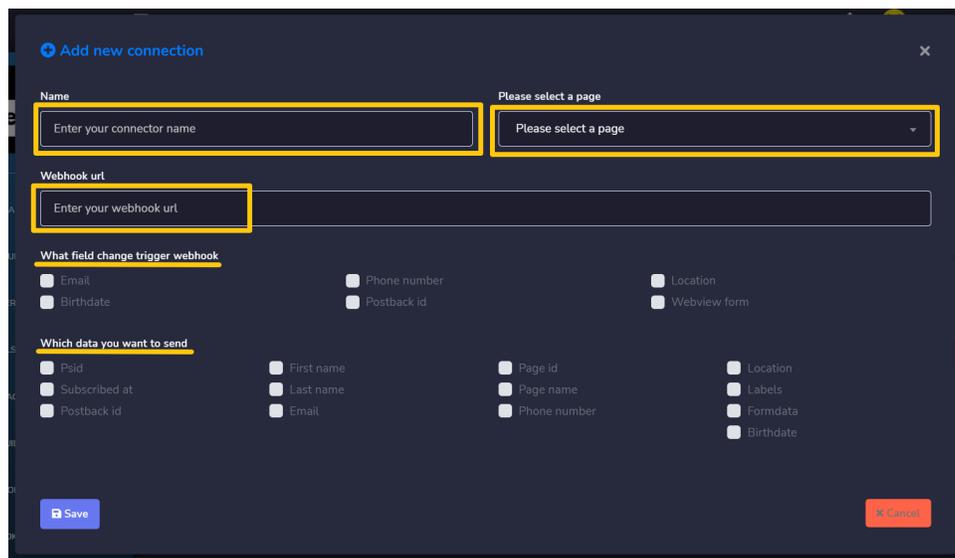
Create Connection

You can create a new connection by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



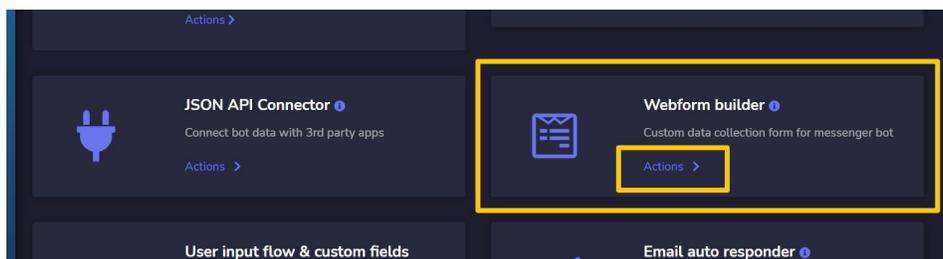
- 2) Provide the **Name** and select the **page** for which you want to add the connection.
- 3) Enter the **webhook URL** in the field.
- 4) Mark the checkboxes against the field for which you want to **change trigger webhook**.
- 5) Mark the checkboxes against the field for which you want to **send the data**.
- 6) Select **Save** to make a new connection.





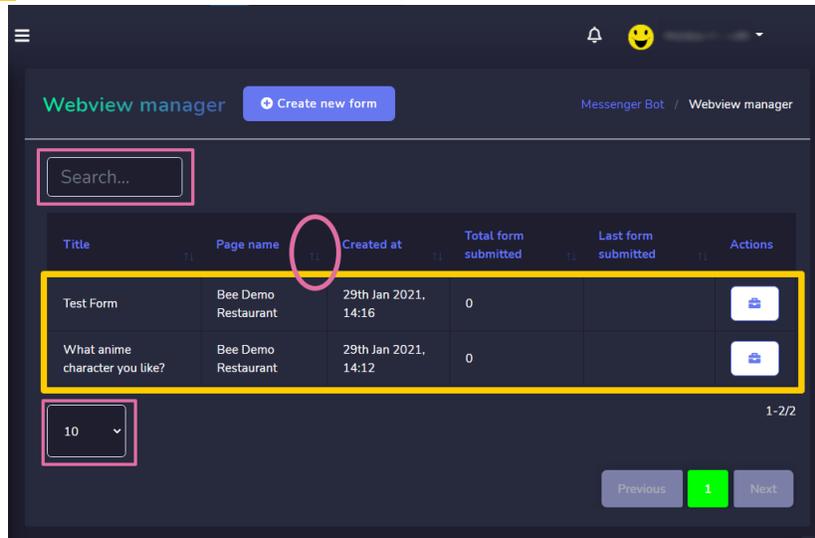
Webform builder

To access the webform builder section, select **Webform builder**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.

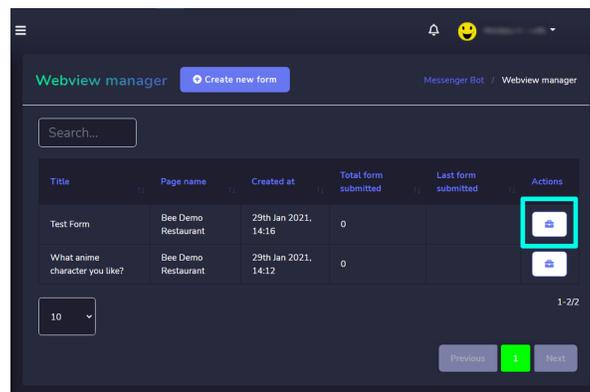


Webview manager screen consists of a list of pages, you can search for a specific page by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



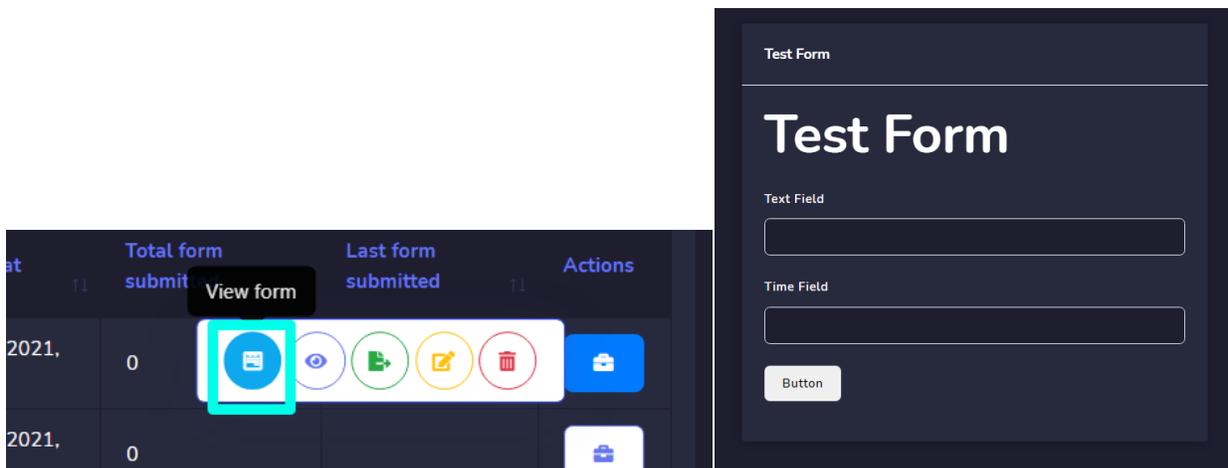


To perform different **actions** on the templates, select  option against the page you want to perform actions on.



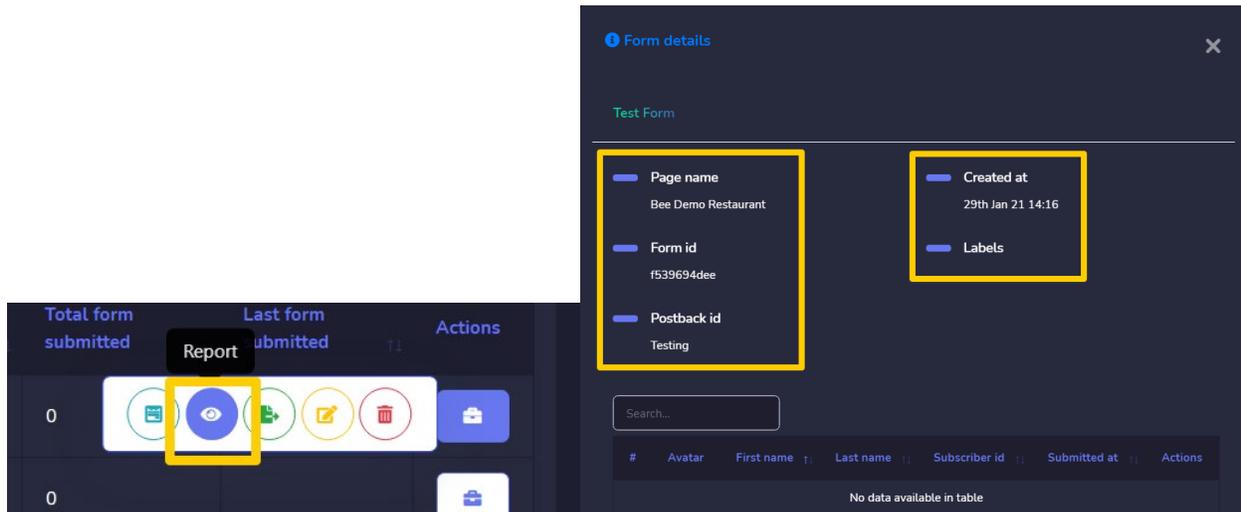
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- **View the form** by selecting .



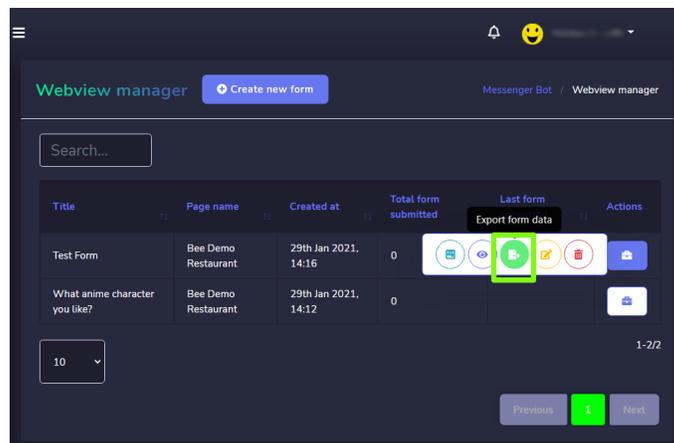


- View the report by selecting .



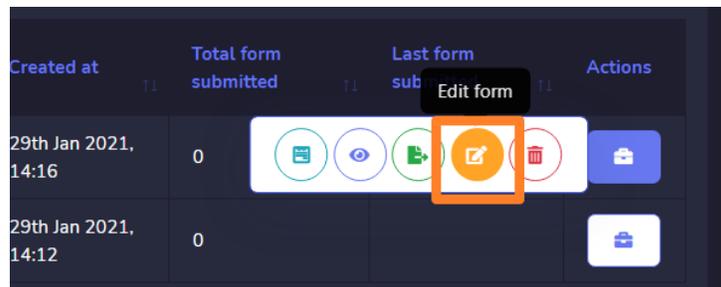
The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface. On the left, a table lists forms with columns for 'Total form submitted' and 'Last form submitted'. A 'Report' button is highlighted with a yellow box, and an eye icon is also highlighted. On the right, a 'Form details' modal is open for 'Test Form'. It shows fields for 'Page name' (Bee Demo Restaurant), 'Form id' (f539694dee), 'Postback id' (Testing), 'Created at' (29th Jan 21 14:16), and 'Labels'. A yellow box highlights the 'Page name', 'Form id', and 'Postback id' fields. Below the modal, a table header is visible with columns: #, Avatar, First name, Last name, Subscriber id, Submitted at, and Actions. The table content is empty, showing 'No data available in table'.

- Export the data from the form by selecting .



The screenshot shows the 'Webview manager' interface. It features a search bar and a 'Create new form' button. Below is a table with columns: Title, Page name, Created at, Total form submitted, Last form submitted, and Actions. The table contains two rows: 'Test Form' and 'What anime character you like?'. The 'Export form data' button in the 'Actions' column of the first row is highlighted with a green box. At the bottom, there are 'Previous', 'Next', and a page indicator '1-2/2'.

- Edit the form



The screenshot shows a close-up of the 'Webview manager' table. The 'Edit form' button, represented by a pencil icon, is highlighted with an orange box. The table columns are 'Created at', 'Total form submitted', 'Last form sub', and 'Actions'. The first row shows '29th Jan 2021, 14:16' and '0'.





Edit webview form Messenger Bot / Webview manager / Edit webview form

Form name: Test Form Form title: Test Form

Select page: Bee Demo Restaurant Assign label: Select label (Create label)

Reply template: Testing [Testing] (Add template Refresh)

Test Form

Text Field

Time Field

Header, Text Field, Text Area, Select, Radio Group

- Delete the form

Webview manager Create new form Messenger Bot / Webview manager

Search...

Title	Page name	Created at	Total form submitted	Last form submitted	Delete form	Actions
Test Form	Bee Demo Restaurant	29th Jan 2021, 14:16	0			
What anime character you like?	Bee Demo Restaurant	29th Jan 2021, 14:12	0			

10 1-2/2 Previous 1 Next

Webview manager Create new form

Search...

Are you sure?

Once deleted, you will not be able to recover this form!

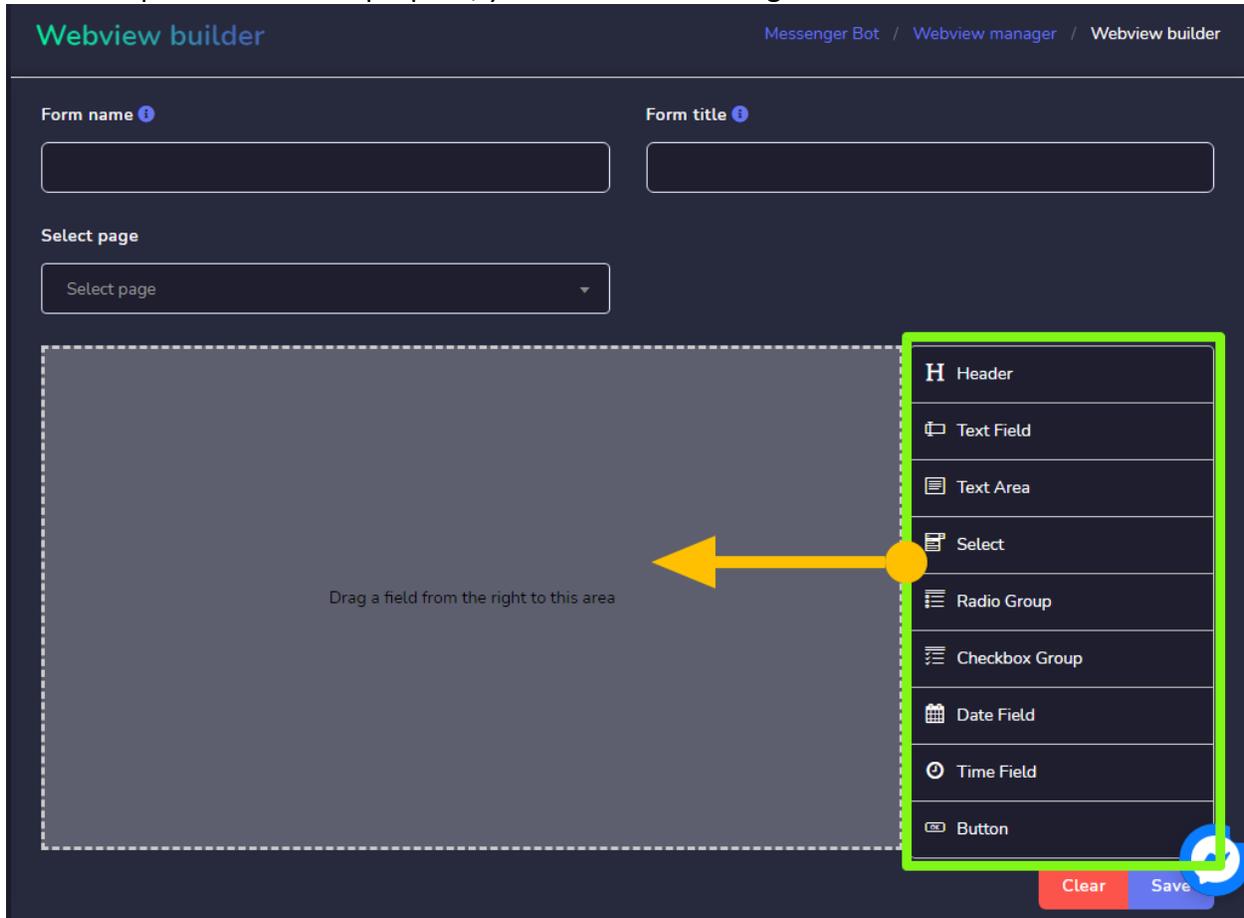
Cancel OK



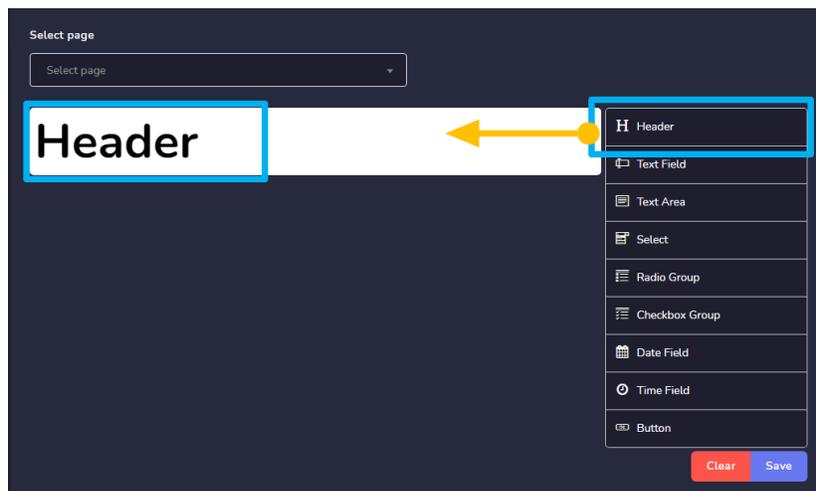


Webform elements

To create a webform by dragging and dropping the elements from the right side to the canvas on the left side. You can add as many components as you want in the form. You can rename these components. For this purpose, you have the following set of elements:



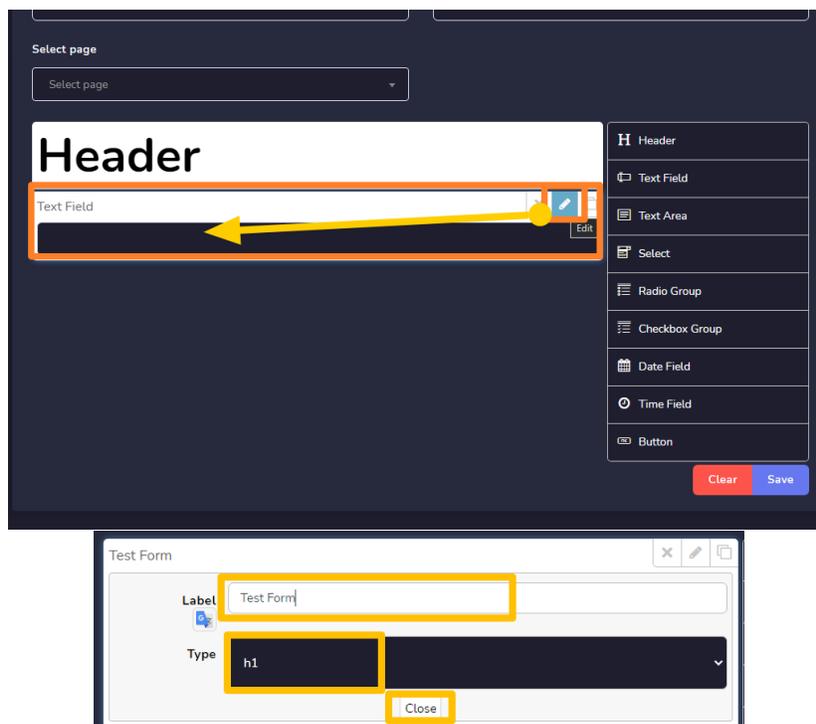
- **Header:** Here you can write the title/agenda of your form



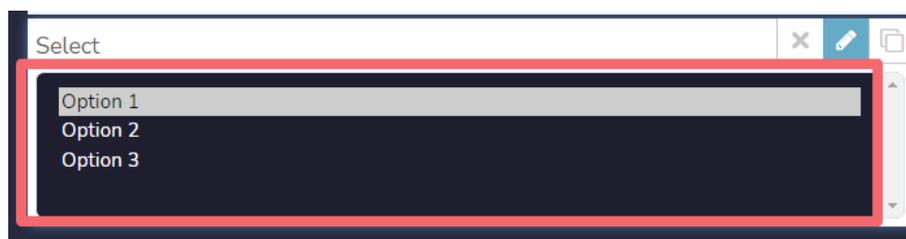
- **Text field:** You can add and edit a text from this field.



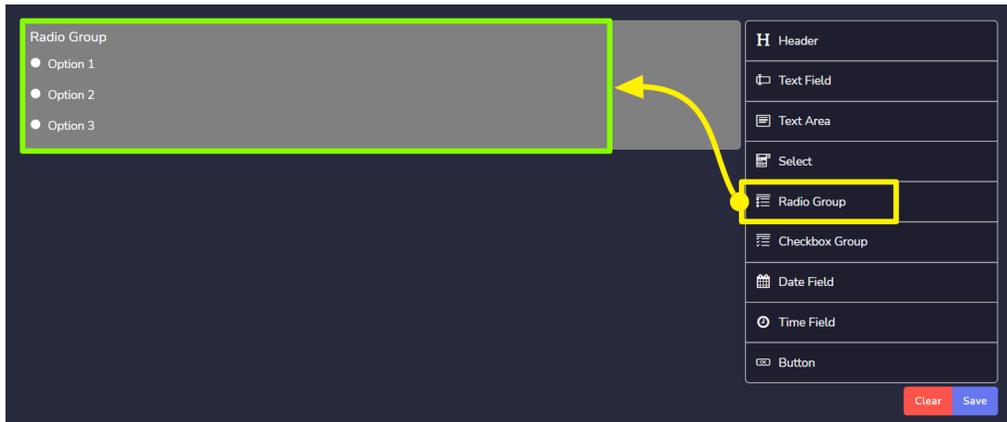
- **Text area:** You can add and edit a text from this area.



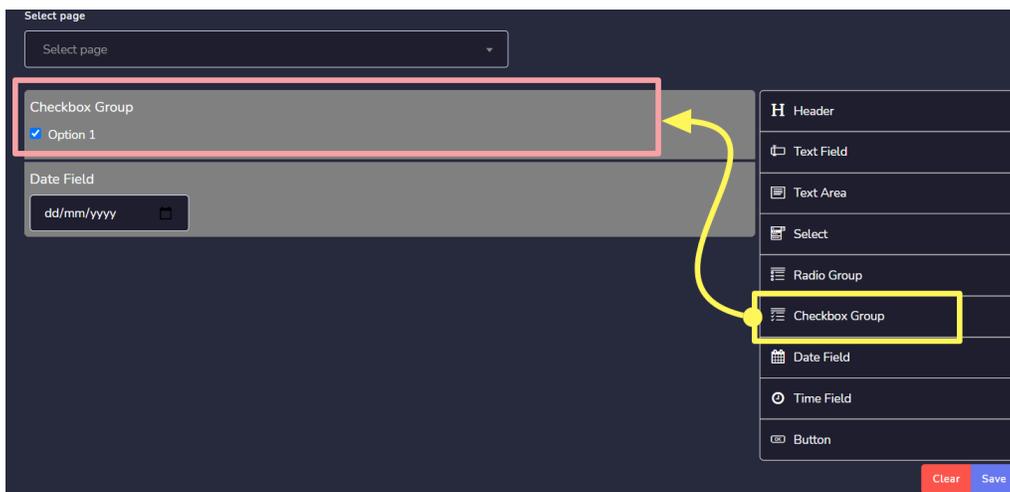
- **Select:** You can add a dropdown menu using this select option. It will have many options. In the form, the user can choose one option.



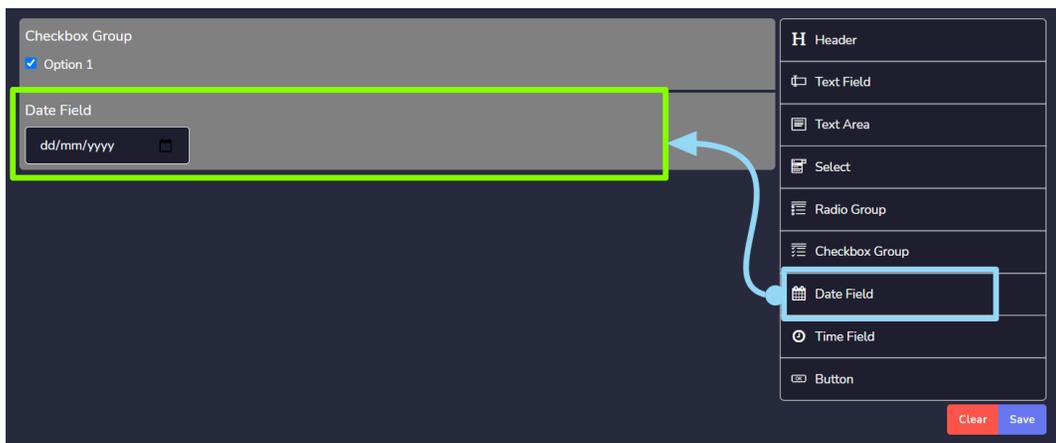
- **Radio group:** It will have many radio buttons, in the form user can choose one.



- **Checkbox group:** It will have many checkboxes, in the form user can choose one.

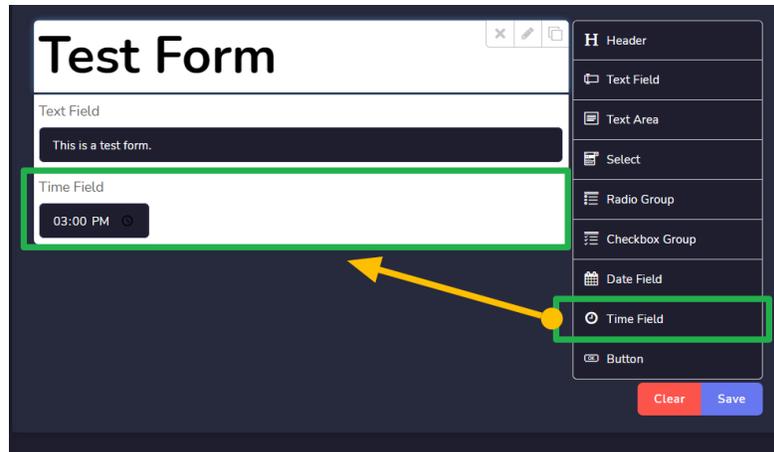


- **Date field:** It will have the mm/dd/yy field.

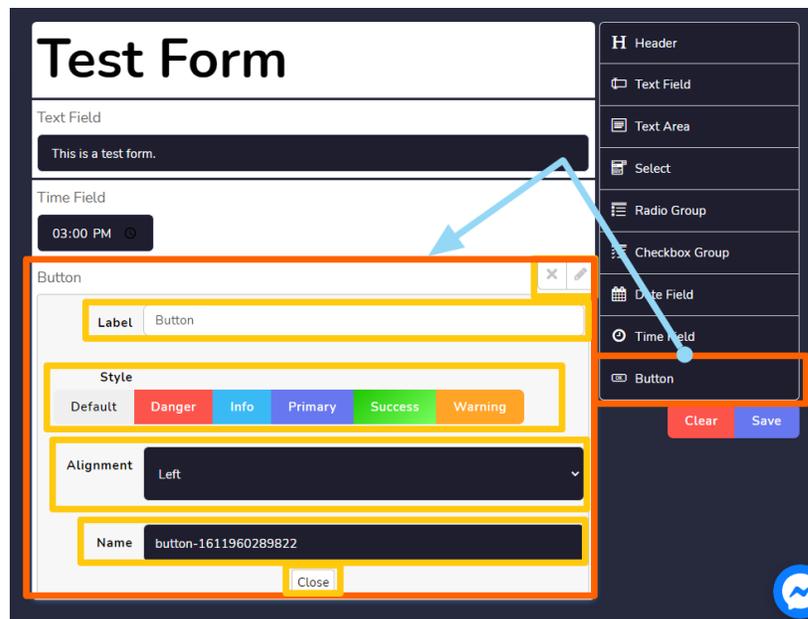


- **Time field:** It will have --:-- -- field to make the user enter the time.



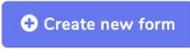


- **Button:** It is a clickable box that works on action.

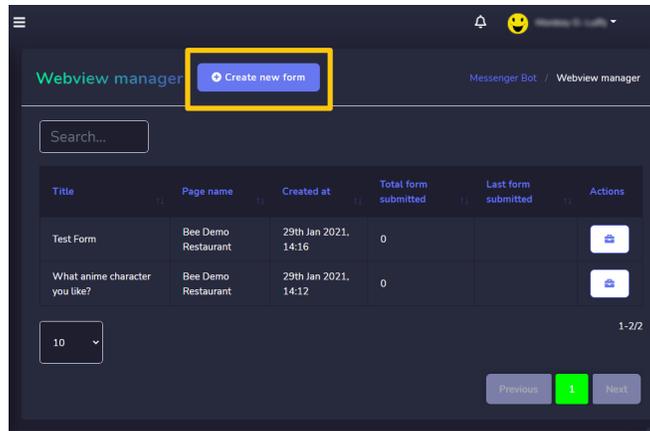


Create new form

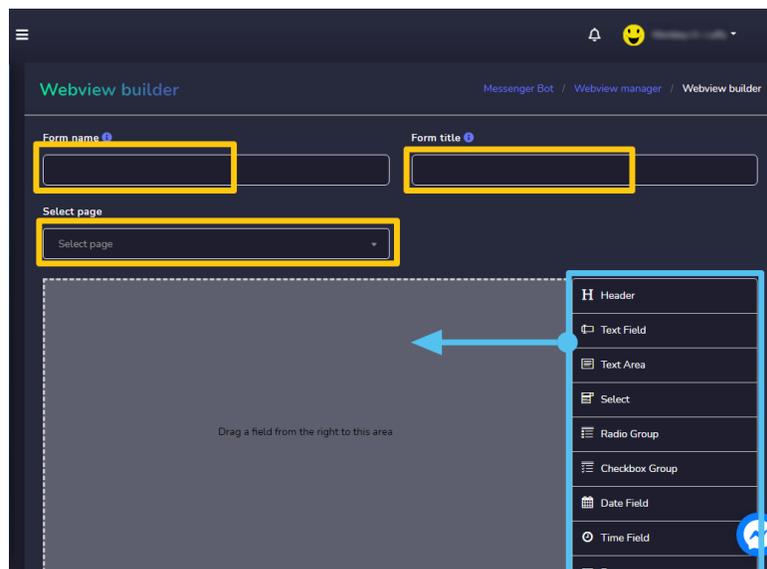
You can create a new form by following the steps given below:

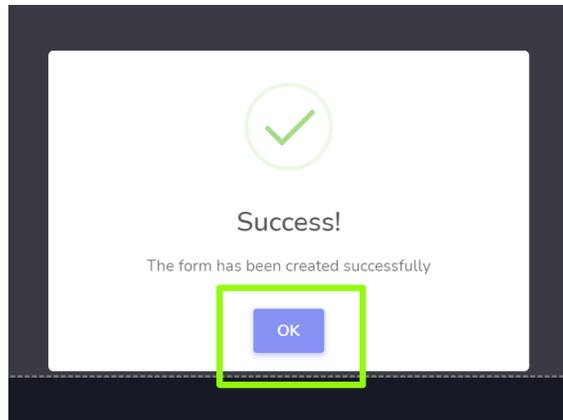
- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.





- 2) Provide the **Form name** and **Form title** for your new form.
- 3) Select the **page** for which you want to create your form.
- 4) Drag and drop the fields you want to drag in the form as described in [Webform elements](#).
- 5) Select **Save** to make a new form.



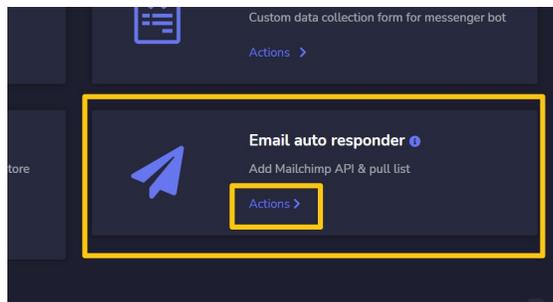


Note

- It is mandatory to choose the button field while creating a new form.

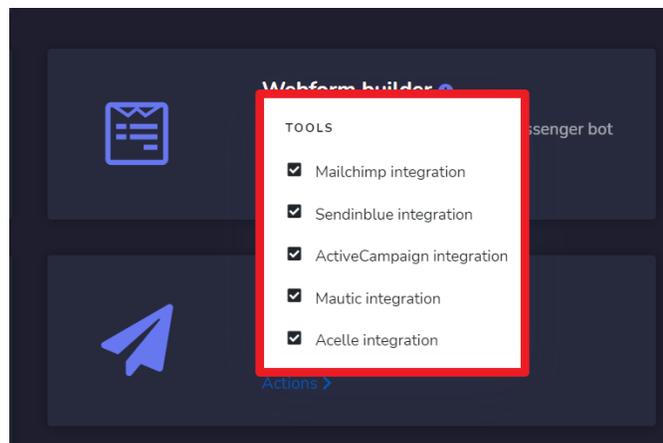
Email auto responder

To access the email auto responder section, select **Email auto responder**, then select **Actions** from **Messenger Bot** screen.



A dropdown menu containing three different options will appear on the screen.

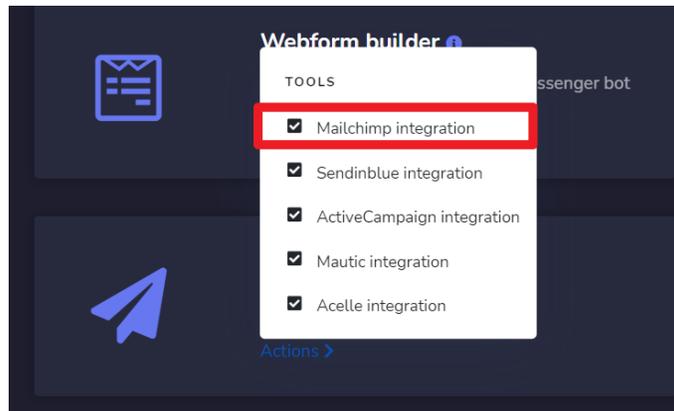
- Mailchimp Integration
- Sendin Blue Intergration
- Activecampaign Intergration



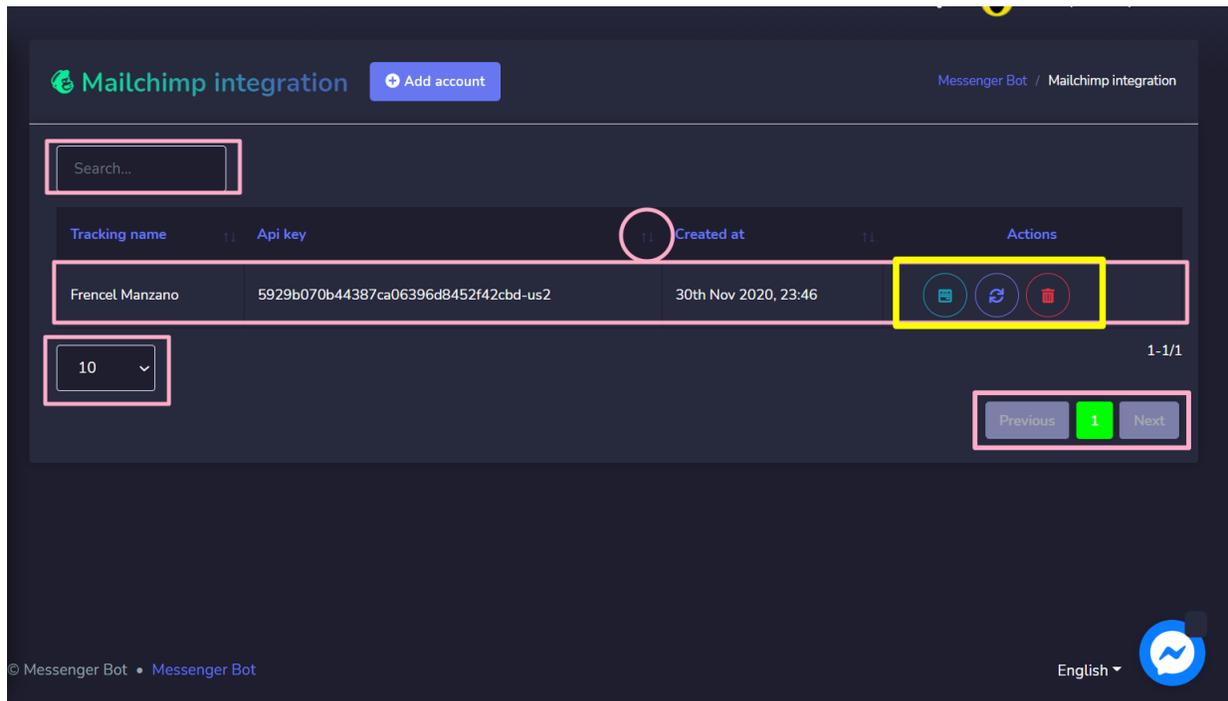
Note

- It is mandatory to have accounts in all three options to make the integration possible.

Mailchimp integration



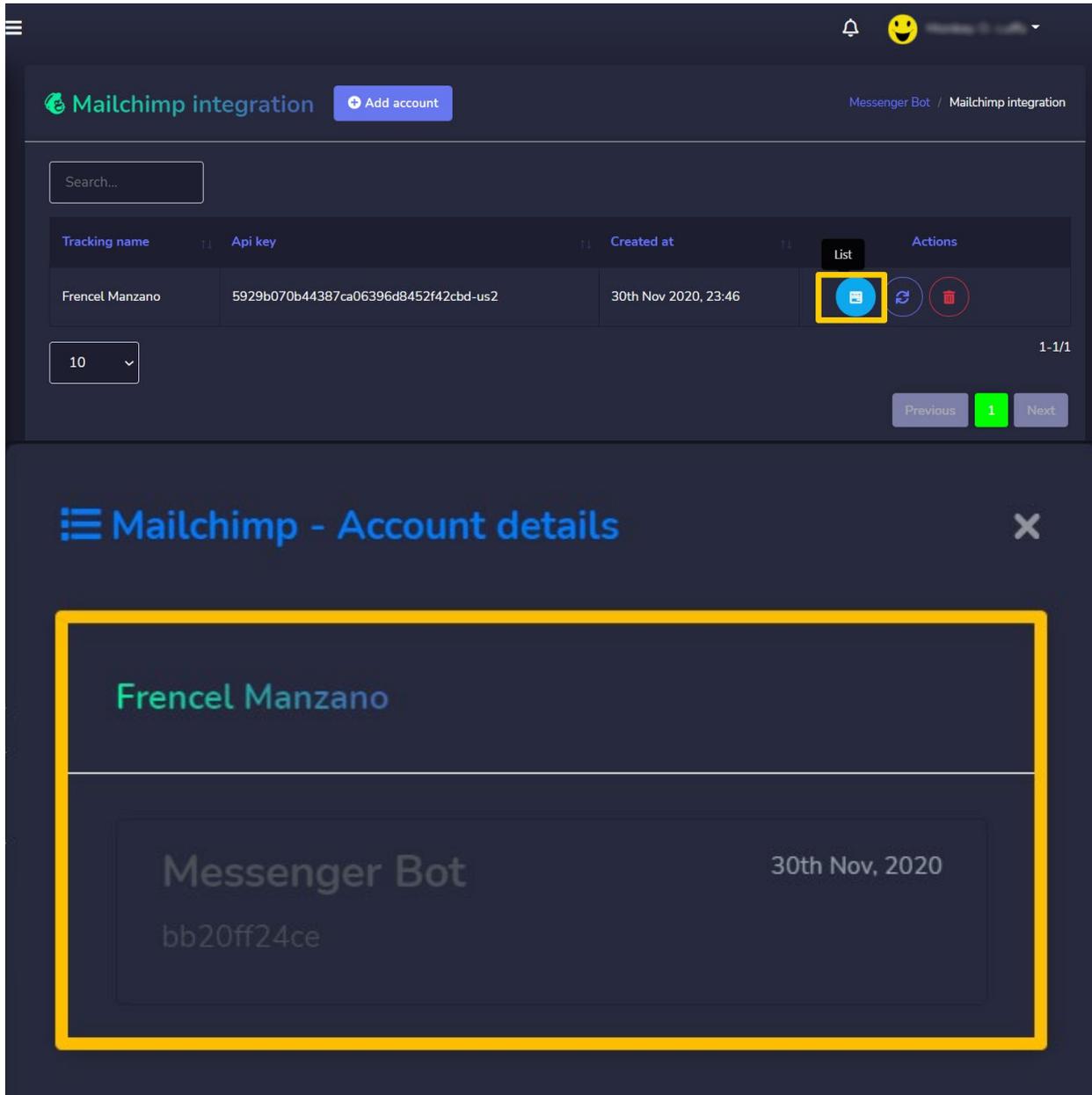
Mailchimp integration screen consists of **API Keys**, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.





The following are the actions that can be performed:

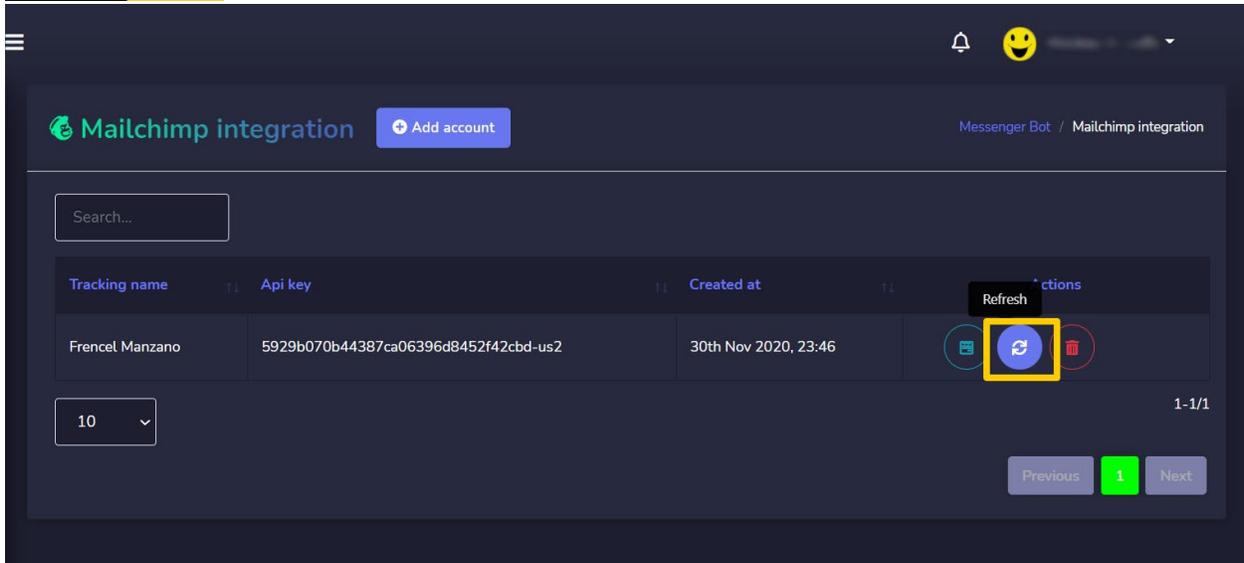
- **View the list** by selecting .



The screenshot shows the Mailchimp integration interface. At the top, there is a search bar and a table with columns: Tracking name, Api key, Created at, List, and Actions. The first row shows 'Frencel Manzano' with an API key '5929b070b44387ca06396d8452f42cbd-us2' and a creation date of '30th Nov 2020, 23:46'. The 'List' column for this entry has a blue icon with a white envelope, which is highlighted with a yellow box. Below the table, there is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1-1/1' total items. A modal window titled 'Mailchimp - Account details' is open, showing the name 'Frencel Manzano' and a list of accounts. The first account is 'Messenger Bot' with ID 'bb20ff24ce' and a creation date of '30th Nov, 2020'. This account entry is also highlighted with a yellow box.

- **Refresh the list** by selecting .





Mailchimp integration ➕ Add account Messenger Bot / Mailchimp integration

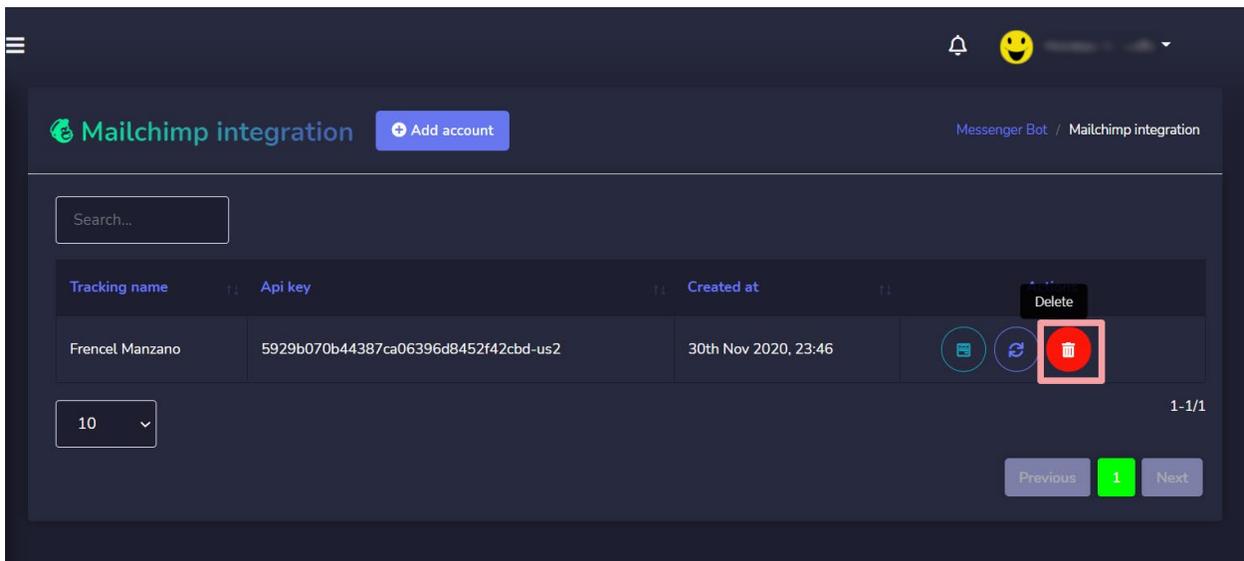
Search...

Tracking name	Api key	Created at	Actions
Frencel Manzano	5929b070b44387ca06396d8452f42cbd-us2	30th Nov 2020, 23:46	Refresh Delete

10 ▼ 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

- Delete the account



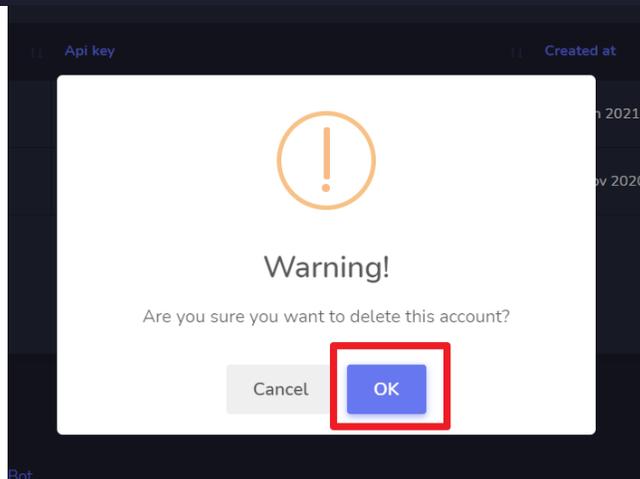
Mailchimp integration ➕ Add account Messenger Bot / Mailchimp integration

Search...

Tracking name	Api key	Created at	Actions
Frencel Manzano	5929b070b44387ca06396d8452f42cbd-us2	30th Nov 2020, 23:46	Delete Refresh Details

10 ▼ 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next



Warning!

Are you sure you want to delete this account?

Cancel OK

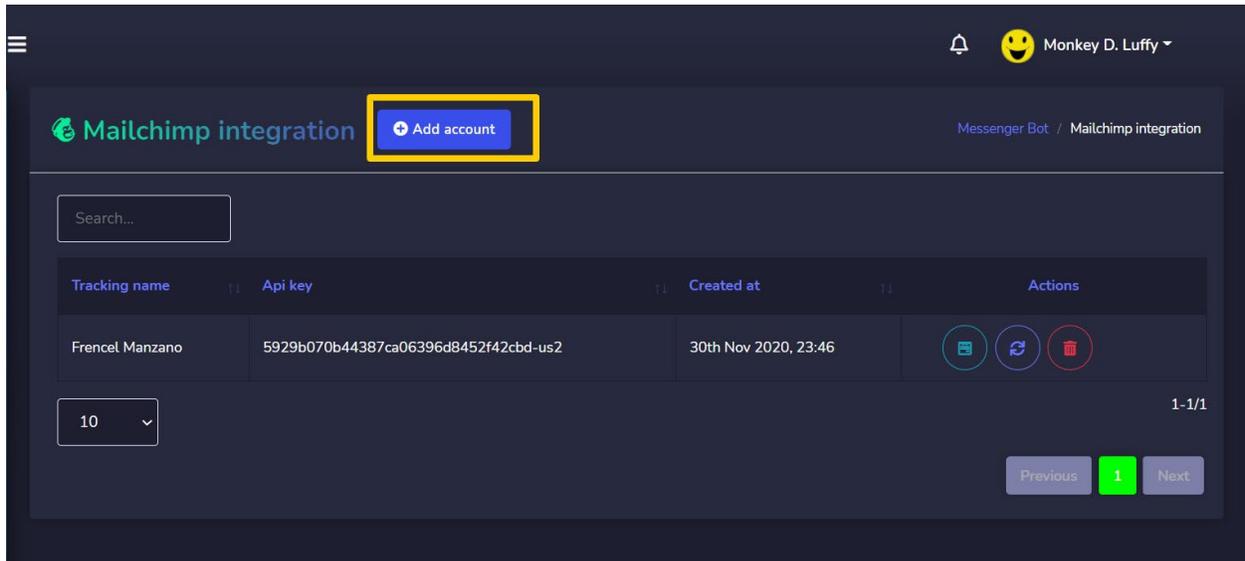




Add account

You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API key** generated from Mailchimp account.
- 4) Select **Save** to add the new account.

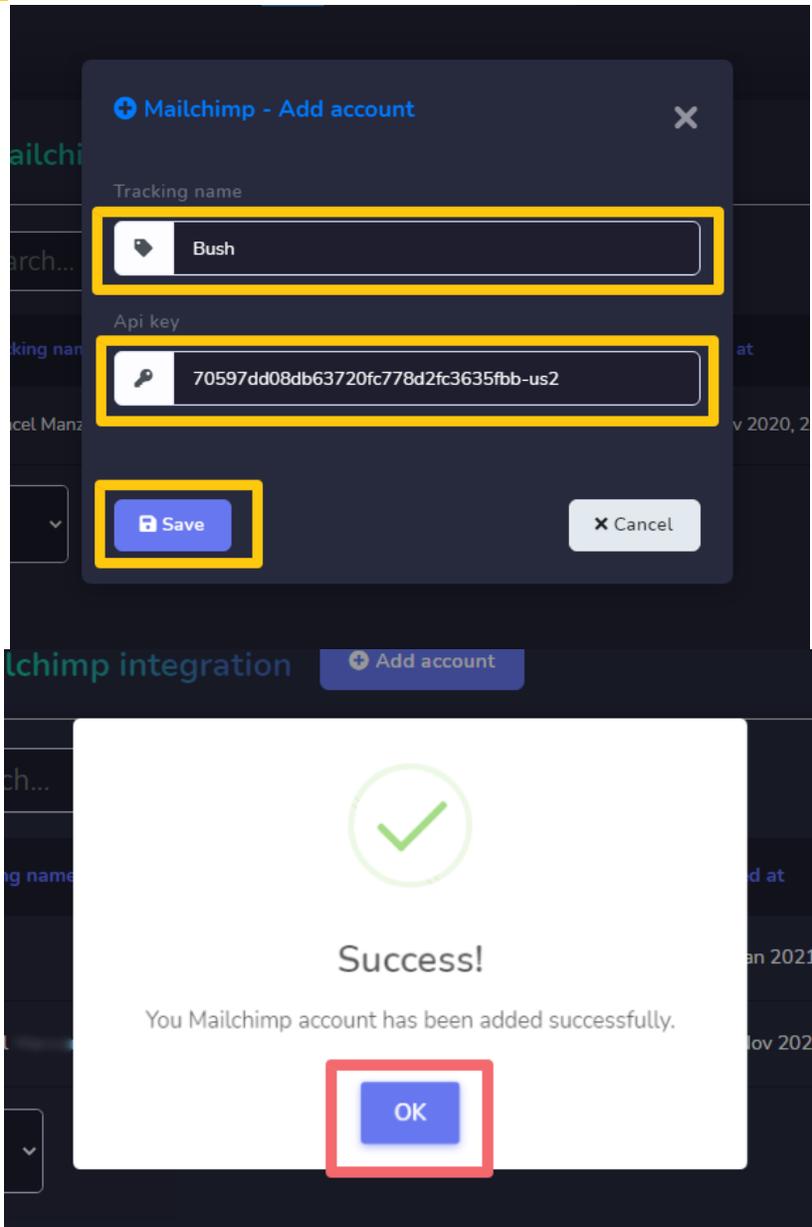
Your API keys

API keys provide full access to your Mailchimp account, so keep them safe. [Tips on keeping API keys secure.](#)

Created	User	Label	API key	QR Code	Status
Dec 01, 2020 2:45 am	Frencel (owner)	none set	5929b070b44387ca06	QR	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dec 01, 2020 12:56 am	Frencel (owner)	none set	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8	QR	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

[Create A Key](#)



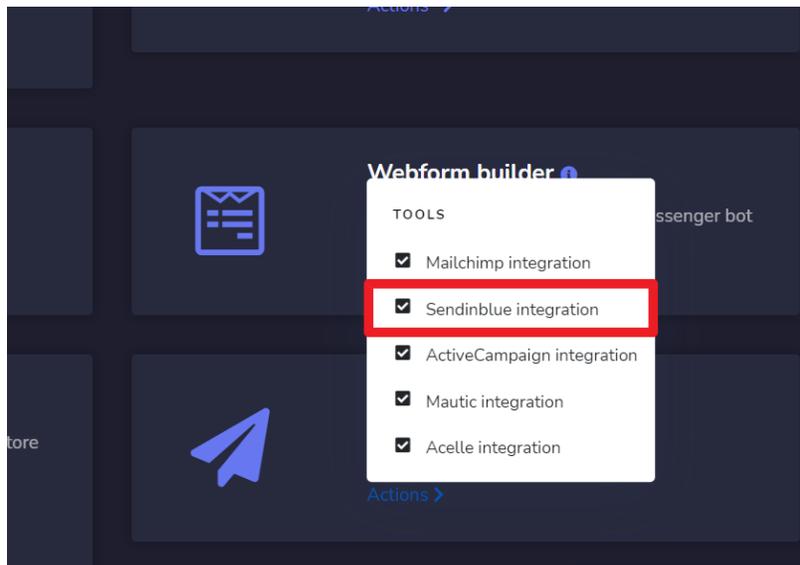


The image shows a two-step process for adding a Mailchimp account. The first step is a modal window titled "Mailchimp - Add account" with a close button (X) in the top right. It contains two text input fields: "Tracking name" with the value "Bush" and "Api key" with the value "70597dd08db63720fc778d2fc3635fbb-us2". Below these fields are two buttons: "Save" and "Cancel". The second step is a success message dialog box with a green checkmark icon, the text "Success!", and "You Mailchimp account has been added successfully." Below the message is an "OK" button.

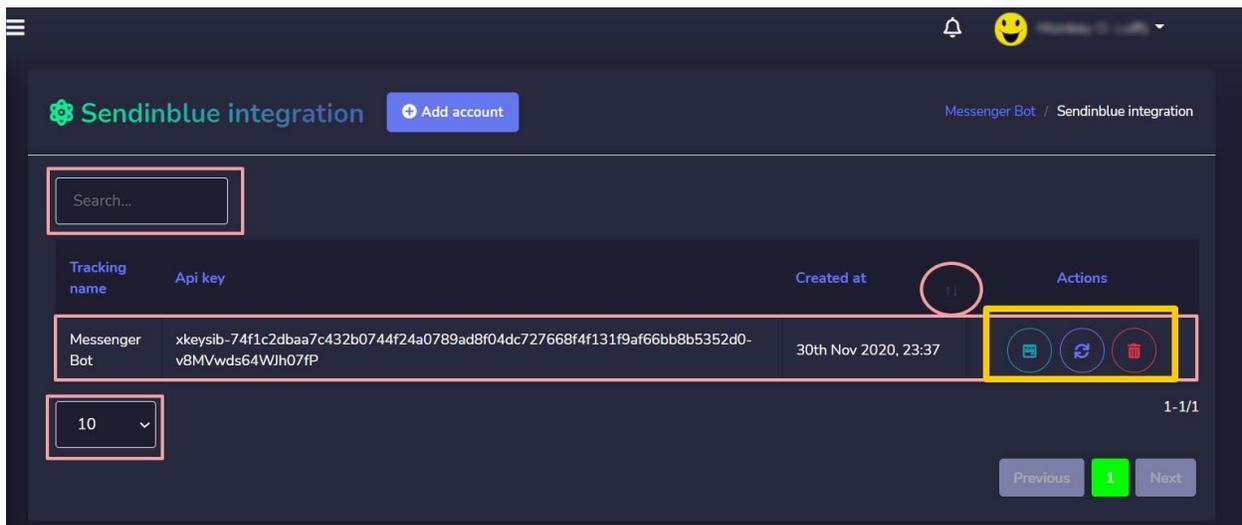




Sendin Blue integration

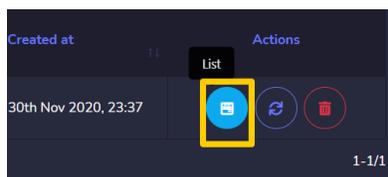


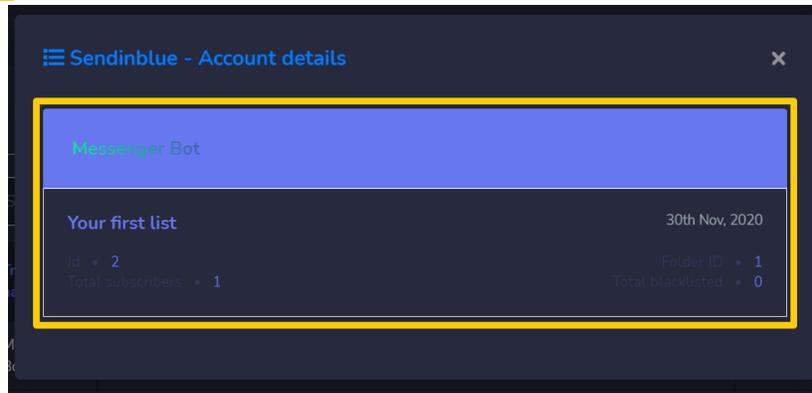
Sendinblue integration screen consists of **API Keys**, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



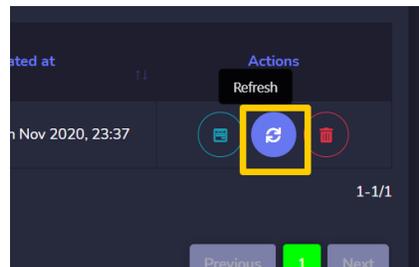
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the list by selecting .

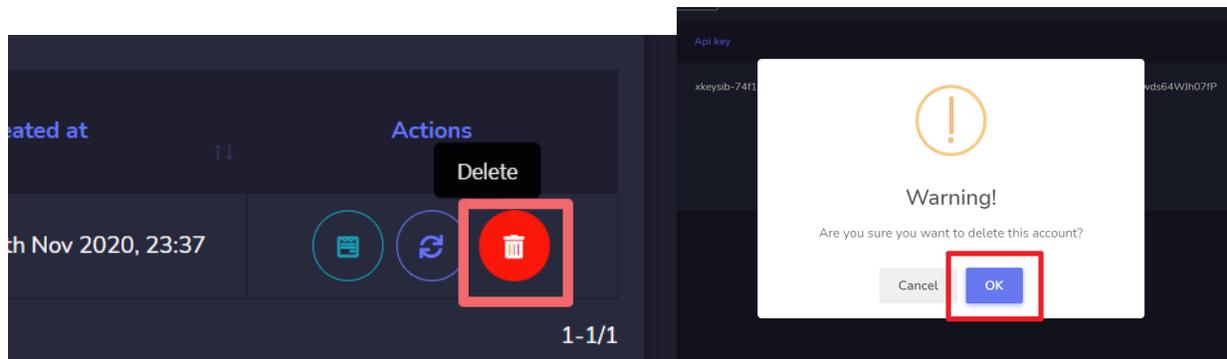




- Refresh the list by selecting .

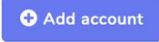


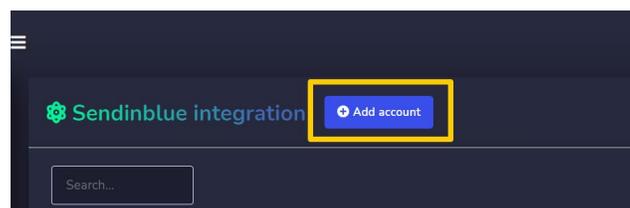
- Delete the account



Add account

You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.





- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API key** generated from Sendinblue account.
- 4) Select **Save** to add the new account.

The screenshot shows the 'SMTP & API' settings page in Sendinblue. A green notification banner at the top states 'The key has been added.' Below this, a table titled 'Your API Keys' lists three API keys. The first key is highlighted with a yellow box. The table has columns for 'VERSION', 'API KEY', 'INFO', and 'NAME'. Below the table, there is a 'Support' button and a code block for creating a campaign.

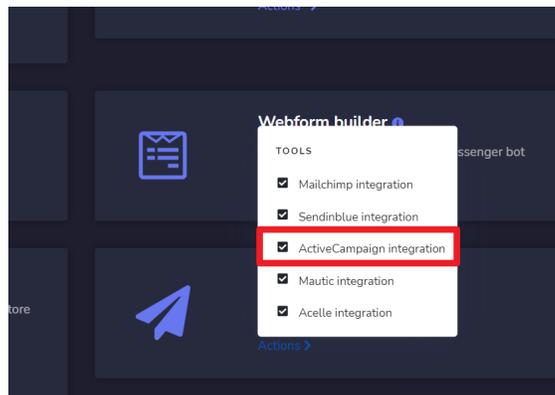
VERSION	API KEY	INFO	NAME
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8e	API v3	third_api
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8e	API v3	second_api
v3	xkeysib-bdae346028f89c8e	API v3	N°3

The first screenshot shows the 'Sendinblue - Add account' dialog box. It has two input fields: 'Tracking name' with the value 'Demo' and 'Api key' with the value '3b046a9f61d951a0ddfe7edf68416-bnW68xwdCt2DghPU'. There are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom. The second screenshot shows a 'Success!' confirmation message with a green checkmark icon and the text 'You Sendinblue account has been added successfully.' and an 'OK' button.

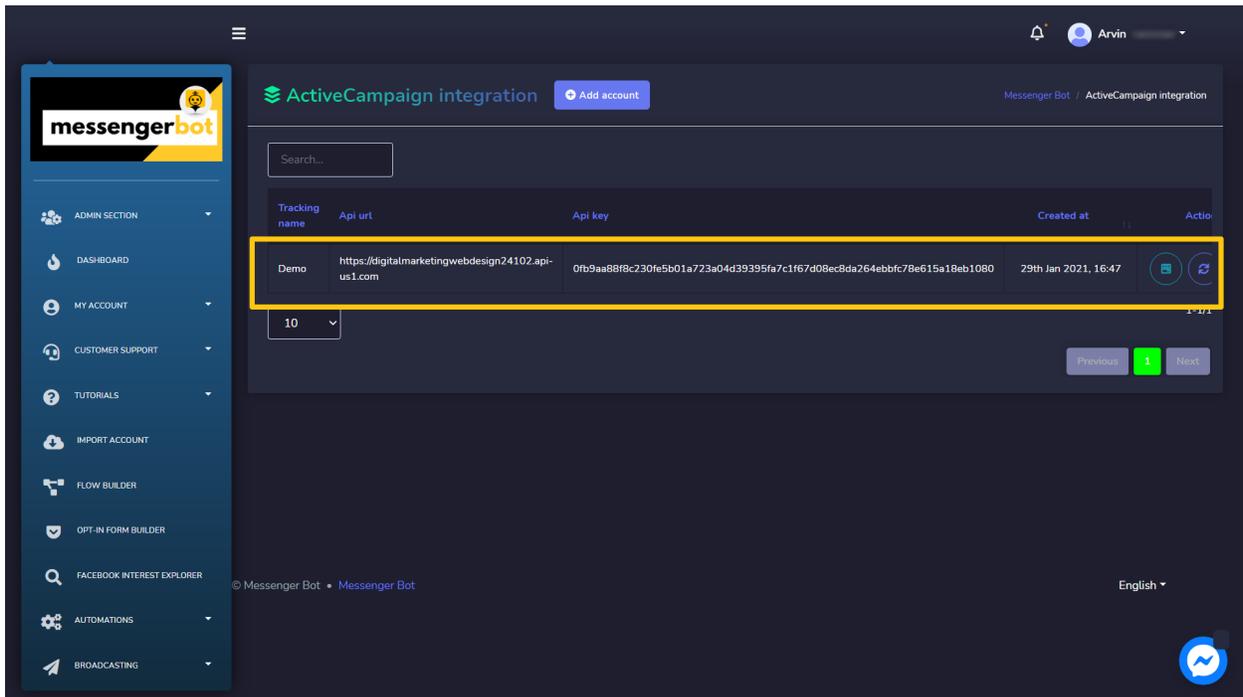




Activecampaign integration



Activecampaign integration screen consists of API Keys, you can search for a specific tracking name by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of names to be **viewed per page**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.



The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the list by selecting  .



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface. At the top left is the 'messengerbot' logo. The main header displays 'ActiveCampaign integration' with an 'Add account' button. Below this is a search bar and a table of integrations. The table has columns for 'Tracking name', 'Api url', 'Api key', and 'Created at'. One entry is visible: 'Messenger Bot' with a URL, API key, and creation date of '30th Nov 2020, 23:54'. To the right of the table are 'Actions' buttons: 'Lists', 'Refresh', and 'Delete'. The 'Refresh' button is highlighted with a yellow box. Below the table is a dropdown menu set to '10' and pagination buttons 'Previous', '1', and 'Next'. A modal window titled 'Sendinblue - Account details' is open, showing 'Messenger Bot' and 'Your first list' with details like 'Id: 2', 'Total subscribers: 1', 'Folder ID: 1', and 'Total blacklisted: 0'. The modal also has a 'Refresh' button highlighted with a yellow box.

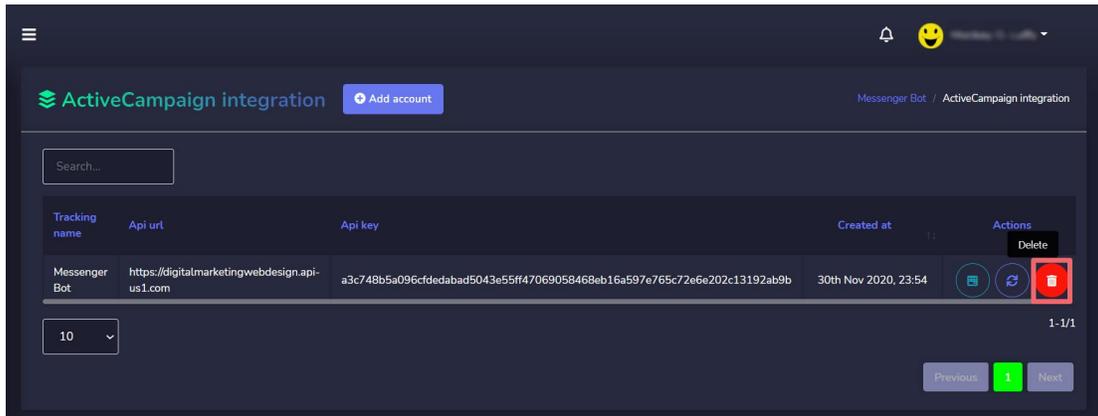
- Refresh the list by selecting .

This screenshot is similar to the first one, showing the 'ActiveCampaign integration' table. The 'Actions' menu is open, and the 'Refresh' button is highlighted with a yellow box. The 'Refresh' button is a circular icon with a circular arrow. The 'Delete' button is a red trash can icon. The 'Lists' button is a blue document icon. The 'Refresh' button is highlighted with a yellow box.





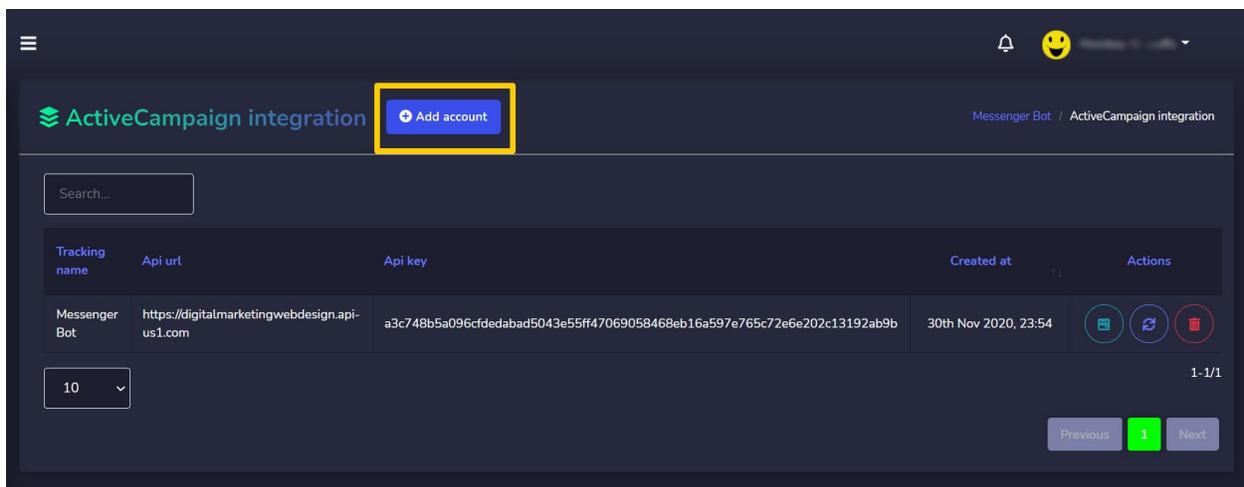
- Delete the account.



Add account

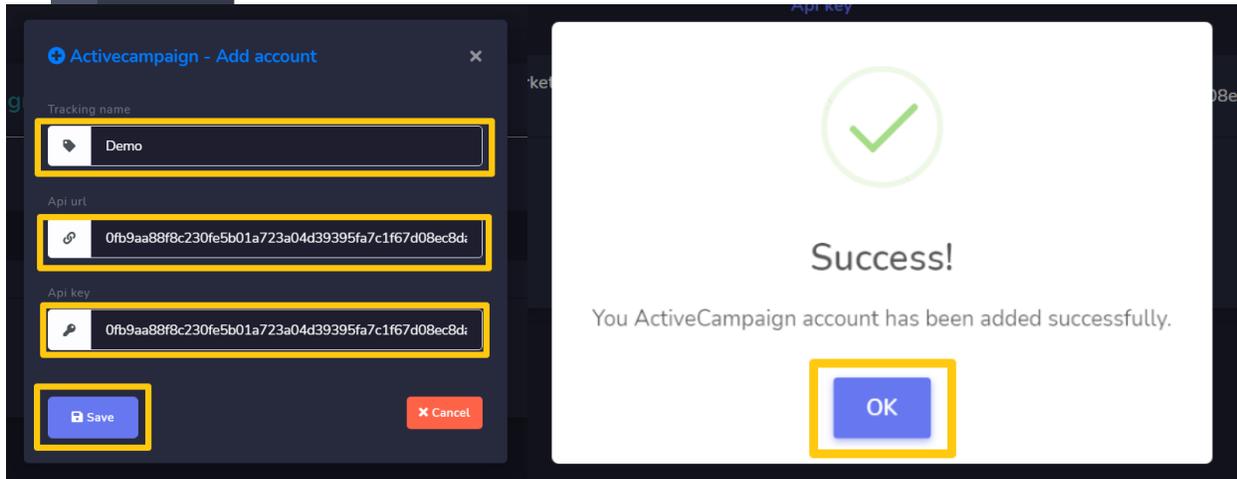
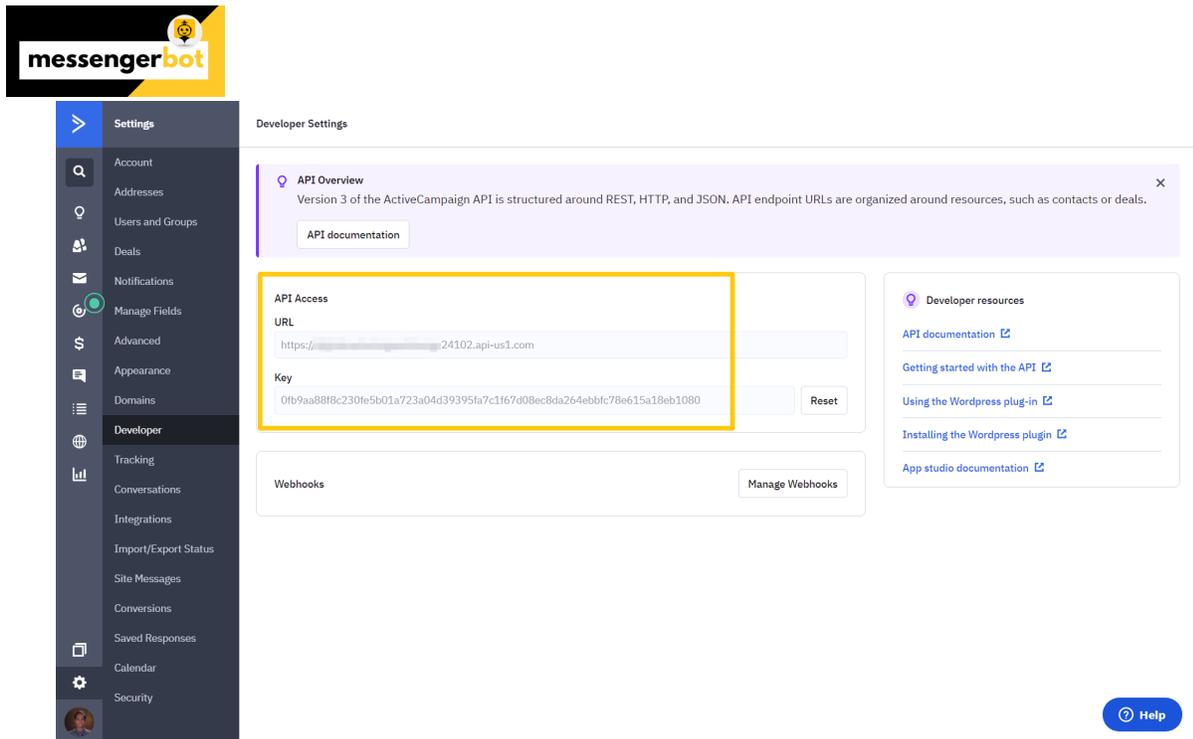
You can add an account by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the screen.



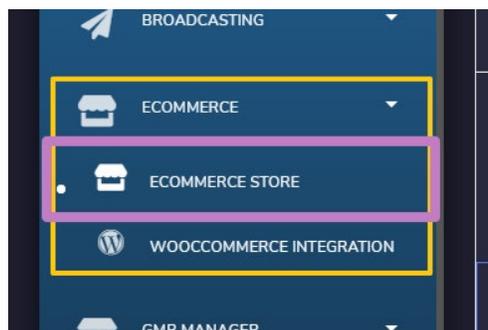
- 2) Provide the **Tracking name** for your list.
- 3) Provide **API URL** generated from Activecampaign API account.
- 4) Provide **API key** generated from Activecampaign API account.
- 5) Select **Save** to add the new account.





Messenger e-commerce store

Messenger e-commerce store is now known as **Ecommerce store**. To access the Messenger e-commerce store section, tab on **Ecommerce** on the left navigation menu, then select **Ecommerce Store**.





For this, we will be discussing:

- [Stores](#)
- [Payment settings](#)

Stores

The stores section allows you to view the existing store's dashboard. View different products summary and see all orders.

- You can simply apply **date filters** to track down the **narrowed search**.
- You can perform actions from **Actions** column on the right of the stores.
- You can **switch** between the **different stores** you created and analyze the stats.

The screenshot displays the MessengerBot Ecommerce store dashboard. The interface is dark-themed. At the top, there's a header with 'Ecommerce store' and a 'Create store' button. Below that, a date range filter is set to '2020-12-31 00:00:00' to '2021-01-30 23:59:59' with a 'Search' button. The main content area is divided into sections: 'Stores' (with a 'Demo' store selected), 'Earnings' (with a line chart showing zero activity), and 'Cart activities' (with a 'No activity found' message). On the right, there's an 'Actions' menu with options like 'Dashboard', 'Store settings', 'Checkout settings', 'Appearance settings', 'Business hour settings', 'Categories', 'Attributes', 'Products', 'Visit store', 'Delivery points', and 'QR menu'. Below the main dashboard, there are two panels: one for 'Coupons', 'Signed-up customers', 'Orders', and 'Copy URL'; the other for 'Order status notification', 'Confirmation & reminder', 'Reminder report', and 'Delete store'.

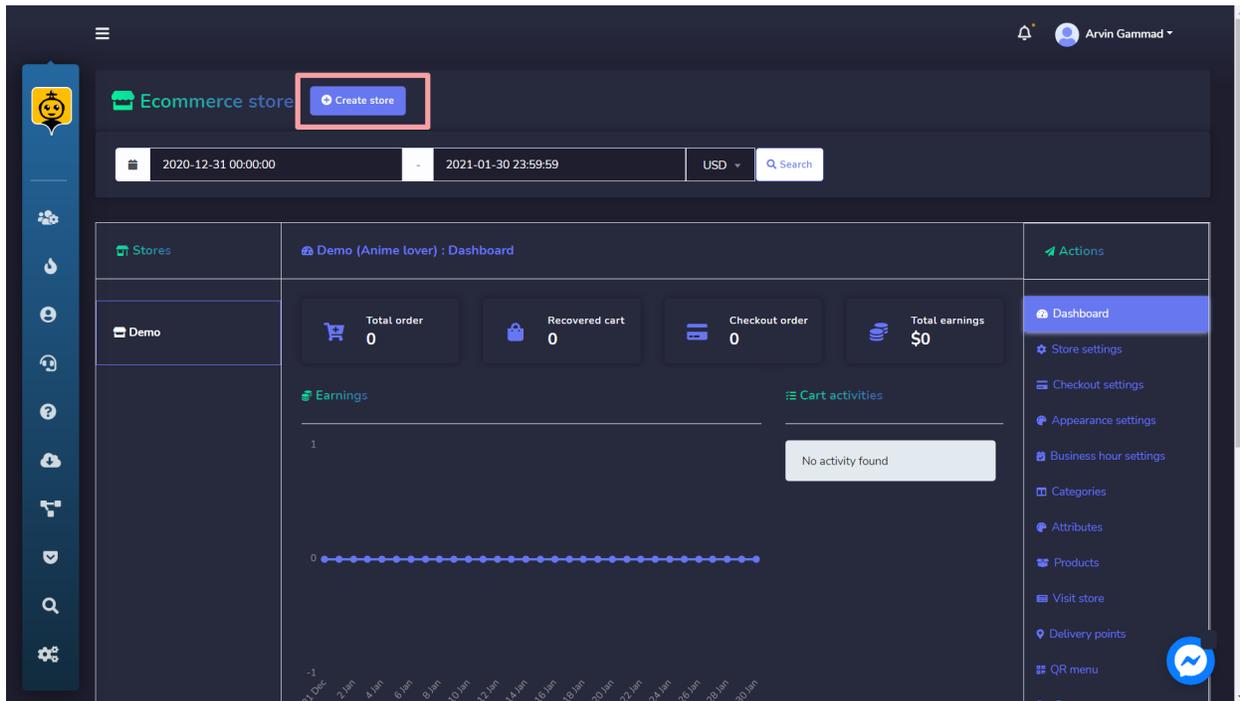
Create store

You can create a new store by following the steps given below:





- 1) Select  option from the top right of the screen.



- 2) Provide **store information**, select the **page name**.
- 3) Provide the **store name, email address, postal address**.
- 4) Provide the [payments settings](#).
- 5) Set the **status** of the store.
- 6) Fill in the **confirmation message** section.
- 7) Select **Create store** to create the new store.



Arvin

Create store

Ecommerce store

Stores

Demo (Anime lover) : Create store

Actions

Select page

Store name *

Email *

Mobile/phone

Country *

State *

City *

Street address *

Postal code *

Locale *

Logo

Favicon

- Dashboard
- Store settings
- Checkout settings
- Appearance settings
- Business hour settings
- Categories
- Attributes
- Products
- Visit store
- Delivery points
- QR menu
- Coupons

Messenger

Sms

Email

Messenger content

Congratulations {{first_name}}!
Thanks for shopping from our store. You made the right choice. If you need any information, just leave us a message here.

Order confirmation

Cart item title
Price : XX
Qty : XX

Paid with
Payment method

Deliver to
Delivery address...

Total \$xxx

You can see your order history and status here.

Messenger reminder #1
After 1 hour

Messenger reminder #2
--Do not send--

Messenger reminder #3
--Do not send--

Checkout Messenger

- Store settings
- Checkout settings
- Appearance settings
- Business hour settings
- Categories
- Attributes
- Products
- Visit store
- Delivery points
- QR menu
- Coupons
- Signed-up customers
- Order
- Copy URL
- Order status notification
- Confirmation & reminder
- Reminder report
- Delete store

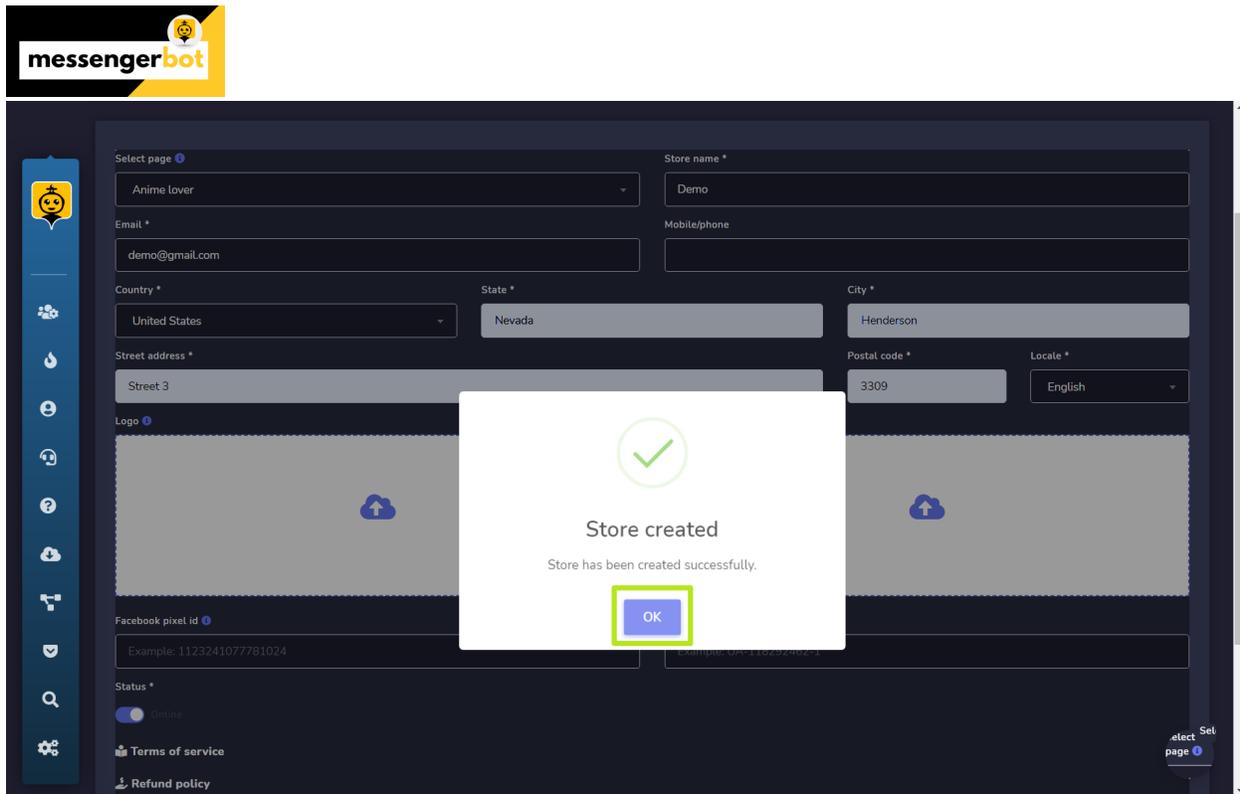
Save

Cancel

Variable

Reset





Actions

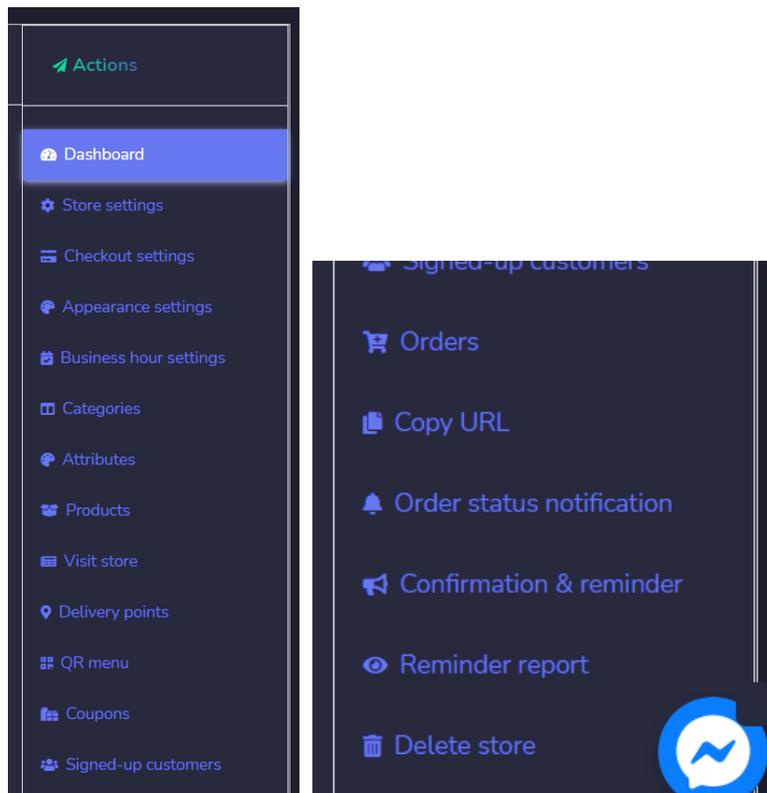
Actions from **Ecommerce store** screen containing following options such as:

- [Dashboard](#)
- [Store settings](#)
- [Checkout settings](#)
- Appearance settings
- Business hour settings
- [Categories](#)
- [Attributes](#)
- [Products](#)
- [Visit store](#)
- Delivery Points
- QR menu
- [Coupons](#)
- Signed-up customers
- [Orders](#)





- [Copy URL](#)
- Order status notification
- Confirmation & reminder
- Reminder report
- [Delete store](#)



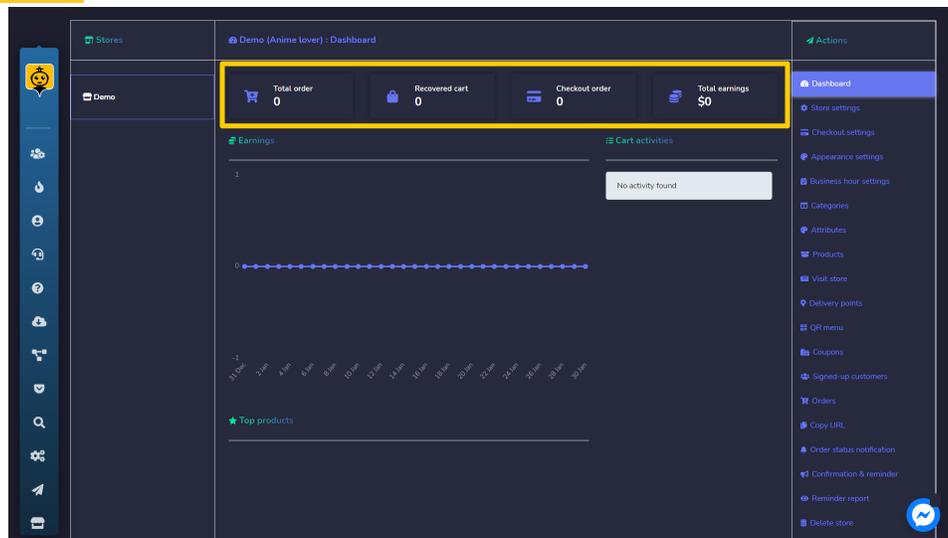
Some description of each section is given below:

Dashboard

It displays a summary of the statistics will include:

- **Total order:** The number of items ordered on selected dates.
- **Checked out order:** The number of orders that have been processed.
- **Total earnings:** Total amount of earnings till selected date.

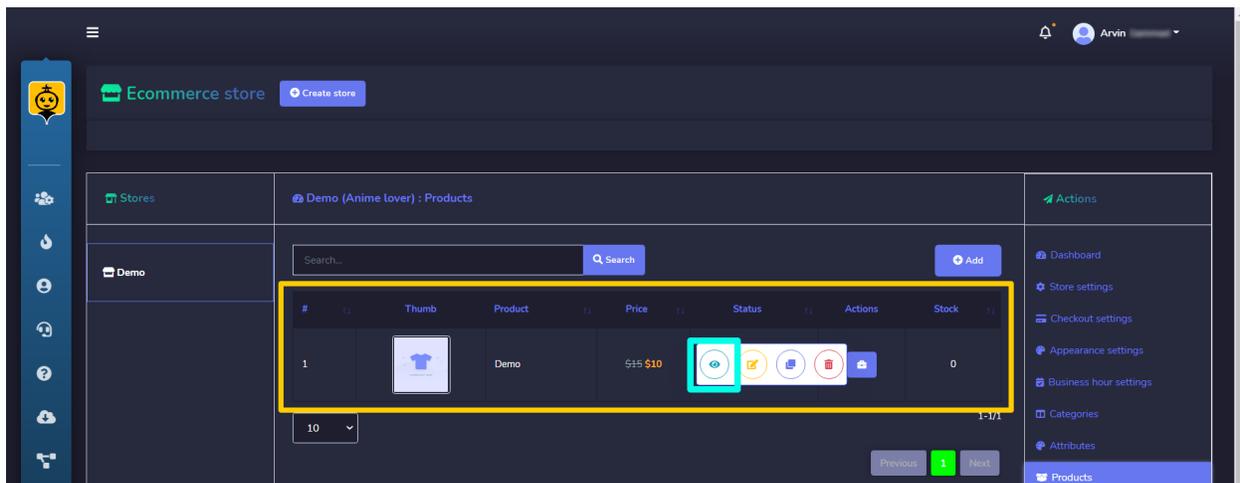


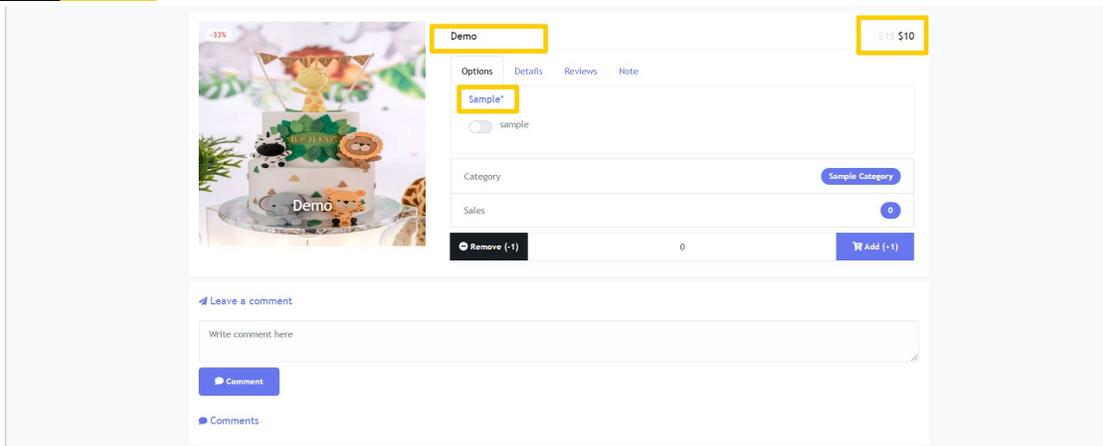


Products

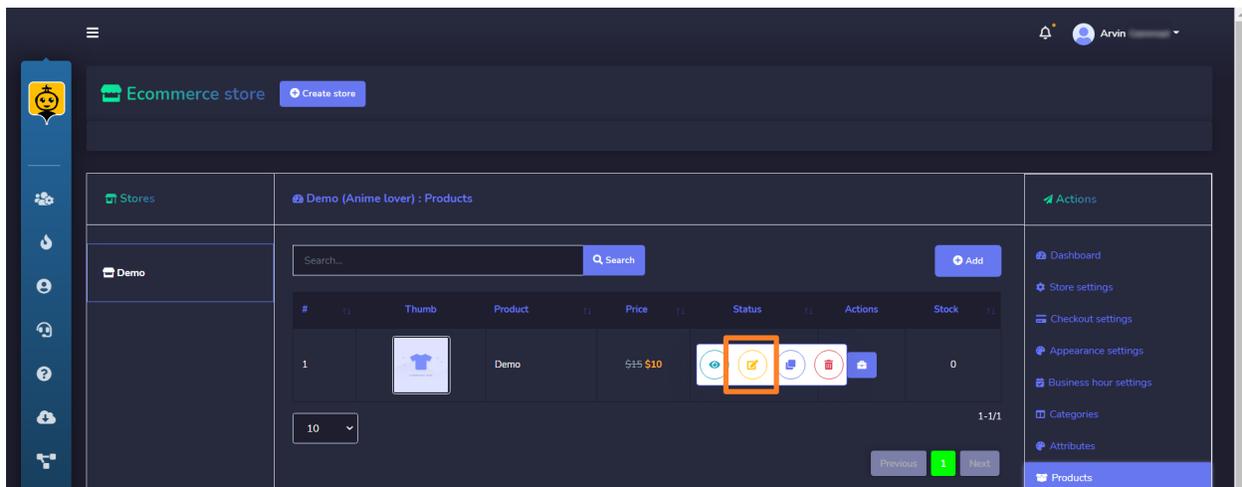
The products option allows you to get access to all existing products. You can perform following actions:

- View product page by selecting .

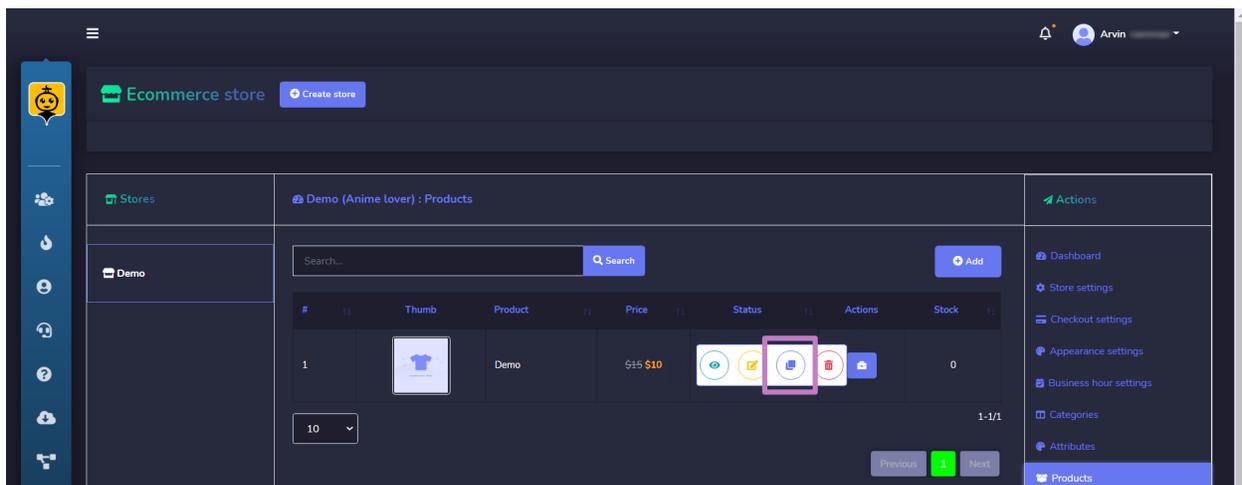




- Edit the product.

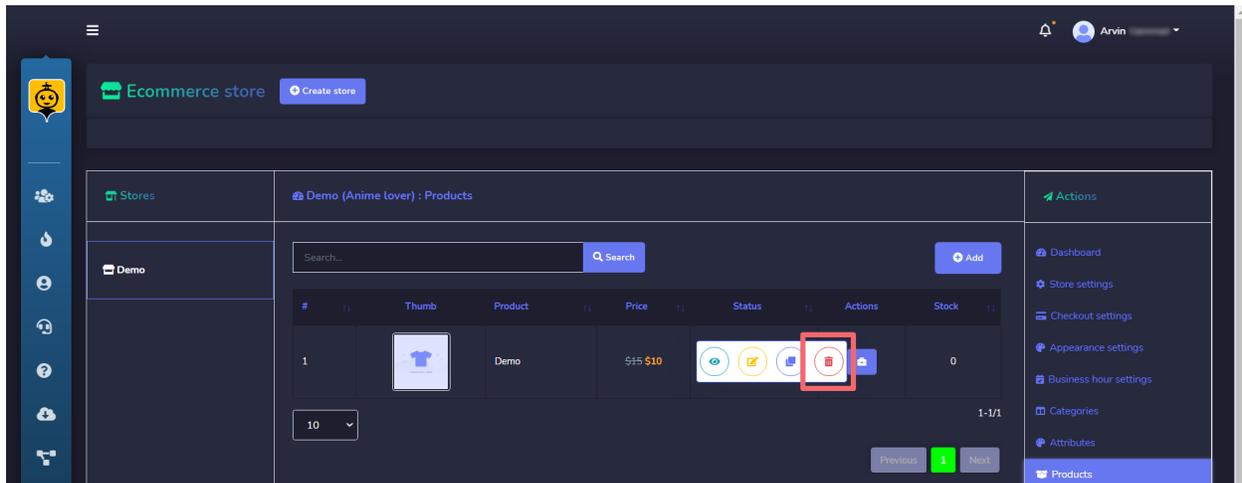


- Clone the product created by selecting .

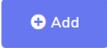


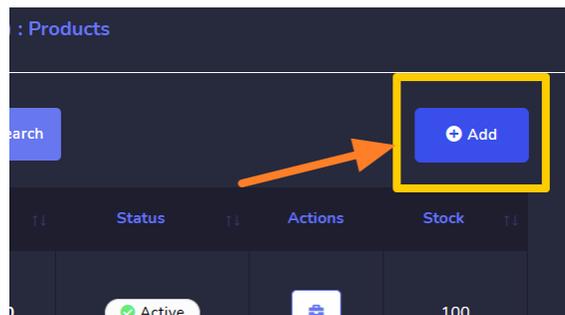


- Delete the product.



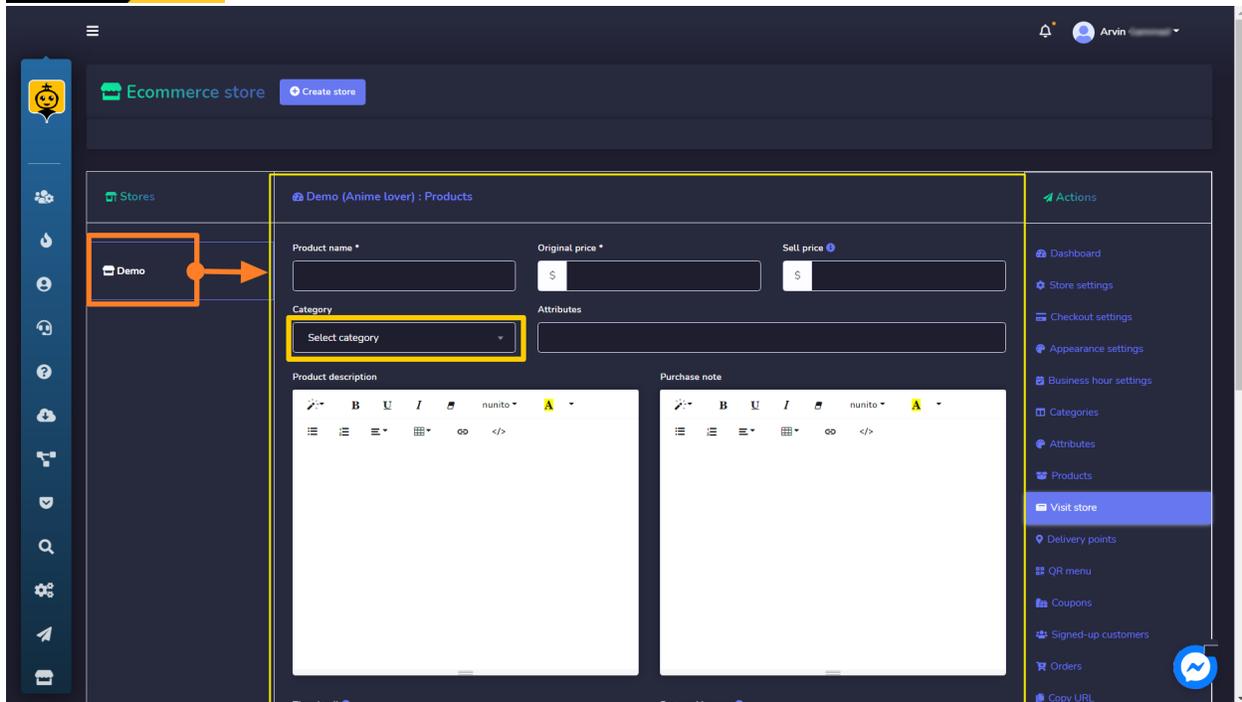
You can also add a new product to the database by following the steps given below:

1. Select  from products screen.

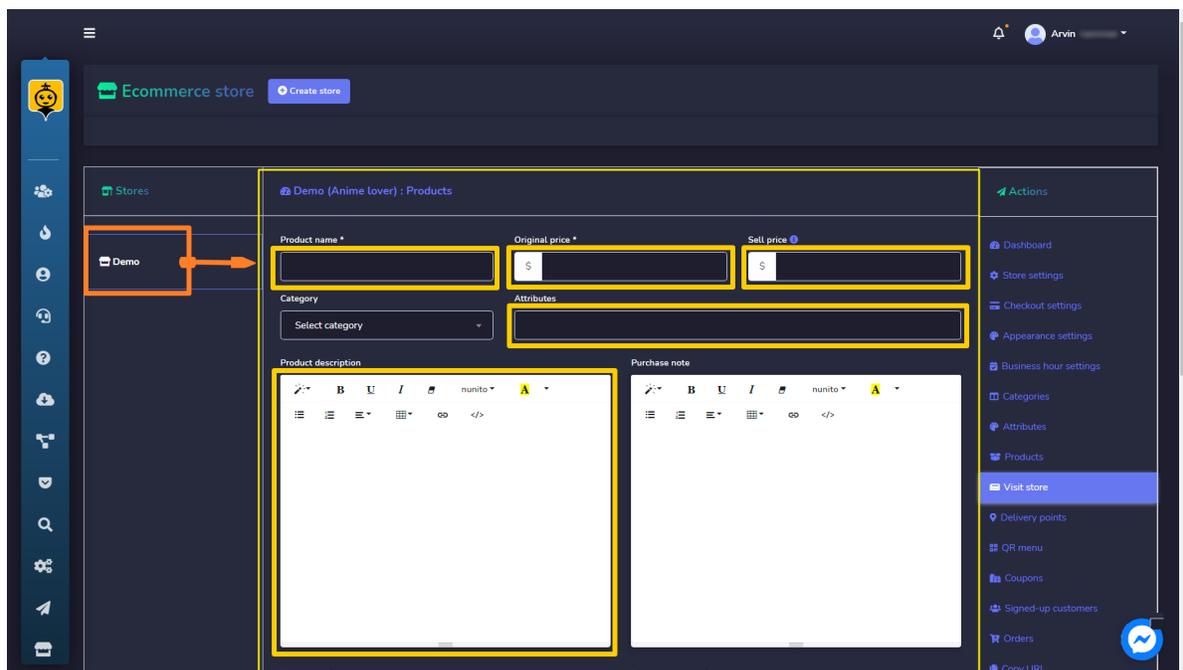


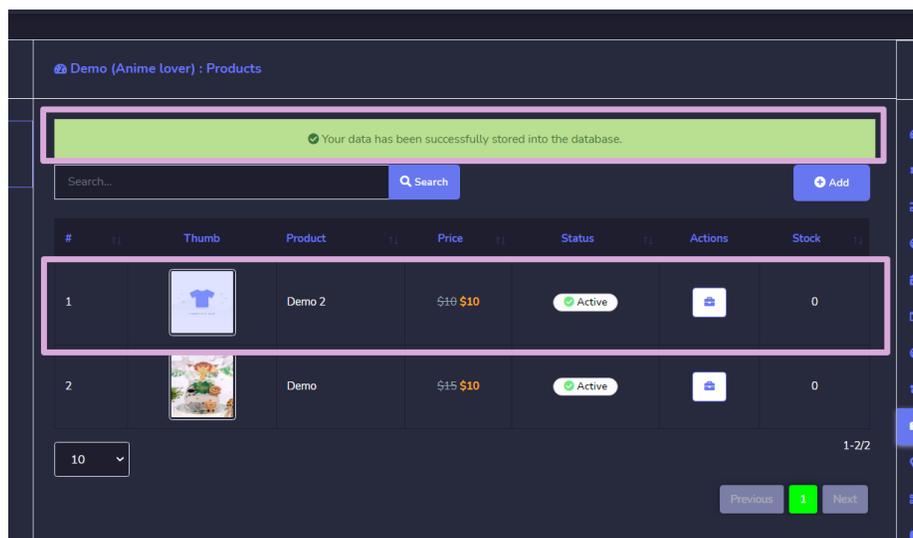
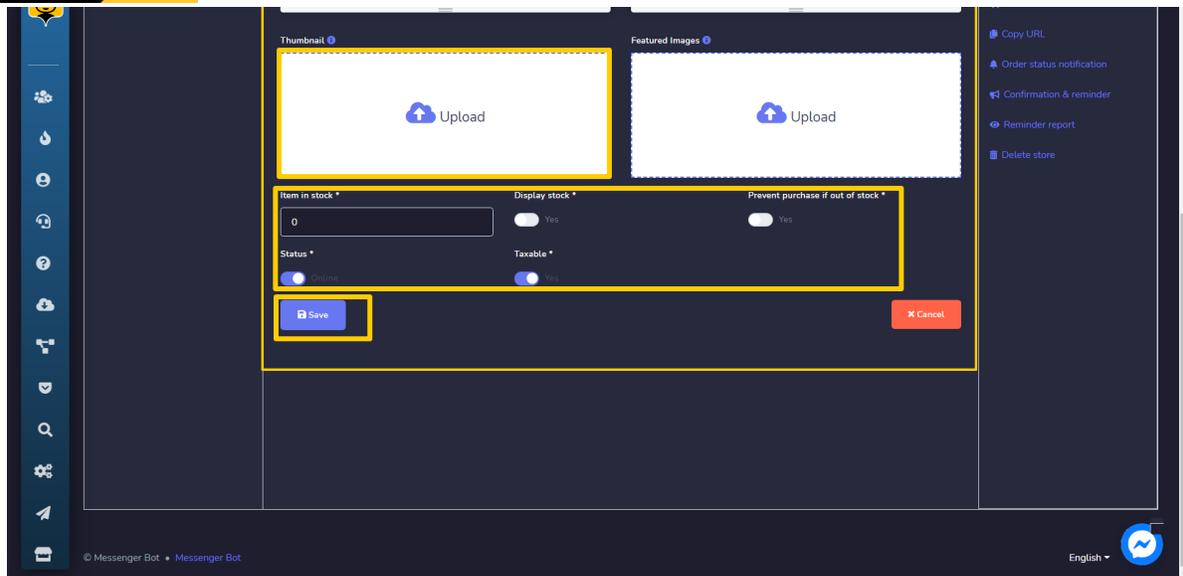
2. You need to select a **store** in which you want to add this product.
3. Select a **category** of the product.





4. Provide **product name** and **attributes**.
5. Add the **original price** and **sell price**.
6. Add a **description**, you can also add a **thumbnail**.
7. Select the **status** and tell whether the product is taxable or not.
8. Hit **Save**.



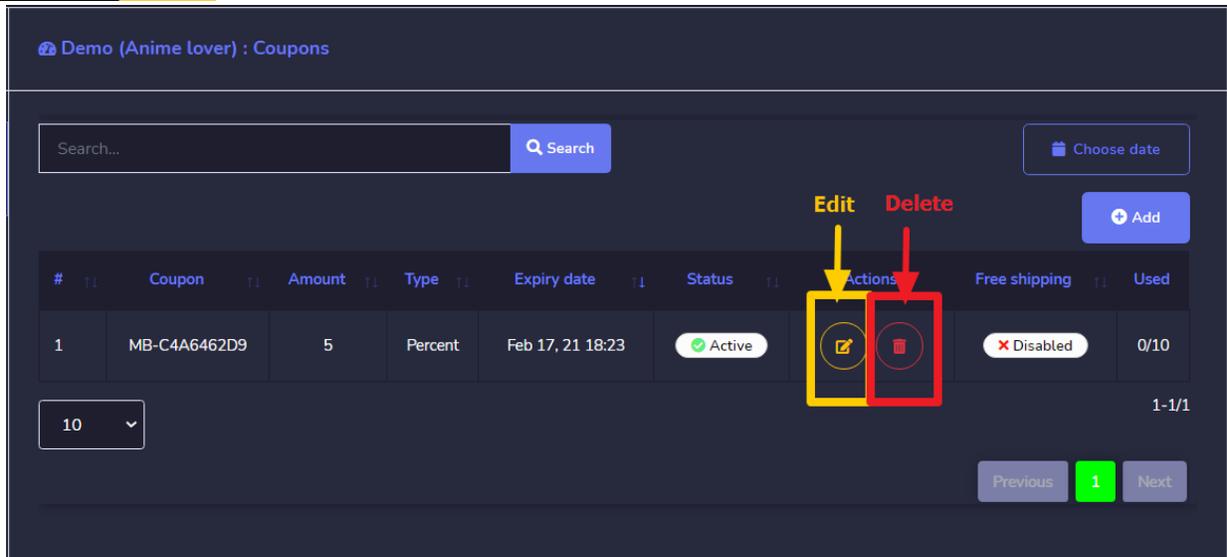


Coupons

The products option allows you to get access to all existing coupons. You can perform the following actions:

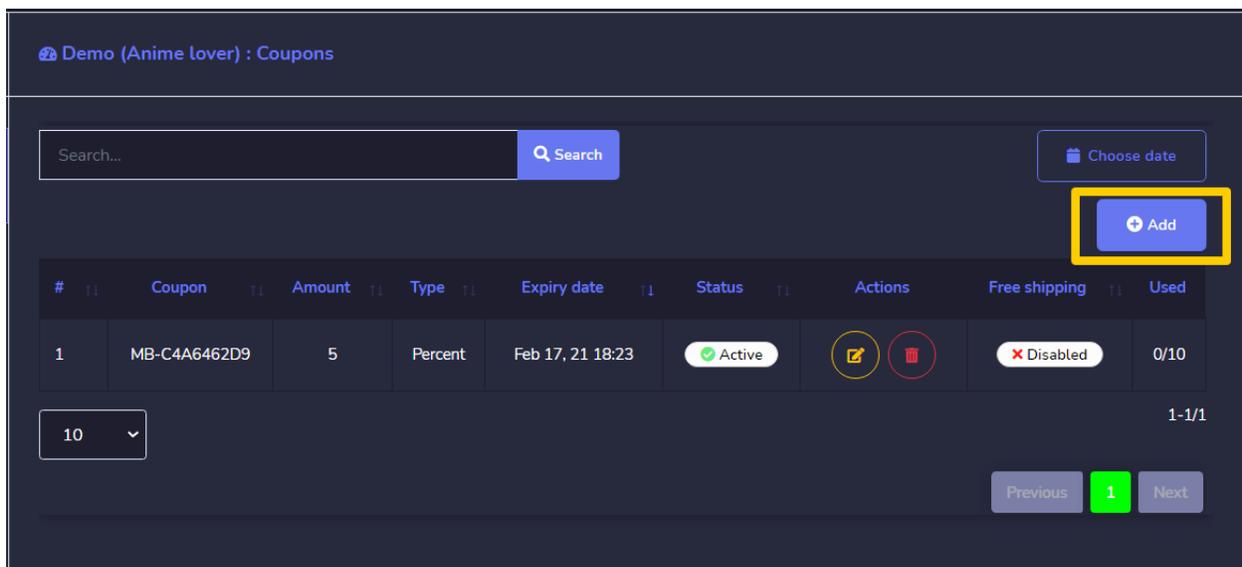
- **Edit the coupon** information
- **Delete the coupon**
- You can choose the **date range** for this view as well.





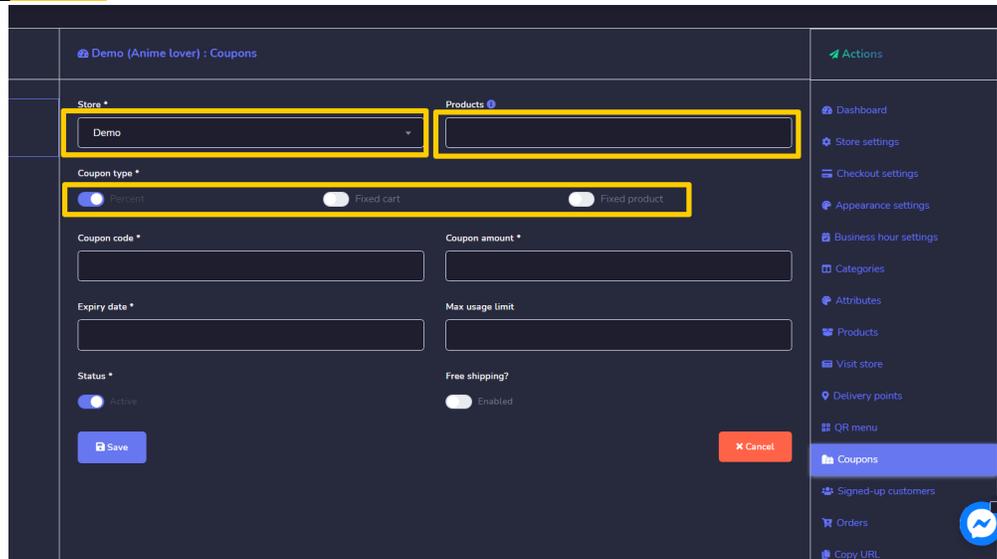
You can also add a new coupon to the database by following the steps given below:

1. Select  from products screen.

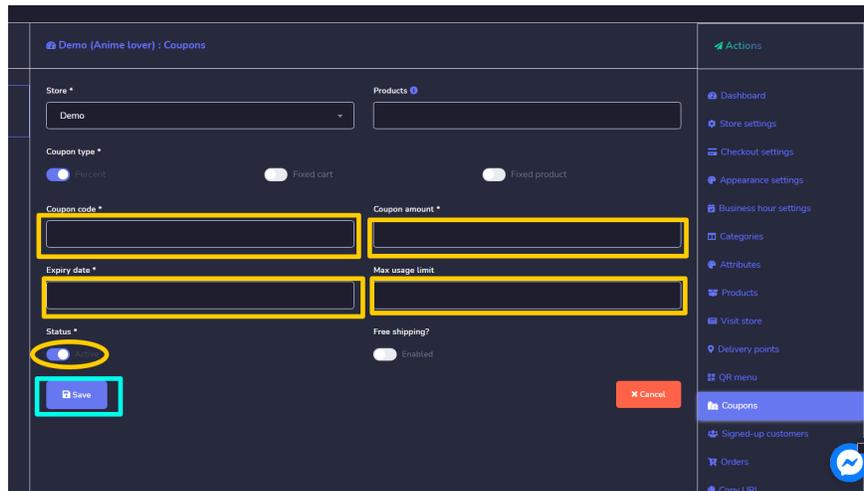


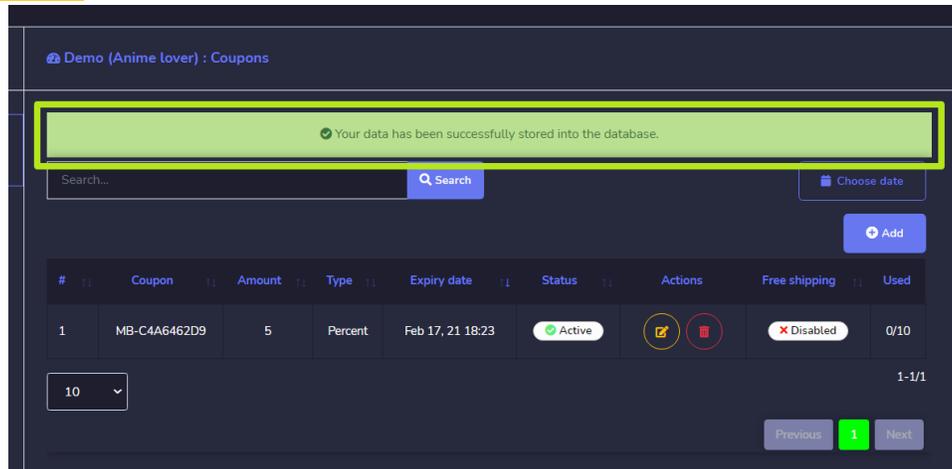
2. Select the **store** for which you want to add the coupon.
3. Choose the **product** for which you want to add the coupon.





4. Provide a **code** for your coupon.
5. Enter an **amount** for your coupon.
6. Provide an **Expiry date** and **maximum usage limit** for your coupon.
7. Select **Save**.

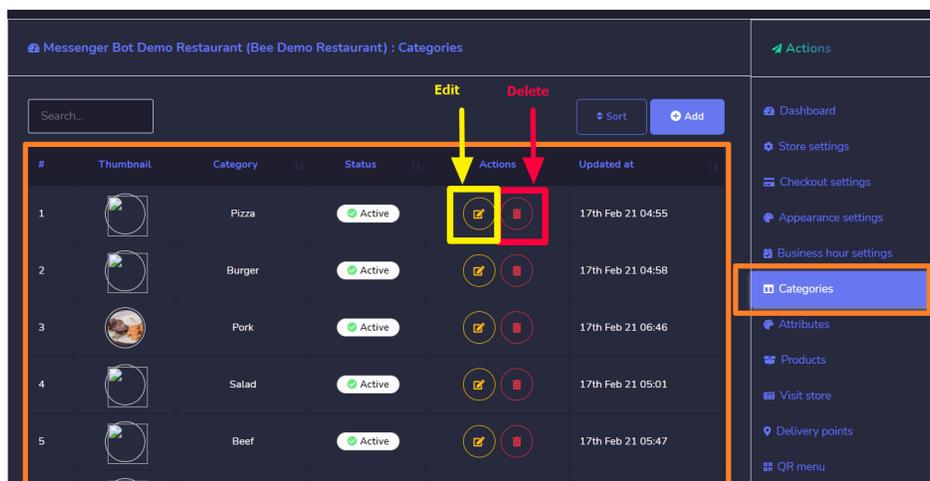




Categories

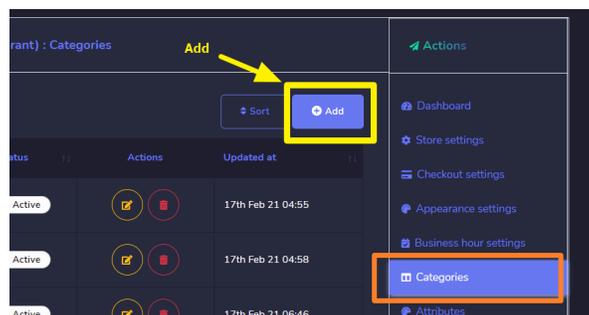
The categories for your stores appear in this section. You can perform the following actions:

- **Edit** the category
- **Delete** the category



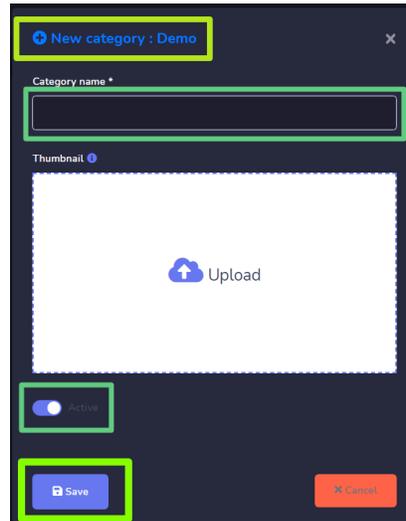
You can also add a new category in the database by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from top right of categories screen.





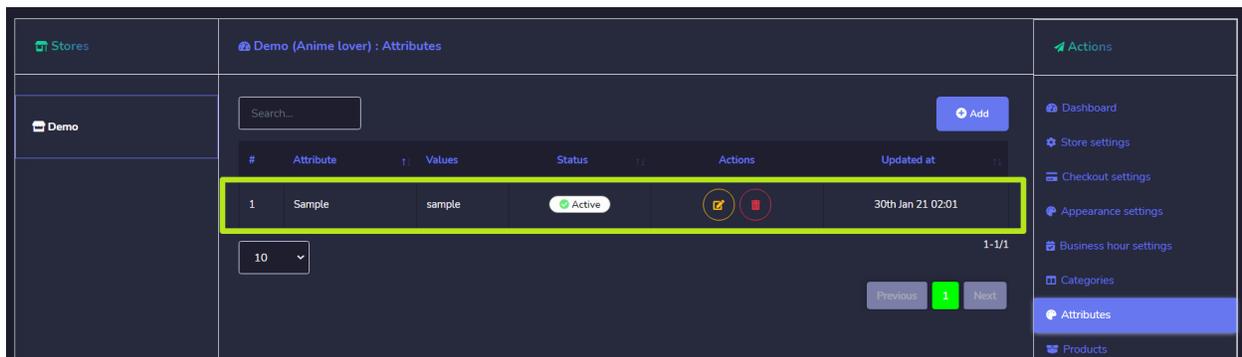
- 2) A new category window will appear.
- 3) Choose the **store** for which you want to create categories.
- 4) Choose the **name** for your category.
- 5) Select **Save**.



Attributes

The attributes for your stores appear in this section. You can perform the following actions:

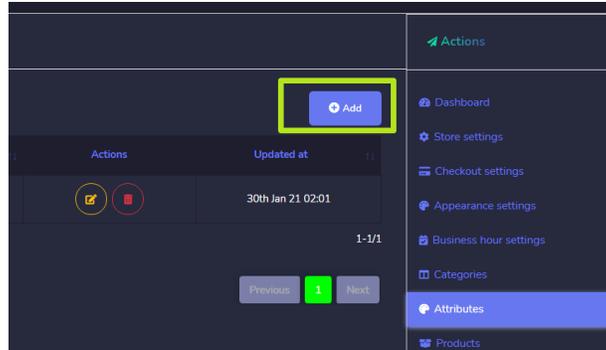
- **Edit an attribute**
- **Delete an attribute**



You can also add a new attribute in the database by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top right of the attributes screen.



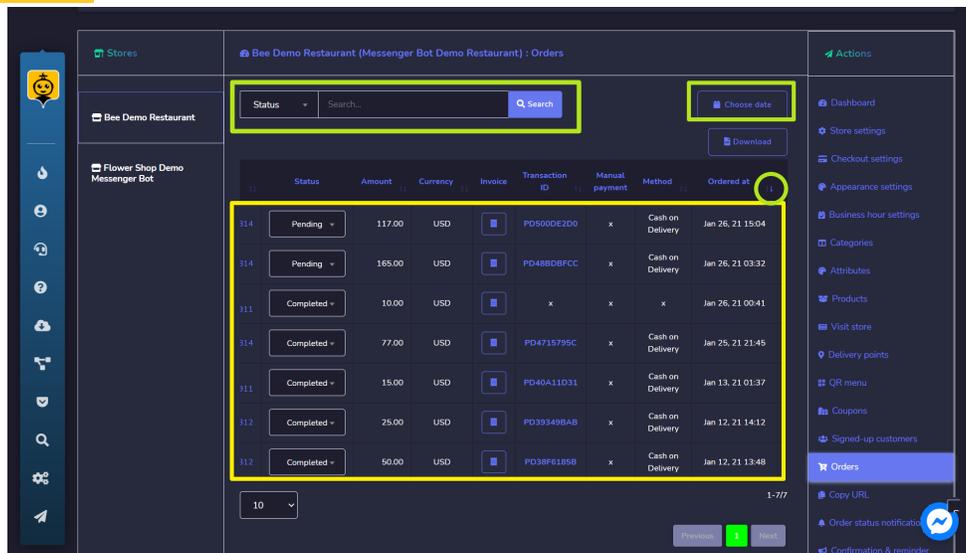


- 2) A new attribute window will appear.
- 3) Choose the **store** for which you want to create attributes.
- 4) Choose the **name** for your attributes.
- 5) Choose **attribute values** and separate them with commas.
- 6) Select **Save**.

Orders

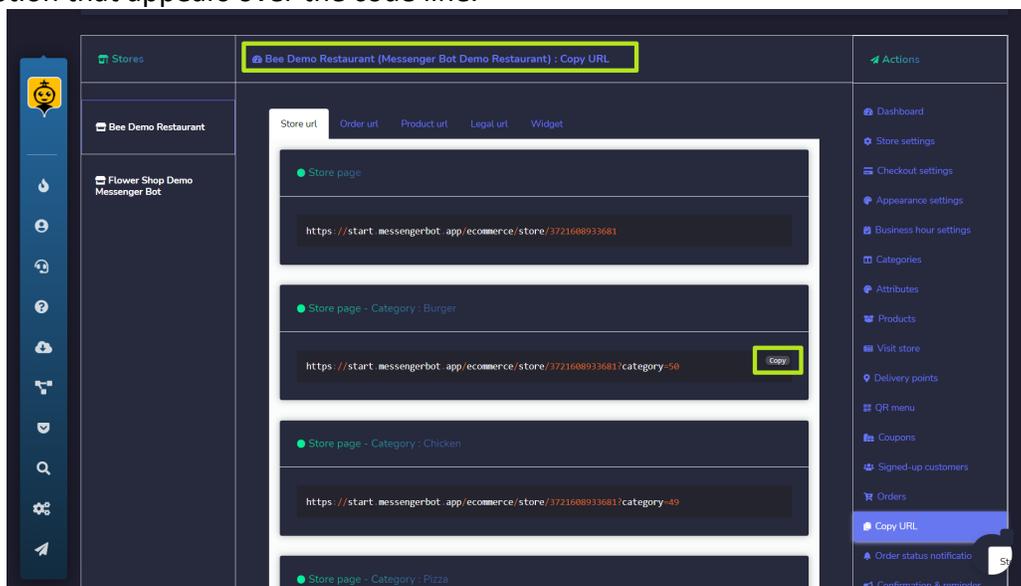
You can view the details of **all orders** from this screen. You can search for a particular order using the **search bar** or sort them **date wise** for **narrowed down search**. You can **arrange** them in any order by selecting the **arrows** in the header.





Copy URL

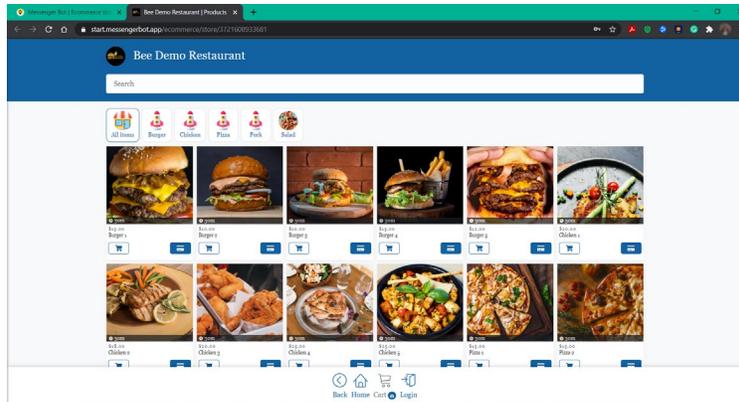
You can copy your store page, order, and product URL. Hover over the code, then select the Copy option that appears over the code line.



Visit Store

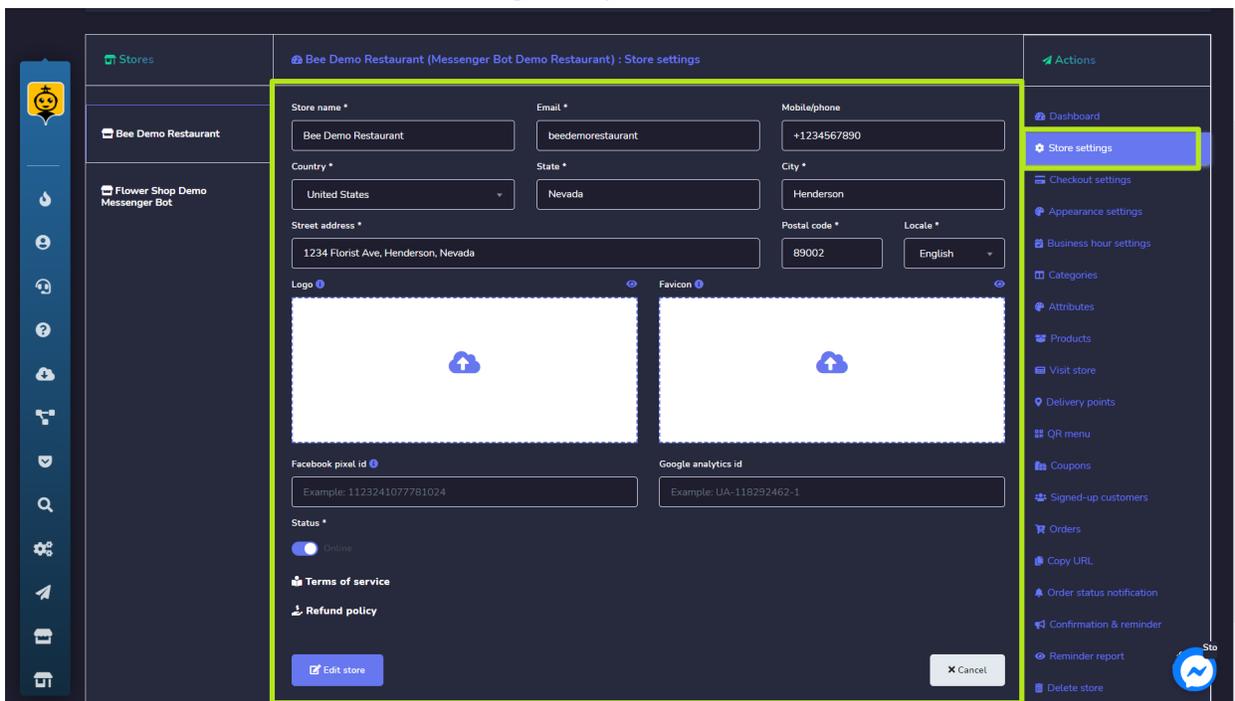
You can visit the store by selecting this option. It will redirect you to the store.





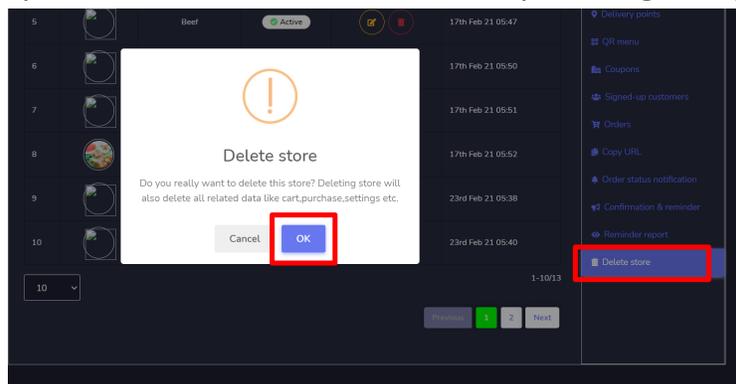
Store settings

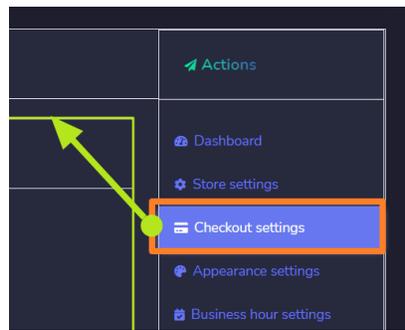
You can edit the store information using this option.



Delete store

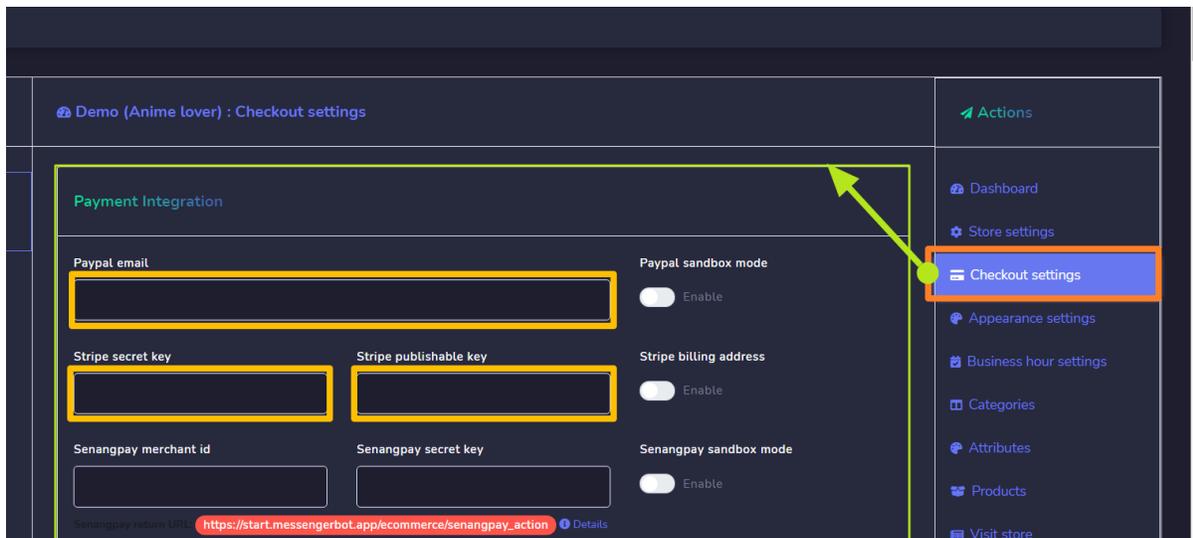
You can permanently delete the store from the database by selecting this option.





The payments section allows you to adjust the settings of all payment accounts. You need to follow the steps given below:

- 1) Provide the **PayPal email address**.
- 2) Enter a **stripe secret key**.
- 3) Enter a **stripe publishable key**. Note: You can also try to use the other mode of payment on Payment Integration



- 4) Select the **currency**, add your **tax and delivery charge**, modify your **delivery preference**, **login preference**, and **address preference**.



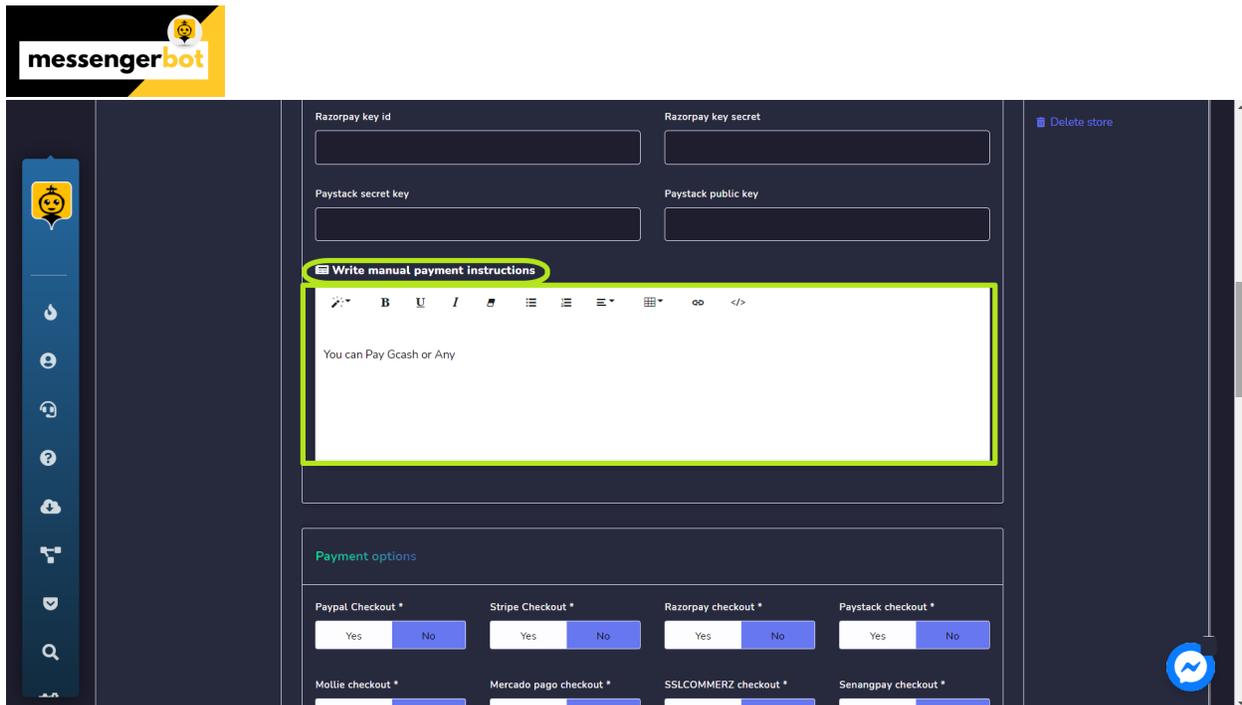
The screenshot displays the settings interface for a Messenger Bot, organized into several sections:

- Currency & Formatting:** Includes a dropdown menu for "Currency" set to "USD (Dollar) - PayPal & Stripe", and three toggle switches for "Right alignment", "Two decimal", and "Display comma", all of which are currently turned on.
- Tax & Delivery Charge:** Features two input fields: "Tax %" set to "0" and "Delivery charge" set to "0".
- Delivery Preference:** Contains two main sections: "Store Pickup" and "Home Delivery", each with an "Enable" toggle. Below these are "Preparation time" (set to "30" minutes) and "Scheduled order" (set to "Any").
- Login Preference:** Includes a "Guest purchase" toggle which is currently enabled.
- Address Preference:** Lists several fields with "Enable" toggles: "Checkout country", "Checkout state", "Checkout city", "Checkout zip", "Checkout email", "Checkout phone", and "Delivery note".

A "Save" button is located at the bottom of the settings panel. The interface also features a vertical sidebar on the left with various navigation icons and a Messenger logo in the bottom right corner.

5) You can also provide **Manual payments instructions** in the field available.

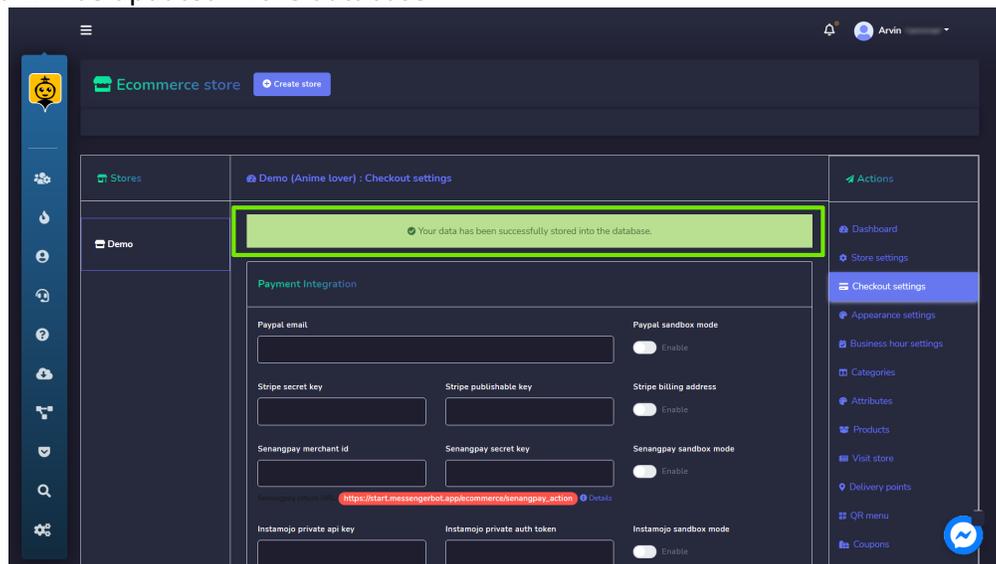




6) Select **Save** to make changes.



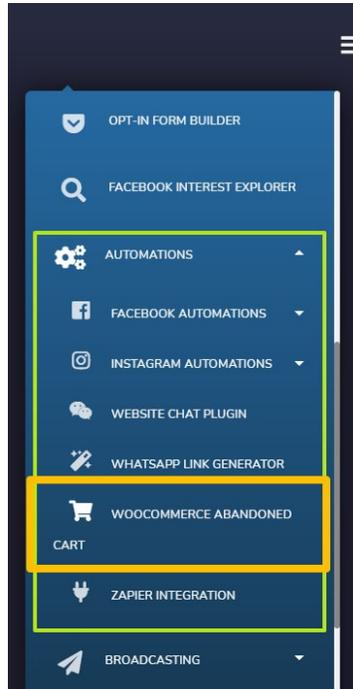
Your data will be updated in the database.



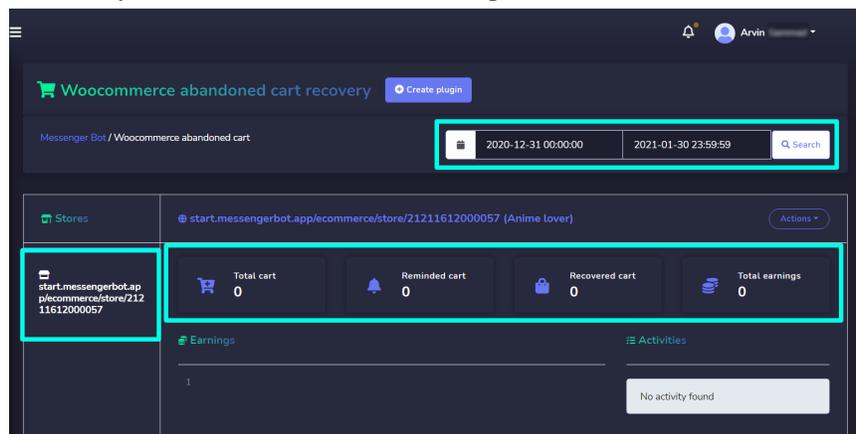


Woocommerce abandoned cart

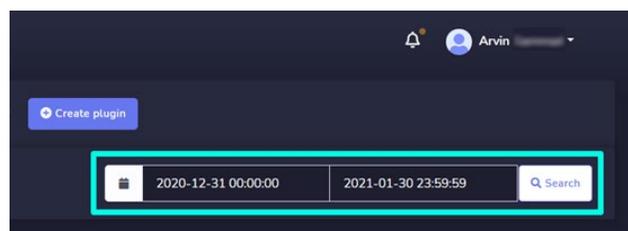
To access the **Woocommerce abandoned cart** section, select it under the Automations tab on the navigation menu as shown below.



Woocommerce abandoned cart section allows you to view the existing carts dashboard. View different carts summary and see all available earnings.

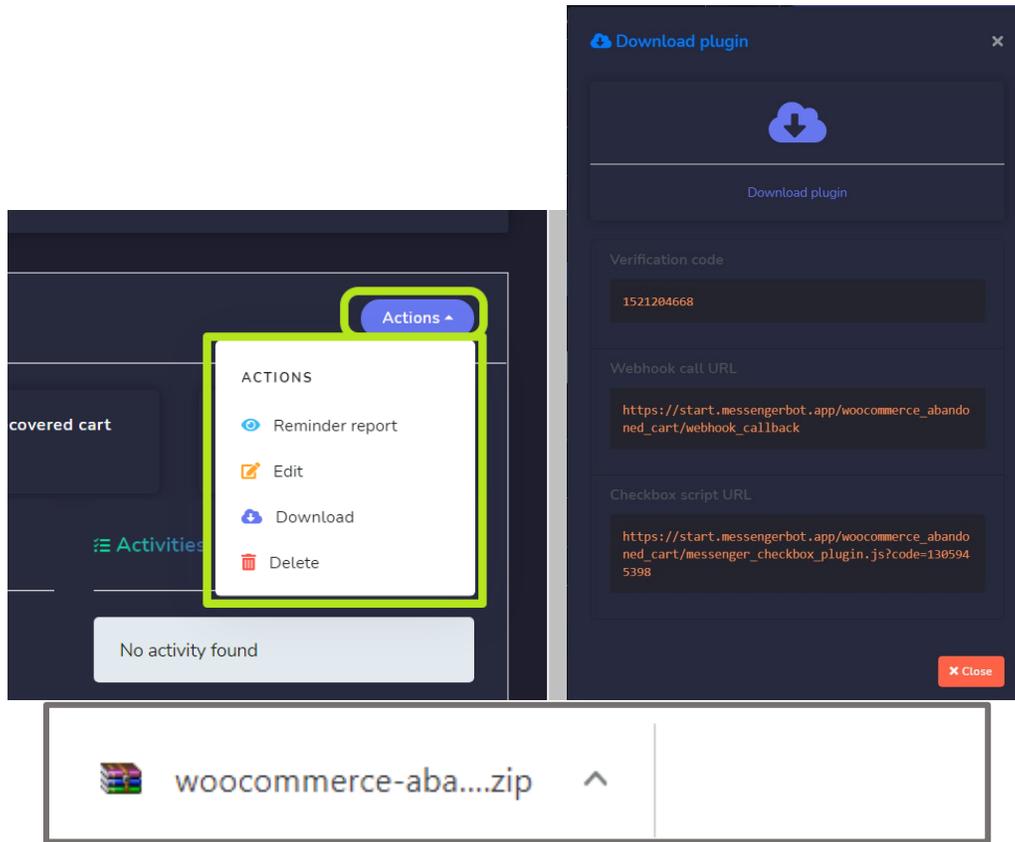


- You can simply apply **date filters** to track down the narrowed search.

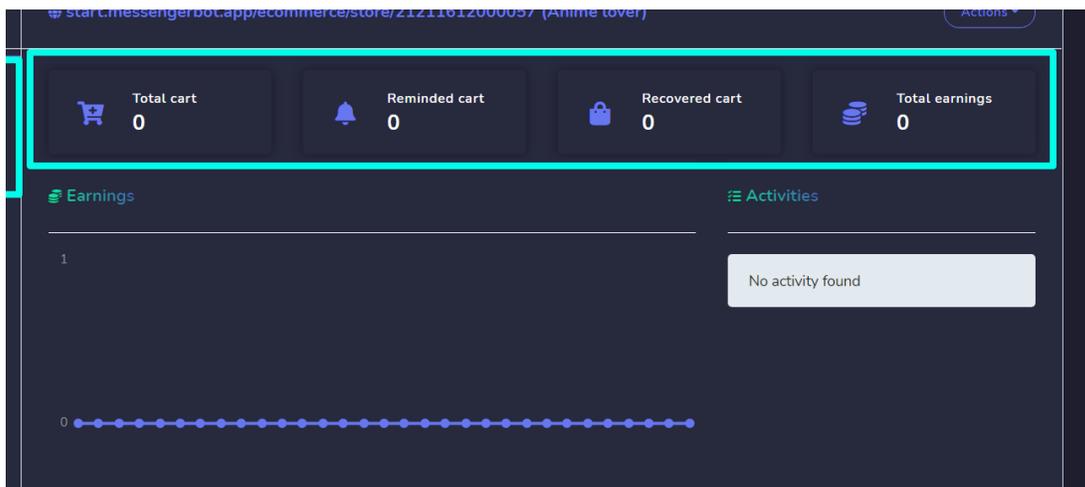




- You can perform actions from **Action** button like view **Reminder Report**, **Edit**, **Download** the report or **Delete** the report.



- The dashboard allows you to view **Total**, **Reminded**, and **Recovered** carts.
- It allows you to view the **Earnings**.





Create plugin

- 1) Select **Create plugin** from the top right of the screen.
- 2) In the **Checkbox OPT-IN** section, select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin.
- 3) Enter the **site URL**.
- 4) Select the **language**.
- 5) Add **Reference**.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a Messenger Bot plugin. The main heading is "Add woocommerce abandoned cart plugin". The interface is divided into two main sections: "Checkbox OPT-IN" and "Reminder message".

Checkbox OPT-IN section:

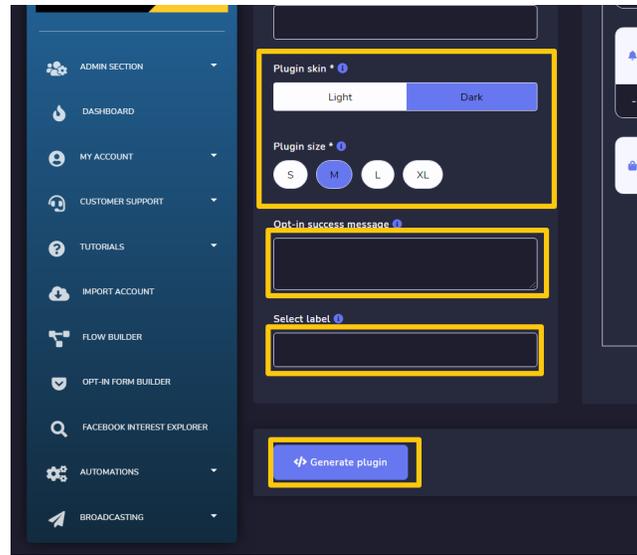
- Select page:** A dropdown menu with "Select page" selected.
- WooCommerce site URL:** A text input field containing "https://example.com".
- Language:** A dropdown menu with "English (US)" selected.
- Reference:** An empty text input field.
- Plugin skin:** A toggle switch between "Light" and "Dark", with "Dark" selected.
- Plugin size:** Four radio buttons labeled "S", "M", "L", and "XL", with "M" selected.
- Opt-in success message:** A text input field at the bottom.

Reminder message section:

- Channels:** "Messenger", "Sms", and "Email" are listed, with "Messenger" selected.
- Messenger content:** A preview of the message content, including a greeting "Hi {{last_name}}, have you forgot something special?", a photo of a person's hands, and a "Cart item title" section with "Quantity & price" and "example.com".
- Reminders:** Three reminder slots are shown. The first is "Messenger reminder #1" with a "After 1 hour" delay. The second and third are "Messenger reminder #2" and "Messenger reminder #3", both with "--Do not send--" selected.
- Confirmation:** A "Messenger checkout confirmation" button is visible at the bottom.

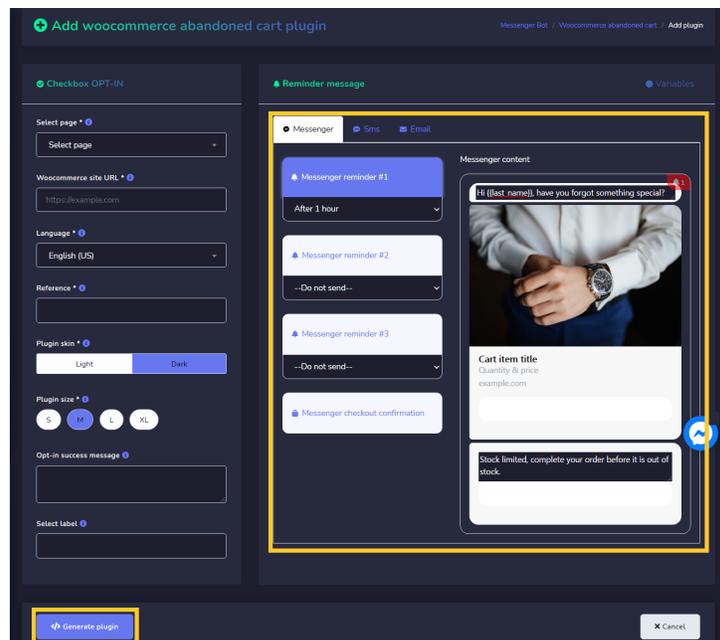
- 6) Provide the size of the **plugin and skin**.
- 7) Provide the **Opt-in success message**.
- 8) Select a **label**.

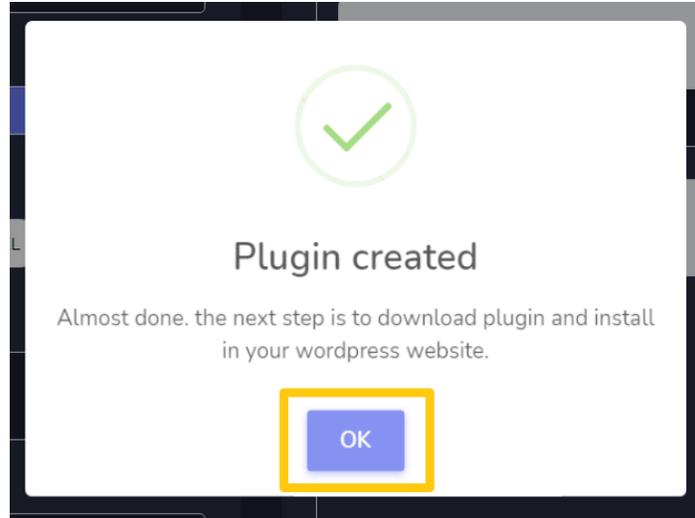




9) Adjust all settings in the **Reminder message** section based on your requirements.

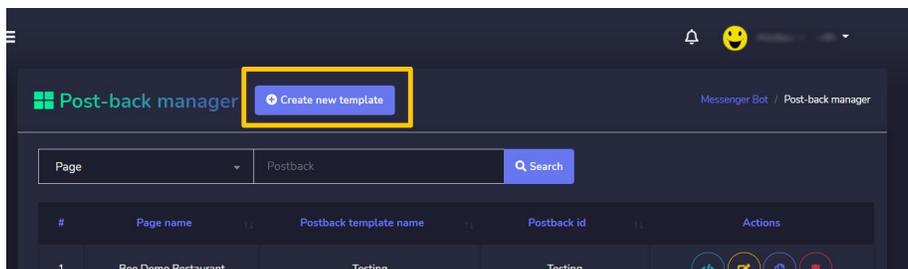
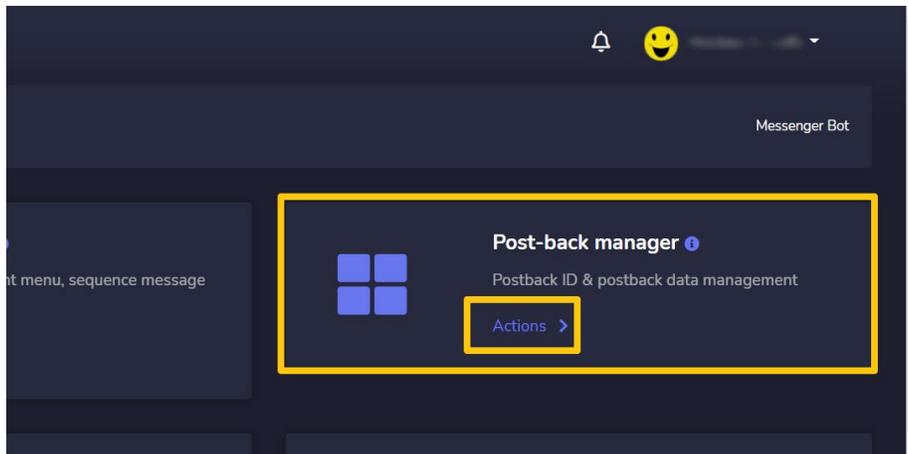
10) Select **Generate plugin**.

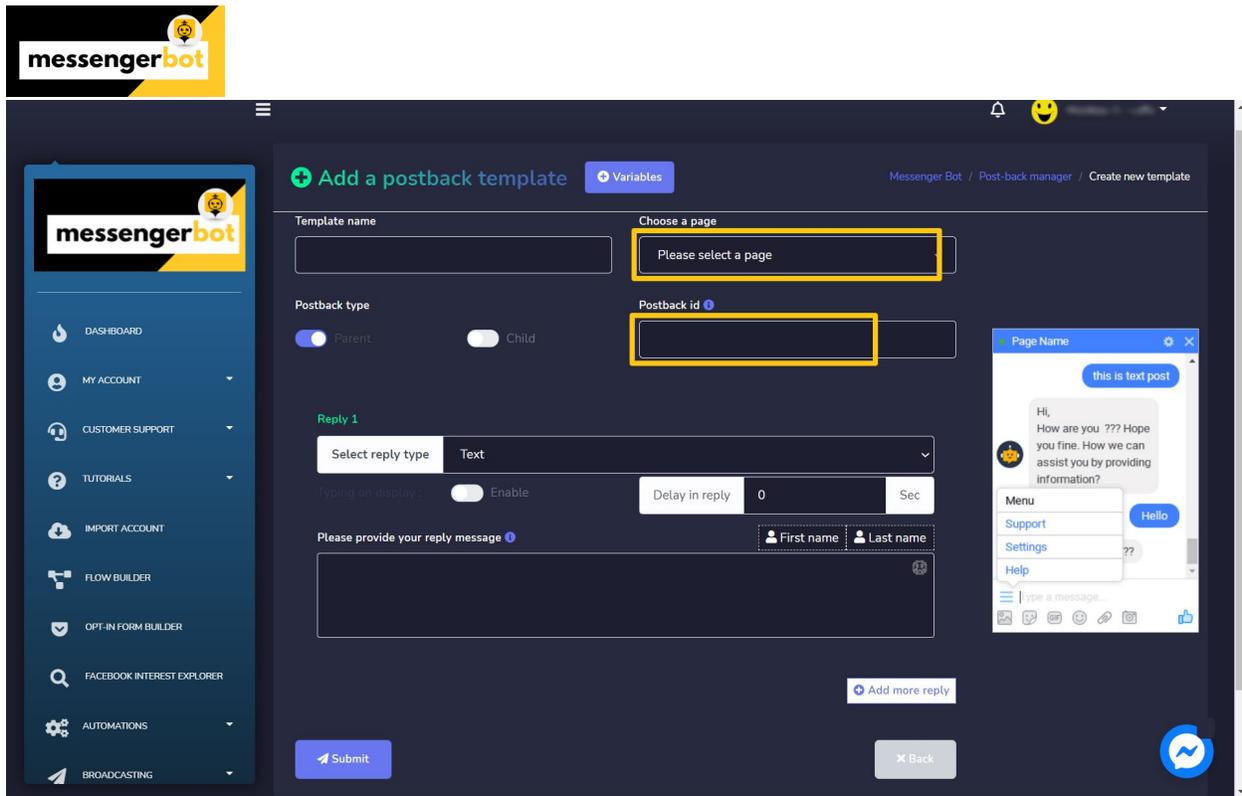




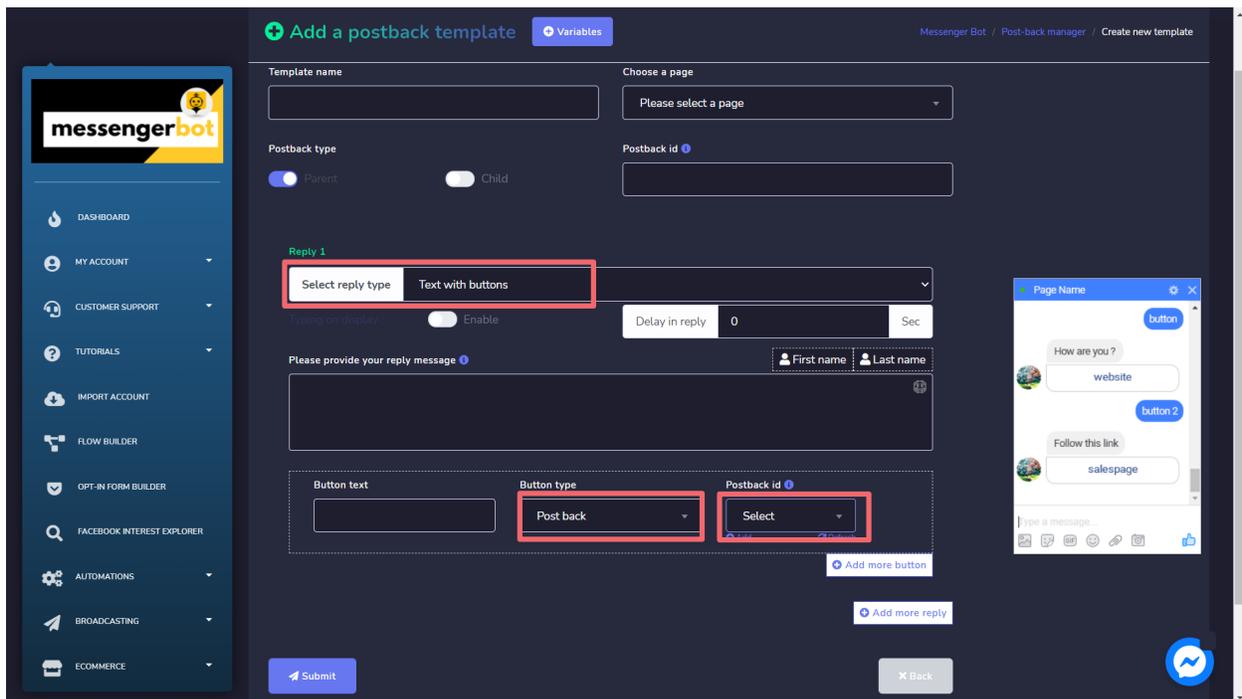
Assign Email SMS Sequence Campaign with Postback Click

To assign **Email/SMS sequence campaign with postback click**, go to **Messenger Bot -> Postback Manager**, click on Add new template and create Postback template with sequence campaigns.



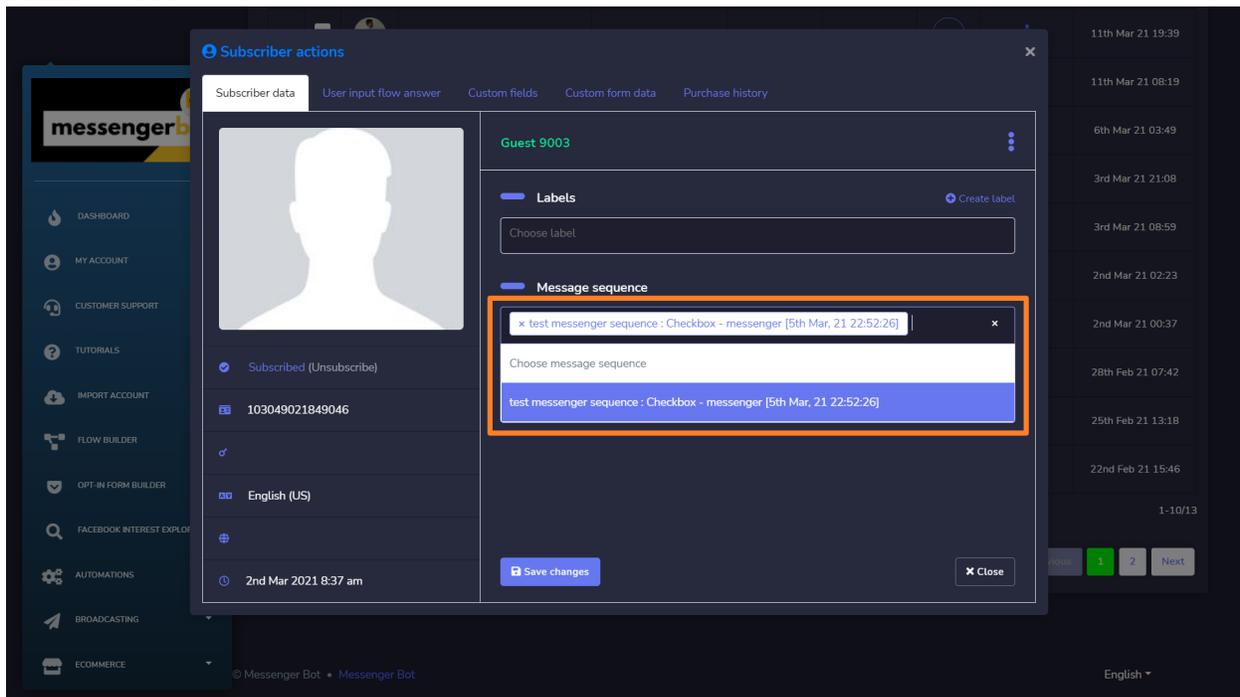


Now go to **Messenger Bot -> Bot Settings -> Bot Reply Settings** and click on **Add bot reply** button. Set a Bot reply with postback Id which created with Sequence campaigns (you can also add postback template from here by click on add link in bot reply settings form). Now whenever your subscribers click on this postback button inside messenger, they will assign to the sequence automatically.





After this, you can check this at **Subscriber Manager -> Bot Subscribers -> Subscribers Action** section modal.



Send Promotional Message Using One Time Notifications For Facebook Messenger What is One Time Notification (OTN)?

As you know Facebook Messenger Platform doesn't allow to send message after 24 hours of last interaction by any subscriber.

Once any subscriber interacts with your Messenger, you have 24 hour time to send promotional message as many as you want (Don't spam).

After 24 hours, you are not allowed to send any message (Except using some specific tag only for non promotional message.)

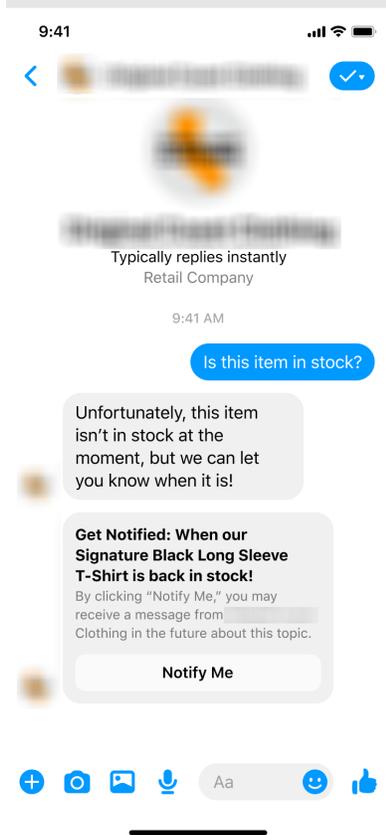
Here One Time Notification API is provided by Facebook to send promotional message after 24 hours window.



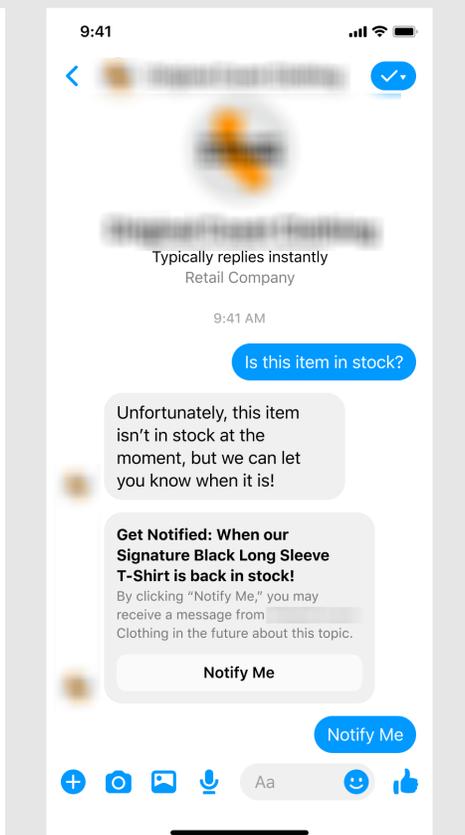
Source : <https://developers.facebook.com/docs/messenger-platform/send-messages/one-time-notification>

The Messenger Platform's One-Time Notification API (Beta) allows a page to request a user to send one follow-up message after 24-hour messaging window have ended. The user will be offered to receive a future notification. Once the user asks to be notified, the page will receive a token which is an equivalent to a permission to send a single message to the user. The token can only be used once and will expire within 1 year of creation

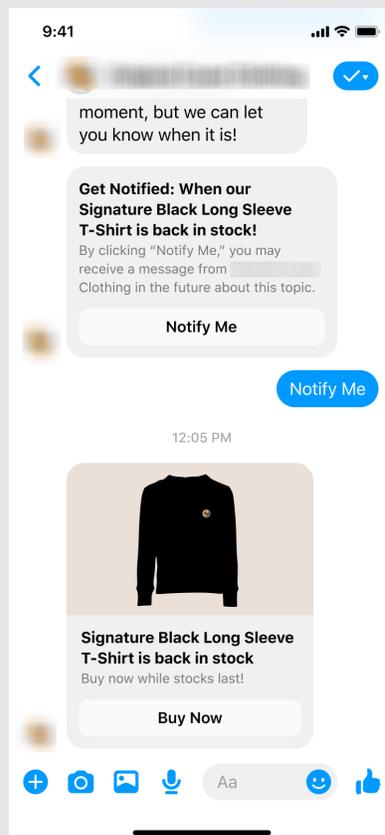
1. Page sends the one-time notification template to user



2. User asks to be notified in the future



3. Page uses the token received in step 2 and sends the reminder message



Why it's so important ?

After deprecated sending message after 24 hours, OTN is the only option to send promotional message now.

OTN message sending is happened in two steps. First you will need to set bot that asked for permission to send future promo message regarding any specific offer.

Later, you will be able to broadcast message to those people, have given permission for sending





message.

So, asking this permission & Opt-in by subscribers are super easy. Users just need a click to get subscribed for it.

And that's guaranteed & fully proved that Messenger has almost 95%+ open rate. So it's hundred times better than sending email broadcast.

Just imagine, if you have 500 users subscribed for Black Friday offer or any other promotional campaign, once you broadcast them, almost 450+ people will open it.

How to use One Time Notification Features in Messenger Bot.App?

First, you will need to apply for One Time Notification Access from Facebook Pages. It's just a click easy.

[How to set up Payment Settings in Messenger Bot](#)

We know that E-commerce is the backbone to build business worldwide. By the way, Alongside all-powerful features of Messenger Bot has integrated today world's most powerful E-commerce platform to make your business more flexible.

To complete this process you must have payment accounts to get payment from your buyers. So this is for helping to set up Payment system for E-commerce. Payment settings is global for one account, that means all store of the same account will use same payment system. Messenger Bot provides multiple payment gateway support for Ecommerce platform including Paypal , Stripe, Razorpay, Paystack , Mollie , Manual Payment & Cash on Delivery option.

Go to **Messenger Bot -> Messenger e-commerce store -> Payment Accounts** section



messengerbot

Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

- System >
- Subscription >

COMMENT FEATURE

- Comment Automation >

MESSENGER TOOLS

- Subscriber Manager
- Messenger Bot**
- Broadcasting

JSON API Connector
Connect bot data with 3rd party apps
Actions >

Webform builder
Custom data collection form for messenger bot
Actions >

Email auto responder
Add Mailchimp API & pull list
Actions >

Woocommerce abandoned cart
Track cart/checkout, recover abandoned cart...
Actions >

Messenger e-commerce store
Complete e-commerce platform inside messenger
Actions >

- Stores
- Payment Accounts**

English ▾

Here you'll see the Payment accounts form.





Razorpay Key ID & key secret: If you want to integrate Razorpay payment method then you've to put your razorpay key id and secret key. Visit [Razorpay](#) and go to **Settings > API Keys** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.

The screenshot shows the Razorpay dashboard interface. On the left, a dark sidebar contains various navigation options, with 'Settings' at the bottom highlighted by a red box. The main content area has a top navigation bar with 'API Keys' highlighted. Below this, a yellow banner indicates 'You are in Test Mode'. A table displays API key information:

Key Id	Created At	Expiry	Action
rkp_test_5aHQ3A1LW3B4Nw	Jul 22nd, 2020 02:09:52 PM	Never	Regenerate Test Key

Paystack Secret Key & public key: If you want to integrate paystack payment method then you've to put your paystack secret key and public key. Visit Paystack and go to **Settings > API Keys & Webhooks** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.

The screenshot shows the Paystack dashboard. The left sidebar has 'Settings' highlighted with a red box. The main area shows 'API Configuration - Test Mode' with a warning: 'These keys are for testing only. Please DO NOT use them in production.' The form contains the following fields:

- Test Secret Key: [Copy](#)
- Test Public Key: [Copy](#)
- Test Callback URL:
- Test Webhook URL:

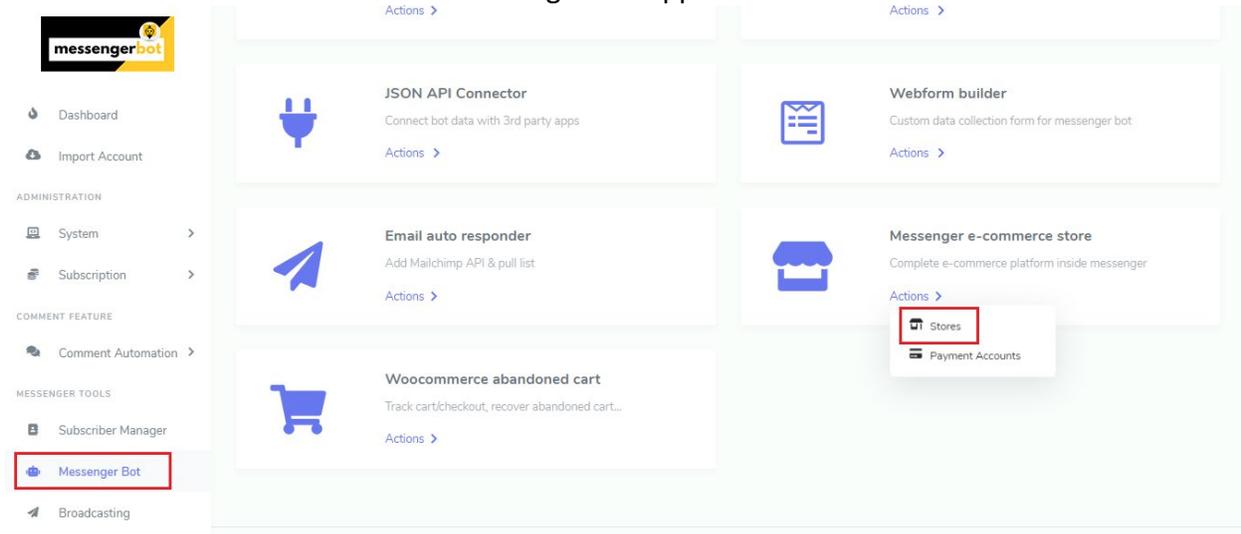
Mollie API Key: If you want to integrate the Mollie payment method then you've to put your Mollie API key. Visit Mollie and go to **Settings > API Keys & Webhooks** and copy your key id and key secret and paste into the corresponding field.



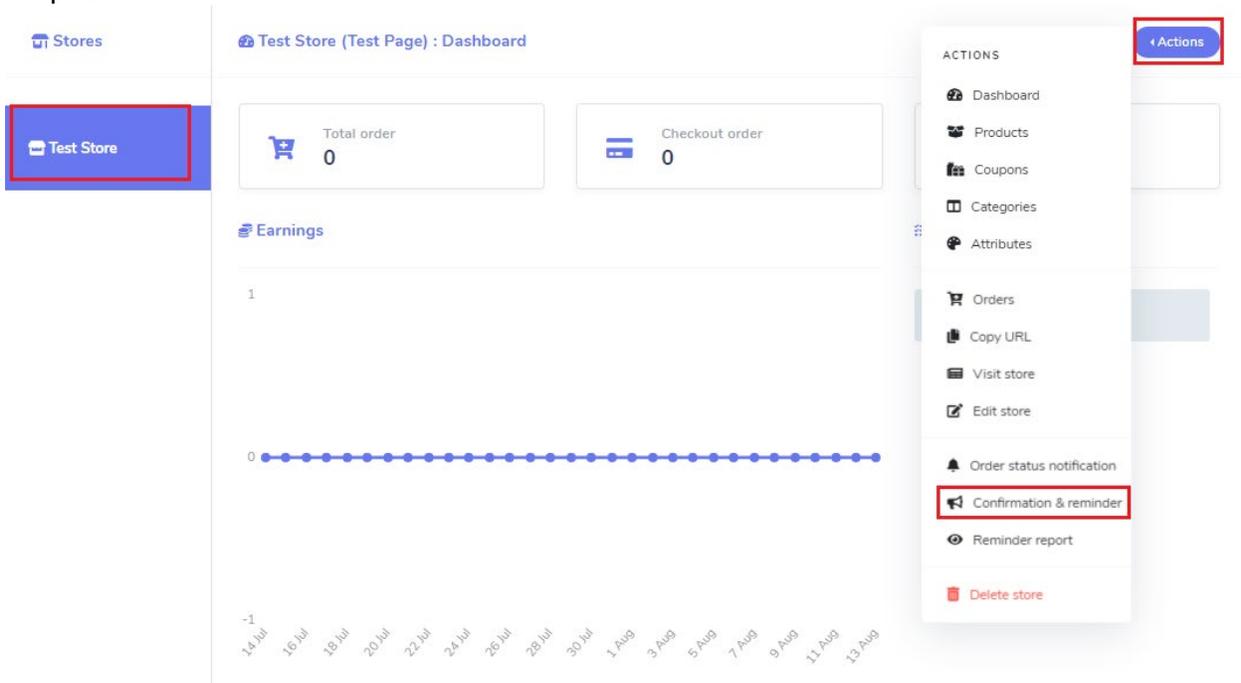


Platform which you already know. So in this blog, I'll write about how you can send a reminder message to your customers who added their desired products into the cart but forgot to check out. So I'm not going more details on E-commerce, moving to the blog on how you can do that, let's start.

>>> First of all go to your e-commerce store by visiting **Messenger Bot > Messenger E-commerce Store > Store** menu of Messenger Bot application.



>>> Now click on **Actions** and then click on **Confirmation & Reminder** menu from the dropdown.



>>> A form will appear for reminder message settings with three reminder options messenger,





sms and email. You can send your clients reminder as SMS or email if they have phone number or email address inside Messenger Bot.

>>> From left-sided section of the form, you can update the reminder text and also you can use variables inside your message, system will send the value for corresponding variables.

The screenshot shows the configuration interface for a Messenger Bot. The top navigation bar includes 'Stores' and 'Test Store (Test Page) : Confirmation & abandoned cart reminder'. A sidebar on the left has 'Test Store' selected. The main content area is titled 'Variables' and has a red box and arrow pointing to it. Below this, there are tabs for 'Messenger', 'Sms', and 'Email'. The 'Messenger' tab is active, showing a preview of the message content. The preview includes a congratulatory message with a variable {{last_name}}, an order confirmation section with a placeholder image, 'Cart item title', 'Price : XX', 'Qty : XX', 'Paid with Payment method', 'Deliver to Delivery address...', and a total amount of '\$xx.xx'. Below the preview is a 'MY ORDERS' button. To the right of the preview, there are three reminder settings: 'Messenger reminder #1' set to 'After 1 hour', 'Messenger reminder #2' set to '--Do not send--', and 'Messenger reminder #3' set to '--Do not send--'. A blue 'Checkout Messenger' button is also visible. At the bottom, there are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.



gratulations {{last_name}}!
Thanks for shopping
t choice. If you r
message here.

Messenger reminder #1



Variables

{{store_name}}

{{store_url}}

{{order_no}}

{{order_url}}

{{checkout_url}}

{{my_orders_url}}

{{last_name}}

{{first_name}}

{{email}}

{{mobile}}

OK

Cart it
Price : X
Qty : X

d with
yment method

iver to
livery address

al

u can see your o

M





Stores

Test Store (Test Page) : Confirmation & abandoned cart reminder

Actions

Test Store

Variables

Reset

Messenger Sms Email

SMS content

Thanks for shopping from our store. You made the right choice.
{{store_name}}

SMS reminder #1
--Do not send--

SMS sender

Select sender

SMS reminder #2
--Do not send--

SMS reminder #3
--Do not send--

Checkout sms

Save

Cancel



>>> And from the right-sided section of the form, You can send up to three reminders through messenger or sms or email. You can set the time after how many times you want to send the reminder to the customers.

>>> After set up your reminder message, when a customer adds products into the cart, but forget to checkout, system will send a reminder through messenger or sms or email according to your set up.

Messenger Bot User Input & Custom Fields

What is User Input Flow?

With user input flow you can ask a single or series of questions from users inside Messenger. Once users give any answer, then the next question will be sent if there any.

These answers will be saved in the database & also can be saved as custom fields. Custom fields





can be used as variables in Messenger reply.

What is Variable?

After you have saved a response in Custom Field, you can use it as a variable in your message reply to the subscriber.

How to use Variable?

To use the variable for Custom Field, write the variable surrounding by # like (#Custom Field#)

E-Commerce Product Review & Comment

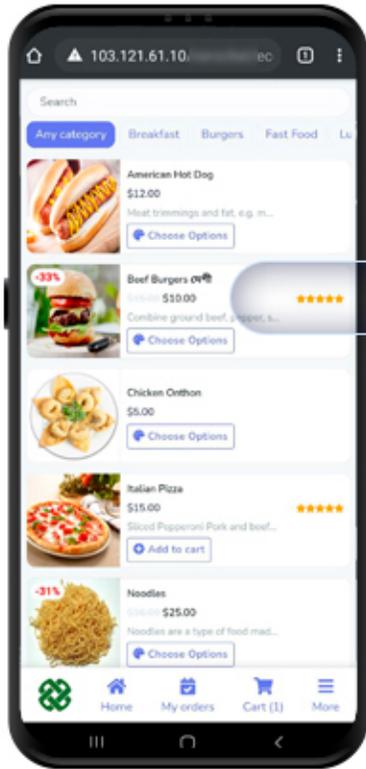
Our Messenger bot now comes up with a new E-commerce Product Review & Comment Add-on. This add-on has the following feature such as:

- Product comment & reply feature,
- Product rating and review feature,
- Messenger Bot notification to store admin on new comment/rating
- Store admin can hide comment/rating

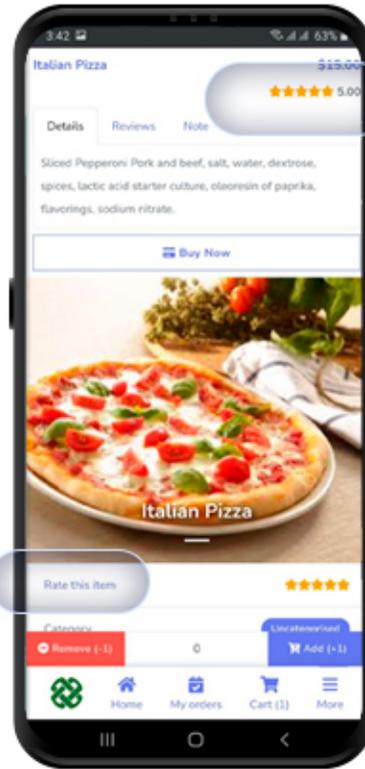
Once you enable e-commerce product review, rating, and comment features, you will have the same experience as the following examples:



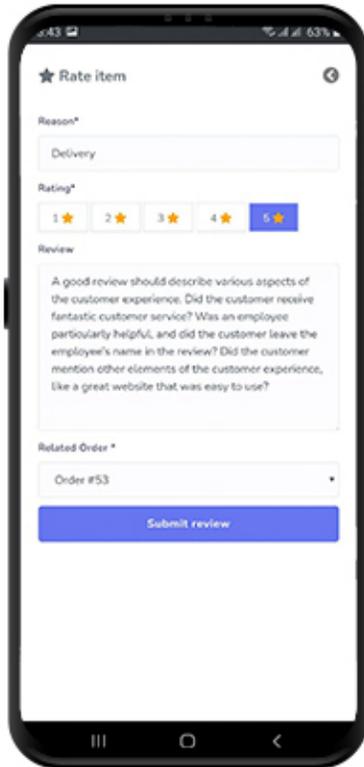
Product List with Review



Product Details View with Rating



Rate a Product



★ Rate item

Reason*

Delivery

Rating*

1 ★ 2 ★ 3 ★ 4 ★ 5 ★

Review

A good review should describe various aspects of the customer experience. Did the customer receive fantastic customer service? Was an employee particularly helpful, and did the customer leave the employee's name in the review? Did the customer mention other elements of the customer experience, like a great website that was easy to use?

Related Order *

Order #53

Submit review

Product Comment



Leave a comment

Write comment here

Comment

Comments

16 Nov 20 09:36 Reply

What does Lorem ipsum mean? Derived from Latin dolorem ipsum ("pain itself"), Lorem ipsum is filler text used by publishers and graphic designers used to ...

23 Nov 20 09:45

Thank you very much

16 Nov 20 09:34 Reply

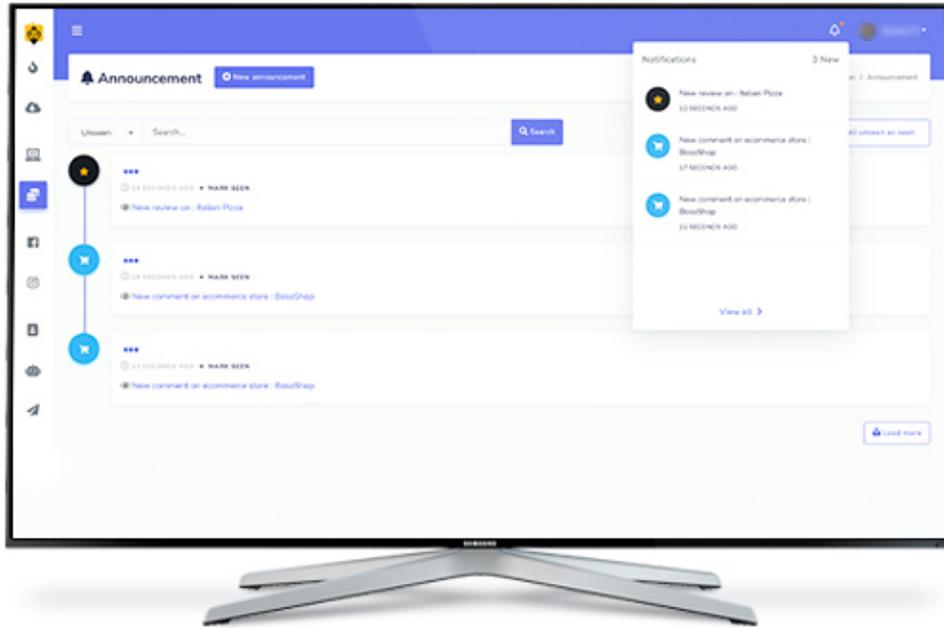
Lorem ipsum, or lipsum as it is sometimes known, is dummy text used in laying out print, graphic or web designs. The passage is attributed to an unknown typesetter in the 15th century who is thought to have scrambled parts of Cicero's De

Remove (-1) 0 Add (+1)

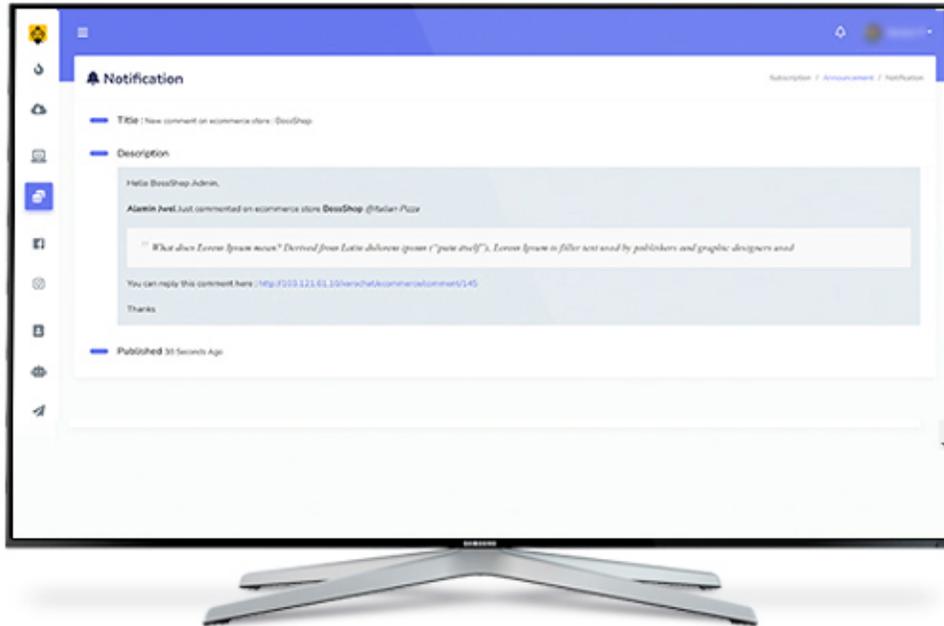
Home My orders Cart (1) More



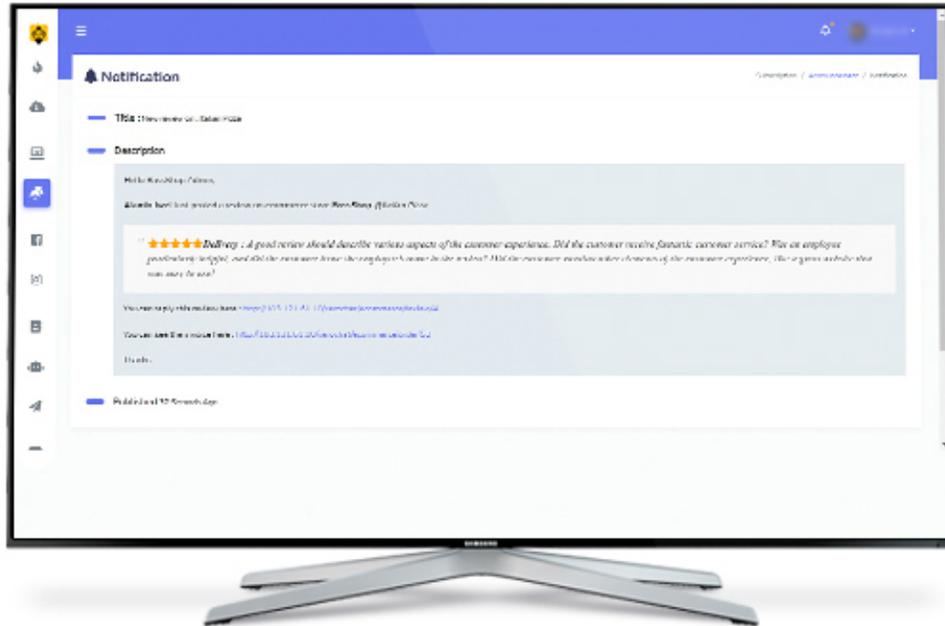
Admin Notification



Admin Notification (Comment)



Admin Notification (Review)



Messenger Bot WooCommerce Integration - JSON API

A complete steps on how to do WooCommerce Integration - JSON API on Messenger Bot.

IMPORT WC PRODUCTS

Go to Connect WooCommerce API menu. Put your Consumer key, Consumer Secret, WordPress Website home URL, and then click "Save & Sync Data"

It will automatically import all your WooCommerce store's product entries as well as related categories and attributes.





Connect Woocommerce API Woocommerce Integration / Connect Woocommerce API

Woocommerce API settings

Consumer key *

Consumer secret *

Website home URL *

Save & Sync Data Cancel

Successful integration will be listed like below :

Woocommerce Integration Connect Woocommerce API Woocommerce Integration

Store webview Products

<https://...net>

ck_e4e998a3884508b1634d8841e1a16at

cs_7e2e91767a395556b22031f79e8f5t

Dec 3, 20 12:05

Delete Update Copy URL Re-sync data

Clicking the "Store webview" button will bring up store webview page. Clicking the "Products" button will bring up imported products and the eye icon will show product single page.





Search

Any category Nature New Image's

OPTIMUM FOOD
OPTIMUM
aquarium food
\$200 \$120
Buy Now

WooCommerce Integration - JSON API
Je m'appelle Angélica Summer,...
\$45 \$28
Buy Now

SOBO 320F
Sobo320f Power filter
\$300 \$280
AC 220-240V, 50/60Hz, Power: ...
Buy Now

\$1 - \$3
真守兒野覺每件威都岡...
Buy Now

Sobo320f Power filter \$300 \$280

Details

- AC 220-240V, 50/60Hz, Power: 5W, F. Max: 500L/H
- The Filter Sponge Absorbs Dirt And Clears The Water
- Fully Submersible And Ideal For Any Aquarium Filtration
- Made Of Premium Materials And Has A Beautiful Design

Buy Now



Sobo320f Power filter

Category Uncategorized

messengerbot

Products

Search...

Export to Ecommerce

#	Thumb	Product	Price	Actions	Updated at
1		aquarium food	\$200 \$120		Dec 3, 20 12:05
2			\$45 \$28		Dec 3, 20 12:05
3		Sobo320f Power filter	\$300 \$280		Dec 3, 20 12:05
4			\$1 - \$3		Dec 3, 20 12:05

10

1-4/4

English

You can create bot with imported WC products using the webview feature. You can copy URLs by clicking the "Copy URL" button





Copy URL

Store url | **Product url**

● Store page

`http://.../woocommerce_integration/store/54`

● Store page - Category : Nature

`http://.../woocommerce_integration/store/54?category=19`

EXPORT WC PRODUCTS TO ECOMMERCE

From the product list page you can select and export WC products to ECommerce with just one click. As Ecommerce does not support multiple categories yet, exporting will take only the first WC category for each category. Also exported products may set the price to Zero due to WC product variation. You need to edit those products and fix them manually.

Products

#	Thumb	Actions	Updated at
1			Dec 3, 20 12:05
2			Dec 3, 20 12:05
3			Dec 3, 20 12:05

Export to Ecommerce

Select Ecommerce store

Export

Google My Business Integration

Location Manager

Business in Multiple Locations

- You are able to maintain your business to multiple locations
- You are able to maintain multiple business' information
- You are able to switch between businesses at one click





In this section, you can manage your multiple business location. There are some list that you can manage easily using location manager:

1. Review reply settings
2. Review list
3. Post list
4. Questions & Ans

Location Information Location Manager

Location list

- Review reply settings**
Change settings
- Review list**
Change settings
- Post list**
Change settings
- Questions & Ans.**
Change settings

Review reply settings Options ▾

[+ Add settings](#)

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	

1-1/1

10 ▾

[Previous](#) **1** [Next](#)

Location insights

Location and Post Insights

- Each location provides insights for multiple metrics
- Each post provides insight for different locations

Location Information Location Manager

Location list

- Review reply settings**
Change settings
- Review list**
Change settings
- Post list**
Change settings
- Questions & Ans.**
Change settings

Review reply settings Options ▾

ACTIONS
[New review URL](#)
Location insights

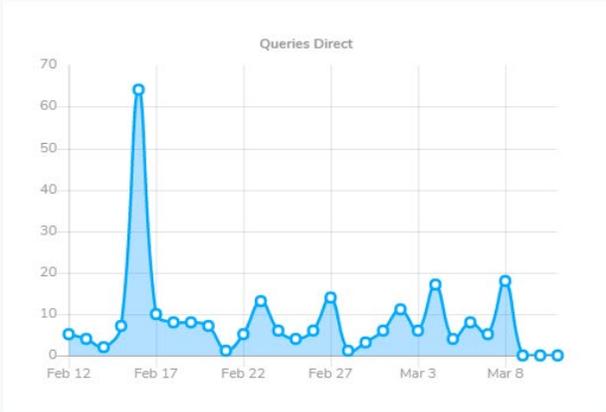
#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	



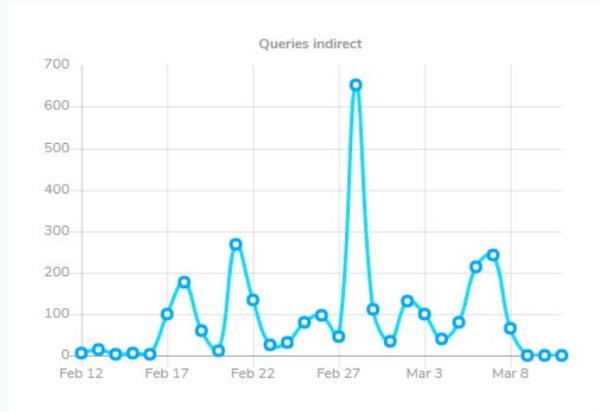
Location Insights For "[REDACTED]"

📅 2020-02-11 2020-03-11 🔍 Search

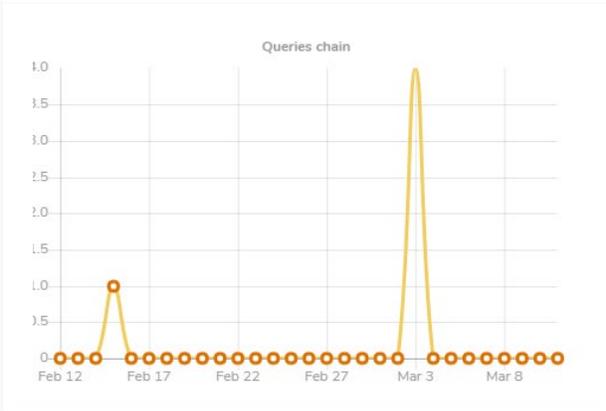
Queries Direct ⓘ



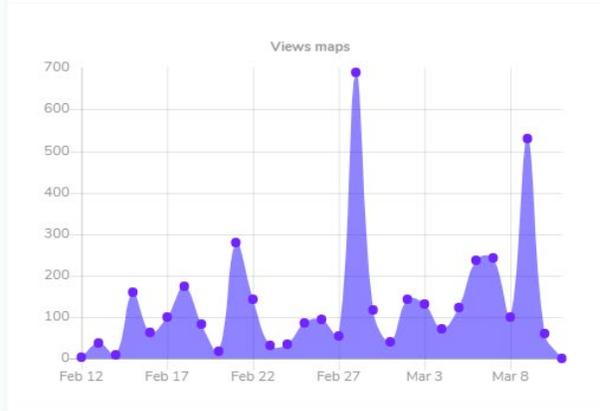
Queries Indirect ⓘ



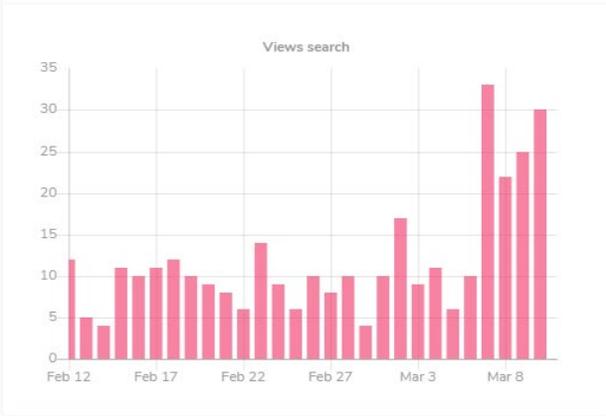
Queries Chain ⓘ



Views Maps ⓘ



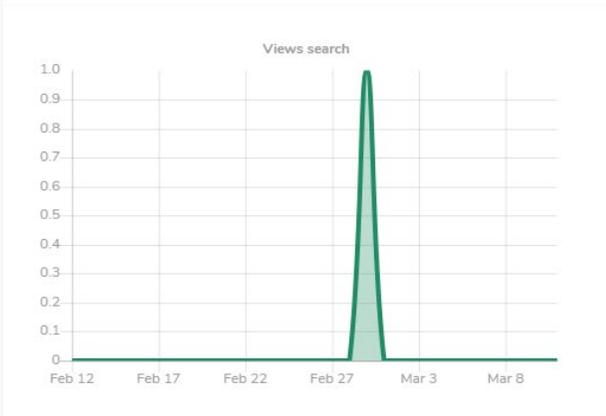
Views Search 📄



Actions Website 📄



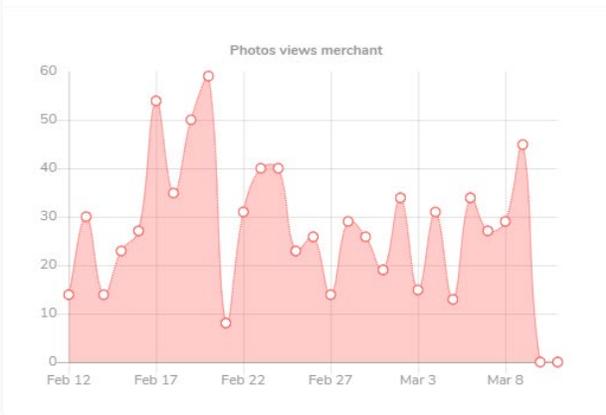
Actions Phone 📄



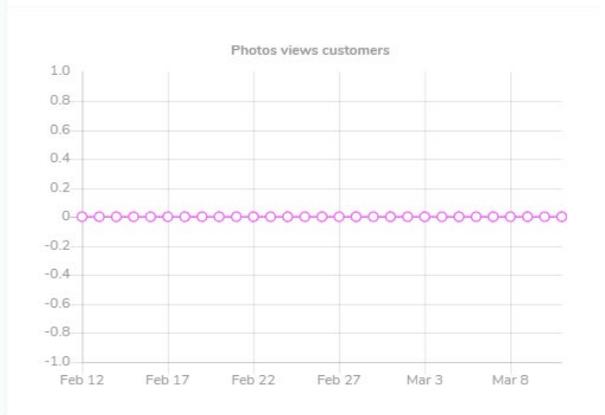
Actions Driving Directions 📄

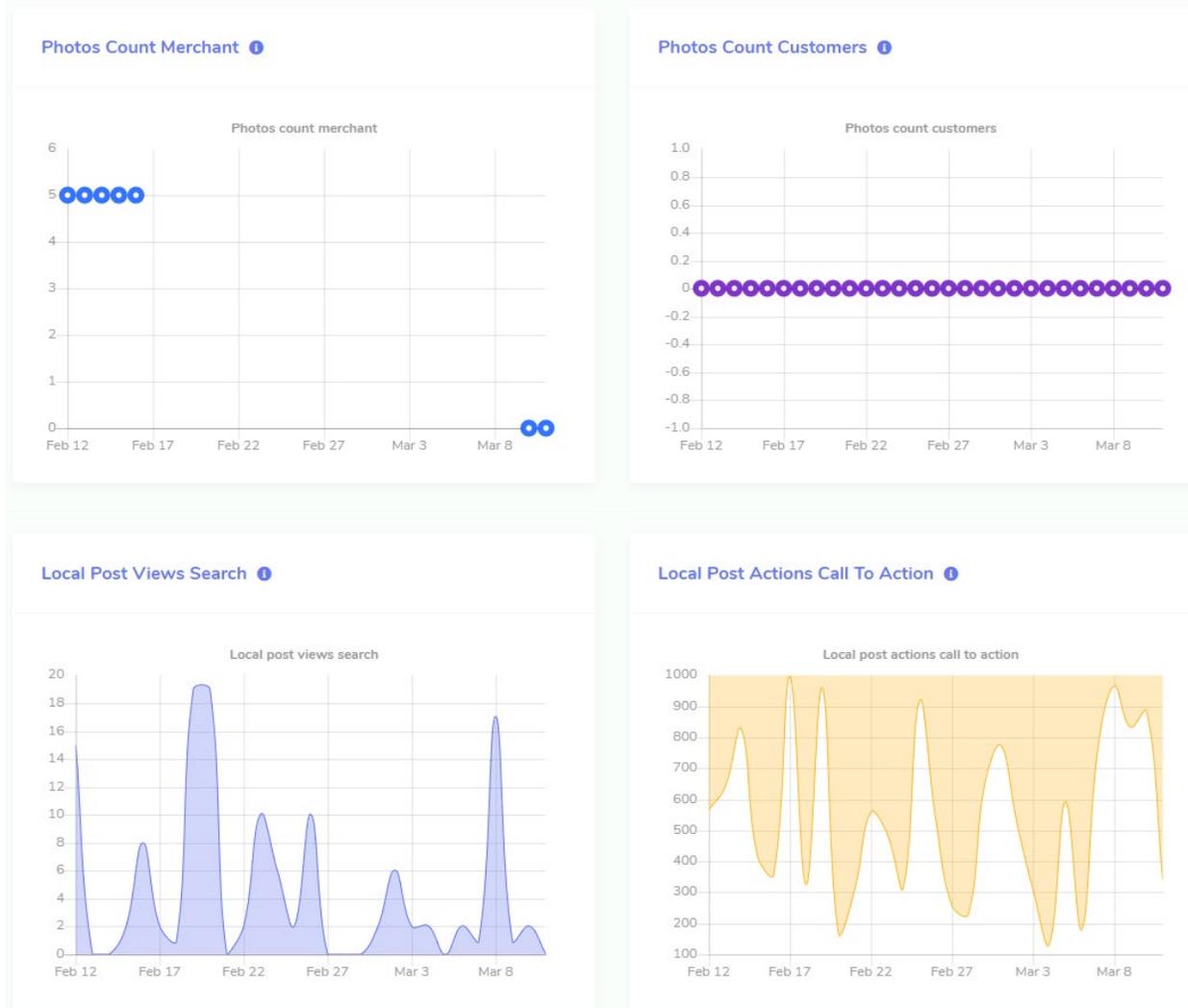


Photos Views Merchant 📄



Photos Views Customers 📄





Review reply settings

Automatic Review Reply

- Gives a way to reply to a review automatically.
- Custom star based automatic replies to reviews.
- Automatic replies to reviews are editable.
- Unlimited keyword based automatic replies.
- Generic replies to reviews.
- Default review reply for no keyword match
- Star based review report is available

In this section, you can set a predefined review reply template for those who give a review in your google my business. If you want to reply them to automatically then set a review reply predefined template. You can also set template star rating categorized like 5 stars and so on, that is a really cool feature, isn't it? Please follow the instructions below if you want to review the reply automatically.





Two Type of reply template available

1. Generic
2. Keyword

Location Information Location Manager

Location list

6100, Rajshahi

6100, Rajshahi

Review reply settings
Change settings

★ Review list
Change settings

🔄 Post list
Change settings

🔍 Questions & Ans.
Change settings

Review reply settings Options ▾

Add settings

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	

10 ▾ 1-1/1

Previous **1** Next

Select a rating and enter review reply text, after then hit the add settings button

If you want to reply them to your business reviewer Keyword wise then select the keyword instead of generic. You can add keyword more than one to click the add more keyword button also you can set the "no match" template If there no keyword match in your reviewers' review.





⚙️ Review reply settings

Options ▾

Select rating

5 Star ▾

Reply type

Generic

Keyword

Keyword

Keyword

Reply

[+ Add more settings](#)

Message for no match

[+ Add Settings](#)

[X Cancel](#)



Review reply settings

Options ▾

+ Add settings

#	Star	Action
1	★★★★★	  
2	★★★★	
3	★★★	
4	★★	

10 ▾

1-1/1

Review List

In this section, you will see all the review list. You can edit review reply and delete it from here.

Note: Review list may take up to few minutes/hours to update & synchronize in review list.



Location list

Search...



Review reply settings

Change settings



Review list

Change settings



Post list

Change settings



Questions & Ans.

Change settings

Review list

Options

Review report may take upto few minutes/hours to update & synchronize here.

Search...



Wagner Mendez Mar 10, 2020



Very effective

Hola, Could you please check your review again?

Mar 11, 2020



Francisco Salazar Mar 9, 2020



Howdy, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team

Mar 11, 2020



Julian Gomez Mar 8, 2020



Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team

Mar 11, 2020



Thaibh Hassan Mar 8, 2020



One of the best software company ❤️



danny dan Mar 8, 2020



Hola, Looks like you have given the review mistakenly, could you please check it again? Thanks Team

Mar 11, 2020



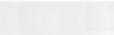


danny dan  Mar 8, 2020



 Update review reply

 Delete review reply

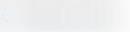
the review mistakenly, could
ik:  Team

 Mar 11, 2020



Best Software Company  Mar 8, 2020



Best Software Company in 

Hola, You have given 4 star, can you upgrade it? ;) Thanks

 Team

 Mar 11, 2020

Post List

In this section you will see all the posts that you made through campaigns, even you can see post analytics.





Location list

Post list Options ▾

- Review reply settings
Change settings
- Review list
Change settings
- Post list**
Change settings
- Questions & Ans.
Change settings

Best Multichannel Marketing Application Platform
Feb 24, 2020
Cta (ORDER) / Action URL / **Analytics**

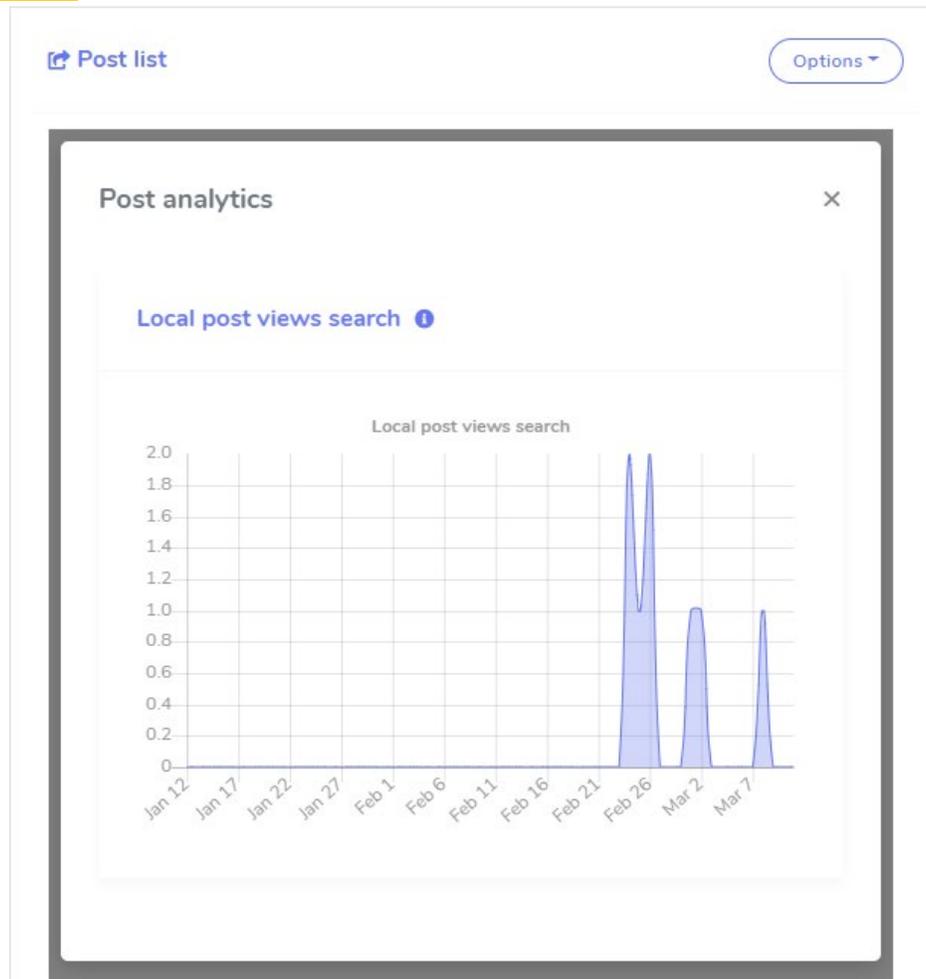
- Best Multichannel Marketing Application Platform
Feb 16, 2020
Cta (ORDER) / Action URL / Analytics

WooCommerce Abandoned Cart Recovery Plugin
Jan 19, 2020
Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics

- Website Health Checker
Jan 19, 2020
Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics

- Master Marketing Software For Facebook
Jan 19, 2020
Cta (SHOP) / Action URL / Analytics





Questions & Ans

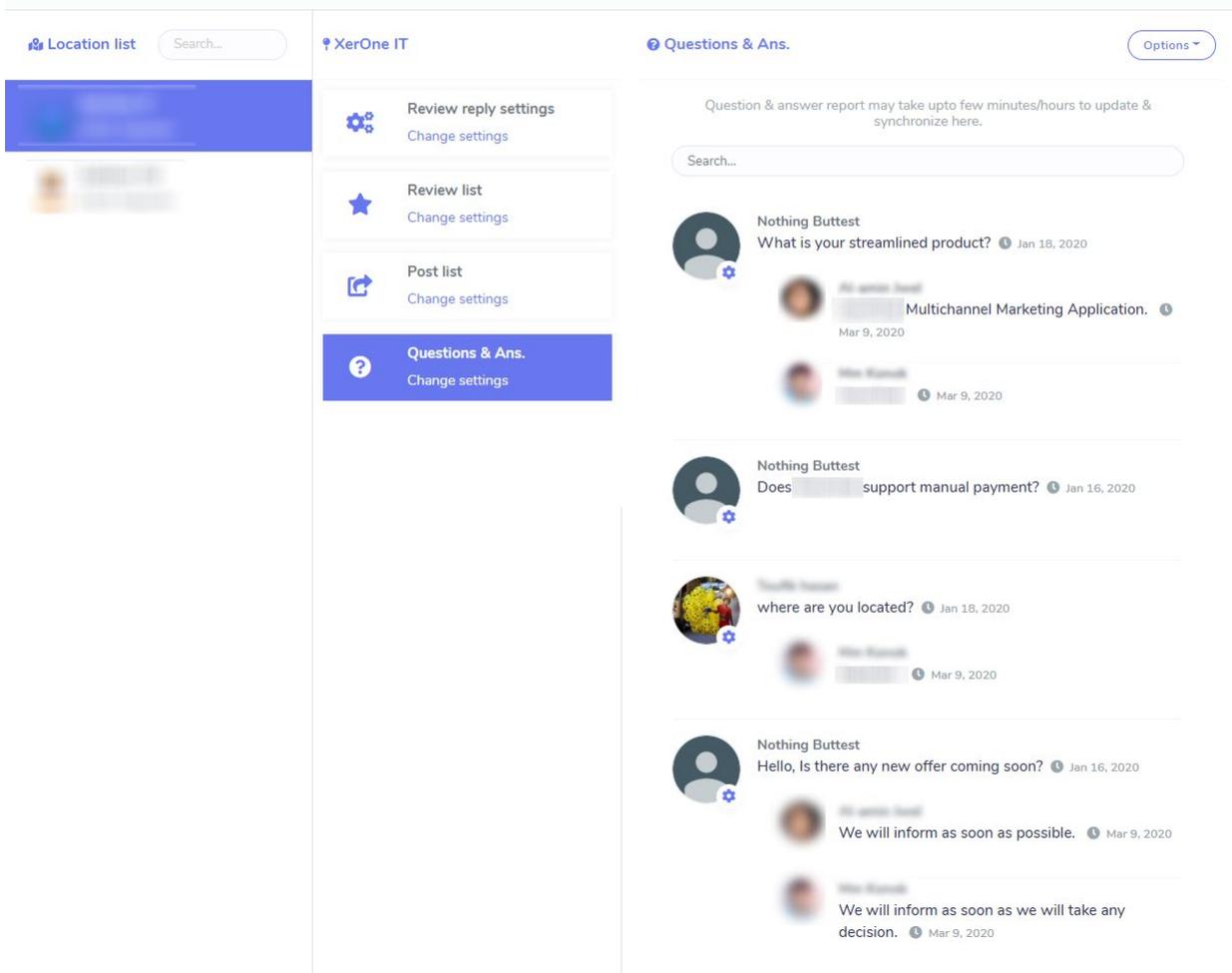
Question and Answer

- No need for other platforms to answering a customer's question
- You can interact with your customers via questions & answers
- You can write answers for any questions from a single interface

In this section, you will see the full list of Questions & Ans about your business that people already made.

Note: Question & answer report may take up to a few minutes/hours to update & synchronize here.





The screenshot displays the 'Location Information' dashboard. On the left, a sidebar contains navigation options: 'Location list', 'Review reply settings', 'Review list', 'Post list', and 'Questions & Ans.' (highlighted in blue). The main content area is titled 'XerOne IT' and features a 'Questions & Ans.' section. This section includes a search bar and a list of questions and answers. The questions are from users like 'Nothing Butttest' and 'The World', with dates ranging from Jan 16, 2020, to Jan 18, 2020. The answers are from 'The World' and 'The World', dated Mar 9, 2020.

Campaigns

- A single interface for creating posts
- You're able to create several types of posts
- You're able to schedule posts to be posted later
- You're able to write a single post to different locations
- All posts will be automatically posted onto google

In this section, we will guide you on campaigns Feature. Here you will find all the instructions on Campaigns management. So Let's start.

1. CTA
2. Event
3. Offer





Create CTA, Event, Offer Post
Create CTA, Event or Offer post etc...

Campaign list >

Call To Action Post

Campaigning Call-To-Action Posts

- You're able to write several types of CTA posts
- You can make your customers a phone call to you
- You can get your customers to your products from google search page
- You can make your customers buy your products from google search

In this section, you will see how you can create campaigns.

Click Create new post.

Post campaign list [+ Create new post](#) Campaign / Post campaign list

All posts ▾ Location Name ▾ Search... [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Campaign name	Post type	Post Title	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error message
1	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfasdf		Pending	Mar 9, 20 16:14	
2	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdf		Completed	Mar 9, 20 16:08	
3	EVENT Campaign	EVENT	We're coming with huge discount		Completed	Mar 9, 20 13:35	
4	CTA Event	Cta	Products we've is here		Completed	Mar 8, 20 13:34	

10 ▾ 1-4/4

Previous **1** Next





Put campaign name, select action type, put action URL, put CTA summary, upload an image, and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.

+ Create Campaign Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

Cta [EVENT](#) [OFFER](#)

Campaign name
Test

Action type
BOOK

Action URL:

Summary ⓘ
This this test call to action

Media URL

[Upload](#)

1).
83396856_809911629526637_23504679427
57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)
[Delete](#)

Location Name

Posting time ⓘ
 Post now

[Create Campaign](#) [Cancel](#)

Preview



This this test call to action
[BOOK](#)

Event Post

Campaigning Event Posts

- You're able to write a post that can represent an event

Click Create new post, click event tab, Put campaign name, put post title, put event date range, put event summary, upload an image and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.





+ Create Campaign

Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

Cta **EVENT** **OFFER**

Preview

Campaign name
Test

Post Title:
This is

Date Range
2020-03-11 14:24:02 To 2020-03-31 14:24:11

Summary
This this event

Media URL
https://image_1_1583915012180147.8339685

Upload

1).
83396856_809911629526637_23504679427
57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)

Delete

Location Name
x x

Posting time
 Post now

Create Campaign Cancel



Offer Post

Campaigning Offer Posts

- You're able to make a coupon code for a specific or all products
- You can get your customers to your products from Google search page

Click Create new post, click offer tab, Put campaign name, put coupon code, put redeem URL, put offer summary, upload an image, and select location name (multiple select available), You can schedule the campaign now or later. If you choose to schedule later then you have to enter schedule time and timezone then hit create campaign button.





+ Create Campaign

Campaign / CTA/EVENT/OFFER Posts / Create Campaign

Cta **EVENT** **OFFER**

Preview

Campaign name
Test

Coupon Code:
marvelone

Redeem URL:

Summary ⓘ
This this marvel movie offer

Media URL
https://upload.image_1_1583915012180147.8339685

Upload

1).
83396856_809911629526637_23504679427
57433344_o.jpg (205.80 KB)

Location Name

Posting time ⓘ
 Post now

This this marvel movie offer
REDEEM ONLINE
marvelone

Report

If you want to see the campaign report click the analytics button.





Post campaign list

Create new post

Campaign / Post campaign list

All posts ▾ Location Name ▾ Search...

#	Campaign name	Post type	Post Title	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error message
1	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdfasdf	 		Mar 9, 20 16:14	
2	Offer Event	OFFER	asdfasdf		Completed	Mar 9, 20 16:08	
3	EVENT Campaign	EVENT	We're coming with huge discount		Completed	Mar 9, 20 13:35	
4	CTA Event	Cta	Products we've is here		Completed	Mar 8, 20 13:34	

10 ▾

1-4/4

Previous **1** Next

Campaign report



Summary: Products we've is here

Post type: Cta

Created at: Mar 9, 2020

Posted to locations: 

Media Manager

Media Manager is such a feature that allows you to represent each and every part of your business to your customers via PHOTO and VIDEO posts.

- A single interface for creating photo or video posts
- You're able to create as many posts as you want
- You're able to schedule posts to be posted later
- You're able to write a single post to different locations
- All posts will be automatically posted onto google



Media Campaigns ➕ Create new media campaign

Select category ▾ Location name ▾ Search... 🔍 Search 📅 Choose date

#	Campaign name	Media Category	Media Type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Fight Covid	ADDITIONAL	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 18, 20 14:15
2	Food	FOOD_AND_DRINK	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:35
3	Fastival	FOOD_AND_DRINK	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
4	ceremony	INTERIOR	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
5	We are here.	TEAMS	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
6	Corona	ADDITIONAL	📷 PHOTO	🗑️	✅ Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19

To go to the Media Manager interface, click on the **Media Manager** menu from the left-side menu bar as follows:

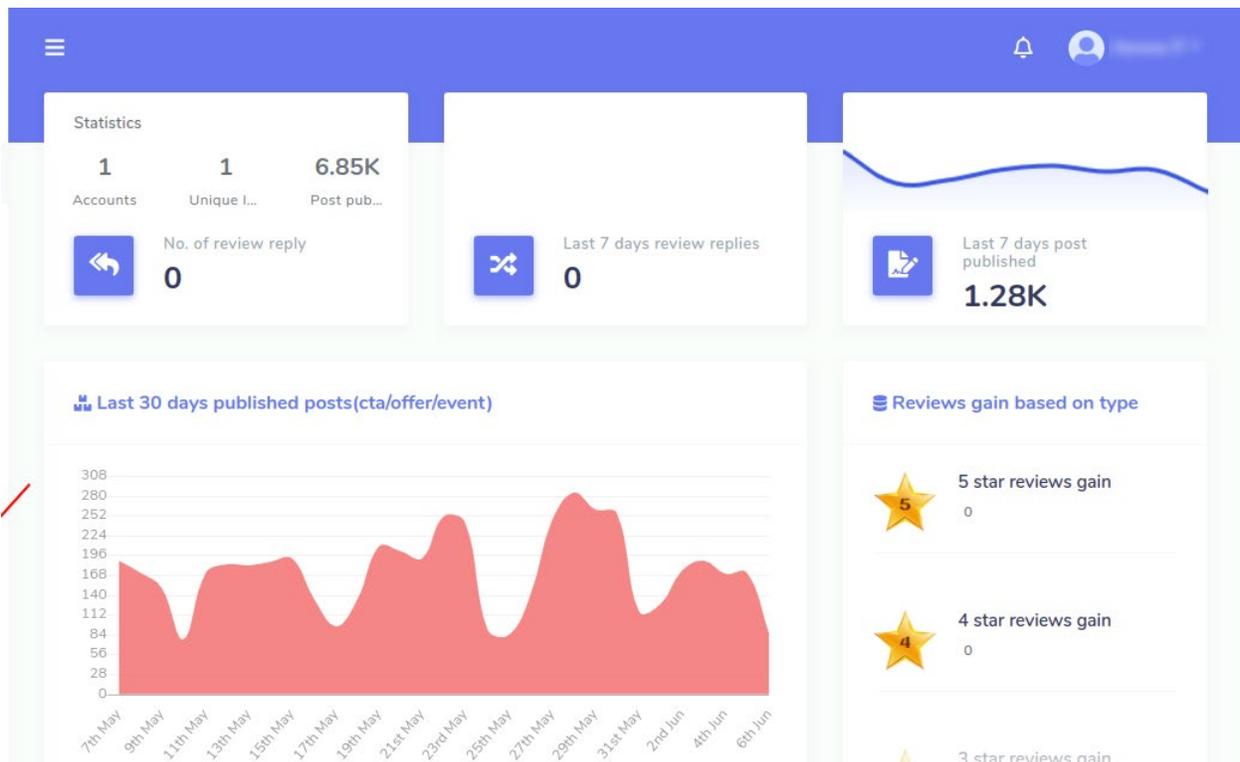




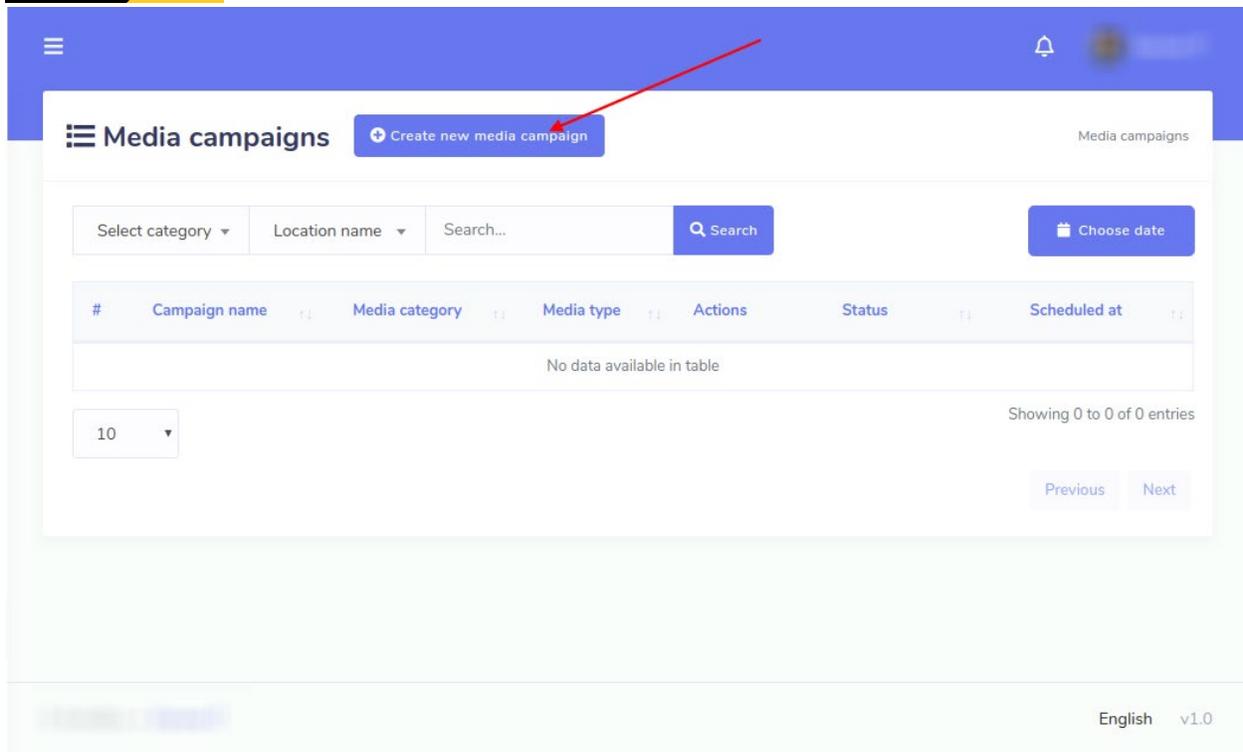
Photo or Video Campaign

Creating a photo campaign or video campaign is almost the same process. If you upload an image, then it will be an image campaign and vice versa. First of all, though it's depends on your business type, let's see how you can represent each and every part of your business using a photo or video campaign.

- You're able to set a LOGO/PROFILE/COVER photo of your business institution or place.
- You're able to represent the INTERIOR/EXTERIOR part of your business to your customers
- You're able to represent PRODUCTS that your business offers to your customers
- You're able to show off how your employees are active at work to the world
- If you sell consumer products such as food or drink, you can then represent them using videos or images
- If you have a restaurant, you can then represent MENU items to your customers
- Otherwise, if you have a HOTEL or MOTEL, you can then represent ROOMs to your customers
- If you have a business where team-work is very much important, you can then represent TEAMS to your customers
- If you have a business where common-area is important to represent, you can then do that too
- You're also able to represent ADDITIONAL information or whatever, using images and videos

To create PHOTO or VIDEO campaign, please click on the button named **Create new media campaign** as follows:





Next up, you need to fill in some fields with proper values. See the following screenshot:
Be careful of the following error! Upload an image or video that is quite related to your business. Otherwise, the campaign will not be published on GMB.

Note: Stay away from **Request contains an invalid argument** error.



+ Create media campaign

Media list / Create media campaign

+ Create media campaign

Campaign name

Interior Campaign

Media category

INTERIOR

Media description

This campaign describes the interior part/place/institution of your business. 😊

Media upload

If any video does not support, we recommend convert the video to mp4 first and then try again please.

Upload

1). Screencast from 11-07-2019 04:30:19
PM.webm (1.06 MB)

Delete

Location name

You could select multiple location.

x

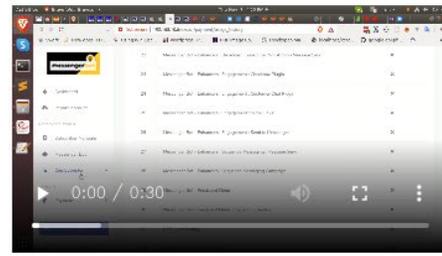
Posting time ⓘ

Post now

Create media campaign

Cancel

G Preview



This preview may differ from actual post.

Once you've completed all the fields, then click on the button below named **Create Media Campaign** to create a campaign.

At the moment, you will be redirected to the Media Manager interface. You will see there the





campaign you created earlier as below:

The screenshot shows the 'Media campaigns' dashboard. At the top, there is a navigation bar with a menu icon, a notification bell, and a profile picture. Below this, the dashboard title 'Media campaigns' is followed by a '+ Create new media campaign' button. The main content area features a search and filter section with 'Select category', 'Location name', and 'Search...' fields, along with a 'Search' button and a 'Choose date' button. Below this is a table with the following columns: '#', 'Campaign name', 'Media category', 'Media type', 'Actions', 'Status', and 'Scheduled at'. The table contains one row: #1, Interior Campaign, INTERIOR, VIDEO, a shopping bag icon, Pending, and Jun 7, 20 15:29. A red box highlights this row. At the bottom right of the table, there is a '10' dropdown menu and 'Previous 1 Next' navigation buttons. The footer shows 'English v1.0'.

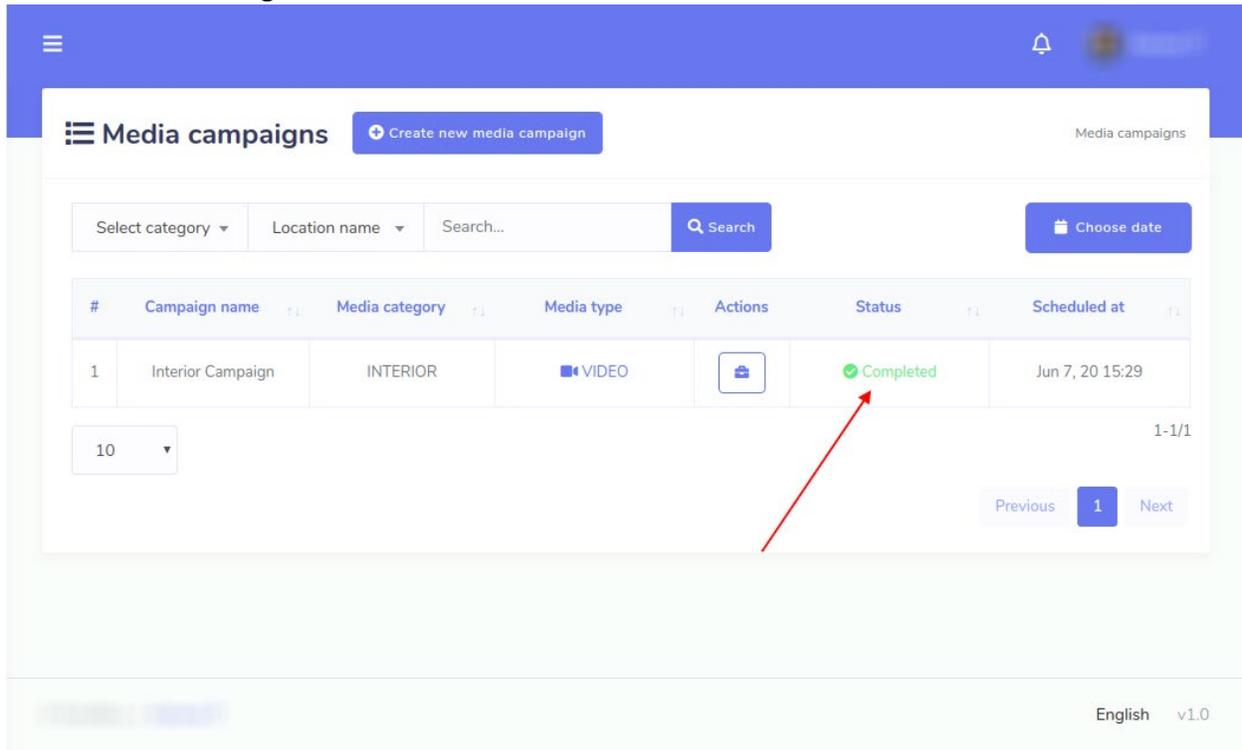
Notice the red-marked arrow in the following screenshot. This tells you that the campaign is in pending status and has not yet been posted to GMB.

This screenshot is identical to the one above, but with a red arrow pointing to the 'Pending' status in the 'Status' column of the table. The rest of the interface, including the search filters, table structure, and footer, remains the same.

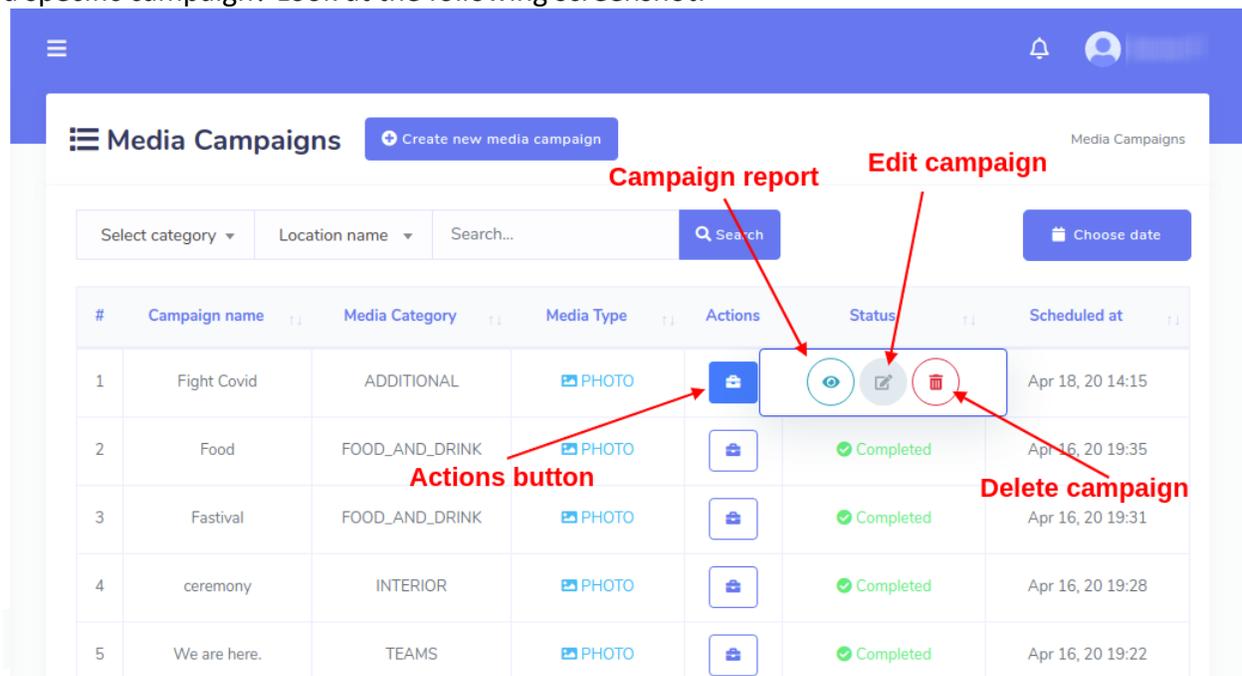




The **Pending** status will be changed to **Completed** when the campaign has been posted to GMB. Look at the following screenshot:

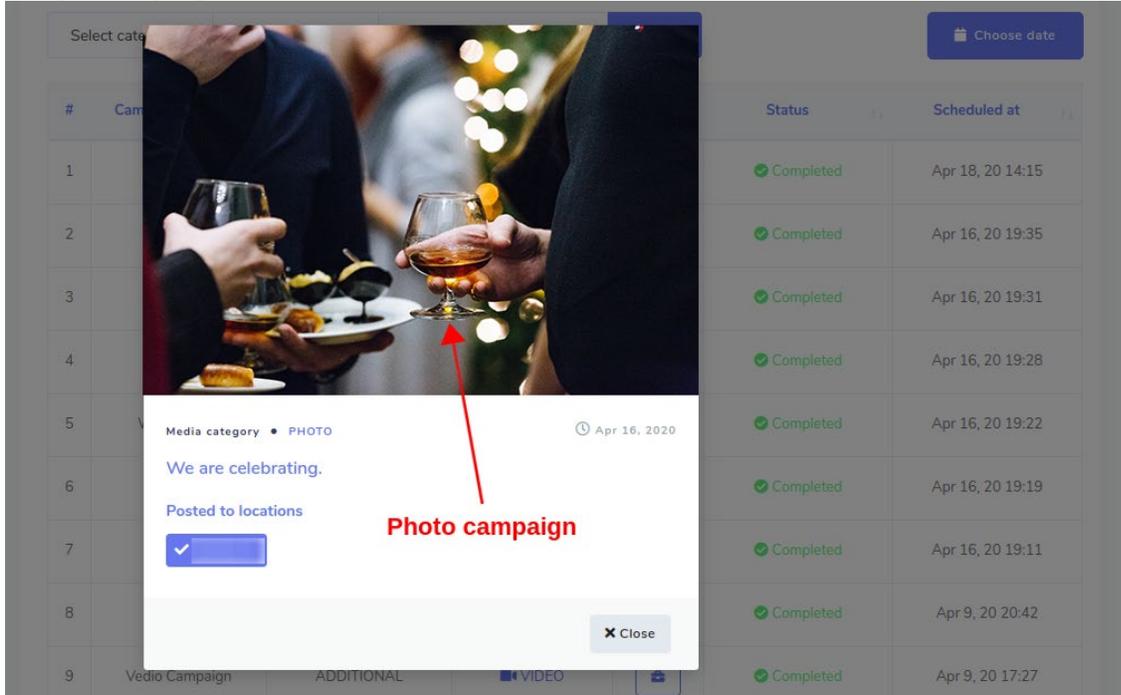


Now it's time to spend some time on a specific campaign. So what are the options available on a specific campaign? Look at the following screenshot:



First, we will see how a campaign looks when it has been posted successfully to GMB. There is a button called **Campaign report** there. Click on the button. It will pop up a modal. It looks like the screenshot below:

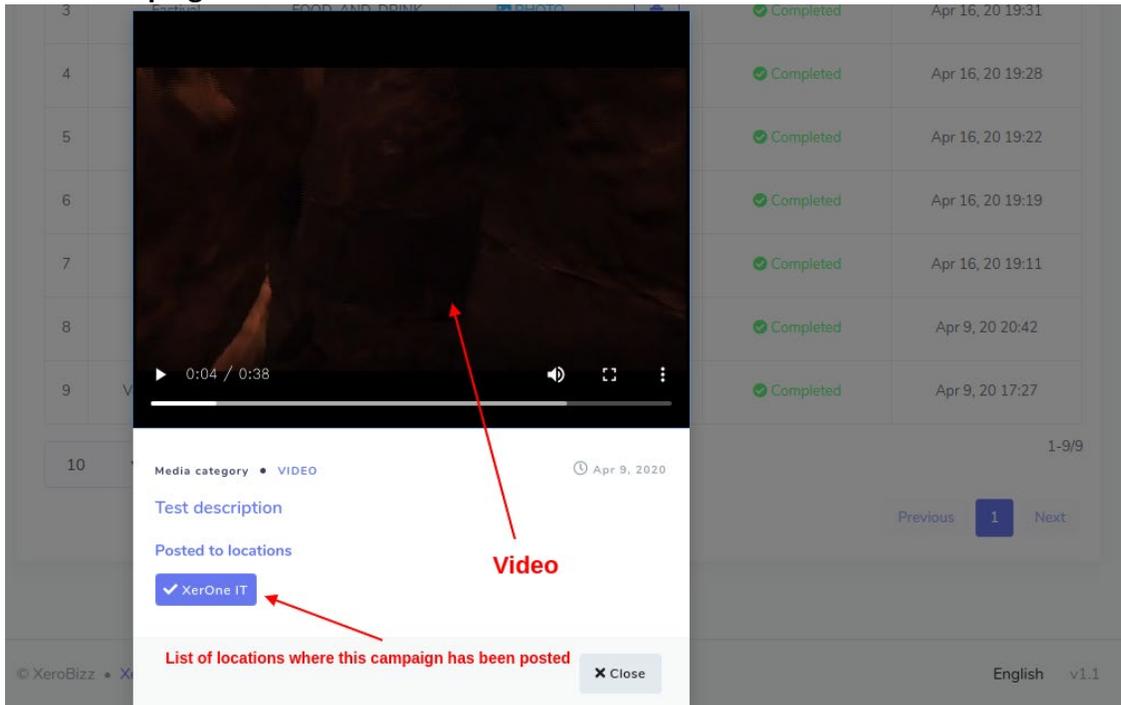
Image Campaign



The screenshot shows a modal for a photo campaign. The modal title is "Photo campaign" in red. It displays the media category as "PHOTO" and the date as "Apr 16, 2020". The text "We are celebrating." is visible. Below, it shows "Posted to locations" with a checked box for "XerOne IT". A red arrow points from the text "Photo campaign" to the modal. The background shows a table of campaign status and scheduled dates.

Status	Scheduled at
Completed	Apr 18, 20 14:15
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:35
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:11
Completed	Apr 9, 20 20:42
Completed	Apr 9, 20 17:27

Video Campaign

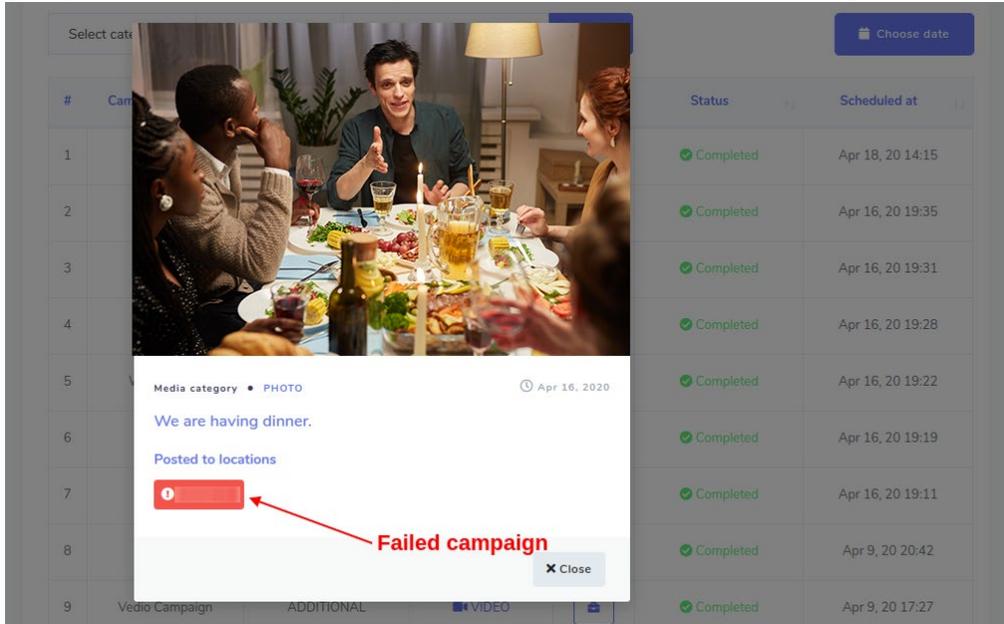


The screenshot shows a modal for a video campaign. The modal title is "Video" in red. It displays the media category as "VIDEO" and the date as "Apr 9, 2020". The text "Test description" is visible. Below, it shows "Posted to locations" with a checked box for "XerOne IT". A red arrow points from the text "Video" to the modal. Another red arrow points from the text "List of locations where this campaign has been posted" to the "XerOne IT" location. The background shows a table of campaign status and scheduled dates.

Status	Scheduled at
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:31
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:28
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:22
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:19
Completed	Apr 16, 20 19:11
Completed	Apr 9, 20 20:42
Completed	Apr 9, 20 17:27

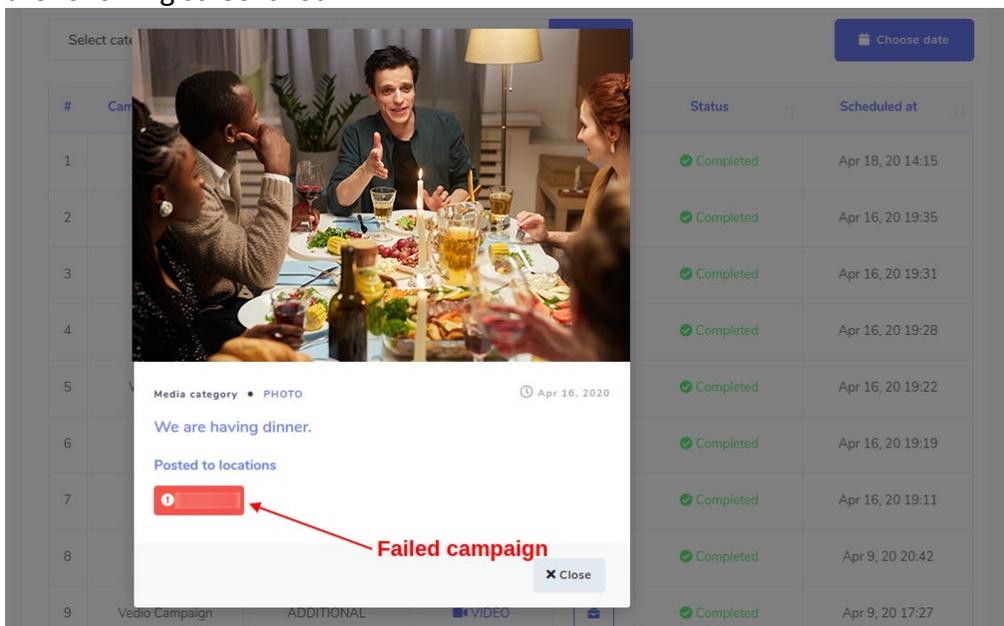


If you want to see the posted campaign on GMB, then click on the button. It will take you there. You will see some campaigns' status **Completed** on Messenger Bot system but red-marked on campaign report modal. **This happens when GMB system detects that the PHOTO or VIDEO you posted is not relevant to your business.** Look at the following screenshot:



Failed Campaign

You will see some campaigns' status **Completed** on Messenger Bot system but badges with red mark below the **Posted to locations** on campaign report modal. **This happens when GMB system detects that the PHOTO or VIDEO you posted is not relevant to your business.** Look at the following screenshot:





Review Replies

In this section you will see all review replies here

Review report

Campaign / Review report

All Stars ▾ Location Name ▾ Search...

Photo	Name	Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
		★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?			Mar 11, 20 11:46	
		★★★ ★★★ ★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
		★★★ ★★★ ★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
		★★★ ★★★ ★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 🙌 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★★★ ★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★★		Hola, Looks like you have given the review mistakenly, could you please check it again? Thanks Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★★★	Best Software Company in Rajshahi.	Hola, You have given 4 star, can you upgrade it? ;) Thanks Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★★★ ★	Very effective	Hola, Could you please check your review again?			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
		★★★ ★★★ ★		Howdy, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	

10 ▾

1-9/9





Review report

Campaign / Review report

Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?			Mar 11, 20 11:46	
★★★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
★★★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
★★★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 [User] Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
★★★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 [User] Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	

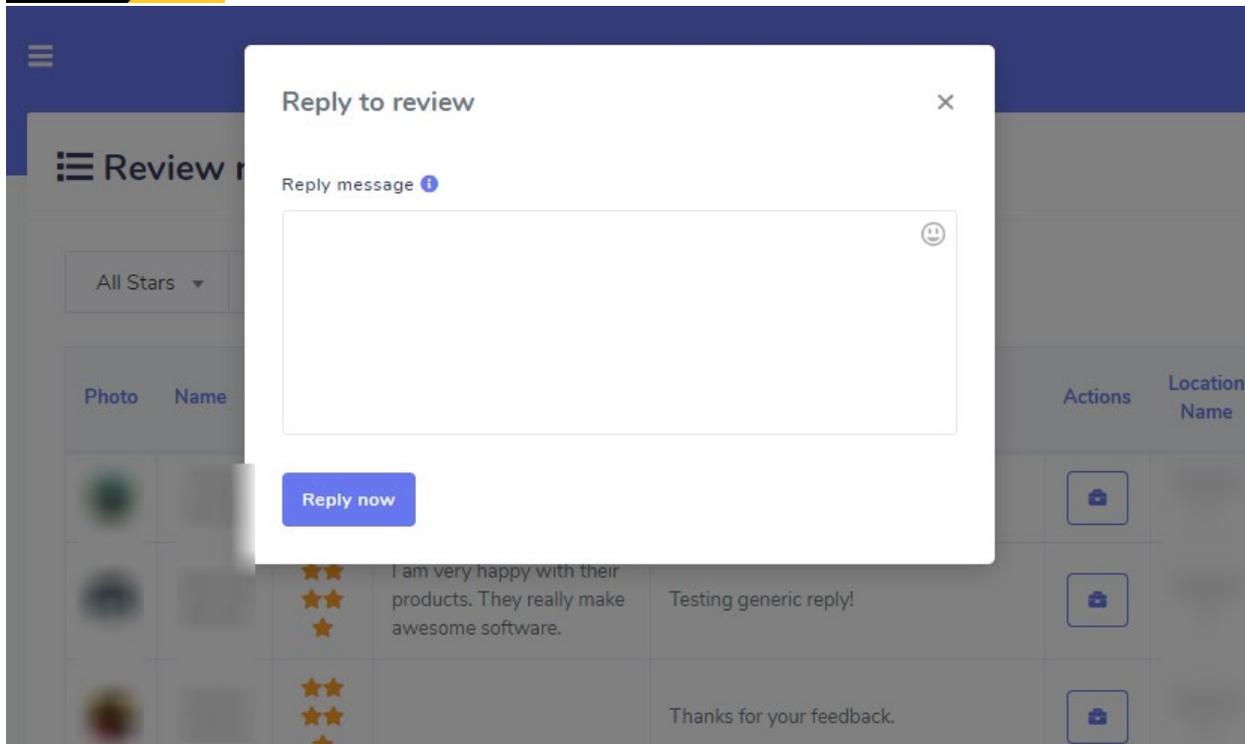
You can review reply Manually, click red marked reply button

Review report

Campaign / Review report

Photo	Name	Star	Comment	Reply	Actions	Location Name	Replied at	Error
	Miraz Ronok	★★	Very effective	Howdy Could you please check your review once again?			20 11:46	
	Nothing Butttest	★★★	I am very happy with their products. They really make awesome software.	Testing generic reply!			Mar 10, 20 13:34	
	Ayesha Sultana	★★★		Thanks for your feedback.			Mar 6, 20 15:16	
	Julfikar Shaon	★★★		Hola, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 [User] Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	
	Toufik hasan	★★★	One of the best software company ❤️	Hello, Thanks for your awesome review 👍 [User] Team			Mar 11, 20 12:42	



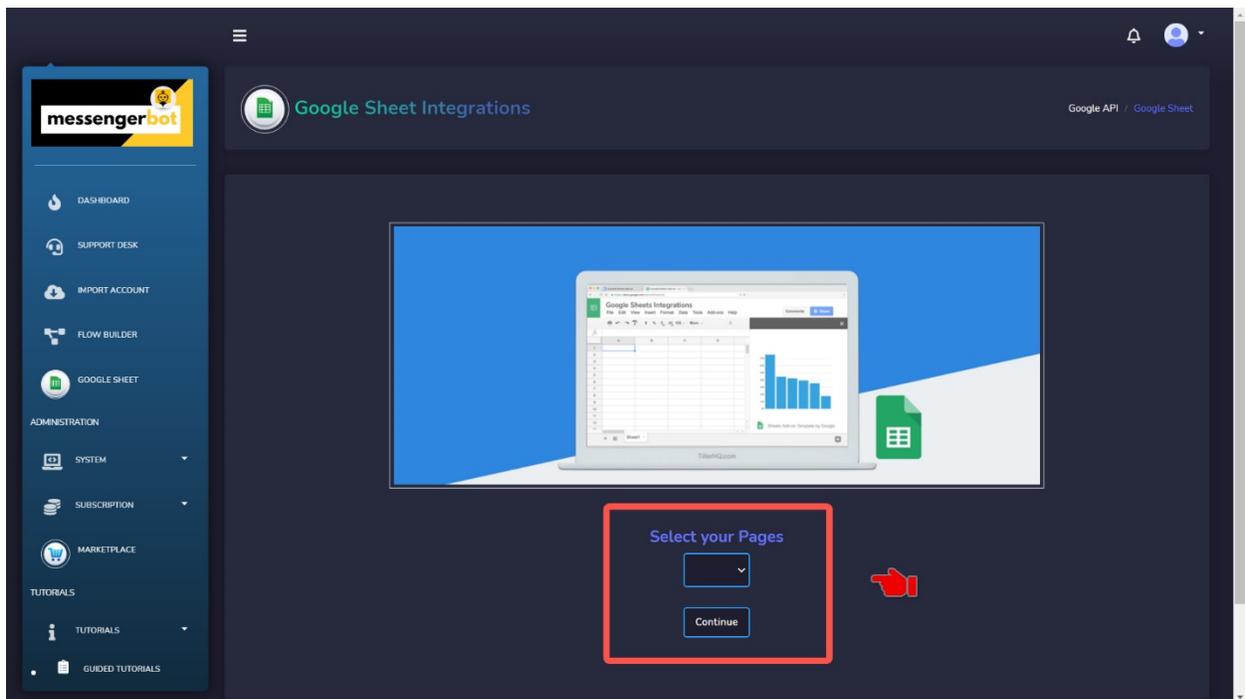
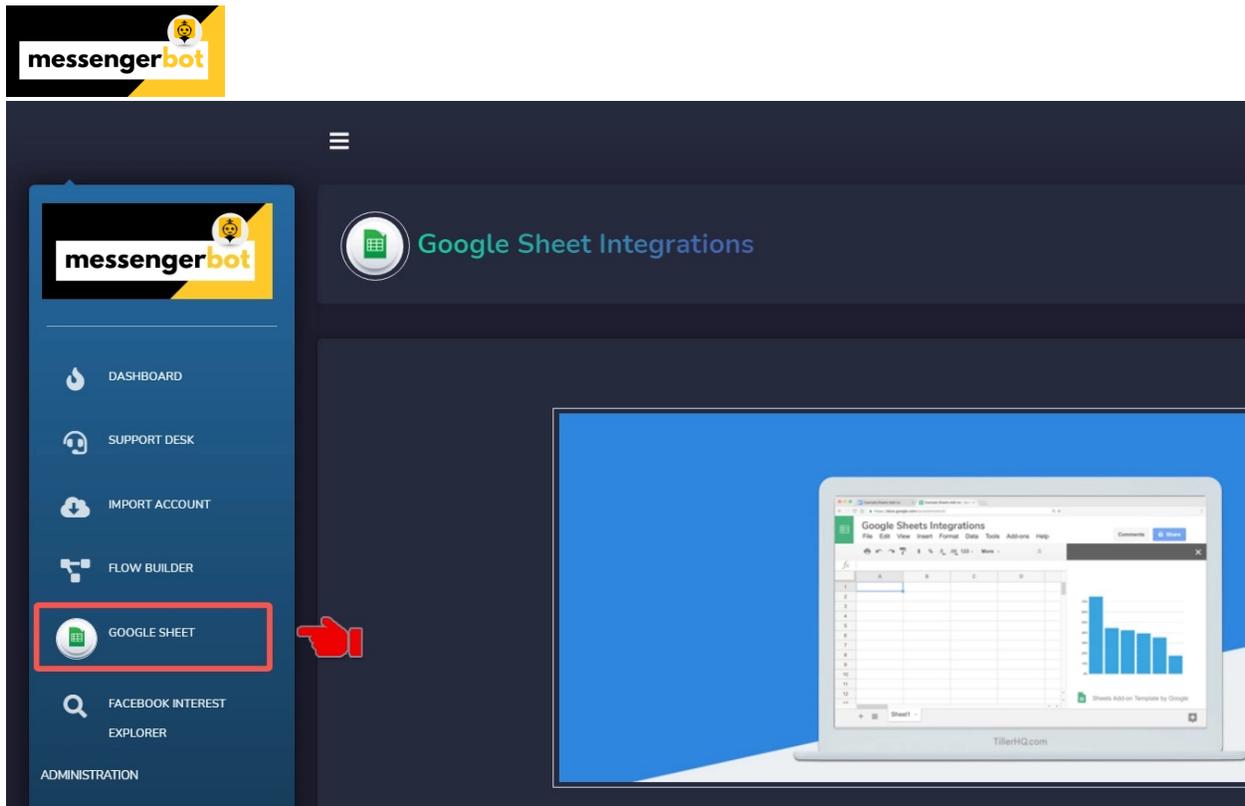


Google Sheet Integration with Messenger Bot

Our Messenger Bot is now with Google Sheet. In using this it gets the subscriber information data from those subscribed to the bot.

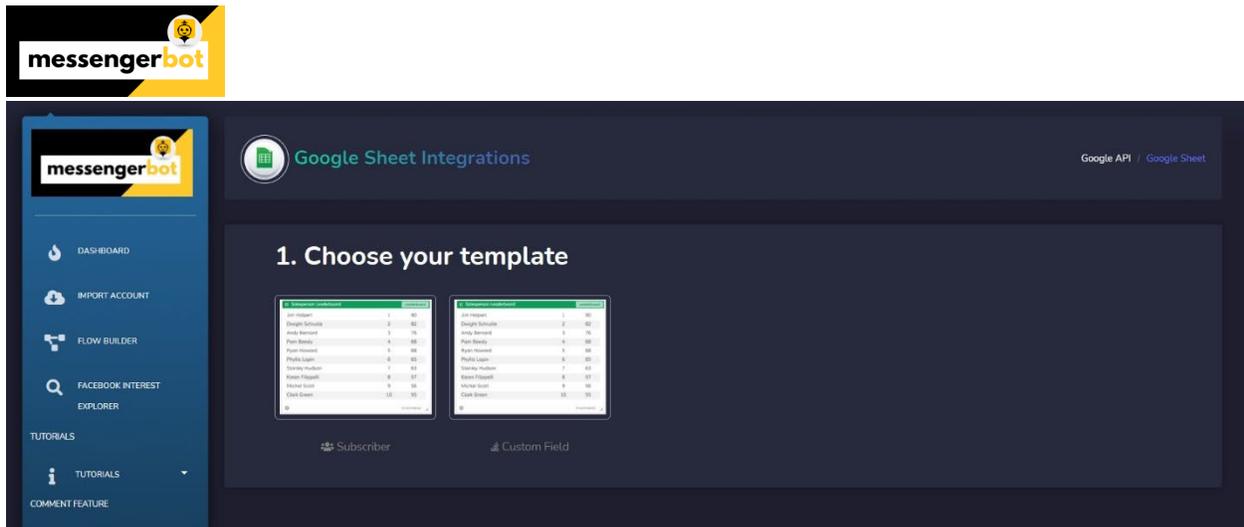
Here you will learn how to integrate Google Sheet with your store page. First, go to the main menu bar on the left and click Google Sheet. You can select now what page you want to integrate with your google sheet and click "Continue" for the next step



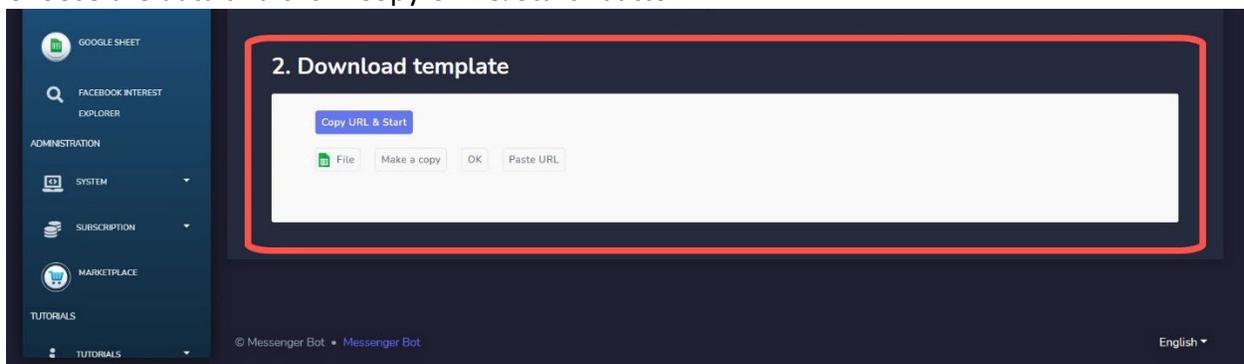


Now you can choose whatever template depends on your need but here in our demo.

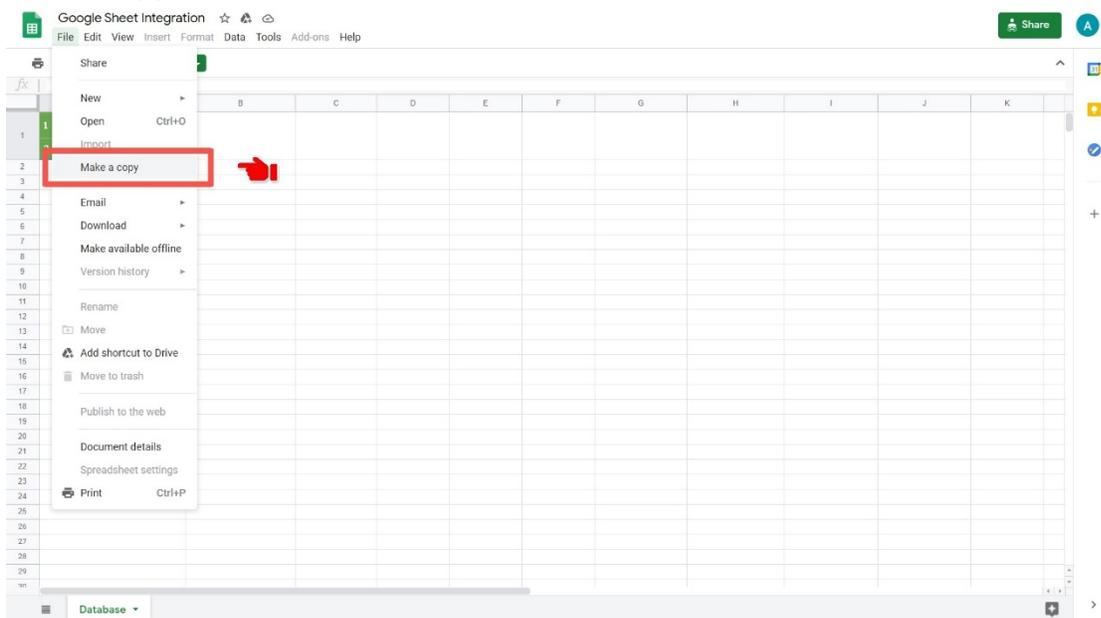




After selecting your desired template, the next thing that will show below is the user input data. Choose the data and click "Copy URL & Start" button.

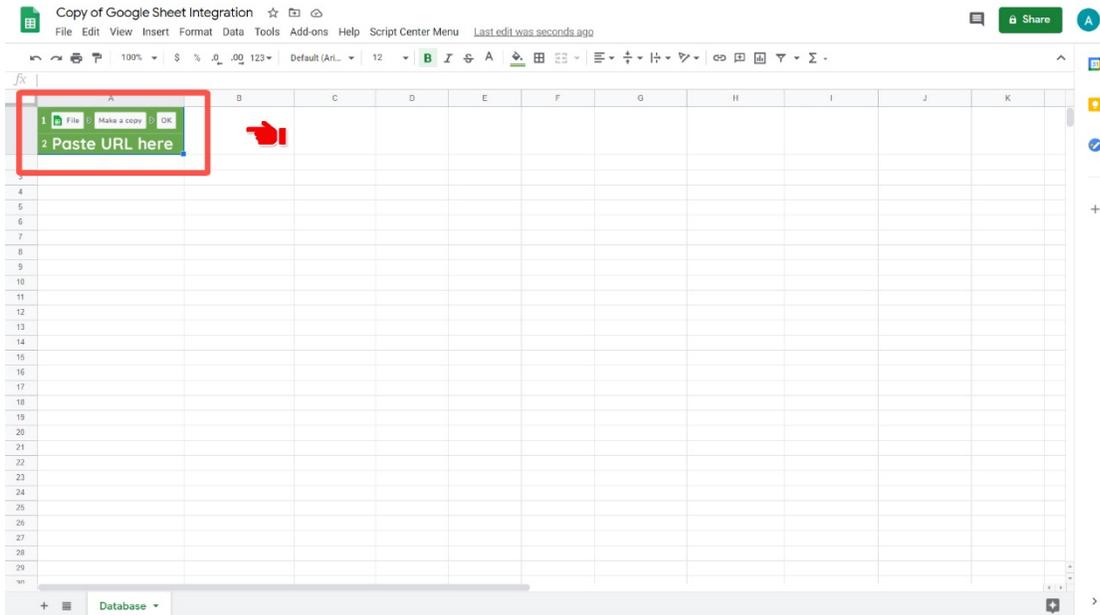


Then it will be directed to your Google Sheet. Click on the file then make a copy then click OK to make a copy of the file.

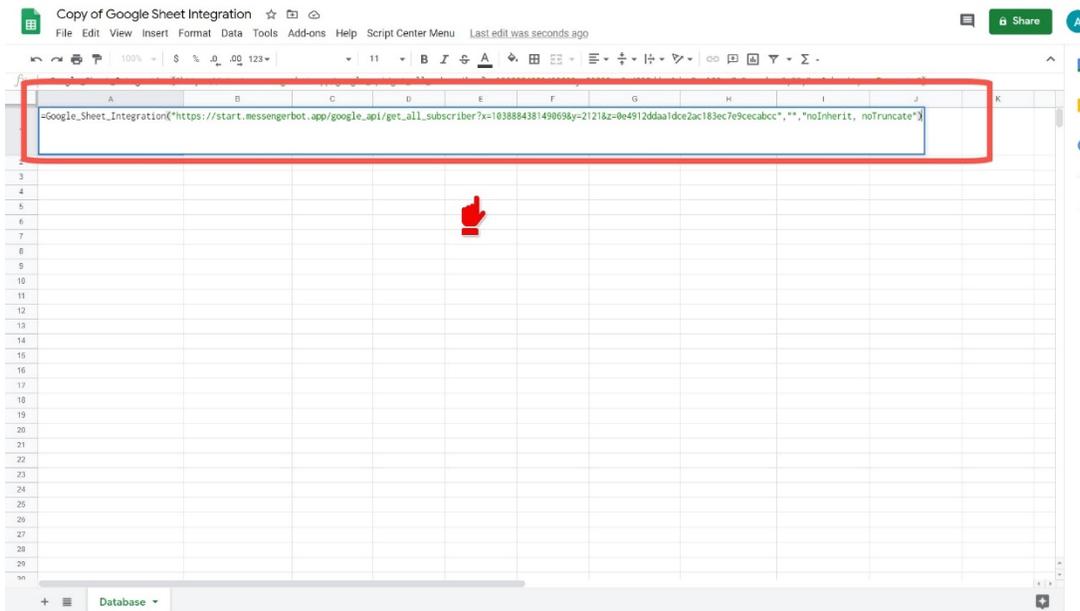




Click on the cell and paste your copied URL, you can right-click it and select paste.



Now, press enter to begin exporting data from messenger bot. That's it your data is exported to google spreadsheet!



[How To Collect Email Address/Leads Inside Facebook Messenger with Messenger Bot](#)
Gathering user data is general practice in modern websites and applications. For business, it is very important to collect the user's data or leads. Collecting proper information and using it cleverly can give associations an edge over competitors and increase the impact of limited resources.

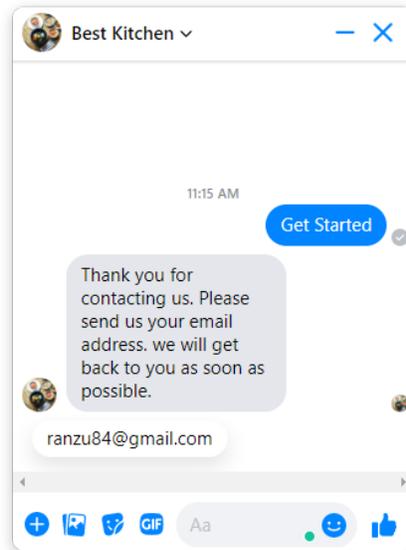




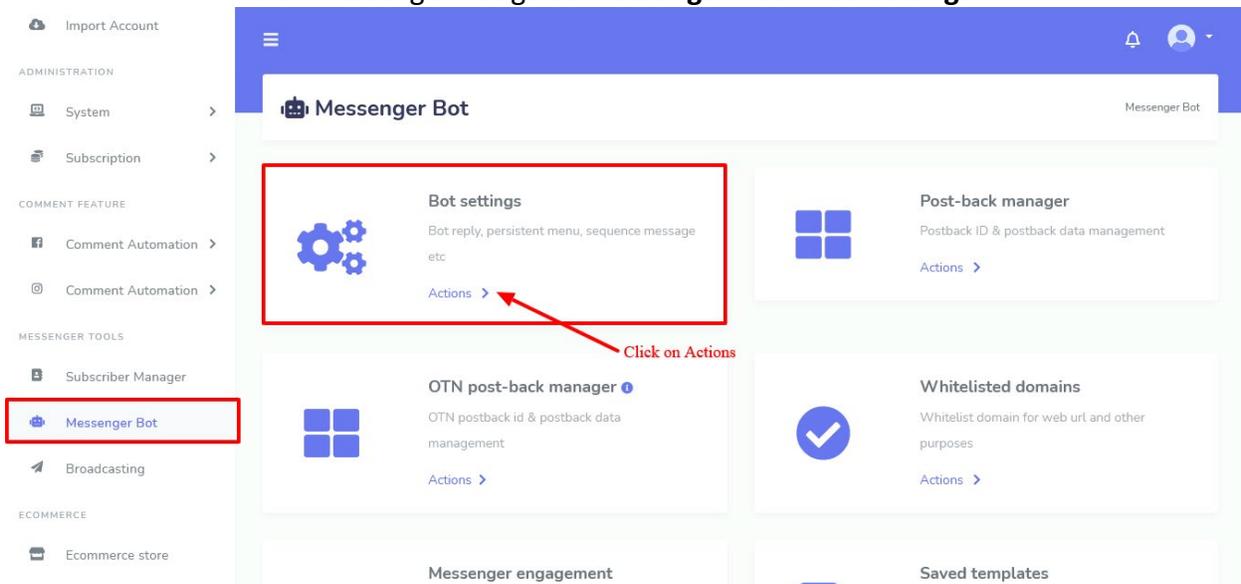
You can collect user's data or leads in 3 ways by using the Messenger Bot inside Facebook Messenger with Messenger bot. We will look into all the options we can use to collect user's data using Messenger Bot.

Quick Reply:

Quick replies are prior formatted answers you set up and then insert into a direct message to avoid having to type the same answer time and time again to different people. You can also use quick reply to collect users email, phone. I will explain how you can do that by using Messenger Bot. Quick Reply in Messenger, will just look like the below image:



From the dashboard of Messenger Bot go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**



Now select your Facebook page for which you want to create a quick reply. By default, **Bot**





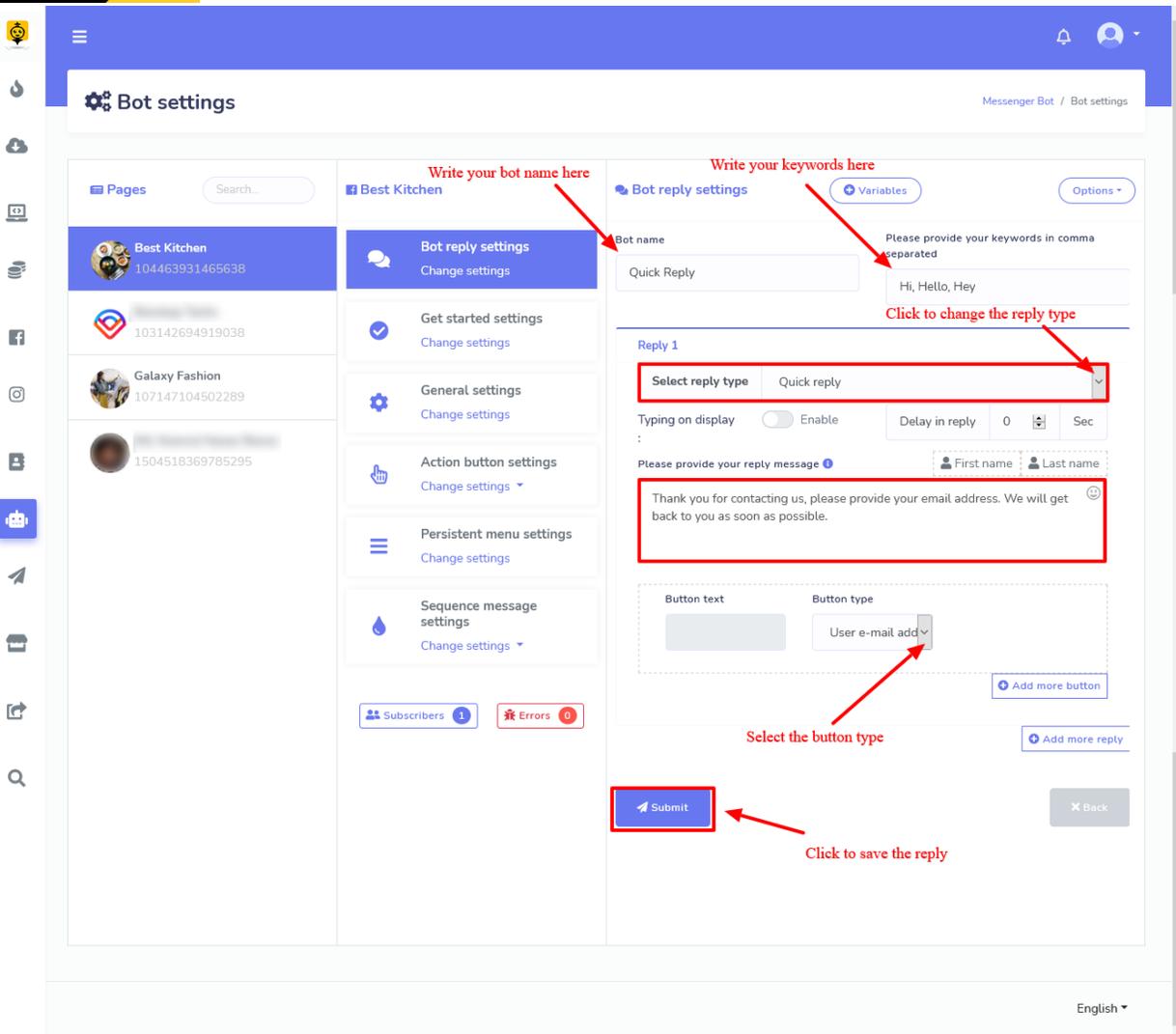
Reply Settings is selected. Click on **Add bot reply**.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot Bot settings interface. A red arrow points to the 'Best Kitchen' page in the 'Pages' list, with the text 'Select Facebook Page' above it. Another red arrow points to the 'Add bot reply' button in the 'Bot reply settings' section, with the text 'Click to add a bot reply' above it. The 'Bot reply settings' section is highlighted with a red box. The 'Bot reply settings' section includes a search bar, a table of replies, and a 'Variables' button. The table has columns for 'Sl', 'Bot name', 'Keywords', 'Status', and 'Actions'. The table contains three rows of replies.

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Actions
1	Quick reply	contact, get in touc...	Live	
2	User Input flow	visit	Live	
3	Web view user information	email, phone	Live	

Give a bot name, write keywords for which this bot reply will trigger. Then select reply type to “Quick Reply” from the drop-down list. Write your message on the Message box, after that select the “Button Type” to User-email address, for email and user phone number to collect phone number. Don’t type anything on “Button Text”, it’s already disabled for Quick Reply. Then click **Submit** to save the reply.





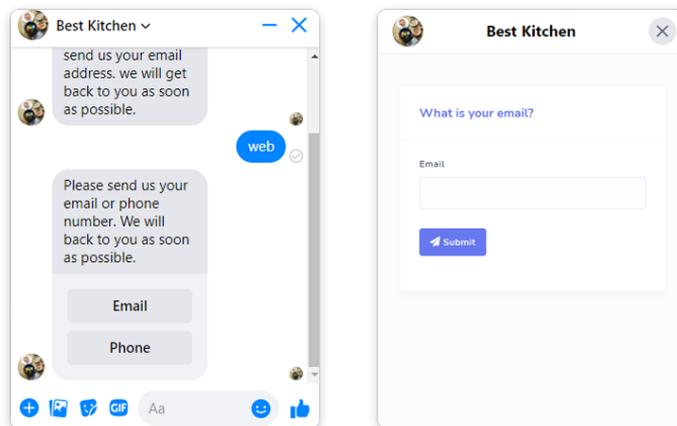
The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a Messenger bot. The left sidebar lists pages, with 'Best Kitchen' selected. The main area is divided into 'Bot reply settings' and 'Bot name' sections. Red arrows point to specific fields and buttons:

- 'Write your bot name here' points to the 'Bot name' field.
- 'Write your keywords here' points to the 'Quick Reply' field.
- 'Click to change the reply type' points to the 'Select reply type' dropdown menu.
- 'Select the button type' points to the 'User e-mail add' button type.
- 'Click to save the reply' points to the 'Submit' button.

The 'Reply 1' section shows a message: 'Thank you for contacting us, please provide your email address. We will get back to you as soon as possible.' Below it, a button with the text 'User e-mail add' is visible.

Web View:

We can also collect user's data like email or phone number using a web view form. Clients will see a web view form to enter their email or phone number.





The process of creating a “web view form” for the user’s email or phone number is almost the same as the Quick reply, just change the “Select reply type” to Text with buttons instead of Quick reply. And then select the Button type to User’s email and give a name for the button on the Button Text field. You can also select User’s phone to collect a phone number and a user’s location by selecting the User’s location as the Button type. Click on Submit to save the Reply template.

The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a Messenger Bot. The 'Bot reply settings' section is highlighted. Annotations include: 'Give a name to the bot' pointing to the 'Bot name' field (containing 'Web view'); 'Keywords to trigger web view bot' pointing to the 'Please provide your keywords in comma separated' field (containing 'Contact, get in touch, information'); 'Change it to Text with buttons' pointing to the 'Select reply type' dropdown menu (set to 'Text with buttons'); 'Click to add more button' pointing to the 'Add more button' button; and 'Click to save' pointing to the 'Update' button. The interface also shows a list of pages on the left and various settings options like 'Get started settings', 'General settings', 'Action button settings', 'Persistent menu settings', and 'Sequence message settings'. The 'Button text' and 'Button type' fields are also visible, with 'Email' and 'User's email' selected for the first button, and 'Phone' and 'User's phone' selected for the second button.

User Input Flow and Custom Field: (Needs User Input & Custom Fields : A Messenger Bot Add-on)

Other than Quick Reply and web view there is a fantastic and powerful way to collect lead or user’s data, that is User Input Flow and Custom Field. It’s a special add-on of Messenger Bot to collect user’s data. Besides the user’s phone and email, it can collect any kind of user data in text, number, and date-time format. It can collect Full name, age, image, audio, video, and so





on. We can also create Custom fields other than a system-defined field to collect user's data and use them as a variable.

We can collect user's data and use them in real-time, for example, collect user's name and then call them by their name instantly. When you will use User Input Flow and Custom Field to collect data, users will feel like they are talking to a human while It's nothing but a Bot.

Now, we will see how to create a User Input Flow and Custom Field. First, you need to get the add-on and install it with Messenger Bot.

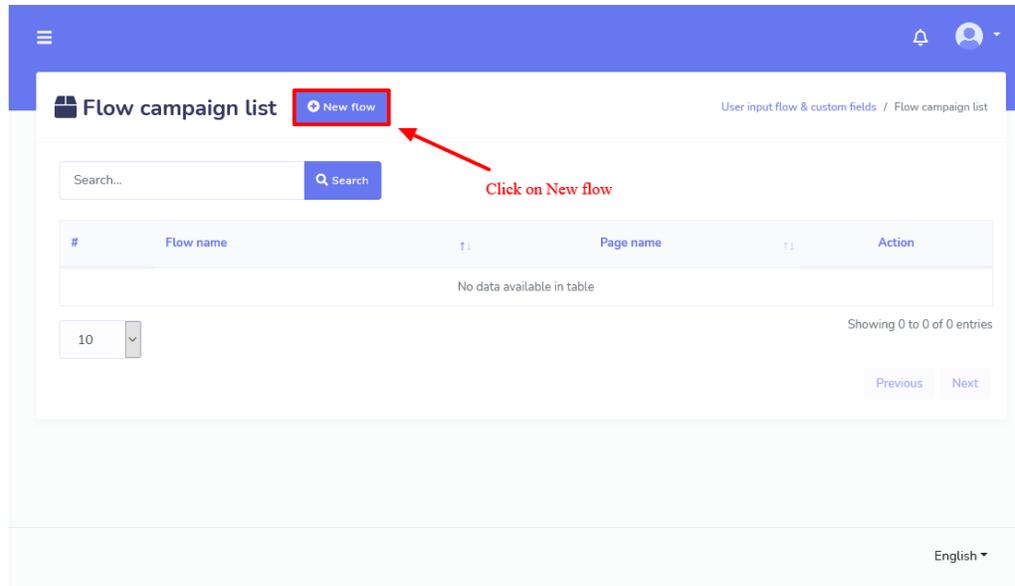
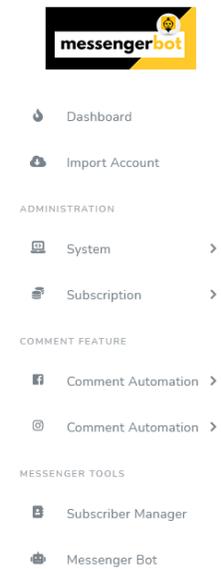
Now go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom Field** and click on **Actions** then Click on **User input flow campaign**





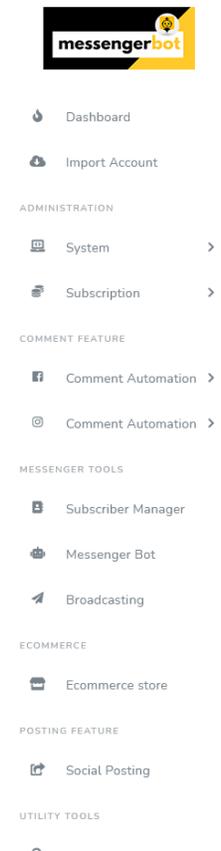
When you click on **User input flow campaign**, the Flow Campaign list interface will appear. At the top left corner, you can see a button named **New Flow**, click on this button to create a new User Input Flow. An interface to create a new user input flow will appear.





Give the campaign a name and choose the Facebook page for which you want to create the User Input Flow. We can create 2 types of user input flow, one is Free keyboard input, and the other one is Multiple choice. You can find these options on the right side of the interface. Under Free Keyboard input we have Email, Phone, Text, Number, URL, File, Image, Video, Date, Time, and Datetime. Just click on them to create your desired flow. You can add as many questions as you want.





You can also create a custom field to store user's data, but this is optional because to store Email; there is already a system defined field. To create custom fields, go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom field > Actions > Custom field**, an Interface to create Custom field will appear. Click on **New Custom Filed** to create a new custom field, a pop up form will appear, give a custom field name and select a reply type from drop down list. Then click the save button to save the New Custom Field.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System >
 - Subscription >
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation >
 - Comment Automation >
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot

Custom field list **New custom field** ← Click here to create a custom field

Search... Search

#	Name	Reply type	Created time	Action
No data available in table				

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

Previous Next

English

Custom field creation:

+ Add custom field

Custom field name

Email Address

Reply type

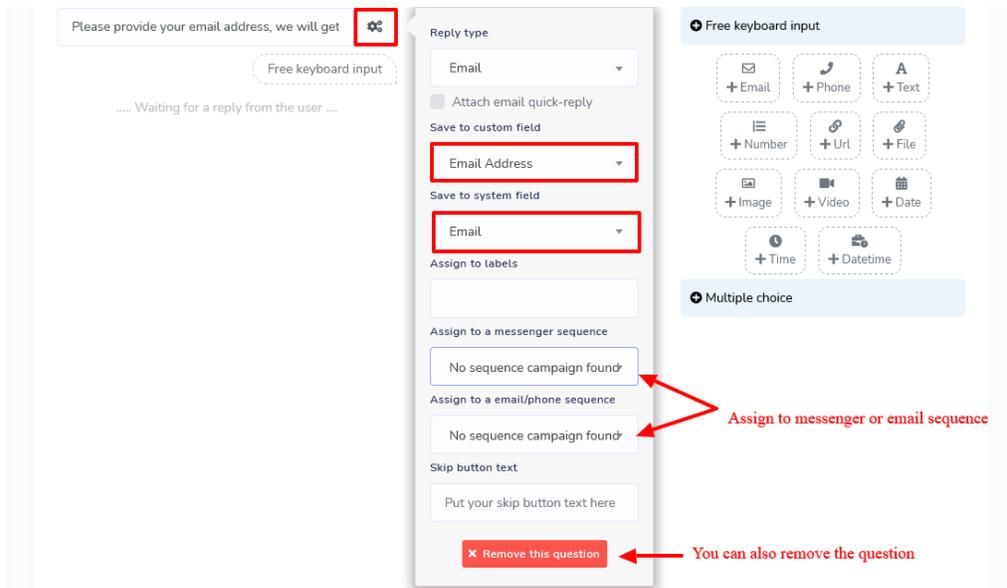
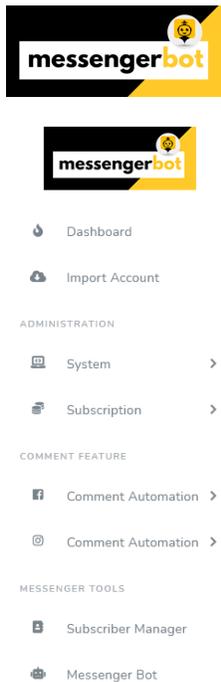
Email

Click to change reply type

Save Close

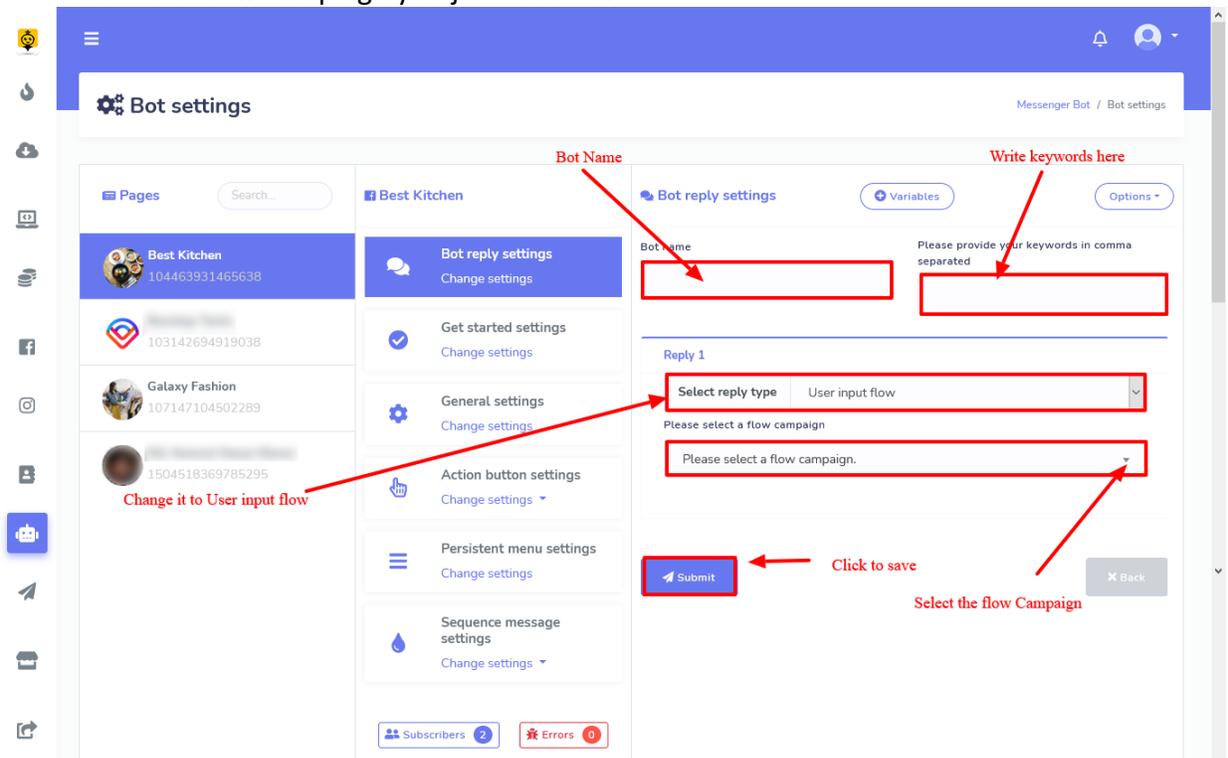
There is a settings button with every question you create for the flow, click on settings to define where the data should be saved. There are two options to save user's data, one is System Field and the other one is Custom field. You can also assign to a messenger sequence or email/phone sequence. There is also a skip button to skip the question for your user. You can as well remove the questions from this setting.





Finally, select a final reply template when you are done with questions. You can create a new Final reply template by clicking on the **Add** button. When you are done with all the questions for your flow, click on the **Submit** button to save the campaign

Now we need to Integrate this User Input Flow to a Messenger Bot. Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**. Select your Facebook page and add a bot reply. Give the bot a name, put keywords to trigger the bot. Then select the Reply type to “User Input Flow”, from the drop-down list and next select the Flow campaign you just created.





How To Create A Sales Funnel In Messenger With Messenger Bot

Have you ever considered creating a sales funnel? Think it's complicated and overwhelming? Don't know where to begin? As an entrepreneur, you realize marketing's importance: In the absence of marketing, your business would ultimately fail due to the lack of new customers. Therefore, if you haven't already put time and effort into this task, now is the time to start; and one easy way to start is the utilization of Messenger Bot as a sales funnel.

What is a sales funnel?

A sales funnel is the marketing term for the voyage potential client goes through on the way to buy. There are different steps to a sales funnel, commonly known as the top, middle, and bottom of the funnel, even though these steps may vary depending on a business's sales model.

A typical sales funnel has 4 stages:

1. Awareness
2. Interest
3. Decision
4. Action

These four stages represent your prospective customer's mindset. A sales funnel is started by marketing activities that generate awareness and build demand for a product or service, such as social media posts, paid ads, blogging on relevant topics for your target audience, ad retargeting, or SEO. At this stage, the prospects are in huge amounts.

Moving a customer through the funnel is carefully designed to raise consciousness and inform the customer on the benefits of your products to move them toward making a buying decision.

Over time, customers go down through the sales funnel, from primary contact to final purchase – as they learn more about your product and get interested in your product and make the final decision to purchase it. When they become your customer, you may send them more offers on your other products that may or may not related to that particular product.





Creating a Sales Funnel using Messenger Bot:

In this article i am going to describe the features which will need two more add-ons for Messenger Bot.

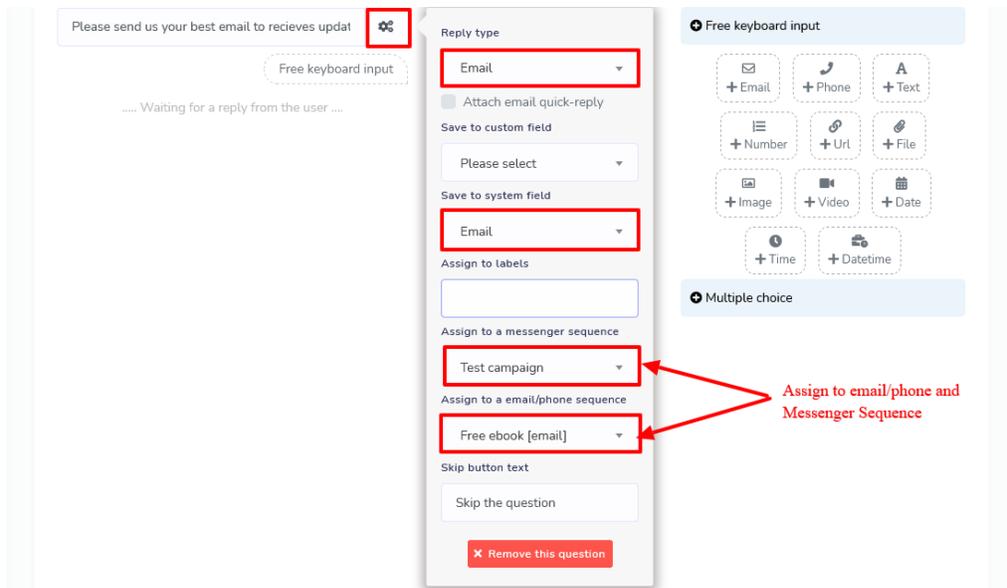
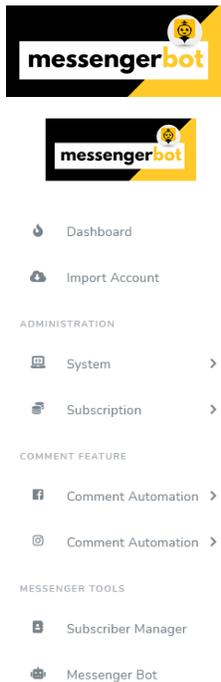
1. Email & SMS Sequence Campaigner Add-on
2. Messenger Bot User Input & Custom Fields Add-on

Collect Leads/Email:

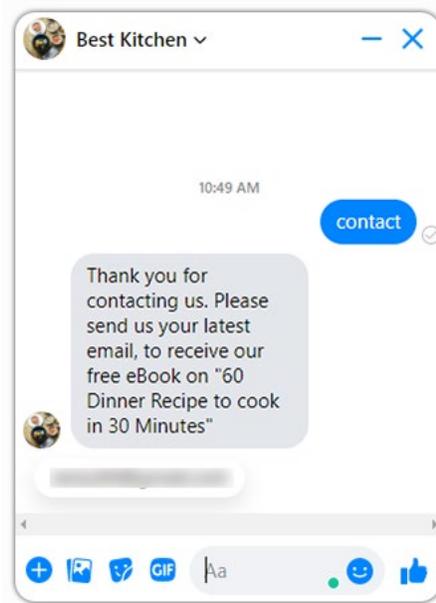
The first thing you need to do is collect leads. When a customer comes to your Facebook Messenger, you need to collect their email or phone number. To do that, you can create a lead magnet. What is a lead magnet? You can offer a free eBook or anything related to your product as a gift to collect their email or phone. In this case, the eBook is the lead magnet. Now you have leads instead of prospects. They are moving through your sales funnel.

There are three ways in Messenger Bot to collect leads, you can use Quick Reply, Web View, and User Input Flow & custom field (A Messenger Bot Add-on).





Example of Lead Magnet: (in the image below)

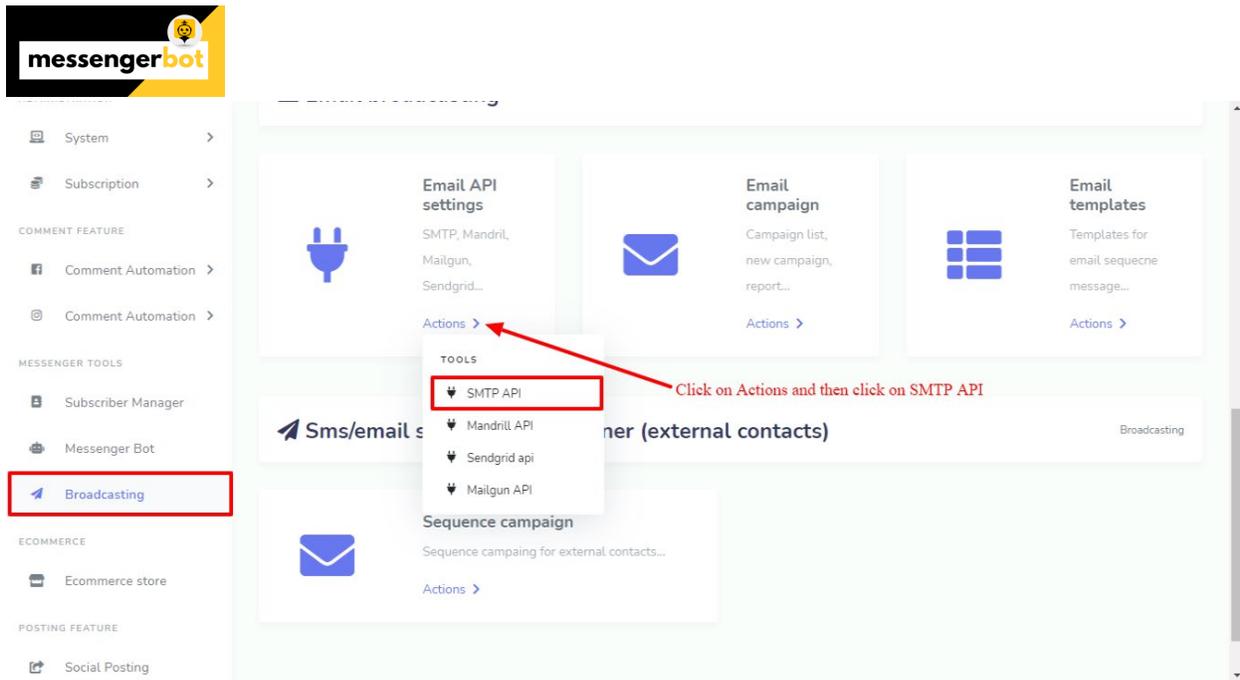


Add Email sender and SMS sender API to send Email and SMS:

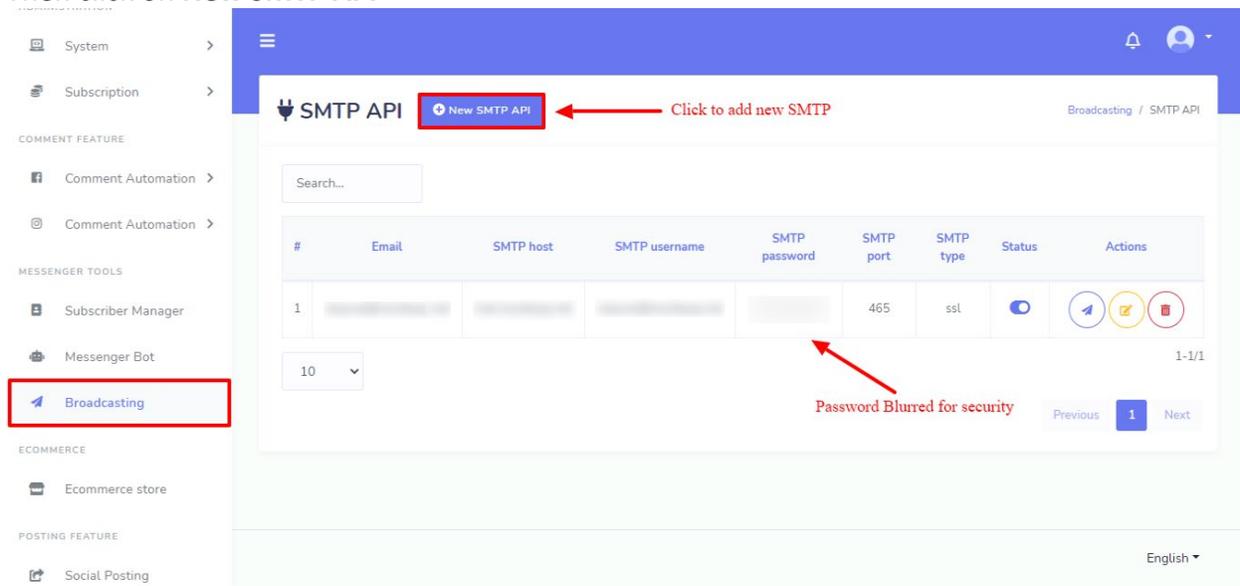
Before we create the sales funnel, we need to add the Email/SMS sender API, we will see how to add Email sender API or SMTP server.

To add an Email sender API or SMTP Server go to **Broadcasting>Email API settings >Actions** I have added an SMTP API here, you can add Madrill, Sendgrid, and Mailgun API too. Please follow the screenshots for the step-by-step process to add an SMTP or email sender API.





Then click on **New SMTP API**



Now that we have set up the SMTP API, Messenger Bot can handle the rest to send follow up emails. We just need to set the default API's for Email and SMS sequence campaign.

Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**, select you Facebook page and then go to **General Settings** In the right side under "SMS sequence integration" and "Email sequence integration" choose the API's you want to use for the Sequence campaign.



Bot settings

Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Pages Search...

Best Kitchen (MARC2021-R05E38)

103142694919038

107147104502289

1504518369785295

Best Kitchen Bot reply settings Change settings

Get started settings Change settings

General settings Change settings

Action button settings Change settings

Persistent menu settings Change settings

Sequence message settings Change settings

Subscribers 0 Errors 2

General settings Variables Options

Mark as seen status Disabled

Chat with human email

Reply if no match found

Mailchimp integration Add Mailchimp API
Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.
Select Mailchimp list [Api log](#)

Sendinblue integration Add Sendinblue API
Select Sendinblue list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select Sendinblue list [Api log](#)

ActiveCampaign integration Add ActiveCampaign API
Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select ActiveCampaign list [Api log](#)

Mautic integration Add mautic api
Select mautic list where email will be sent when user signup. page name will be added as tag name in your mautic list.
Select mautic list [Api log](#)

Acelle integration Add acelle api
Select acelle list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select acelle list [Api log](#)

SMS integration Add SMS API
Send automated sms to users who provide phone number through quick reply.
Select sms API [Api log](#)

SMS reply message First name Last name

Email integration Add email api
Send automated email to users who provide email address through quick reply.
Select email api [Api log](#)

Select API

Email reply message First name Last name

Email subject

Sms sequence integration
Set sms sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button.
Select sms API
clickatell-platform

Select sequence campaign Refresh lists

Email sequence integration
Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button.
Select email api
SMTP: @

Select sequence campaign Refresh lists

Save Click to save

Select the SMS API

Select the Email sender API

Click to save



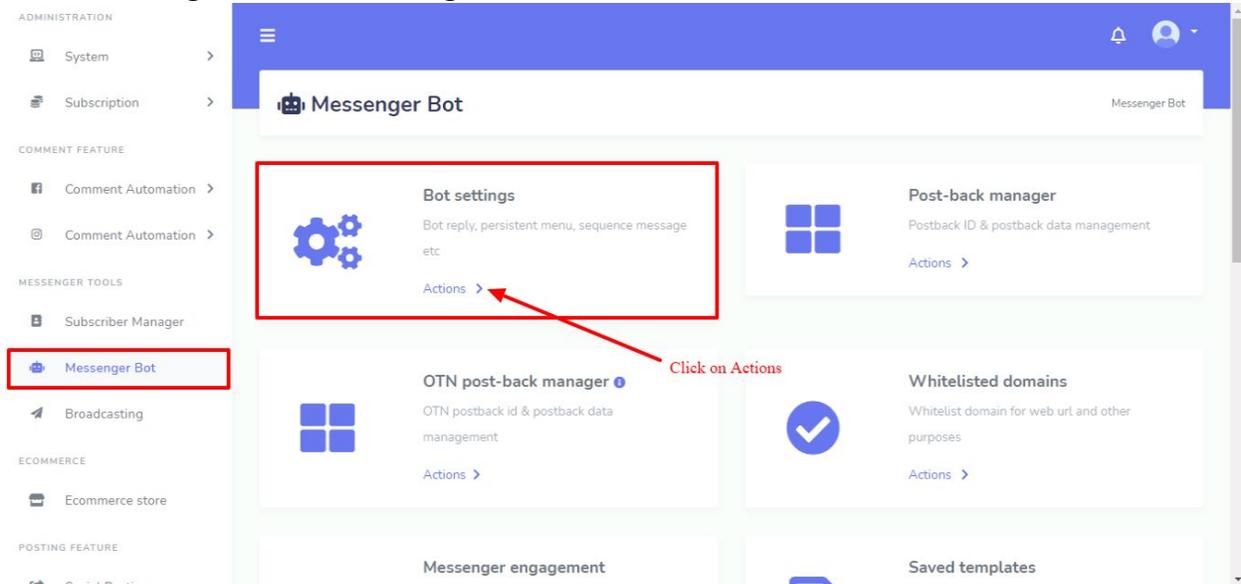


Assign leads to Email, SMS, Messenger Sequence:

The most effective sales funnel could be created by using the “User Input Flow & Custom Field” (A Messenger Bot Add-on). Also, you must need another add-on of Messenger Bot named “Email/SMS sequence campaigner”. We will create an Email or SMS Sequence first and then assign the sequence to leads (Email and Phone). Please follow the steps below to create a successful sales funnel.

Step-1 (Creating Email/SMS Sequence):

Go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings**



When you click on **Actions** under the Bot setting, the Bot Settings interface will appear. Select your Facebook Page and then go to Sequence Message Setting and click on Change settings, a drop-down menu will appear with Messenger sequence settings and SMS/email sequence settings. Click on SMS/email sequence settings to create an SMS/email sequence.



Bot settings Select Facebook Page from here Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Pages

- Best Kitchen** 104463931465638
- 103142694919038
- 107147104502289
- 1504518369785295

Best Kitchen Bot reply settings Change settings

- Get started settings** Change settings
- General settings** Change settings
- Action button settings** Change settings
- Persistent menu settings**
- Sequence message settings** Change settings
 - Messenger sequence settings**
 - Sms/email sequence settings**

Bot reply settings Variables Options Add bot reply

Sl	Bot name	Keywords	Status	Actions
1	doctor	doctor	Live	
2	Quick Reply	contact	Live	
3	Web view	hi	Live	

10 Previous **1** Next

English





In the same window, on the right side, the SMS/email sequence interface will appear. Click on the **Add sequence** button.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot settings interface. On the left, there is a sidebar with various icons and a list of pages. The 'Best Kitchen' page is highlighted with a red box. In the center, there are several settings panels for 'Best Kitchen', including 'Bot reply settings', 'Get started settings', 'General settings', 'Action button settings', 'Persistent menu settings', and 'Sequence message settings'. The 'Sequence message settings' panel is highlighted with a red box. On the right, there is a 'Sms/email sequence settings' panel. It has a search bar and an 'Add sequence' button highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from the text 'Click to create a new sequence' above the button to the button itself. Below the search bar, there is a table with columns: 'Sl', 'Name', 'Last sent', 'Campaign type', 'Engagement campaign', and 'Actions'. The table is currently empty, showing 'No data available in table'. At the bottom right of the table, it says 'Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries' and has 'Previous' and 'Next' buttons. The interface also has a 'Variables' button and an 'Options' dropdown menu.

Give a name for the Campaign, then select the type of Sequence from Email / SMS, then Sequence time, we can create two types of sequence, one is 24 hours and the other one is Daily. Here I have selected Daily because I will create a sequence campaign that will last for few days, you can also create a campaign for 24 hours, sending different emails or SMS on the same day within the 24 Hours.

You can also change the starting and closing time. Select your time zone. Then select the email template from the dropdown list for days you want to send an email. You can add new template and add more days to the campaign.





On the first day of the email sequence, I will send an email with the eBook I promised to giveaway for free. So, I will create my first email sequence with a greeting for being on my subscriber's list and send them the free eBook on "60 Dinner Recipe to cook in 30 minutes"

The screenshot displays the 'Bot settings' interface for a page named 'Best Kitchen'. The 'Sms/email sequence settings' section is active, showing a campaign named 'Free ebook' and a sequence type of 'Email'. The 'Sequence time' section is set to 'Daily' with a starting time of 00:00 and a closing time of 23:59. The time zone is '(GMT+6:00) Asia/Dhaka (Bangladesh Time)'. The sequence consists of three days: Day-1 with 'Free eBook [email]', Day-2 with '--- Do not send message ---', and Day-3 with 'Sending to eCommerce site [email]'. A red circle highlights a plus sign icon at the bottom right of the sequence list, with a red arrow pointing to it and the text 'Click to add new Email Template' below. The interface also shows 'Subscribers: 3' and 'Errors: 2' at the bottom of the settings panel.

Click on the (+) Add new template to create an email template, and then set it for the email sequence.





+ Add template ×

Template name

Subject

Content

Nunito

Hello,

Here is the free ebook i promised. Feel free to download the ebook.

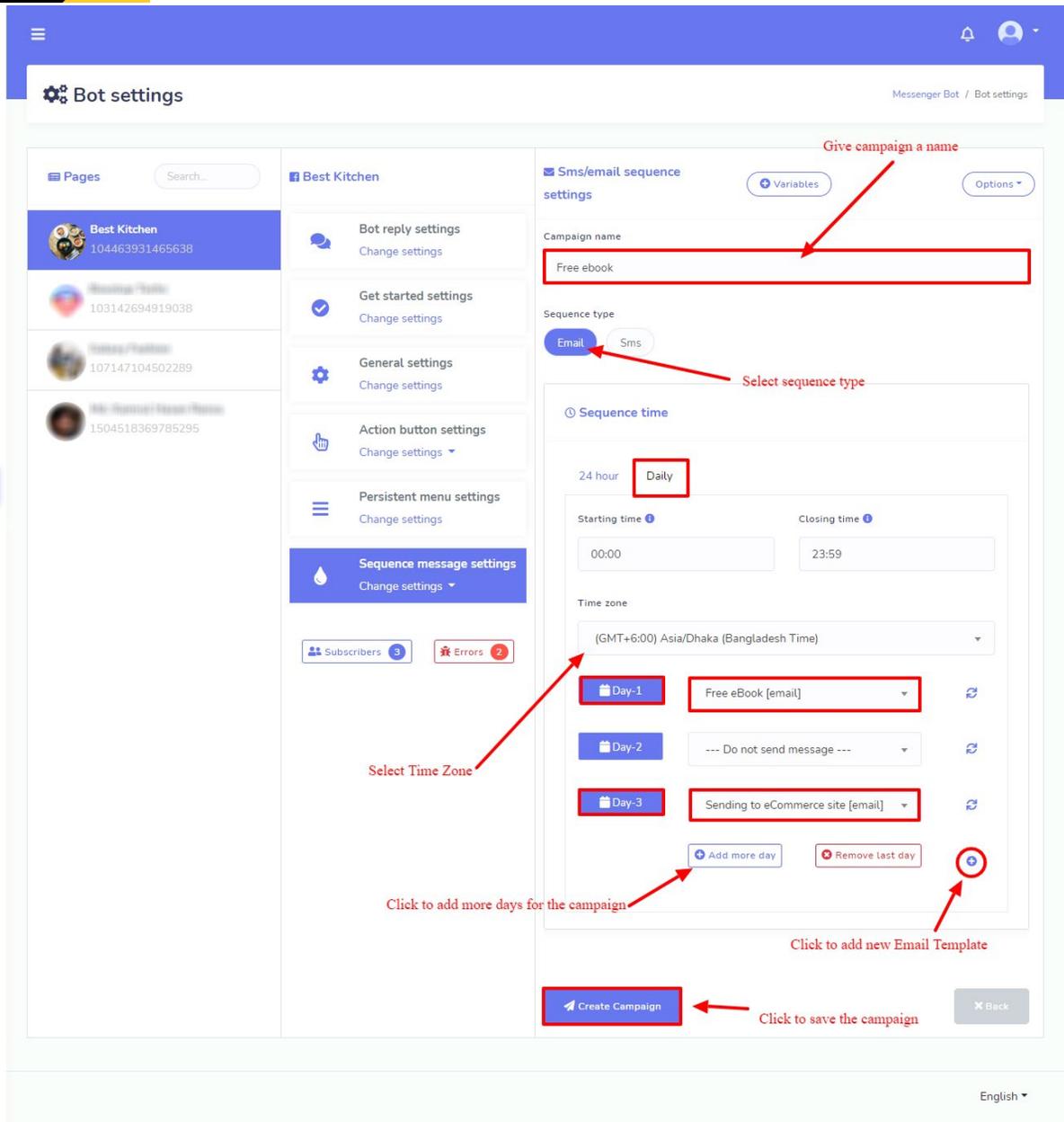
Thank you.

Email body

Click to save

On **Day-1** of the sequence I will add the first email template (Email with the free eBook). For **Day-2** I will not send any email, and on **Day-3** I will set my second email (sending to the sales page), finally save the campaign. You can add more days to send more emails to the sequence if you want to.





The screenshot shows the 'Bot settings' interface for a bot named 'Best Kitchen'. The 'Sms/email sequence settings' section is highlighted, showing the following configuration:

- Campaign name:** Free ebook (Annotated: Give campaign a name)
- Sequence type:** Email (Annotated: Select sequence type)
- Sequence time:**
 - Frequency: Daily (Annotated: Select Time Zone)
 - Starting time: 00:00
 - Closing time: 23:59
 - Time zone: (GMT+6:00) Asia/Dhaka (Bangladesh Time)
 - Day-1: Free eBook [email]
 - Day-2: --- Do not send message ---
 - Day-3: Sending to eCommerce site [email]
 - Buttons: Add more day, Remove last day (Annotated: Click to add more days for the campaign)
 - Settings icon (Annotated: Click to add new Email Template)
- Bottom bar:** Create Campaign (Annotated: Click to save the campaign), Back

You can create different SMS/email sequences for a different group of leads, and assign them accordingly.

You can also create a Messenger sequence, but Facebook Messenger allows you to send a promotional message only within 24 Hours of the subscription.

Step-2 (Assign the Sequence while creating User Input Flow):

To create a User Input Flow, go to **Messenger Bot > User Input Flow & Custom Field** and click on **Actions** then Click on **User input flow campaign**



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left is a navigation sidebar with categories: Dashboard, Import Account, ADMINISTRATION (System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting), ECOMMERCE (Ecommerce store), POSTING FEATURE (Social Posting), and UTILITY TOOLS (Search Tools). A 'Support desk' button is at the bottom of the sidebar. The main content area contains several cards: Bot settings, Post-back manager, OTN post-back manager, Whitelisted domains, Messenger engagement, Saved templates, JSON API Connector, Webform builder, User input flow & custom fields, and Email auto responder. The 'User input flow & custom fields' card is highlighted with a red box. A red arrow points from the text 'Click on Actions' to the 'Actions >' link of this card. Another red arrow points from the text 'Click on User input flow campaign' to the 'User input flow campaign' checkbox in the dropdown menu that appears when the 'Actions >' link is clicked. The footer shows '© XeroChat' and 'English'.

When you click on **User input flow campaign**, the Flow Campaign list interface will appear. At the top left corner, you can see a button named **New Flow**, click on this button to create a new User Input Flow. An interface to create a new user input flow will appear.





Flow campaign list

Search... Search

Click on New flow

#	Flow name	Page name	Action
No data available in table			

Showing 0 to 0 of 0 entries

Previous Next

© XeroChat English

Give the campaign a name and choose the Facebook page for which you want to create the User Input Flow. From the left side choose a question type. Here I have selected email, to collect the user's email. Write the message to ask for the email.

Edit user input flow

Select Facebook Page + Variables

Give a name for campaign

Campaign name: Collect User Email

Choose a page: Best Kitchen | [Facebook Page Name]

User input flow start

Please send us your best email to receives updates on our foods.

Free keyboard input

+ Email + Phone + Text

+ Number + Url + File

+ Image + Video + Date

+ Time + Datetime

What do you want to order?

With every question there is a settings button, click on that settings button. From the settings, assign the SMS/email sequence and Messenger sequence for the lead.



Save the User Input Flow, and then add this “user input flow” to the messenger bot.

Sales funnel without “User Input Flow and Custom Field (A Messenger Bot Add-on)”:

You can also create a sales funnel without “User Input Flow & Custom Field”. There are two ways other than “User Input Flow & Custom Field” to collect the user’s email and phone number. You can use “Quick Reply” and “Web View” to collect leads and then assign SMS/email sequence to those leads. But this is limited to only one particular SMS/Email sequence at a time. But with the use of “User Input Flow & Custom Field” we can create different types of Sms/Email sequence for different group of leads.

To create an Sms/Email sequence for leads collected by “Quick Reply” and “Web View” go to **Messenger Bot > Bot Settings > General Settings** and select the Sms Sequence campaign and Email Sequence campaign on the perspective field as shown below.



Bot settings Messenger Bot / Bot settings

Pages

- Best Kitchen** 104463931465638
- Best Kitchen** 103142694919038
- Best Kitchen** 107147104502289
- Best Kitchen** 1504518369785295

Best Kitchen

- Bot reply settings [Change settings](#)
- Get started settings [Change settings](#)
- General settings** [Change settings](#)
- Action button settings [Change settings](#)
- Persistent menu settings [Change settings](#)
- Sequence message settings [Change settings](#)

[Subscribers](#) [Errors](#)

General settings [Variables](#) [Options](#)

Mark as seen status: Disabled

Chat with human email:

Reply if no match found

Mailchimp integration [Add Mailchimp API](#)
Send collected email from quick reply to your Mailchimp account list. Page name will be added as tag name in your Mailchimp list.
Select Mailchimp list [Api log](#)

Sendinblue integration [Add Sendinblue API](#)
Select Sendinblue list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select Sendinblue list [Api log](#)

ActiveCampaign integration [Add ActiveCampaign API](#)
Select ActiveCampaign list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select ActiveCampaign list [Api log](#)

Mautic integration [Add mautic api](#)
Select mautic list where email will be sent when user signup. page name will be added as tag name in your mautic list.
Select mautic list [Api log](#)

Acelle integration [Add acelle api](#)
Select acelle list where email will be sent when user signup.
Select acelle list [Api log](#)

SMS integration [Add SMS API](#)
Send automated sms to users who provide phone number through quick reply.
Select sms API [Api log](#)

SMS reply message:

Email integration [Add email api](#)
Send automated email to users who provide email address through quick reply.
Select email api [Api log](#)

Email reply message:

Email subject:

Sms sequence integration
Set sms sequence campaign for users, who provide phone number address through quick reply or post-back button.
Select sms API: clickatell-platform
Select sequence campaign [Refresh lists](#): Sms sequence

Email sequence integration
Set email sequence campaign for users, who provide email address through quick reply or post-back button.
Select email api: SMTP:
Select sequence campaign [Refresh lists](#): Free ebook

[Save](#)

Select SMS sequence

Select Email sequence



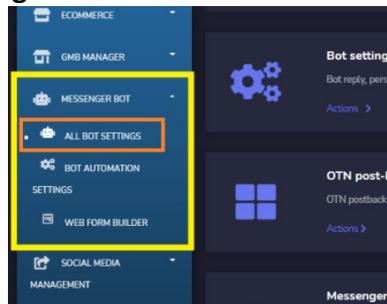


Abandoned cart recovery:

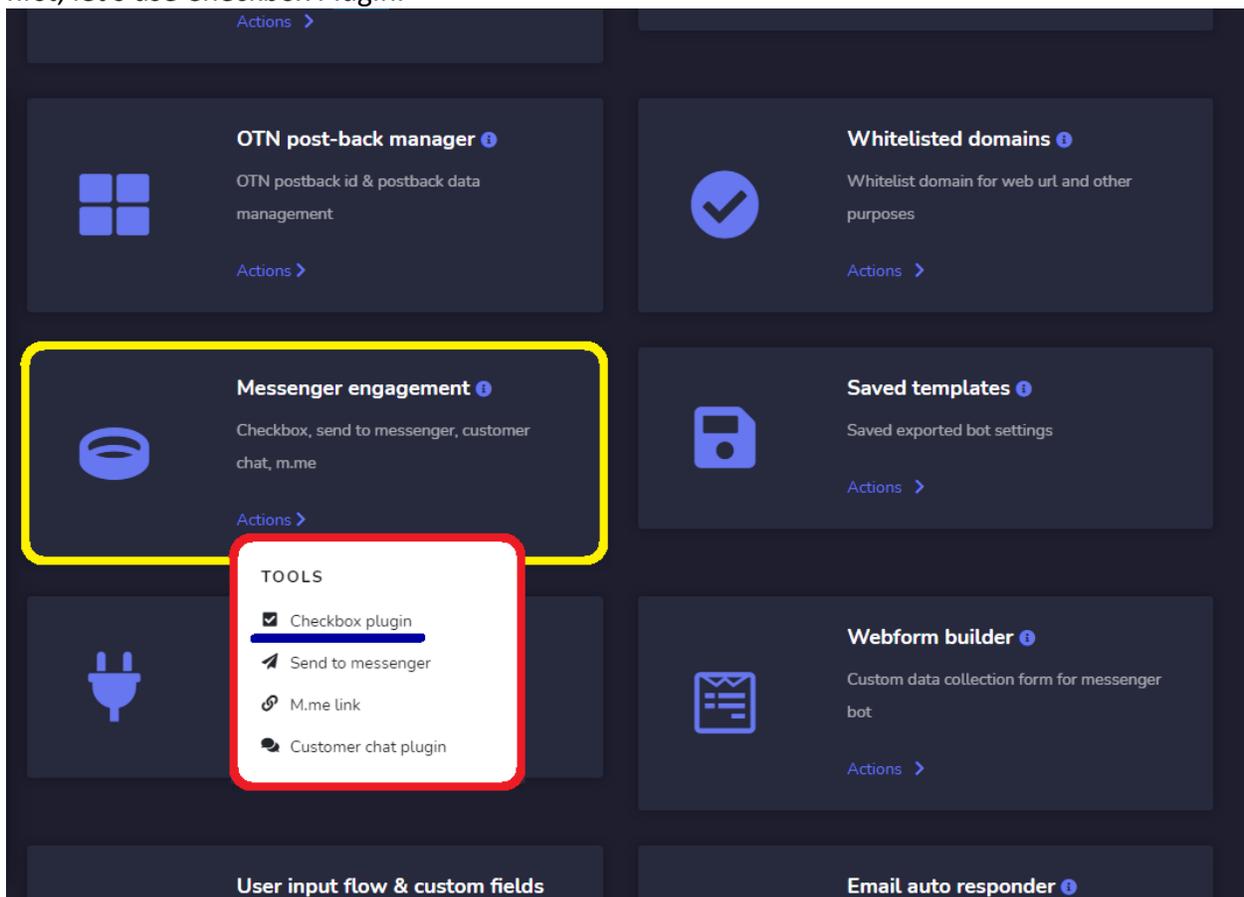
You can also optimize your sales funnel using Abandoned Cart Recovery. If you use Messenger Bot to create an eCommerce store on messenger and customers leave the eCommerce store after adding products to the cart. “Abandoned cart Recovery” could be used to send a notification to the buyer with a message.

Which Messenger Engagement Plugins Best To Use?

In your Dashboard select **Messenger Bot** and click **All Bot Settings**.



To access the messenger engagement section, select **Messenger engagement**, then select **Actions from the Messenger Bot screen**. A dropdown menu will show and choose on the Tools to use like **Checkbox Plugin**, **Send to Messenger**, **M.me Link**, and **Customer Chat Plugin**. But first, let's use **Checkbox Plugin**.





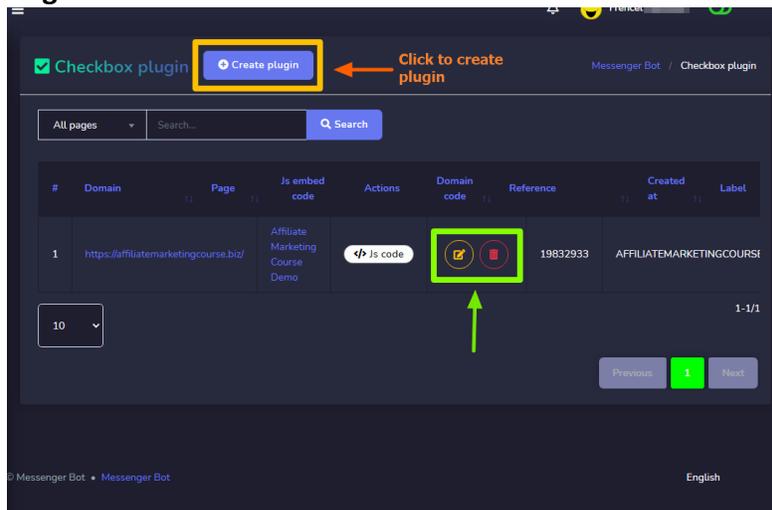
Checkbox Plugin

Checkbox plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the search bar. You can adjust the number of domains to be viewed per page. You can also arrange them in either ascending or descending order by selecting the arrows from the header.

Following actions can be performed from the checkbox plugin view:

- **Edit** the plugin
- **Delete** the plugin

Now click **Create Plugin**.



Select your **Facebook Page** for which you want to add the Plugin. **Provide** your **Domain** and you can select your preferred **Language**. You can select your **Plugin Skin**, you can **align** your Plugin to the Center, and you can also select your **Plugin Size**. If you enable **Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in. You need to provide your **redirect URL**.

Add checkbox plugin

Select page *

Domain *

Language *

Plugin skin *

Center align *

Plugin size *

Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success redirect url *





Provide your Opt-in success message on the website. You can **check the box** if you want to **add a button** in the success message.

Opt-in success message in website ⓘ

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

I want to add a button in success message

Checkbox validation error message ⓘ

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ Reference * ⓘ Select label ⓘ [Create label](#)

Get Started [English101_JYCGZJ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSI

[Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[Generate embed code](#)

Provide your **Button Text**, **Button URL**, select your **Button Background Color**, also choose your **Button Text**, **Button Hover Background**, and **Button Text Hover** color. You can also provide your **Checkbox Validation Error Message**, select your **Opt-in inbox confirmation message** template, your **Reference** and you have an option to **Select your Label**. Then, click **Generate embed code**.

Opt-in success message in website ⓘ

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

I want to add a button in success message

Button text * ⓘ Button url * ⓘ

Send Message https://m.me/101769115308123

Button background * Button text color * Button hover background * Button text hover color *

#149614 #ffffff #c93314 #750d72

Checkbox validation error message ⓘ

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ⓘ Reference * ⓘ Select label ⓘ [Create label](#)

Get Started [English101_JYCGZJ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSI

[Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[Generate embed code](#)





Click **Js Code** to copy the Js Code. **Copy the code below** and **paste it inside the HTML element** of your webpage where you want to **display this plugin**.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a notification bell, a user profile (Frencel), and a status indicator. Below that, a header for the 'Checkbox plugin' is visible, along with a 'Create plugin' button. A search bar is present with 'All pages' selected and a search icon. The main content is a table with columns: #, Domain, Page, Js embed code, Actions, Domain code, Reference, Created at, and Label. The first row is highlighted in yellow and contains the following data: # 1, Domain https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/, Page Affiliate Marketing Course Demo, Actions (with a 'Js code' button highlighted in green and an arrow pointing to it), Domain code (with a copy icon), Reference 19832933, and Label AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE. Below the table, there's a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1' of 1 pages. At the bottom, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons. A modal window titled 'Checkbox plugin embed code' is open, containing the instruction 'Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin' and a code block with the following HTML/JavaScript code:

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="MESSENGER_CHECKBOX_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/messenger_checkbox_plugin.js?code=19832933"></script>
```

 A 'Close' button is at the bottom right of the modal.

In your **WordPress Dashboard**, locate your **website builder** or your **Theme**. On this site we use **DIVI**. Then, select the **Integration tab** and **Paste the HTML Element** at any part of your site's Home Menu.



messengerbot

Affiliate Marketing Course 2 0 + New Rank Math SEO Cache Howdy, Frencl

Posts
Media
Pages
Comments
Projects
Rank Math
Appearance
Plugins 1
Users
Tools
Settings
Limit Login Attempts
D Divi
Theme Options
Theme Builder
Theme Customizer
Role Editor
Divi Library
Support Center
Collapse menu

Divi Theme Options

General Navigation Builder Layout Ads SEO **Integration** Updates

Code Integration

Enable header code **ENABLED**

Enable body code **ENABLED**

Enable single top code **ENABLED**

Enable single bottom code **ENABLED**

Add code to the < head > of your blog

```

1 <div style="z-index:9999999;" id="MESSENGER_CHECKBOX_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div>
<script type="text/javascript"
src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/messenger_checkbox_plugin.js?code=19832933"></script>

```

This is your Messenger Bot Plugin for your Website.

Affiliate Marketing Course 2 0 + New Edit Page Rank Math SEO Cache Enable Visual Builder Howdy, Frencl

Home

Home

Affiliate Marketing Course

In this course, you will learn how to generate targeted traffic to your website by using article marketing, video marketing, and social media marketing. These methods will help you drive qualified traffic to your website that will convert into sales.

In this course, you will learn how to use Internet marketing tools and techniques to build a list. You will learn how to use an autoresponder, a newsletter, and an opt-in list to send out information and follow-up communications to interested parties. When you have an autoresponder, you can track what people have sent and receive in a daily email. If you send out a newsletter, you can track the response to your emails and find out what questions people have asked you.

In this course, you will also learn how to build relationships with prospects, subscribers, and partners. To succeed online, you need people who will buy from you and trust your recommendations. If you have friends in high places on the Internet, you can give them access to your information and your products and services. You can share links to your website.

Send to Messenger

Not you?

Send to messenger plugin

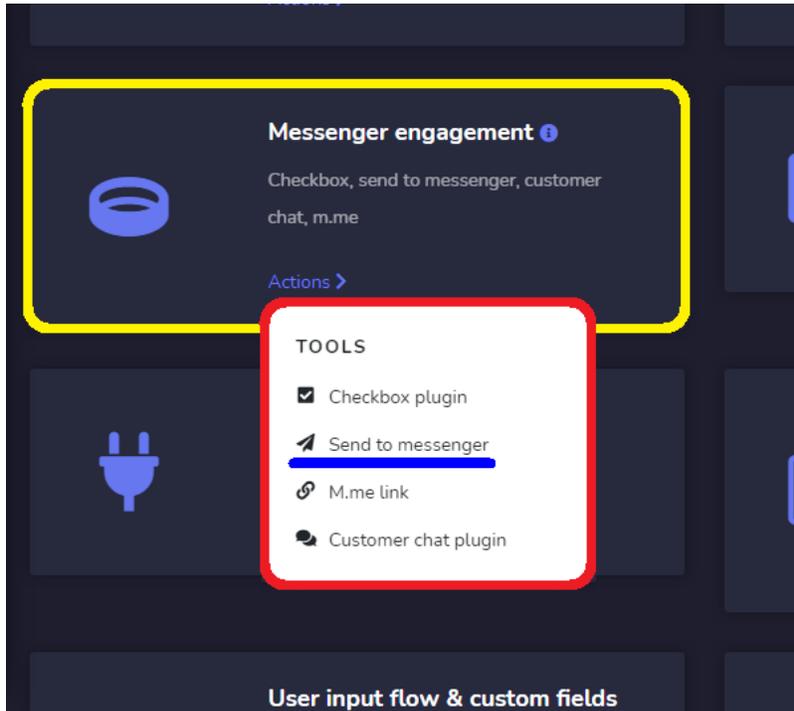
Send to messenger plugin screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of domains to be **viewed per page**.





You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending** order by selecting the **arrows from the header**.

Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select Messenger Engagement and click **Send to Messenger**.



Following **actions** can be performed from the Send to Messenger plugin view:

- **Edit** the plugin: Edit messenger plugin and select Update plugin.
- **Delete** the plugin

Click **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.





Select the **page** for which you want to **add the plugin**. Provide the **domain**. Select the **language** and **CTA button** text option. Select the **Plugin skin**, turn it to either **white** or **blue**. Select the **Plugin size**. Enable **Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in.

By **enabling the Redirect** to a webpage on successful opt-in. You need to **provide an Opt-in success redirect URL**.





Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success redirect url * [?](#)

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * [?](#) Reference * [?](#) Select label [?](#) [+ Create label](#)

Get Started [English101_JYCGZ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/

[+ Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[↩ Generate embed code](#) [X Cancel](#)

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English ▾

Provide an Opt-in success message on the website. You can also **add a button** in the success message. By **checking the box**. Provide **Button Text**, **Button URL**, choose colors for **Button Background**, **Button Text**, **Button Hover Background**, and **Button Text Hover**.

[Edit send to messenger plugin](#) Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin / Edit send to messenger plugin

Select page * [?](#) Domain * [?](#) Language * [?](#) Cta button text [?](#)

Affiliate Marketing Course Demo https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/ English (US) GET THIS IN MESSENGER

Plugin skin * [?](#) Plugin size * [?](#)

White Blue Standard Large Extra Large

Redirect to a webpage on successful opt-in

Opt-in success message in website [?](#)

You have been subscribed successfully, thank you.

I want to add a button in success message

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * [?](#) Reference * [?](#) Select label [?](#) [+ Create label](#)

Get Started [English101_JYCGZ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/

[+ Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[↩ Generate embed code](#) [X Cancel](#)

Click, the **JS Code**. To view the HTML Elements. **Copy the code** below and **paste it inside the HTML element** of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.



Send to messenger plugin [Create plugin](#) Messenger Bot / Send to messenger plugin

All pages Search... Search

#	Domain	Page	Js embed code	Actions	Domain code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo		 	1617279524372	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/		1st A 21

10 Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Send to messenger plugin embed code

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="SEND_TO_MESSENGER_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/send_to_messenger_plugin.js?code=1617279524372"></script>
```

Close

Created at Label

AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/ 1st A 21

10 Previous 1 Next





In your **WordPress Dashboard**, select your **theme or plugin builder**, then click **Theme Options** and select **Integration** in your Tab area. And **Paste the HTML elements** in here from your Messenger Bot.

The screenshot shows the Divi Theme Options interface. The 'Integration' tab is selected. Under 'Code Integration', there are four settings, all set to 'ENABLED':

- Enable header code
- Enable body code
- Enable single top code
- Enable single bottom code

Below these settings is a text area labeled 'Add code to the < head > of your blog'. A code block is pasted into this area:

```
1 <div style="z-index:9999999;" id="SEND_TO_MESSENGER_PLUGIN_LOADER_01"></div>
<script type="text/javascript"
src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/send_to_messenger_plugin.js?code=1617279524372"></script>
```

This is the **sample of Send to Messenger Plugin** on your Website.

The screenshot shows a website with a blue header. The main content area contains several paragraphs of text. At the bottom of the page, a Messenger chat widget is visible, highlighted with a blue border. The widget contains a blue button that says 'Get this in Messenger' and a text input field with the placeholder text 'Not you?'.

It will directed you to **Facebook Messenger**.



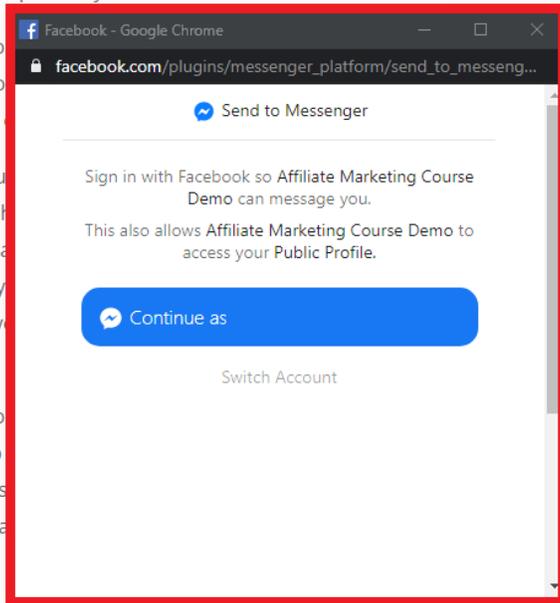


aspects that will provide you with valuable information to build trust and conversion r

this course, you using ar
arketing, video help you d

this course, you s to build
You will learn h o send ou
information a u have an
itorresponder, y il. If you s
a newsletter, y estions p

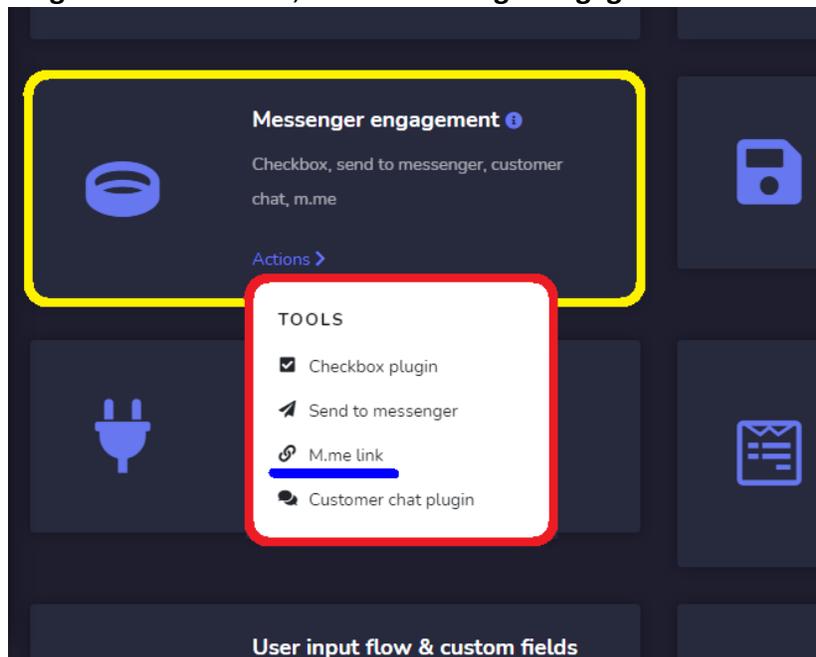
this course, yo scribers,
partners. To rust your
ommendations re them a
to your informa our websi



M.me link

M.me link screen consists of a **list of pages** you can **search for a specific page** by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of pages** to be **viewed per view**. You can also arrange them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select **Messenger Engagement** and click **M.me Link**.





Following actions can be performed from the M.me link view:

- **Edit** the plugin: Edit M.me link and select Update plugin.
- **Delete** the plugin.

Select **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a notification bell, a smiley face icon, the name 'Frencel', and a power button. Below this is a header for 'Send to messenger plugin' with a '+ Create plugin' button highlighted in a yellow box. Underneath is a search bar with 'All pages' selected and a 'Search' button. The main content is a table with columns: #, Domain, Page, Js embed code, Actions, Domain code, Reference, Created at, and Label. The first row has #1, Domain 'https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/', Page 'Affiliate Marketing Course Demo', Js embed code '</> Js code', Actions (edit and delete icons highlighted in a yellow box), Domain code '1617279524372', Reference 'AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/', Created at, and Label '1st A 21'. At the bottom, there's a pagination control showing '10' items per page and 'Previous', '1', 'Next' buttons.

Select the **page** for which you want to add the plugin. Provide the **Button text**. Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**. Provide the **Button background, text color, hover over color**. Select **Button Size**.

Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message** template, **reference**, and **label**. Select **Generate embed code** option to create the send to messenger plugin.



You can select the **Embed code to be copied and paste** into your website. Between **Js Code** and **QR Code**.

#	Page	Embed code	Actions	Link code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Js code <input type="radio"/> Qr code	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>	10606407	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO	1st April 21	

Copy the **code below** and **paste it inside the HTML element** of your webpage where you want to display this plugin. Or you can use the **M.me Link** for your website.



</> M.me plugin embed code

✓ Plugin has been created successfully.

Copy the code below and paste inside the html element of your webpage where you want to display this plugin.

```
<div style="z-index:9999999;" id="MME_LINK_LOADER_01"></div><script type="text/javascript" src="https://start.messengerbot.app/messenger_bot_enhancers/mme_link.js?code=10606407"></script>
```

M.me link

```
https://m.me/101769115308123?ref=AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO
```

✕ Close

➡ Generate embed code

This is the M.me link QR code.

M.me link qr code



✕ Close

Messenger Bot / M.me link

#	Page	Embed code	Reference	Created at	Label
1	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	</> Js code	AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSEDEMO	1st April 21	

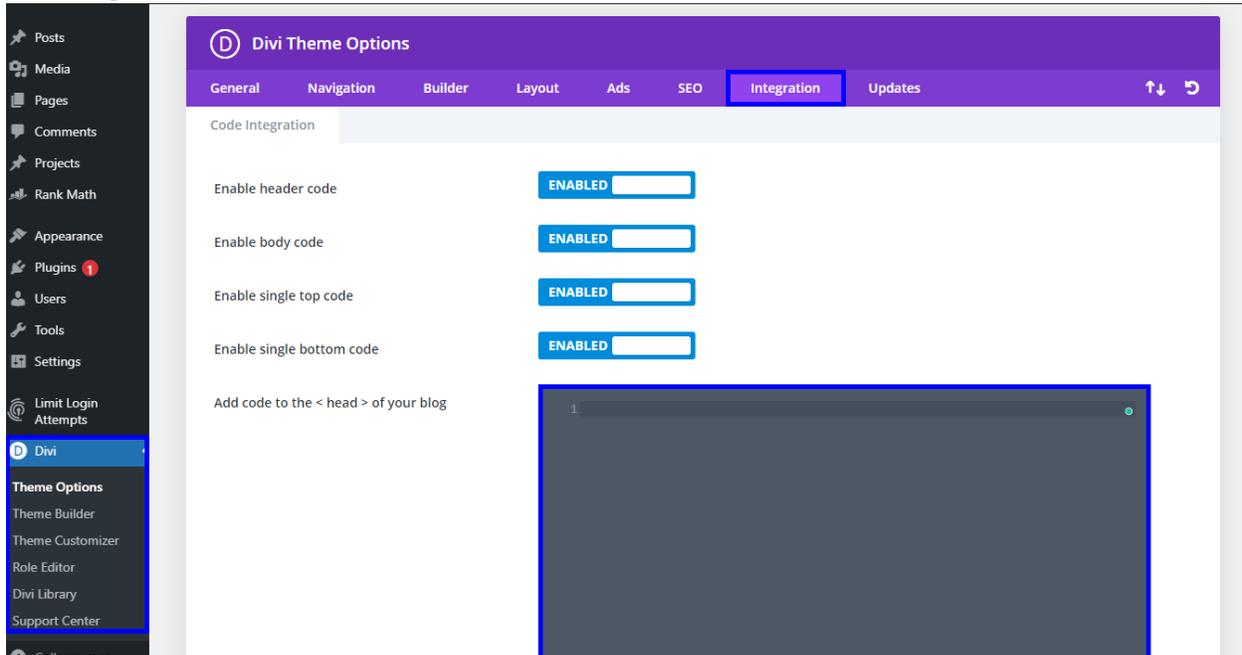
10

Previous 1 Next

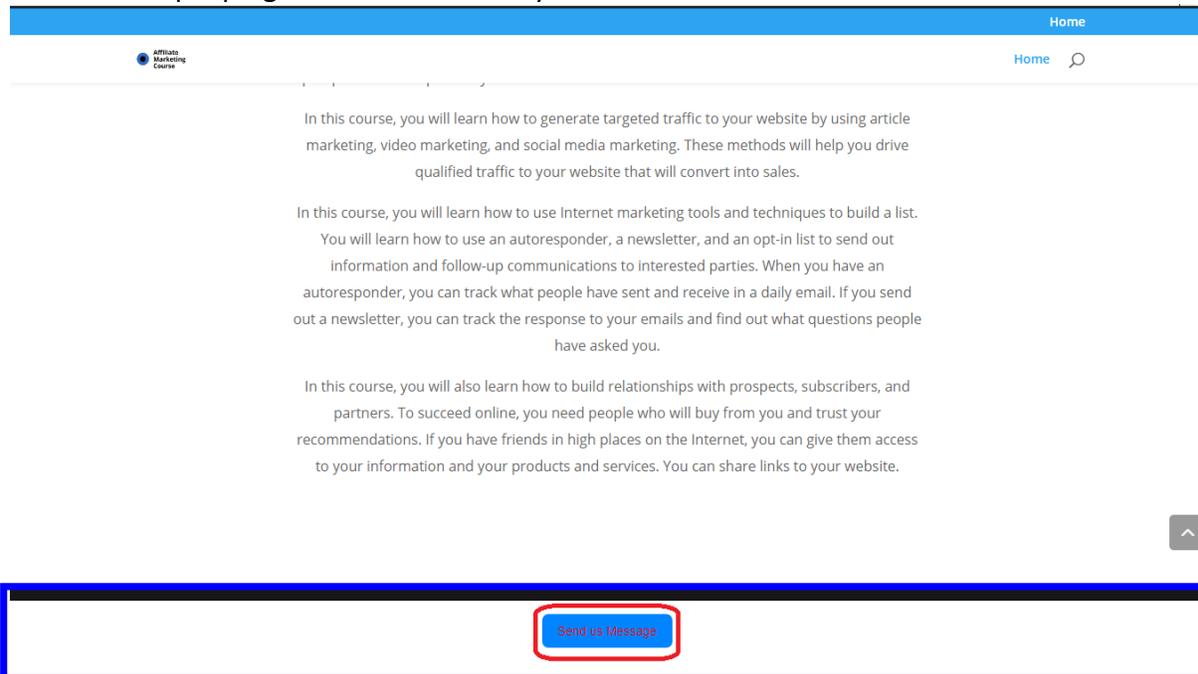




In your **WordPress Dashboard**, select your **theme or plugin builder**, then click **Theme Options** and select **Integration** in your Tab area. And **Paste the HTML elements in here** from your Messenger Bot.

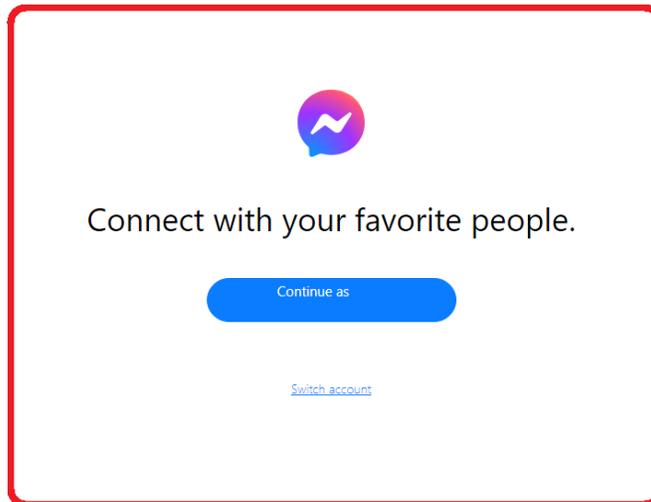


This is the sample plugin of **M.me Link** for your Website.



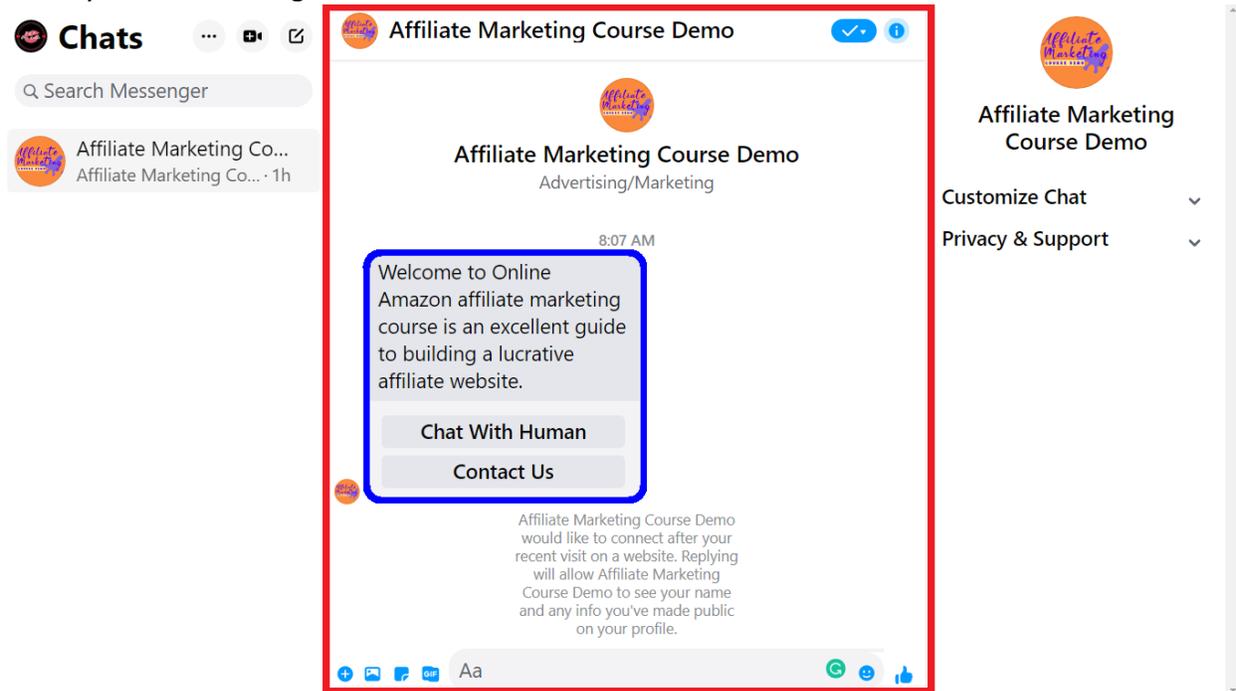
It will redirect you to your FB Messenger.





Not on Facebook? [Forgot Password](#) [Data Policy](#) [Terms](#) [Cookies Policy](#) © Facebook 2021

Inside your FB Messenger Bot.



Customer chat plugin

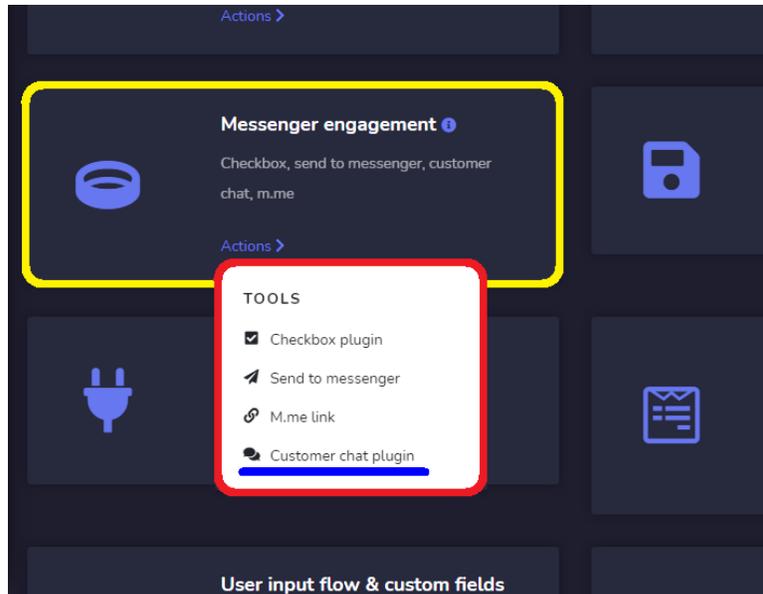
The **Customer Chat plugin** screen consists of a list of domains, you can search for a specific domain by using the search bar. You can adjust the **number** of domains to be **viewed per page**.





You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending** or **descending** order by selecting the **arrows** from the header.

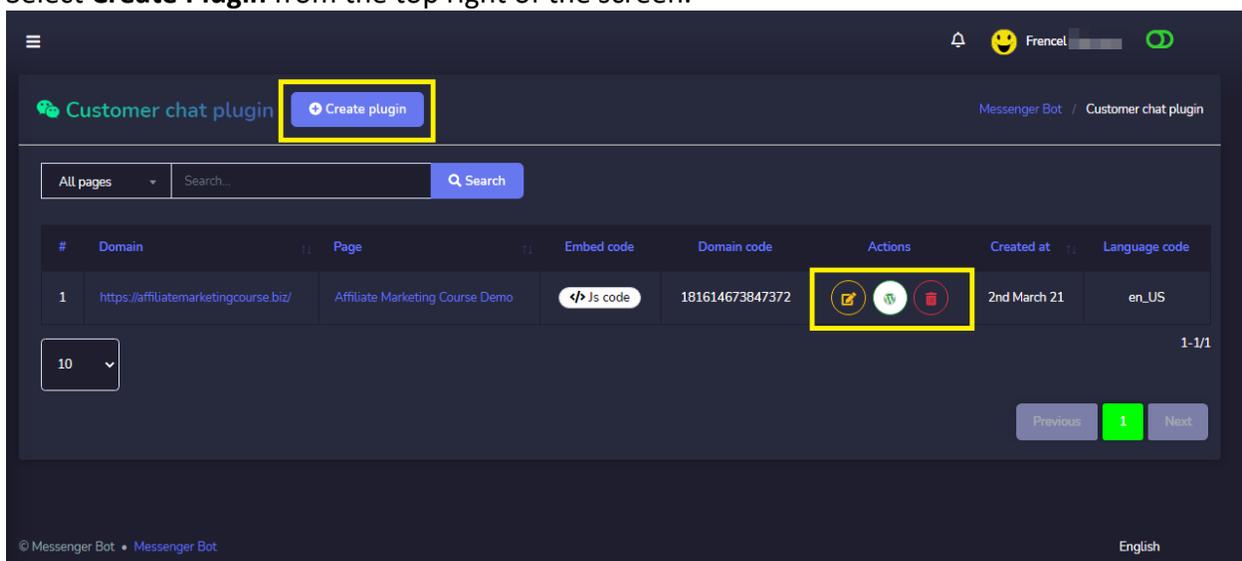
Back in the **Messenger Bot dashboard**, select **Messenger Engagement** and click **Customer Chat Plugin**.



Following actions can be performed from the Customer chat plugin view:

- **Edit the plugin:** Edit customer chat plugin and select Update plugin.
- **Download** WordPress plugin
- **Delete** the plugin.

Select **Create Plugin** from the top right of the screen.





Select the **page** for which you want to **add the plugin**. Enter the domain to be added in the **domain field**. Select the **language** and **chat plugin** loading option. Provide the **Delay**. Provide the **theme color**. Select **yes** or **no** for do not log in. Provide **greeting text if logged in or not to Facebook**. Select an **opt-in inbox confirmation message template**, **reference**, and **label**. Select **Generate embed code** option to create the **customer chat plugin**.

Editing customer chat plugin will require to copy new embed code and replace on website again.

Select page * ? Domain * ?

Affiliate Marketing Course Demo https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/

Language ? Chat plugin loading ?

English (US) Hide Show Fade

Loading delay (Seconds) ? Theme color * ? Do not show if not logged in? * ?

1 #0c1acd Yes No

Greeting text if logged in to Facebook * ? Greeting text if not logged in to Facebook * ?

Maximum 80 characters Maximum 80 characters

Opt-in inbox confirmation message template * ? Reference * ? Select label ? [Create label](#)

Get Started [English101_YCGZ] AFFILIATEMARKETINGCOURSE.BIZ/

[Add template](#) [Refresh](#)

[Generate embed code](#) [Cancel](#)

Select **Embed code - JS Code** or **Download WordPress Plugin**.

Customer chat plugin [Create plugin](#) Messenger Bot / Customer chat plugin

All pages Search... [Search](#)

#	Domain	Page	Embed code	Domain code	Actions	Created at	Language code
1	https://affiliatemarketingcourse.biz/	Affiliate Marketing Course Demo	</> Js code	181614673847372	Download wordpress plugin	2nd March 21	en_US

10 Previous 1 Next





In your WordPress Dashboard, select **Plugins**. Then, click **Add New Plugins**.

The screenshot shows the WordPress dashboard with the 'Plugins' menu item highlighted in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Plugins' and includes an 'Add New' button. A notification from 'Limit Login Attempts Reloaded' is visible at the top. Below it, a message from 'SpinupWP' states 'Your site is ready to go!'. The main section shows a list of installed plugins with columns for 'Plugin', 'Description', and 'Automatic Updates'. The plugins listed are 'GoDaddy Pro Sites Worker', 'Limit Login Attempts Reloaded', and 'Rank Math SEO'. The 'Add New' button is circled in blue.

And Upload Plugin.

The screenshot shows the 'Add Plugins' page in the WordPress dashboard. The 'Add Plugins' menu item is highlighted in the left sidebar. The main content area is titled 'Add Plugins' and includes an 'Upload Plugin' button. A notification from 'SpinupWP' is visible at the top. Below it, there are tabs for 'Featured', 'Popular', 'Recommended', and 'Favorites'. The main section displays a grid of plugin cards, each with a title, description, 'Install Now' button, and 'More Details' link. The plugins shown are 'Classic Editor', 'Akismet Spam Protection', 'Jetpack – WP Security, Backup, Speed, & Growth', and 'Gutenberg'. The 'Add Plugins' button is circled in blue.

Then Choose File,





WordPress Admin Dashboard - Add Plugins

SpinupWP — Your site is ready to go! You will need to set up email if you wish to send outgoing emails from this site. [More info >](#)

If you have a plugin in a .zip format, you may install or update it by uploading it here.

No file chosen

Featured Popular Recommended Favorites

Plugins extend and expand the functionality of WordPress. You may automatically install plugins from the [WordPress Plugin Directory](#) or upload a plugin in .zip format by clicking the button at the top of this page.



Classic Editor [More Details](#)

Enables the previous "classic" editor and the old-style Edit Post screen with TinyMCE, Meta Boxes, etc. Supports all plugins that extend thi ...

By WordPress Contributors

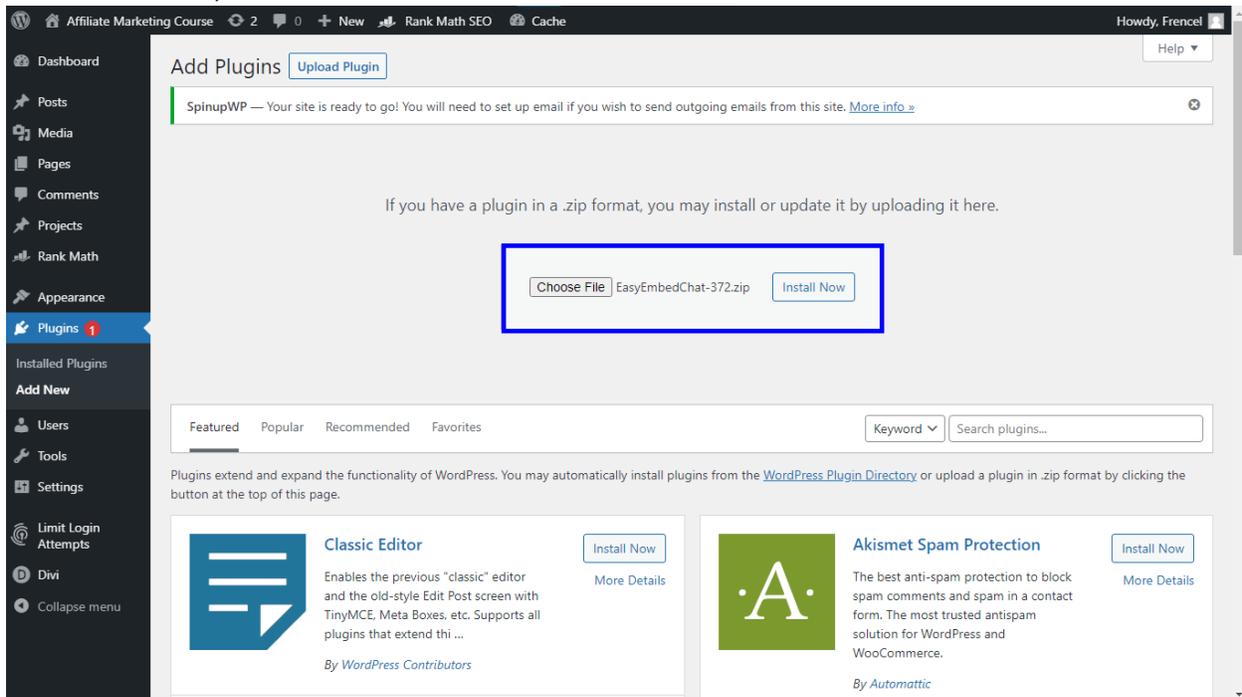


Akismet Spam Protection [More Details](#)

The best anti-spam protection to block spam comments and spam in a contact form. The most trusted antispam solution for WordPress and WooCommerce.

By Automatic

click **Install now**,



WordPress Admin Dashboard - Add Plugins

SpinupWP — Your site is ready to go! You will need to set up email if you wish to send outgoing emails from this site. [More info >](#)

If you have a plugin in a .zip format, you may install or update it by uploading it here.

EasyEmbedChat-372.zip

Featured Popular Recommended Favorites

Plugins extend and expand the functionality of WordPress. You may automatically install plugins from the [WordPress Plugin Directory](#) or upload a plugin in .zip format by clicking the button at the top of this page.



Classic Editor [More Details](#)

Enables the previous "classic" editor and the old-style Edit Post screen with TinyMCE, Meta Boxes, etc. Supports all plugins that extend thi ...

By WordPress Contributors



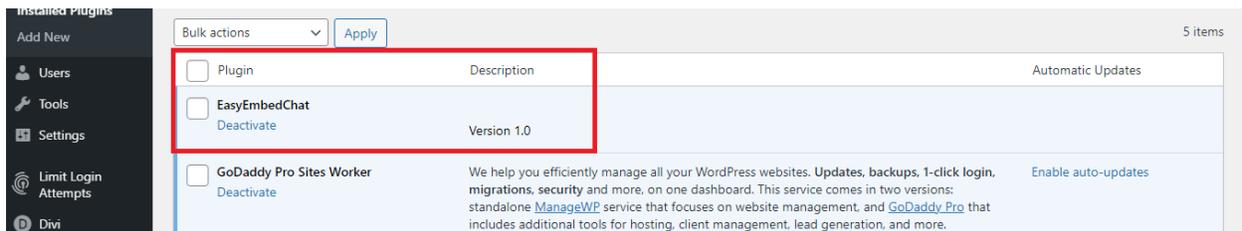
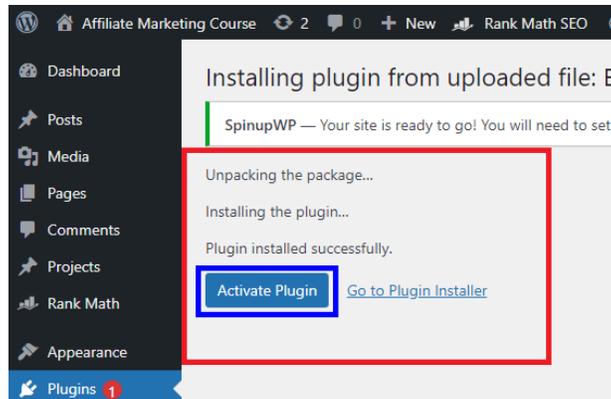
Akismet Spam Protection [More Details](#)

The best anti-spam protection to block spam comments and spam in a contact form. The most trusted antispam solution for WordPress and WooCommerce.

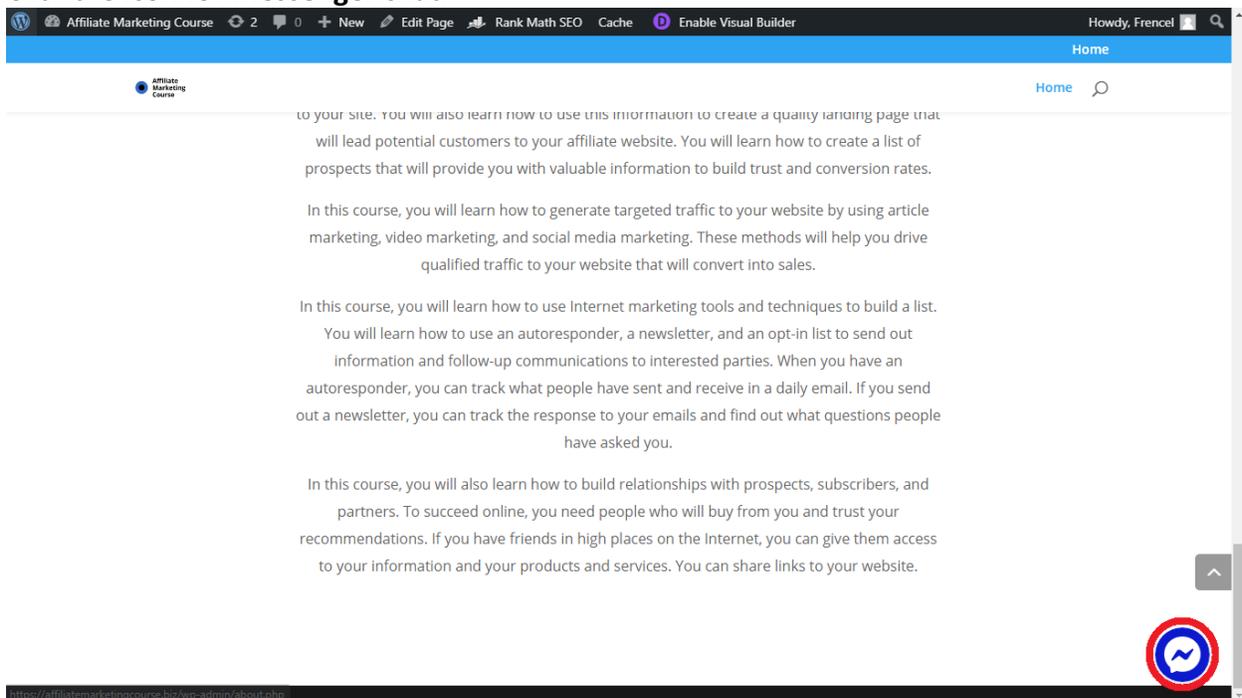
By Automatic

Click **Activate Plugin** and your Plugin is now already activated.



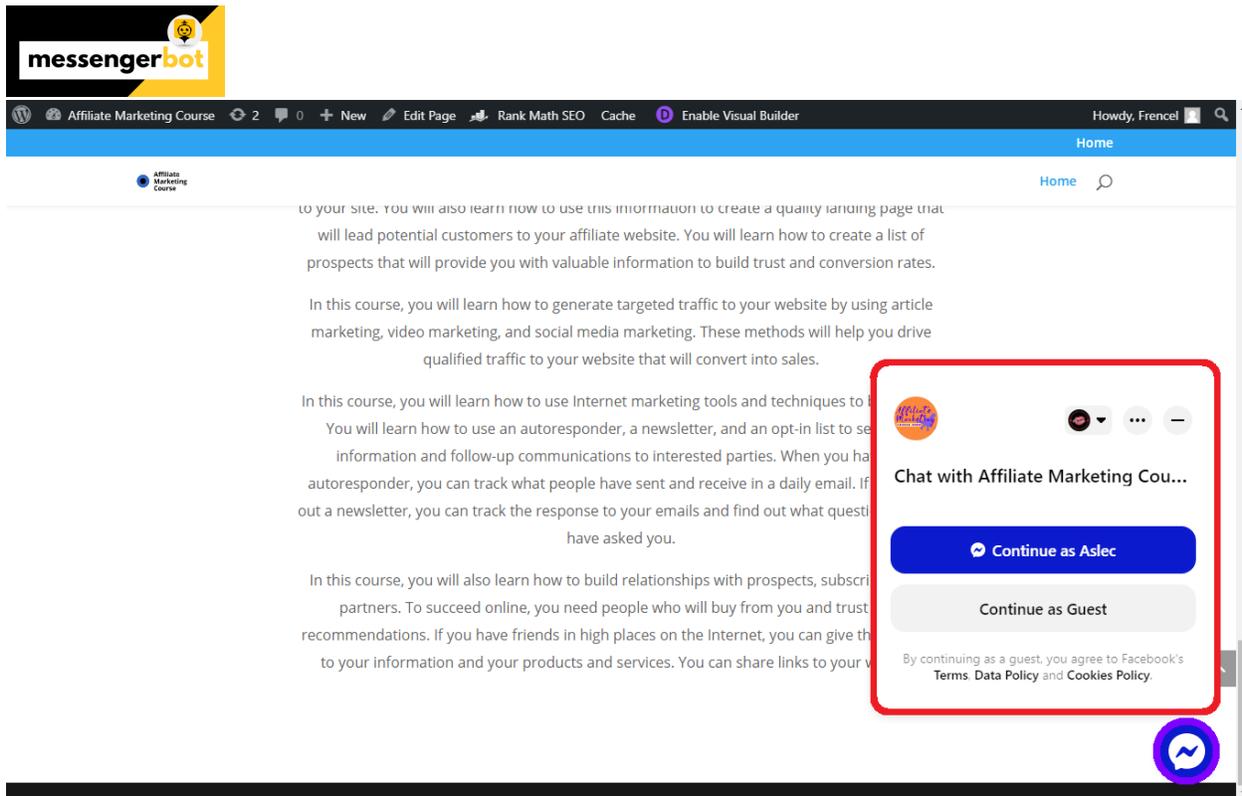


Click the icon for Messenger chat.

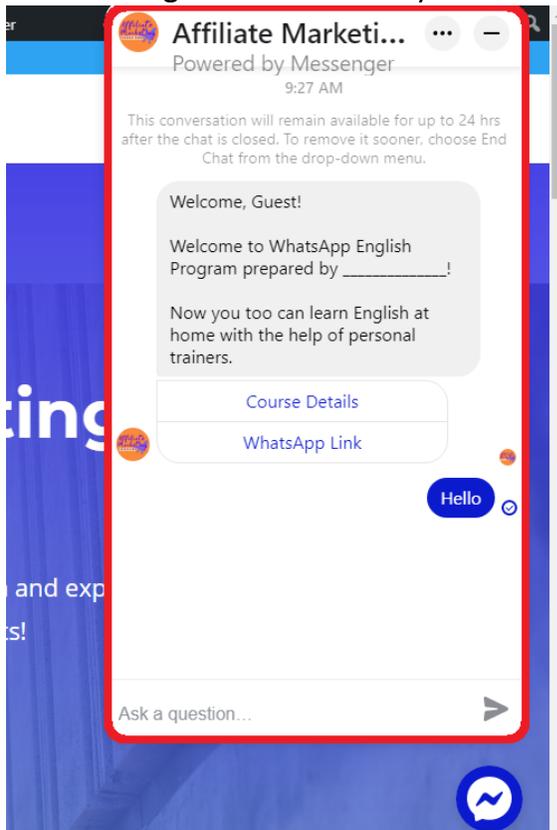


The chatbox will pop up.





The **Messenger chatbox** within your website.



Now, you're ready to create your Plugin for your website.





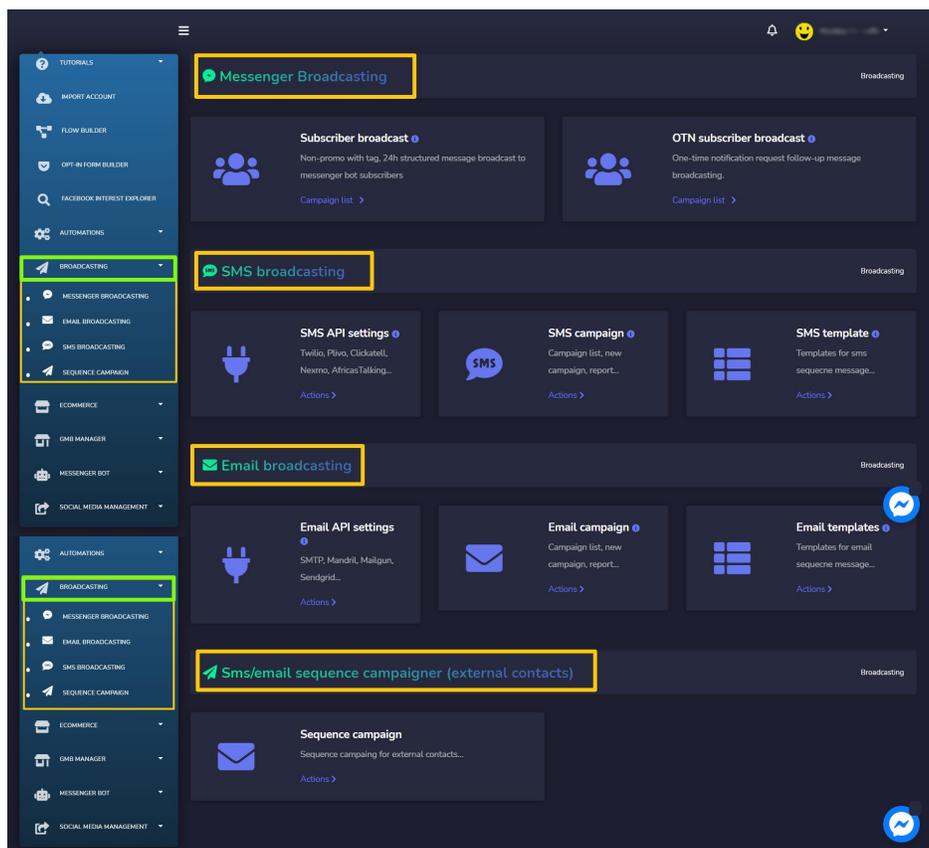
Broadcasting

The Broadcasting feature allows you to send messages in bulk and helps you broadcast via SMS and emails. You can create subscribers' campaigns and compile a list. Broadcasting helps you send promotional messages to the targeted audience. You can send emails and SMS to the people using different platforms like Twilio discussed in the [Twilio SMS campaign demo section](#) and [SMTP API](#), [Mandrill API](#), in the respective sections.

To view this section, navigate to **Broadcasting** from the **navigation menu** located at the left below the **Automations** section. Tab on **Broadcasting** and click any under it. A screen containing the following 4 sections will appear:

A screen containing the following four sections will appear:

- [Messenger broadcasting](#)
- [SMS broadcasting](#)
- [Email broadcasting](#)
- Sms/email sequence campaigner (external contacts):



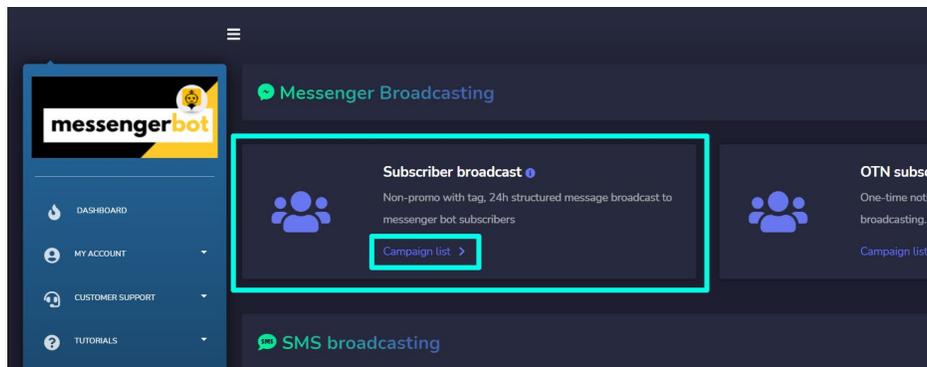


Messenger broadcasting

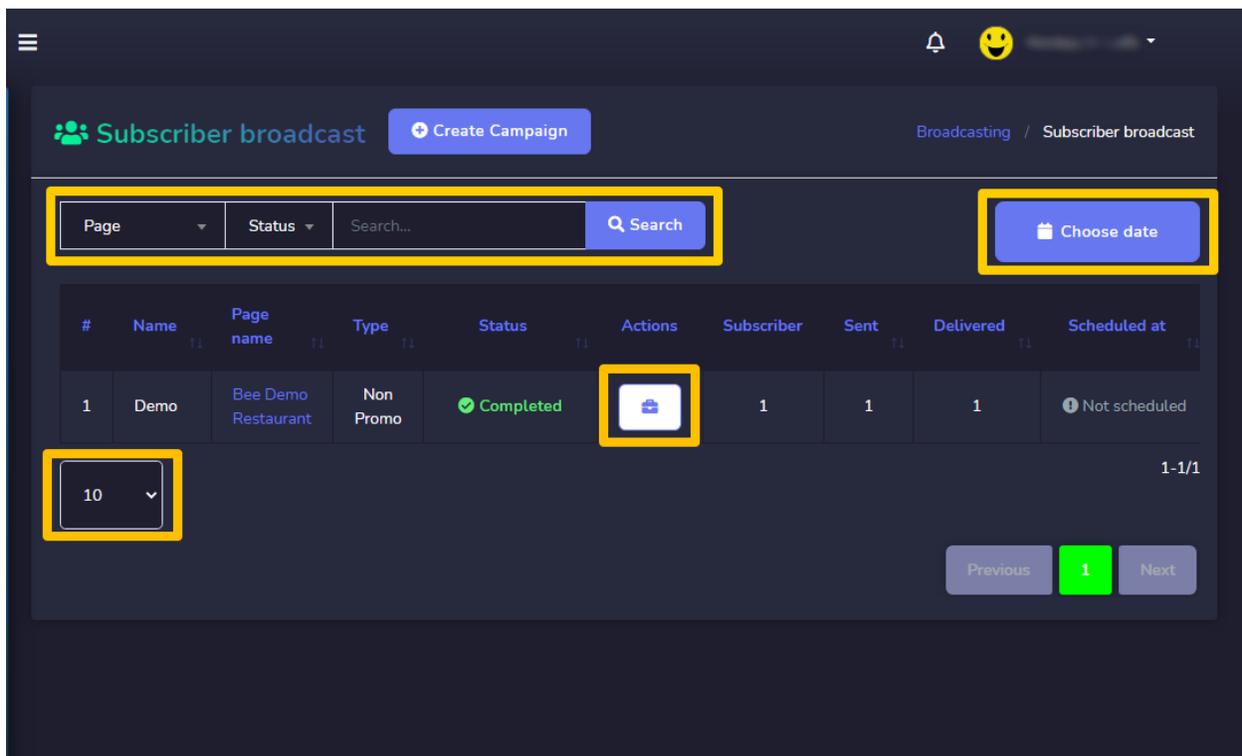
Messenger broadcasting is used to send **promo messages** and **target the real audience** for you. This section has **Subscriber broadcast** and **OTN subscriber broadcast** options. The details of this first option are given below:

Subscriber broadcast

To access the Subscriber broadcast, select the **Campaign list** option in the **Subscriber broadcast** section of **Messenger broadcasting**.



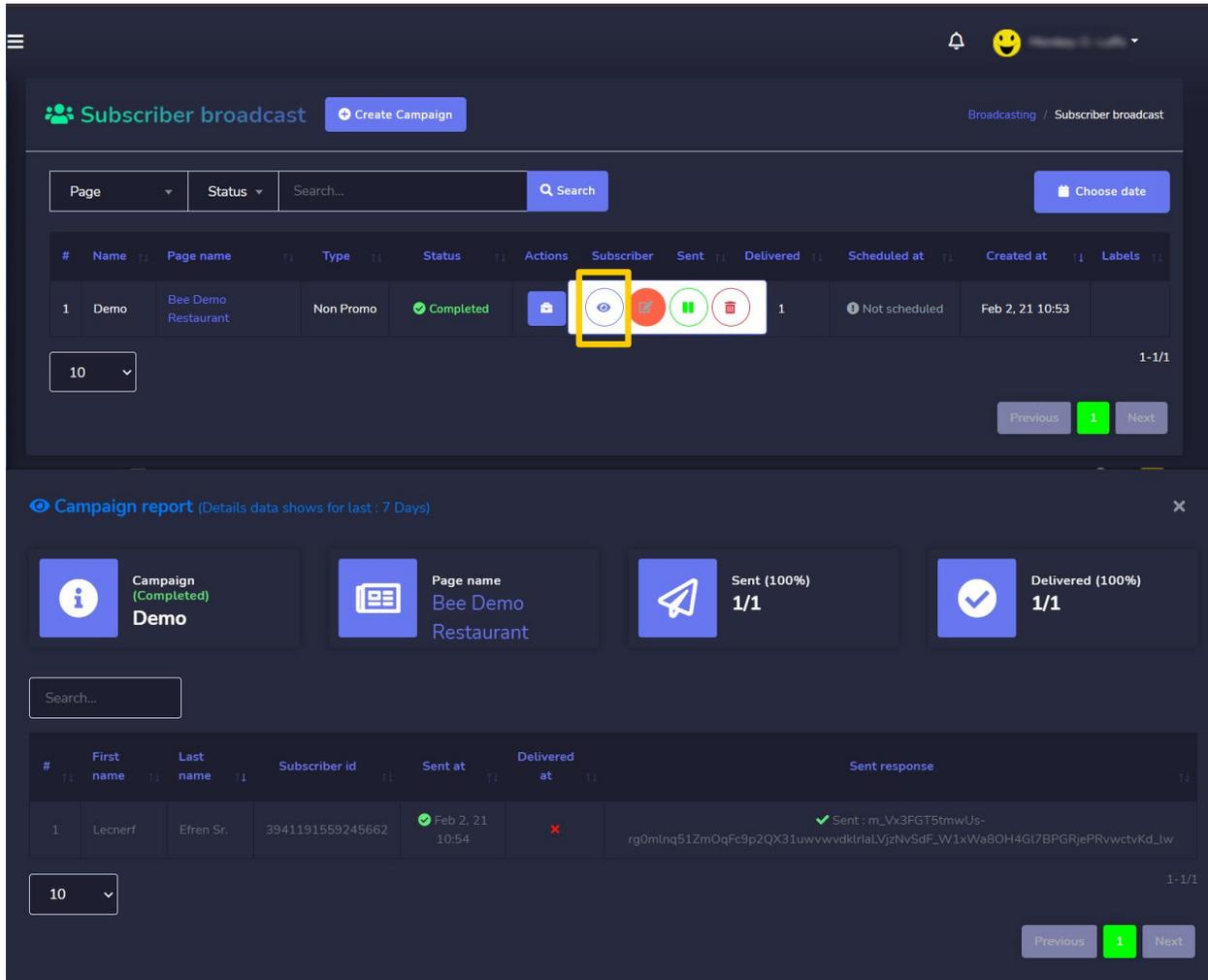
Subscriber broadcast screen consists of a **list of page numbers**, you can search for a specific **page** by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of **templates** to be **viewed per page**. You can also **arrange** them in either **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their **status**.





To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the campaign report by selecting  .



The screenshot displays the Messengerbot interface for managing subscriber broadcasts. At the top, there's a 'Subscriber broadcast' header with a 'Create Campaign' button. Below this is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. The main area features a table with columns for #, Name, Page name, Type, Status, Actions, Subscriber, Sent, Delivered, Scheduled at, Created at, and Labels. A row for a 'Demo' campaign is highlighted, with the 'Actions' column containing several icons, including an eye icon (view report) which is circled in yellow. Below the table, there are pagination controls and a 'Campaign report' modal window. The modal shows a summary of the campaign: 'Campaign (Completed) Demo', 'Page name: Bee Demo Restaurant', 'Sent (100%) 1/1', and 'Delivered (100%) 1/1'. It also includes a search bar and a table with columns for #, First name, Last name, Subscriber id, Sent at, Delivered at, and Sent response. The table shows one entry for 'Lecnerf Efren Sr.' with a 'Sent' status and a 'Delivered' status marked with a red 'x'.

- Edit the campaign



Subscriber broadcast [Create Campaign](#) Broadcasting / Subscriber broadcast

Page Status Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	Page name	Type	Status	Actions	Subscriber	Sent	Delivered	Scheduled at	Created at	Labels
1	Demo	Bee Demo Restaurant	Non Promo	Completed	    	1		1	Not scheduled	Feb 2, 21 10:53	

10 1-1/1 Previous 1 Next

[Edit subscriber broadcast](#) Broadcasting / Subscriber broadcast / Edit subscriber broadcast

Use broadcasting with message tag carefully. message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material & use appropriate tag that's applicable for sending message to those people. using message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by facebook.

Campaign details

Campaign name: Demo Select page: Anime lover

Broadcast type: Non Promo Message tag: ACCOUNT_UPDATE

Targeting options

Target by labels: Exclude by labels:

Gender: Select Time zone: Select Locale: Select

Summary

Page subscribers: 1 Targeted reach: 1

Page Name: this is text post

Hi, How are you ??? Hope you fine. How we can assist you by providing information?

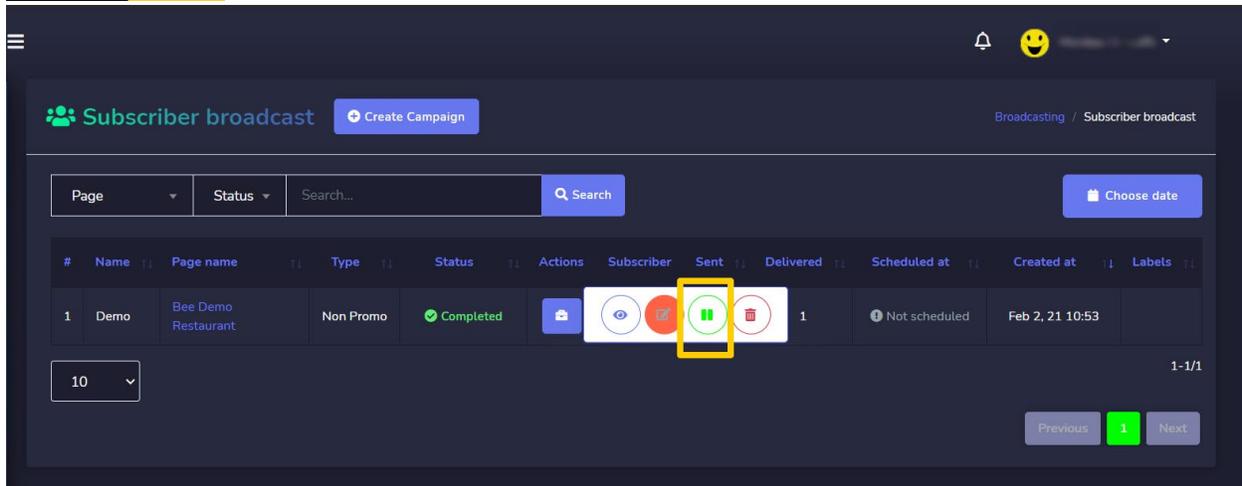
Menu Support Settings Help

Hello

Type a message

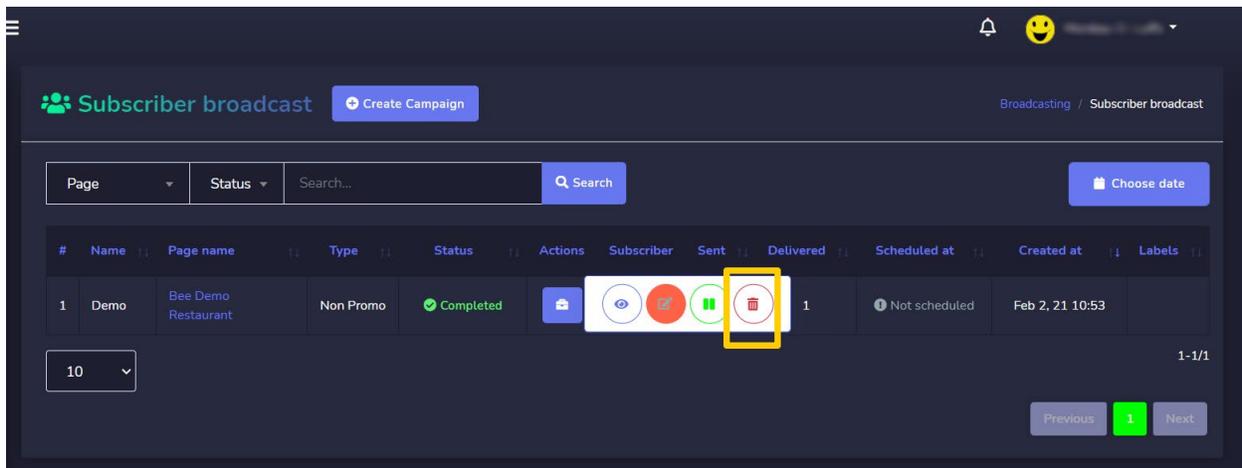
- Pause the campaign by selecting the .





#	Name	Page name	Type	Status	Actions	Subscriber	Sent	Delivered	Scheduled at	Created at	Labels
1	Demo	Bee Demo Restaurant	Non Promo	Completed		1		1	Not scheduled	Feb 2, 21 10:53	

- Delete the campaign

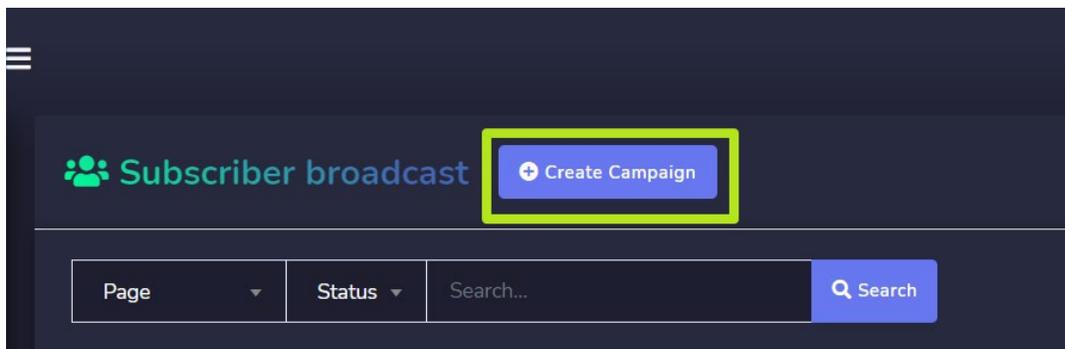


#	Name	Page name	Type	Status	Actions	Subscriber	Sent	Delivered	Scheduled at	Created at	Labels
1	Demo	Bee Demo Restaurant	Non Promo	Completed		1		1	Not scheduled	Feb 2, 21 10:53	

Create campaign

You can create a new subscriber broadcast campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select  from the top of subscriber broadcast campaign.



- 2) An **add subscriber broadcast** screen will appear.





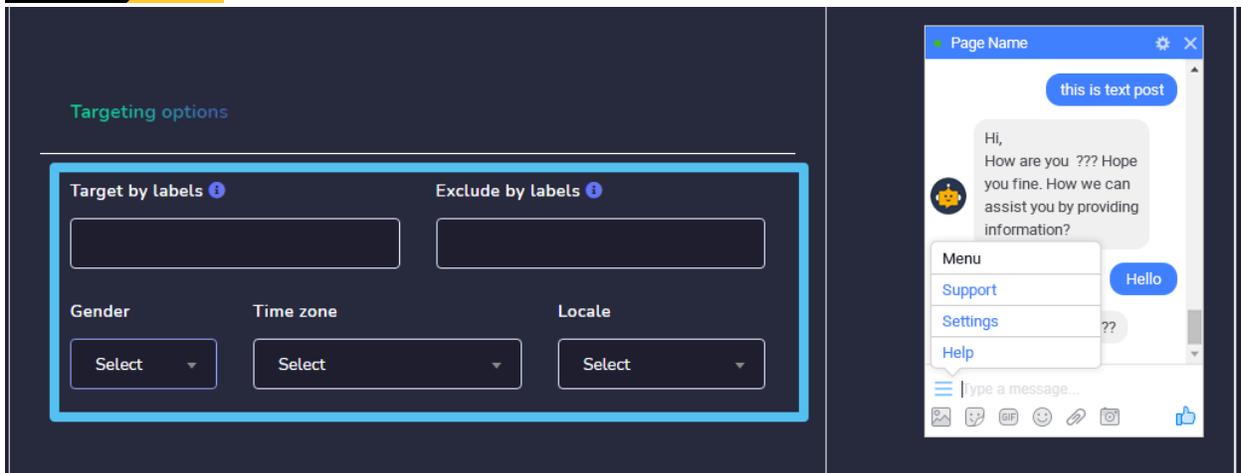
3) Provide the following campaign details:

- a. Campaign name
- b. Select the page for which you want to create the campaign
- c. Select a broadcast type: It can either be non-promo or 24-hour promo
- d. Select a message tag from the dropdown menu.

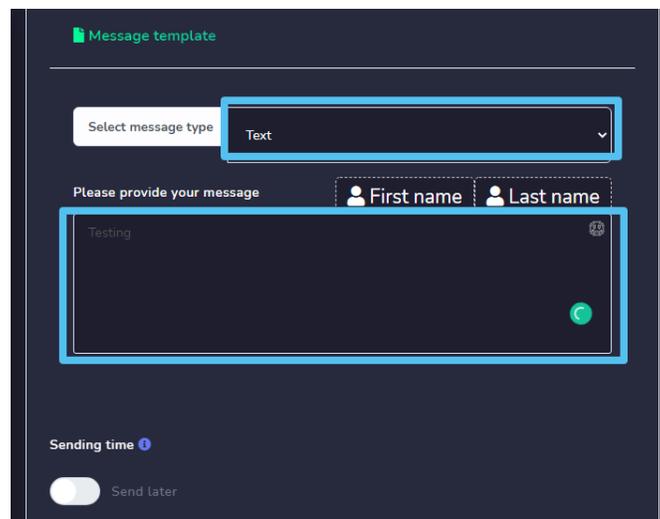
The screenshot shows the Messengerbot interface for creating a subscriber broadcast campaign. The interface is dark-themed and includes a navigation menu, a notification bell, and a smiley face icon. A green box highlights the 'Add subscriber broadcast' button. Below this, a warning message states: 'Use broadcasting with message tag carefully. message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material & use appropriate tag that's applicable for sending message to those people. using message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by facebook.' The interface is divided into two main sections: 'Campaign details' and 'Summary'. The 'Campaign details' section contains four input fields: 'Campaign name' (with 'Demo' entered), 'Select page' (with 'Bee Demo Restaurant' selected), 'Broadcast type' (with 'Non Promo' selected), and 'Message tag' (with 'Select tag' selected). The 'Summary' section shows 'Page subscribers' and 'Targeted reach' both set to 0. At the bottom, there are 'Targeting options' including 'Target by labels' and 'Exclude by labels' with empty input fields. A preview window on the right shows a chat interface with a message: 'this is text post' and a response: 'Hi, How are you ??? Hope you fine. How we can assist you by providing information?' with a 'Menu' button and a 'Hello' button.

- e. Choose the targeting options for better reach to your post, based on your gender, time zone, and locale selection.

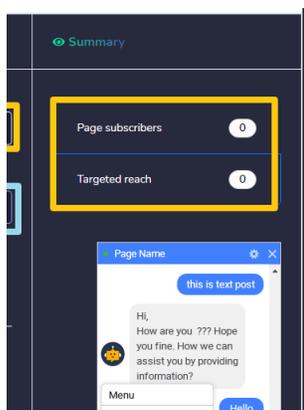




f. Choose message templates and sending time.

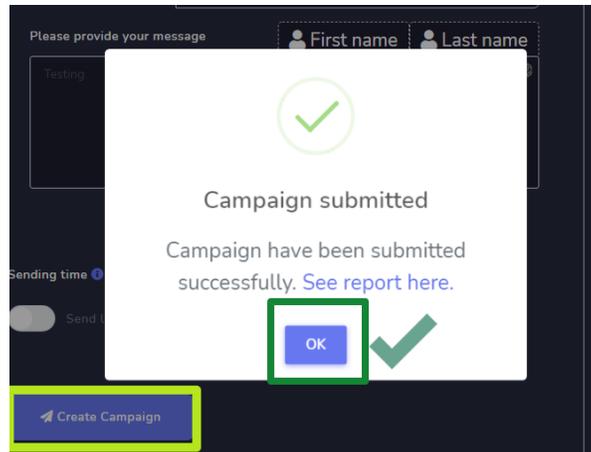


4) You can also see the subscriber numbers displaying on the right side of your screen in the **Summary** section.



Once you have provided all information, select **Create campaign**.





Note

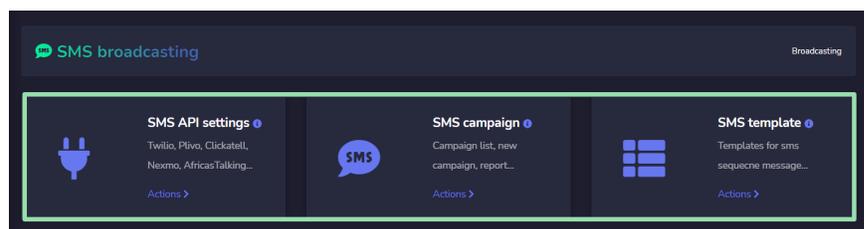
- Use broadcasting with message tag carefully.
- The message must not contain any advertisement or promotional material.
- Use an appropriate tag that's applicable for sending a message to targeted people.
- Using a message tag without proper reason may result in block your page's messaging option by Facebook.

Once you have created a campaign, it will be executed from your Facebook page account and will broadcast to multiple targeted audiences.

SMS Broadcasting

SMS broadcasting is used for sending SMS in bulk, helping in managing the SMS campaigns. This section consists of three options:

- [SMS API settings](#)
- [SMS campaign](#)
- [SMS Template.](#)





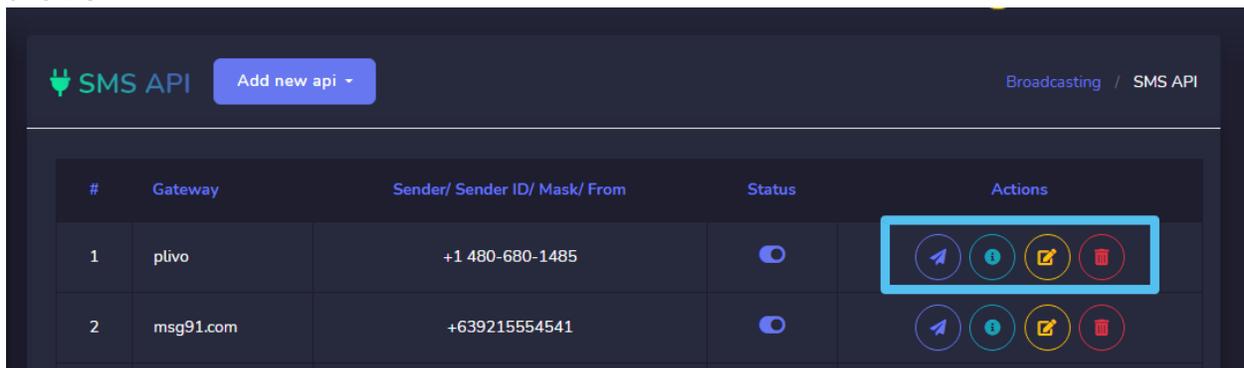
The details of these option are given below:

SMS API settings

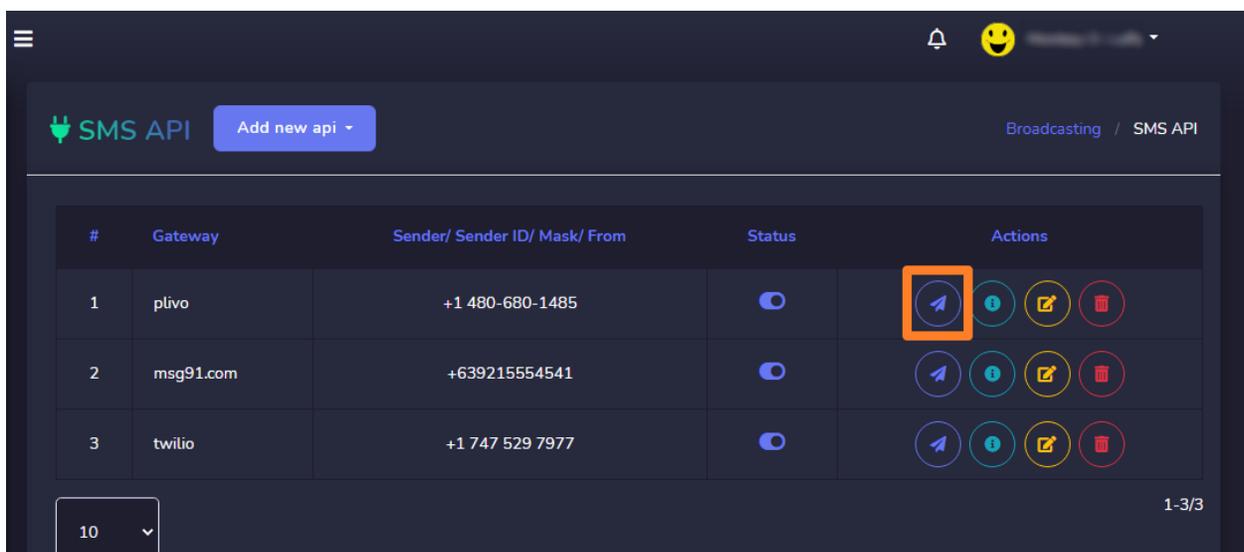
To access the SMS API settings, select the **Actions** option in **SMS API settings** section of **SMS broadcasting**.



A list of gateways will appear on the SMS API screen. You can perform following actions from this view.



- **Send SMS** by selecting the  icon against a particular gateway.



Send test SMS ✕

📞 Phone number

+123456789

✉ Message

Test message 🔄

Send ✕ Cancel

- **View API** information by selecting  icon against a particular gateway.

☰ 🔔 😊 👤

 **SMS API** Add new api ▾ Broadcasting / SMS API

#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status	Actions
1	plivo	+1 480-680-1485	🔴	   
2	msg91.com	+639215554541	🔴	   
3	twilio	+1 747 529 7977	🔴	   



API informations

AUTH ID/ AUTH KEY/API KEY/ MSISDN/ ACCOUNT SID/ ACCOUNT ID/ USERNAME/ ADMIN
username

AUTH TOKEN/ API SECRET/ PASSWORD
123

ROUTESMS HOSTNAME
Test

API ID
SK047e35e2f229b92bd9e2a5cdbdc6b1c7

REMAINING CREDITS [PLIVO, CLICKATELL, CLICKATELL-PLATFORM, NEXMO, AFRICASTALKING.COM]

- Edit the API you want to update.

SMS API Add new api Broadcasting / SMS API

#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status	Actions
1	routesms.com	340517995	On	
2	plivo	+1 480-680-1485	On	





Update SMS API Instructions

Gateway name: Plivo [Required : Auth ID, Auth Token, Sender]

Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin: MAZTAXNMYOOGYXMM3MW

Auth token/ API secret/ password: ZTBINGY3YTNjZmU4ODA0OTYwNmRjYWY1ZGI0MWnk

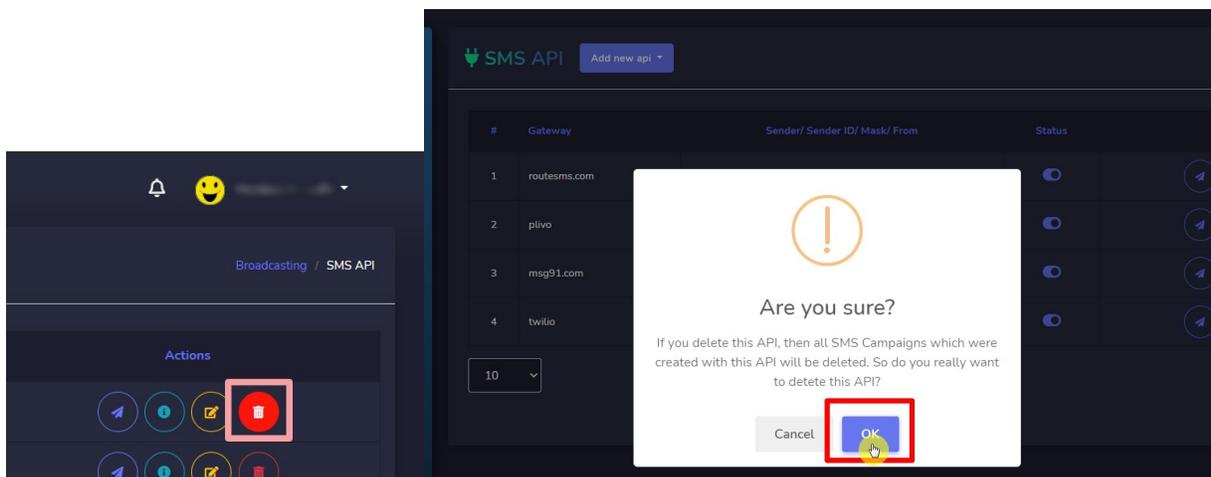
API ID: [Empty]

Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From: +1 480-680-1485

Status: Active

Update Cancel

- Delete the API.



SMS API Add new api

#	Gateway	Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From	Status
1	routesms.com		<input type="checkbox"/>
2	plivo		<input type="checkbox"/>
3	msg91.com		<input type="checkbox"/>
4	twilio		<input type="checkbox"/>

10

!

Are you sure?

If you delete this API, then all SMS Campaigns which were created with this API will be deleted. So do you really want to delete this API?

Cancel OK

Note

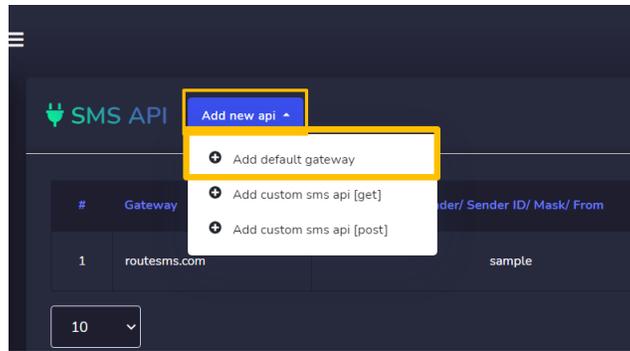
- If you delete an API, all campaigns created with that API will also be deleted

Create API

You can also create a new API from SMS API screen. Follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select New API button from the **SMS API** screen.





Test

Properties

IMPORTANT NOTE: This secret is only shown ONCE. Make note of it and store it in a safe, secure location.

FRIENDLY NAME Test

SID SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256

KEY TYPE Standard

SECRET hOw4HsKHxKnePc7LiRnWF04SdzMuTC63

Got it! I have saved my API Key Sid and Secret in a safe place to use in my application.

Done

- 2) Provide the **gateway name**.
- 3) Provide the **Authentication key/ API Key**.
- 4) Enter your **secret password** you want to set.

New SMS API [Instructions](#)

Gateway name Twilio [Required : Account Sid, Auth Token, From]	Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin username
Auth token/ API secret/ password hOw4HsKHxKnePc7LiRnWF04SdzMuTC63	API ID SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256
Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd	Status <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Active

[Save](#) [Cancel](#)

- 5) Enter the **ID** of your API.



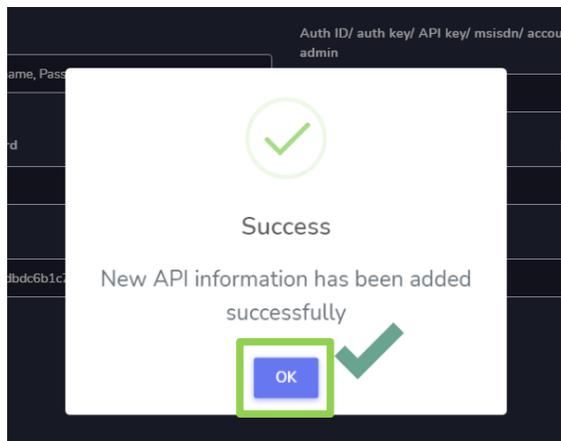


- 6) Provide the **Sender ID**.
- 7) Set the **status** of your API.
- 8) Once you have done all these settings, click on **Save**.

The screenshot shows a 'New SMS API' configuration form with the following fields and values:

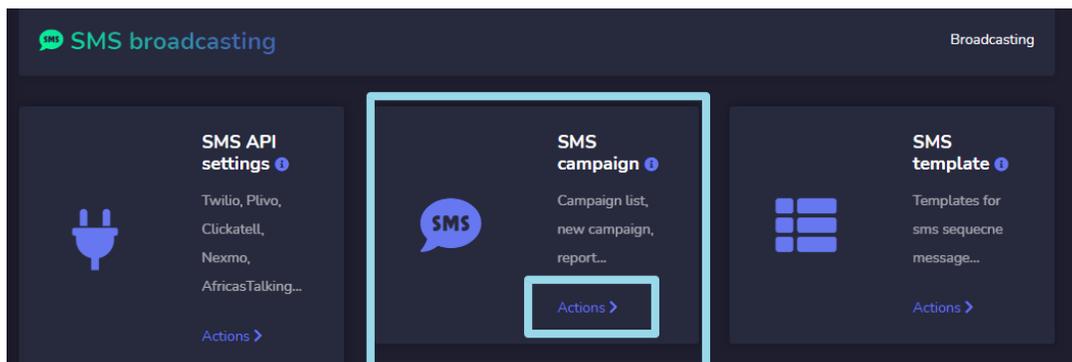
- Gateway name: Twilio [Required : Account Sid, Auth Token, From]
- Auth ID/ auth key/ API key/ msisdn/ account sid/ account ID/ username/ admin: username
- Auth token/ API secret/ password: hOw4HsKH-XKnePc7LiRnWF04SdzMuTC63
- API ID: SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcdf44c256
- Sender/ Sender ID/ Mask/ From: ACd7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd
- Status: Active (toggle switch)

Buttons: Save (highlighted in yellow), Cancel



SMS campaign

To access the SMS campaign, select the **Actions** option in **SMS API settings** section of **SMS broadcasting**.





SMS campaign screen consists of a **list of SMS API**, you can search for a specific API by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of APIs** to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their **status**.

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Created at
1	New Campaign	routesms.com : 340517995	0/6		Completed	Jan 16, 2021 18:00	Feb 2, 2021 11:12
2	What is Messenger Bot?	plivo : +1 480-680-1485	1/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 24, 2021 02:54
3	What is Messenger Bot?	plivo : +1 480-680-1485	1/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 24, 2021 00:23
4	What is Messenger Bot?	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	3/5		Completed	Not scheduled	Jan 14, 2021 01:34

To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the report by selecting .

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6		Not scheduled	Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40





Campaign report

Campaign (Completed)
New Campaign

SMS API
routesms.com : 340517995

Sent
0/6

Search...

#	First name	Last name	Phone	Sent at	Response
1	-	-	23423445 34455221 34389019	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
2	Vinsmoke		+639155662701	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
3	Nico		+639190951474	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
4	Son		+639667668942	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
5	Mickey		+639474943427	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	
6	Frencel		+639215554541	Feb 2, 2021 11:15	

10

Previous **1** Next

Original message

This is a new campaign

- Edit the campaign

messengerbot

SMS campaign [New SMS campaign](#)

Status Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6	Edit campaign	Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40

10

Previous **1** Next

- Delete the campaign

messengerbot

SMS campaign [New SMS campaign](#)

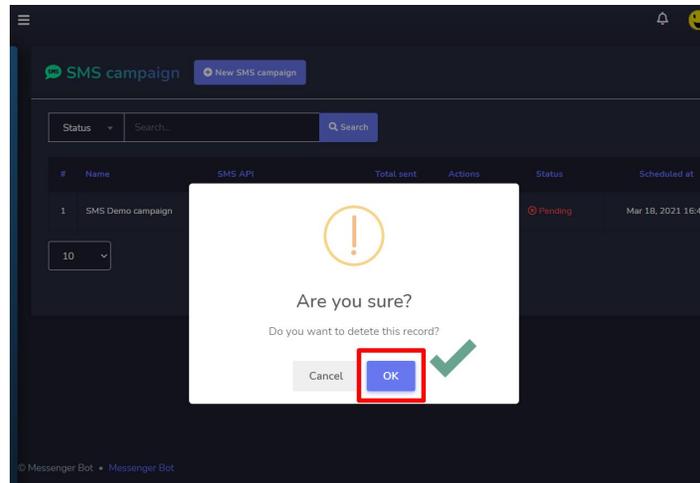
Status Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	SMS API	Total sent	Actions	Scheduled at	Created at
1	SMS Demo campaign	twilio : +1 747 529 7977	0/6	Delete campaign	Mar 18, 2021 16:40	Mar 16, 2021 16:40

10

Previous **1** Next

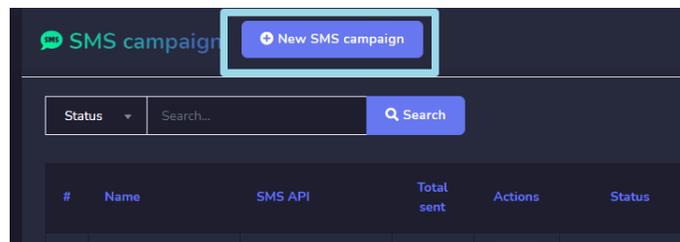




Create sms campaign

You can create a new sms campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **New SMS campaign** option from the top of the SMS campaign screen.



- 2) A **Create sms campaign** screen will appear. Provide the campaign details which include:
 - a. Campaign name
 - b. SMS API (to be selected from dropdown)
 - c. Message



messengerbot

🔔 🌟

+ Create SMS campaign Broadcasting / SMS campaigns / Create SMS campaign

Campaign details

Campaign name: New Campaign

SMS API: routesms.com: 340517995

Message: This is a new campaign

Targeting: First name, Last name

Messenger subscribers | SMS subscriber (external)

- 3) Provide the information of **Messenger subscribers** and **SMS subscribers (external)**.
- 4) You can also choose the targeting options for a better reach.

Messenger subscribers | SMS subscriber (external)

Page subscribers: 0 | Targetted reach: 0

Select page: Bee Demo Restaurant

Targeting options

Target labels: | Exclude labels: |

Gender: Male | Time zone: GMT +11.... | Locale: Ukrainian

Contact numbers: 5 | Manual numbers: 1

Select contacts: x Customer (7)

Numbers to send: 23423445, 34455221, 34389019 | Upload csv

- 5) You can choose a sending **time**.
- 6) Once all information is added, select **Create campaign**.





Country code Actions

Sending time Send now

Schedule time Choose time

Time zone (GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles (Pacific Standard Time)

Create Campaign

Cancel

target labels Exclude labels 23423445 34455221 3438819

ender

Male

ng time

Send

ule time

21-01-16 16:00:30 (GMT-8:00) America/



Campaign submitted

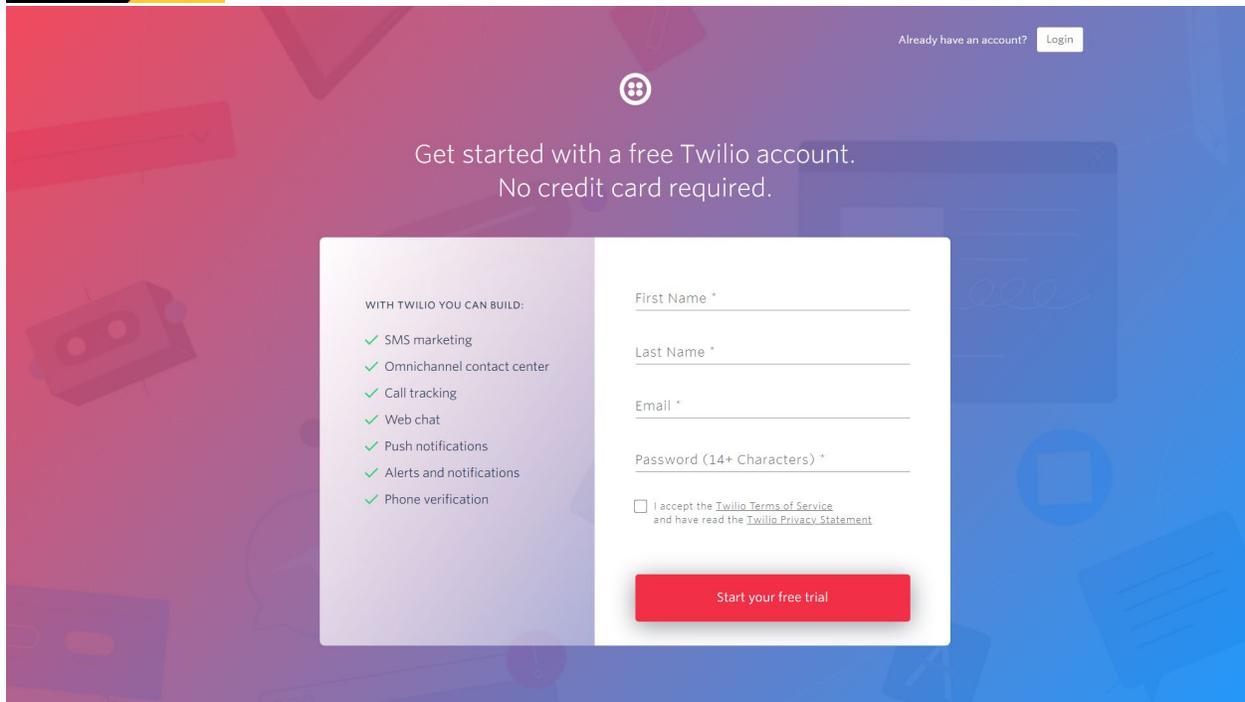
Campaign have been submitted successfully. [See report here.](#)

Twilio SMS campaign Demo

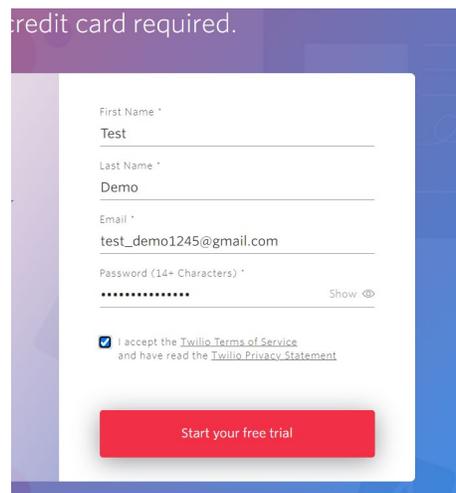
To start an SMS campaign, you need to get an API key for integration from Twilio. You can access Twilio from your web browser. Follow the steps given below:

1. Open the following link in your browser: <https://www.twilio.com/>





2. The Twilio **login screen** appears. You need to sign up for first time login.



3. You will also receive an **authentication email**. Follow the link, it will redirect to the dashboard.
4. Now you need to reach the **Settings** option from the left navigation menu.
5. A sub menu will appear, now select **API Keys** option. A list of API Keys will appear on the screen. You need to create a new key.



messengerbot

twilio | My first Twilio... TRIAL | Settings / | Upgrade Project | Go to... | ? | ⚙️

Dashboard
Billing
Usage
Notification Preferences
Settings
General
Subaccounts
Manage Users
API Keys
Credentials
Connect Apps
Audit Events
Upgrade
Trust Hub Beta
Account Insights Beta

General Settings

Properties

PROJECT NAME: My first Twilio project

ACCOUNT SID: ACD7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd

Require Two-Factor Authentication (2FA)

Add an extra layer of protection to Twilio accounts. Once you enable 2FA, all users accessing this account must enter verification codes sent on the channel they prefer. To enable 2FA for yourself, go to [User Settings](#).

ONCE PER COMPUTER We will only ask for a verification code once every 30 days on trusted devices

EVERY LOG-IN We will always ask for a verification code

DISABLED We will not require a verification code (If you are accessing an upgraded/paid account, this option will not be available after Oct 12, 2020 as Twilio is requiring 2FA for paid accounts)

API Credentials

LIVE Credentials [Learn about REST API Credentials](#)

ACCOUNT SID: ACD7fc3818d40171dc0c246c4b8ddc63fd
Used to exercise the REST API

AUTH TOKEN:
[Request a Secondary Token](#)

TEST Credentials [Learn about Test Credentials](#)

TEST ACCOUNT SID: ACCdbedc7071803e3fe8fc2a53875f8b9d
Used to exercise the REST API

TEST AUTHTOKEN:
Keep this somewhere safe and secure

6. Select the  icon from the table header. You can provide a **friendly name** for your key and the **type** of your key.

twilio | My first Twilio... TRIAL | Settings / | Upgrade Project | Go to... | ? | ⚙️

Dashboard
Billing
Usage
Notification Preferences
Settings
General
Subaccounts
Manage Users
API Keys
Credentials
Connect Apps
Audit Events
Upgrade
Trust Hub Beta
Account Insights Beta

API Keys

API Keys are revokable credentials for the Twilio API. You can use API Keys to authenticate to the REST API using basic auth, with `user=keySid` and `password=keySecret`. And, you can use API Keys to sign Access Tokens, which are used by Twilio's Real-Time Communications SDKs. Access Tokens are short-lived credentials that can be distributed safely to client-side applications. [Learn more](#)

 API KEY	TYPE	DATE CREATED
Demo SID: SK0ae4706e08ee6350f814d5cf5b8c4fbd	Standard	2021-02-03 UTC 08:10:44

7. Select **Create API Key**. A new API key will be generated, copy it to use.

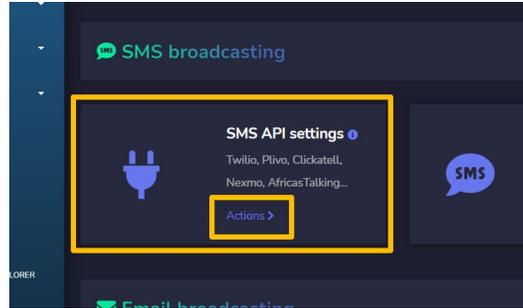


The screenshot shows the Twilio Messenger Bot dashboard. The top navigation bar includes the Twilio logo, 'My first Twilio...' with a 'TRIAL' dropdown, 'Settings / API Keys /', an 'Upgrade Project' button, and a 'Go to...' search field. The left sidebar lists navigation options: Dashboard, Billing, Usage, Notification Preferences, Settings (General, Subaccounts, Manage Users, API Keys, Credentials, Connect Apps, Audit Events), Upgrade, Trust Hub (Beta), and Account Insights (Beta). The main content area is titled 'New API Key' and shows the 'Properties' section. The 'FRIENDLY NAME' field contains 'Test' and the 'KEY TYPE' is set to 'Standard'. A note states: 'Standard Keys cannot manage API Keys, Account Configuration, and Sub Accounts'. At the bottom, there are 'Create API Key' and 'Cancel' buttons.

The screenshot shows the Twilio Messenger Bot dashboard for the 'Test' API Key. The top navigation bar is identical to the previous screenshot. The left sidebar is also the same. The main content area is titled 'Test' and shows the 'Properties' section. An 'IMPORTANT NOTE' is displayed: 'This secret is only shown ONCE. Make note of it and store it in a safe, secure location.' The 'FRIENDLY NAME' is 'Test'. The 'SID' field is highlighted in red and contains the value 'SKd1b706ff23a4d84ed1c999bcd44c256'. The 'KEY TYPE' is 'Standard'. The 'SECRET' field is highlighted in red and contains the value 'hOw4HsKHxKnePc7LiRnWF045dzMuTC63'. A checkbox is present with the text 'Got it! I have saved my API Key Sid and Secret in a safe place to use in my application.' At the bottom, there is a 'Done' button.

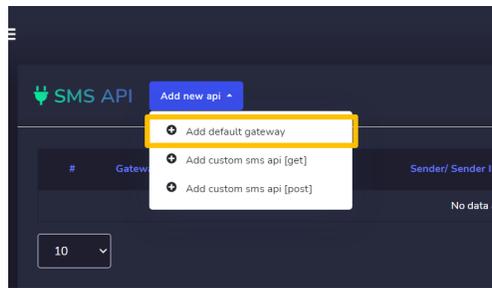
8. Go to **Messenger Bot** application. Navigate to **Broadcasting** then go to **SMS API settings**. Select **Actions**, a screen containing a list of SMS APIs will appear.



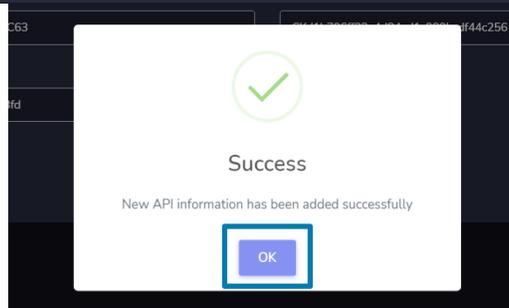


9. Select **New API** button from the top of the screen.

10. A **New SMS API** modal will appear, select the gateway, provide the API Key in the field.

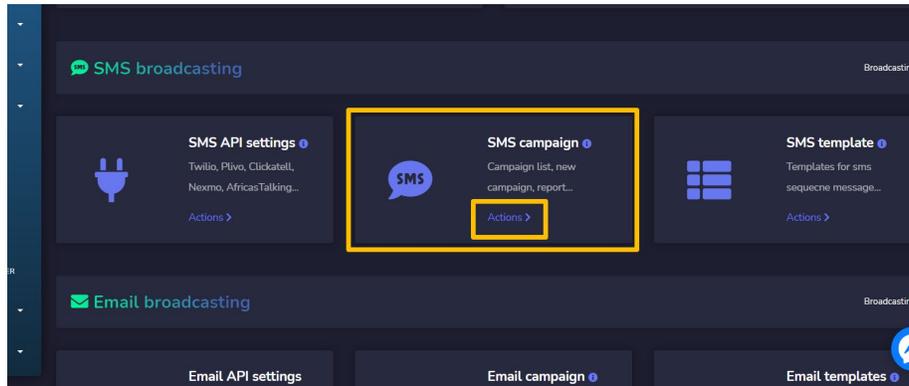


11. Provide the **authentication token, sender ID and user name**. Hit **Save**.

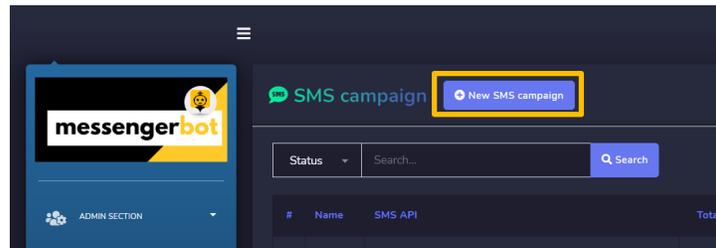




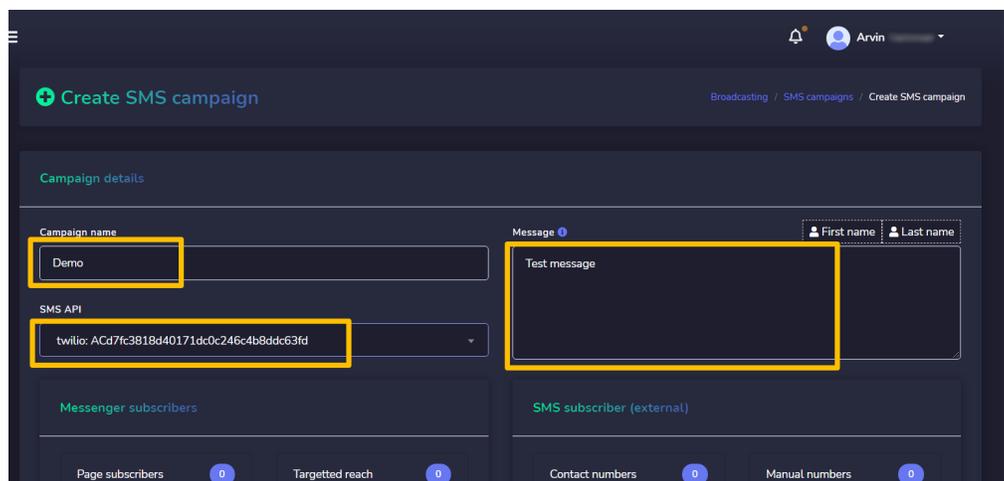
- Now this **SMS API**, will help you make a **new SMS campaign**. Go to SMS campaign, then select **Actions**.



- Select **New SMS campaign** from **SMS campaign** screen.



- A **Create SMS campaign** view will appear. Provide the **campaign name** and **message**.
- Now Select the **SMS API** from the dropdown menu which you created in **Step 11**.



- Select the **page** for which you want to make this campaign. A number of subscribers will appear in the toll.

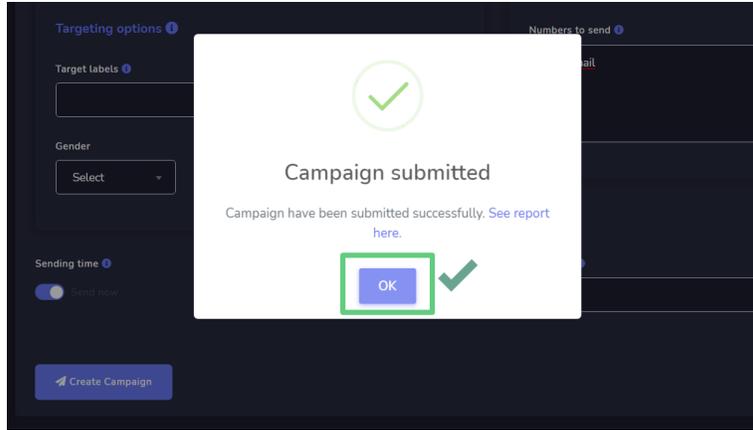




17. You can also choose the **targeting options**.
18. You can select the number for **Contact** field either manually or import the **CSV** file and add your country code.

19. Select a **sending time**, along with **time zone**.
20. Select **Create campaign**.



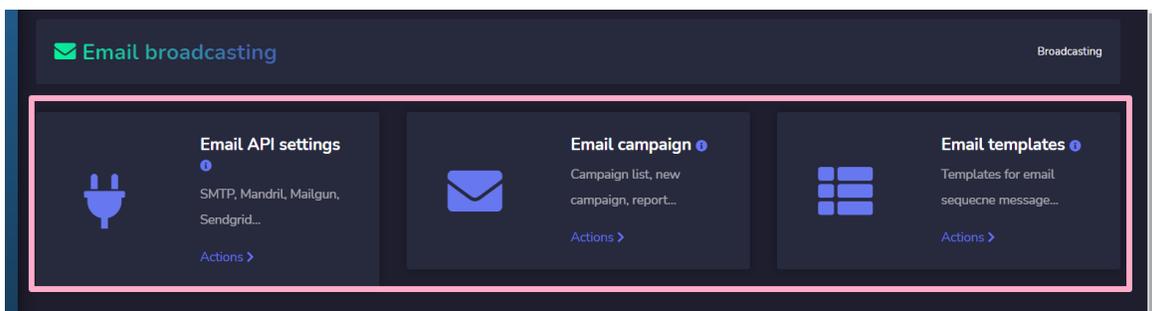


Once you have created a campaign, it will send SMS to all chosen people and broadcast the messages to them.

Email broadcasting

Email broadcasting is used for sending Email in bulk, helping in managing the Email campaigns. This section consists of three options.

- Email API settings
- Email campaign
- Email Template

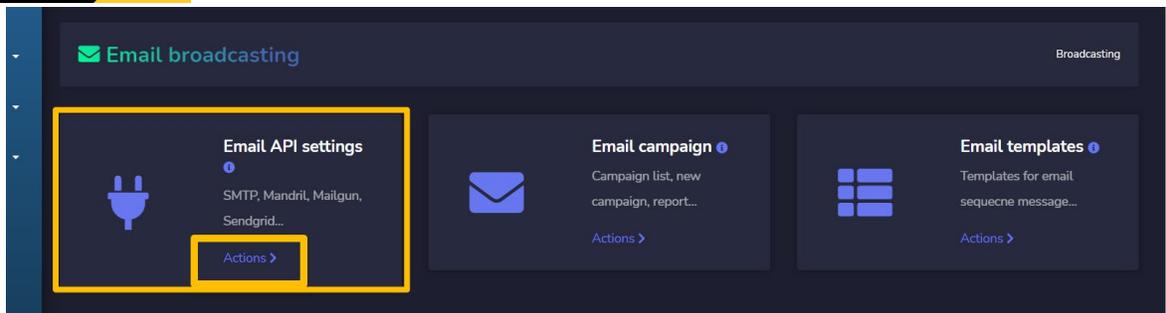


The details of these options are given below:

Email API settings

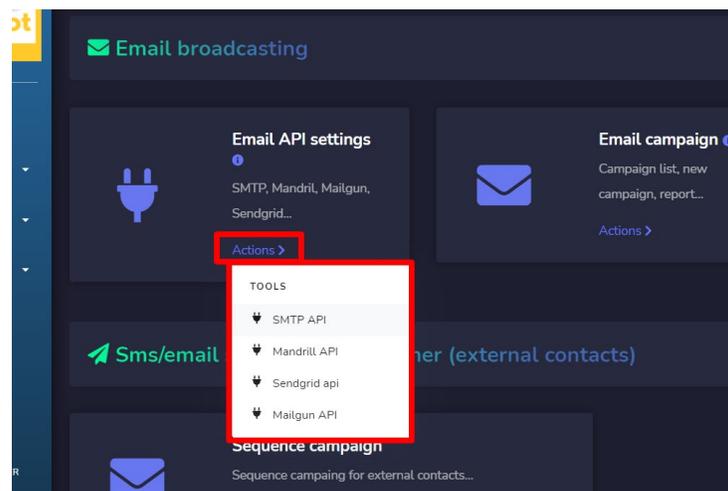
To access the Email API settings, select the **Actions** option in **Email API settings** section of **Email broadcasting**.





A list of four following options will appear:

- SMTP API
- Mandill API
- Sengrid API
- Mailgun API



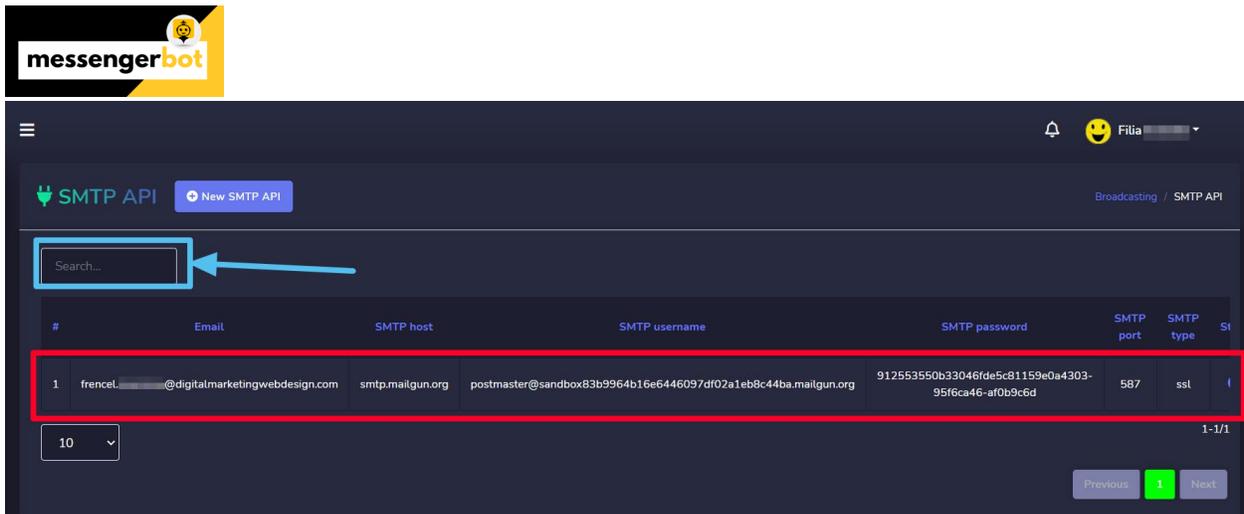
Note

- It is mandatory to have accounts in all four options to make the integration possible.

SMTP API

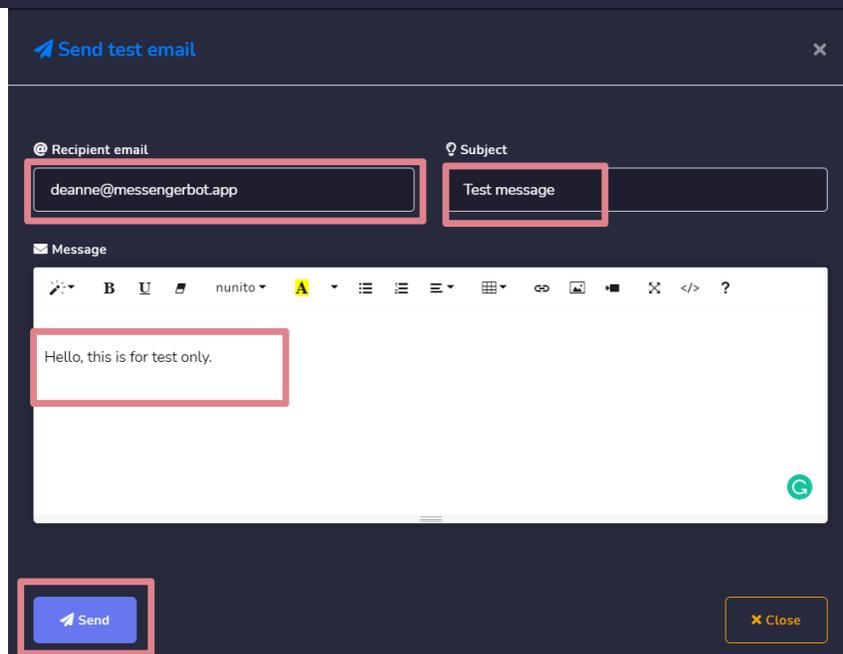
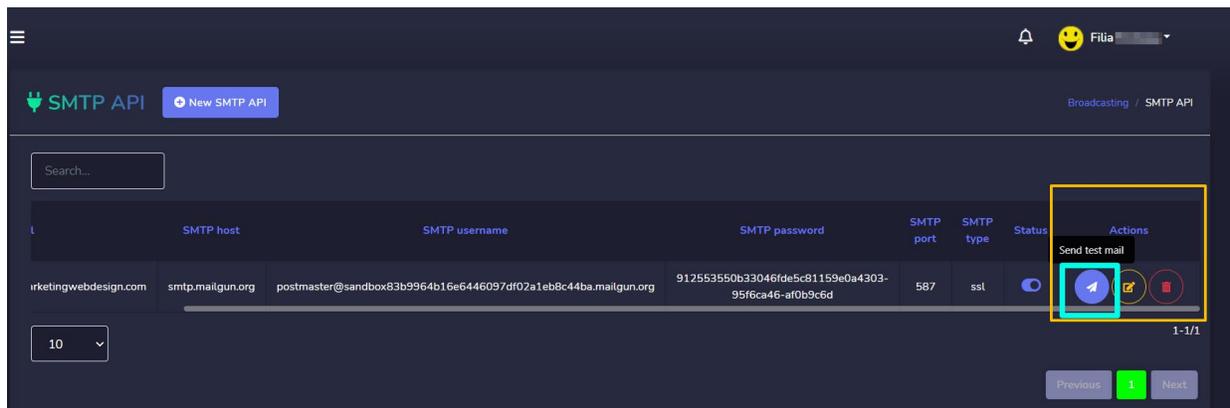
A list of gateways will appear on the SMTP API screen. You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.





- Edit the API you want to update.

SMTP API

New SMTP API

Search...

	SMTP host	SMTP username	SMTP password	SMTP port	SMTP type	Status	Actions
rketingwebdesign.com	smtp.mailgun.org	postmaster@sandbox83b9964b16e6446097df02a1eb8c44ba.mailgun.org	912553550b33046fde5c81159e0a4303-95f6ca46-af0b9c6d	587	ssl	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 

10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Update SMTP API

Email address: frencel. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com

SMTP host: smtp.mailgun.org

SMTP port: 587

SMTP username: postmaster@sandbox83b9964b16e6446097df02a:

SMTP password: 912553550b33046fde5c81159e0a4303-95f6ca46

SMTP type: Ssl

Status: Active

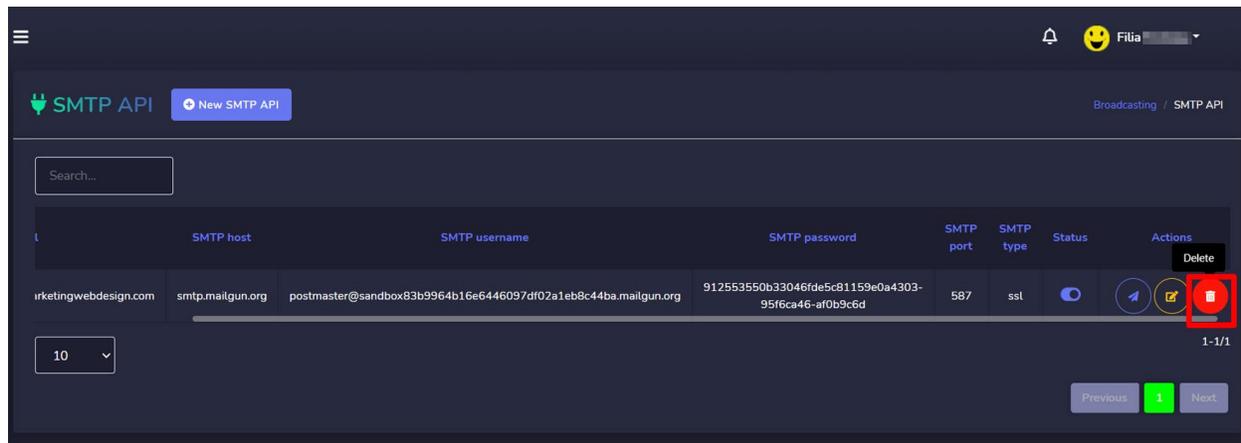
Sender name:

Update

Close

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?

Do you want to detete this record?

Cancel

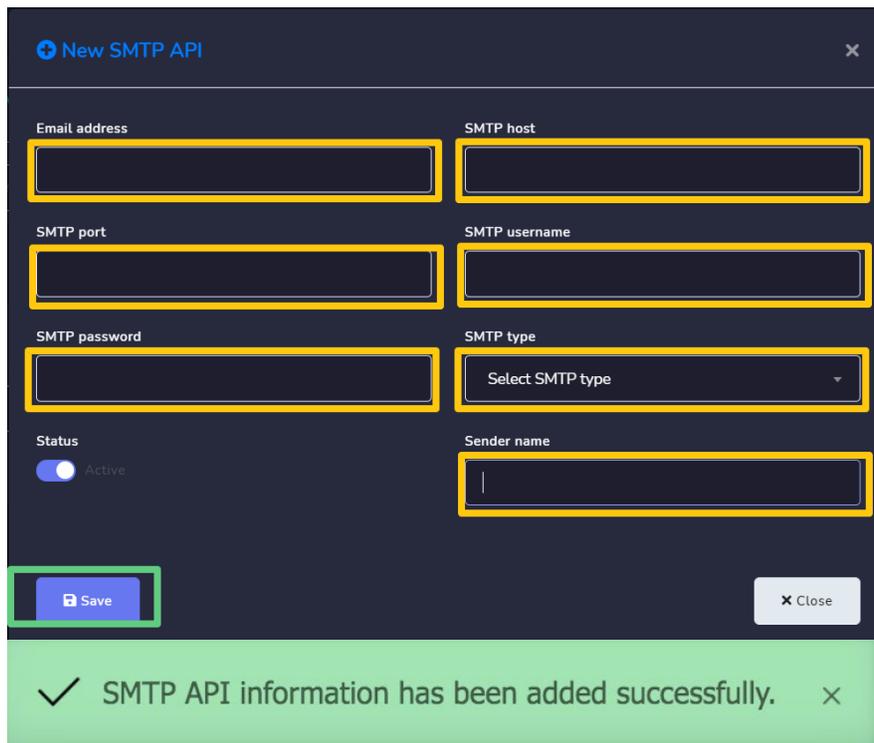
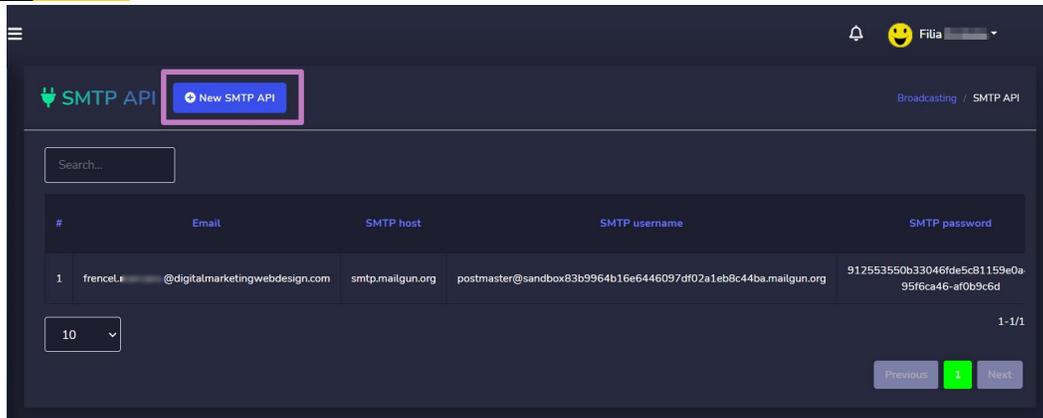
OK

Create SMTP API

You can create a new SMTP API by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select the  from the **SMTP API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New SMTP API** information. Enter the **Email address**.
- 3) Enter the **SMTP host** and **port information**.
- 4) Provide the **SMTP username** and **SMTP password**.
- 5) Select the **SMTP type** from the dropdown menu.
- 6) Provide the **sender name**.
- 7) Select the **status** of the SMTP API.
- 8) Select **Save** to create a new SMTP API.

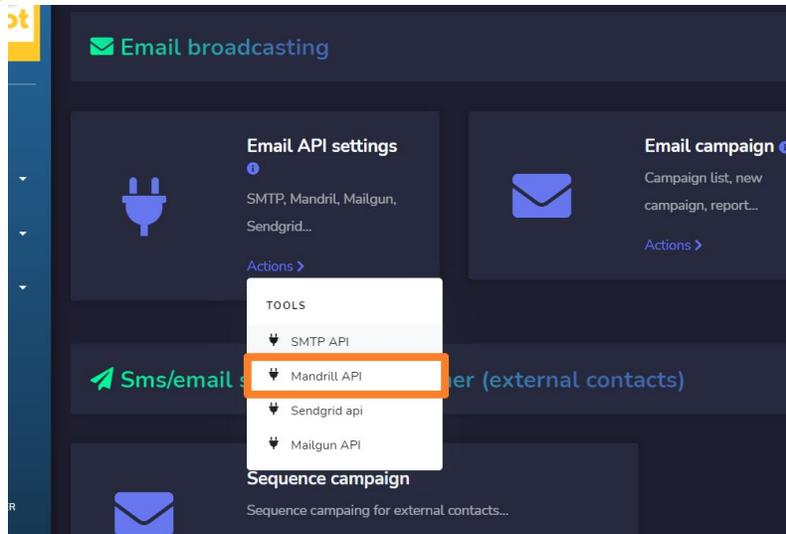




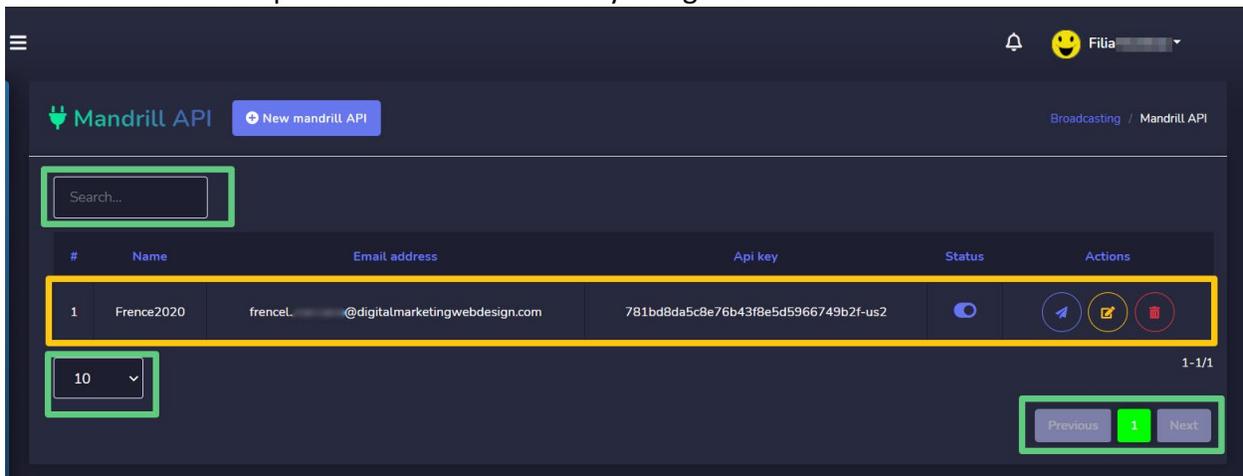
Mandrill API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Mandrill API screen.



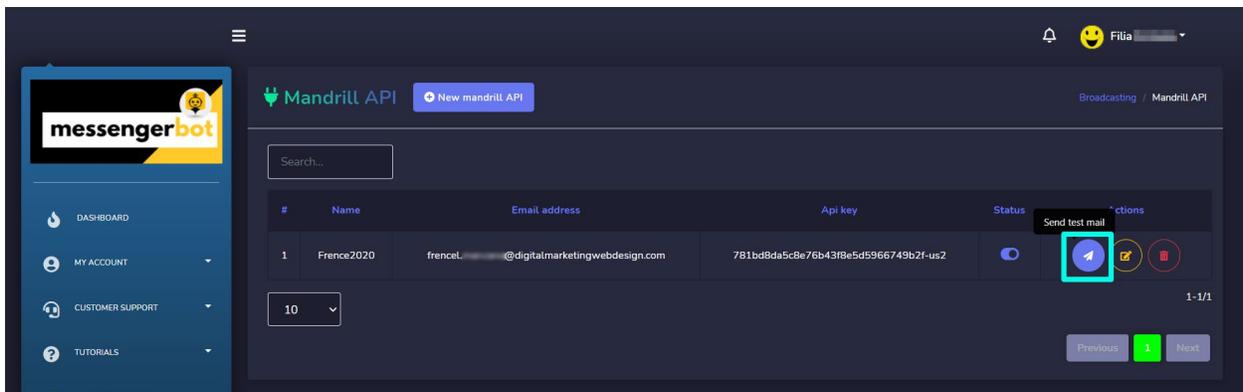


You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.



You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.





Send test email

Recipient email:

Subject:

Message:

- Edit the API you want to update.

Mandrill API

New mandrill API

Search...

#	Name	Email address	Api key	Status	Actions
1	Frence2020	frenceL...@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8e5d5966749b2f-us2	On	<input type="button" value="Send"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>

10

Previous 1 Next



Update mandrill API

Your name

Email address

Api key

Status

Active

- Delete the API.

Mandrill API [New mandrill API](#) Broadcasting / Mandrill API

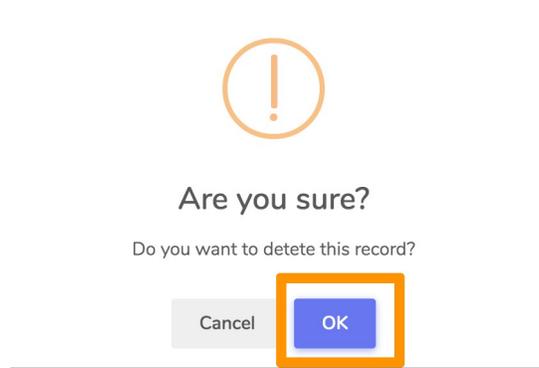
Search...

#	Name	Email address	Api key	Status	Actions
1	Frence2020	frenceL. @digitalmarketingwebdesign.com	781bd8da5c8e76b43f8e5d5966749b2f-us2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input checked="" type="button" value="Delete"/>

10

Previous 1 Next

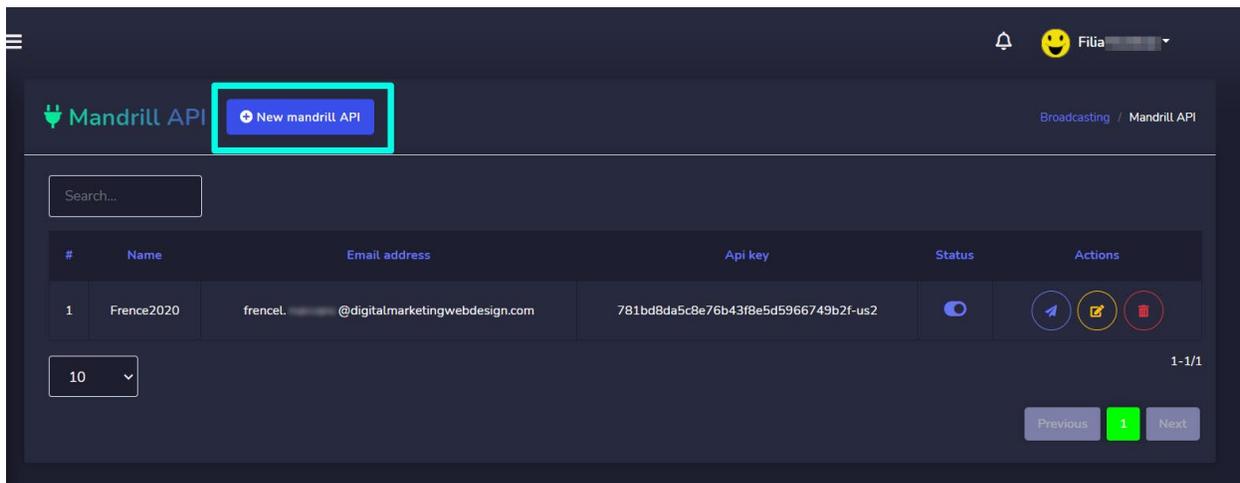




Create Mandrill API

You can create a new mandrill API by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select the  from **Mandrill API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Mandrill API** information. Enter your name.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Provide the **Mandrill API key** generated from your account.
- 5) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.





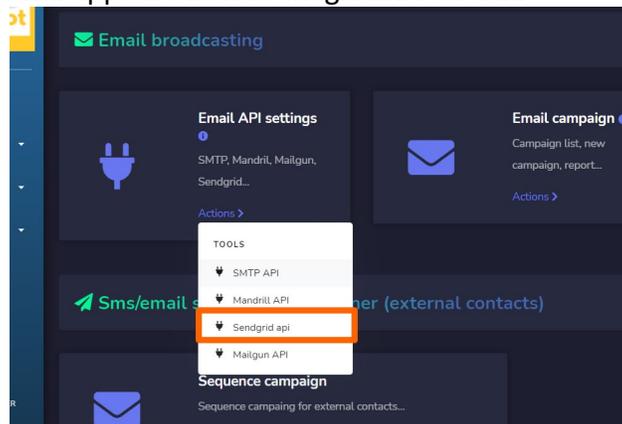
A dark-themed form titled "New mandrill API" with a close button in the top right. The form contains the following fields:

- Your name:** A text input field containing "DEA2818".
- Email address:** A text input field containing "deanne@digitalmarketingwebdesign.com".
- Api key:** A text input field containing "KjsgeuiGbmlLrbna1J8vh0762mP-jl0Tbc".
- Status:** A toggle switch labeled "Active" which is currently turned on.
- Buttons:** A blue "Save" button with a lock icon and a grey "Close" button.

A green success message at the bottom reads: "Mandrill API information has been added successfully." with a close button.

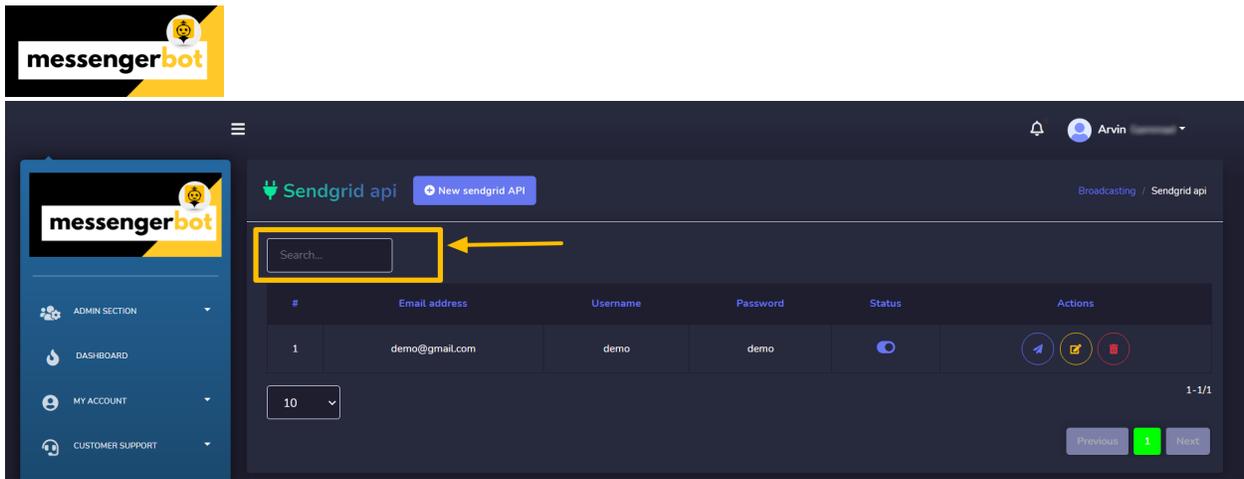
Sendgrid API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Sendgrid API screen.



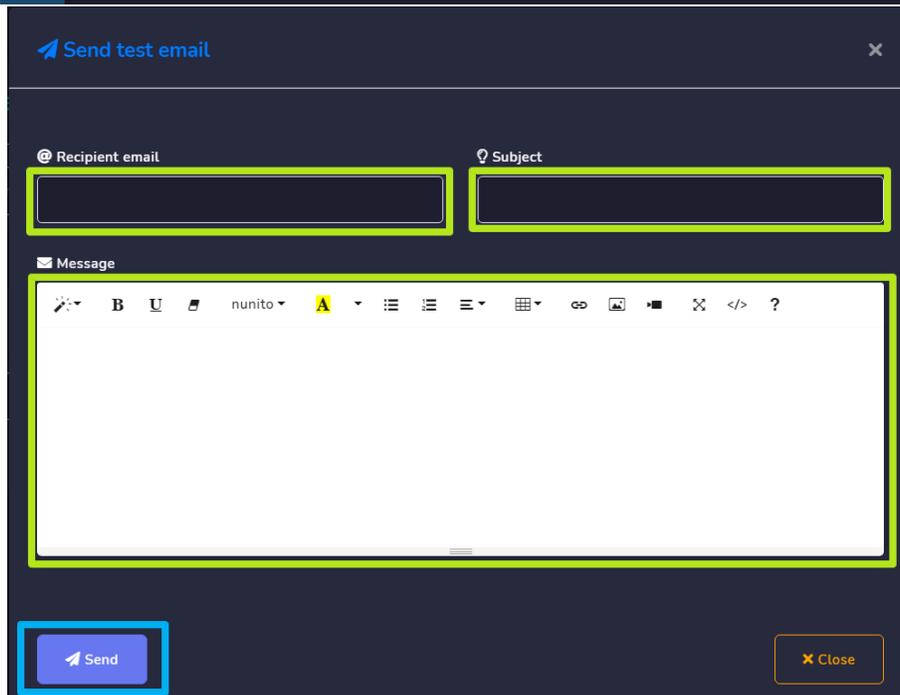
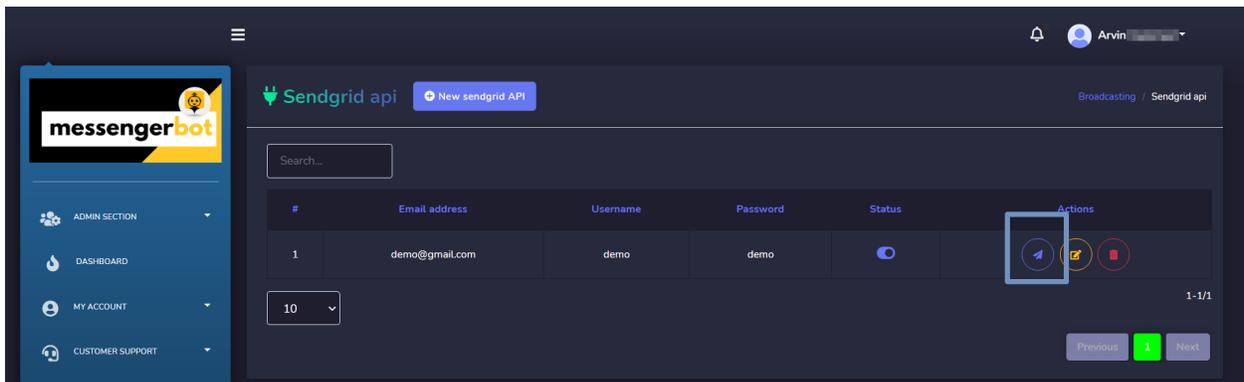
You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





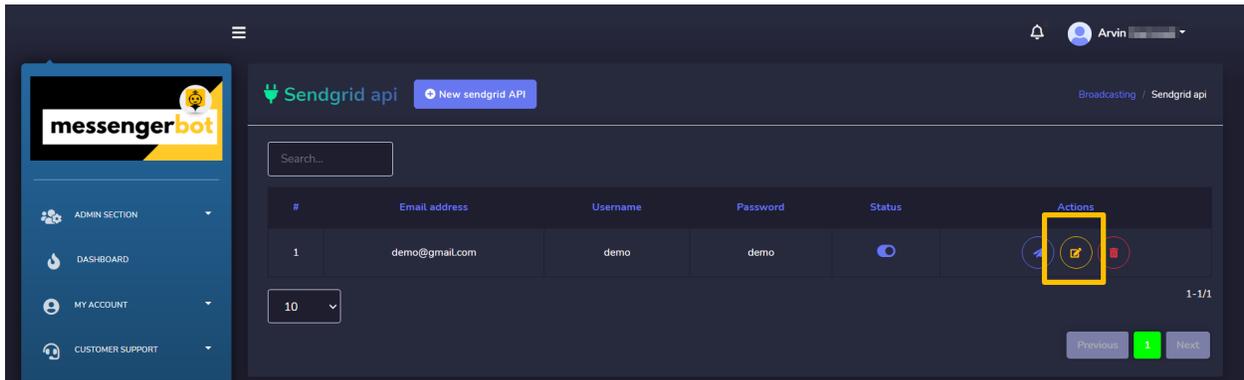
You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.





- Edit the API you want to update.



Update sendgrid API

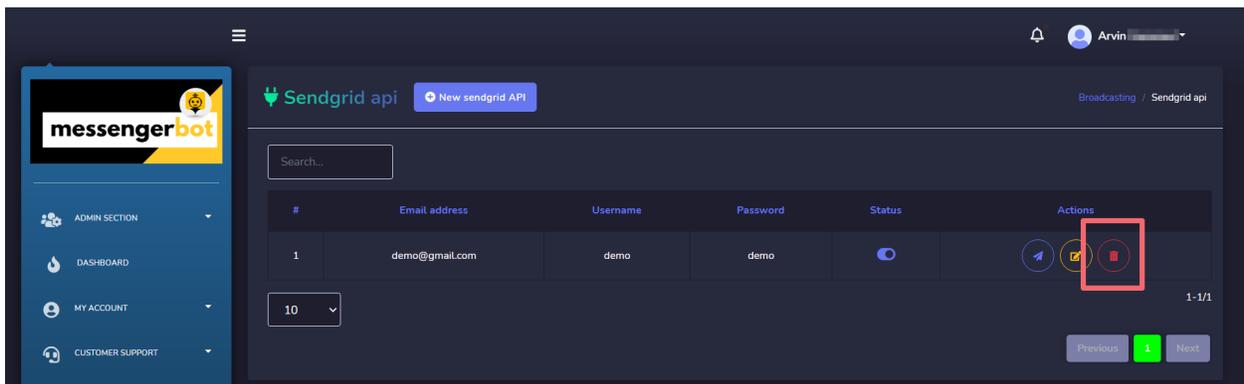
Email address
demo@gmail.com

Username
demo

Password
demo

Status
 Active

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?

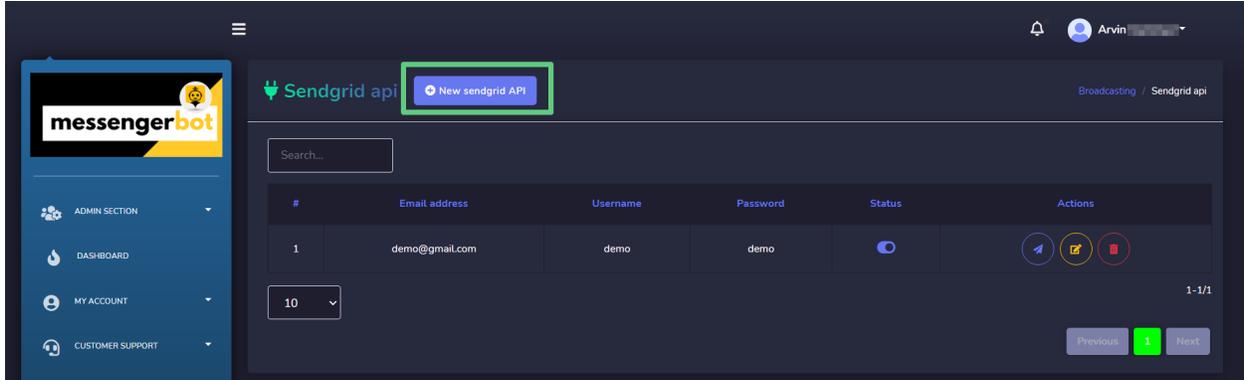
Do you want to delete this record?

Cancel

Create Sendgrid API

You can create a new sendgrid API by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select the from **Sendgrid API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Sendgrid API** information.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Enter your **user name**.
- 5) Provide the **password**.
- 6) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.





New sendgrid API

Email address

Username

Password

Status

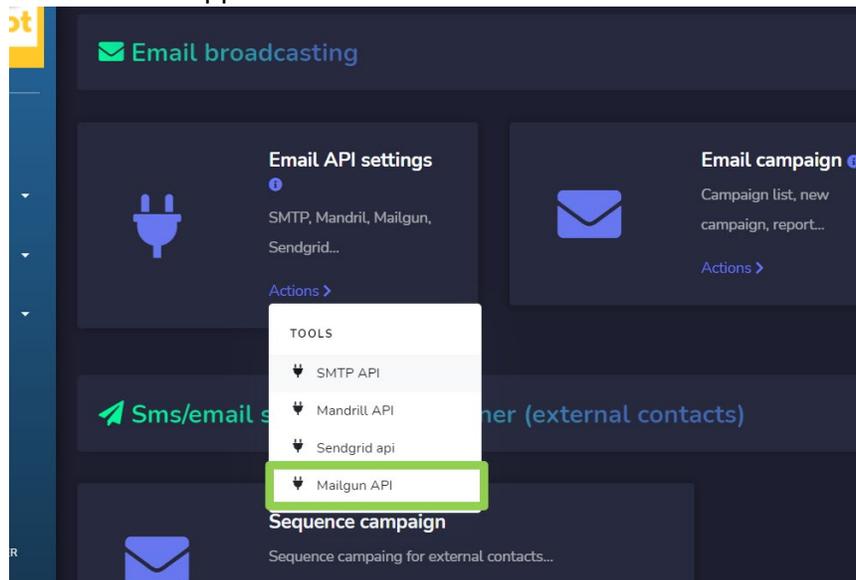
Active

Save Close

✓ Sendgrid API information has been added successfully. ✕

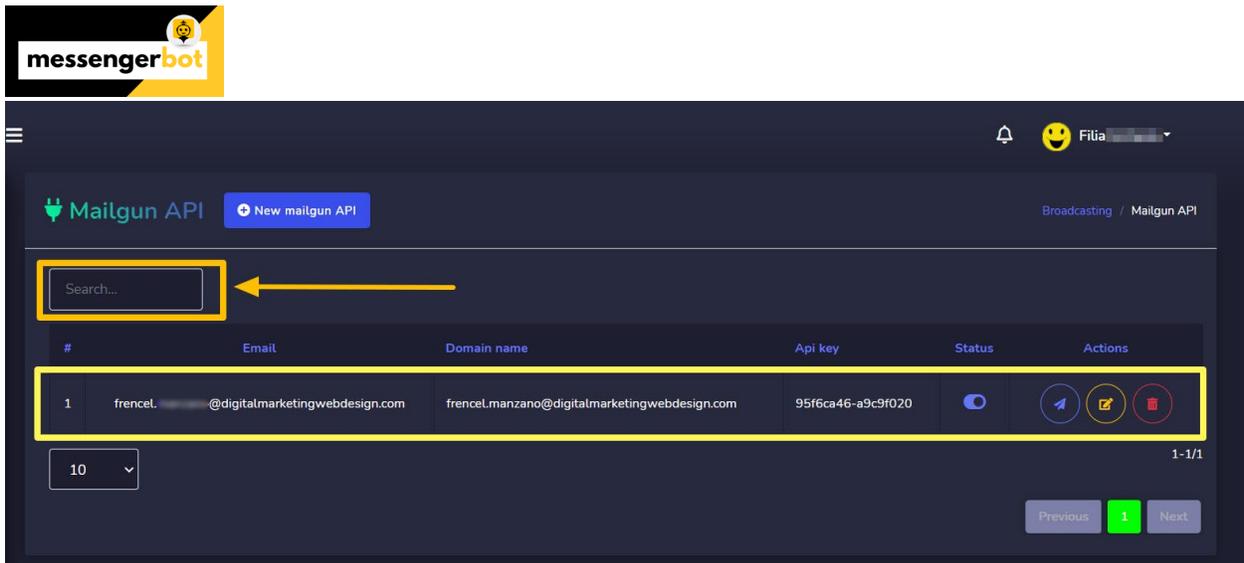
Mailgun API

A list of email addresses will appear on the Mandrill API screen.



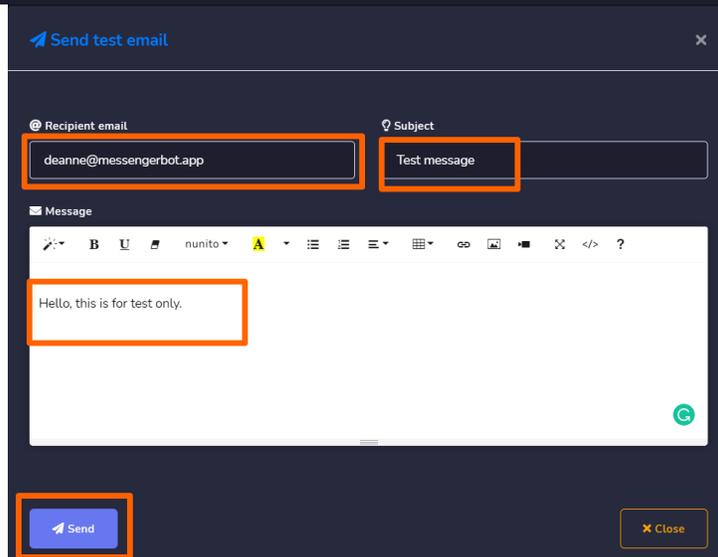
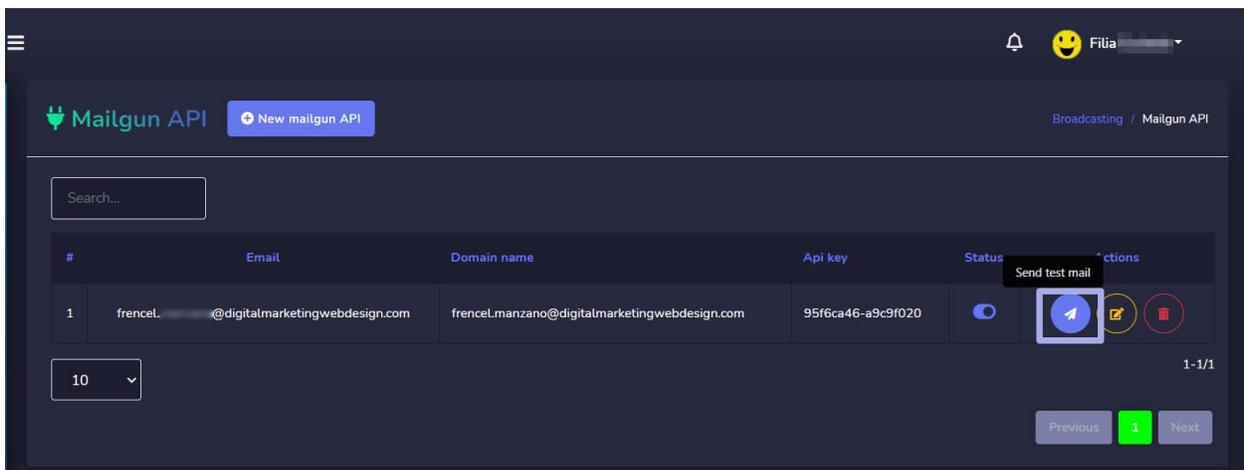
You can search for a particular email address by using the **search bar**.





You can perform the following actions from this view.

- Send test email by selecting the  icon against a particular email address.

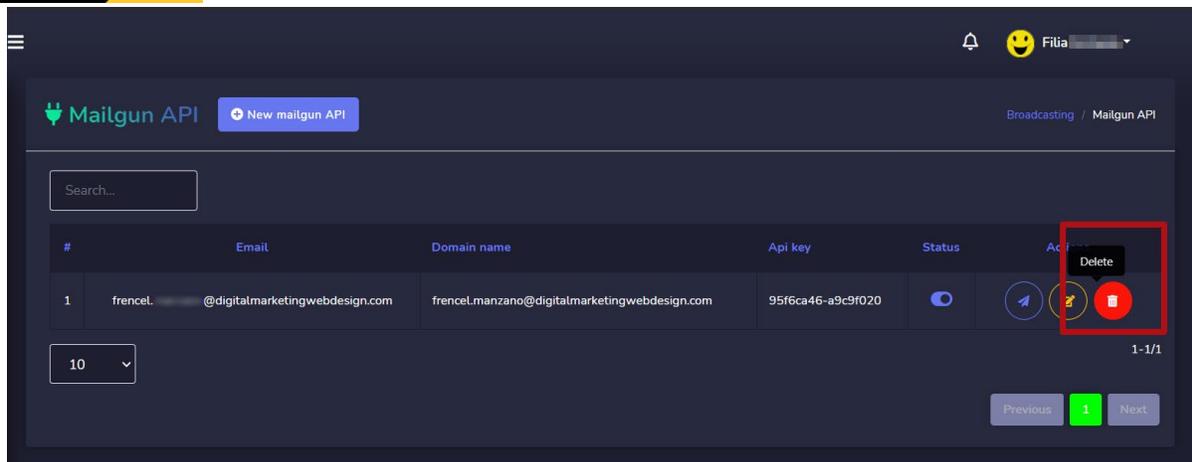




- Edit the API you want to update.

- Delete the API.





Are you sure?

Do you want to delete this record?

Cancel

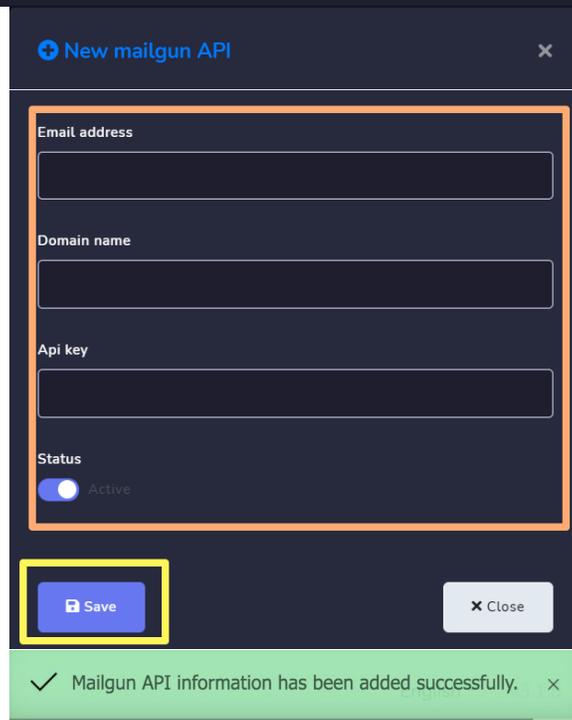
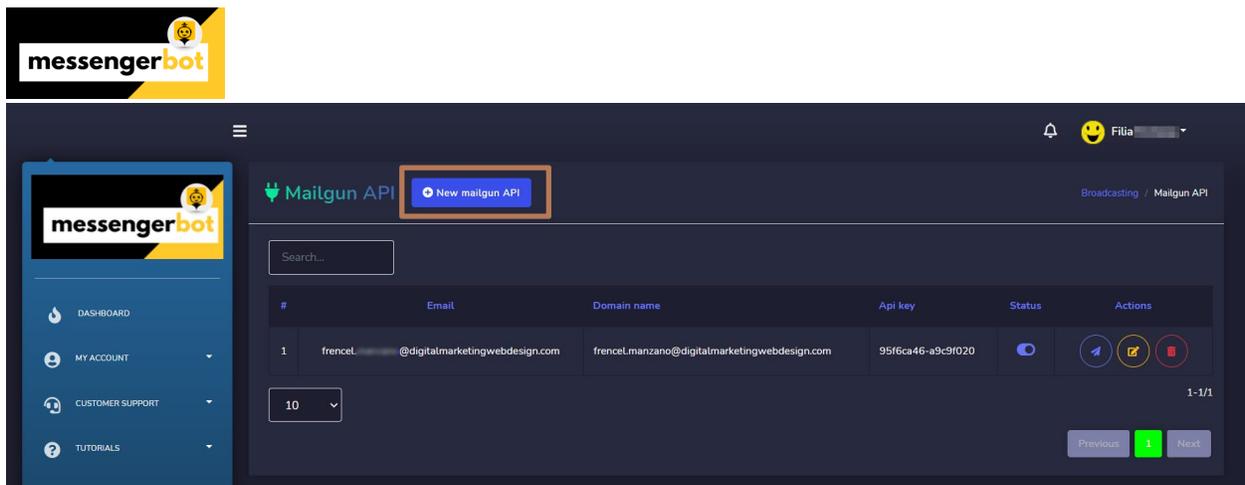
OK

Create Mailgun API

You can create a new mailgun API by following the steps given below:

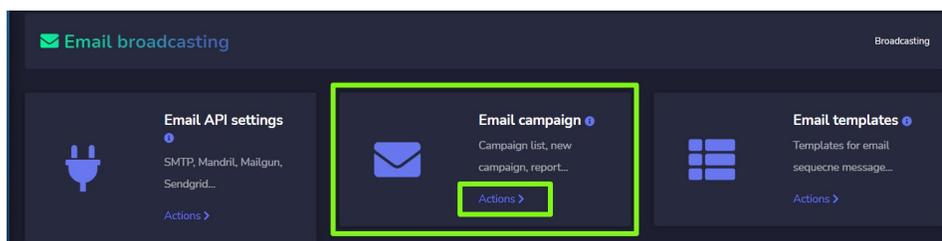
- 1) Select the **New mailgun API** from **Mailgun API** screen.
- 2) Provide the **New Mailgun API** information.
- 3) Enter the **email address**.
- 4) Provide the **Domain** name.
- 5) Provide the **Mailgun API key** generated.
- 6) Set the status of the API, then hit **Save**.





Email campaign

To access the Email campaign, select the **Actions** option in **Email campaign** section of **Email broadcasting**.

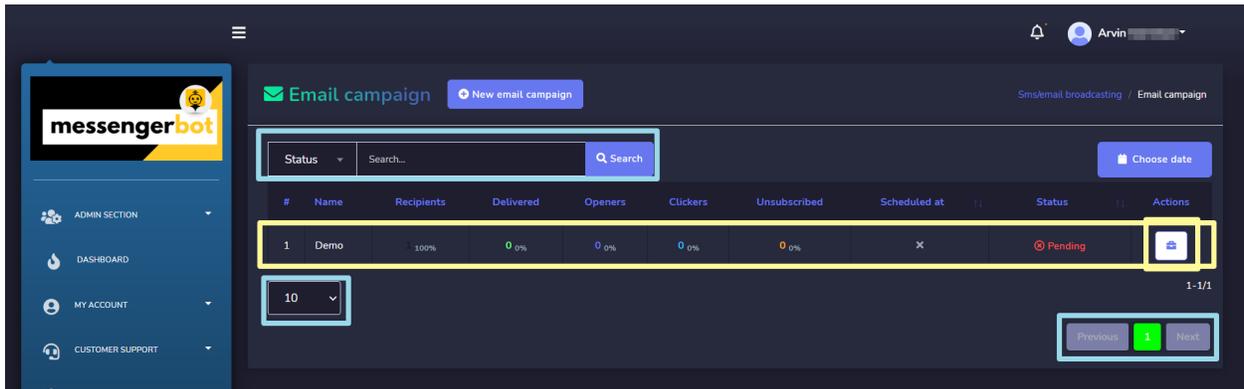


Email campaign screen consists of a name of campaigns you can search for a specific campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their



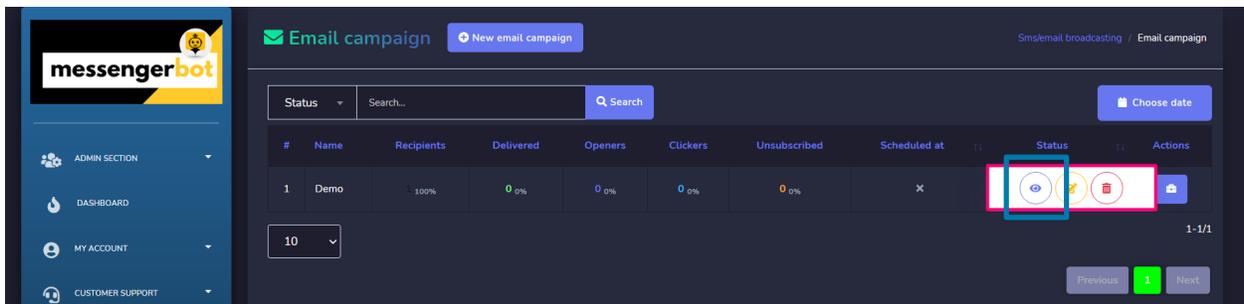


status. You can arrange them either in **ascending or descending order** by selecting the **arrows** from the header of the table.



To perform different actions on the templates, select  option against the template you want to perform actions on. The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the report by selecting .



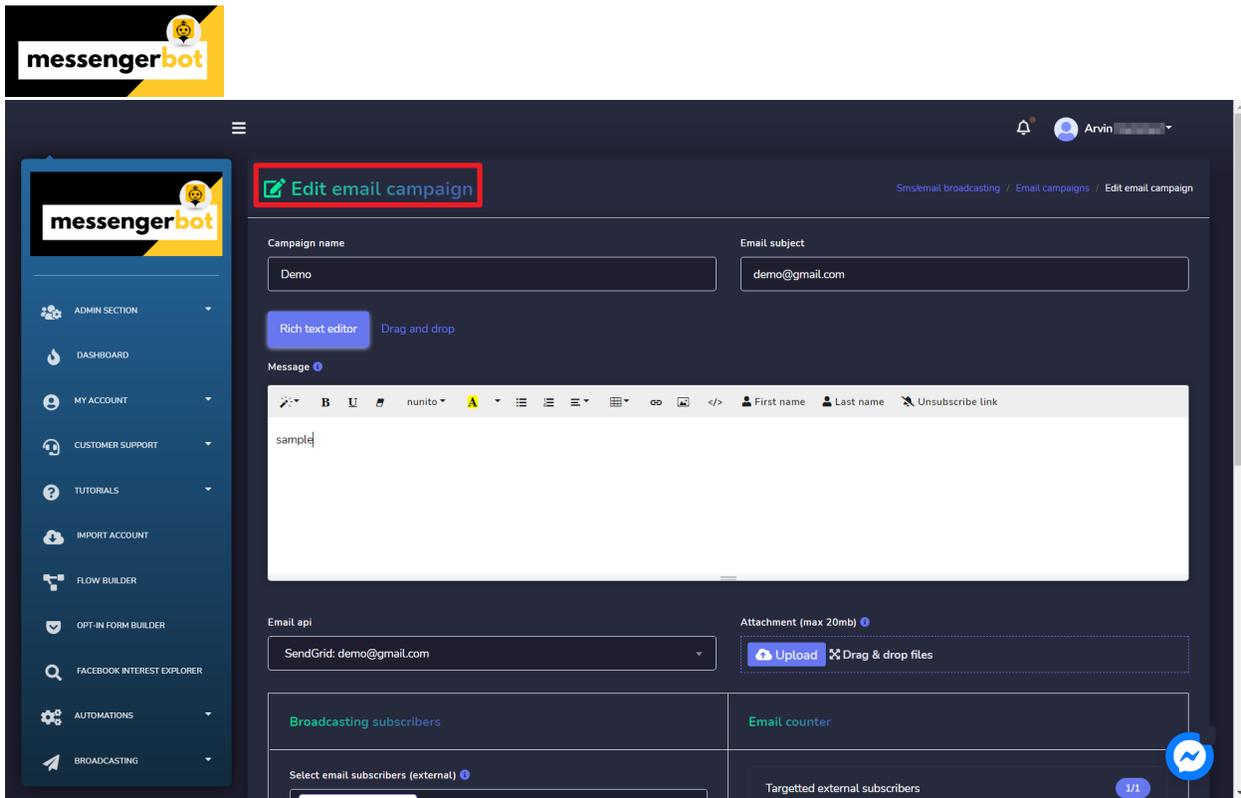
The screenshot shows the Messengerbot dashboard with a sidebar on the left containing navigation options like ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area is titled 'Campaign report' and displays a summary for a 'Campaign (Completed) Demo'. It shows the email API used (Sendgrid - demo@gmail.com) and the status 'Sent (0%) 0/1'. Below this, three performance metrics are shown: Campaign open rate (0% Openers), Campaign click rate (0% Clickers), and Unsubscribed (0% Unsubscribed). Each metric includes a progress bar and a table of statistics: Openers (0 Total, 0% Click-to-open-ratio), Clickers (0 Total, 00:00-00:00:00 Last clicked), and Unsubscribed (0 Total, 00:00-00:00:00 Last unsubscribed). A search bar is located at the bottom of the report section.

- Edit the campaign.

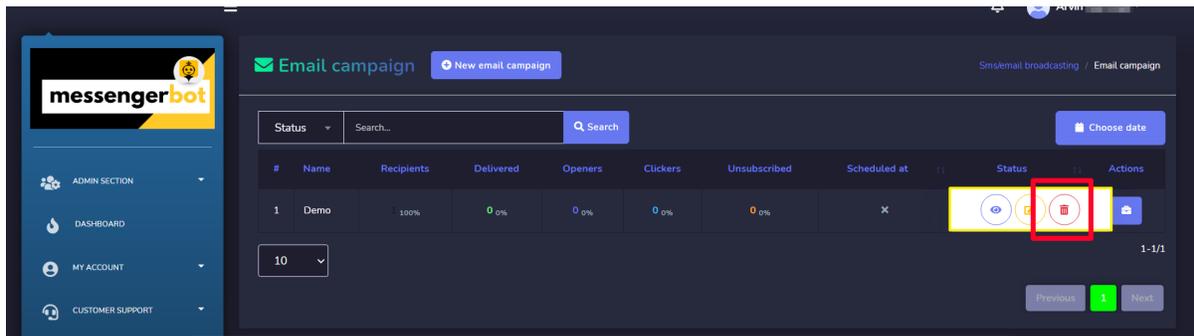
The screenshot shows the 'Email campaign' section of the dashboard. It features a 'New email campaign' button and a search bar. Below is a table listing the campaigns. The first row shows a campaign named 'Demo' with 100% Recipients, 0% Delivered, 0% Openers, 0% Clickers, and 0% Unsubscribed. The 'Status' column for this campaign is highlighted with a yellow box, and the 'Actions' column contains icons for edit, delete, and share. A 'Choose date' button is also visible. The table is paginated to show 10 items, and the current page is 1-1/1.

#	Name	Recipients	Delivered	Openers	Clickers	Unsubscribed	Scheduled at	Status	Actions
1	Demo	100%	0%	0%	0%	0%	x	[Status Icon]	[Edit] [Delete] [Share]



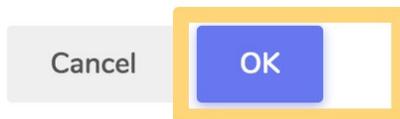


- Delete the campaign



Are you sure?

Do you want to detete this record?





Create email campaign

You can create a new email campaign by following the steps given below:

- 1) Select **New email campaign** option from the top of the **Email campaign** screen.
- 2) An **Email campaign** screen will appear. Provide the campaign details which include:
 - a. Campaign name
 - b. Email subject
 - c. Message
 - d. Email API (to be selected from dropdown)
 - e. Attachment
- 3) Provide the information of **Broadcasting subscribers** and **Message subscribers**.
- 4) You can also choose the targeting options for a better reach. The right side of the view displays the **Email counter** i.e. targeted subscribers.
- 5) You can choose a sending **time**.
- 6) Once all information is added, select **Create campaign**.

The image shows two screenshots of the messengerbot dashboard. The top screenshot displays the 'Email campaign' management interface. It features a sidebar with navigation options: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, and CUSTOMER SUPPORT. The main content area has a 'New email campaign' button highlighted with a red box. Below this is a table with columns for #, Name, Recipients, Delivered, Openers, Clickers, Unsubscribed, Scheduled at, Status, and Actions. A table with one row is visible, showing a campaign named 'Demo' with 100% recipients, 0% delivered, 0% openers, 0% clickers, and 0% unsubscribed. The bottom screenshot shows the 'Create email campaign' form. It has fields for 'Campaign name' and 'Email subject', both highlighted with green boxes. Below these fields is a 'Rich text editor' with a 'Drag and drop' button and a 'Message' section with a text area for writing the message content, also highlighted with a green box.



Email api Attachment (max 20mb)

Select API Upload Drag & drop files

Broadcasting subscribers

Select email subscribers (external)

Messenger subscribers

Select page

Select page

Targeting options

Gender Time zone Locale

Select Select Select

Email counter

Targetted external subscribers 0/0

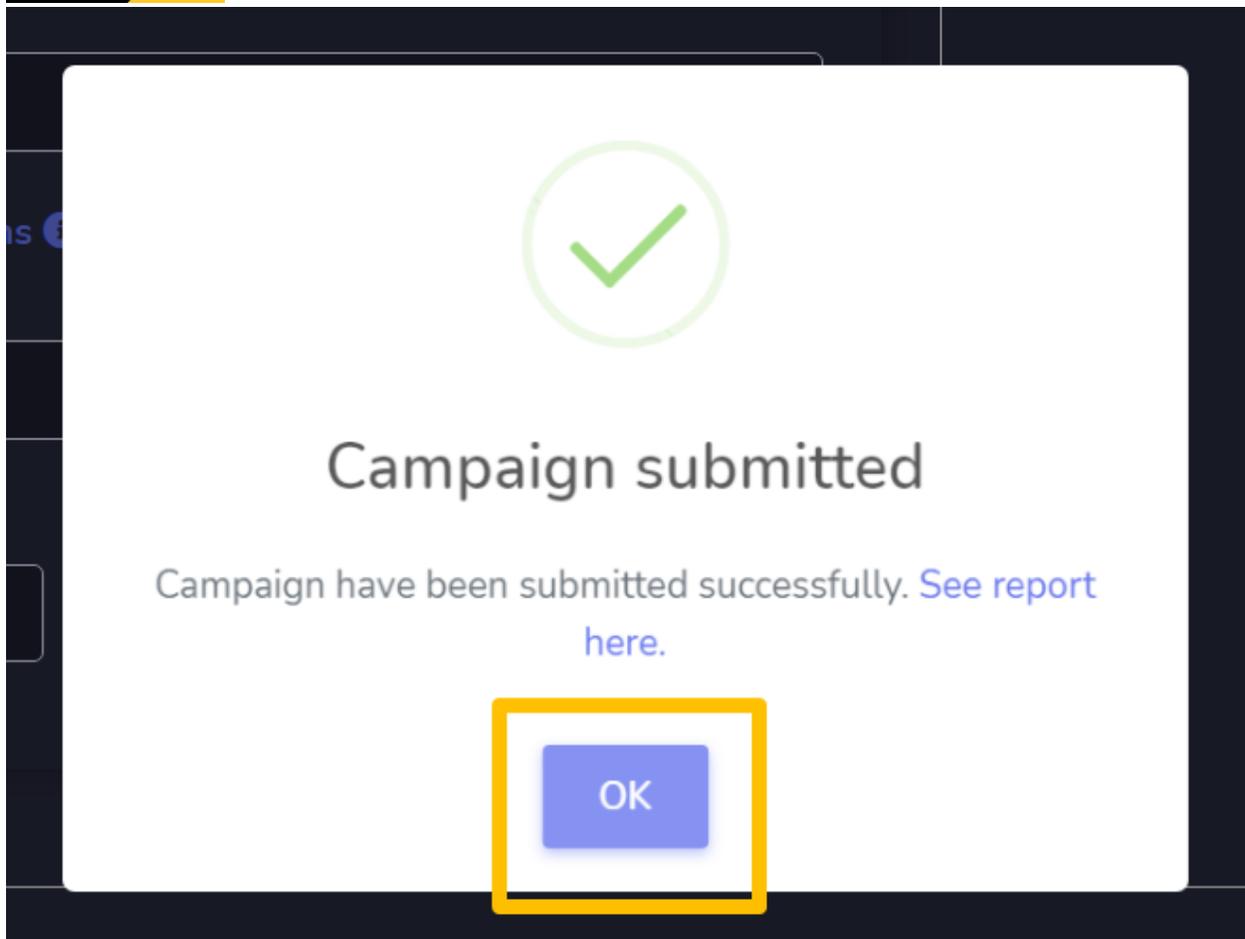
Targetted page subscribers 0/0

Total targetted reach 0/0

Sending time Send now

Create Campaign Cancel

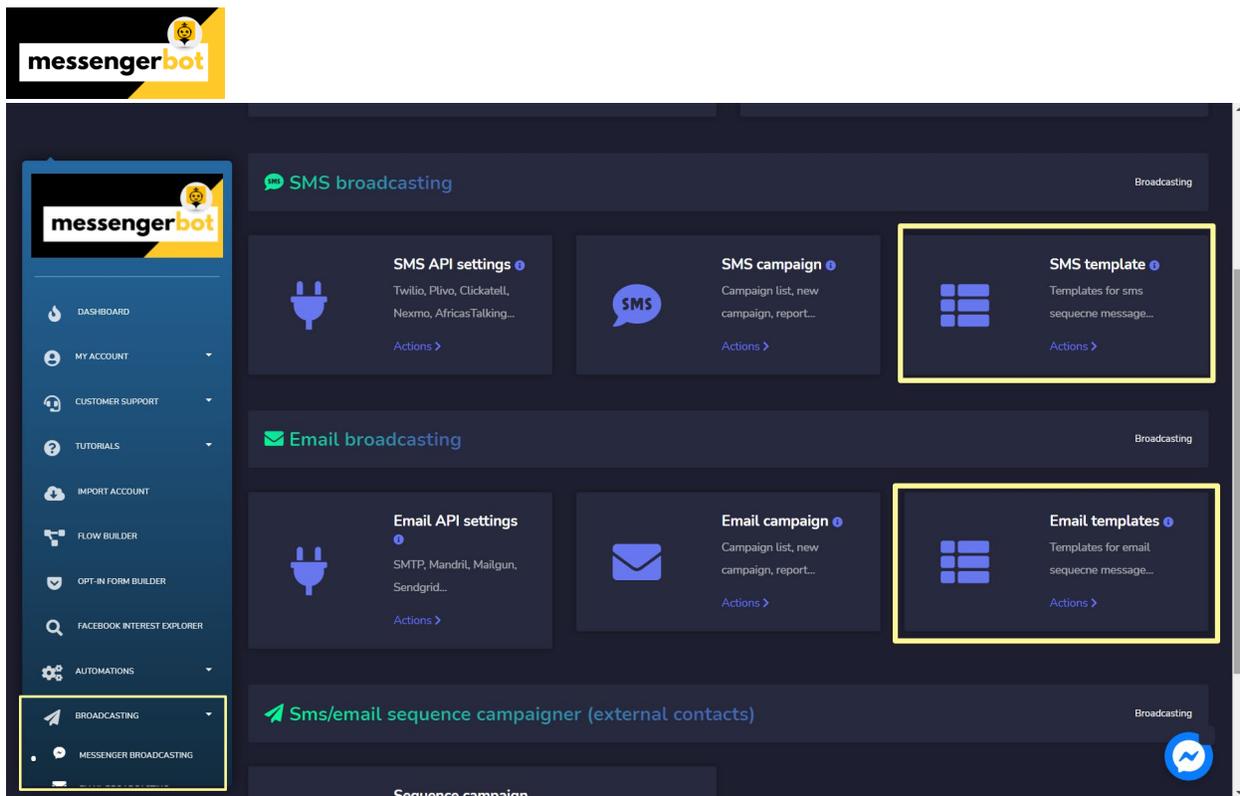




SMS/Email Templates

To get started with SMS/Email sequence, you've to create SMS & Email Templates to create SMS & Email Sequence campaigns. But to do this you need to go to the Broadcasting menu and choose **Email or SMS Broadcasting**. Then this screen will show. you will find two blocks named **SMS Template** and **Email Template**.

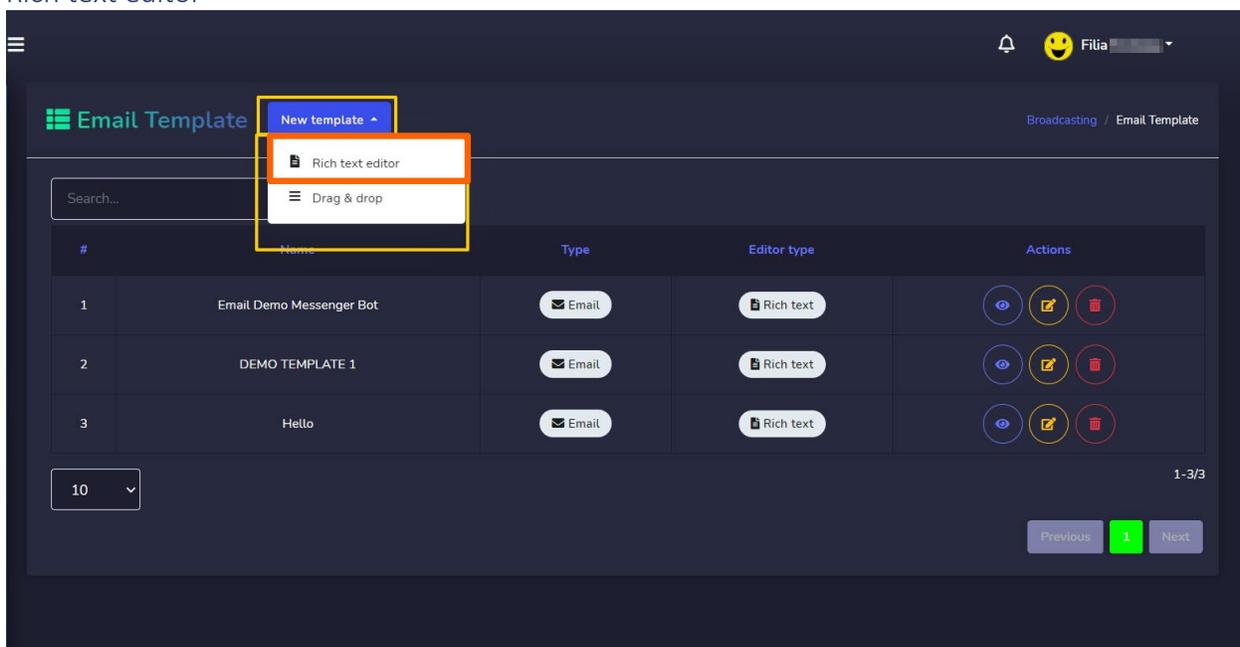




Go to the SMS or Email template section and click on the **New template** button then a dropdown will appear with two choices:

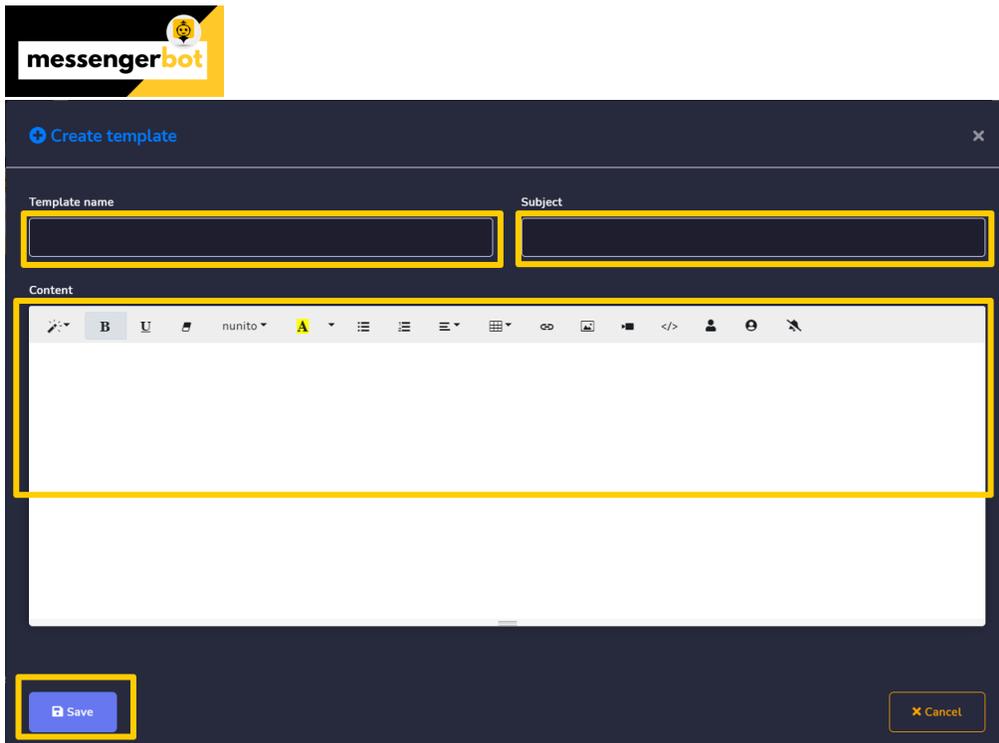
- Rich text editor
- Drag & Drop

Rich text editor

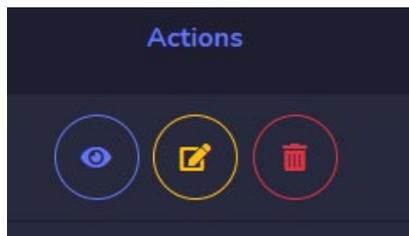


Create SMS or Email Templates by providing information.

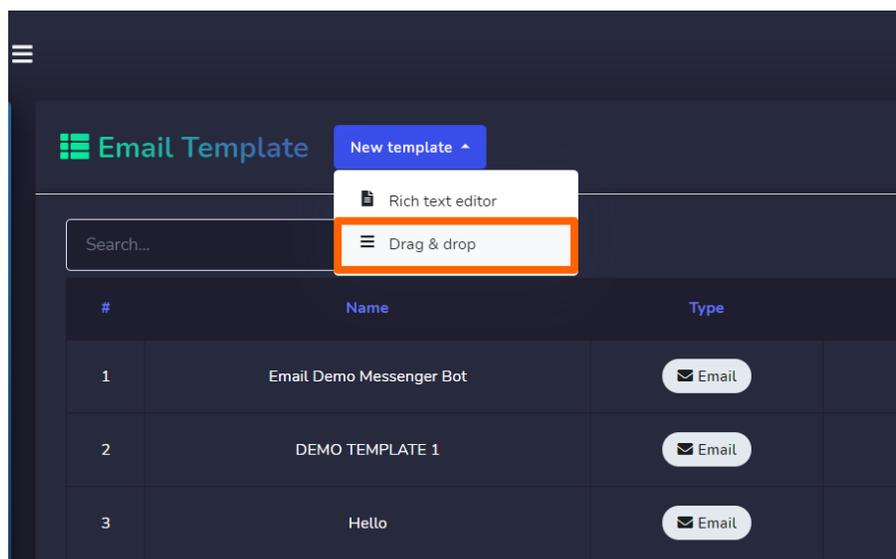




Also, you can see the existing templates in the table from where you can view, edit and delete templates.



Drag & Drop



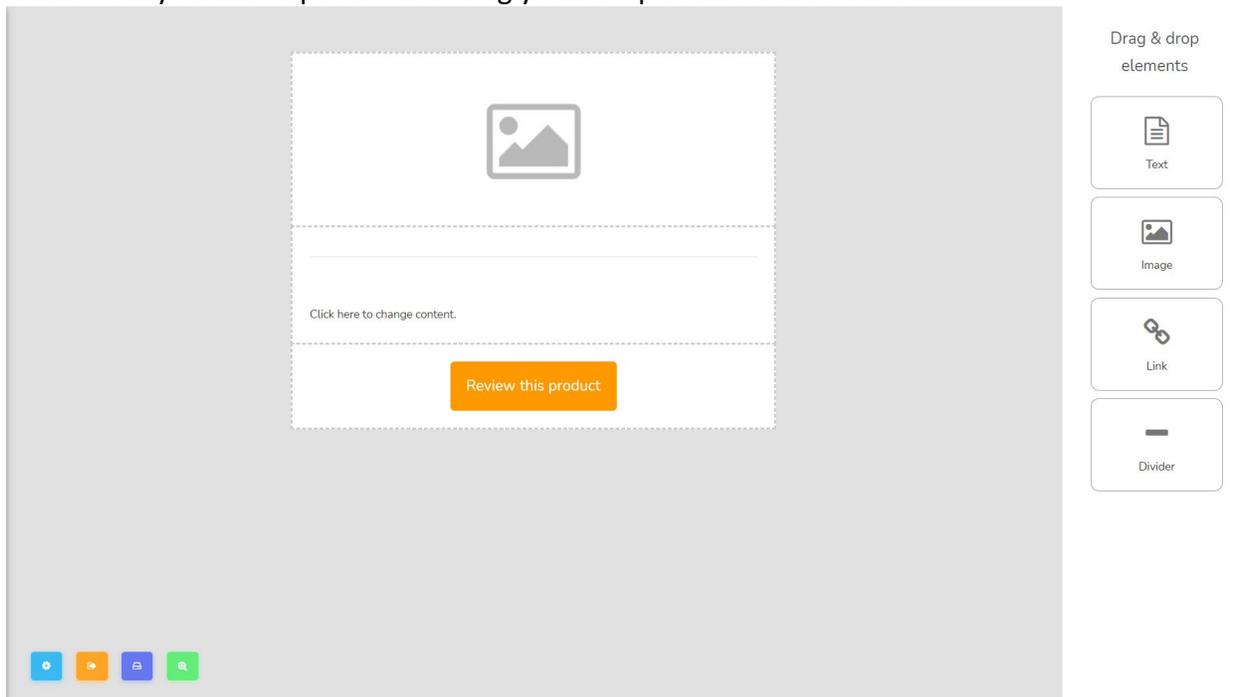
For the drag & drop, we have 4 templates that you can use:

1. No sidebar (wide)
2. Left sidebar
3. Right sidebar
4. Both sidebar



No sidebar (wide)

This is how your workspace on building your template would look like.

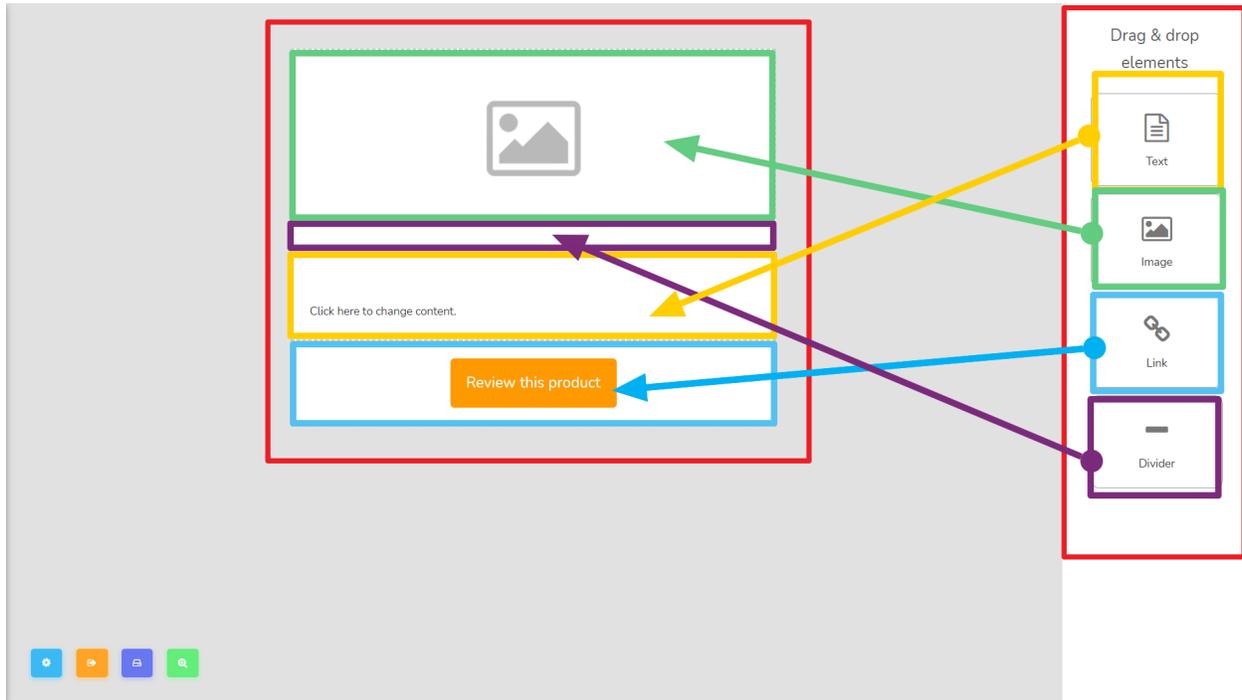




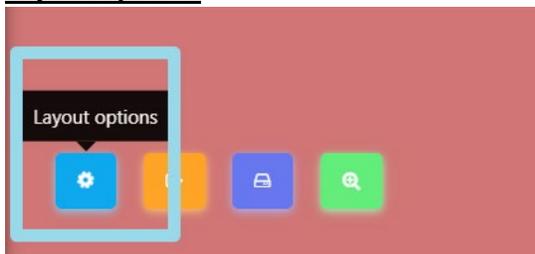
On the right part, you will see the **drag and drop elements** that you can use such as:

- **Text**
- **Image**
- **Link**
- **Divider**

There are sets of a button on the lower left of the workspace page. starting from left to right we have **Layout options**, **Save and Quit**, **Save template**, and **Preview**.



Layout options

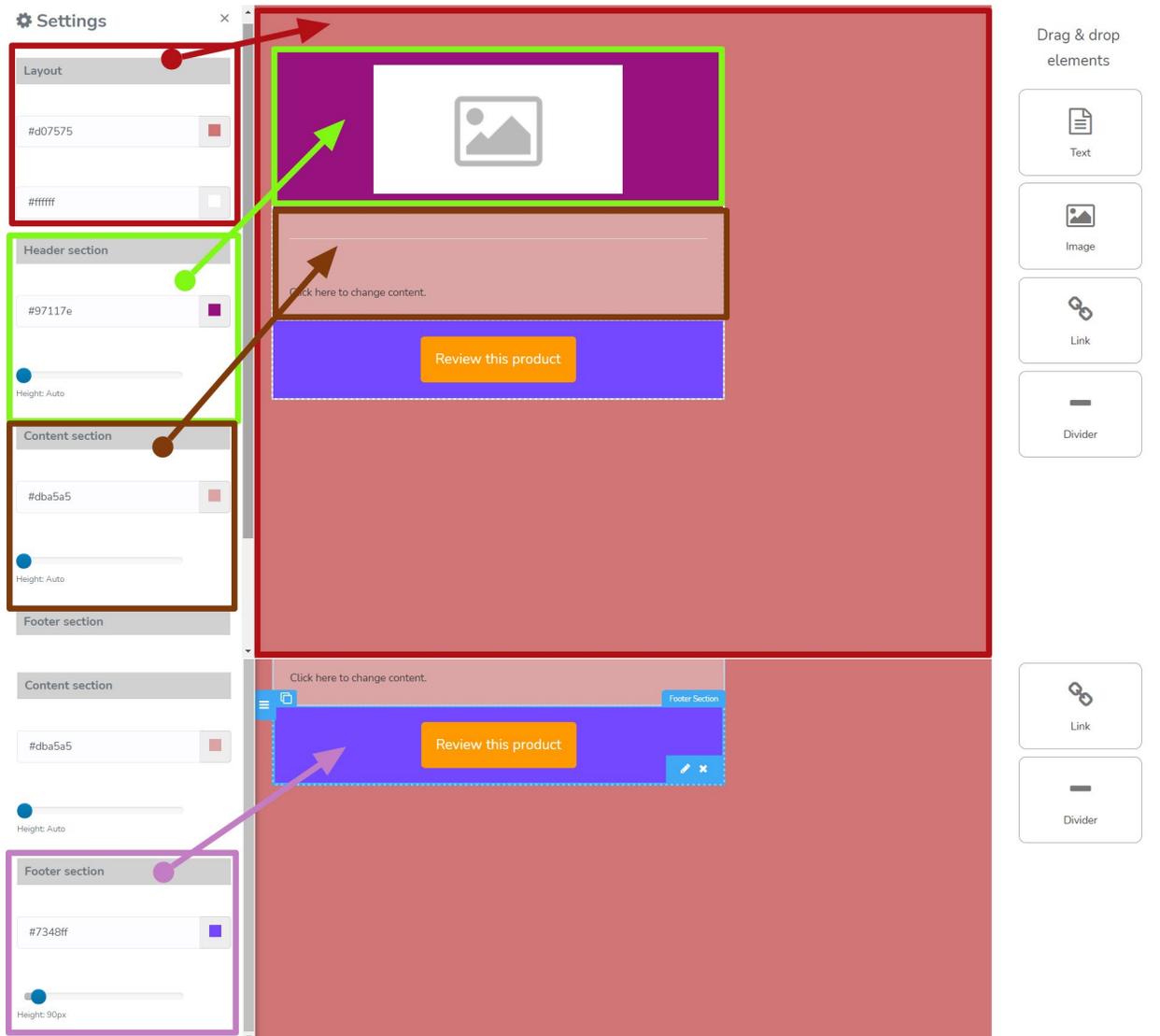


Here, you can see the settings of your template layout. You can change its **background color** and **height sizes per section**. These are the following sections:

1. **Layout** would be the background of your template. You can also change the outline of your template by changing the 2nd color to where you can see the cursor.
2. **Header section** is the first layer of the template as shown. You can change the background color and height here.

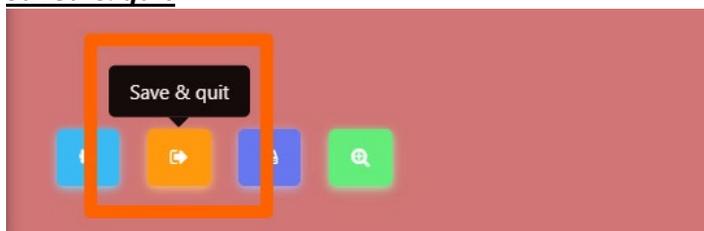


3. **Content section** is the second layer of the template as shown. You can also change the background color and height here.
4. **Footer section** is the third layer of the template as shown. You can also change the background color and height here.



The screenshot illustrates the Messenger Bot template editor. On the left, the 'Settings' panel is divided into sections: 'Layout' (background color #d07575), 'Header section' (background color #97117e), 'Content section' (background color #dba5a5), and 'Footer section' (background color #7348ff). The main workspace shows a template with a purple header, a content section with a placeholder image, and a blue footer with a 'Review this product' button. A 'Drag & drop elements' panel on the right contains icons for Text, Image, Link, and Divider. Colored arrows point from the settings panels to the corresponding sections in the template.

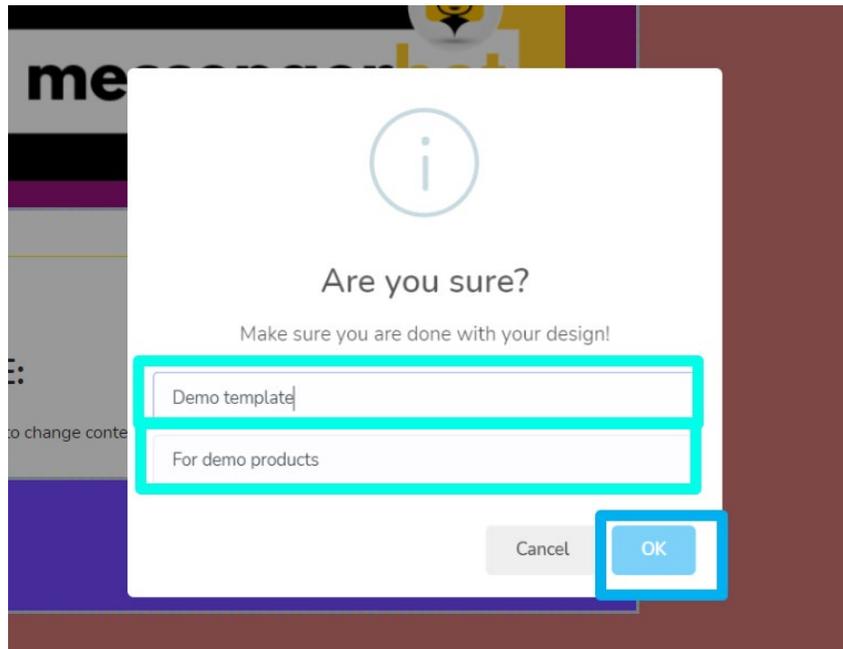
Saved & quit



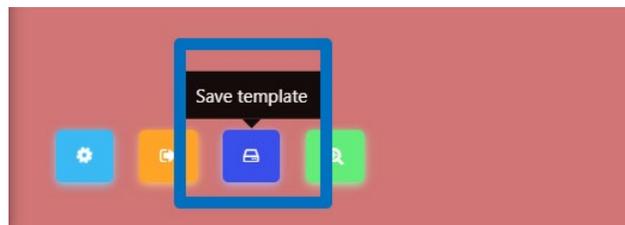


Saved & quit means saving your **work** and will be **exited** on the workspace.

When you click **Save and quit**, this modal will appear, type in your template name and template subject then click **OK**.



Save template

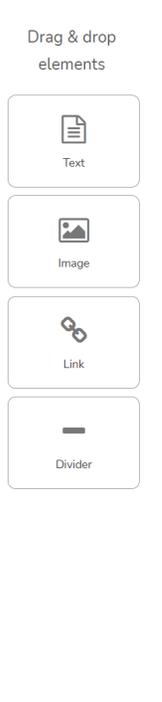
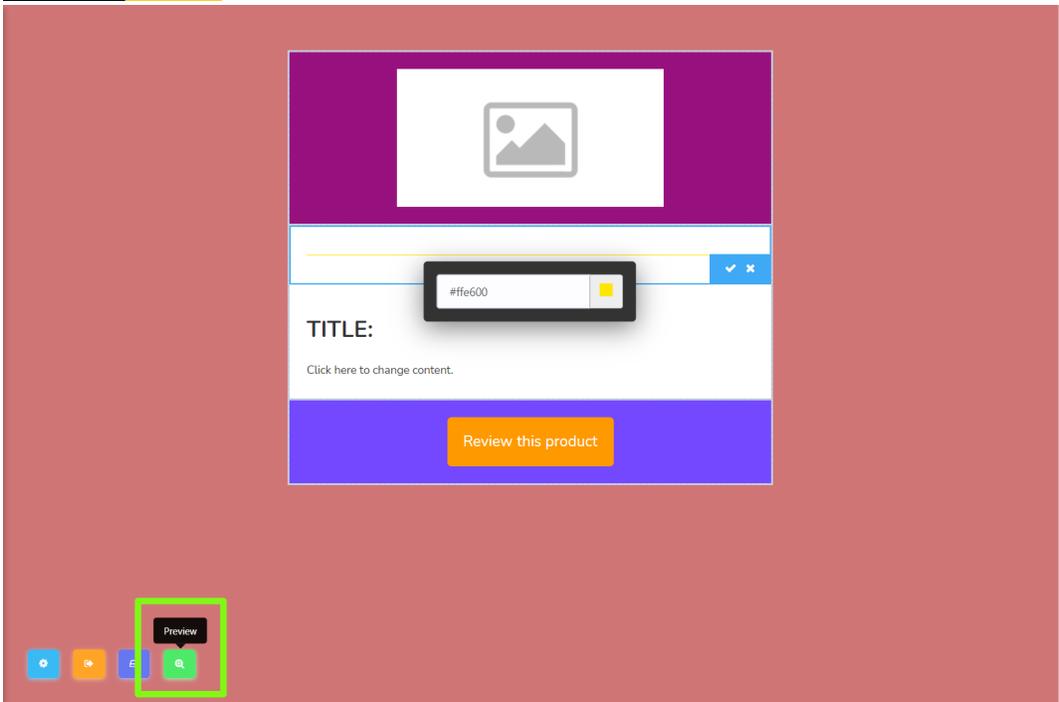


Save template will be simply **saving** your **template** and still can **continue building** it, this notification is what it will show you after.



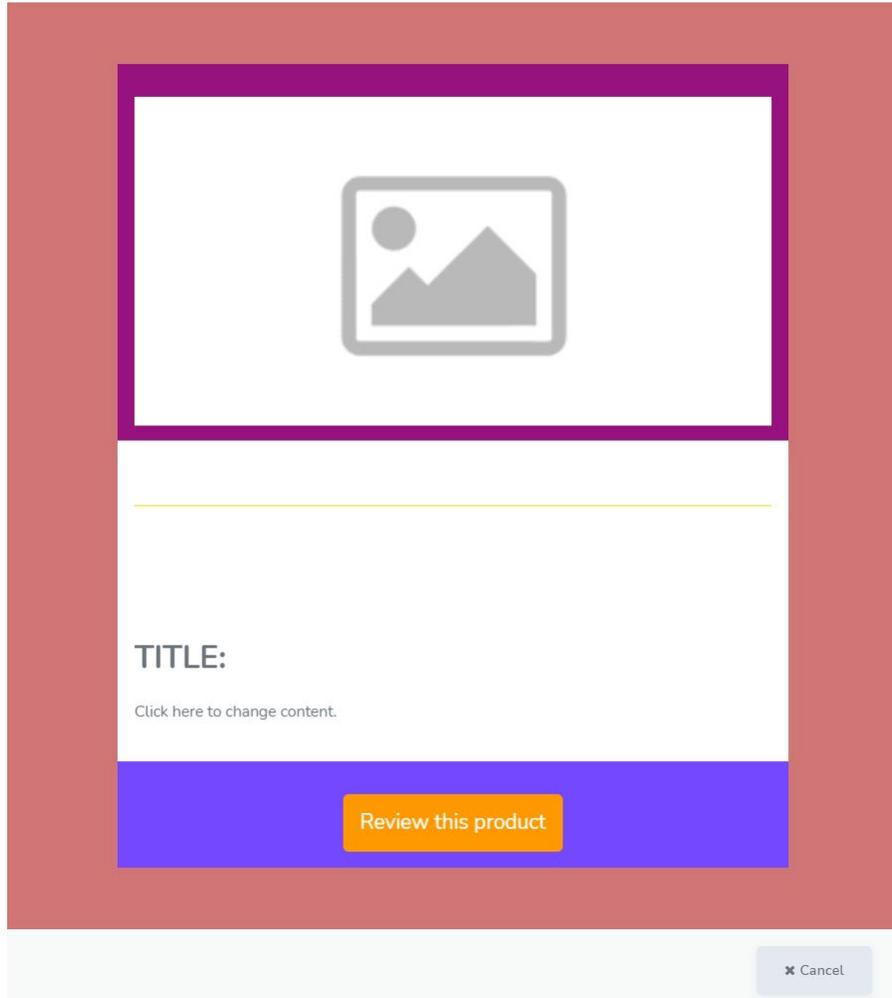
Preview





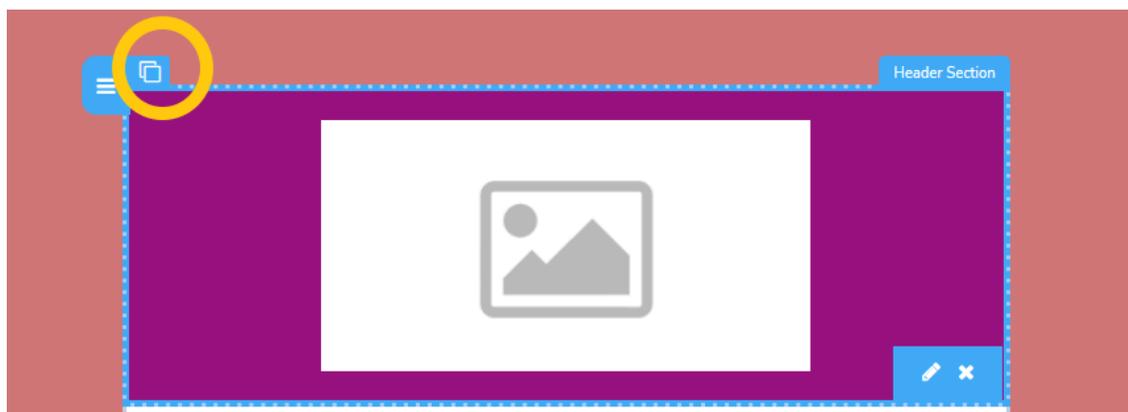
Preview means previewing the overall design o your template when generated.



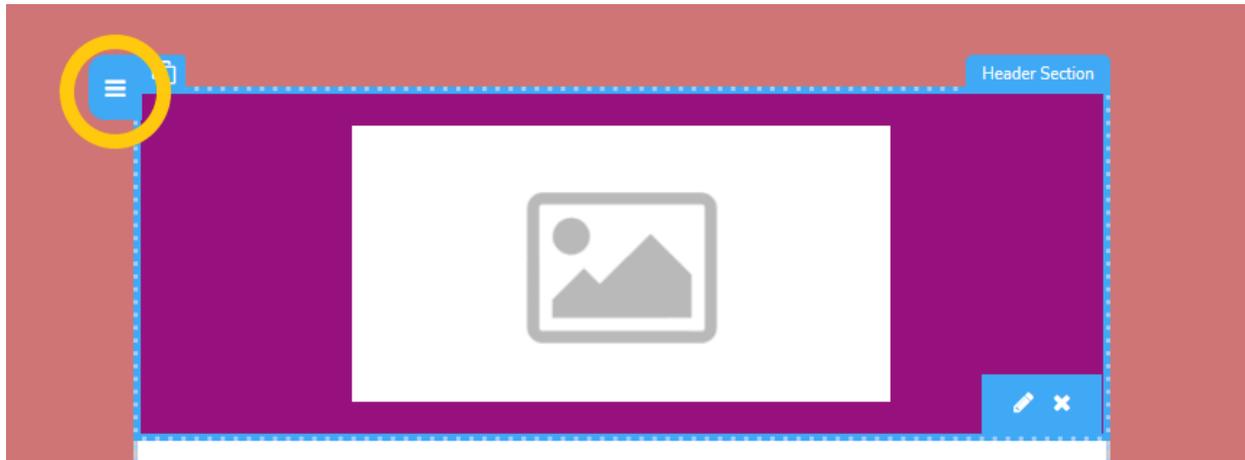


Now, you have to learn that each element that you placed on your template are editable and have **functions** like:

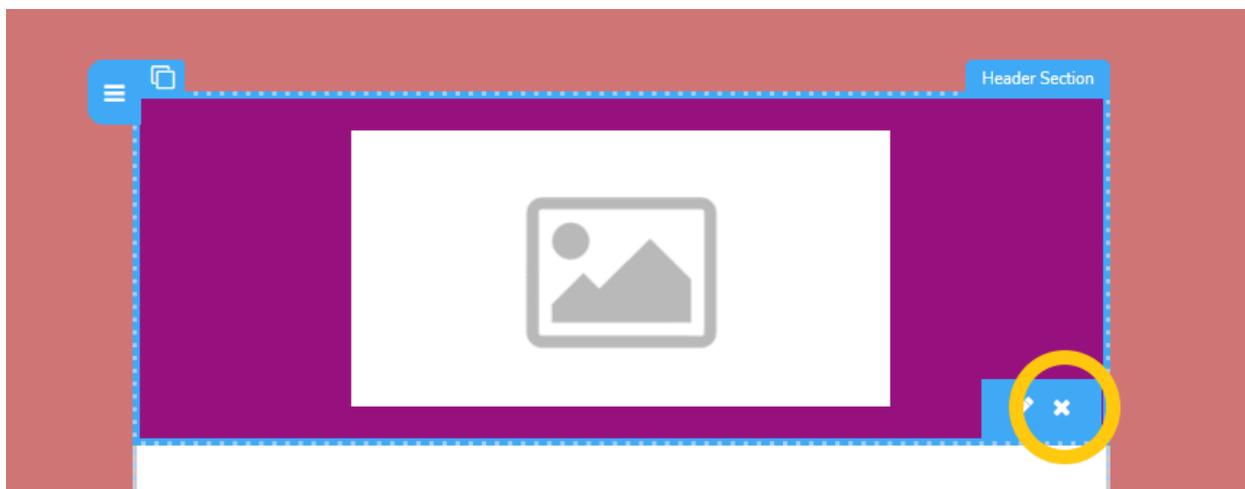
1. **Copy**, this is for duplicating your element.



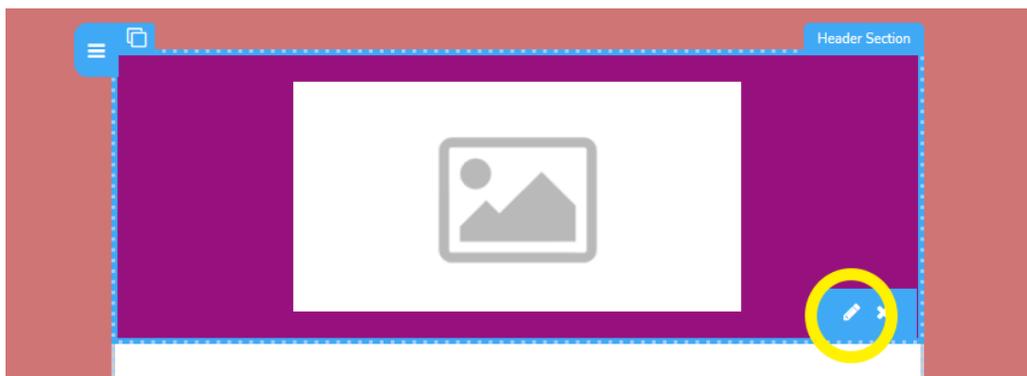
2. By clicking and holding this at the same time, you can **drag this up and down** to move its place on the template.



3. **X** is for deleting the element.



4. **Pen icon** is when you want to edit the element. Each element has its different ways of customization that you can play with:





- a. **Image** - you need to **upload** your desired **image**, next for **insert image SRC (source)** which is the place where your image is saved, it will be shown automatically after you save your edit by **clicking the check icon**. this is how it will show. **Type the link** here where you want to be **redirected** whenever the image is clicked by users.

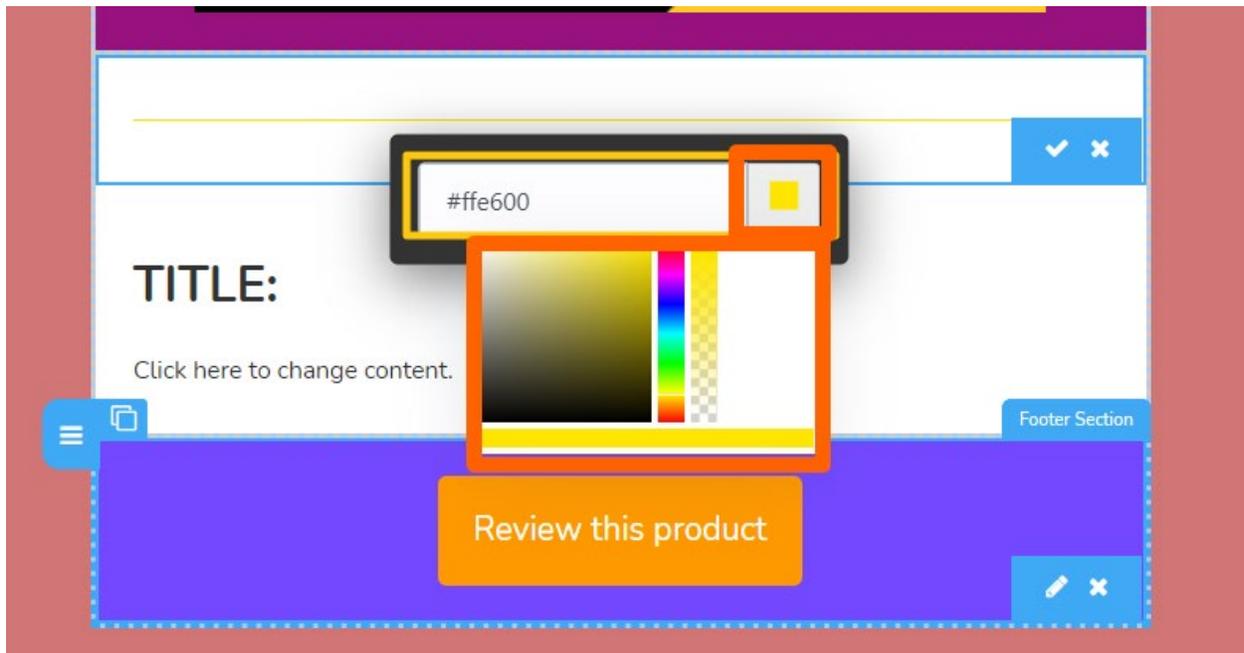
The image displays three sequential screenshots of a web editor interface, illustrating the process of configuring an image in a header section. Each screenshot shows a purple header area with a white image placeholder and a floating configuration panel below it. The panel contains three options: 'Choose File' (with 'No file chosen' text), 'Insert Image SRC', and 'Insert Image Link'. A blue checkmark icon is visible in the top right of the configuration panel.

- First Screenshot:** The 'Insert Image SRC' option is highlighted with a yellow box.
- Second Screenshot:** The 'Insert Image SRC' option is filled with the URL `https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/image/media_372_161`, which is also highlighted with a yellow box.
- Third Screenshot:** The 'Insert Image Link' option is filled with the URL `messengerbot.app`, which is also highlighted with a yellow box.

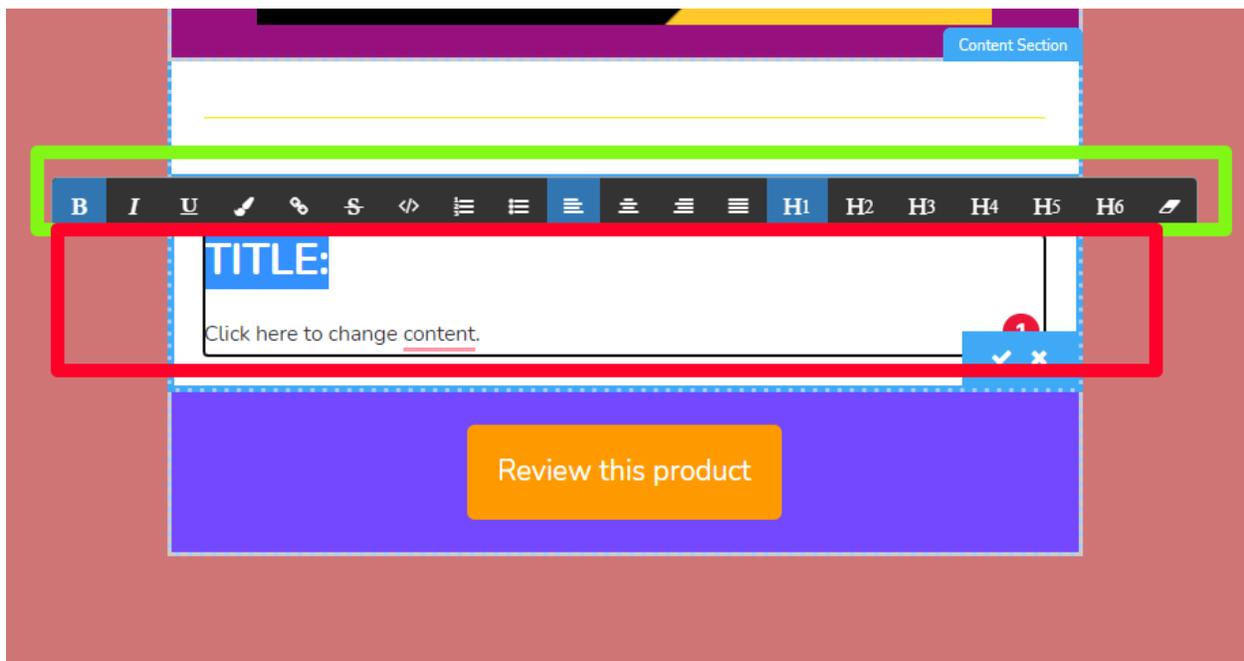
Below each configuration panel, there is a text link that reads "Click here to change content."



- b. **Divider** - You can change its color by typing the HTML color code or choose your color randomly on the color gradient.



- c. **Text** – It can be customized by choosing the options above while typing your texts on the text box.



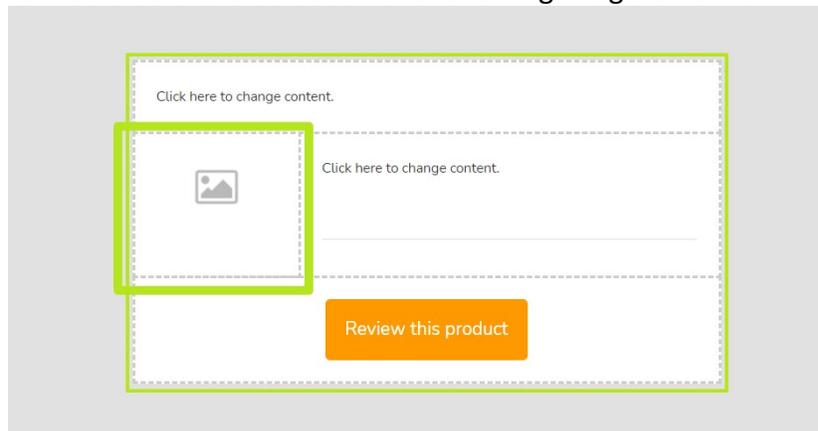
- d. **Link** – This means editing the button



- Place the wanted link of your product.
- change your desired text display on the button
- Color represents the color of the text of the button.
- The background images can be changed here, I made it yellow-orange as an example.
- This will be the button's position either left, center, or right.
- The last one is the size of the button itself from small to big.

Left sidebar

The next template would be the left sidebar. the following image is how it will look like:



Right sidebar

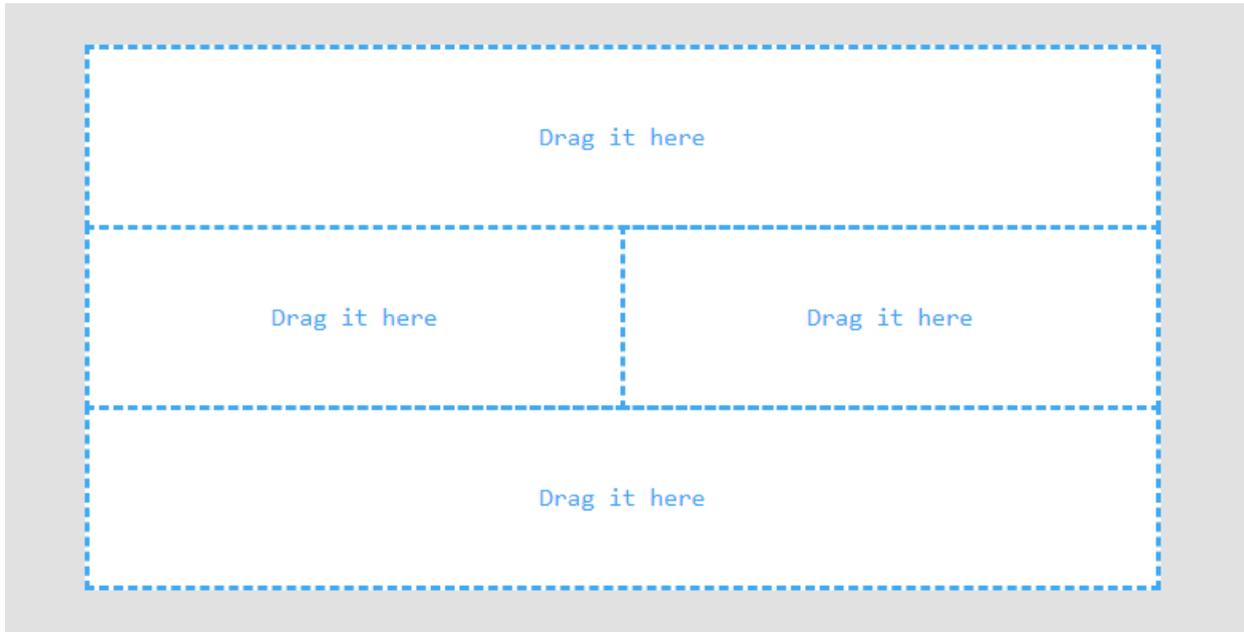
Click on the right sidebar and you can now create and edit your template.





Both sidebars

Last, click on Both sidebars and you can now create and edit your template.



Also, you can see the **existing templates** in the table from where you can **view, edit, and delete templates**.

#	Name	Type	Editor type	Actions
1	Demo template	Email	Drag & drop	
2	Email Demo Messenger Bot	Email	Rich text	
3	DEMO TEMPLATE 1	Email	Rich text	
4	Hello	Email	Rich text	





How to Create & Assign Sequence Campaign for External Subscribers:

Beside assigning automatically SMS/Email Sequence to Messenger Subscribers, now you can also create SMS/Email Sequence Campaign for your external subscribers and assign them manually with **Email SMS Sequence Campaigner Add-on** . So, let's get started.

Create Sequence for external Subscribers:

Go to Broadcasting -> Sequence Campaign -> Actions and click on Add sequence button to create sequence campaign with the necessary information for External Subscribers.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. On the left is a sidebar menu with categories: ADMINISTRATION (Dashboard, Import Account, System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting), and POSTING FEATURE. The 'Broadcasting' item is highlighted with a red box. The main content area has two sections: 'Email broadcasting' and 'SMS/Email Sequence Campaigner (External Contacts)'. The 'SMS/Email Sequence Campaigner' section contains a 'Sequence Campaign' card, which is highlighted with a red box. The card includes an envelope icon, the title 'Sequence Campaign', a subtitle 'Sequence Campaign for external Contacts...', and an 'Actions >' link.

The screenshot shows the 'Sequence Campaign' page. At the top left is the page title 'Sequence Campaign' and a blue '+ Add sequence' button, which is highlighted with a red box. At the top right is the breadcrumb 'Broadcasting / Sequence Campaign'.

Search...

#	Name	Last sent	Campaign type	Actions
1		Jun 13, 2020 16:41	SMS	
2		Jun 13, 2020 16:41	Email	

10 ▾

1-2/2

Previous 1 Next





+ Add sequence

Broadcasting / Campaign list / Add sequence

Campaign name

Sequence type

Email

Sms

Select email api

Select API

🕒 Sequence time

24 hour Daily

🕒 30 mins

--- Do not send message ---



🕒 1 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



🕒 2 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



🕒 3 Hour

--- Do not send message ---



+ Add more hour

✖ Remove last hour



🚀 Create Campaign

⌕ Back

You can see campaign report 24H or Daily report from the campaign table by click on Corresponding Report icon.



👁 Campaign report
✕

4
Targeted

2
Sent

2
Delivered (100%)

📅 30 Minute

2
Targeted

2
Sent

2
Delivered (100%)

Sl	Subscriber id	Name	Status	Sent	Response
1 ↑	153	[blurred]	📩 Sent	11th Jun, 20 13:44↑	Message-1 : Submitted ↑
2	154	[blurred]	📩 Sent	11th Jun, 20 13:40	Message-1 : Submitted

10 ▼

1-2/2

Previous
1
Next

Assign Sequence To External Subscribers:

Go to Subscriber Manager -> Contact Book section, select your contact and click on Options -> Assign Sequence. Select your Sequence campaign from the dropdown and hit the save button.





Dashboard

Import Account

ADMINISTRATION

System

Subscription

COMMENT FEATURE

Comment Automation

MESSANGER TOOLS

Subscriber Manager

Messenger Bot

Broadcasting



subscribers

Sync, migrate, conversation...

Actions >



subscribers

Subscriber actions, assign label, download...

Actions >



Subscriber label/tags, segmentation...

Actions >

SMS/email subscriber (external)

Subscriber Manager



Contact Group

Manage contacts by groups, sms/email campaign...

Actions >



Contact Book

Manage contacts, import, sms/email campaign...

Actions >

Contact Book

+ New contact

Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

Contact Group		Search...				Search	Import	Export	Assign sequence	Options
#	<input type="checkbox"/>	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions	Actions	Actions	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>			@yahoo.com	8801925121523	Group 1, Group 2 Group 6, Group 7				
2	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	8801722977459	Group 1				
3	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1717293722	Group 1				
4	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1718839535	Group 1				
5	<input type="checkbox"/>			@gmail.com	1683909417	dddd'fdfd				



Assign sms/email sequence

Bulk sequence assign is available for Email & SMS campaign.

Select sequence campaign

Assign sequence Close

You can also assign manually to individual Subscribers by click on the Contact Details icon from the table.

Contact Book

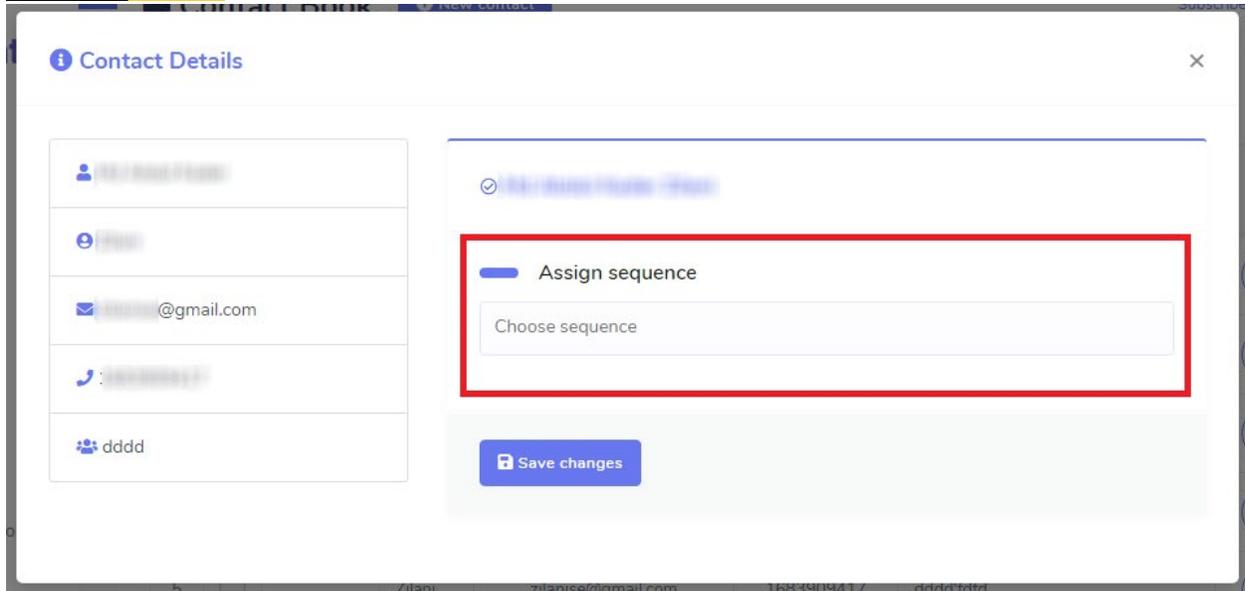
Subscriber Manager / Contact Book

#	First name	Last name	Email	Phone	Contact Group	Actions
1	Test 4	User 4	testuser4@gmail.com	0123456781	test, test 1, test 2, test 3	  
2	Test 2	User 2	testuser2@gmail.com	0123456789	test, test 1, test 3	  
3	Test 1	User 1	testuser1@gmail.com	012345678	test, test 1, test 3	  
4	Test	User	testuser@gmail.com	12345678	test, test 1	  

10 1-4/4

Previous 1 Next





How To Create Email Templates In Messenger Bot

Now, there's no need to pay third parties for building email templates!

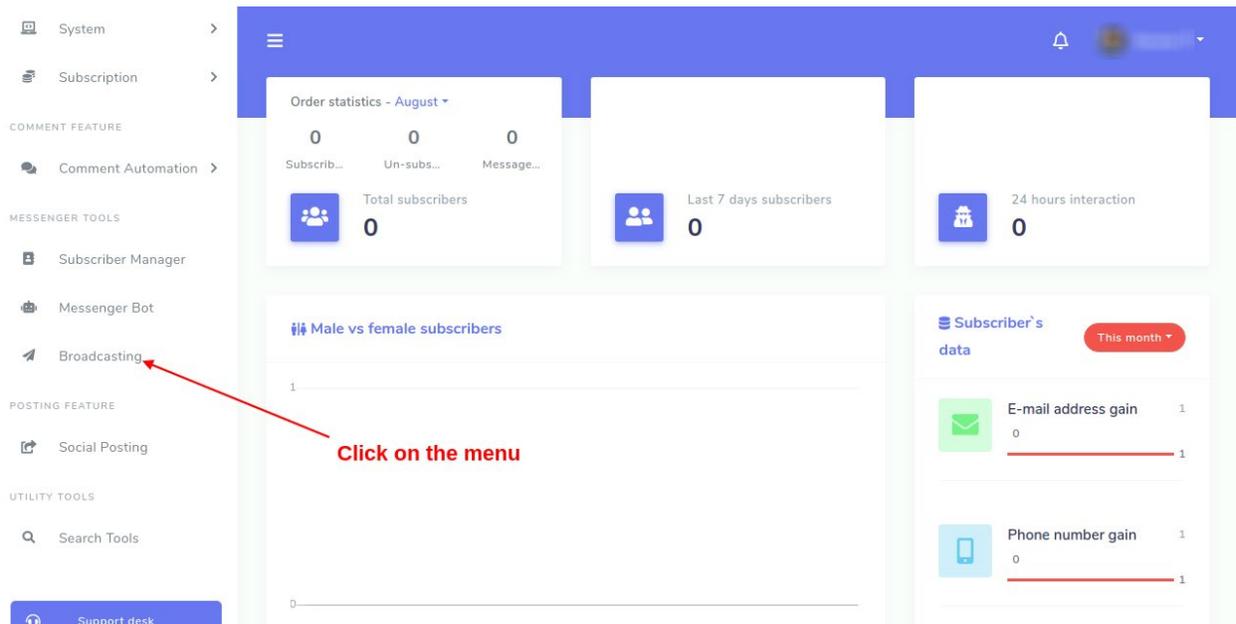
Messenger Bot has come up with a brand new module called Drag & Drop Email Template Builder. It has a very simple interface. It has been made such a way that its user can create an HTML Email template within a few seconds. Just drag and drop the elements you need and build your HTML email templates without paying third party services for months.

Let's see how to build your email templates for your products or any other purposes. Today, I'm going to show you how to create an HTML email template using Messenger Bot's Drag & Drop Email Template Builder. Say, we're going to create a campaign for our specific product.

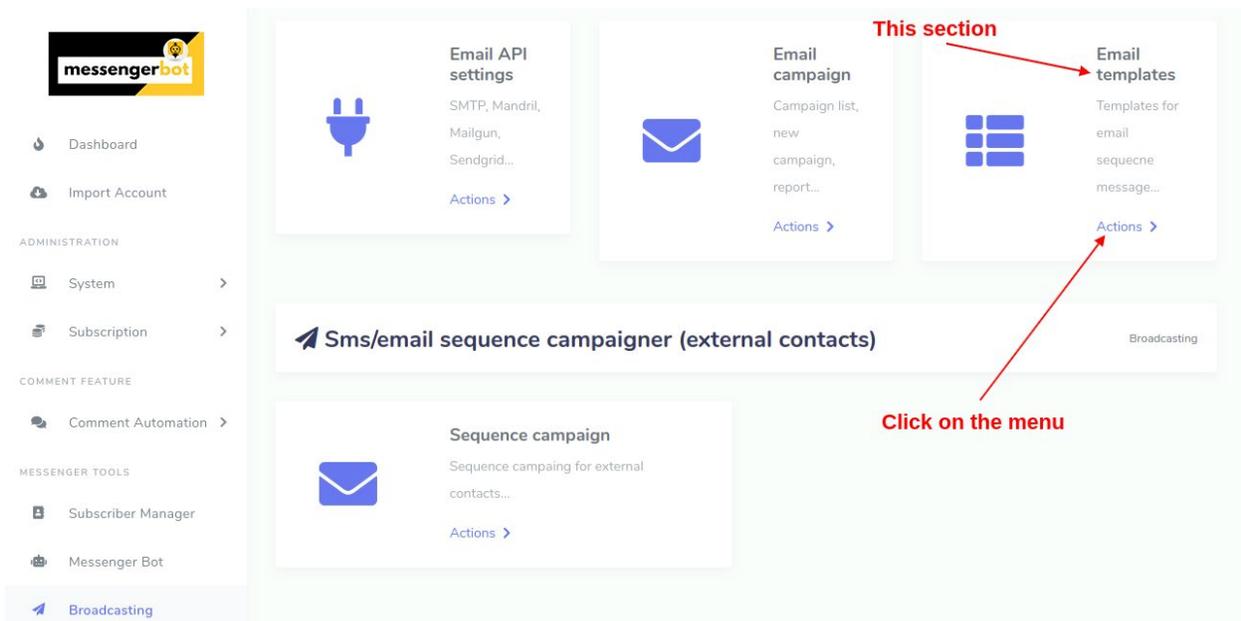




Log in to your Messenger Bot's dashboard. Click on the menu named **Broadcasting**.



When you're on that page, find out the section that says **Email Templates**. And click on the **Actions** link. After clicking on that link, you should see an interface where you can find templates that have already been created.



When you're there, click on the button named **New template** and then click again on the link named **Drag & Drop**. It will take you to the interface where you need to choose which template you're going to work with.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System >
 - Subscription >
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation >
- MESSANGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

#	Name	Type	Editor Type	Actions
1		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete
2		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete
3		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete
4		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete
5		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete
6		Email	Drag & Drop	Eye, Edit, Delete

In my case, I'm going to choose the boiler-template without sidebars as marked below:

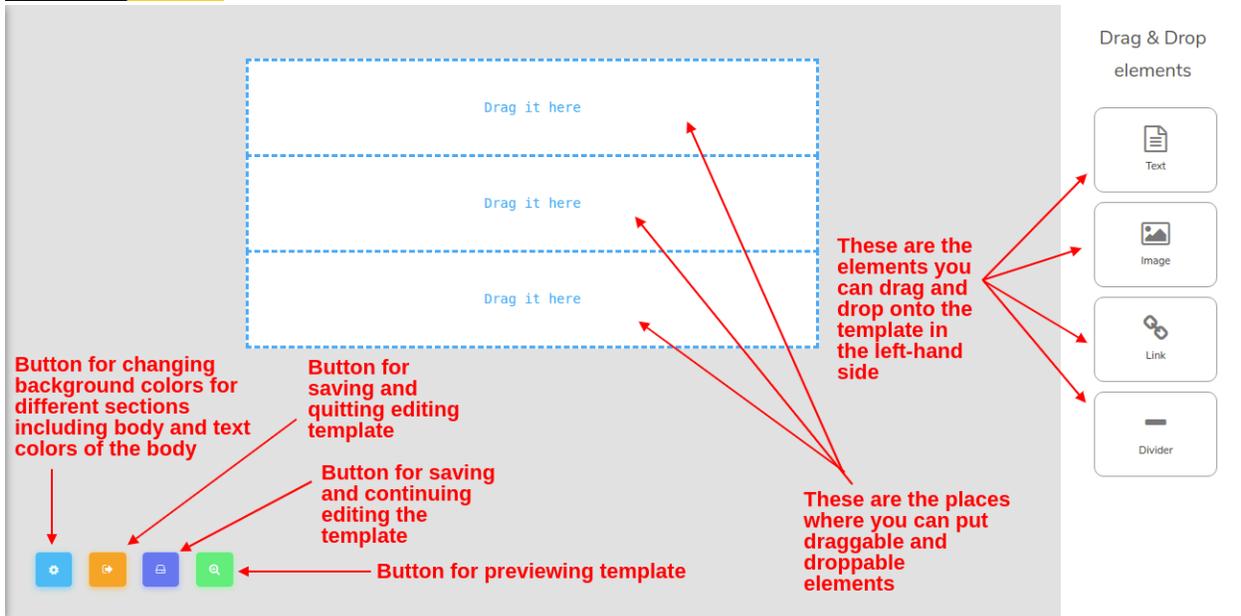
Template without sidebar

No Sidebar (wide)

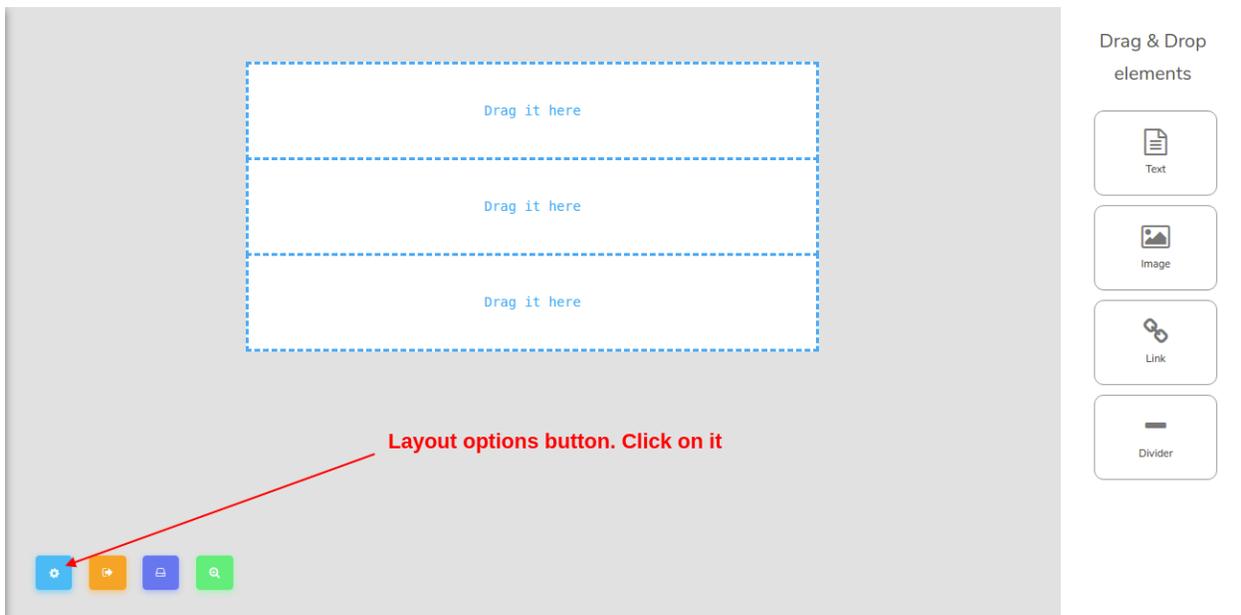
Left Sidebar

Now it's time to build the email template for the product I want to promote/campaign with. But before starting, let me tell you what components do what tasks. Please check out notes on the following screenshot:



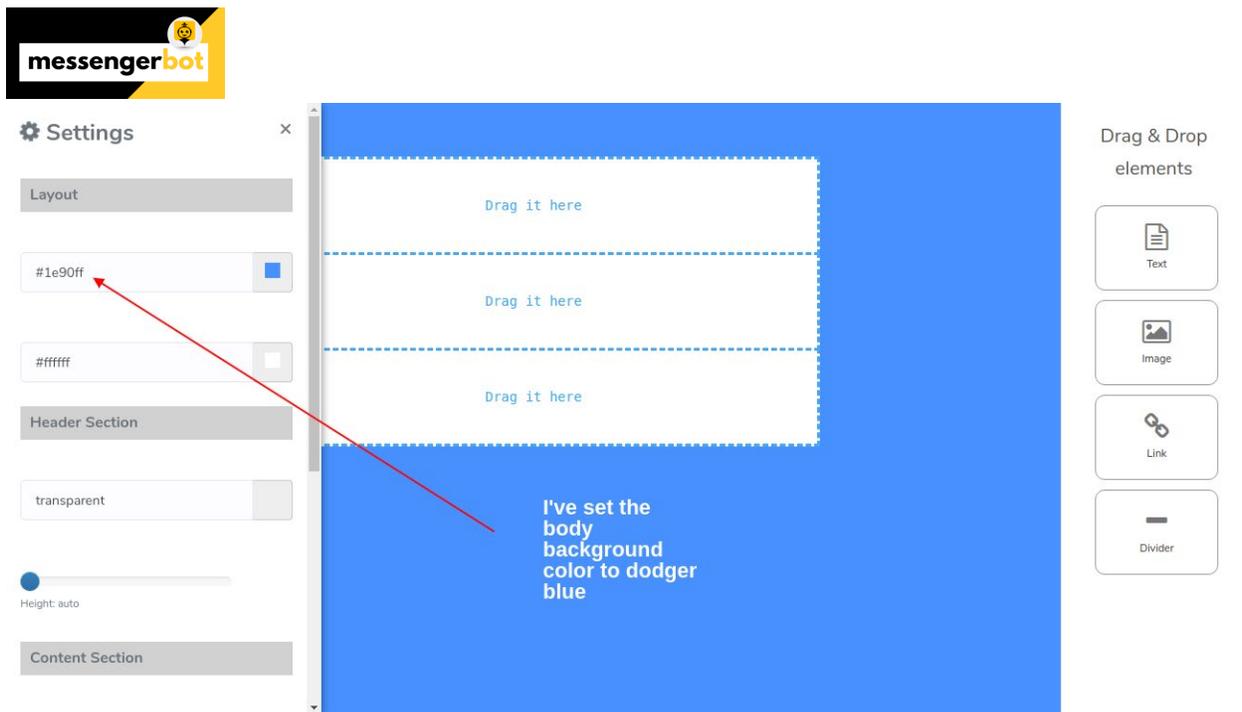


Well, assuming, we are now somewhat familiar to the components and parts of the template builder. Let start building our template. First, I will change the background color of the body. To do that you need to click on the **Layout options** button which is the 1st button from the left side as the screenshot says below:

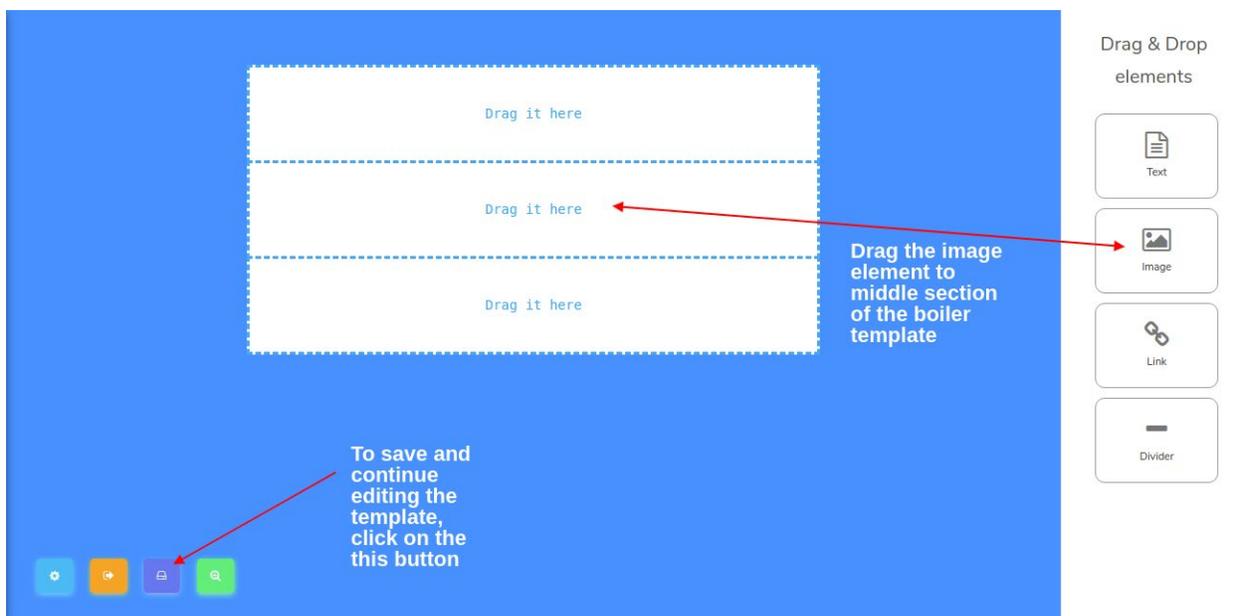


Upon clicking on that button, it will open up a box from the left side. See the screenshot below:



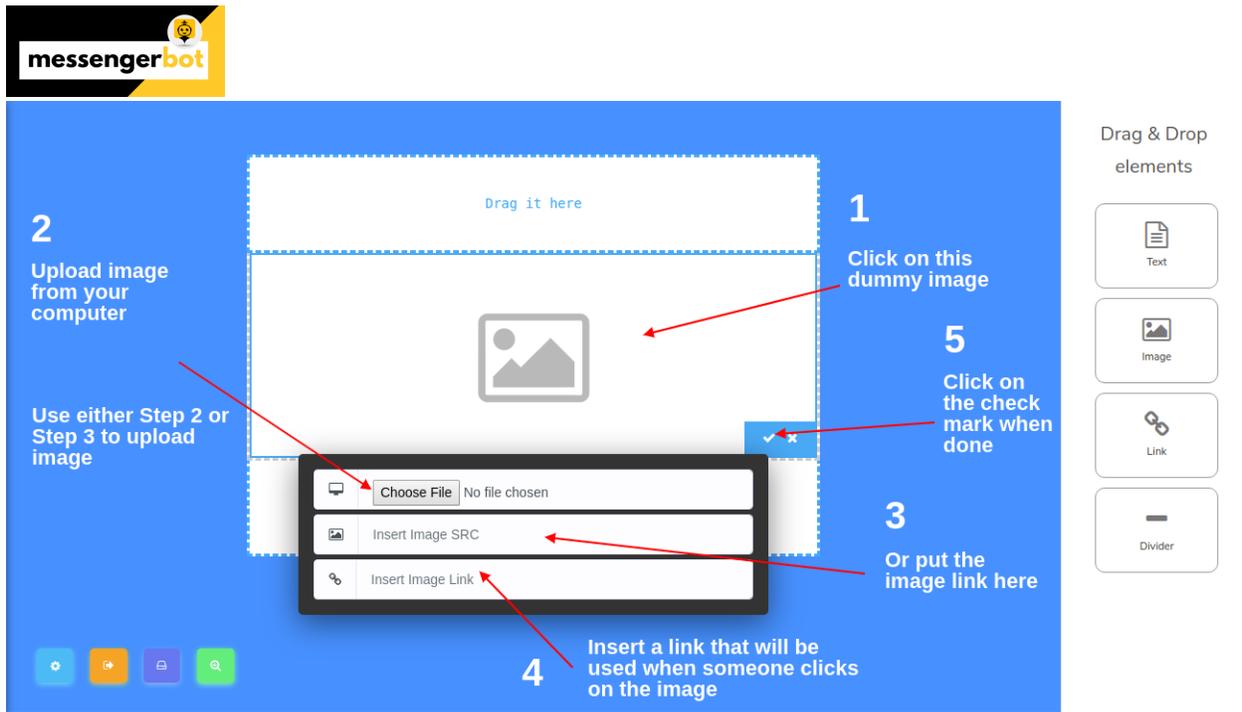


I've set up the body background color to dodger blue. You may choose one that you prefer. Now I will save the template and continue editing. To save and continue editing the template, I will click on the **Save template** button. Okay, now our template has been saved. Now I will drag the image element from the Drag & Drop elements bar to the middle section of the template. It will look like the following screenshot:



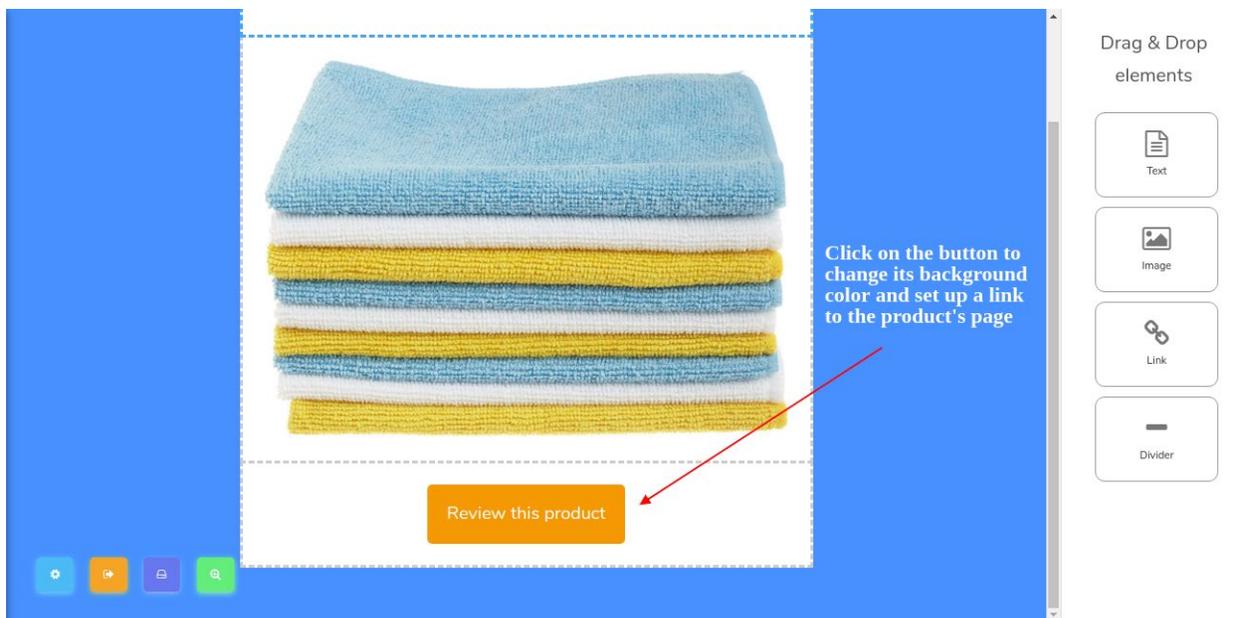
Now click on the dummy image that we get after dragging the image element. It will pop up a tiny modal. You can either upload an image from your computer or put the image source in the specified input field. Check out the following screenshot:





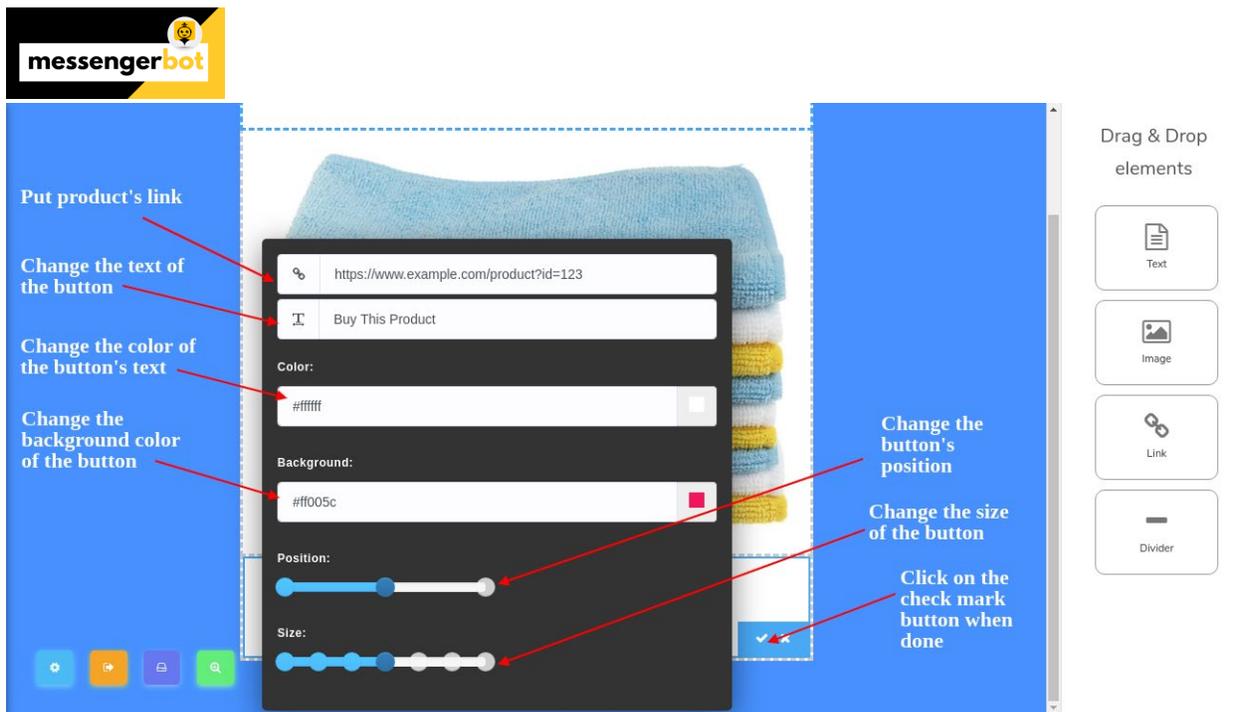
Now I will upload my product's image, for example, and set the product's link to the image as described in the screenshot above.

Next, I will add a button. To do that I need to drag the button element to the template's end section.

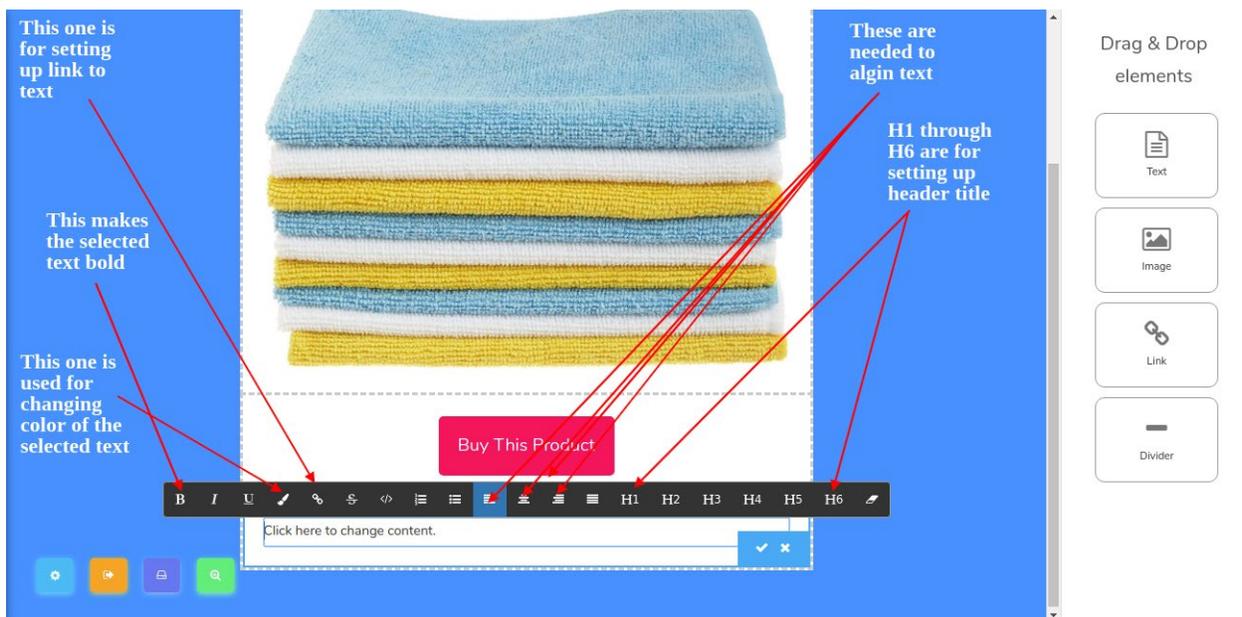


And to change its background color and to set up a link of the product's page I need to click on the button. I get this modal when clicking the button:



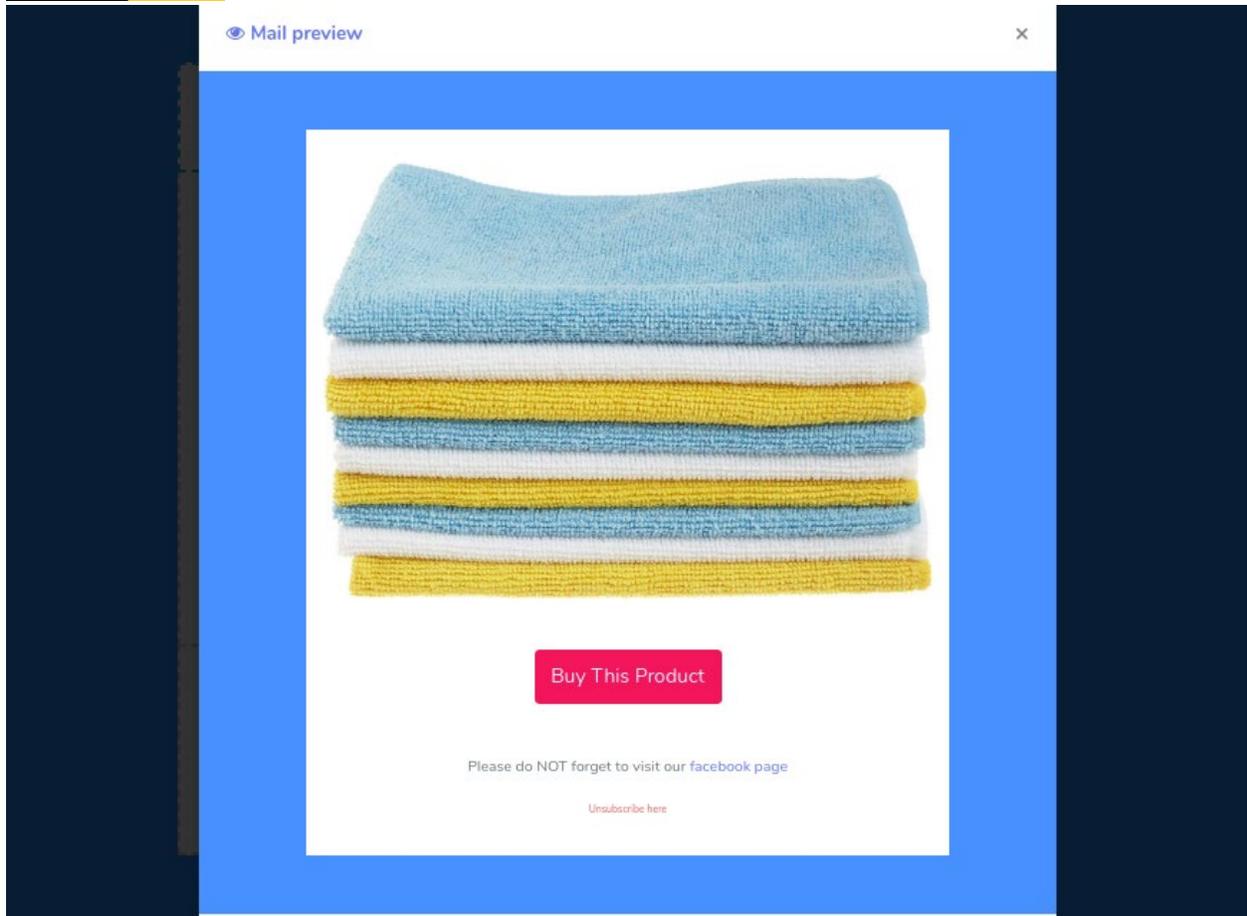


Now I will add a couple of link elements and a text element. Before doing that let's see what's in it. Check out the screenshot below:

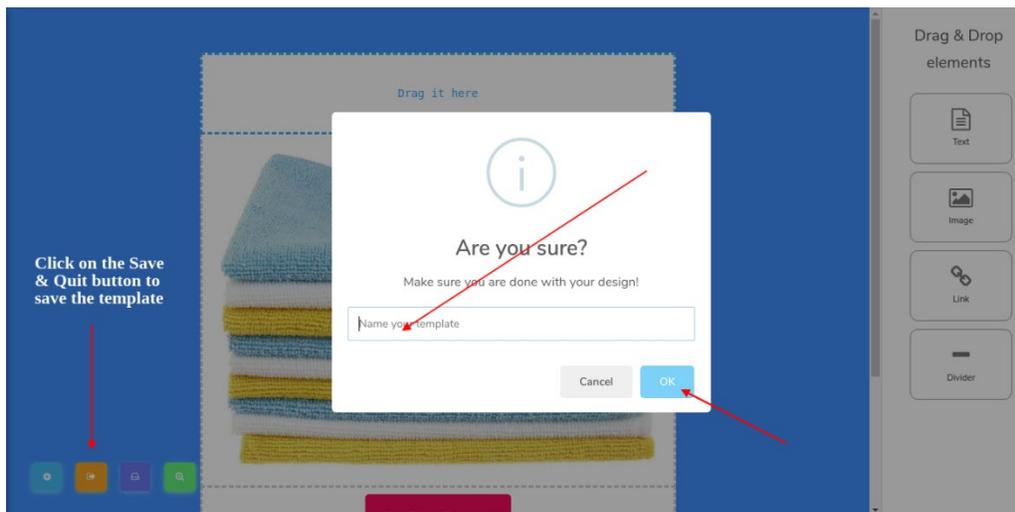


I've added two text elements and made two links. One is for the Facebook page and the other is for unsubscribing. Now I'm done. See its preview as the following:





As I'm done with building the HTML email template, it's time to save the template and quit the interface. To do that you need to click on the **Save & Quit** button. It will then pop up a modal that will ask for the template name. So put the template name as you need. Click on the **OK** button when done. See the following screenshot:







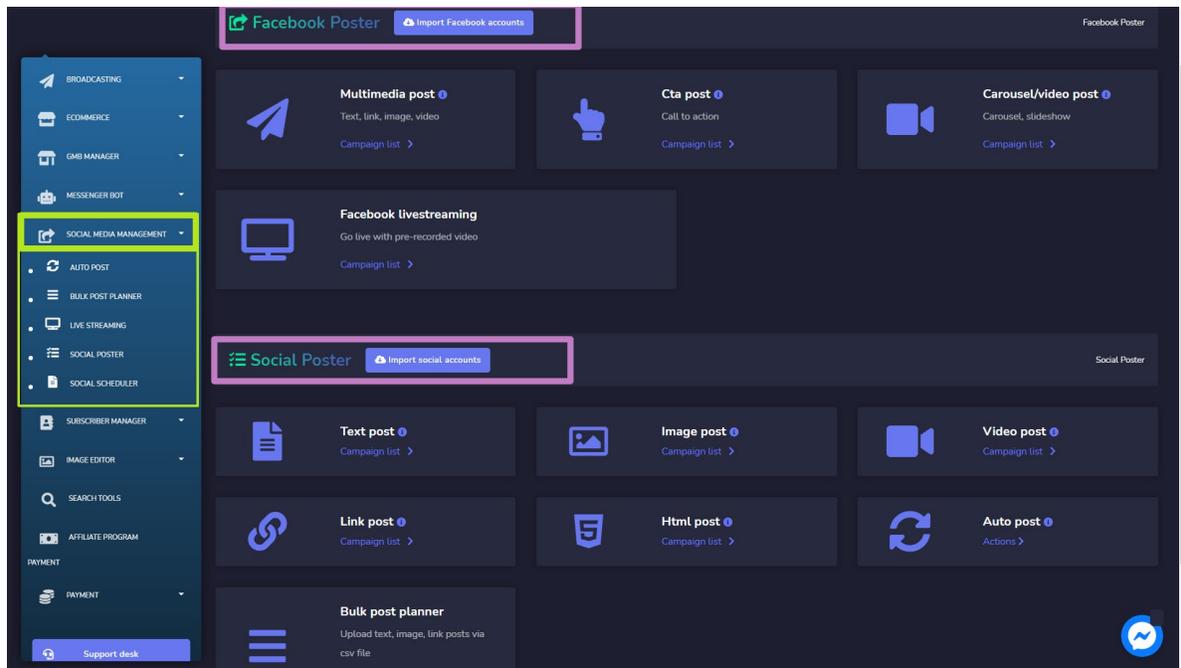
Social Posting

The Social Posting feature allows you to manage all social media accounts via one platform. You can manage all Facebook posts, slideshows, videos via the Facebook poster section. You can import multiple accounts and integrate them for different posts respectively in the Social poster section.

To view this section, navigate to **Social Media Management** from the navigation menu located and tab on it, then **click on any under it**.

A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

- [Facebook Poster](#)
- [Social Poster](#)



Facebook Poster

Facebook Poster manages all Facebook-related activities and posts. This section further consists of the following four parts:

- [Multimedia Post](#)
- [CTA Post](#)
- [Carousel/Video Post](#)
- Facebook livestreaming

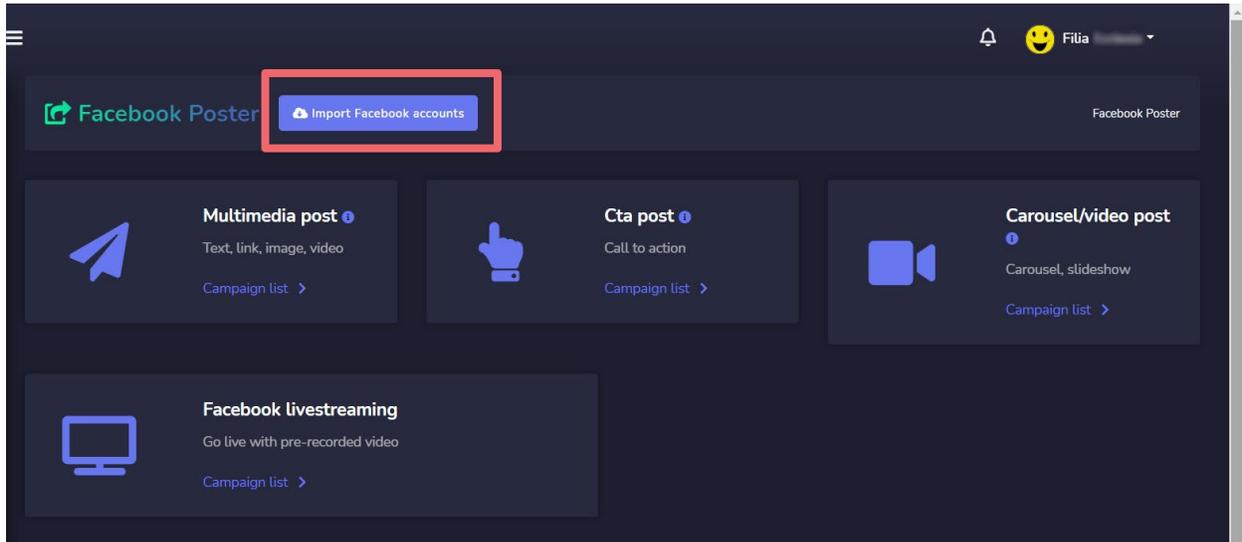




The details of these first three are discussed in upcoming sections.

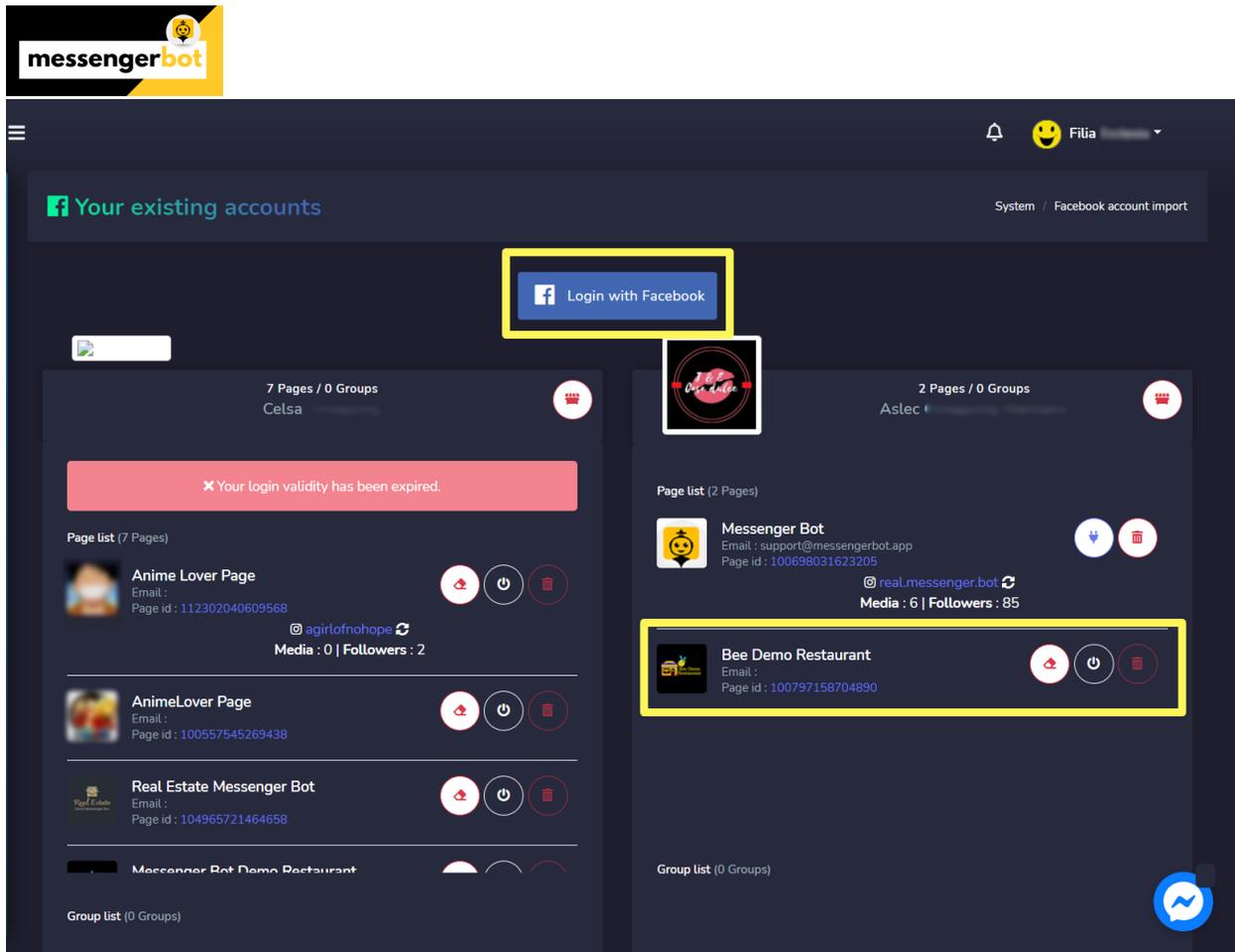
To access this section, you need to make sure that all your Facebook accounts have already been imported.

1. Select **Import Facebook accounts** from the top of your screen.



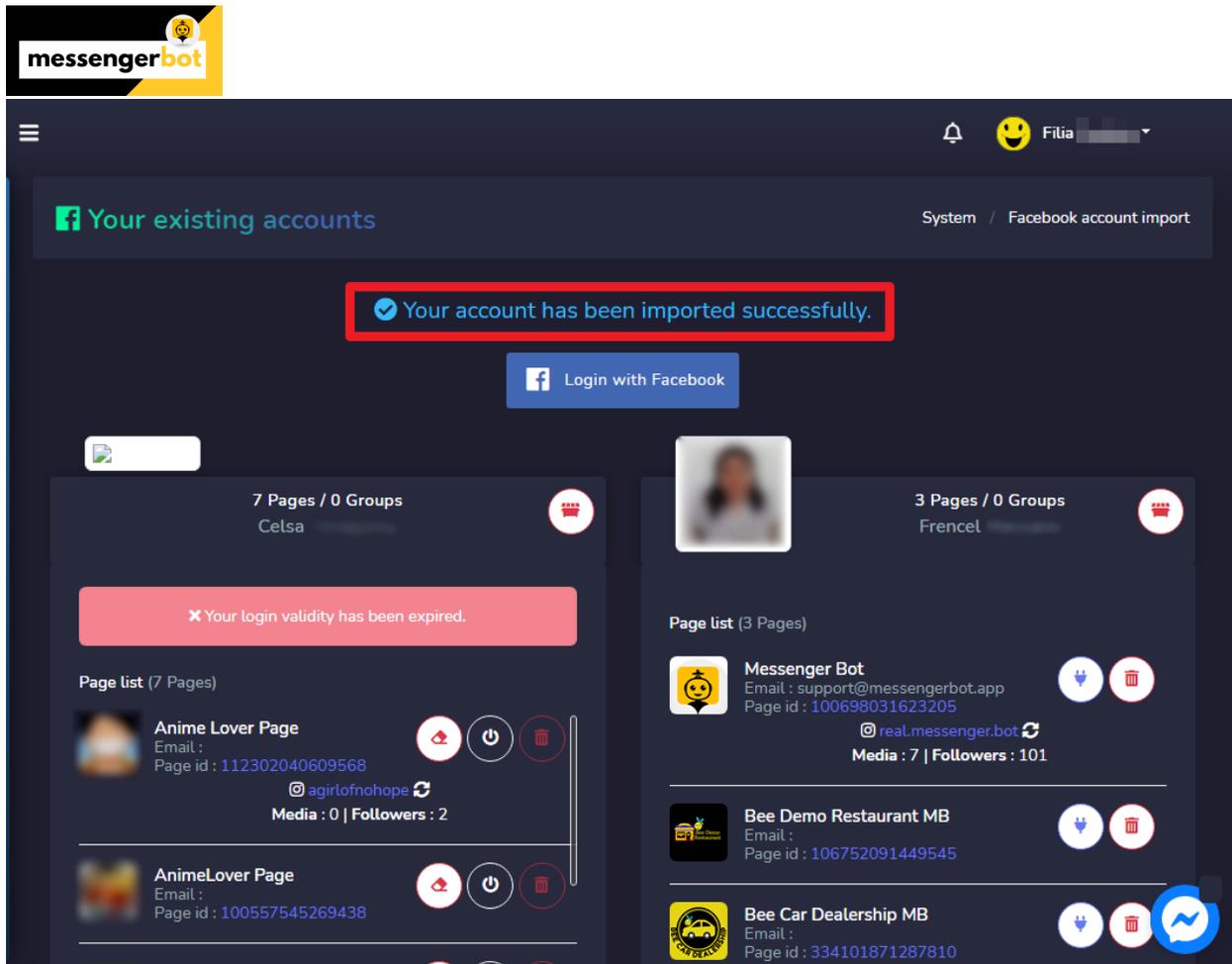
2. Select **Login with Facebook**.





3. Your account will be imported successfully.

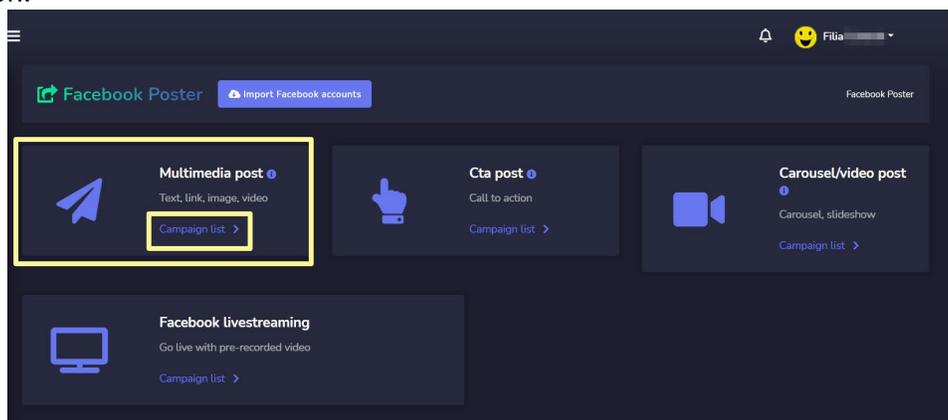




You can also see the [Import Account](#) section for clarification.

Multimedia Post

To access the multimedia post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Multimedia Post** section.



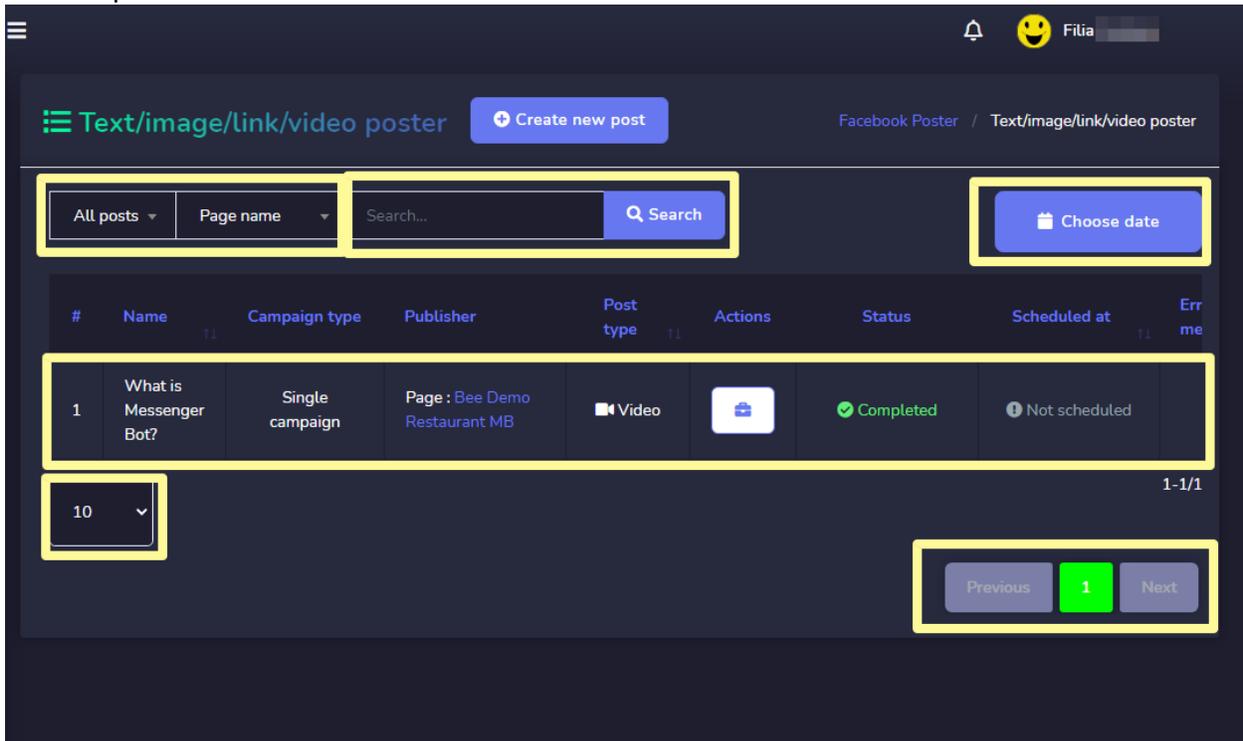
A **Text/Image/Link/Video Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**.





You can also sort them out **based on their status**. You can arrange the **names** either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the **header of the table**. You can **narrow down** your search by selecting the **Page name** and **Posts**.

To perform different **actions** on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.



The screenshot shows the Facebook Poster interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a notification bell, and a profile picture for 'Filia'. Below this is a header section with 'Text/image/link/video poster' and a 'Create new post' button. The main content area features a search bar with filters for 'All posts' and 'Page name', a search input field, and a 'Choose date' button. Below the search bar is a table with columns: '#', 'Name', 'Campaign type', 'Publisher', 'Post type', 'Actions', 'Status', 'Scheduled at', and 'Error'. A single row is visible, representing a campaign titled 'What is Messenger Bot?' with a status of 'Completed'. The 'Actions' column for this row contains a blue icon with a briefcase, which is highlighted by a yellow box. Below the table is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1' of 1 page. At the bottom right, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons.

The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting .



Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Err me
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video			Scheduled	

10 Previous 1 Next

- View the campaign report by selecting

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Err me
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video			11:00	
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		Completed	Not scheduled	

10 Previous 1 Next

Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English



Report of text/image/link/video poster

Search...

#	Posting page or group	Post type	Post id	Posting status	Schedule time	Error
1	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		Pending	Feb 6, 21 11:00	

10

Previous 1 Next

- Fetch the JSON by selecting 

Text/image/link/video poster

Create new post

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video	     		11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video			Not scheduled

10

Previous 1 Next

Embed code is only available for published video posts.



```
<iframe src="https://www.facebook.com/plugins/video.php?href=https://www.facebook.com/BeeDemoRestaurantMB/videos/121834859830980/&show_text=0&width=600" width="600" height="600" style="border:none;overflow:hidden" scrolling="no" frameborder="0" allowTransparency="true" allowFullScreen="true"></iframe>
```



- Edit a campaign



Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

Text/image/link/video poster [Create new post](#)

All posts Page name Search... Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video			11:11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Video		Completed	Not scheduled

10 1-2/2

Previous 1 Next

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video posts / Update text/image/link/video post

Update text/image/link/video post

Text Link Image Video

Campaign name: What is Messenger Bot?

Message

Video url: <https://start.messengerbot.app/uj>

Video thumbnail url

Upload Upload

Preview: This preview may differ with actual post. Frenzel Messenger Bot • Now

What is MESSENGER BOT?

0:00 / 3:28



✕

Post to pages

x Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Auto reply template

Welcome

Post to groups

❗ For posting to group, you must need to install the app in your groups. Click here to read the full instruction.

Schedule time

2021-02-06 11:00:09

Time zone

(GMT-8:00) America/Los_Angeles

Repost this post

0 Times

Time interval

every 1 hours

📄 Submit post

✕ Cancel

- Delete a campaign

☰
🔔
😊 Filia

☰
Text/image/link/video poster

➕ Create new post

Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster

All posts
Page name

🔍 Search

📅 Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Main campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	📺 Video	📄 👍 👁 ↶ ✍ 🗑		11:00
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	📺 Video	📄	✔ Completed	⚠ Not scheduled

10
▼

1-2/2

⏪ Previous

1

Next ⏩





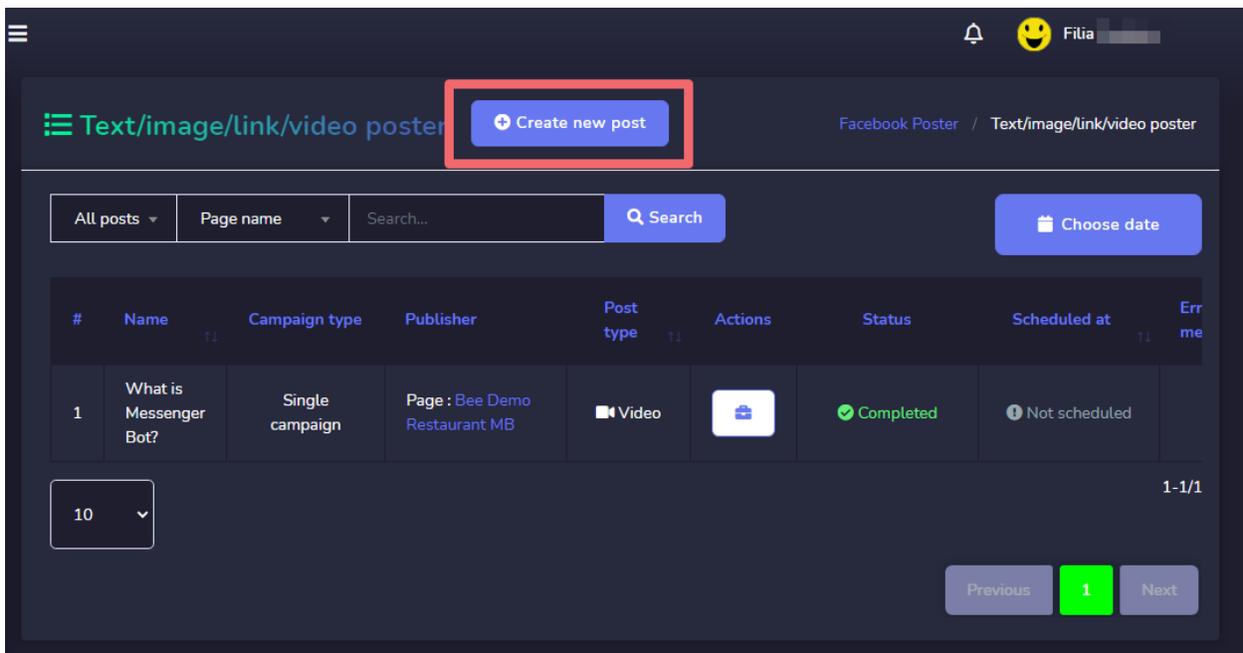
Note

- For the posts that are already published, you cannot fetch the JSON code nor edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.

Create new Multimedia Post

To create a new multimedia post, follow the steps given below:

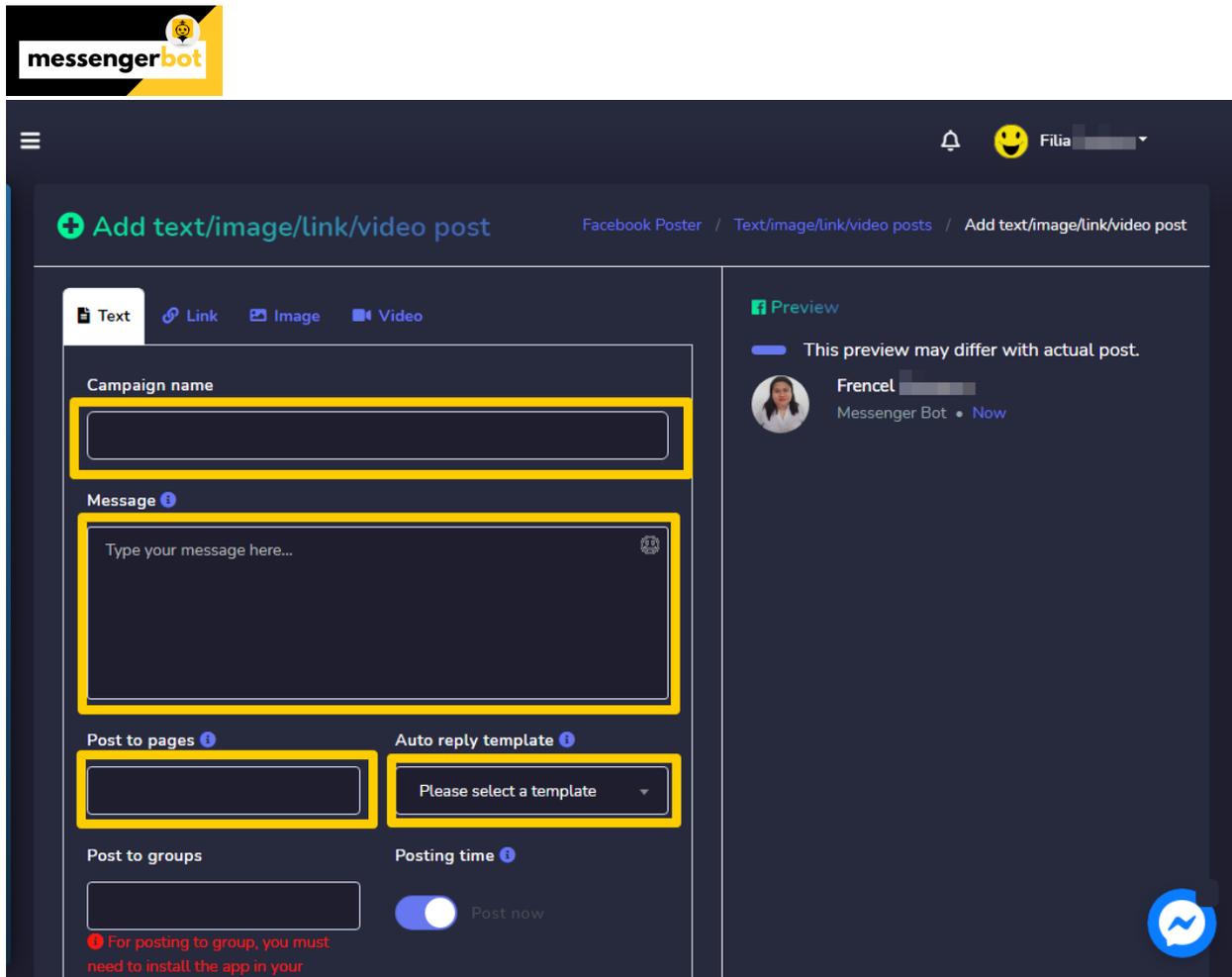
1. Select  from **Text/Image/Link/Video Poster** screen.



The screenshot shows the Facebook Poster interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a bell icon, a smiley face icon, and the name 'Filia'. Below this is a header area with the text 'Text/image/link/video poster' and a blue button labeled 'Create new post' which is highlighted with a red rectangular box. To the right of the button, it says 'Facebook Poster / Text/image/link/video poster'. Below the header is a search bar with 'All posts' and 'Page name' dropdowns, a 'Search...' input field, a 'Search' button, and a 'Choose date' button. Below the search bar is a table with columns: '#', 'Name', 'Campaign type', 'Publisher', 'Post type', 'Actions', 'Status', 'Scheduled at', and 'Error'. The table contains one row with the following data: '# 1', 'Name: What is Messenger Bot?', 'Campaign type: Single campaign', 'Publisher: Page: Bee Demo Restaurant MB', 'Post type: Video', 'Actions: [Briefcase icon]', 'Status: Completed', 'Scheduled at: Not scheduled', and 'Error:'. At the bottom left, there is a dropdown menu showing '10'. At the bottom right, there are 'Previous', '1', and 'Next' buttons.

2. An **Add text/image/link/video post** screen will appear. User can either add one of the following
 - Text
 - Link
 - Image
 - Video





3. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message, link, image or video** based on your selection from the step 2.
4. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
5. Select an **Auto reply template** as well.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



Facebook

+ Add text/image/link/video post

Text Link Image Video

Campaign name

Message ⓘ

Type your message here...

Post to pages ⓘ Auto reply template ⓘ

Post to groups Posting time ⓘ

For posting to group, you must need to install the app in your groups. Click here to read the full instruction.

Create Campaign Cancel

Delete

Post to pages

x Bee Den

Post to group

For posting need to install groups. Click here to read the full instruction.

Create Campaign Cancel

✓

Facebook post has been performed successfully.

[Click here to see report](#)

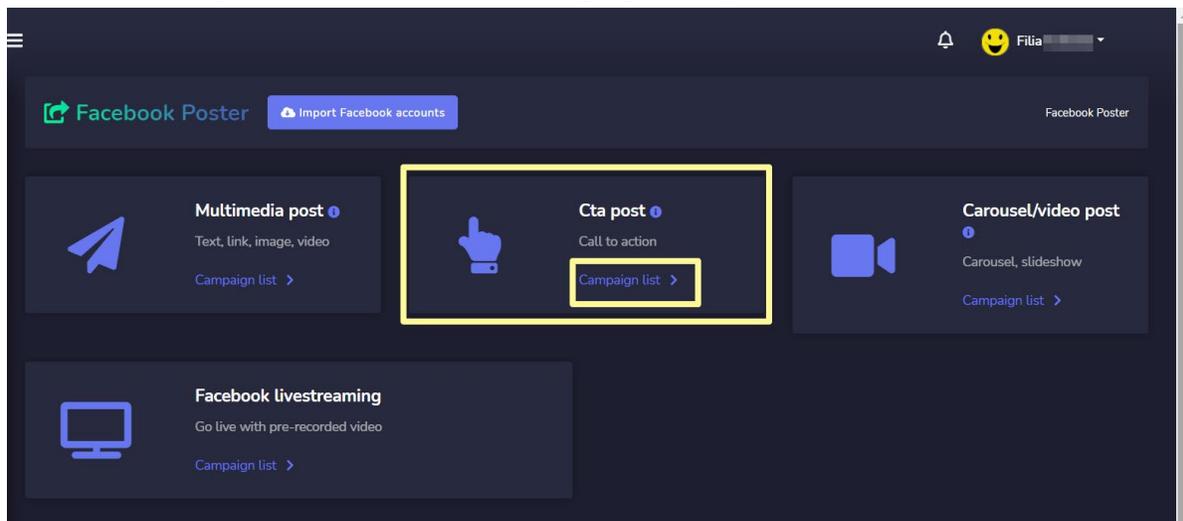
OK



- You can check the preview version that appears on the right side of the screen for a better analysis of the way your post will appear.

CTA Post

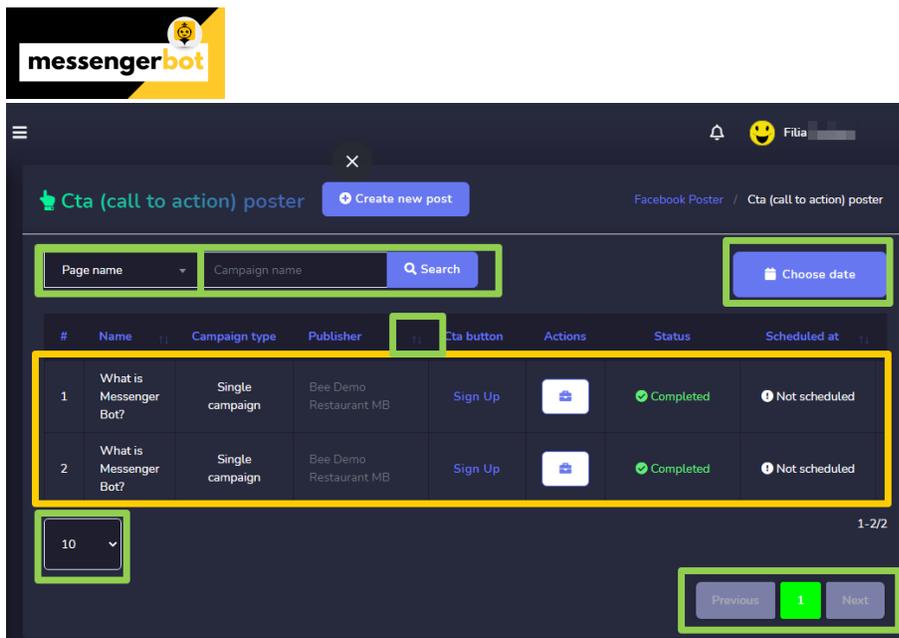
To access the CTA post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **CTA Post** section.



A **CTA (Call to Action) Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their status. You can arrange the names either in ascending or descending order by using the **arrows** in the header of the table. You can narrow down your search by selecting the **Page name**.

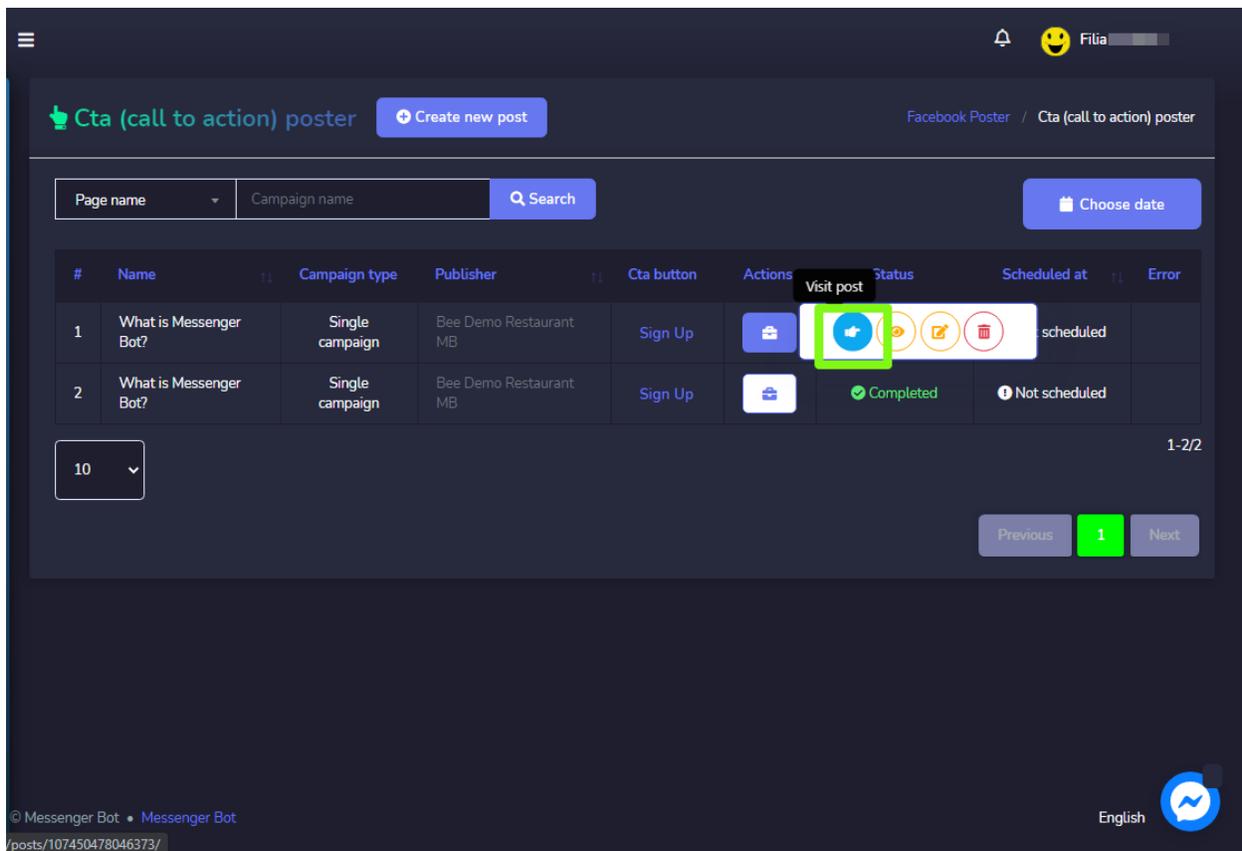
To perform different actions on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.

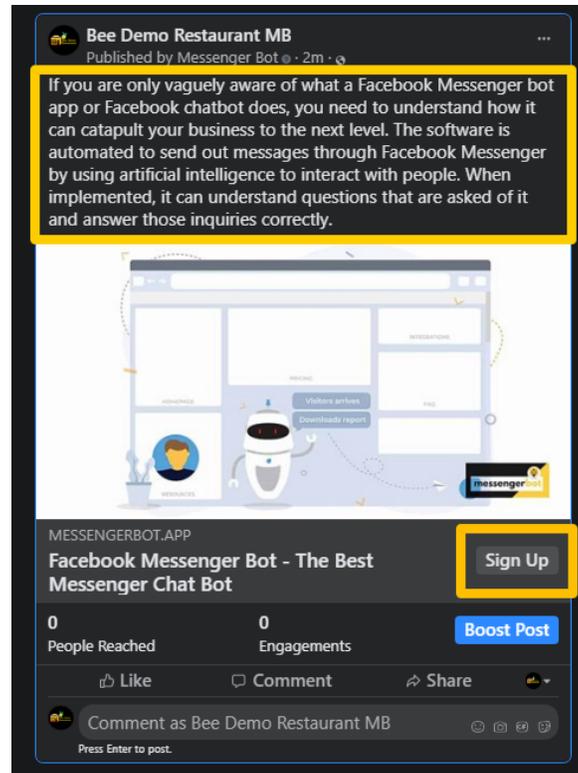




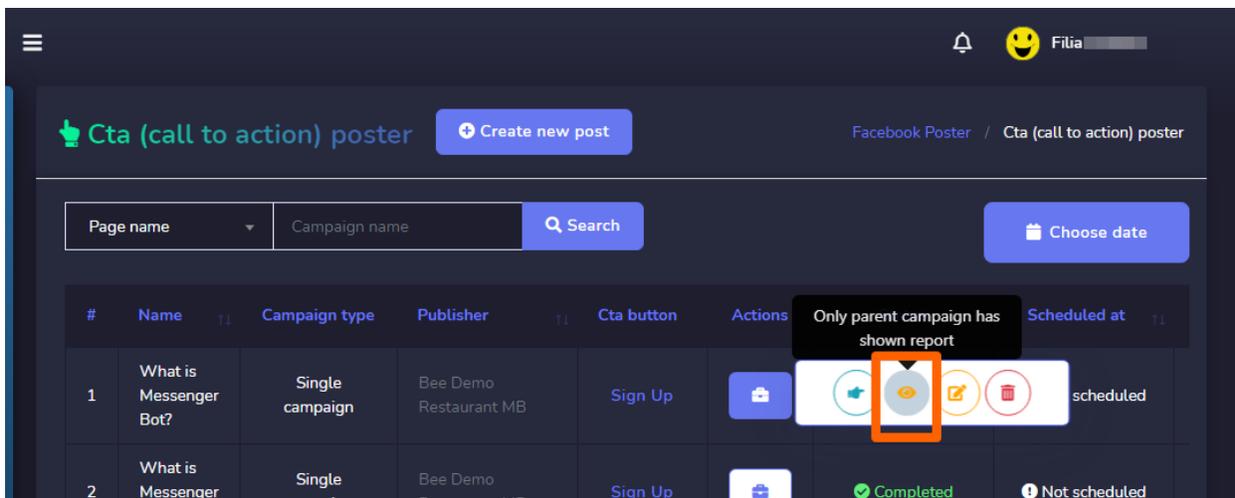
The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting





- View the campaign report by selecting 



- Edit a campaign





Facebook Poster / Cta (call to action) poster

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Cta button	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	[Icons]	pending	scheduled
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	[Icon]	Completed	Not scheduled

10 1-2/2

Only pending and scheduled campaigns are editable

- Delete a campaign



Facebook Poster / Cta (call to action) poster

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Cta button	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	[Icons]	pending	scheduled
2	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Sign Up	[Icon]	Completed	Not scheduled

10 1-2/2

Previous 1 Next

Delete campaign



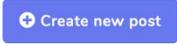


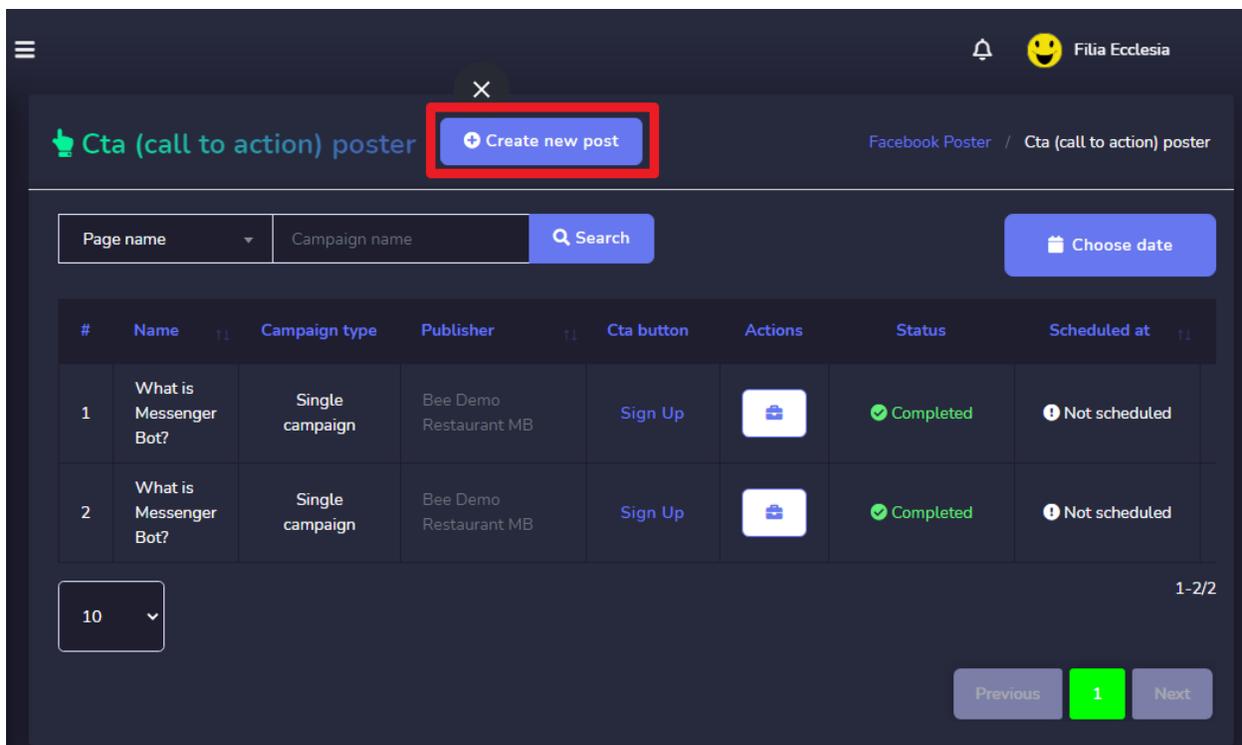
Note

- For the posts that are already published, you cannot edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.

Create new CTA Post

To create a new CTA post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **CTA (Call to Action) Poster** screen.



The screenshot shows the 'Cta (call to action) poster' interface. At the top, there is a navigation bar with a hamburger menu, a close button (X), and a user profile for 'Filia Ecclesia'. Below the navigation bar, the title 'Cta (call to action) poster' is displayed, followed by a 'Create new post' button highlighted with a red box. To the right of the title, it says 'Facebook Poster / Cta (call to action) poster'. Below the title bar, there are search filters for 'Page name' and 'Campaign name', a 'Search' button, and a 'Choose date' button. The main content area is a table with columns: '#', 'Name', 'Campaign type', 'Publisher', 'Cta button', 'Actions', 'Status', and 'Scheduled at'. The table contains two rows of data, both showing 'Completed' status and 'Not scheduled' for the scheduled date. At the bottom, there is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1-2/2' pages. The current page is '1', which is highlighted in green.

2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message**.
3. Provide the **paste link** and **CTA button type**.



messengerbot

Add cta post

Facebook Poster / Cta posts / Add cta post

Campaign form

Campaign name

What is Messenger Bot?

Message

If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Paste link

Cta button type

Message Page

Post to pages

x Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Auto reply template

Welcome

Posting time

Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel

Preview

This preview may differ with actual post.

Frencel Messenger Bot • Now

If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Placeholder

4. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
5. Select an **Auto reply template** as well.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.





Add cta post Facebook Poster / Cta posts / Add cta post

Campaign form

Campaign name

Message
 If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Paste link

Cta button type
 Message Page

Post to pages

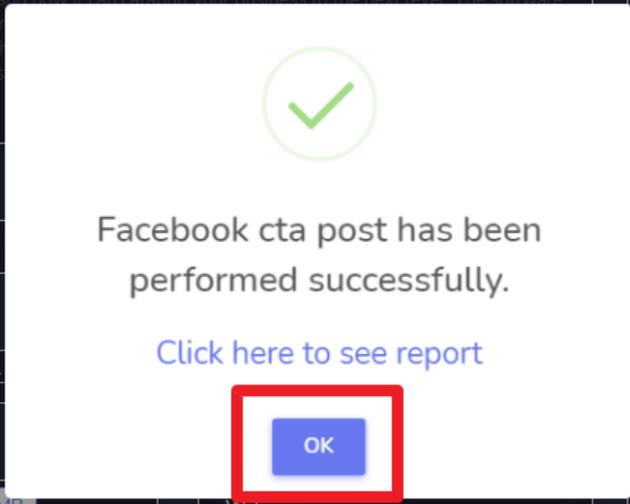
Auto reply template
 Welcome

Posting time
 Post now

Create Campaign Cancel

Preview
 This preview may differ with actual post.
 Frencl [Profile Picture]
 Messenger Bot • Now
 If you are only vaguely aware of what a Facebook Messenger bot app or Facebook chatbot does, you need to understand how it can catapult your business to the next level. The software is automated to send out messages through Facebook Messenger by using artificial intelligence to interact with people. When implemented, it can understand questions that are asked of it and answer those inquiries correctly.

Placeholder



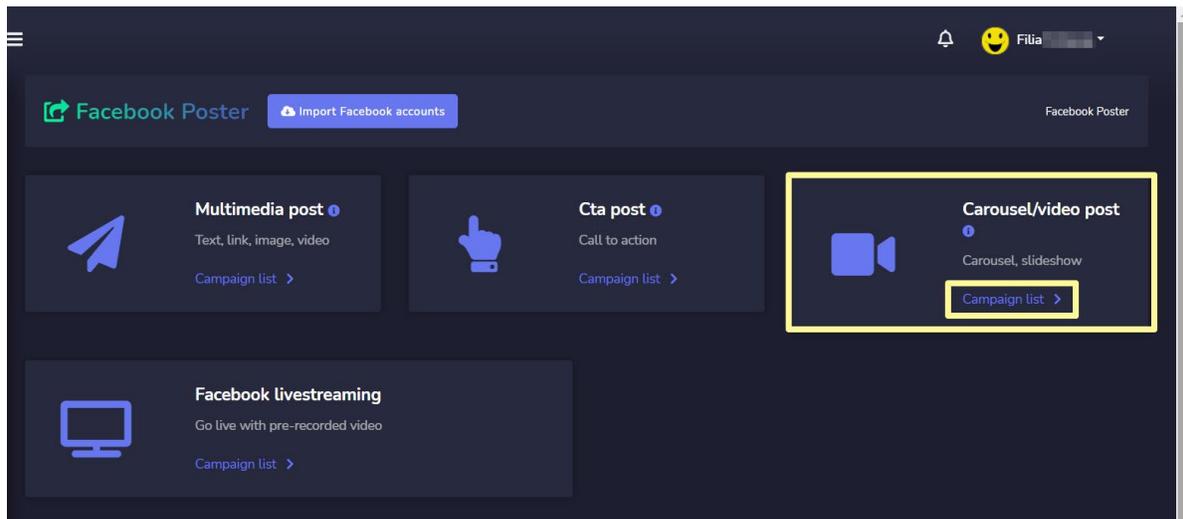

 Facebook cta post has been performed successfully.
[Click here to see report](#)



- You can check the preview version that appears on the right side of the screen for a better analysis of the way your post will appear.

Carousel/Video Post

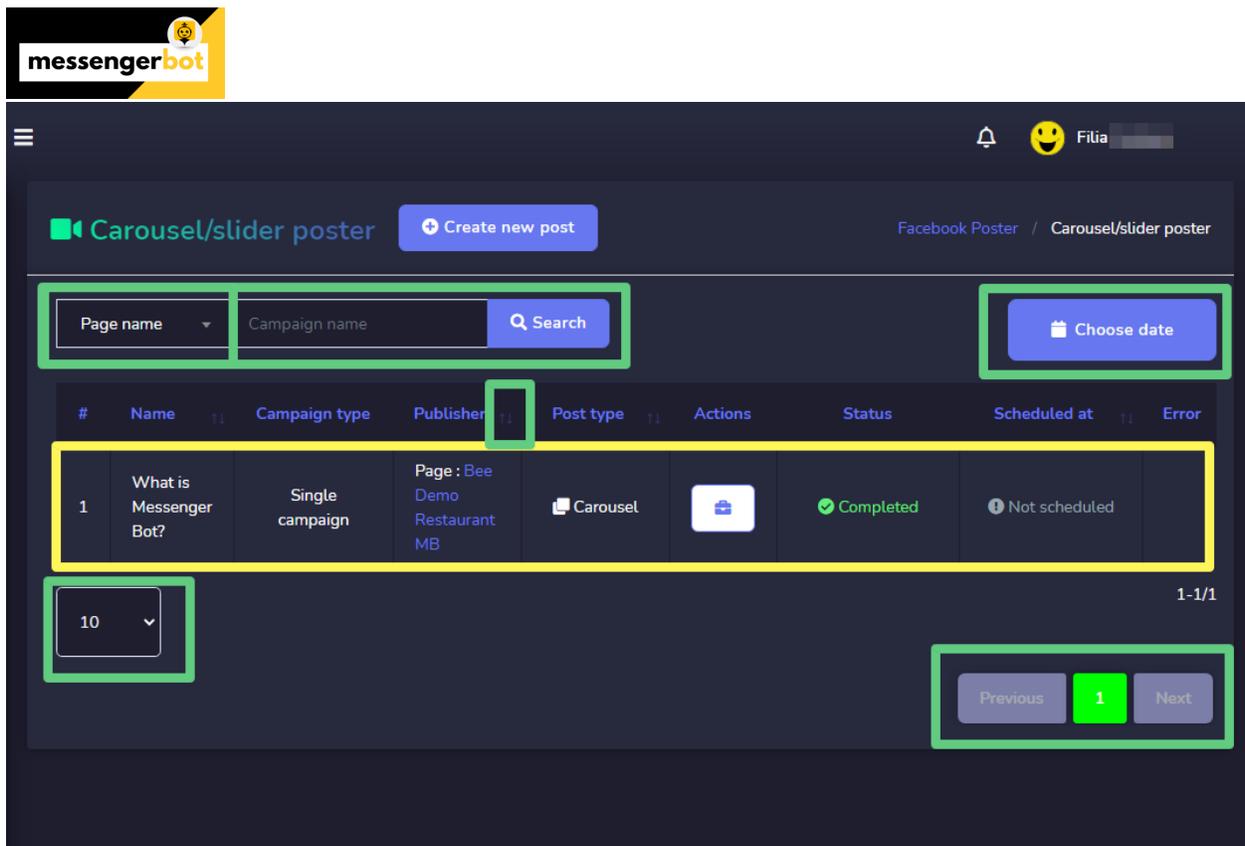
To access the **Carousel/Video Post** section, select the **Campaign list** option from **Carousel/Video Post** section.



A **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen will appear, it consists of a list of campaign types and names you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be viewed per page. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed search. You can also sort them out based on their status. You can arrange the names either in ascending or descending order by using the **arrows** in the header of the table. You can narrow down your search by selecting the **Page name**.

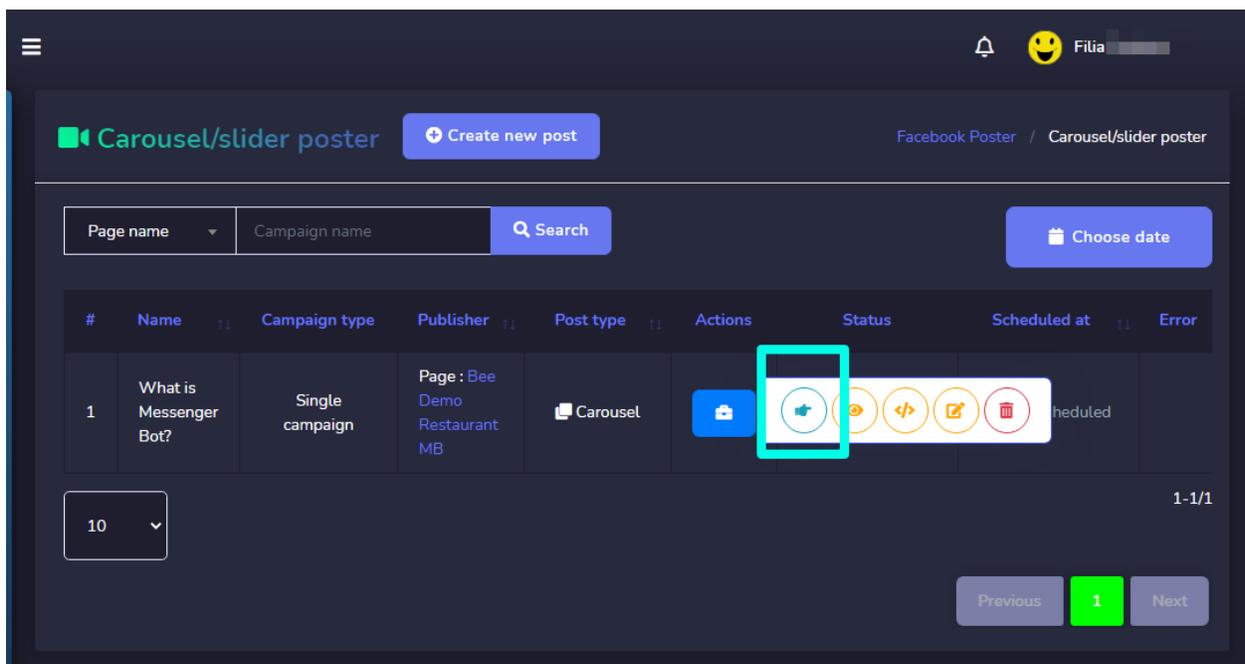
To perform different actions on the campaigns, select  option against the campaign you want to perform actions on.

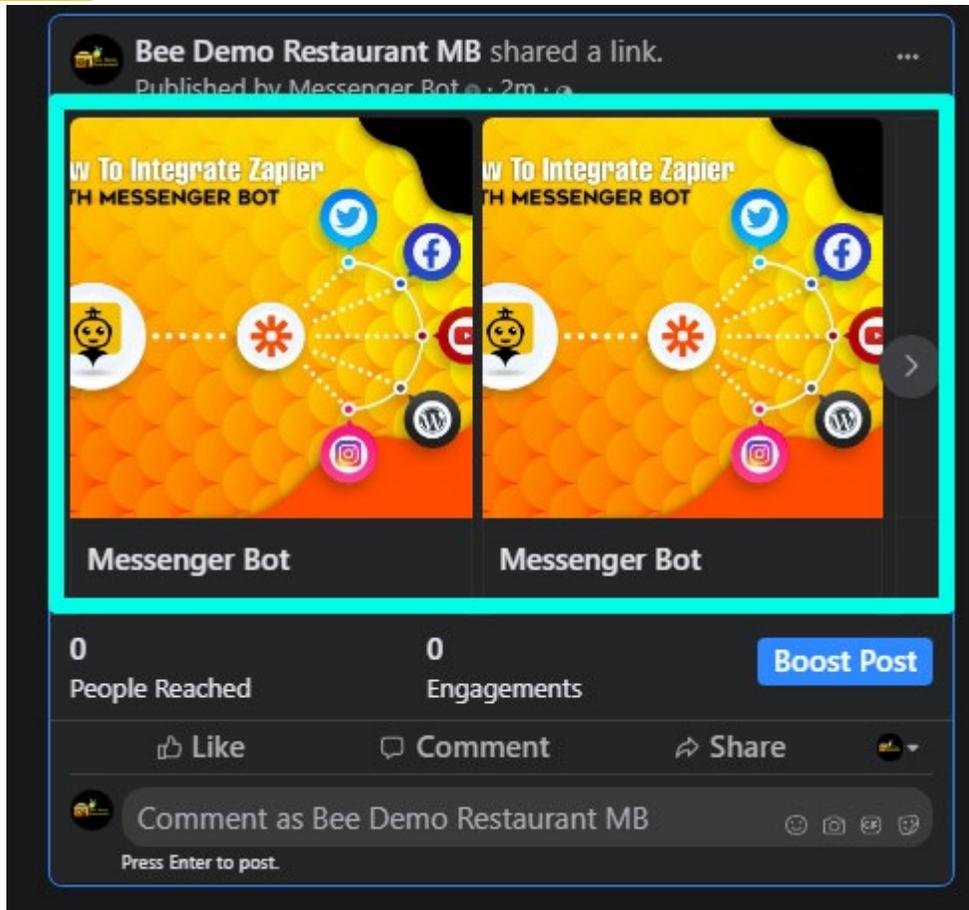




The following are the actions that can be performed:

- View the post by selecting 





- View the campaign report by selecting 

Carousel/slider poster Create new post Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Action	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	    	Scheduled	

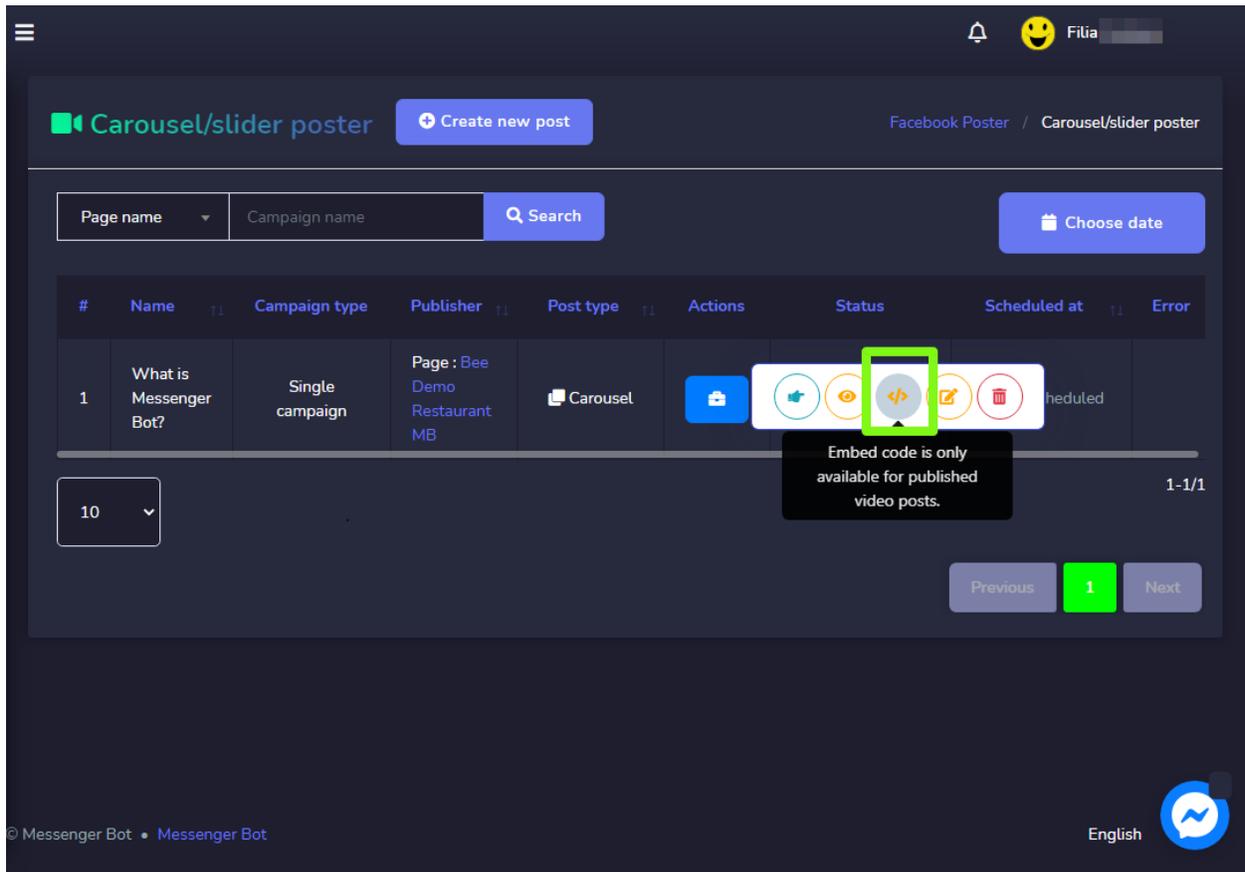
10 Previous 1 Next

Only parent campaign has shown report





- Fetch the JSON by selecting 



Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page: Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel		Scheduled		

10

Previous 1 Next

Embed code is only available for published video posts.

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

- Edit a campaign



Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider poster

Create new post

Page name Campaign name Search Choose date

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page : Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel				

10 1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

Facebook Poster / Carousel/slider posts / Edit video/carousel poster

Carousel Video slide show

Campaign name Demo Post to pages x Bee Demo Restaurant MB

Video-slide

Message

What is Messenger Bot?

Image duration (second) 1 sec Transition duration (second) 1 sec



Image content 1 :

Image link Upload image

Image content 2 :

Image link Upload image

Image content 3 :

Image link Upload image

Image link Upload image

Schedule time Time zone

Repost this post Times Time interval

- Delete a campaign



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot interface for managing posts. At the top, there's a 'messengerbot' logo and a user profile 'Filia'. Below that, the main heading is 'Carousel/slider poster' with a 'Create new post' button. There are search and date selection fields. A table lists posts with columns for #, Name, Campaign type, Publisher, Post type, Actions, Status, Scheduled at, and Error. The first row shows a post titled 'What is Messenger Bot?' with a 'Delete' button highlighted in red. At the bottom, there are pagination controls showing '1' of 1 items.

#	Name	Campaign type	Publisher	Post type	Actions	Status	Scheduled at	Error
1	What is Messenger Bot?	Single campaign	Page: Bee Demo Restaurant MB	Carousel	[Icons]	Deleted		

Note

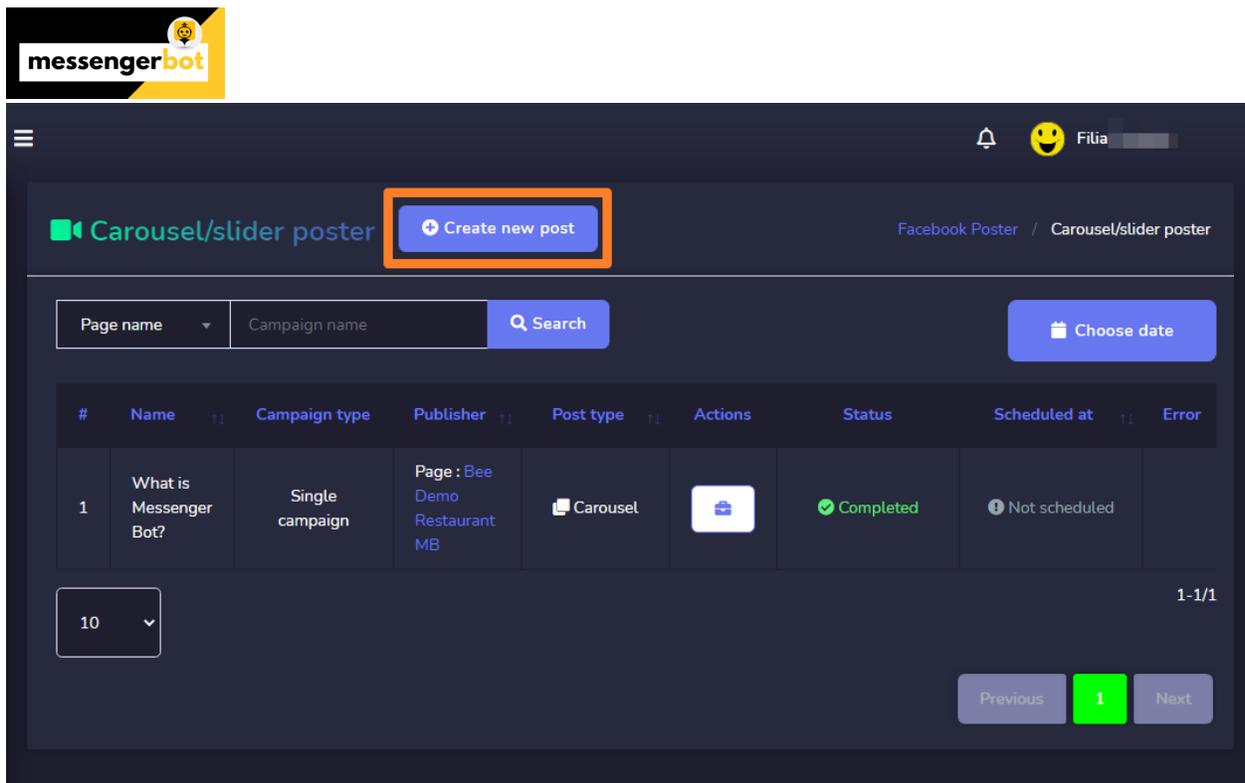
- For the posts that are already published, you cannot fetch the JSON code nor edit them.
- If the parent campaign has been selected while creating the campaign then only the parent campaign will display the report.

Create new Carousel/Video Post

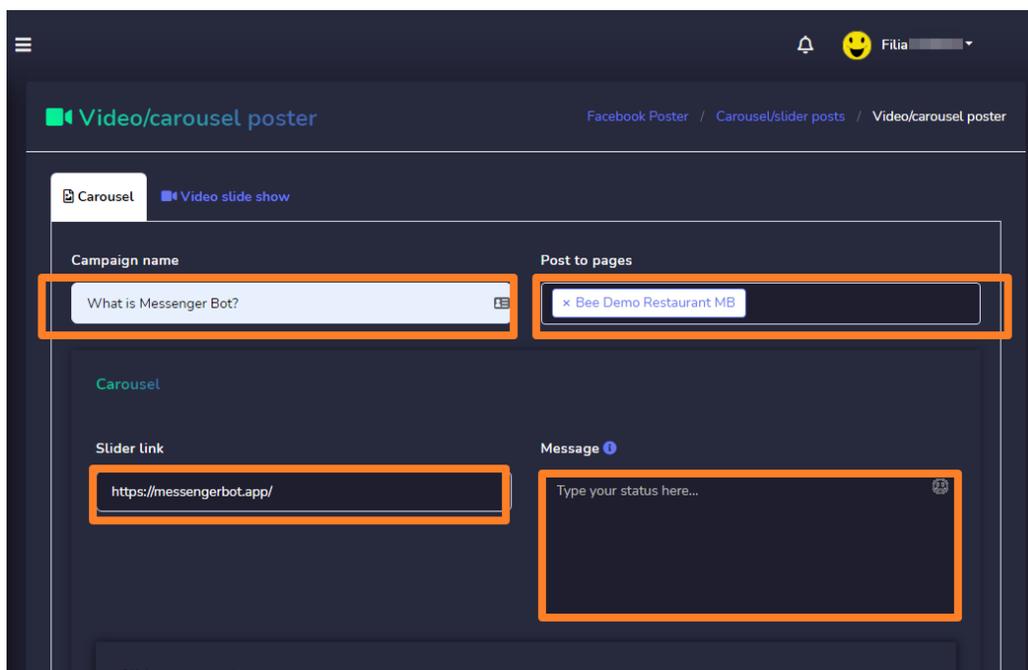
To create a new Carousel/Video post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen.





2. A **Carousel/Slider Poster** screen will appear. User can either add one of the following:
 - Carousel
 - Video slide show
3. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message, slider link** or **video-slide** based on your selection from the step 2.





4. Provide the **Slider Content 1**.
5. Select the **pages** to which this needs to be posted.
6. Schedule a **Posting time**.
7. Once done, you need to select **Create campaign** option.

A screenshot of the Messenger Bot campaign creation interface. The interface is dark-themed and contains several input fields and buttons. The "Slider content 1" section is highlighted with orange boxes. It includes a "Title" field with the text "Messenger Bot", an "Action link" field with "https://messengerbot.app/", a "Description" field with the placeholder "Type your description here...", an "Image link" field with "https://messengerbot.app/", and an "Upload image" button. Below this section is a "Posting time" section with a "Post now" toggle switch. At the bottom, there is a "Create Campaign" button and a "Cancel" button. A "Add more content" button is also visible in the top right of the content section.

Slider content 1: X

Title: Messenger Bot

Action link: https://messengerbot.app/

Description: Type your description here...

Image link: https://messengerbot.app/

Upload image: Upload

+ Add more content

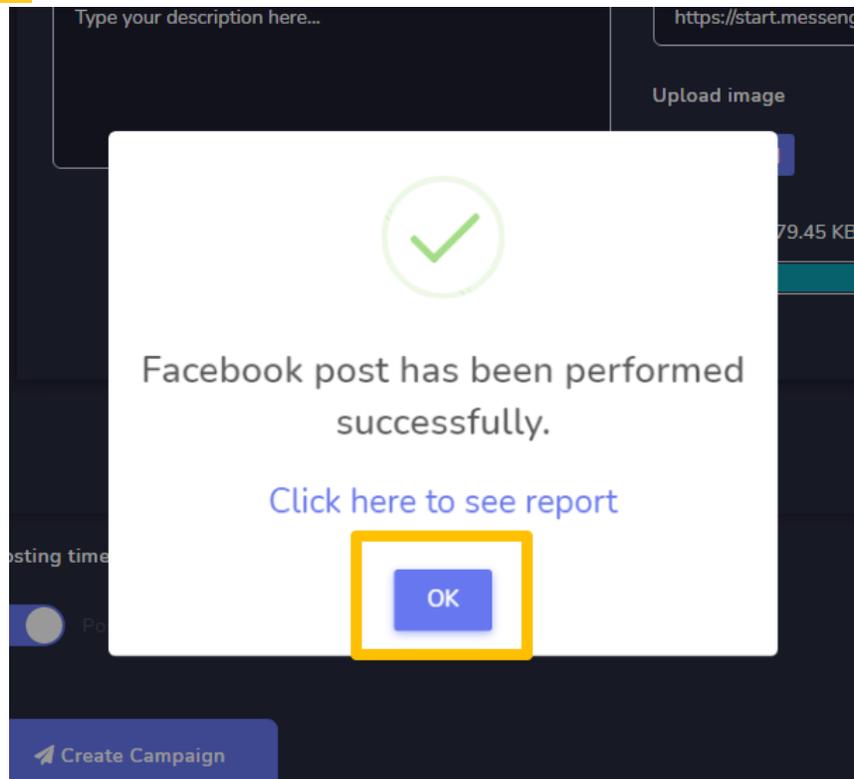
Posting time ⓘ

Post now

Create Campaign

Cancel





Social Poster

Social poster is used to manage all activities from a different account on one platform. This section further consists of following seven parts:

- Text Post
- Image Post
- Video Post
- Link Post
- Html Post
- Auto post
- Bulk post planner.

The details of these will be discussed in upcoming sections and start with Import social accounts.

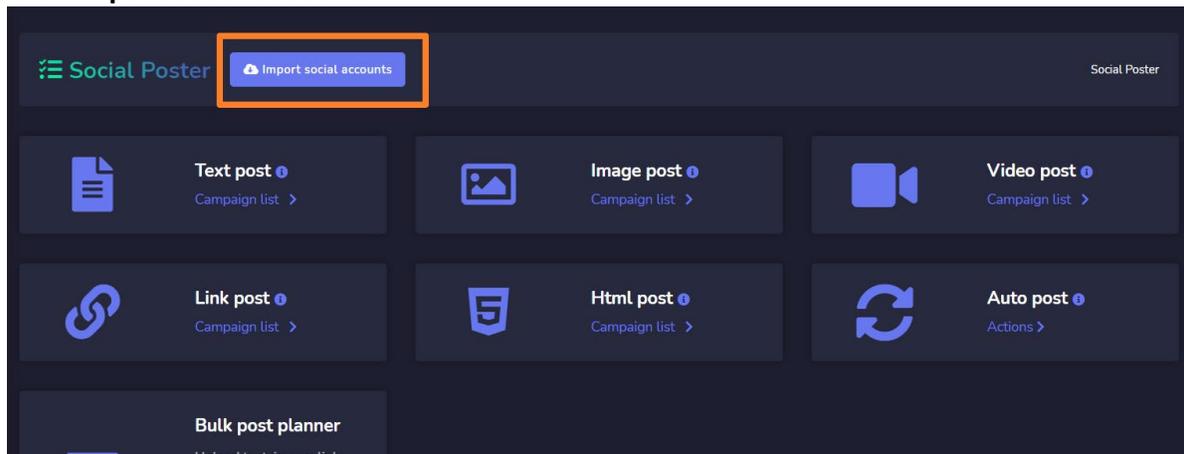
Import social accounts

To access this section, you need to make sure that all your social accounts have already been imported.

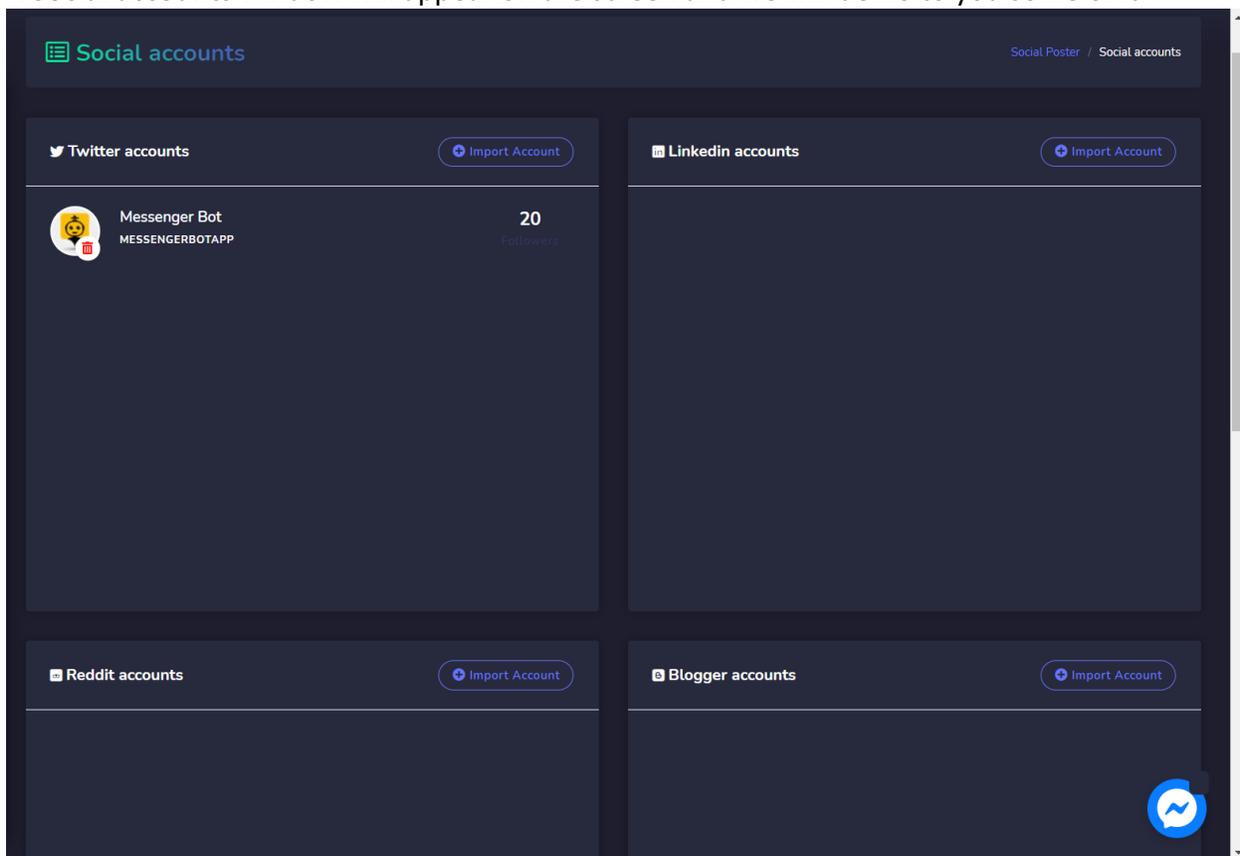




Tab on **Import social accounts**.



A **Social accounts** window will appear on the screen and we will demo to you some of it.

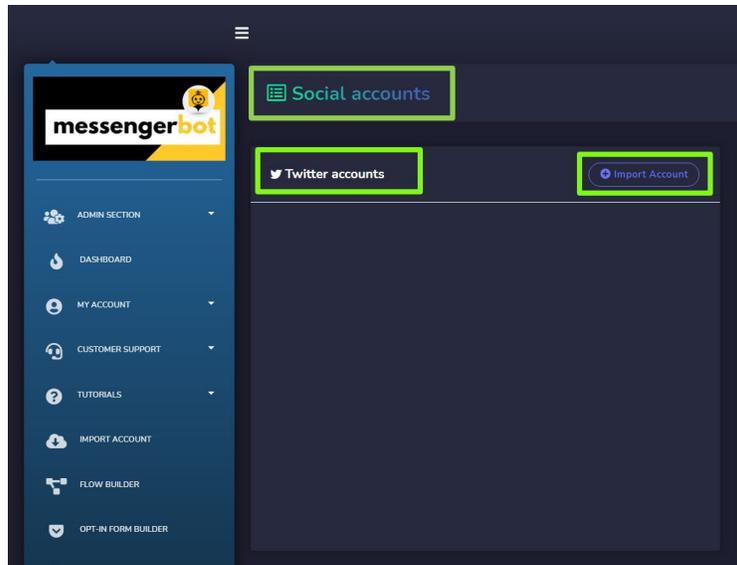


Twitter accounts

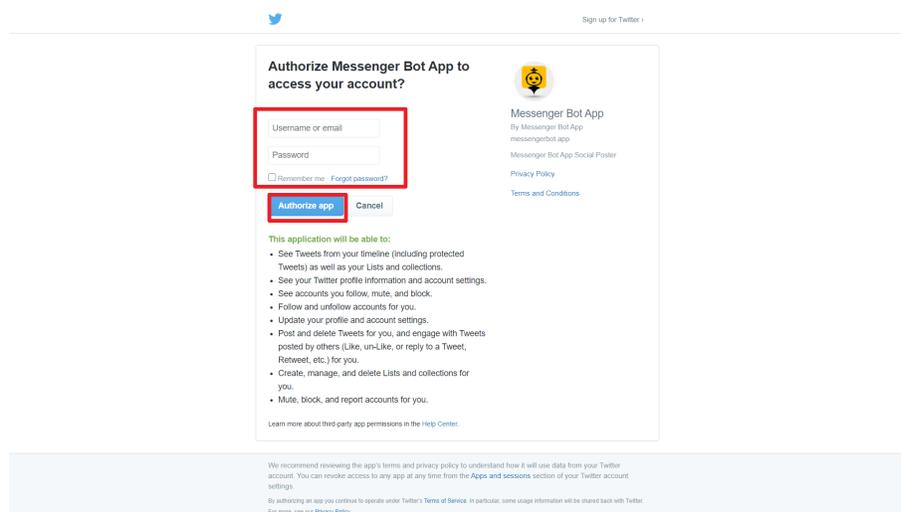
To import your twitter account, follow the steps given below:

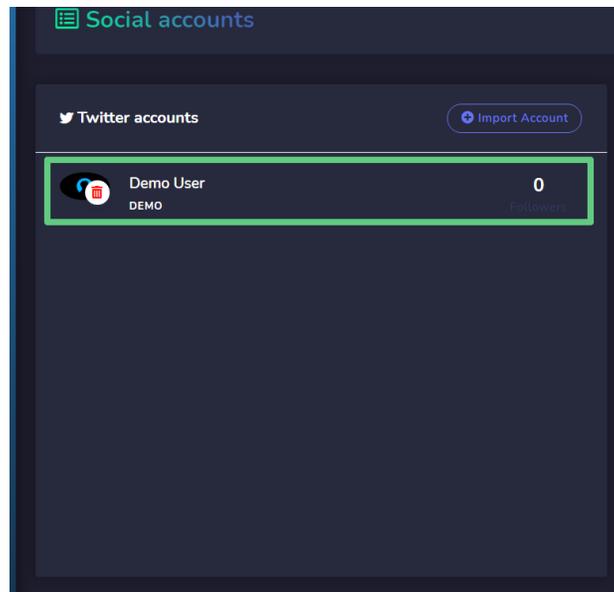
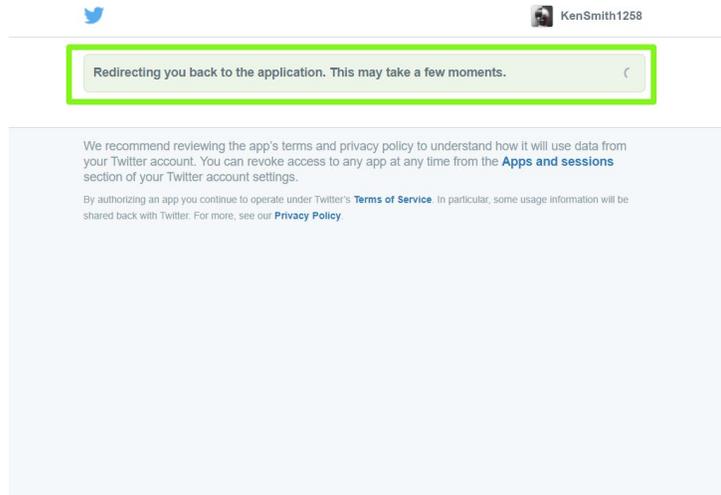
1. Select  from the **Twitter accounts** section.





2. You will be redirected to **twitter's authorization** page view.
3. Select **Authorize app** button, once done you will be redirected back to the application.



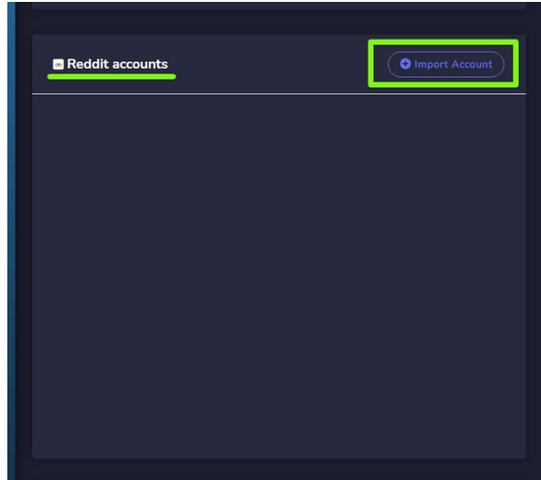


Reddit accounts

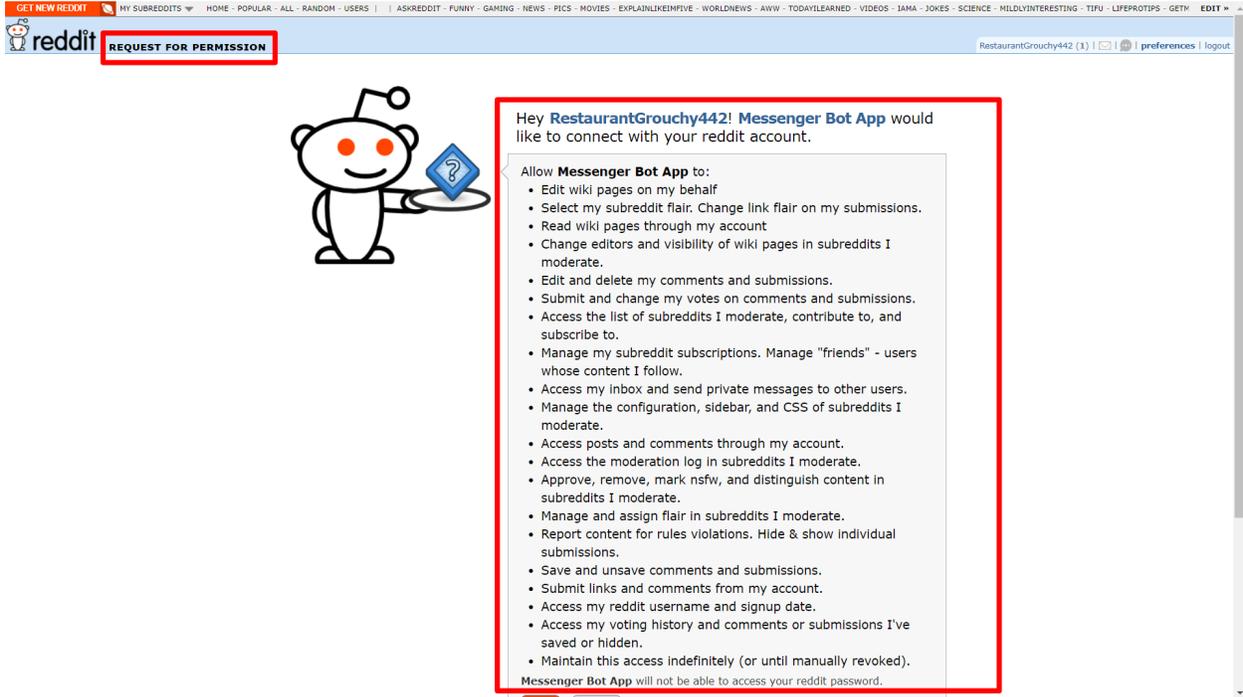
To import your Reddit account, follow the steps given below:

1. Select Import Account from the **Reddit accounts** section.





2. If already signed in, you will be redirected to Reddit authorization page view.
3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.





- Change editors and visibility of wiki pages in subreddits I moderate.
- Edit and delete my comments and submissions.
- Submit and change my votes on comments and submissions.
- Access the list of subreddits I moderate, contribute to, and subscribe to.
- Manage my subreddit subscriptions. Manage "friends" - users whose content I follow.
- Access my inbox and send private messages to other users.
- Manage the configuration, sidebar, and CSS of subreddits I moderate.
- Access posts and comments through my account.
- Access the moderation log in subreddits I moderate.
- Approve, remove, mark nsfw, and distinguish content in subreddits I moderate.
- Manage and assign flair in subreddits I moderate.
- Report content for rules violations. Hide & show individual submissions.
- Save and unsave comments and submissions.
- Submit links and comments from my account.
- Access my reddit username and signup date.
- Access my voting history and comments or submissions I've saved or hidden.
- Maintain this access indefinitely (or until manually revoked).

Messenger Bot App will not be able to access your reddit password.

about

blog
about
advertising
careers

help

site rules
Reddit help center
reddiquette
mod guidelines
contact us

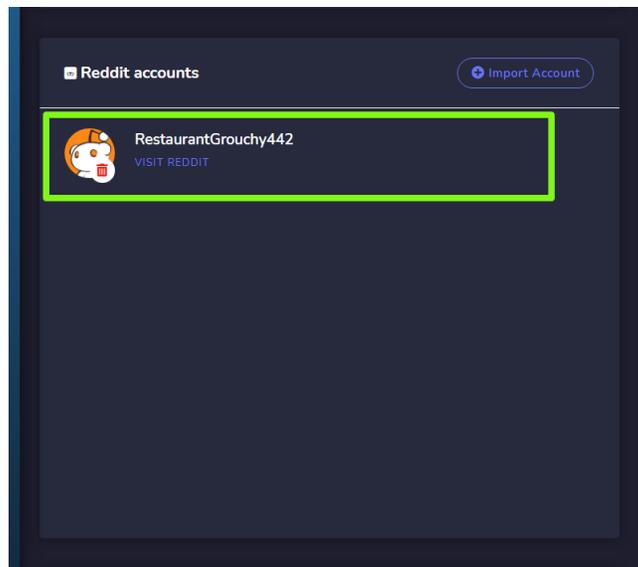
apps & tools

Reddit for iPhone
Reddit for Android
mobile website

<3

reddit premium
reddit coins
redditgifts

Use of this site constitutes acceptance of our [User Agreement](#) and [Privacy Policy](#). © 2021 reddit inc. All rights reserved. REDDIT and the ALIEN Logo are registered trademarks of reddit inc.

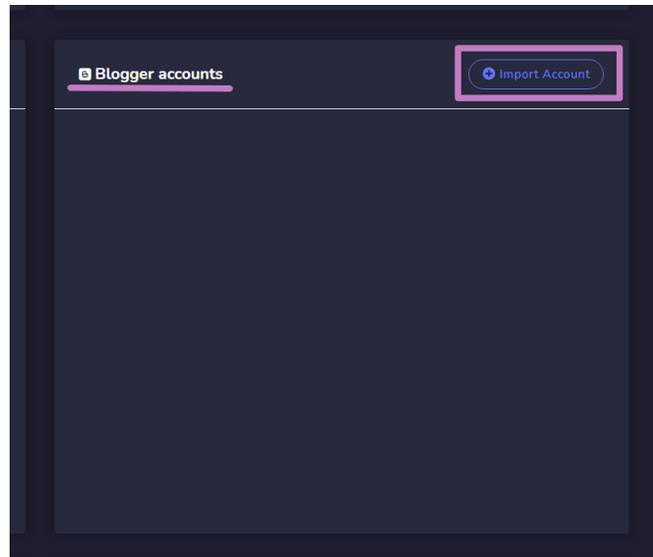


Blogger accounts

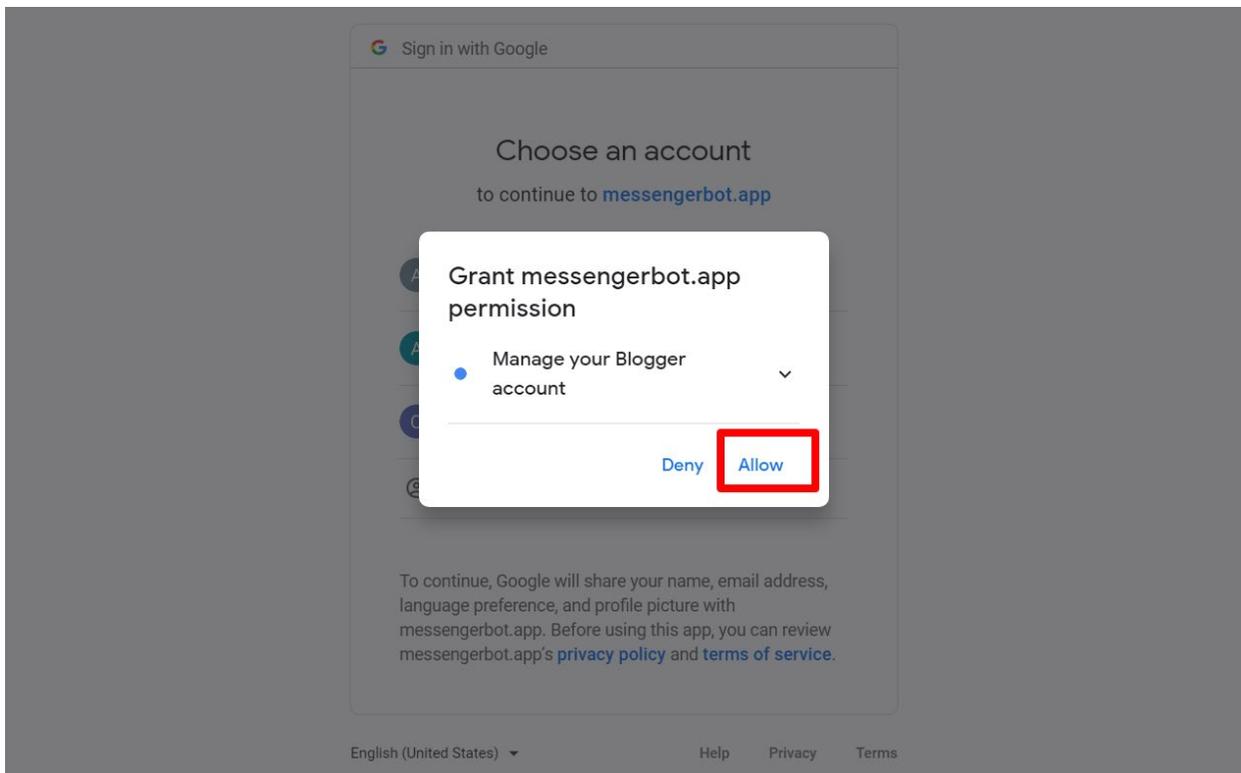
To import your Blogger account, follow the steps given below:

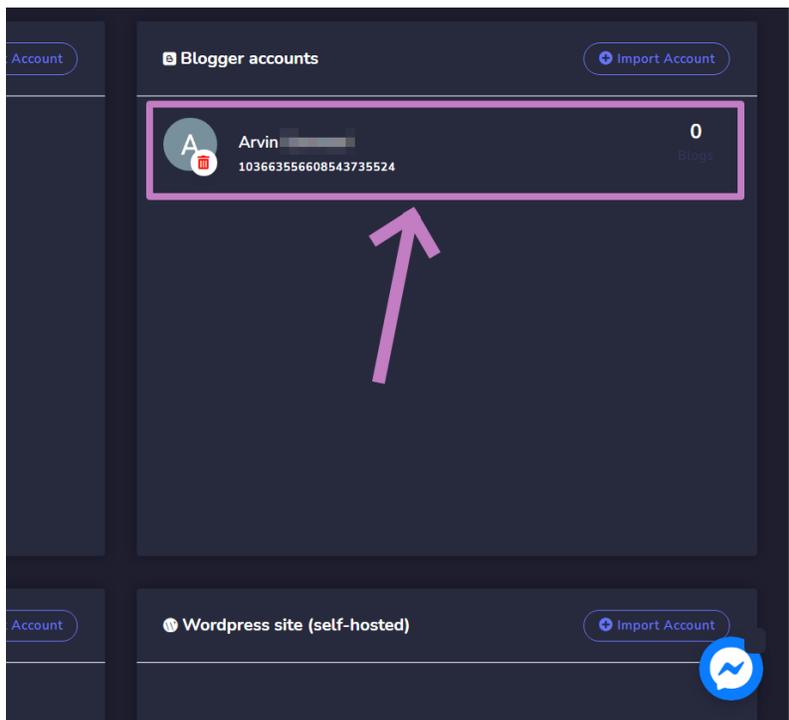
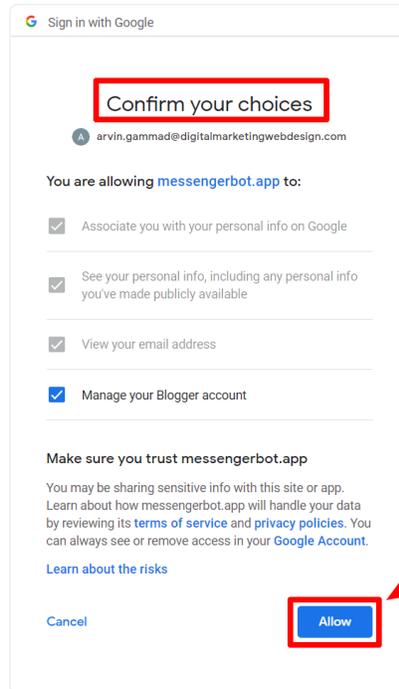
1. Select from the **Blogger accounts** section.





2. Select the account which you want to use.
3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.



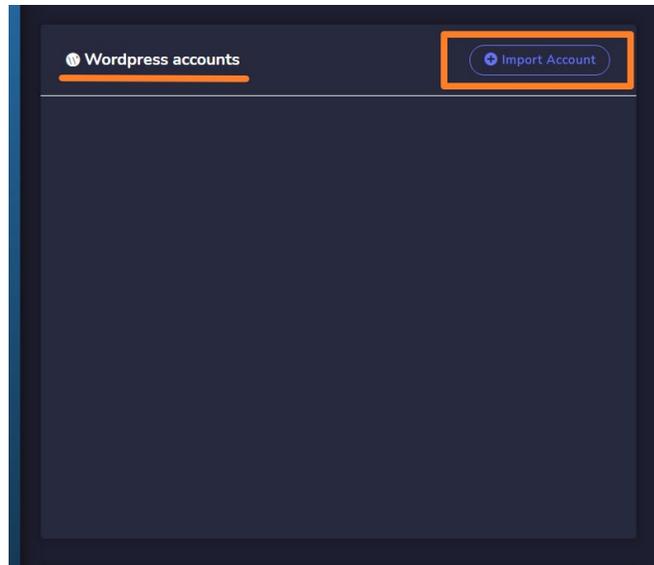


WordPress accounts

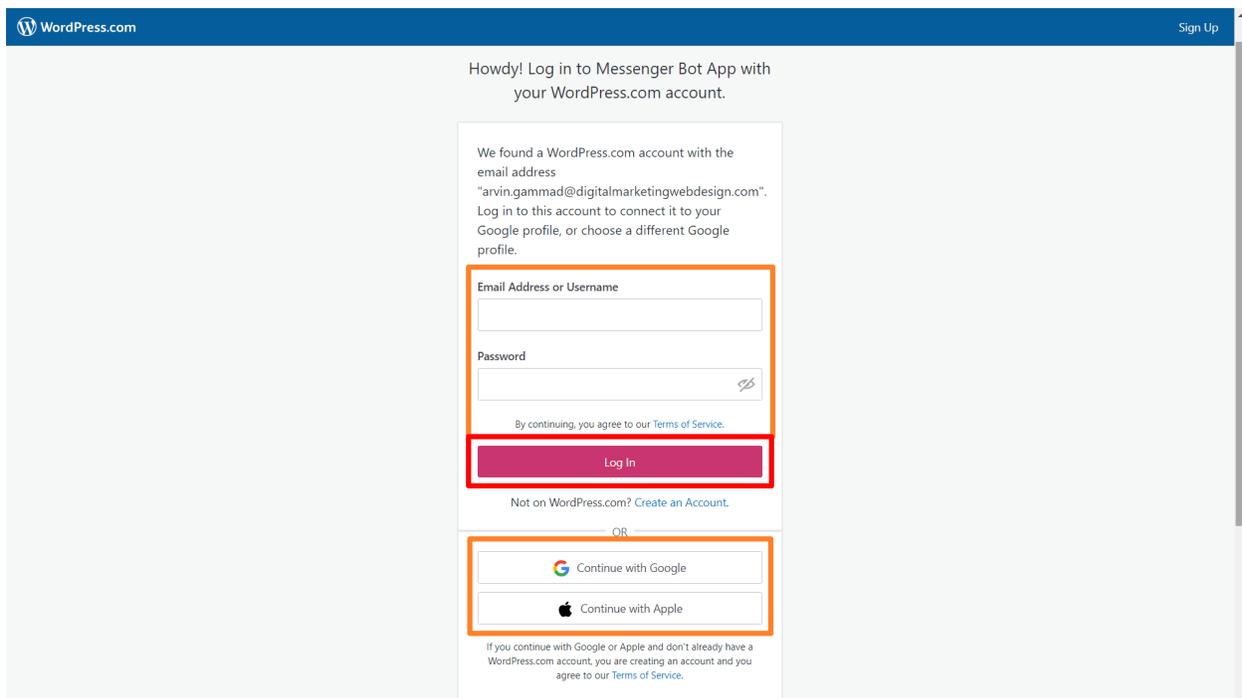
To import your WordPress account, follow the steps given below:

1. Select [Import Account](#) from the top left of the **WordPress accounts** screen.



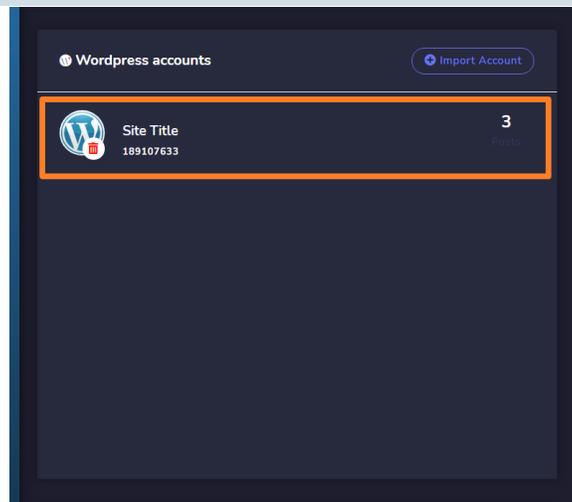
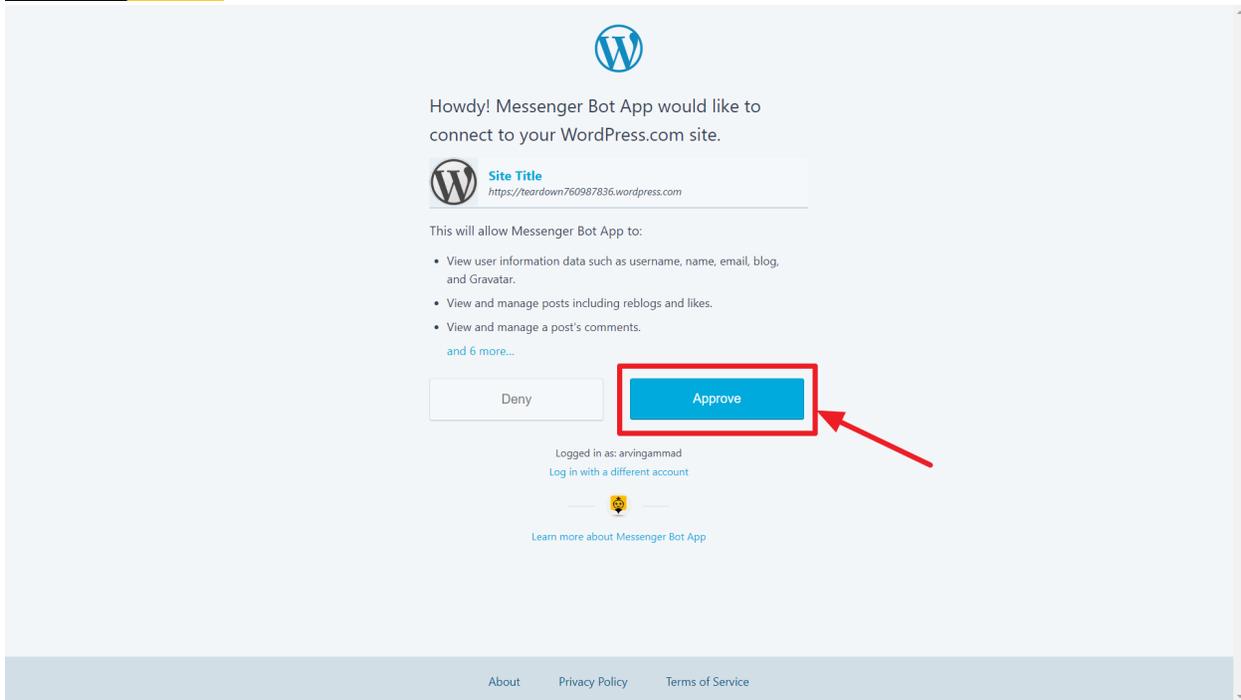


2. Select the account which you want to use.



3. Select **Allow** to all permissions. Once done you will be redirected back to the application.



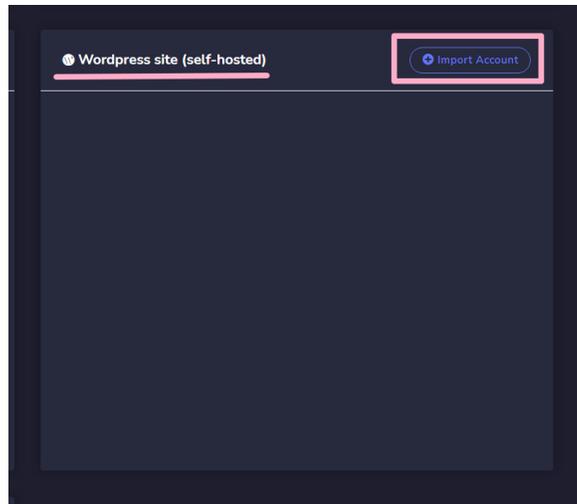


WordPress site (self-hosted)

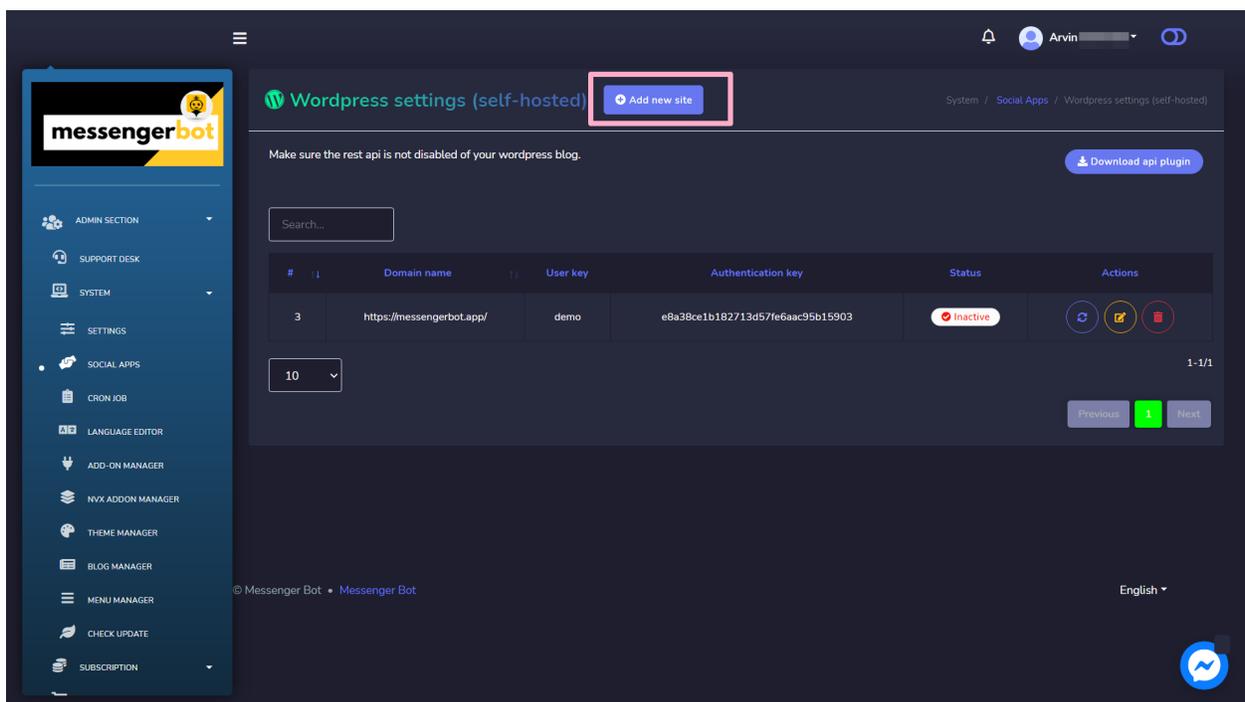
To import your WordPress site (self-hosted), follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from the top left of the **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.





2. You will be redirected to **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.
3. You can add new site by selecting the **Add new site** option.



4. Provide the **Domain name**, **User key** and **Authentication key**, then select **Save**.



The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. At the top left is the 'messengerbot' logo. The main header area displays 'Add wordpress settings (self-hosted)' with a breadcrumb trail: 'System / Social Apps / Add wordpress settings (self-hosted)'. Below this is the 'App details' section. It contains three input fields: 'WordPress blog URL' (empty), 'User key' (containing 'demo'), and 'Authentication key' (containing 'e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903'). A toggle switch labeled 'Active' is currently turned off. At the bottom of the form, there is a blue 'Save' button and a yellow 'Cancel' button. The footer of the dashboard includes the copyright notice '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot', a language selector set to 'English', and a Messenger Bot logo icon.

5. You can also download the API plugin by selecting **Download API Plugin** from **WordPress site (self-hosted)** screen.



messengerbot

Wordpress settings (self-hosted) [Add new site](#)

System / Social Apps / Wordpress settings (self-hosted)

Make sure the rest api is not disabled of your wordpress blog. [Download api plugin](#)

Search...

#	Domain name	User key	Authentication key	Status	Actions
3	https://messengerbot.app/	demo	e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903	Inactive	Refresh Edit Delete

10

1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

wp-self-hosted-po...zip

Show all

6. Once your account is imported you can refresh, edit and delete it from the table.

- Refresh the site with the **refresh button**.
- Click the **edit button**, perform your changes here, then hit **Save**.
- if you want to delete, click the **delete button**. A modal of delete confirmation will appear. Hit **OK** to confirm.

messengerbot

Wordpress settings (self-hosted) [Add new site](#)

System / Social Apps / Wordpress settings (self-hosted)

Make sure the rest api is not disabled of your wordpress blog. [Download api plugin](#)

Search...

#	Domain name	User key	Authentication key	Status	Actions
3	https://messengerbot.app/	demo	e8a38ce1b182713d57fe6aac95b15903	Inactive	Refresh Edit Delete

10

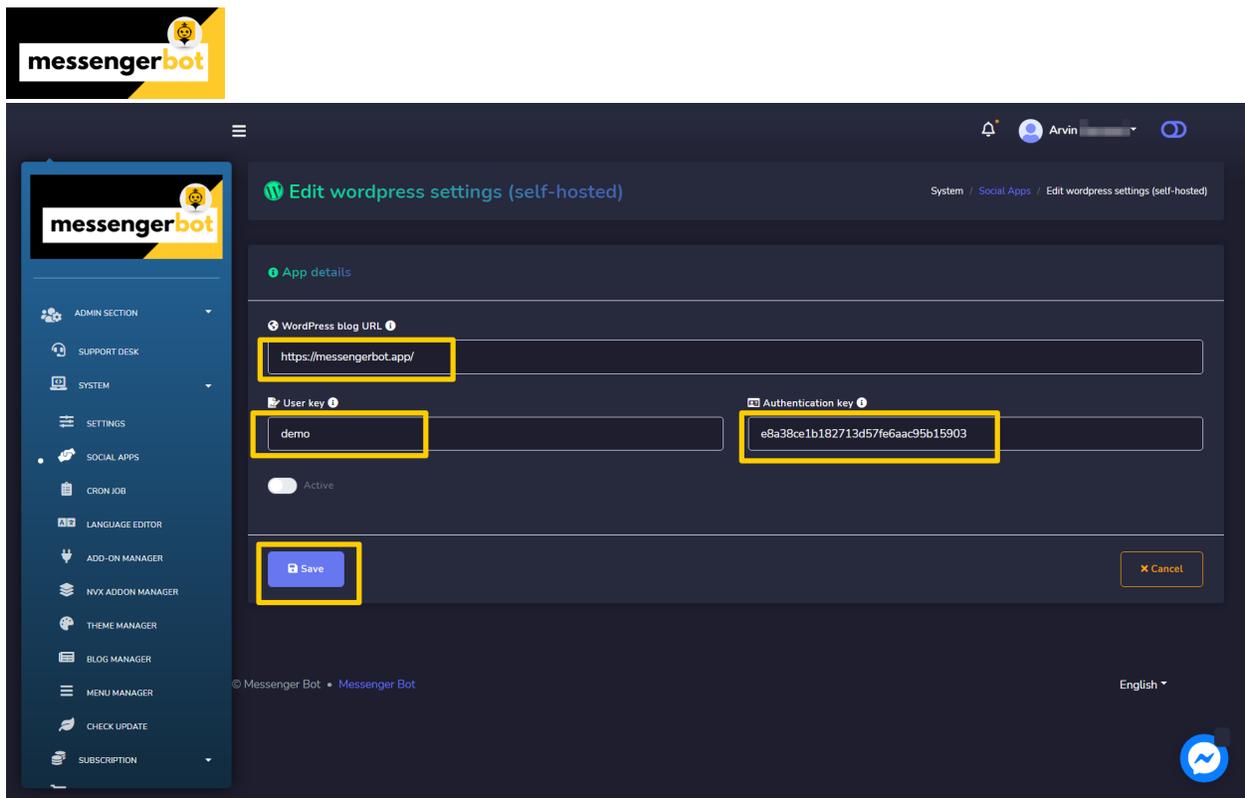
1-1/1

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

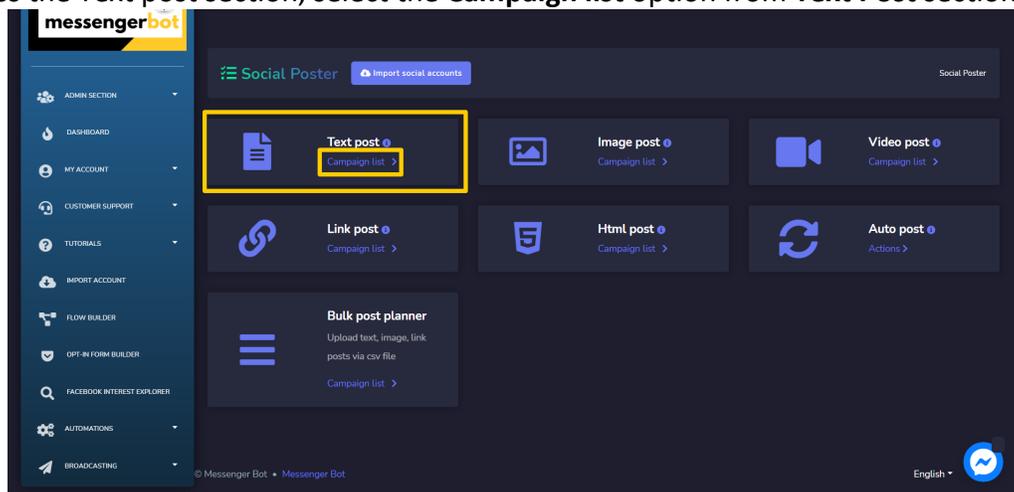
English





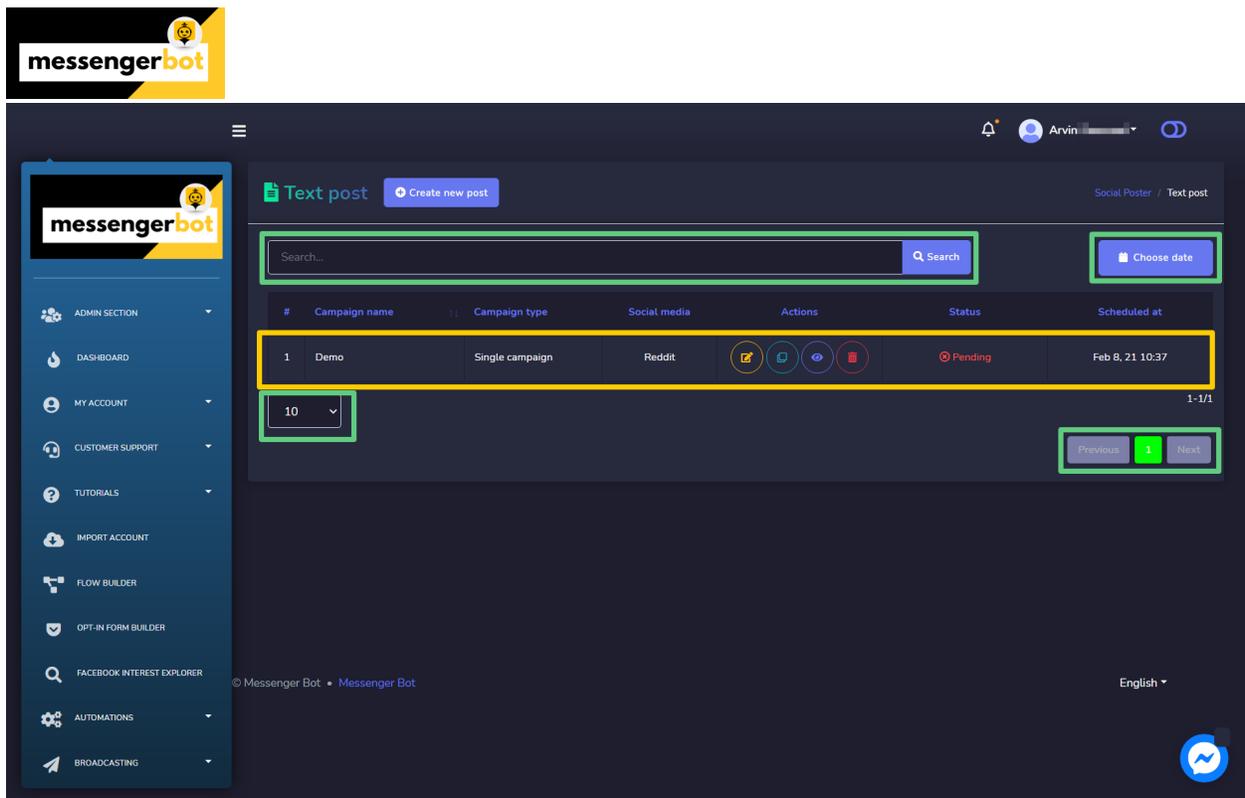
Text Post

To access the Text post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **Text Post** section.



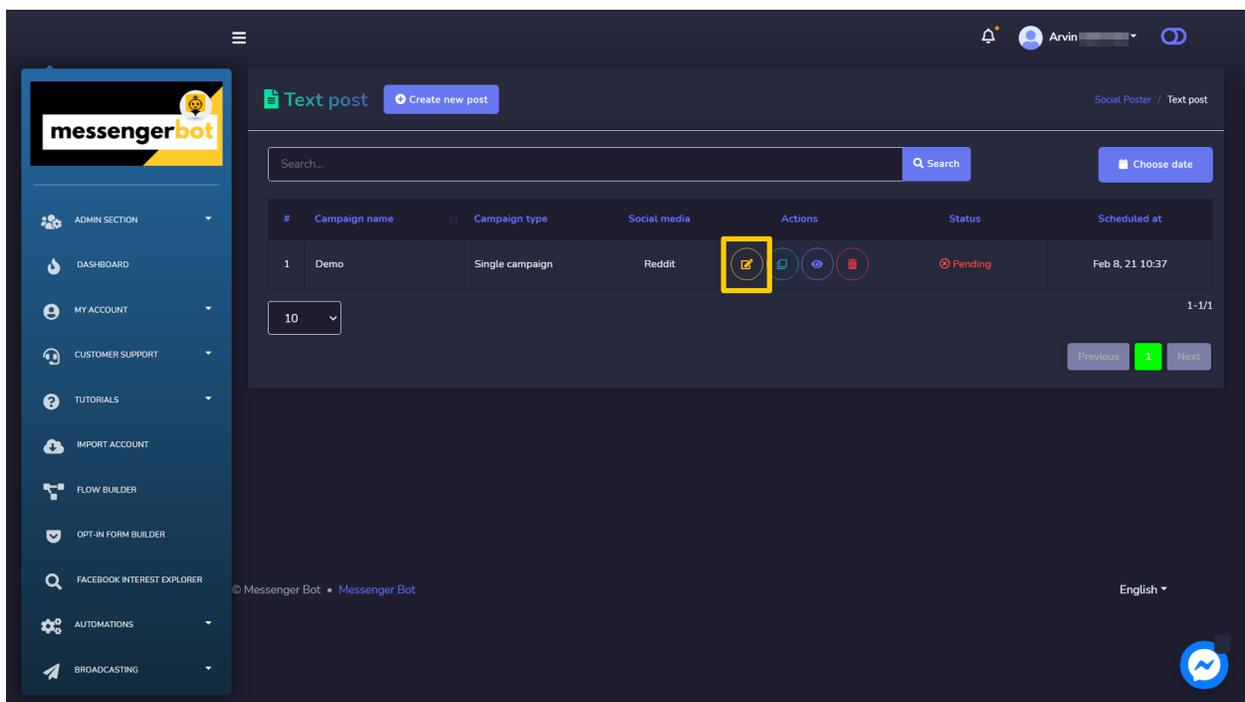
A **Text post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of campaigns** to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range for narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.





The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- **Edit a campaign**





Arvin

[Edit post](#) Social Poster / Text post / Edit post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo Title (reddit, medium): Demo

Message: Demo

Posting time: Post now

Facebook: Vin Gammad

Twitter: Kaneki Ken (KenKaneki1726)

- Clone the campaign by selecting  .

Arvin

Text post [Create new post](#) Social Poster / Text post

Search... [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Reddit	   	Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:37

10

Previous [1](#) Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English



The image shows two screenshots of the Messenger Bot dashboard. The top screenshot is titled "Clone post" and shows a form for creating a post. The form includes fields for "Campaign name" (containing "Demo"), "Title (reddit, medium)" (containing "Demo"), and "Message" (containing "Demo"). There is also a "Posting time" toggle set to "Post now". The bottom screenshot is titled "Clone campaign" and shows a list of campaigns. The "Wordpress (self-hosted)" campaign is highlighted with an orange box, and a yellow arrow points to its icon. A "Clone campaign" button is highlighted with a yellow box at the bottom of the dashboard.

- **View** the campaign report by selecting .





Arvin

Text post

Create new post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Reddit	  	Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:37

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Campaign report

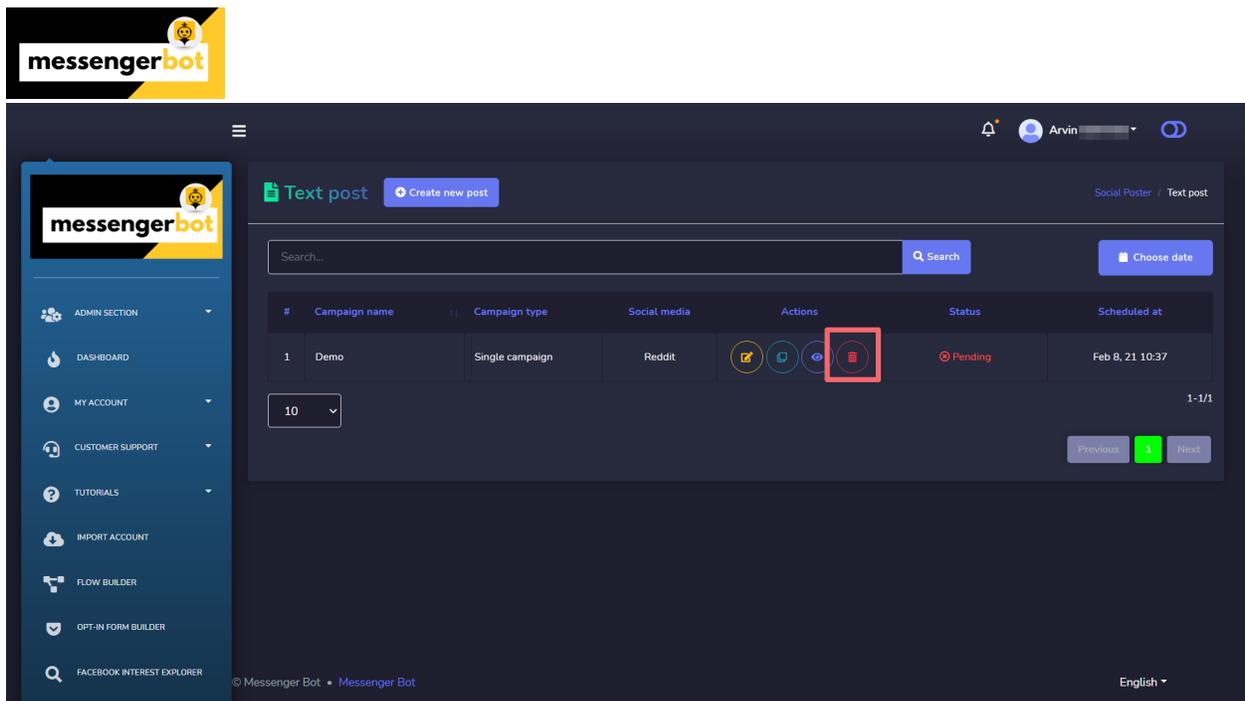
Campaign info

- Campaign name
Demo
- Title
Demo
- Message
Demo

Posting report

- Delete a campaign

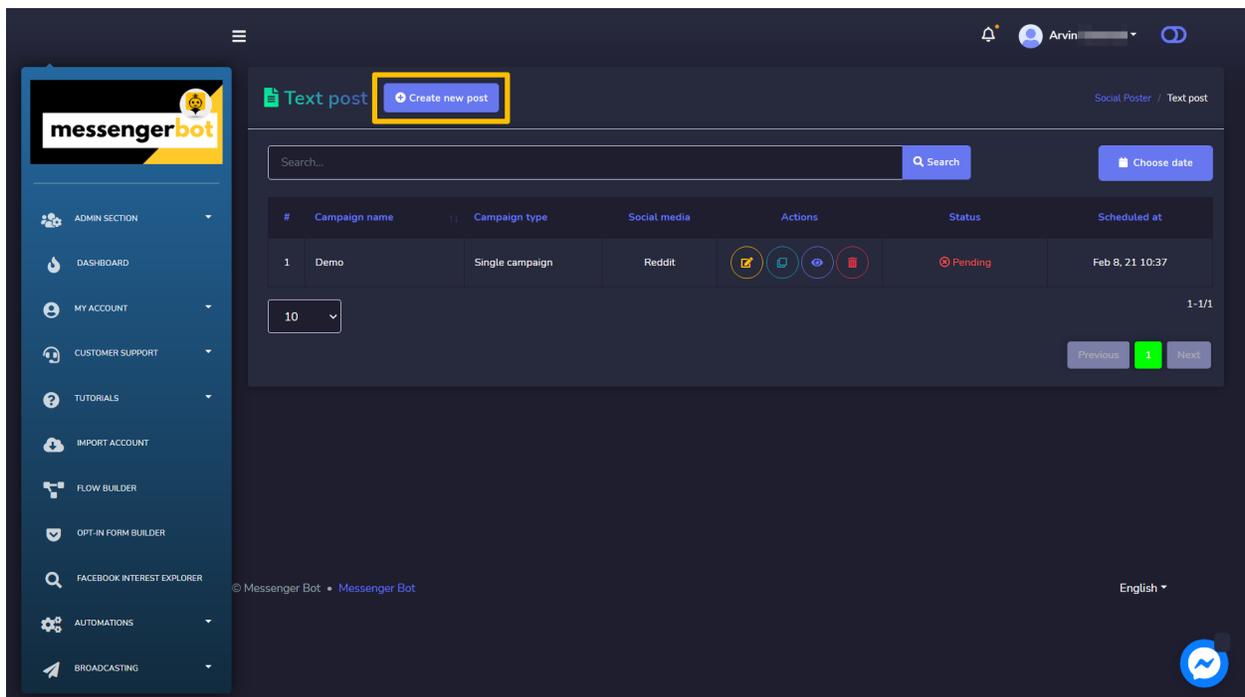




Create new Text Post

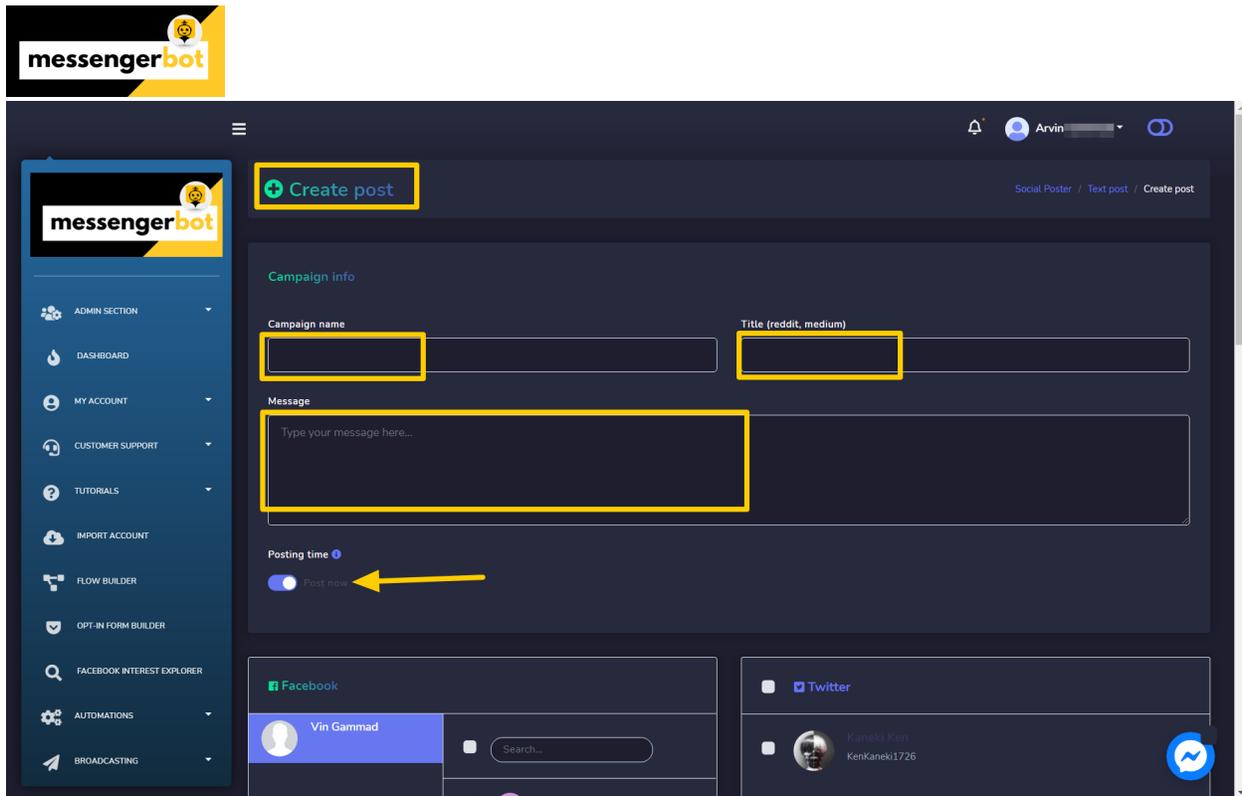
To create a new Text post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Text post** screen.

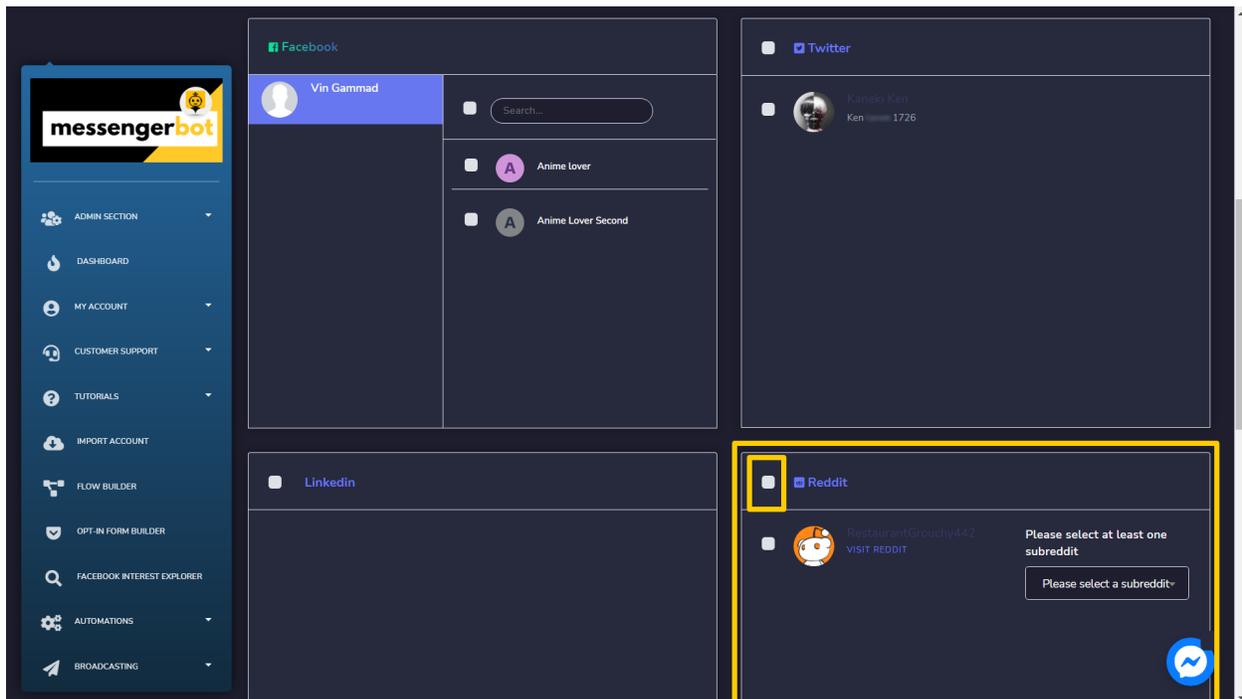


2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **message**.
3. Select a **Posting time** for the text post.





4. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.



5. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



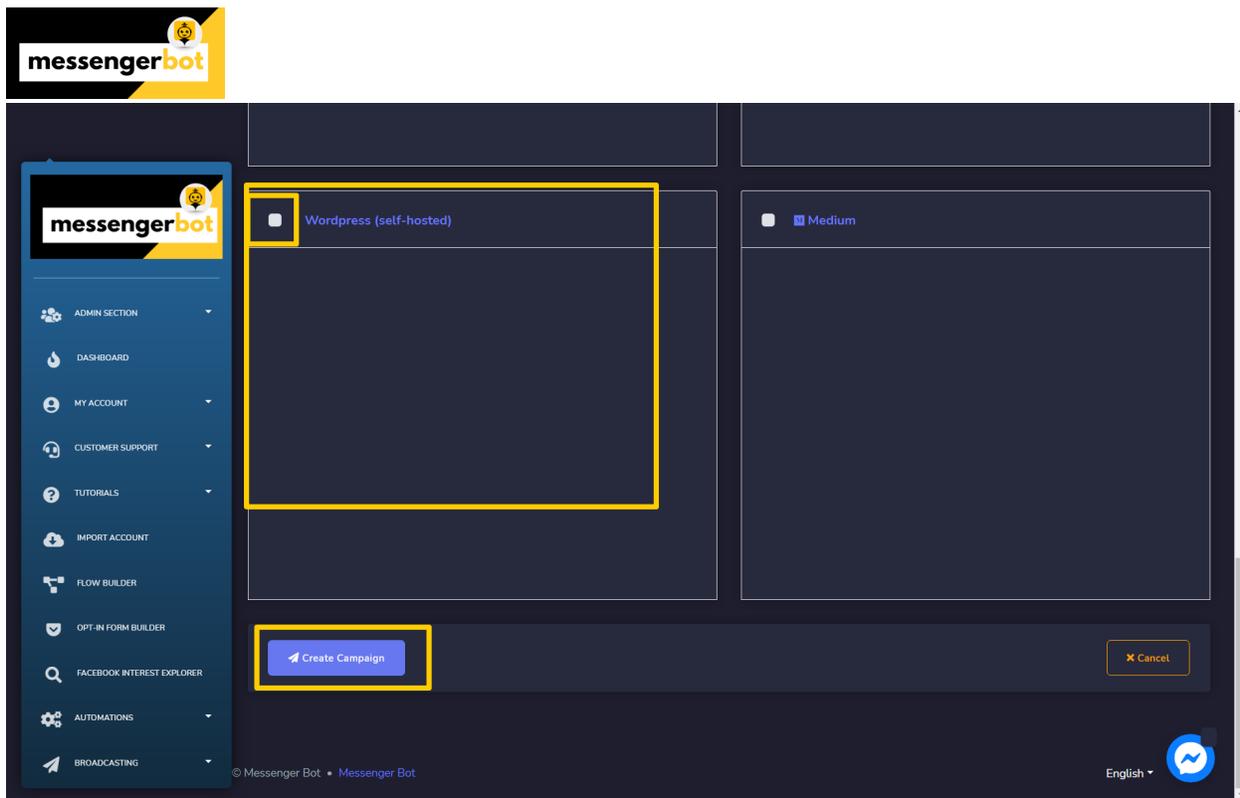


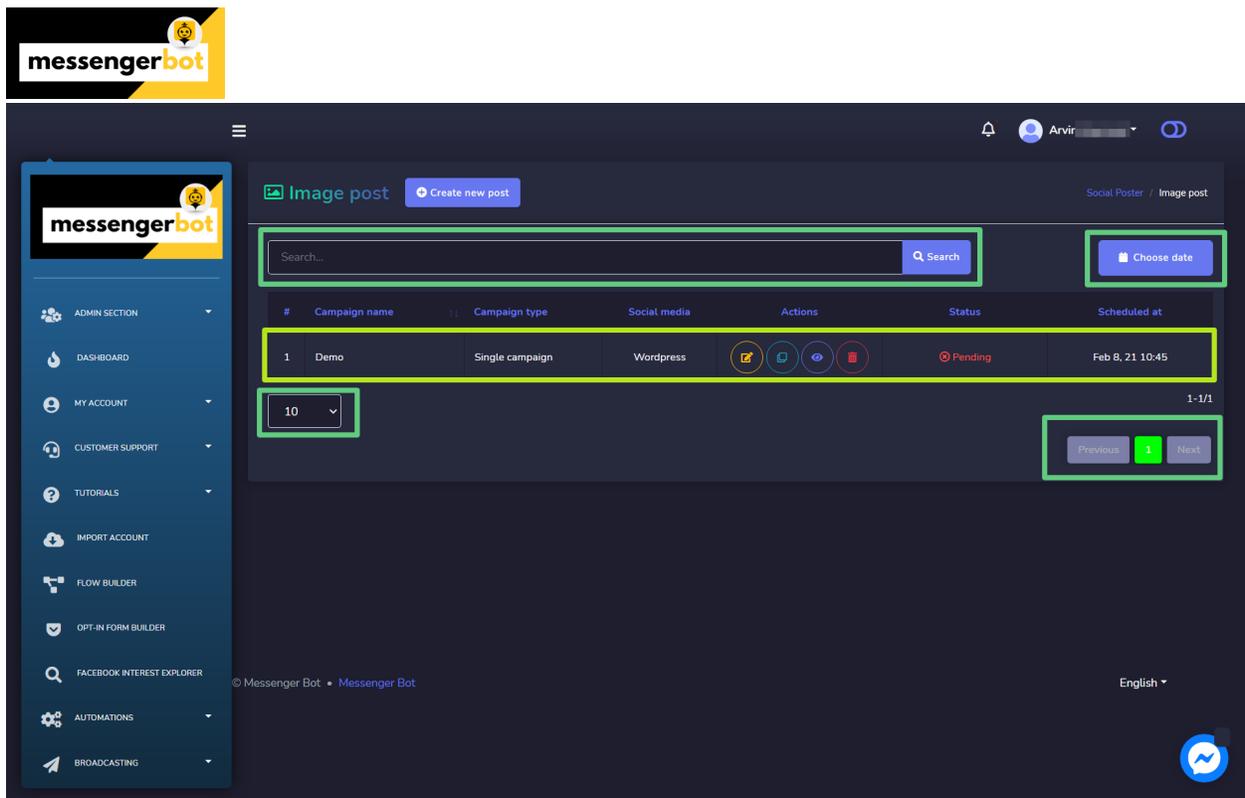
Image Post

To access the Image post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Image Post** section.



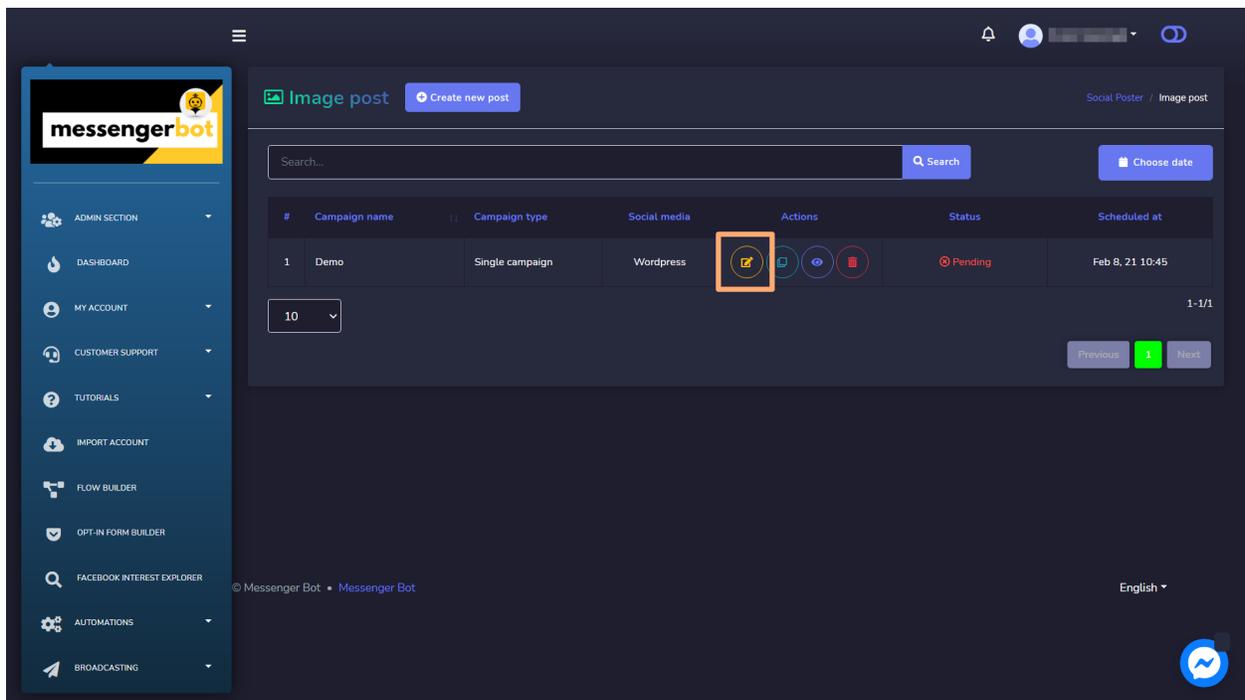
An **Image post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the number of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the narrowed **search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange the names** either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.





The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- Edit a campaign.



messengerbot

Arvin

Edit post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo

Title (Blogger, WordPress, Medium): Demo

Image (max size: 20MB): Upload, Drag & drop files

Rich content (Blogger, WordPress, Medium): Sample

Posting time

- Clone the campaign by selecting  .

messengerbot

Arvin

Image post

Create new post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Wordpress		Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:45

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English



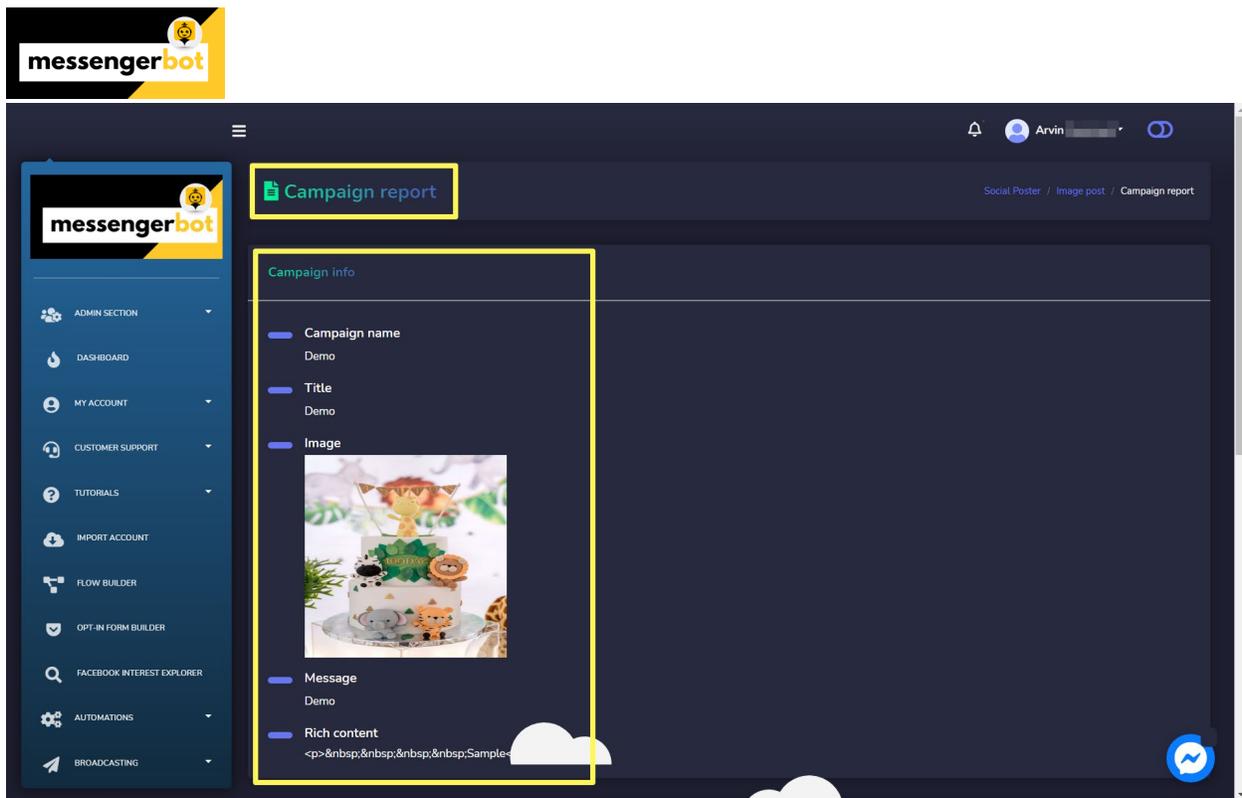
The screenshot shows the 'Clone post' form in the Messenger Bot dashboard. The form includes fields for 'Campaign name' (containing 'Demo'), 'Title (Blogger, WordPress, Medium)' (containing 'Demo'), and 'Message (Facebook, Twitter)' (containing 'Demo'). There is an 'Image' upload section with 'Upload' and 'Drag & drop files' buttons. Below is a 'Rich content' editor with a 'Sample' text box. A red arrow points to the 'Posting time' label at the bottom left of the form area.

- View the campaign report by selecting  .

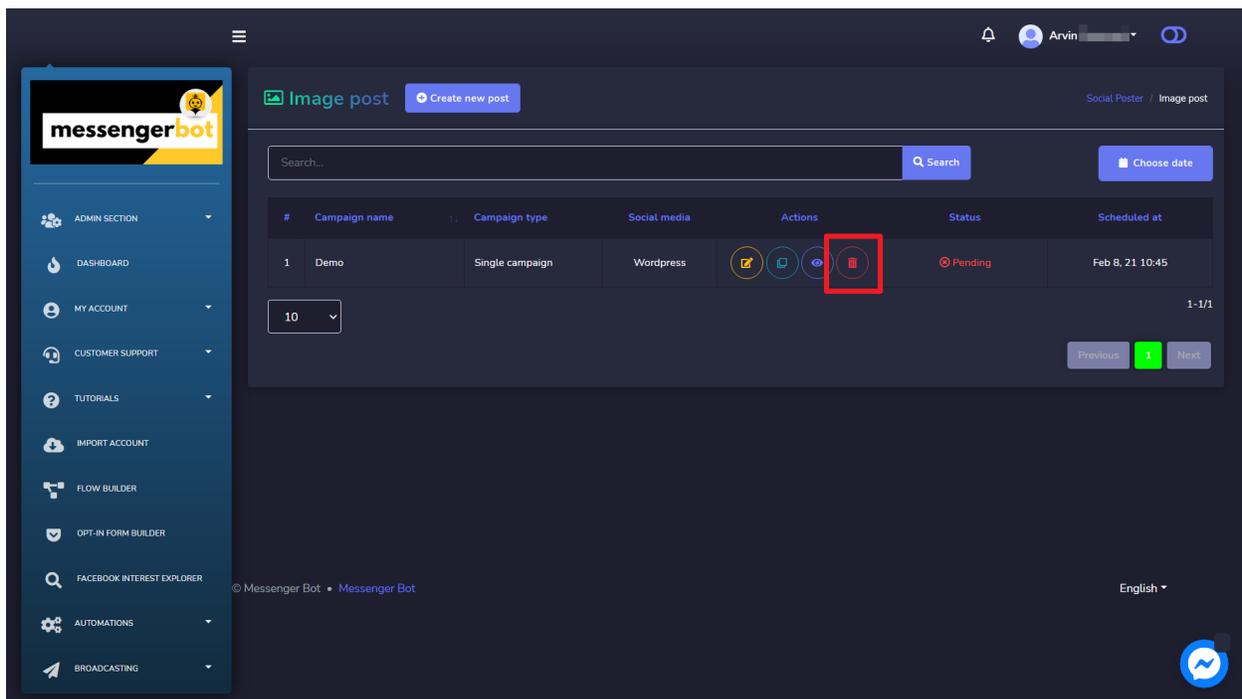
The screenshot shows the 'Image post' table in the Messenger Bot dashboard. The table has columns for '#', 'Campaign name', 'Campaign type', 'Social media', 'Actions', 'Status', and 'Scheduled at'. A red box highlights the 'Eye' icon in the 'Actions' column for the first row. The first row contains: 1, Demo, Single campaign, Wordpress, Pending, Feb 8, 21 10:45. The table also includes a search bar, a 'Choose date' button, and pagination controls.

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Wordpress		Pending	Feb 8, 21 10:45





- Delete a campaign

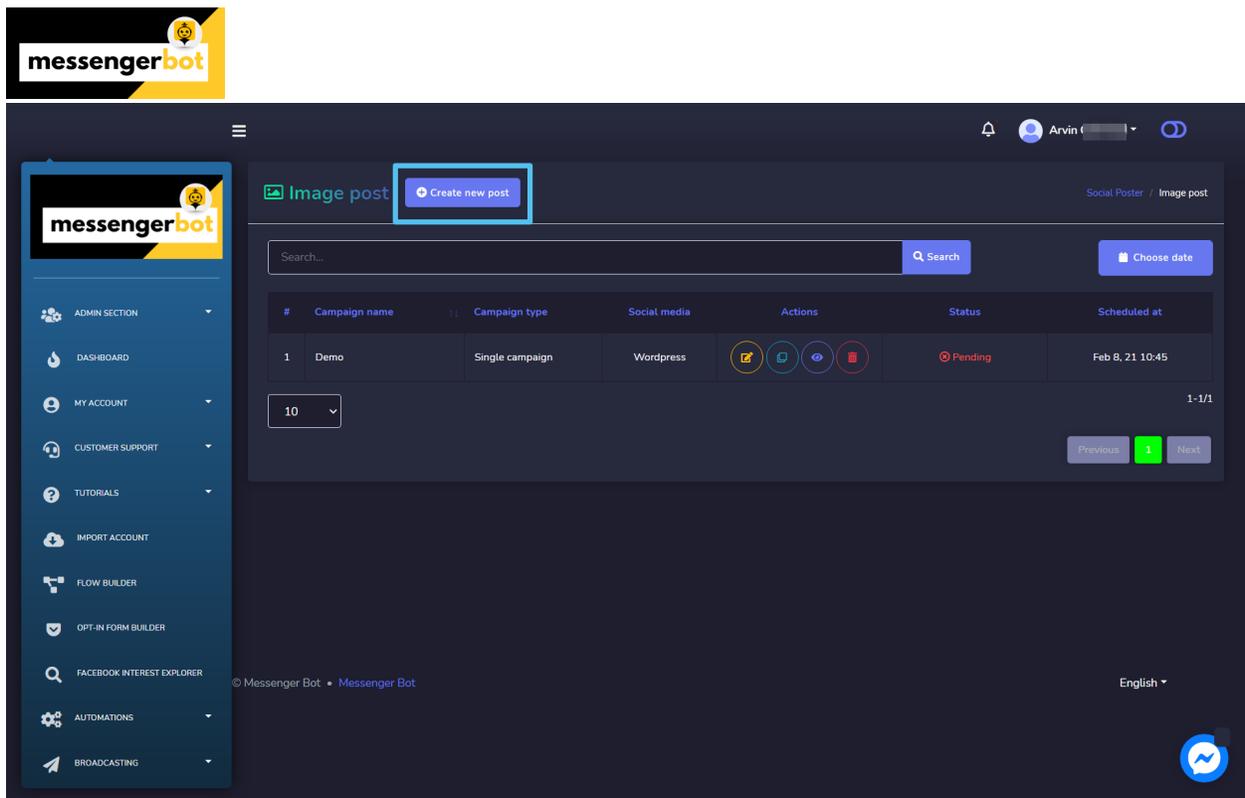


Create new Image Post

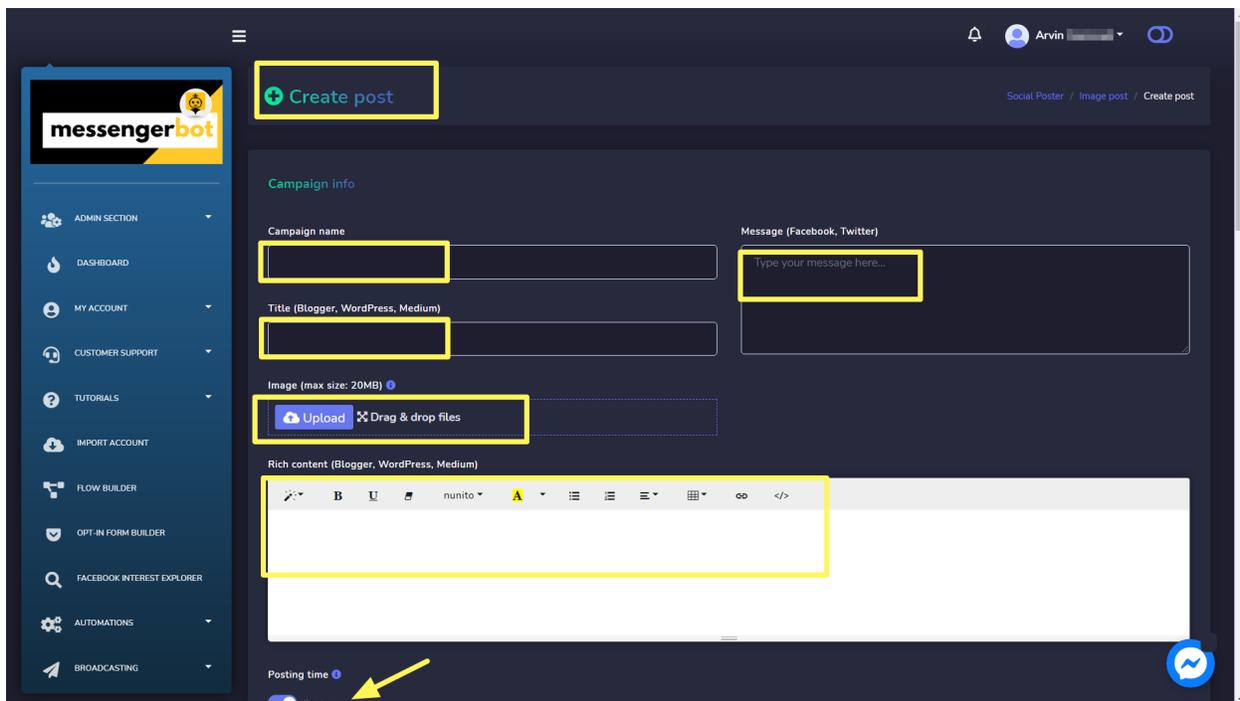
To create a new Image post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Text post** screen.



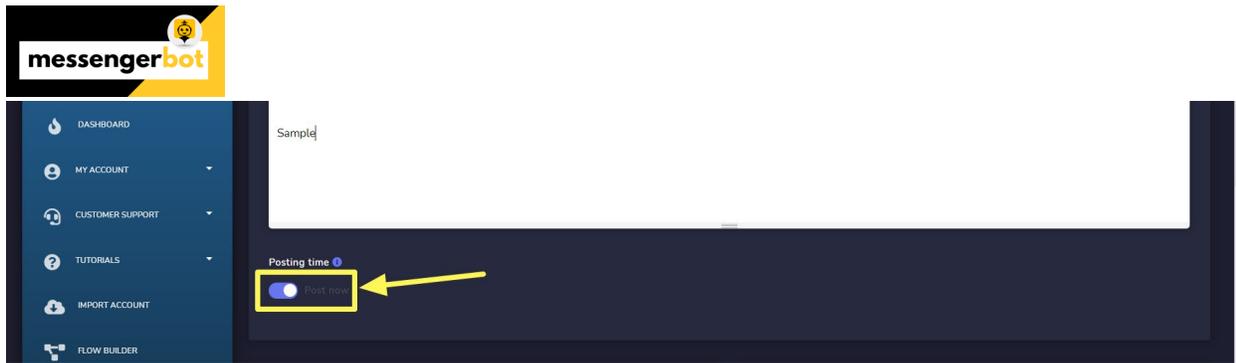


2. Provide a **Campaign name, title and a message.**
3. Provide a **Link** for pinterest and rich content.

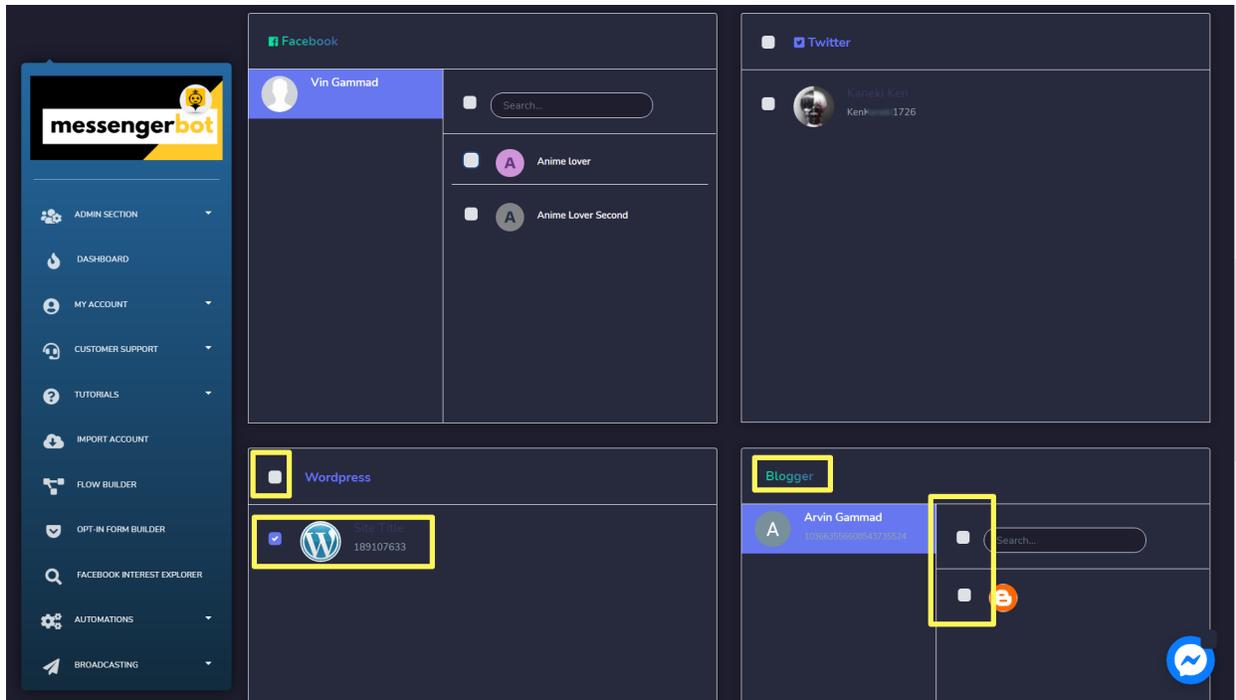


4. Select a **Posting time** for the text post.



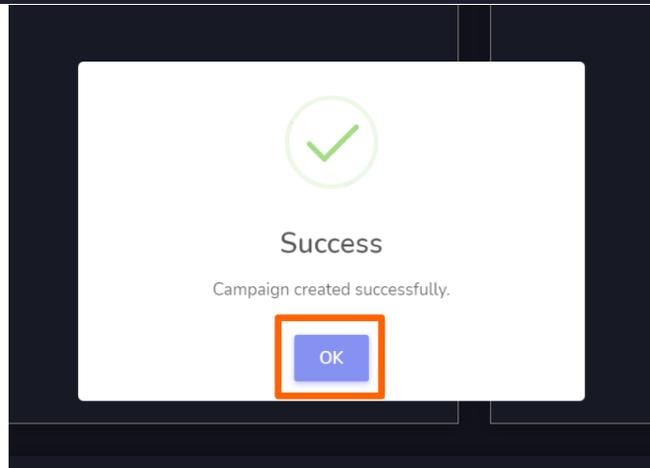
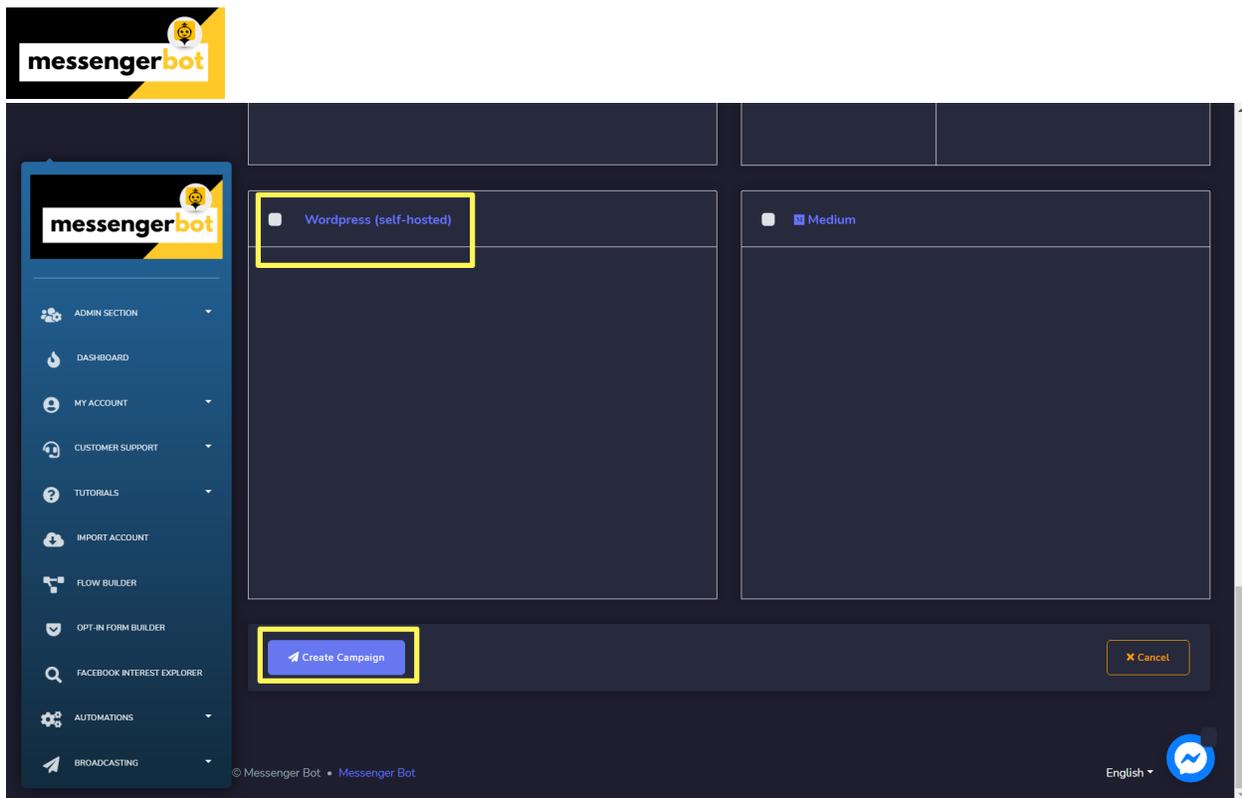


5. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.



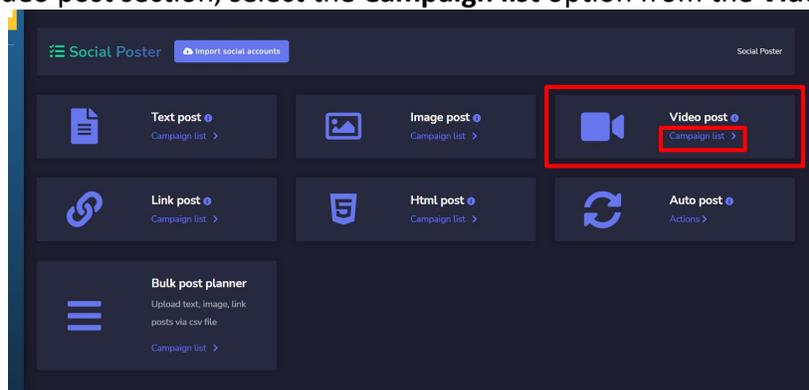
6. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.





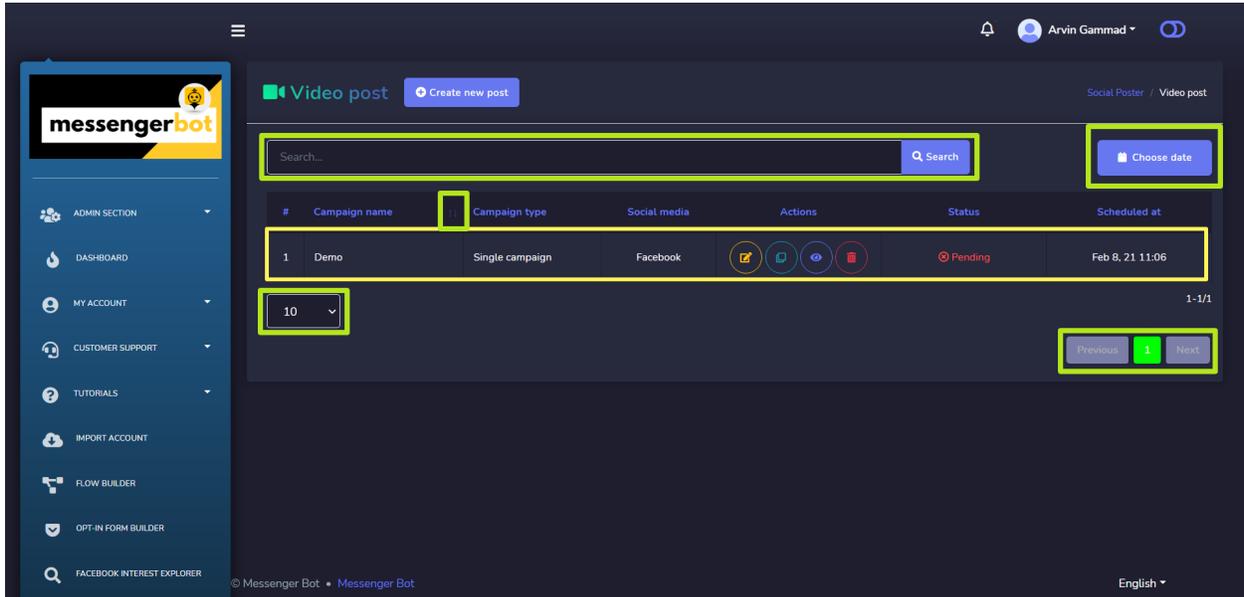
Video Post

To access the Video post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Video Post** section.



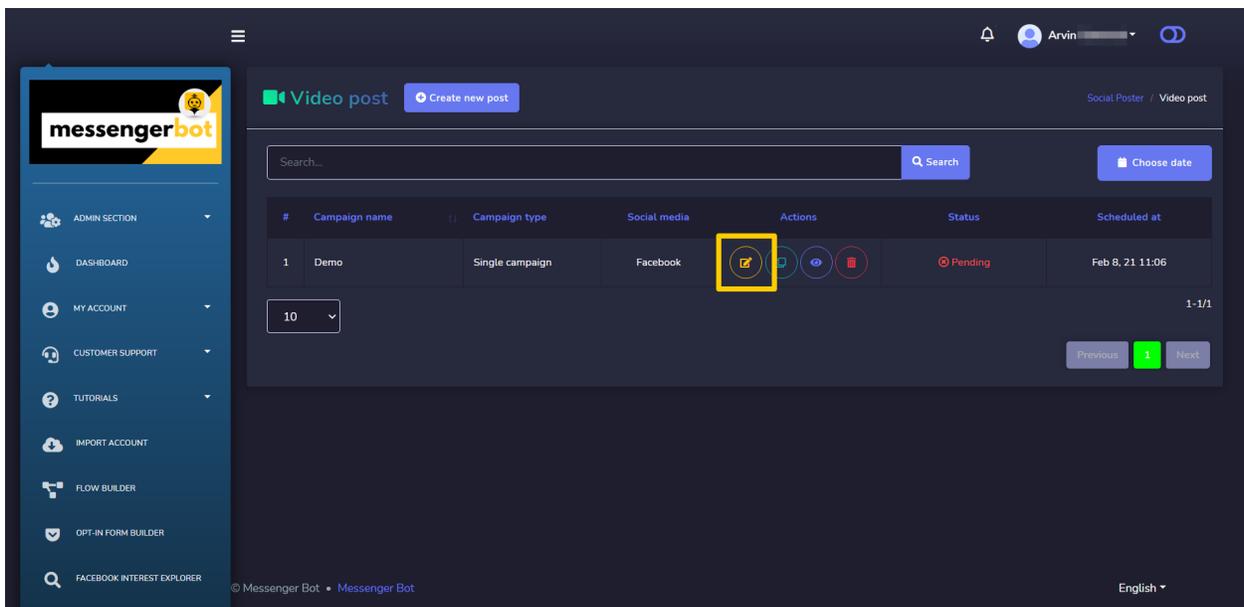


A **Video post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- Edit a campaign.



The screenshot shows the 'Edit post' interface in the Messenger Bot dashboard. The left sidebar contains navigation options: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area is titled 'Edit post' and includes a 'Campaign info' section with the following fields:

- Campaign name: Demo
- Title (Facebook): Demo
- Video url: https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_video_161285354
- Video thumbnail url (Facebook): https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_image_161285354

Below these are sections for 'Upload video' and 'Upload video thumbnail', each with an 'Upload' button and 'Drag & drop files' text. A 'Message (Facebook, Twitter)' text area is also present. At the bottom, there is a 'Posting time' toggle set to 'Post now' and a Messenger logo icon.

- Clone the campaign by selecting  .

The screenshot shows the 'Video post' list view in the Messenger Bot dashboard. The left sidebar is the same as in the previous image. The main content area is titled 'Video post' and includes a 'Create new post' button. Below the header is a search bar and a 'Choose date' button. A table displays the following data:

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Facebook	   	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:06

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and '1-1/1' total items. The footer includes '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and 'English' language selection.



The image shows two screenshots of the Messenger Bot dashboard. The top screenshot displays the 'Clone post' interface, where a user can configure a campaign. The 'Campaign name' is set to 'Demo'. The 'Title (Facebook)' is also 'Demo'. The 'Video url' is 'https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_video_161285354'. The 'Video thumbnail url (Facebook)' is 'https://start.messengerbot.app/upload/comboposter/2121/2121_image_161285354'. There are 'Upload' buttons for both the video and the thumbnail, with a 'Drag & drop files' option. A 'Message (Facebook, Twitter)' field is present with the placeholder text 'Type your message here...'. A 'Posting time' section has a toggle for 'Post now' which is currently turned on. The bottom screenshot shows the 'Clone campaign' interface. The 'Wordpress (self-hosted)' option is selected. A 'Clone campaign' button is highlighted, and a 'Cancel' button is visible in the bottom right corner. The dashboard includes a sidebar with navigation options: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The top right corner shows the user's name 'Arvin' and a profile icon. The bottom left corner shows the copyright notice '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and the bottom right corner shows the language 'English' and a profile icon.

- View the campaign report by selecting .



messengerbot

Video post [Create new post](#) Social Poster / Video post

Search... [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Facebook		Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:06

10 [Previous](#) [Next](#)

messengerbot

Campaign report Social Poster / Video post / Campaign report

Campaign info

- Campaign name: Demo
- Title: Demo
- Thumbnail:
- Video:

- Delete a campaign.

messengerbot

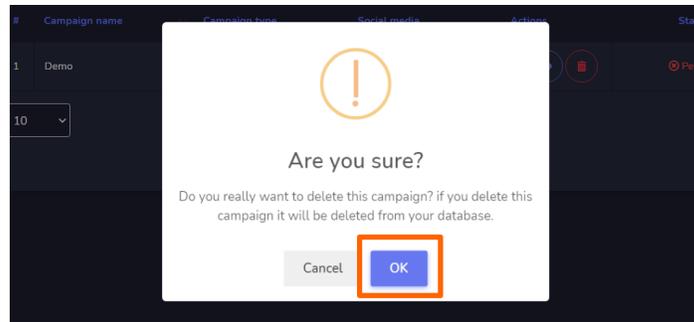
Video post [Create new post](#) Social Poster / Video post

Search... [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Facebook		Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:06

10 [Previous](#) [Next](#)

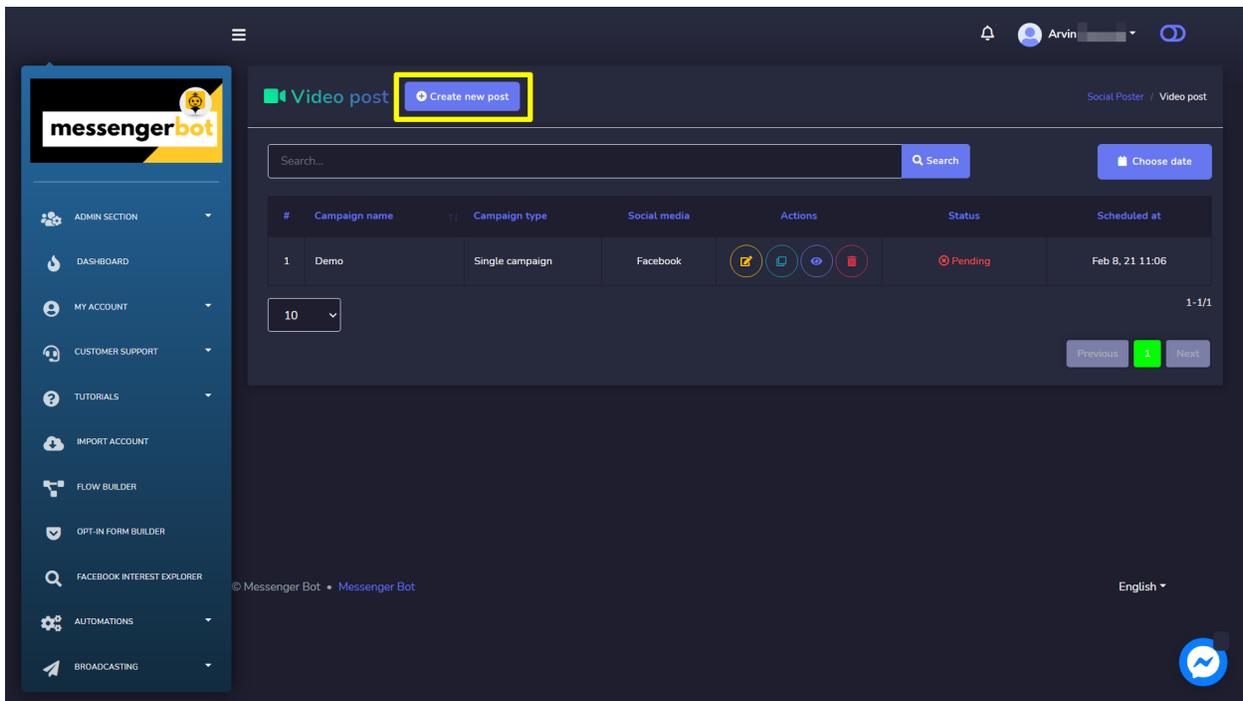




Create new Video Post

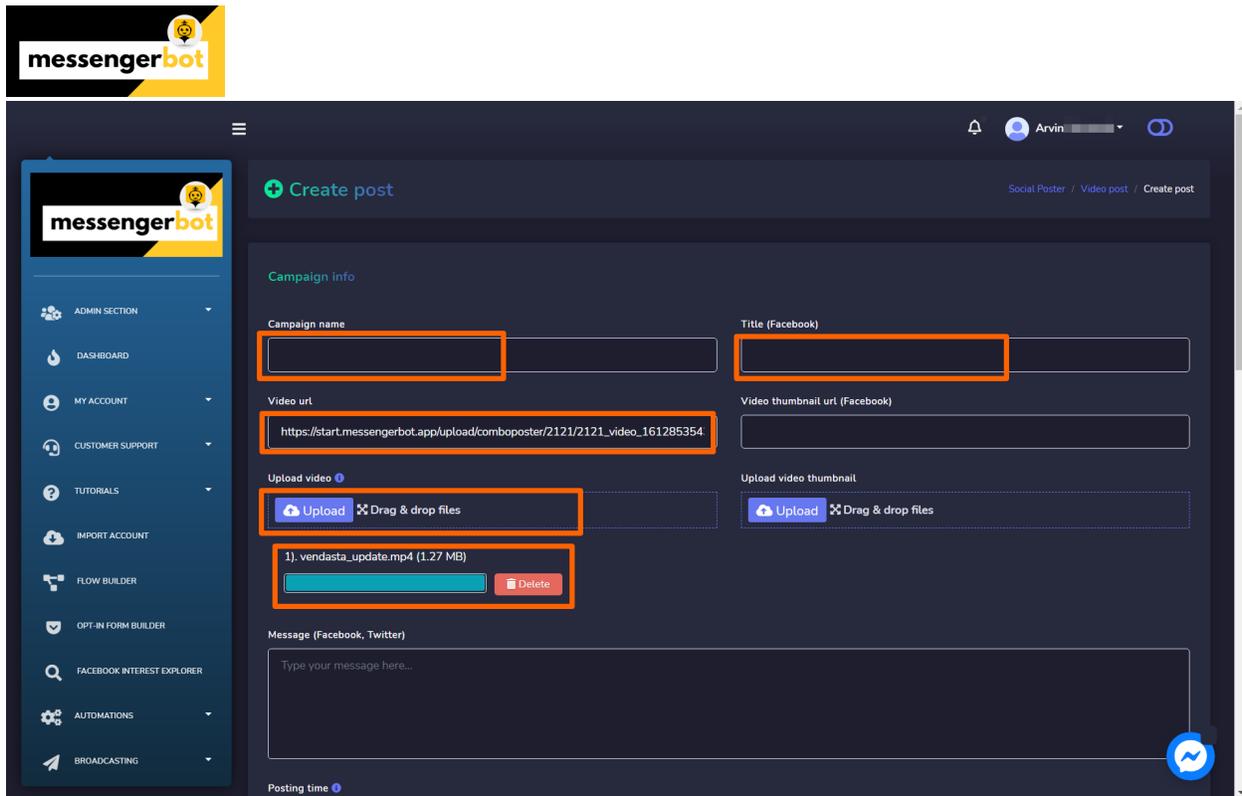
To create a new Video post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Video post** screen.

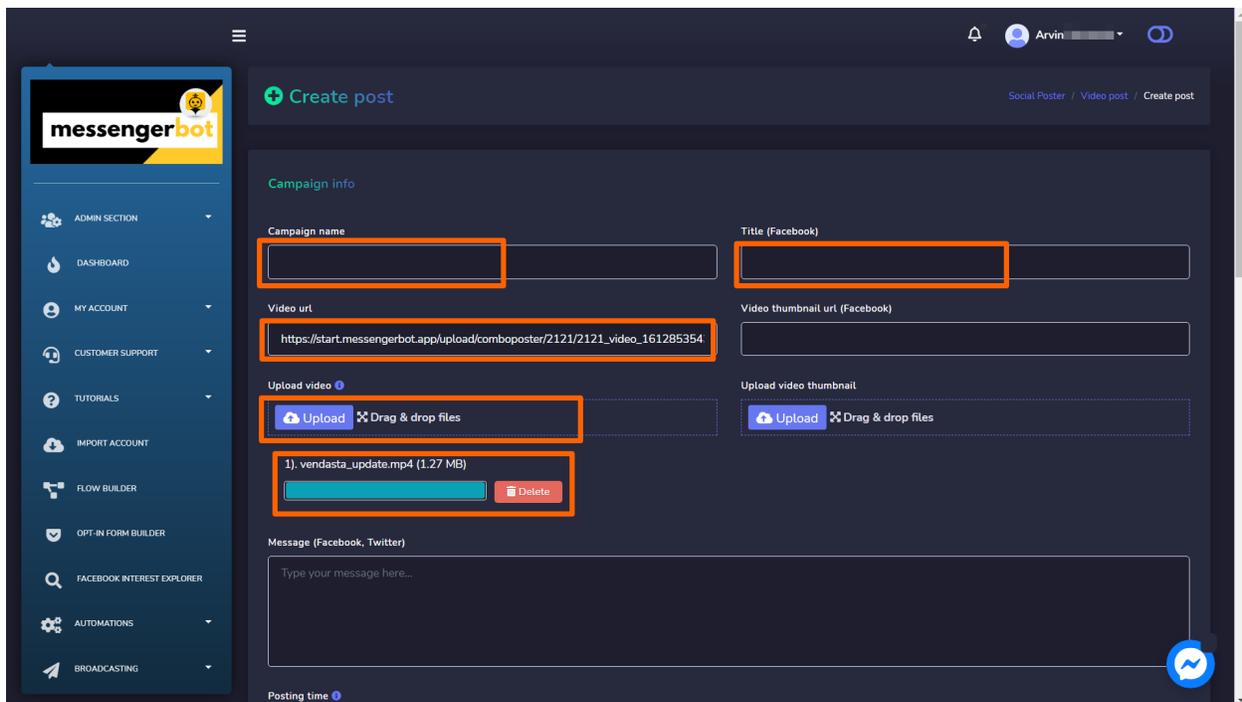


2. Provide a **Campaign name** and a **title**.
3. Select the type of **privacy** from the dropdown menu for YouTube.



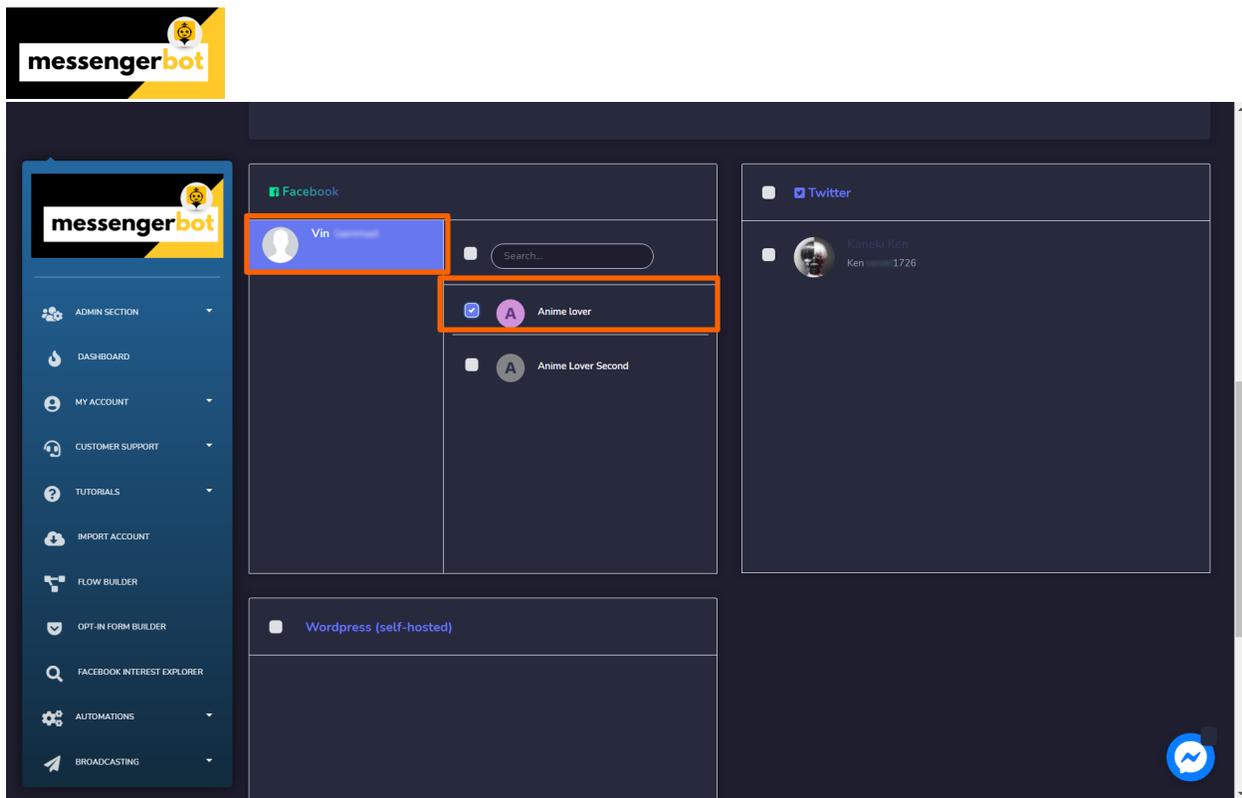


4. If needed, provide a video **thumbnail URL** for the Facebook platform.
5. Provide a message in the **Message** field.
6. Select a **Posting time** for the video post.

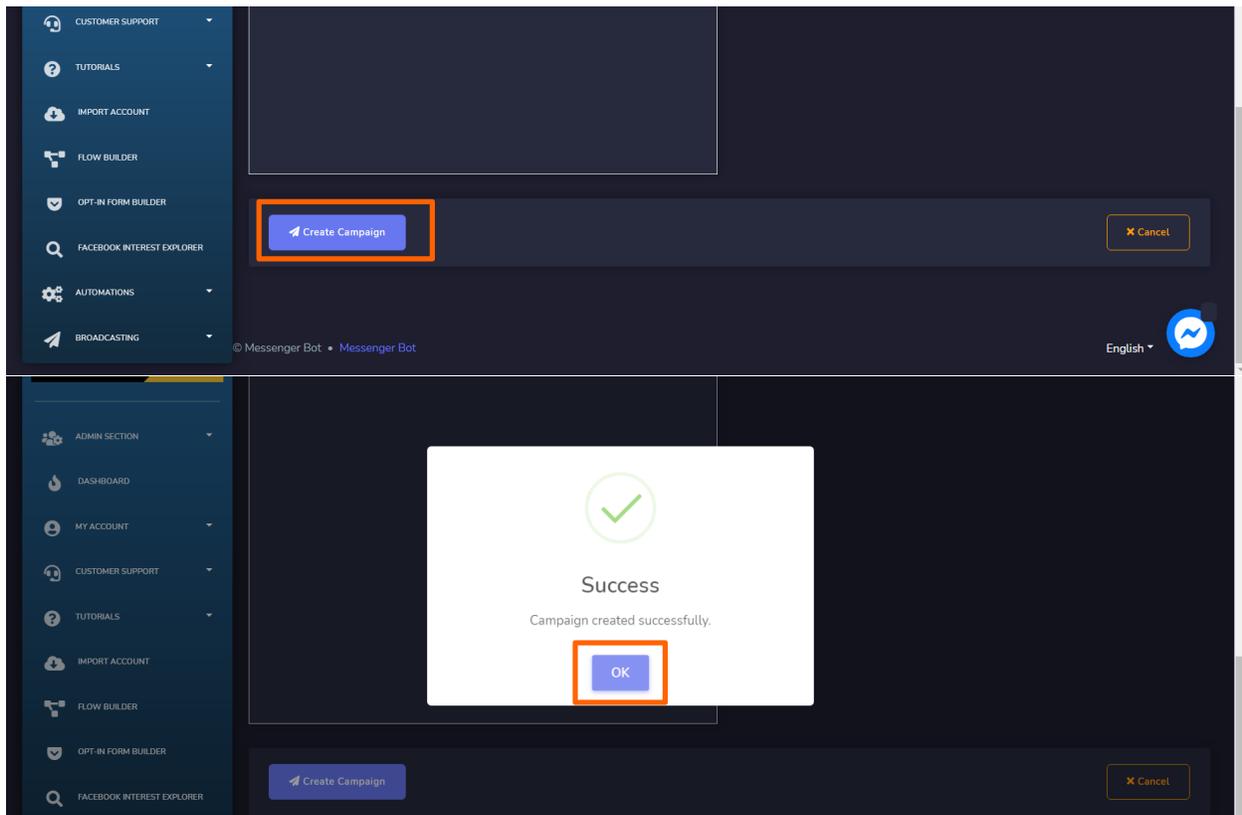


7. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.





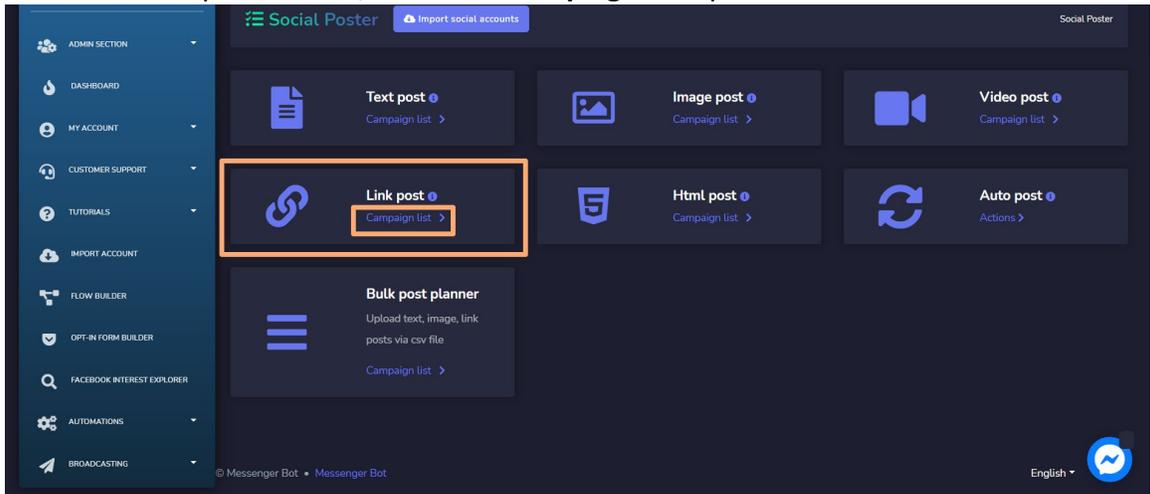
8. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



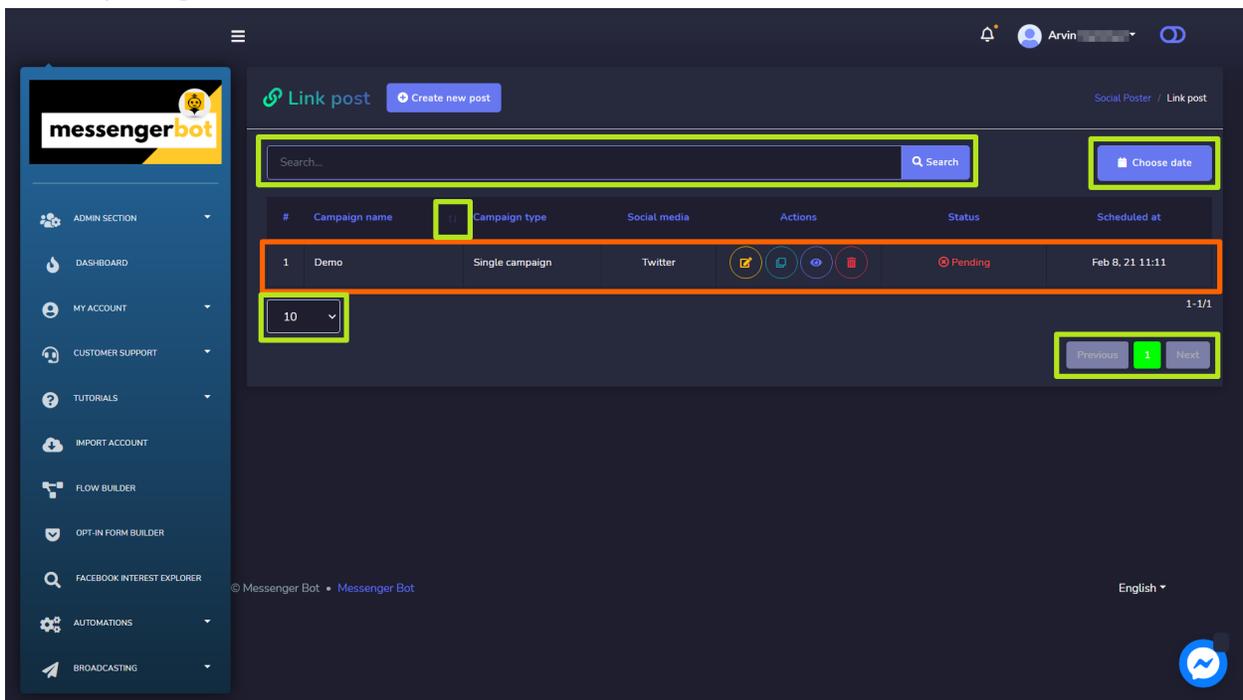


Link Post

To access the Link post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Link Post** section.



A **Link post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of campaigns to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:





- Edit a campaign.

The screenshot shows the Messenger Bot dashboard. On the left is a sidebar with navigation options: ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, and FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER. The main area is titled 'Link post' and contains a search bar, a 'Choose date' button, and a table of campaigns. The table has columns for Campaign name, Campaign type, Social media, Actions, Status, and Scheduled at. The first row shows a campaign named 'Demo' of type 'Single campaign' on 'Twitter'. The 'Actions' column for this campaign contains several icons, with the 'Edit' icon (a pencil) highlighted by a yellow box. Below the table is a pagination control showing '10' items per page and 'Previous', 'Next' buttons. The footer includes '© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot' and 'English'.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit post' form. At the top, the 'Edit post' button is highlighted with a green box. The form is titled 'Campaign info' and contains several input fields: 'Campaign name' (with 'Demo' entered), 'Thumbnail url (Linkedin)' (with 'Demo' entered), 'Title (Reddit, LinkedIn)' (with 'Demo' entered), 'Link' (with 'demo.com' entered), and 'Message (Facebook, LinkedIn)' (with 'Sample' entered). There is also an 'Upload thumbnail' section with an 'Upload' button and 'Drag & drop files' text. At the bottom, there is a 'Posting time' section with a toggle switch set to 'Post now'. The sidebar and footer are the same as in the previous screenshot.

- Clone the campaign by selecting  .





Arvin

Link post

Create new post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Twitter	  	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:11

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

Clone post

Campaign info

Campaign name: Demo

Thumbnail url (LinkedIn): Demo

Title (Reddit, LinkedIn): Demo

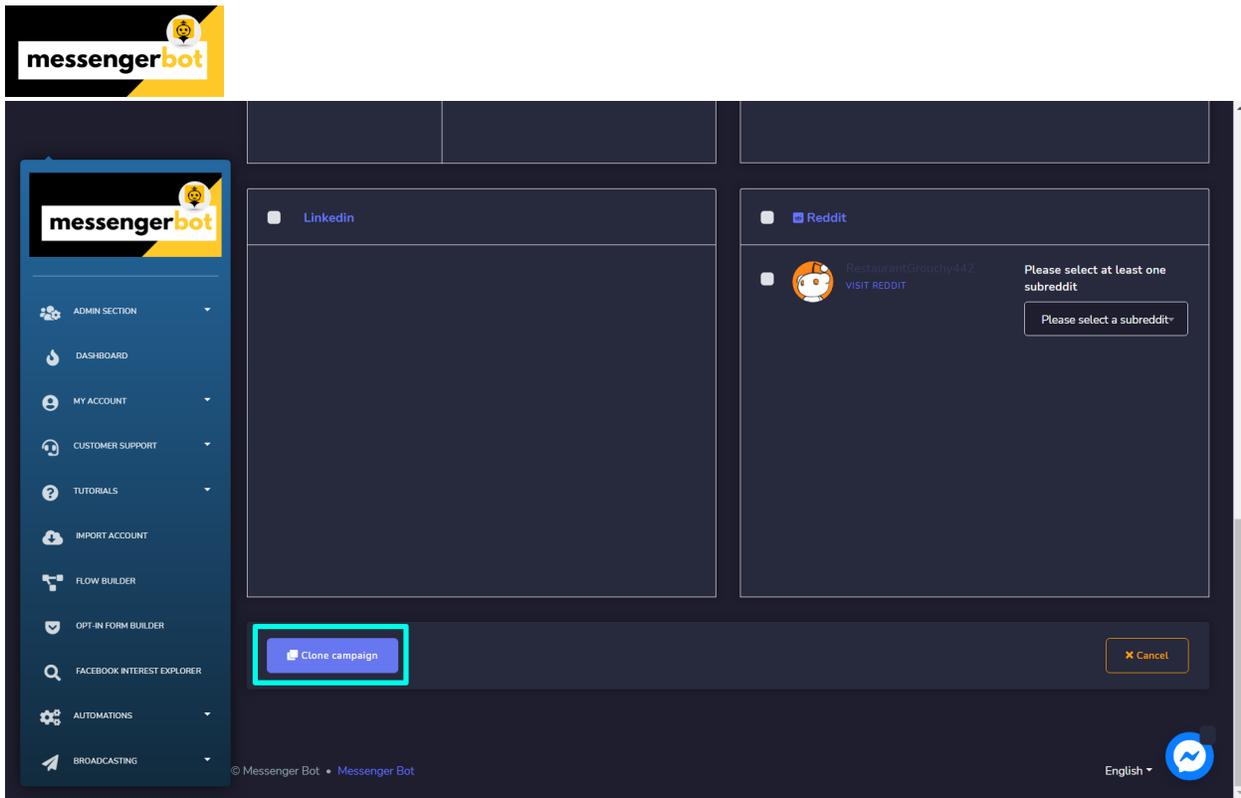
Upload thumbnail:  Upload  Drag & drop files

Link: demo.com

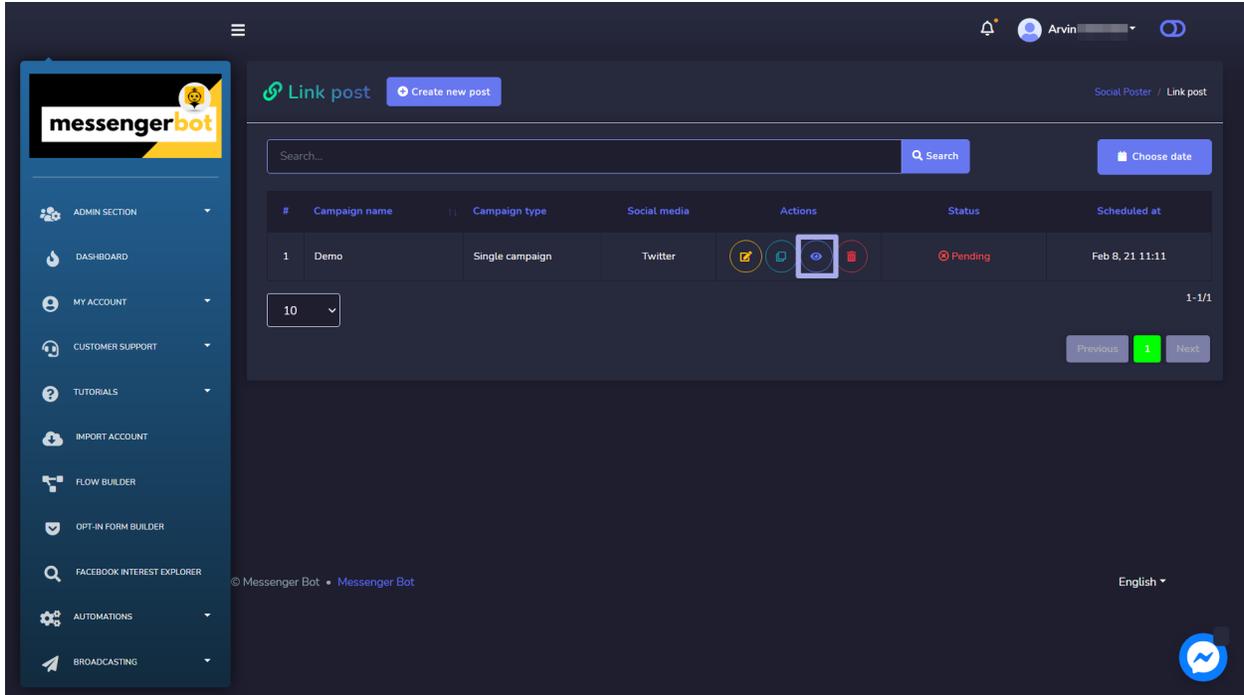
Message (Facebook, LinkedIn): Sample

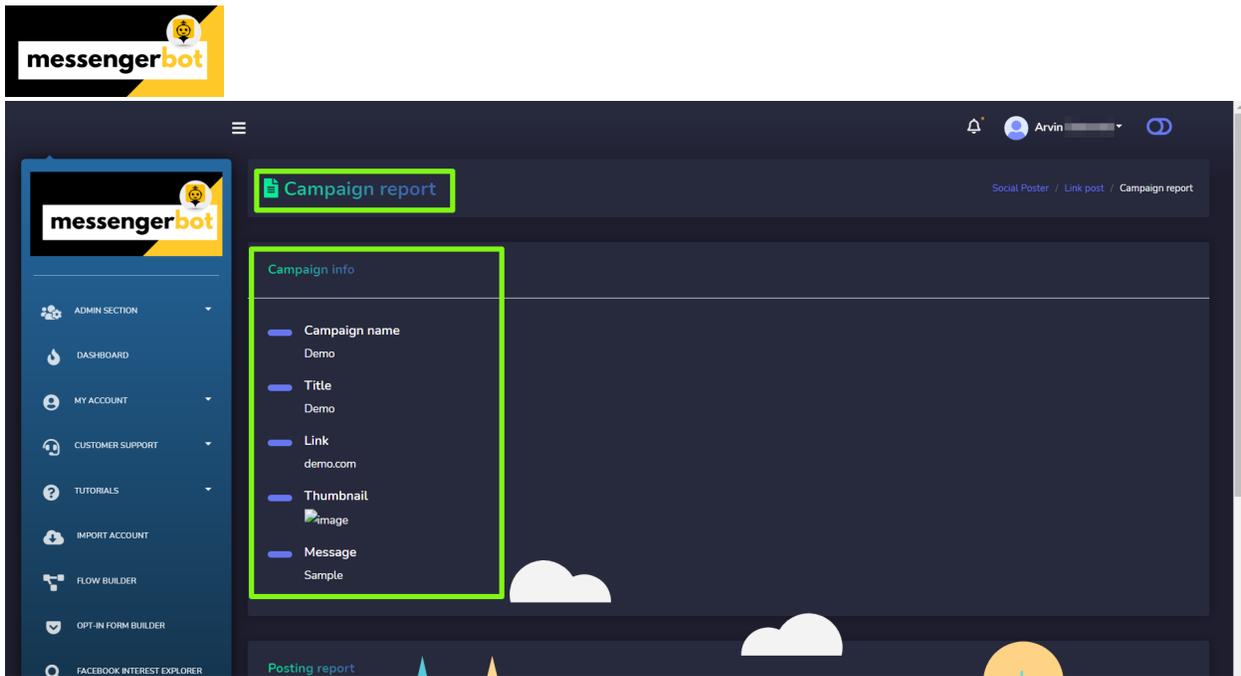
Posting time: Post now



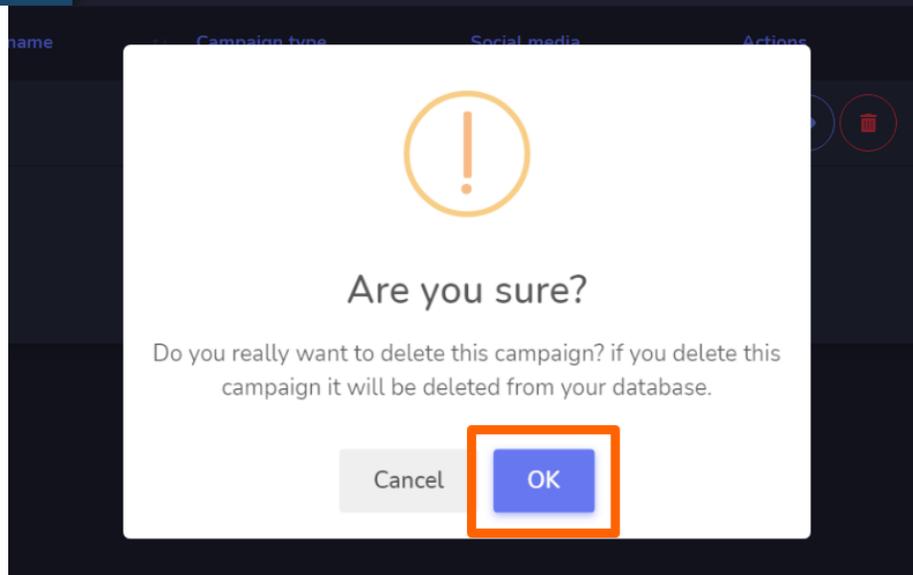
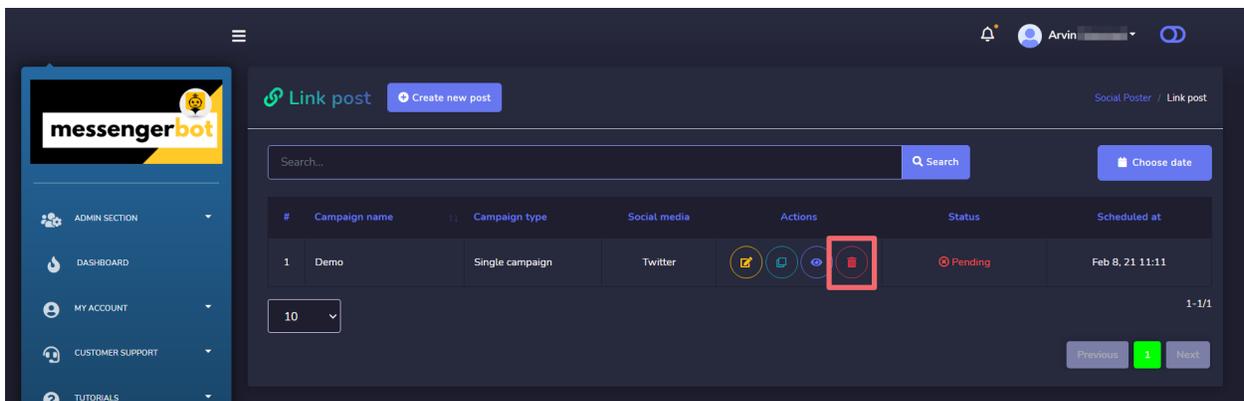


- View the campaign report by selecting .





- Delete a campaign.

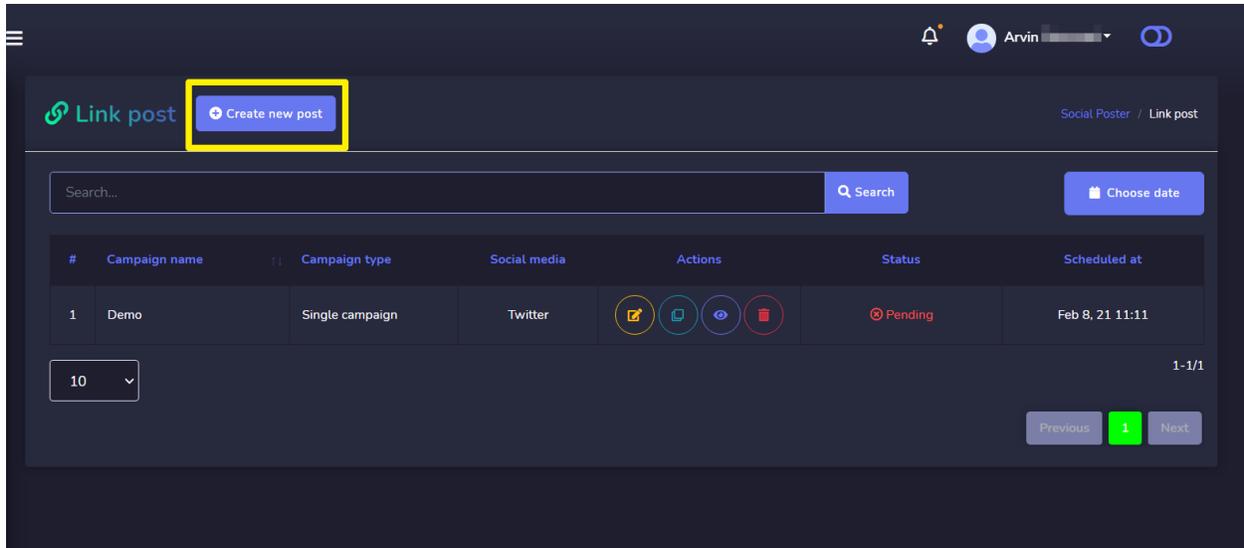




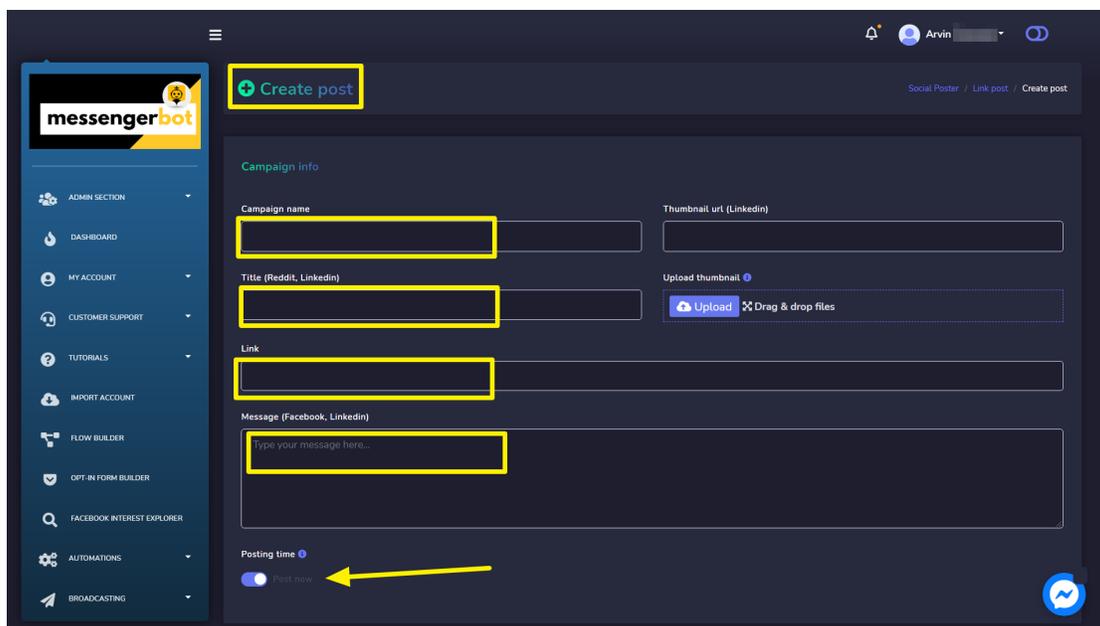
Create new Link Post

To create a new Link post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Link post** screen.



2. Provide a **Campaign name, title**.
3. If needed, provide a **Link**.
4. Select a **Posting time** for the link post.
5. Upload a **thumbnail** by dragging and dropping the files.
6. Enter a **message** to be send via this post.





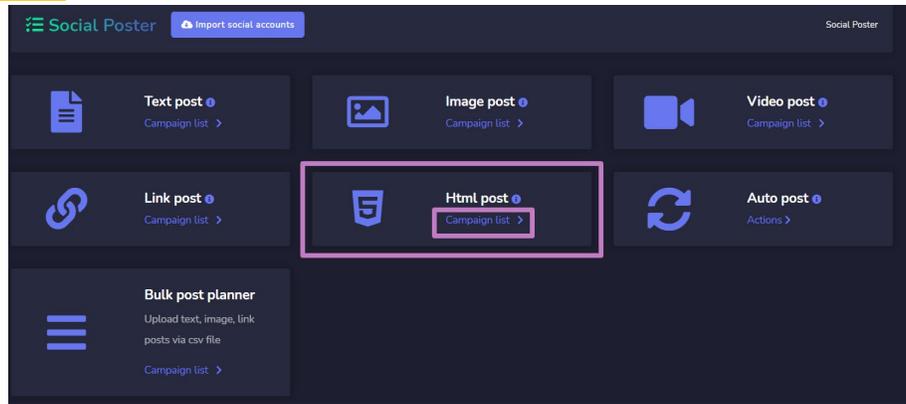
7. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.
8. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.

The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot dashboard interface. On the left, there is a navigation menu with options like ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area shows a 'Create Campaign' button highlighted in yellow. Below it, a dialog box titled 'Success' with a green checkmark icon displays the message 'Campaign created successfully.' and an 'OK' button highlighted in orange. The background shows a list of social accounts, with 'Reddit' selected and highlighted in yellow. A 'Please select at least one subreddit' message is visible next to the selected account.

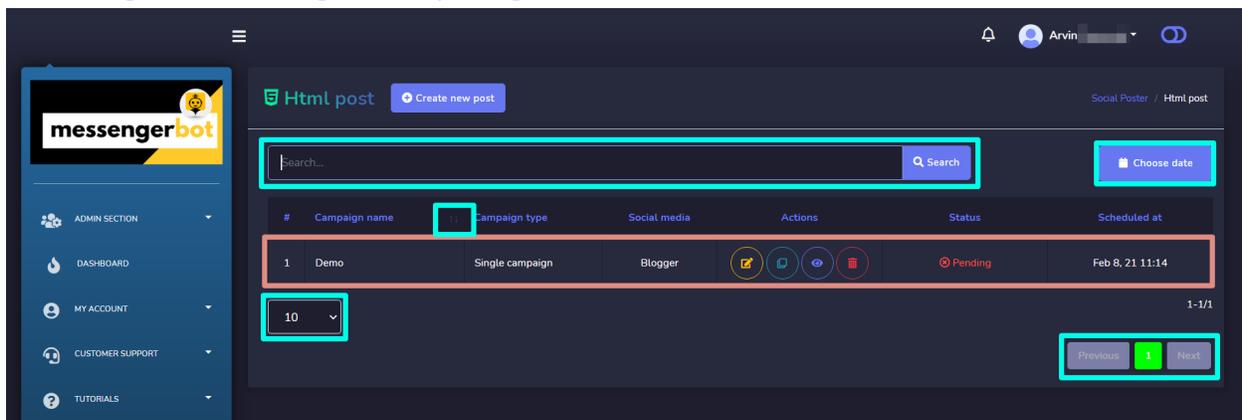
Html Post

To access the Html post section, select the **Campaign list** option from the **Html Post** section.



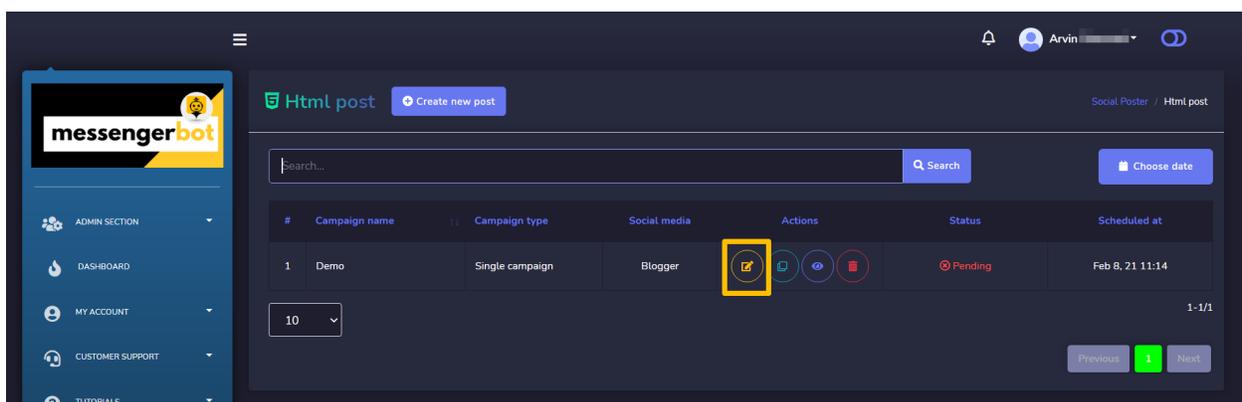


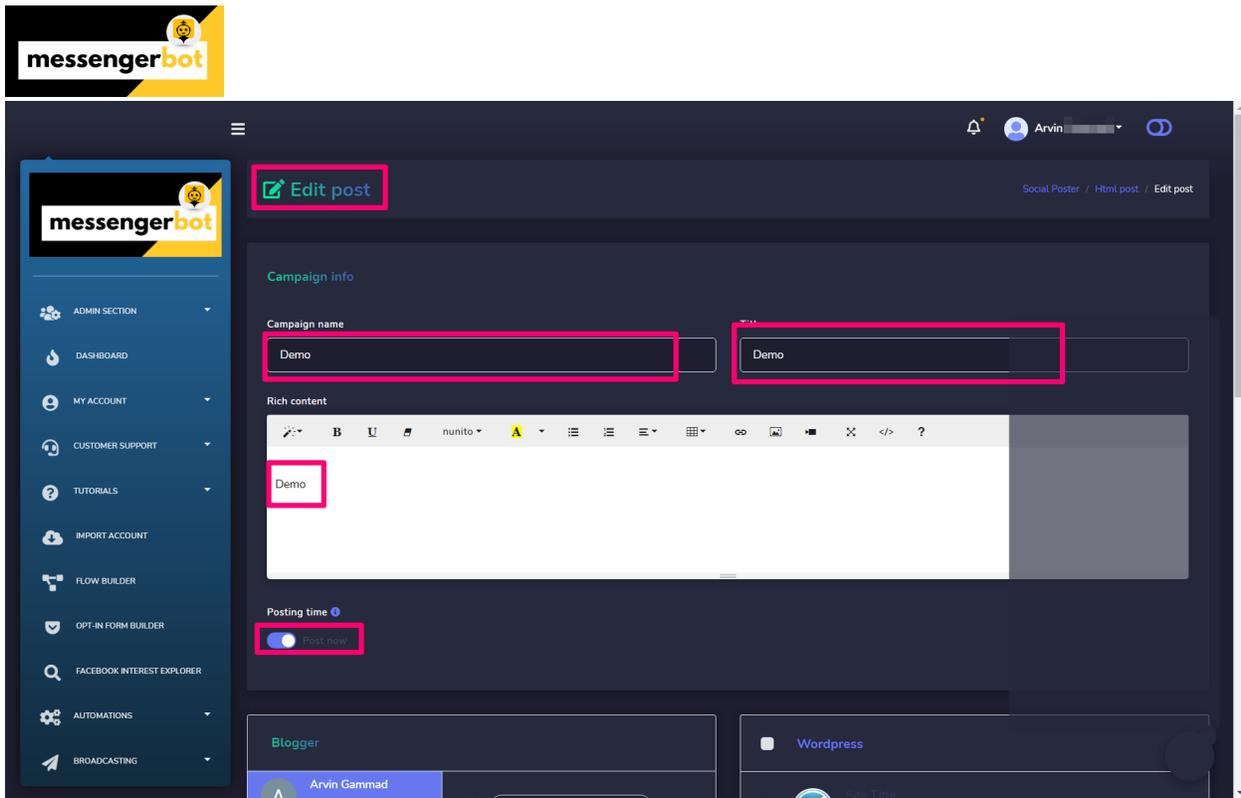
An **Html post** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of campaign types and campaign names** you can search for a campaign by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number of campaigns to be viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range for the narrowed search**. You can also sort them out based on their **status**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.



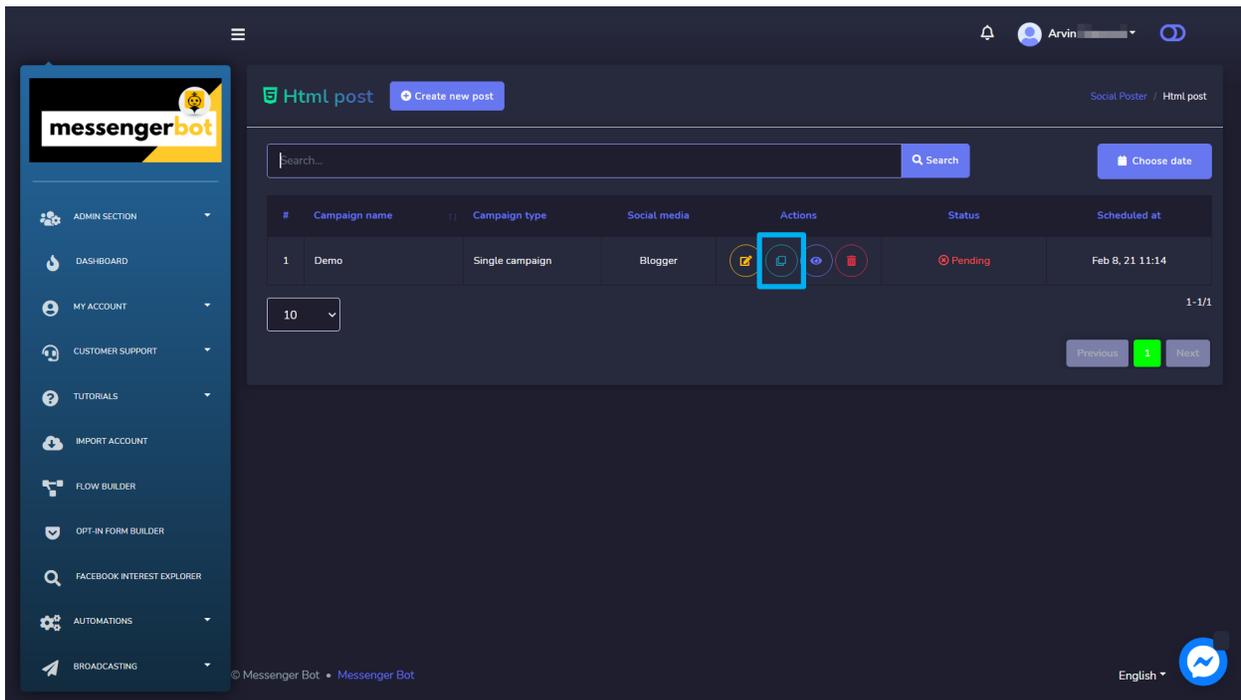
The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the campaign you want to perform actions on:

- **Edit a campaign.**





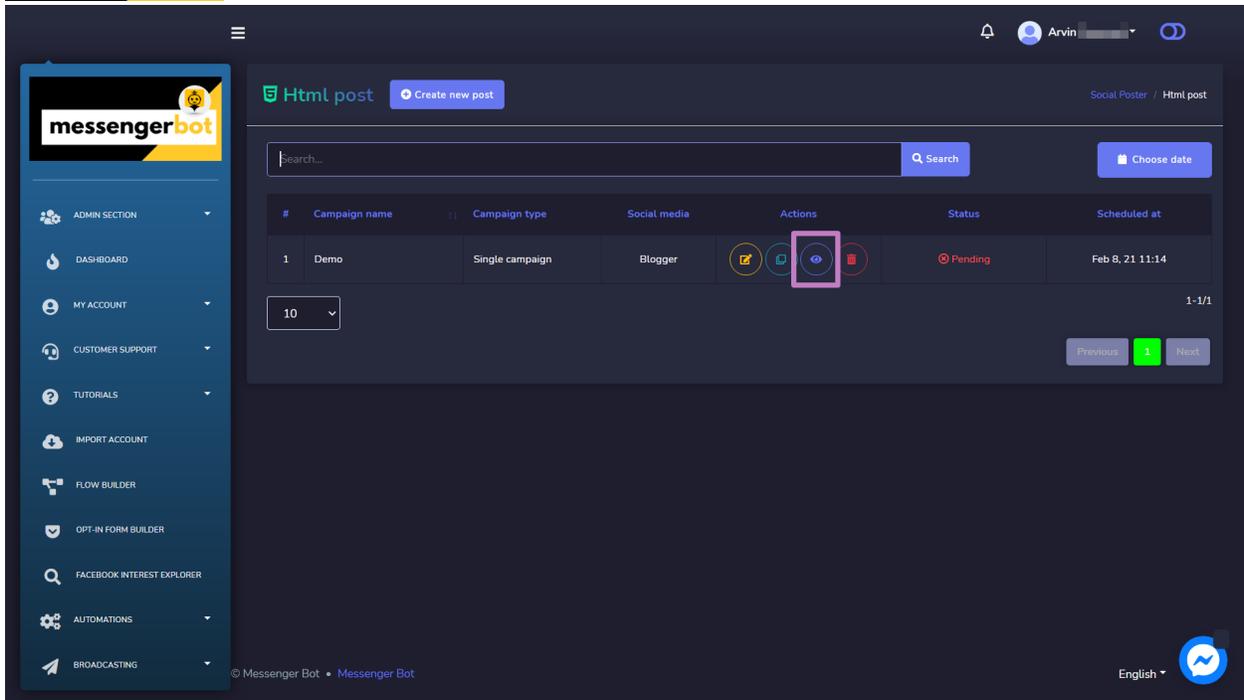
- Clone the campaign by selecting  .



The screenshot displays the Messenger Bot dashboard with a sidebar menu on the left containing options like ADMIN SECTION, DASHBOARD, MY ACCOUNT, CUSTOMER SUPPORT, TUTORIALS, IMPORT ACCOUNT, FLOW BUILDER, OPT-IN FORM BUILDER, FACEBOOK INTEREST EXPLORER, AUTOMATIONS, and BROADCASTING. The main content area is titled 'Clone post' and includes a 'Campaign info' section with input fields for 'Campaign name' (containing 'Demo') and 'Title' (containing 'Demo'). Below this is a 'Rich content' editor with a toolbar and a text area containing 'Demo'. A 'Posting time' section has a toggle for 'Post now'. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Clone campaign' and 'Cancel'. The user's name 'Arvin' is visible in the top right corner.

- **View** the campaign report by selecting .





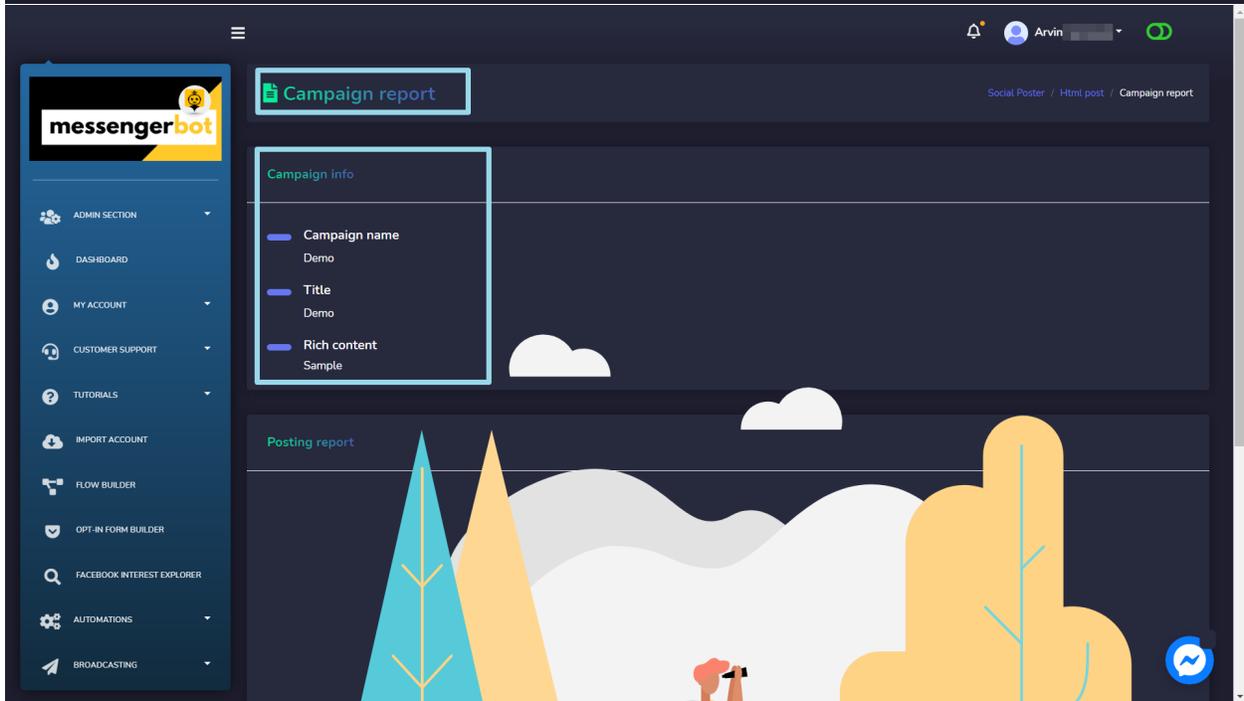
Html post [Create new post](#) Social Poster / Html post

Search... [Search](#) [Choose date](#)

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Demo	Single campaign	Blogger	 	Pending	Feb 8, 21 11:14

10 [Previous](#) [Next](#)

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot English

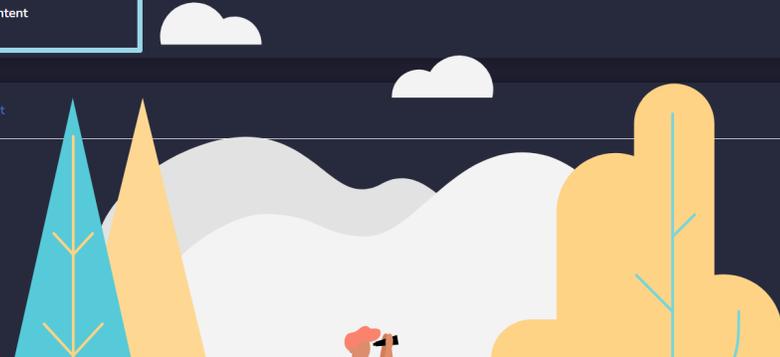


Campaign report Social Poster / Html post / Campaign report

Campaign info

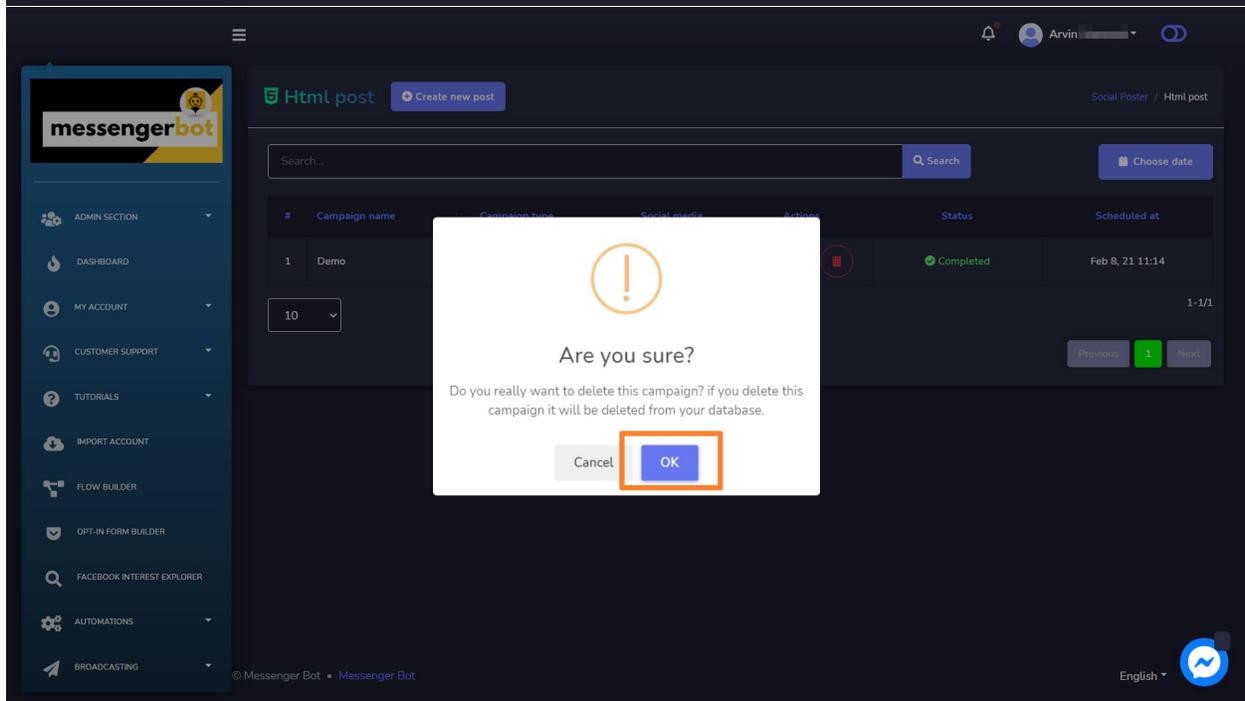
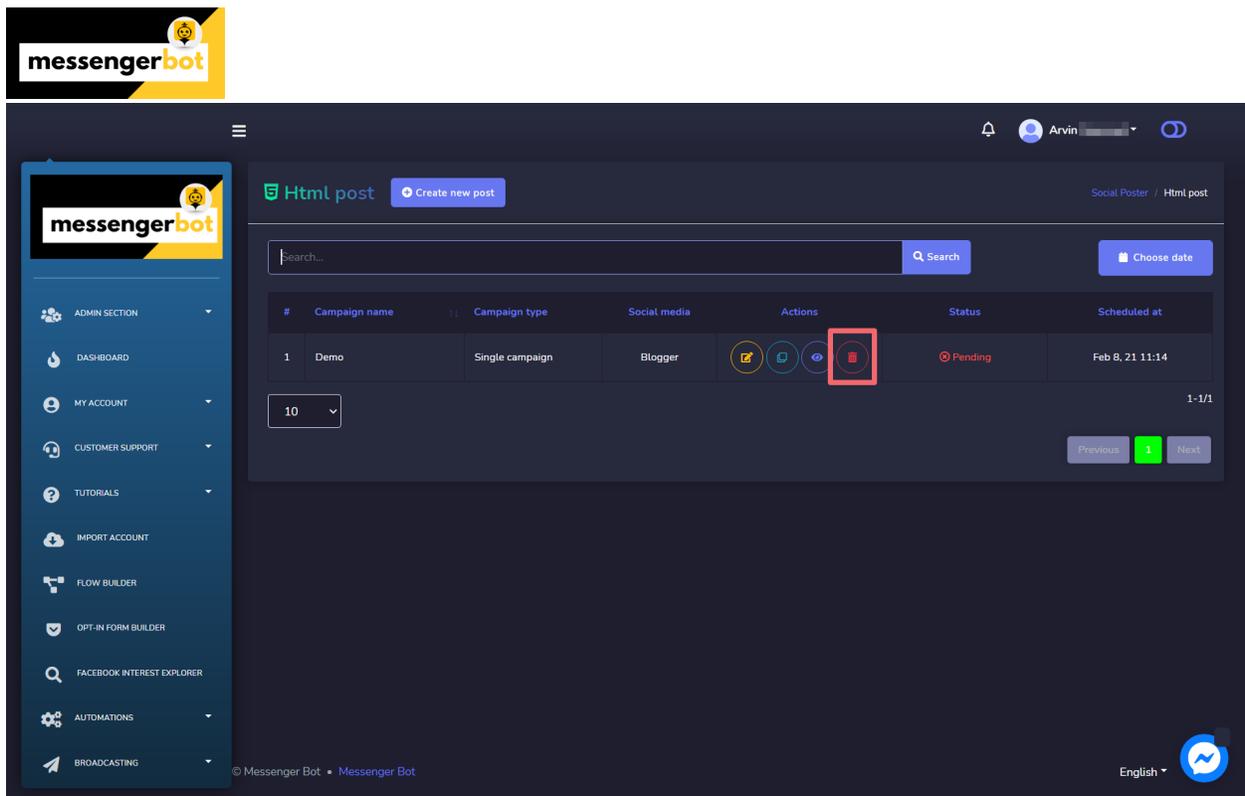
- Campaign name
Demo
- Title
Demo
- Rich content
Sample

Posting report



- Delete a campaign



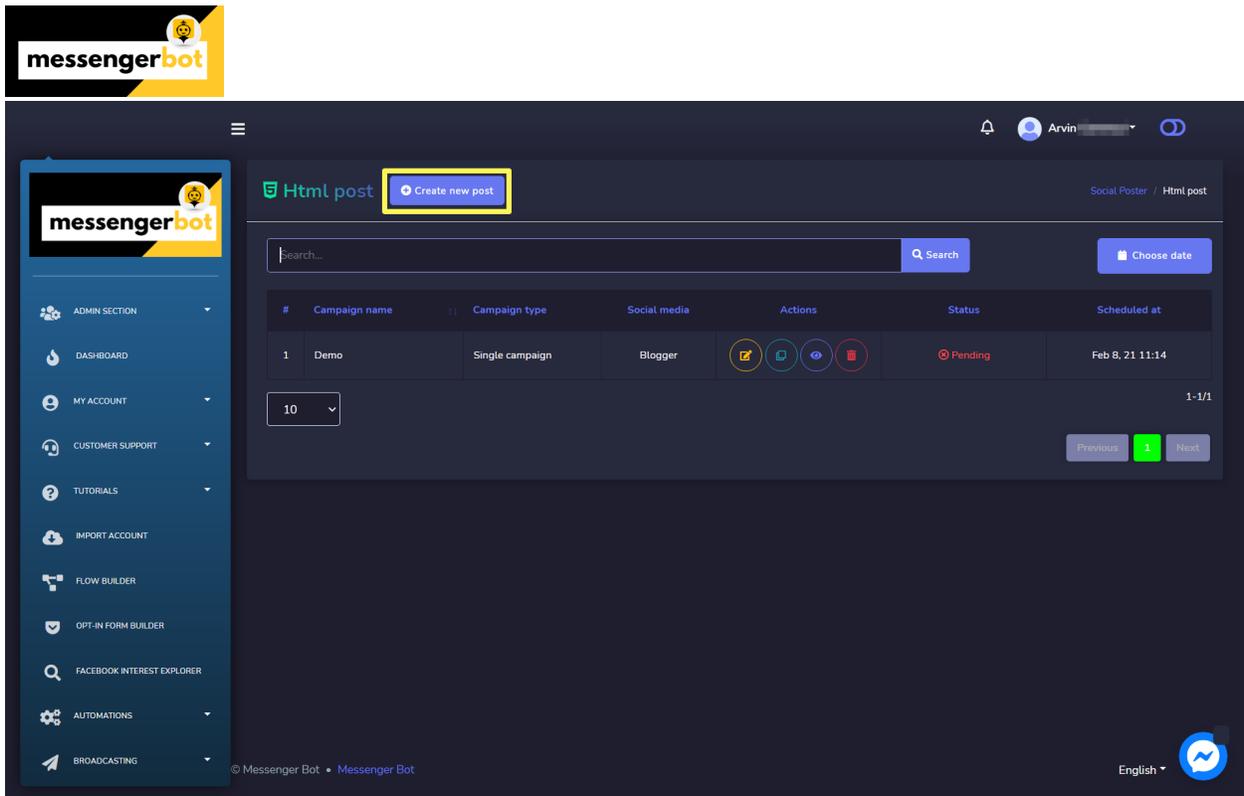


Create new Html Post

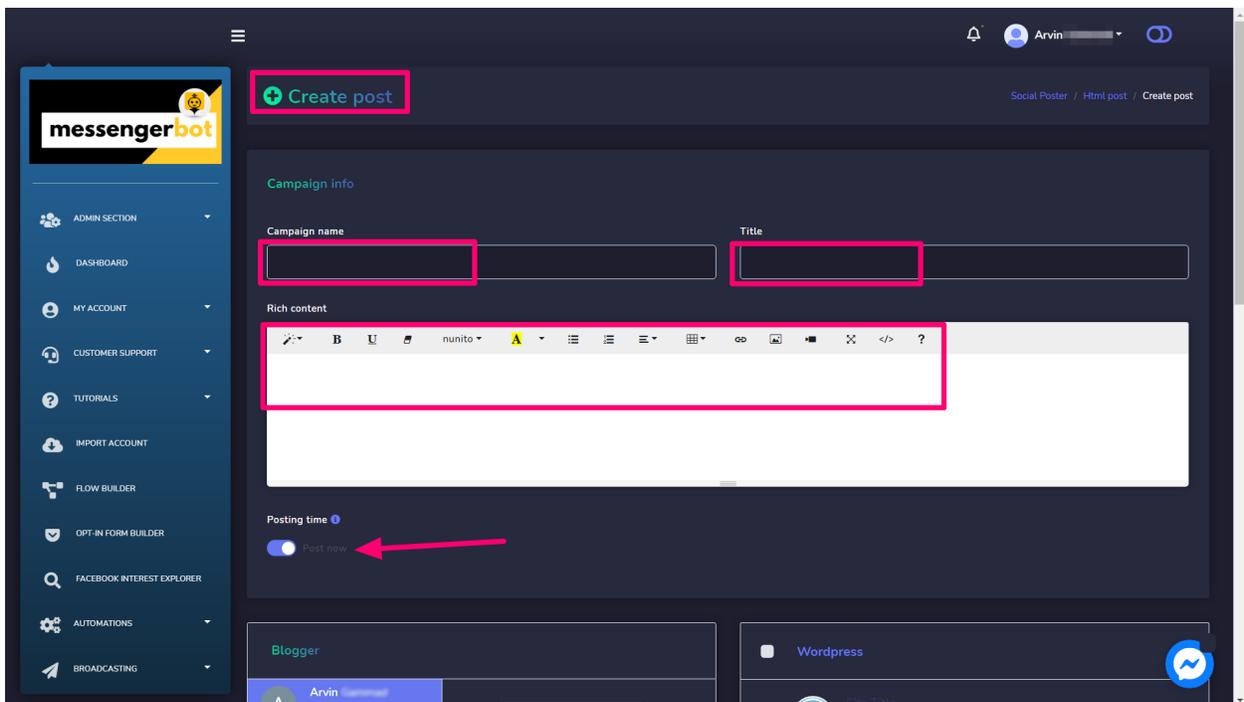
To create a new Html post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select  from **Html post** screen.





2. Provide a **Campaign name**, and **title**.
3. Select a **Posting time** for the html post.
4. Provide the **rich content** message in the field provided.

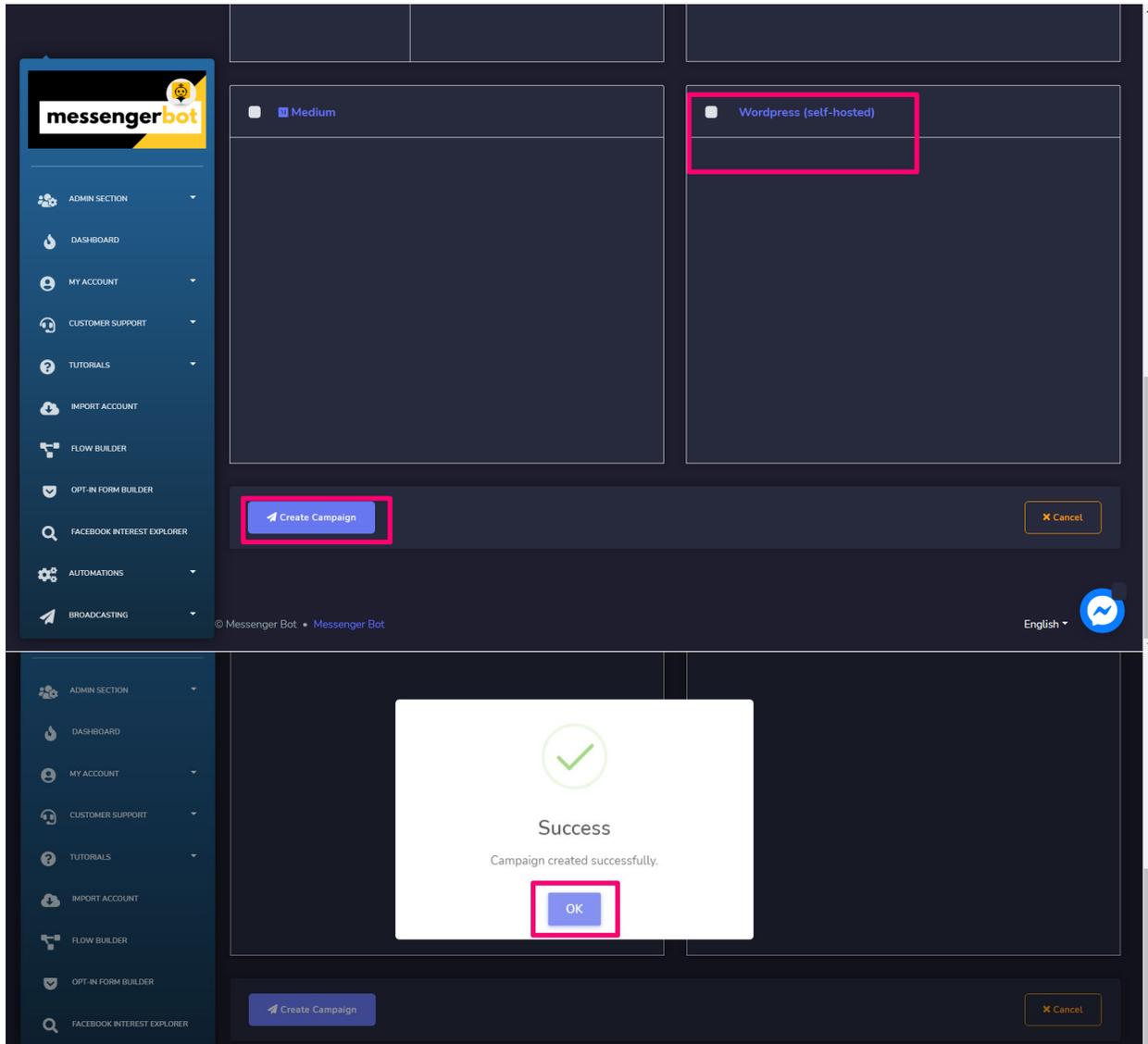


5. Select the **social accounts** from which this needs to be posted.





6. Once selected all required options, you need to select **Create campaign** option.



Auto Post

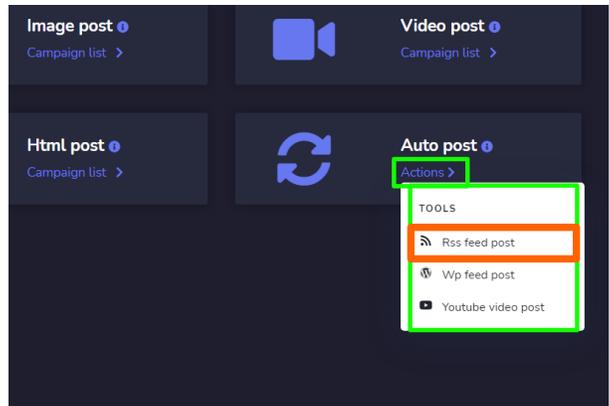
Auto Post has 3 tools:

- [RSS feed post](#)
- Wp feed post
- Youtube video post.

RSS Feed Post

To access the RSS Feed Post section, select the **Campaign list** option from **RSS Feed Post** section.





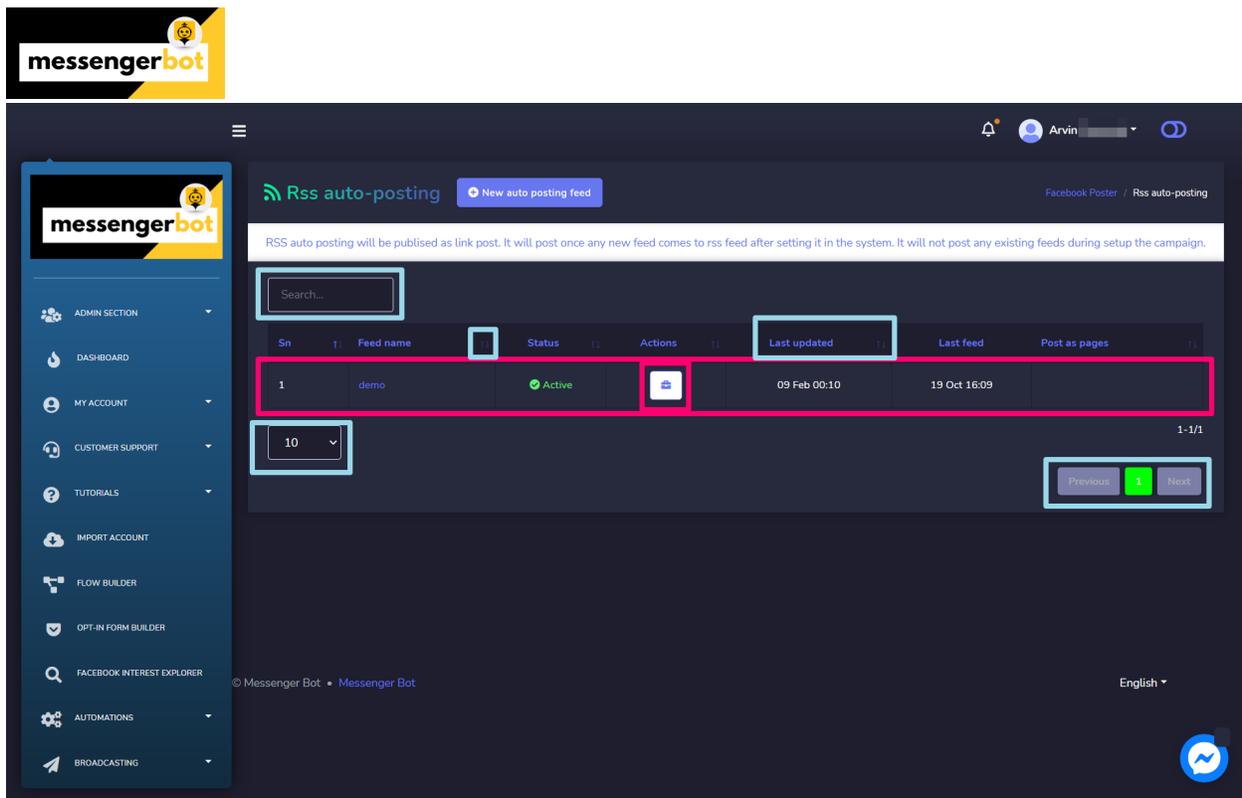
Note

- RSS auto posting will be published as Link post. It will post once any new feed comes to RSS feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.
- You need to add XMLs for this feature to be published.

An **RSS-auto posting** screen will appear, it consists of a **list of Feed names** you can search for a feed by using the **search bar**. You can adjust the **number** of feeds to be **viewed per page**. You can choose the **date range** for the **narrowed search**. You can **arrange** the names either in **ascending or descending order** by using the **arrows** in the header of the table.

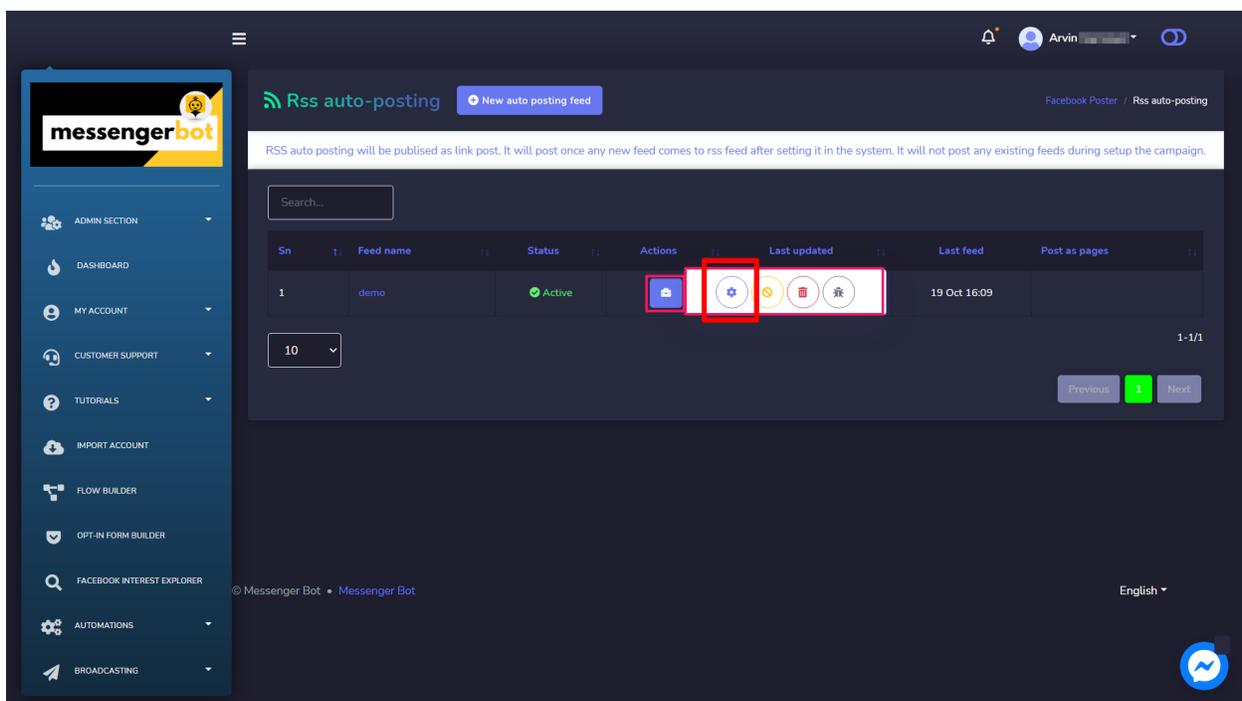
To perform different **actions** on the feeds, select  option against the feed you want to perform actions on.





The following are the **actions** that can be performed against the feed you want to perform actions on:

- Manage the settings of the campaign by selecting  .





Campaign settings : demo

Post to Facebook pages

Post to twitter accounts

Post to reddit accounts

Subreddit list

Posting timezone

Post between time

To

Message

Create Campaign

Close

- Disable the feed by selecting .

Rss auto-posting

New auto posting feed

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be published as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active	   		19 Oct 16:09	

10

Previous 1 Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

- Delete the feed.



messengerbot

Rss auto-posting [New auto posting feed](#)

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	

10

Previous **1** Next

© Messenger Bot • Messenger Bot

English

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	Anime lover

10

Previous **1** Next

Delete campaign

Do you really want to delete this campaign?

Cancel **OK**

- Track down the errors in XML by selecting .

messengerbot

Rss auto-posting [New auto posting feed](#)

Facebook Poster / Rss auto-posting

RSS auto posting will be publised as link post. It will post once any new feed comes to rss feed after setting it in the system. It will not post any existing feeds during setup the campaign.

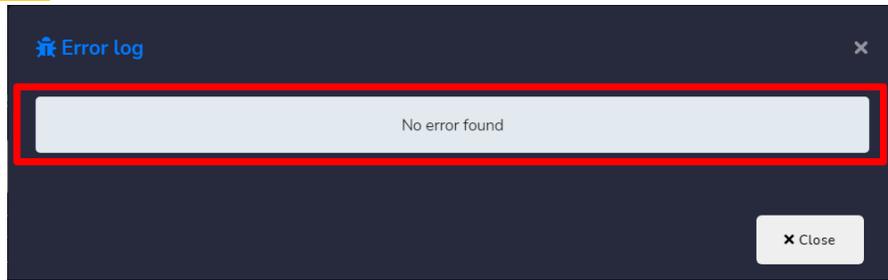
Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1	demo	Active			19 Oct 16:09	

10

Previous **1** Next

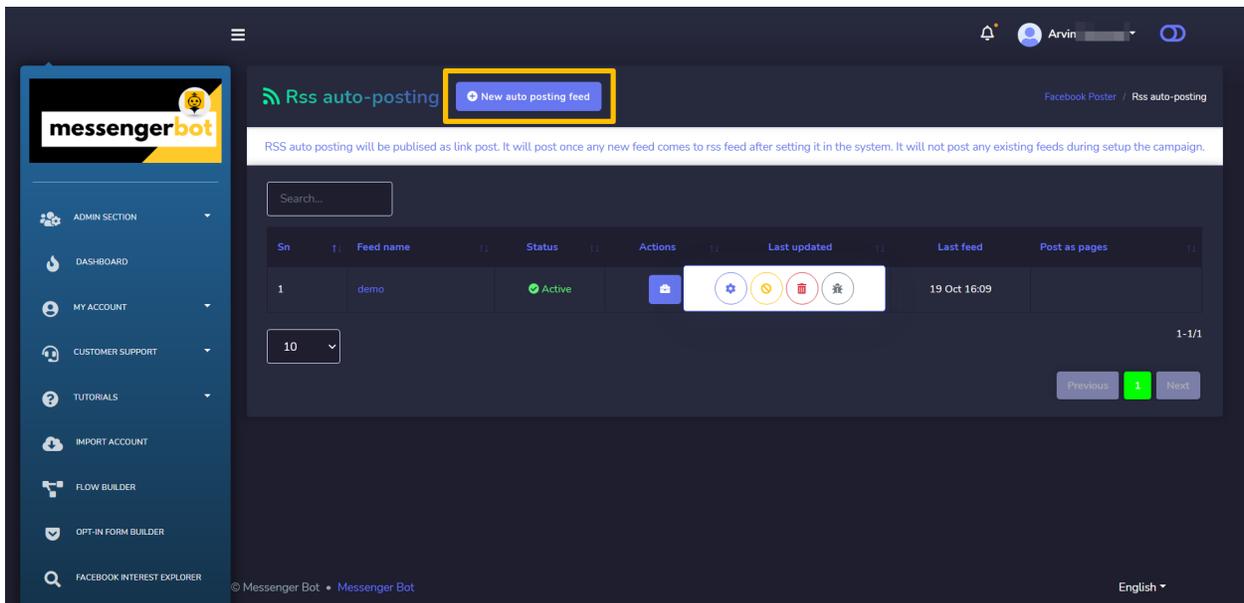




Create a new auto posting feed

To create a new Html post, follow the steps given below:

1. Select [+ New auto posting feed](#) from **RSS auto-posting** screen.



2. Provide a **Feed name**.
3. Provide an **RSS feed URL**, which is an XML, fetched by an RSS feed reader.
4. Select **Add feed** button.



Auto-posting feed ✕

Feed name *

Rss feed url *

➕ Add feed ✕ Close

Feed name

ated



Success

Feed has been added successfully.

OK





How to share YouTube Video to Social Media Automatically with Messenger Bot.App add-on

YouTube RSS Feed Post: YouTube RSS Feed Post allows you to post automatically of your new comes YouTube video to your YouTube channels with Messenger Bot.App. After adding your YouTube Channel ID and Creating Campaign, when new video come in your YouTube channel, system will automatically post your YouTube videos on your campaign's Social Medias.

YouTube Auto Posting feature will share your YouTube video on following Social Medias:

Facebook Pages

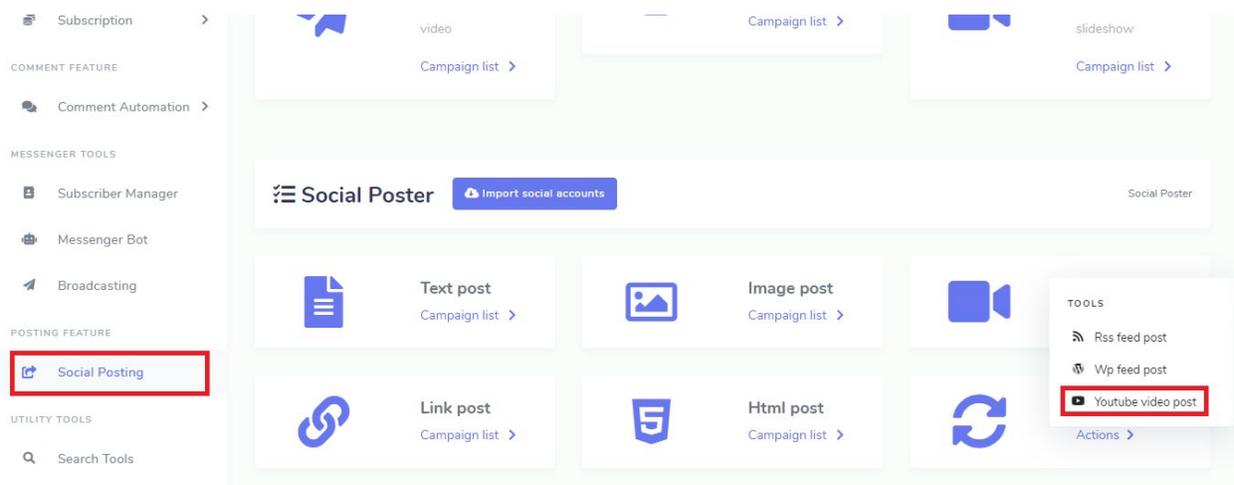
Twitter Accounts

LinkedIn Accounts

Reddit Accounts

Create YouTube RSS Auto Posting Feed :

First of all, Go to **Broadcasting -> Auto Post -> YouTube Video Post** section and click on the Add New YouTube Channel button, a modal will appear and provide your Feed name and your YouTube Channel ID, then hit Add Feed button.



Youtube video auto-posting will be publised as a link post on selected social media. It will post new videos if there is any in your youtube channel after setting it up in the system. It will not post any existing videos during setup the campaign.

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1		Active		21 May 20:14	18 May 17:00	Friends Forever

1-1/1

▶ Youtube video auto-posting ×

Feed name *

Youtube channel id *

+ Add feed × Close

Create YouTube RSS Auto Posting Campaign :

After Creating YouTube RSS Feed, now you need to set up your Campaign for Auto Sharing of your new comes YouTube Videos. **Click on Settings** button to get started with Campaign. A Campaign Creation form will appear, fill up the field and hit **Create Campaign** button.





▶ Youtube video auto-posting

[+ Add new youtube channel](#)

Facebook Poster / Youtube video auto-posting

Youtube video auto-posting will be publised as a link post on selected social media. It will post new videos if there is any in your youtube channel after setting it up in the system. It will not post any existing videos during setup the campaign.

Search...

Sn	Feed name	Status	Actions	Last updated	Last feed	Post as pages
1		Active	    		18 May 17:00	Friends Forever

10 ▾

1-1/1

Previous **1** Next



⚙ Campaign settings : ✕

Post to Facebook pages <input type="text"/>	Post to twitter accounts <input type="text"/>
Post to linkedin accounts <input type="text"/>	Post to reddit accounts <input type="text"/>
Subreddit list 1200isplenty ▼	Posting timezone (GMT+6:00) Time ▼
Post between time ⓘ 5:00	To 7:00
Message Write down a message here. 🗨 Title 😊	
➤ Create Campaign	✕ Close

Now you're all set up. Now when system gets a new video on your YouTube Channels, it will share automatically to your selected Social media.

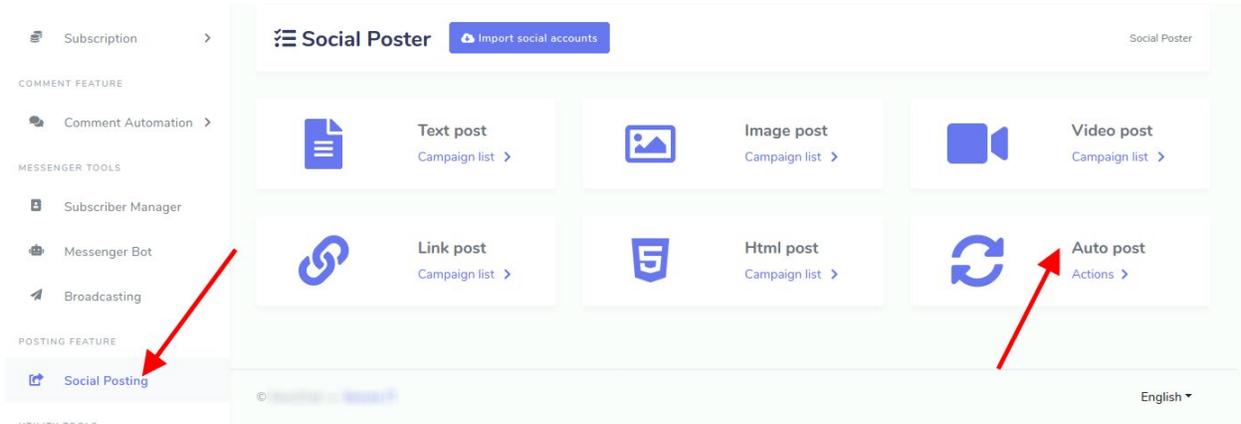
How To Share WordPress Blog Post To Social Media Automatically

Messenger Bot has come with a brand new add-on called Auto Post. This add-on has two great features. WordPress Blog Post is one of them. WordPress blog post will allow you to post new posts on user-specified social media. Here we are going to show you how to share WordPress blog post to social media.

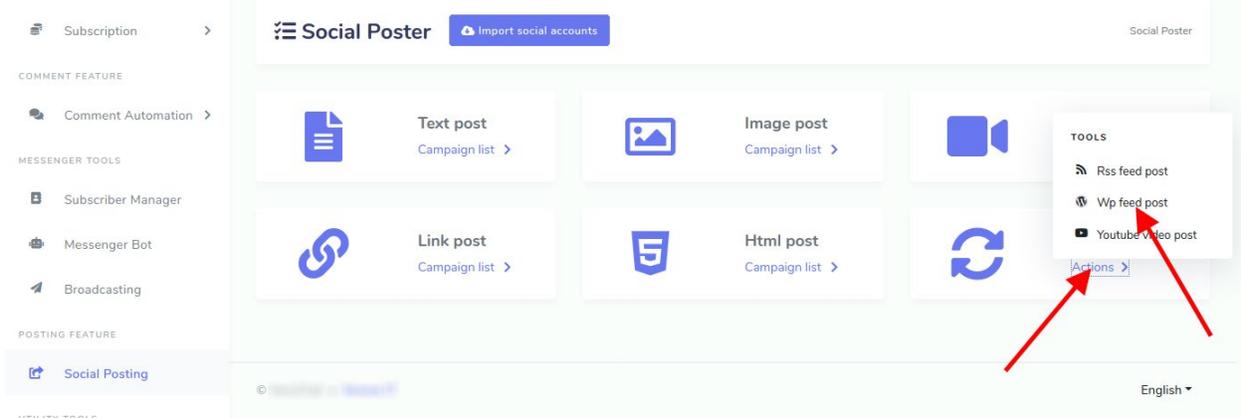




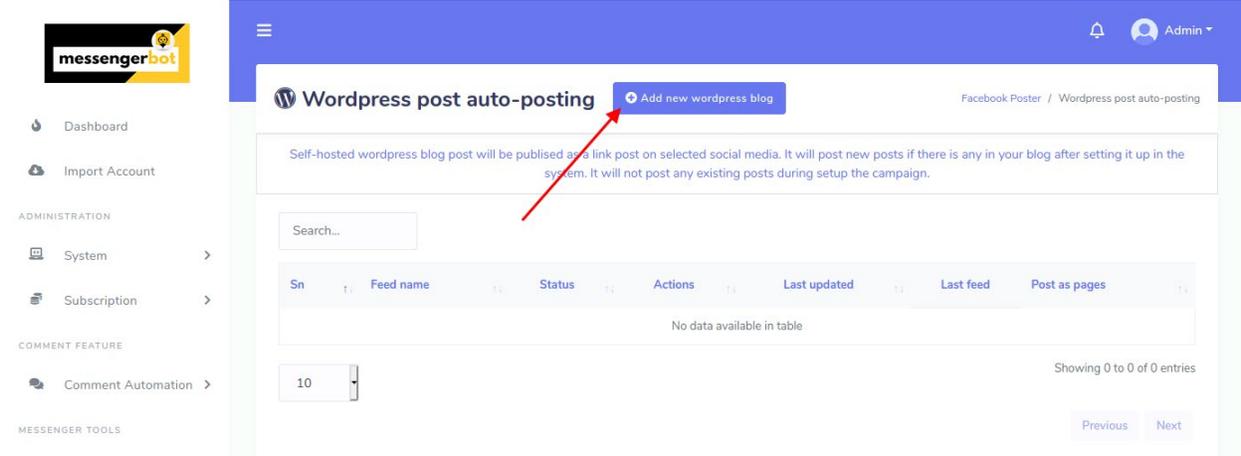
To get started with Wordpress blog post, you've to add the Wordpress blog URL. Click on the **Social Posting** menu in the dashboard. It will take you to an interface. Find out **Auto post** section there. Check out the screenshot below:



Click on the **Actions** button. It will pop up a menu box. Now click on the **Wp feed post** link from there. Follow as you see on the following screenshot:



Now you will get another interface as seen on the screenshot below. Click on the **Add new wordpress blog** button.

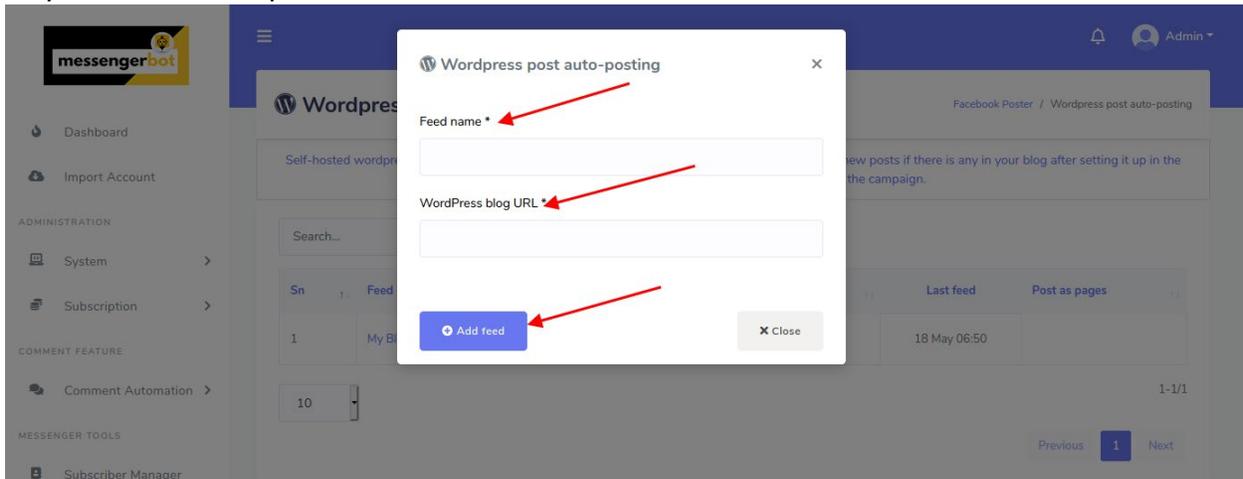


This time it will open up a modal asking for **Feed Name** and **WordPress blog URL**. Fill in the two fields. You can put a name for the **Feed name**. Select the blog URL from the dropdown. Note

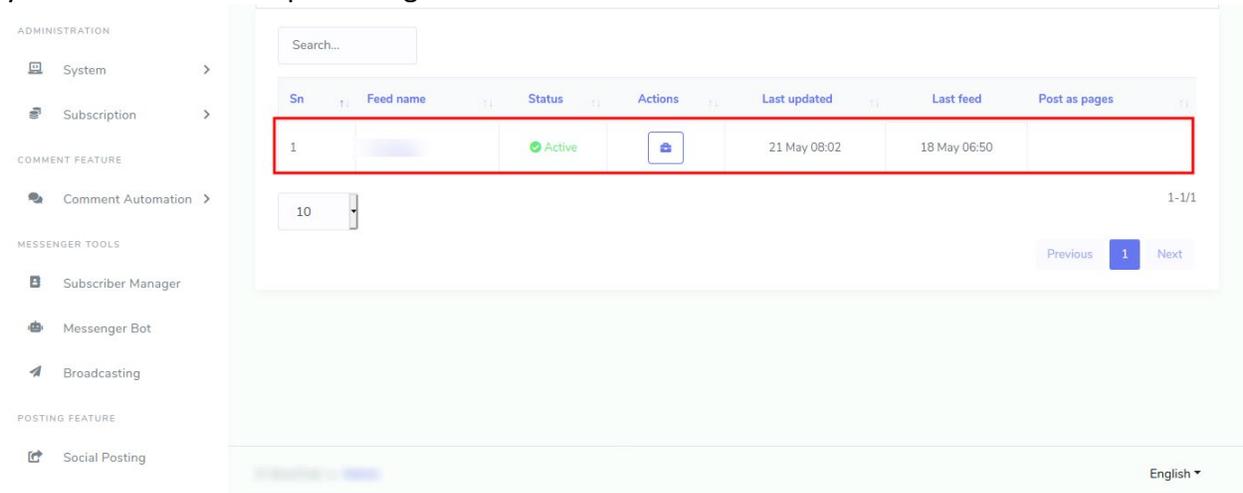




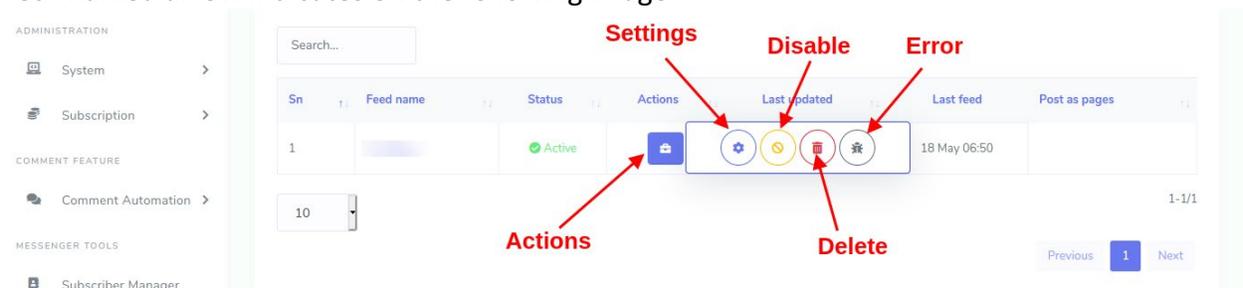
that blog URL comes from **Social Apps > Wordpress (self-hosted)** this section in the dropdown. So you need to set up that first. So do it.



Once you've done, close the modals. After that the page will automatically be refreshed and you will see the Wordpress blog has been added.



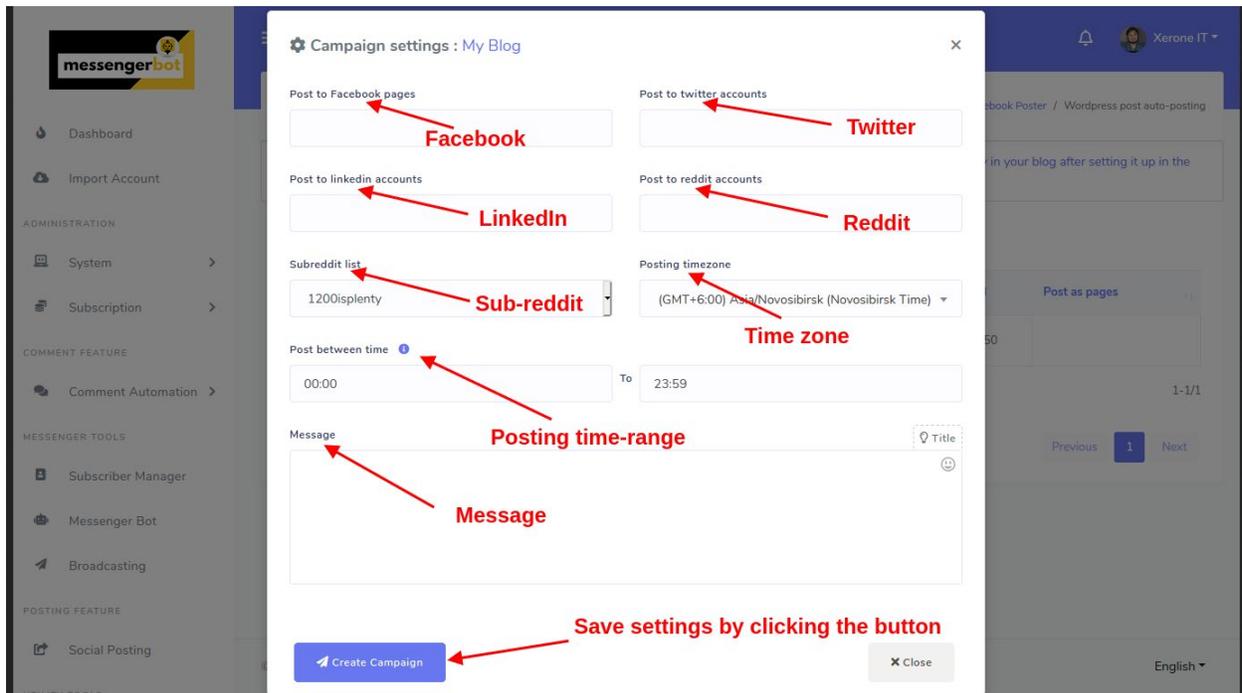
Now it's time to tell the system on which social media your blog posts will be published. To do that click on the **Actions** button and then click on the round (gear-icon) **Settings** button as the red-marked arrow indicates on the following image.





It will open up an modal from where you can specify social media, time zone, time range, and default message for your blog posts to be published. So set up those things as you need. Finally save those settings by clicking the **Create Campaign** button. And you are done!

There are other options there too. You can tell the system not to publish posts anymore on social media by clicking the **Disable** button, though you will be able to enable it again. You can check out the error log by click the **Error** button, and you can delete the blog settings by clicking the **Delete** button.



How To Post On Social Media From CSV File With Messenger Bot Bulk Post Planner

Post Planner – a completely brand new module of Messenger Bot. It allows you to upload bulk image, link, and text campaigns via CSV file to be posted on specified social media.

Today, you're going to see how to deal with Post Planner and make campaigns using CSV file upload. First of all, take a look at how the CSV file should be formatted with data.

The CSV file has to have 4 header fields with the exact name as the following – **campaign_name**, **campaign_type**, **message**, and **source**. These are the required header fields. The values for the **campaign_name** field may be optional. But you have to put values for the **campaign_type** and **message** fields. The **campaign_type** must be one of three types – **text**, **image**, or **link**. The values for the **source** field may be optional, but we recommend you provide values for the **source** header field, especially for **image** and **link** campaign types.





How it Works

Log in to your dashboard then find out the **Social Posting** menu from the left-hand side menu box. Click on that menu. See the screenshot below:

The screenshot shows a dashboard with a left-hand side menu. The menu items are: Subscription, COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting), POSTING FEATURE (Social Posting), and UTILITY TOOLS (Search Tools). A red arrow points to the 'Social Posting' menu item. The main content area displays 'Order statistics - August' with three cards: 'Subscri...' (0), 'Un-subs...' (0), and 'Message...' (0). Below these are three more cards: 'Total subscribers' (0), 'Last 7 days subscribers' (0), and '24 hours interaction' (0). A red text label 'Click on the link' points to a link 'Male vs female subscribers' in the main content area. On the right, there is a 'Subscriber's data' section for 'This month' with two progress bars: 'E-mail address gain' (0/1) and 'Phone number gain' (0/1).

Now you need to scroll down onto the **Social Posting** page. Find out **Bulk Post Planner** module navigating box under the **Social Poster** section and click on the **Campaign list** link there as red-marked on the screenshot:

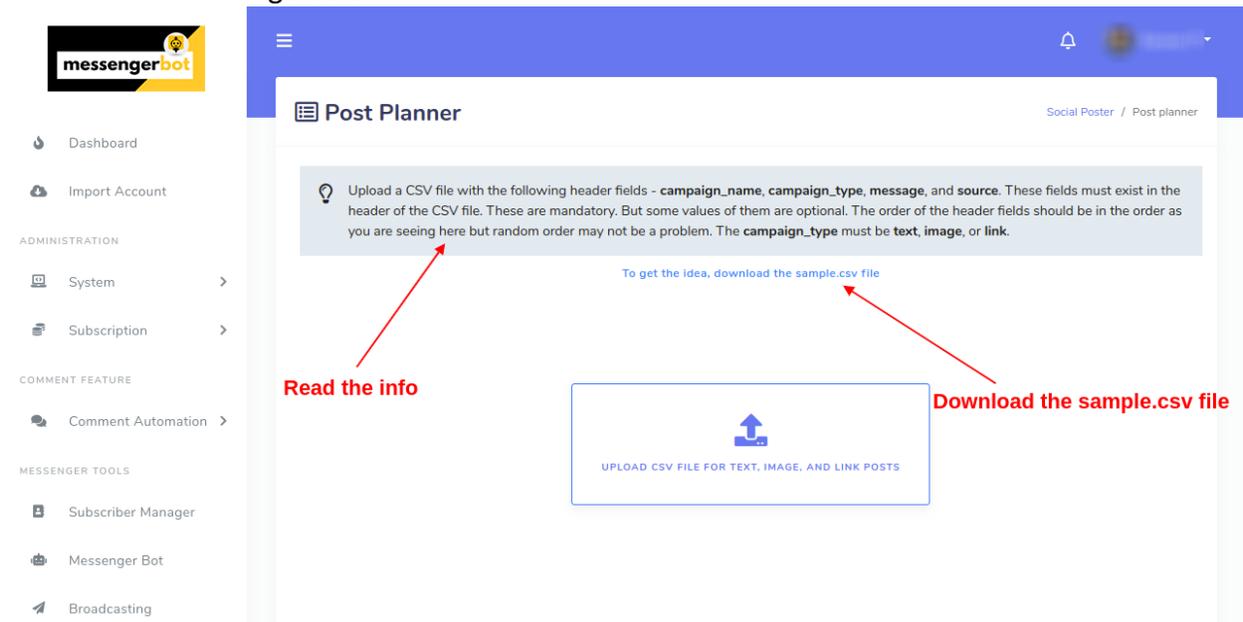
The screenshot shows the 'Social Posting' page. The left sidebar contains: Dashboard, Import Account, ADMINISTRATION (System, Subscription), COMMENT FEATURE (Comment Automation), MESSENGER TOOLS (Subscriber Manager, Messenger Bot, Broadcasting). The main content area has six post type cards: Text post (Campaign list), Image post (Campaign list), Video post (Campaign list), Link post (Campaign list), Html post (Campaign list), and Auto post (Actions). Below these is the 'Bulk Post Planner' module with the text 'Upload Text, Image, Link posts via CSV file' and a 'Campaign list' link. A red text label 'Click on the link' points to the 'Campaign list' link. At the bottom right, there is a language selector set to 'English'.

This will take you to the following interface. Read the information about how the data in the





CSV file should be formatted. To get the idea, you could download the **sample.csv** file. Do it as described in the image below:



Once you've downloaded the sample CSV file or you've prepared CSV file, then you can upload it via the upload interface as described below on the screenshot:



Once you've uploaded the CSV file, you should then get an interface with a table that contains the data you've uploaded. At the top of the data-table, you should see two buttons named – **Manual** and **Automatic**.





The screenshot shows the 'Post Planner' interface. At the top, there are two buttons: 'Manual' and 'Automatic'. Red arrows point to these buttons with the following text: 'Manual button for setting up settings manually' and 'Automatic button for setting up settings automatically'. Below the buttons is a search bar and a table of campaigns.

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Source	Actions
4	Name 4	text		Automatic
3	Name 3	image		Automatic
2	Name 2	link		Automatic
1	Name 1	link		Automatic

At the bottom of the table, there is a pagination control showing '10' items per page, '1-4/4' pages, and 'Previous', '1', 'Next' buttons.

The **Manual** button allows you to set up date-time for each and every campaign **manually** while the **Automatic** button allows you to set up start-date, post-time-range, post-interval, and day-off for the campaigns and after that, the system will then automatically calculate your settings and apply them to the campaigns.

Automatic Settings

Let's start with **Automatic** settings. Click on the **Automatic** button. It will hide the data-table and pop up another interface by which you can set up start-date, post-time-range, post-interval, and day-off. The start-date tells on which date you want the system to start posting on social media. By setting up post-time-range you tell the system to post on social media between two specified times of each day except those days that are off. The post-interval tells how often you want to post on social media. The last one, the day-off tells the system not to post on specified day(s). Once you've set up all the settings, click on the button below called **Next**. It is located under the **Schedule Settings** section of that page.





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System
 - Subscription
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation
- MESSANGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

By clicking on the **Next** button, you will get a modal that will tell you to input timezone and social media settings. If you've imported social media accounts, then those media will be available via dropdowns on the modal. Click on the red-marked select-boxes to see them and select as your needs.

Once you're done with the setup, you can create campaigns. To create campaigns, click on the button named **Create Campaigns**.

If everything goes well, the system will tell you about how many campaigns have been created from your CSV file upload. Now you can navigate to those campaigns created just now by clicking on them one by one. See the screenshot below:



Campaign settings

Posting timezone: (GMT+6:00) Asia/D
Post to Facebook pages
Post to twitter accounts
Post to reddit accounts

Success!

We have created 1 Text campaign(s), 1 Image campaign(s), 2 Link campaign(s) from the CSV upload.

Cancel OK Close

It tells you how many campaigns the system has just created. Click on the specific link to view the campaigns.

To view the child campaigns you need to click the on the button indicated by the red-marked arrow sign. It will pop up a modal with those campaigns.

Link post Create new post Social Poster / Link post

Search... Search Choose date

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Scheduled at
1	Name 1	Main campaign	Facebook		Pending	Aug 20, 20 18:00

10 Previous 1 Next

Click on the button to view its child campaigns





#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Social media	Actions	Status	Schedule time
1	Name 1	Main campaign	Facebook		Pending	Aug 20, 20 18:00
2	Name 2	Sub campaign	Facebook		Pending	Aug 21, 20 18:00

Manual Settings

Now we will see how we can create manual campaign settings. It's really simple. Assuming you've uploaded the CSV file. Now you should have the data-table interface. Now you need to click on the **Manual** button. This will open up date-time fields on the right-hand side of the data-table for each and every campaign. See the screenshot below:

Click on a button below to set up campaign settings

Manual Automatic

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Source	Actions
4	Name 4	text		<input type="text" value="Date and Time"/>
3	Name 3	image		<input type="text" value="Date and Time"/>
2	Name 2	link		<input type="text" value="Date and Time"/>
1	Name 1	link		<input type="text" value="Date and Time"/>

Now you need to put values for the date-time input fields one by one by clicking on it as described below on the screenshot:





- Dashboard
- Import Account
- ADMINISTRATION
 - System
 - Subscription
- COMMENT FEATURE
 - Comment Automation
- MESSENGER TOOLS
 - Subscriber Manager
 - Messenger Bot
 - Broadcasting

Post Planner

Click on a button below to set up campaign settings

Manual Automatic Clear cached CSV data

Search...

#	Campaign name	Campaign type	Source	Actions
4	Name 4	text		Date and Time
3	Name 3	image		
2	Name 2	link		
1	Name 1	link		

Click on the "Date and Time" field to select a specific datetime

Once you've done that you can go for the timezone and social media settings by clicking on the **Next** button as you did it previously in the Automatic Settings. Finally create campaigns by clicking the **Create Campaigns** button.

Live Streaming With Pre-recorded Video on Facebook Facebook Live Streaming Campaign

Go to **Social Posting > Facebook livestreaming** and you'll see your created streaming campaigns with Messenger Bot. You can visit, edit, delete and clone campaign with actions button of the campaign.

Live Streaming Campaign List

Create new campaign

Facebook Poster / Live Streaming Campaign List

All posts Publisher/campaign name Search Choose schedule date

#	Publisher	Campaign name	Live	Status	Actions	Scheduled time	Stream started	Stream ended	Ffmpeg error log
1	Page: [redacted]	schedule crosspost test	No	Pending	[edit] [clone] [delete] [refresh]			X	
2	Page: [redacted]	final check	No	Pending	[edit]	22 Jun, 20 12:00	X	X	
3	Page: [redacted]	yuyu	No	Pending	[edit]	21 Jun, 20 17:00	X	X	
4	Page: [redacted]	streaming test	Yes	Completed	[edit]	X	10 Jun, 2020 18:02:54	X	
5	Page: [redacted]	polo	No	Pending	[edit]	10 Jun, 20 20:00	X	X	





Create Livestreaming Campaign

Click on the **Create new campaign** button to get the create campaign form.

Create your live Streaming campaign with the required informations.

- Upload your video.
- You can choose when to stream, now or later
- You can also create event before going live. When you schedule a live event, an announcement post will be published to News Feed letting your fans on Facebook know that the broadcast is coming. People who see the post can opt in to receive a one-time reminder notification that will alert them shortly before your broadcast begins. Your fans can then join a pre-broadcast lobby directly before the live video starts, where they can connect and interact with other viewers.
- You can choose where to post among your timeline, pages and groups.
- You can enable auto share and choose among your timeline or pages to share the post . It will be automatically shared (only works for page post).
- You can crosspost to your pages. Crossposting refers to streaming live broadcast to multiple Facebook pages without uploading to each pages or sharing the original live video.
- You can enable auto comment , means after this post publish, there will be a comment there already on behalf of you.



Create live campaign

Campaign form

Campaign name

Post content

Broadcast pre-recorded video from system

Yes No (I'll use third party broadcasting software)

Upload video

Video width

Video height

Schedule type *

Now Later

Planned time to go live *

Time zone *

- I want to create live event now.
 I do not want to create live event, go live directly.

Upload thumbnail image

Post to timeline/page/group *

Auto share as pages / crosspost to pages

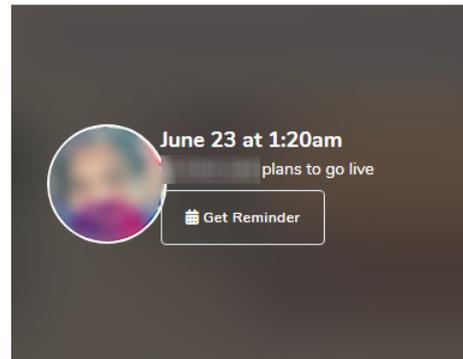
Nothing Crossposting Auto share as pages

Auto comment

Enable Disable

Preview

 plans to go live.
Now localhost test



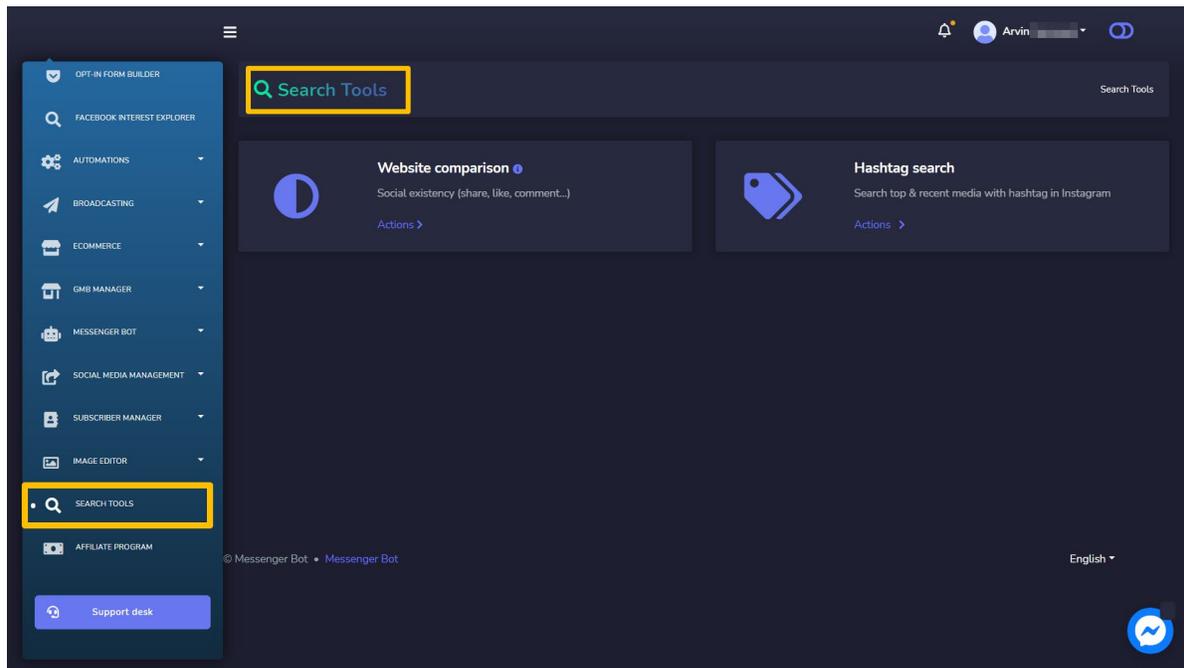




Search Tools

Search Tools feature allows you to manage all compare the website and help you search hashtags.

To view this section, navigate to **Search Tools** from the navigation menu located at the left and click on it.



A screen containing the following two sections will appear:

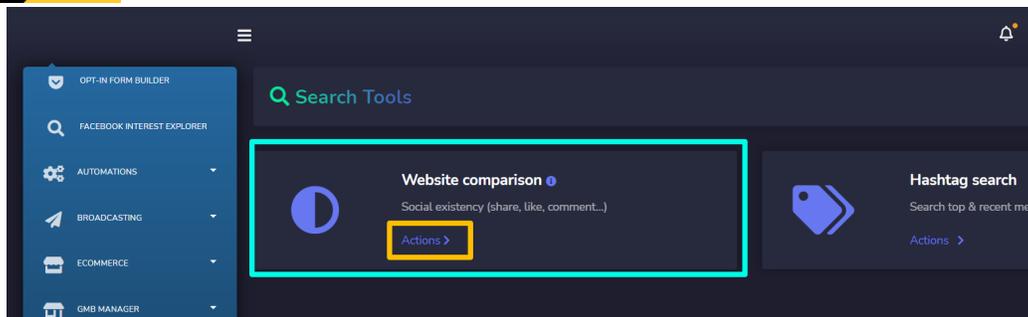
- [Website comparison](#)
- Hashtag search

For this section, we only have a Website Comparison demo.

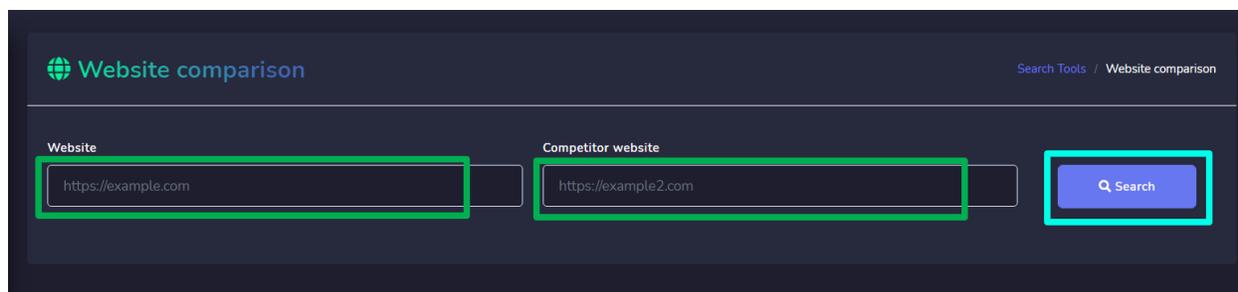
Website comparison

You can compare two websites by using this feature. To access the Website comparison section, select the **Actions** option from the **Website comparison** section.

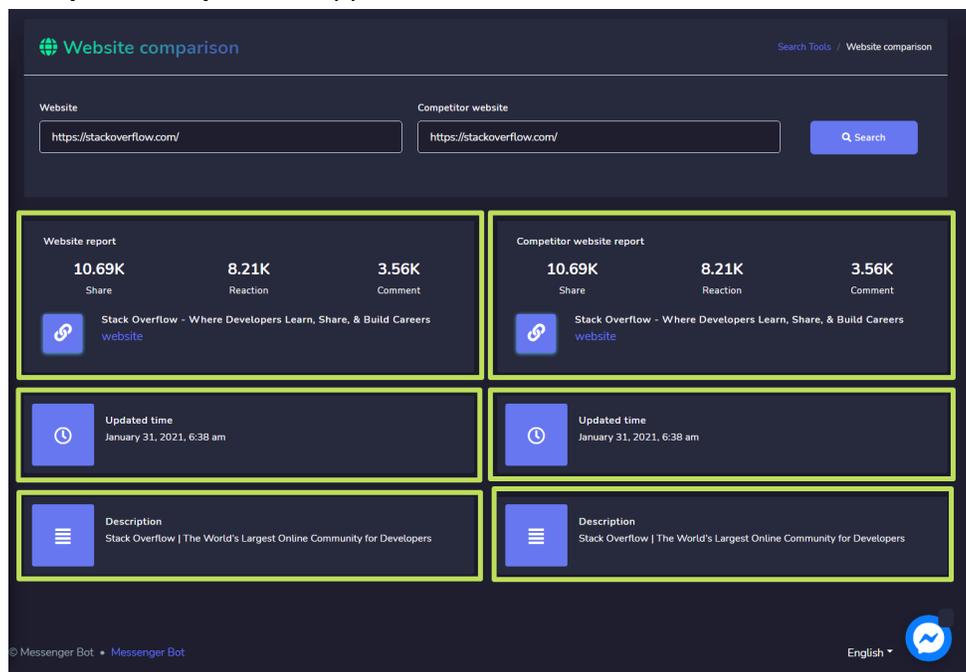




1. A **Website comparison** screen will appear.
2. Enter both the websites to be compared in the **Website** and **Competitor website** field respectively.
3. Hit **Search**.



A **website comparison report** will appear on the screen.

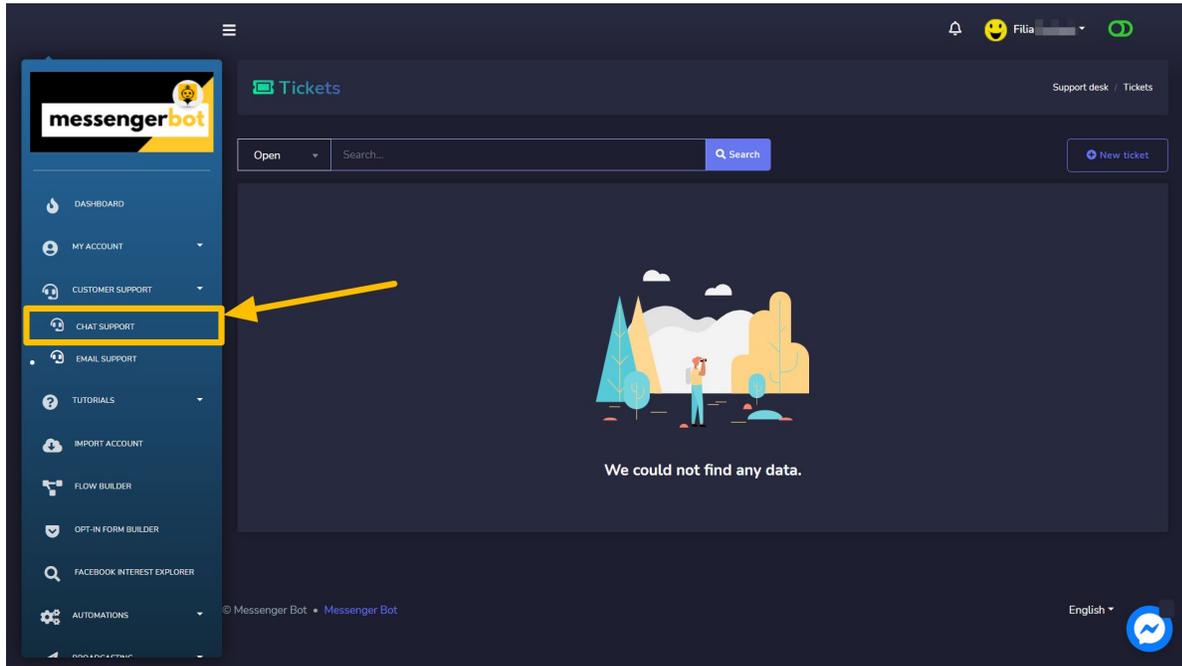


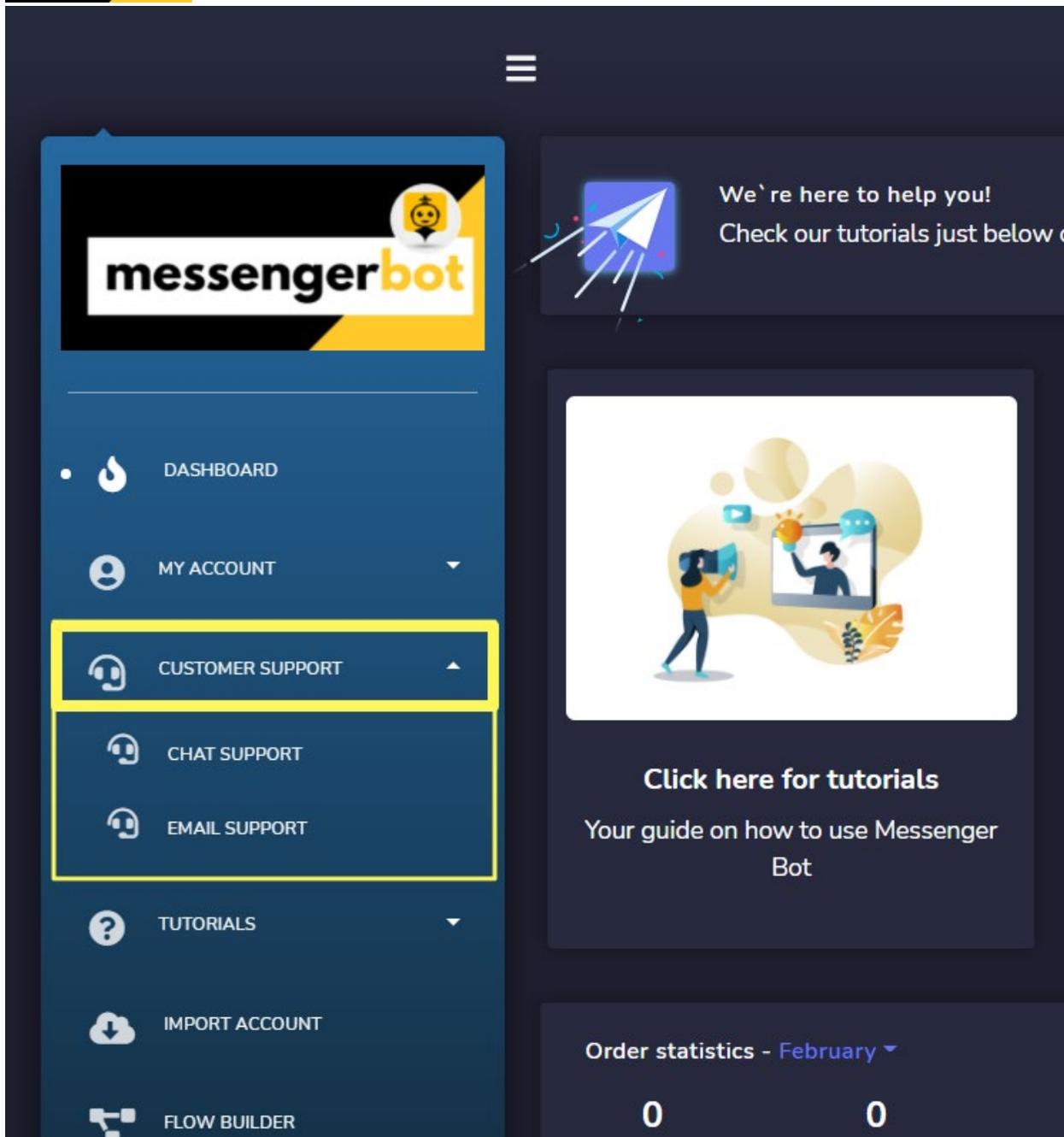


Support Desk (Customer support)

Support Desk is now known as **Customer support**. This feature has two sub-sections:

- Chat Support
- Email Support

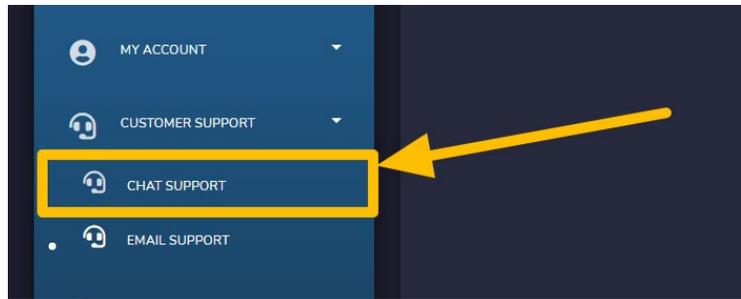




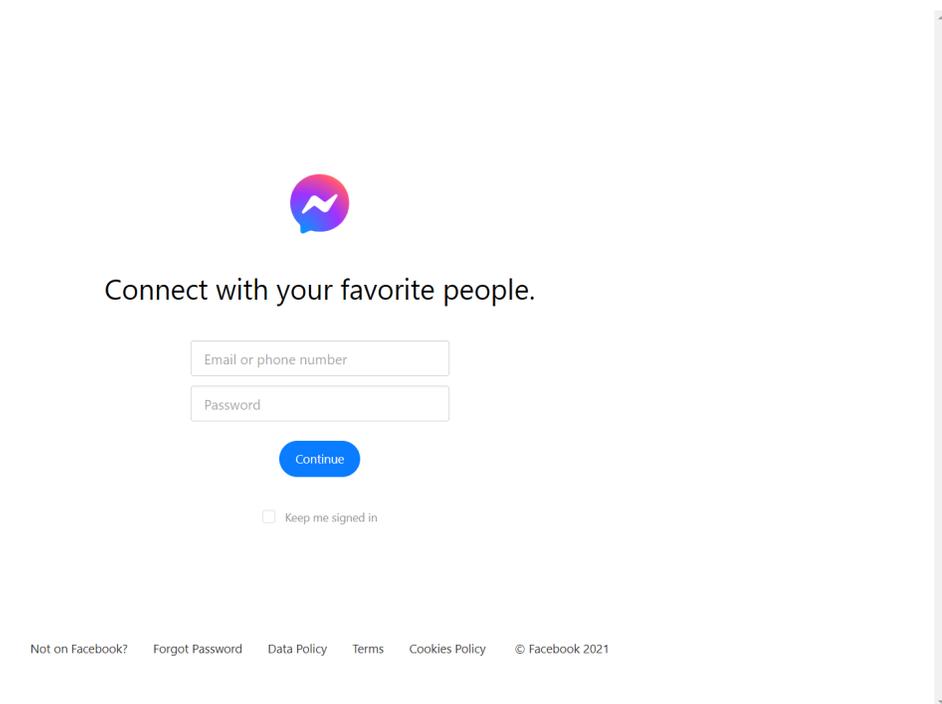
Chat Support

To access it, click **Chat Support** under **Customer support** on the navigation menu.



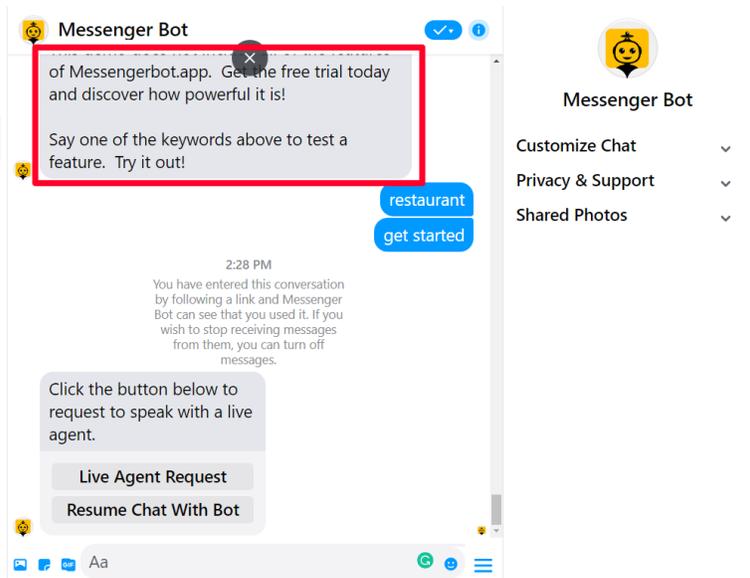


You will be directed to Messenger to login into your account. Fill in your **email/username/number and password**, then click **continue**.

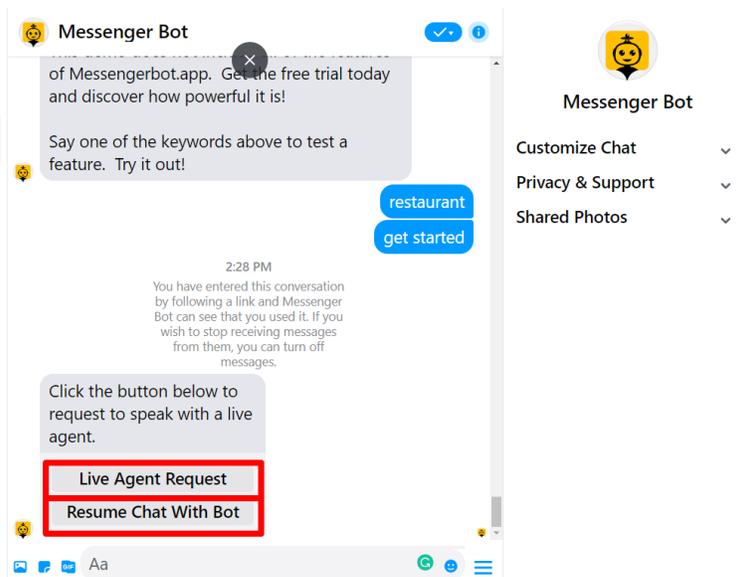


After that, you will go straight ahead to your **chat with our Messenger Bot chat support**. For you to start, use one of the **keywords** that the chatbot has shown.



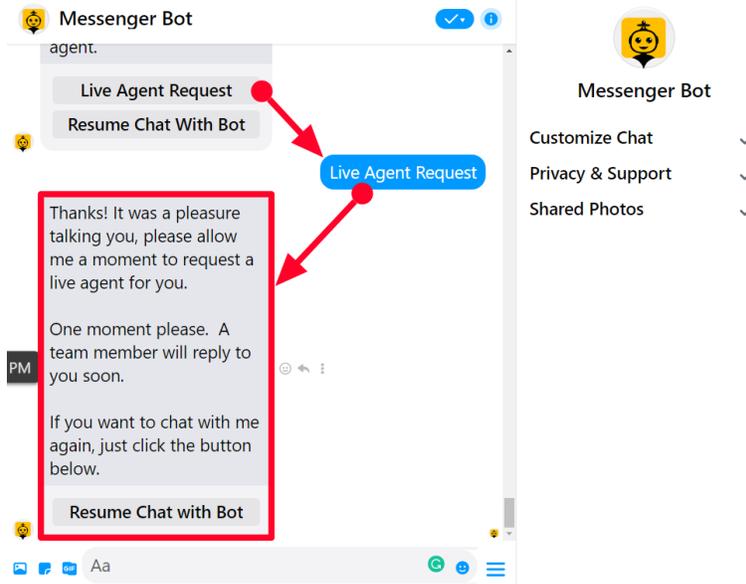


You will be asked next if you wanted a **Live Agent Request** or **Resume Chat With Bot**.

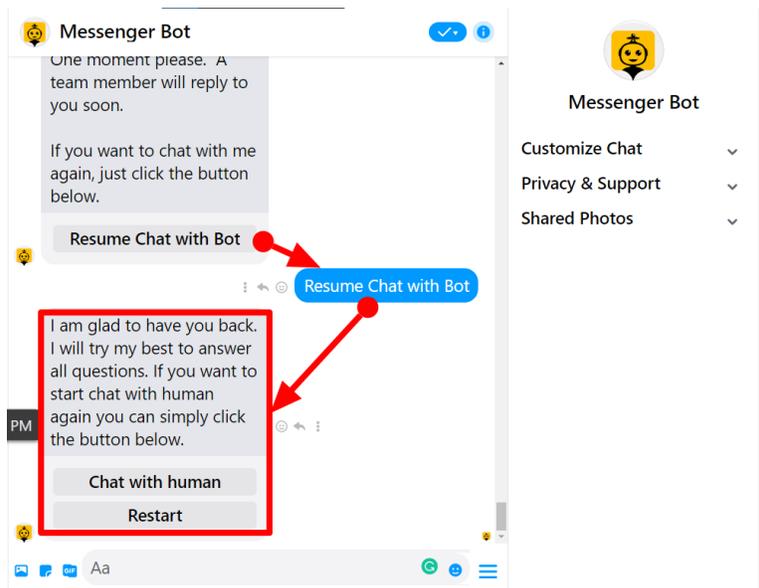


If you choose **Live Agent Request**, a reply response will be sent to you by our chatbot and he will get you a live agent **in a moment**.



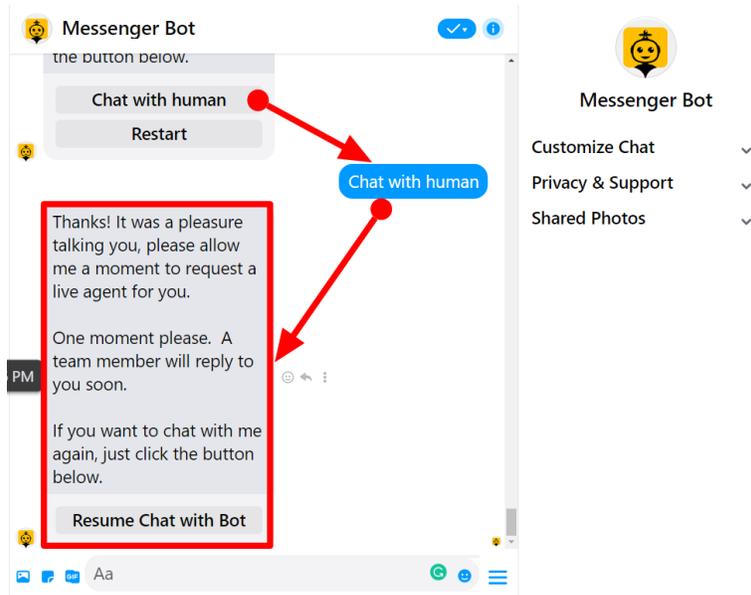


You can chat with the chatbot again by clicking **Resume Chat with Bot** then it will respond to you right away with choices you can reply, **Chat with human**, or **Restart**.



Here's what it will respond to. **Wait for the Live Agent to respond to you if you desire.**

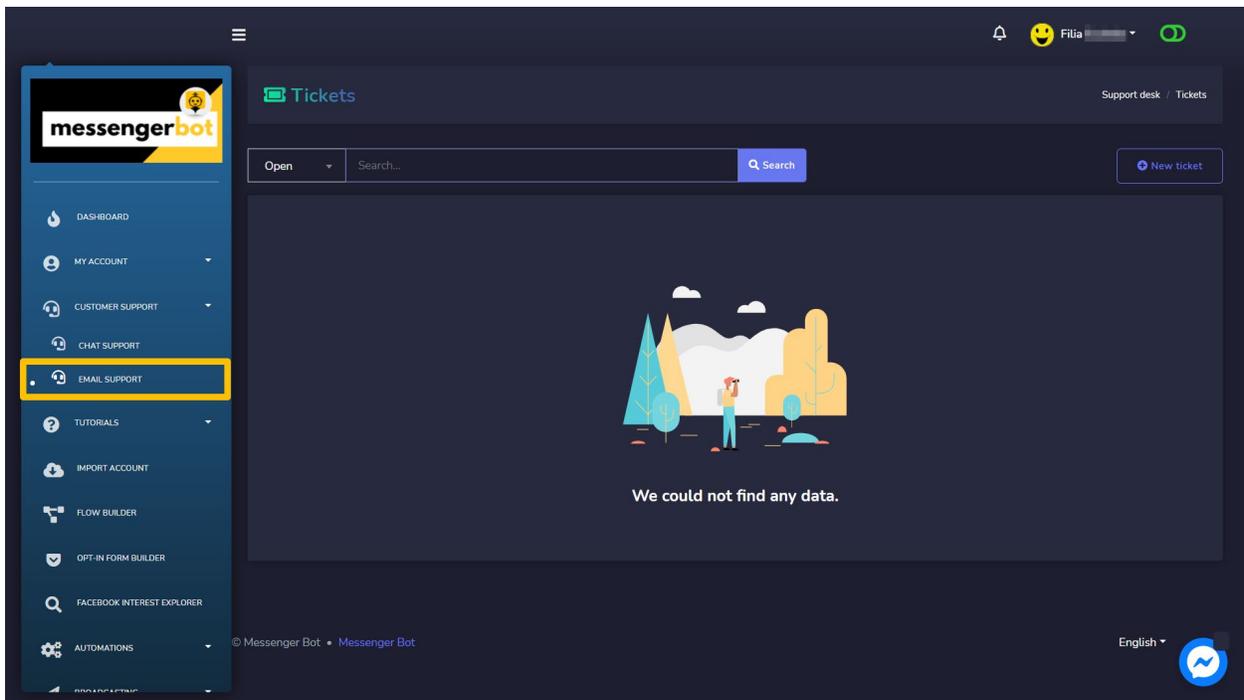




Email Support

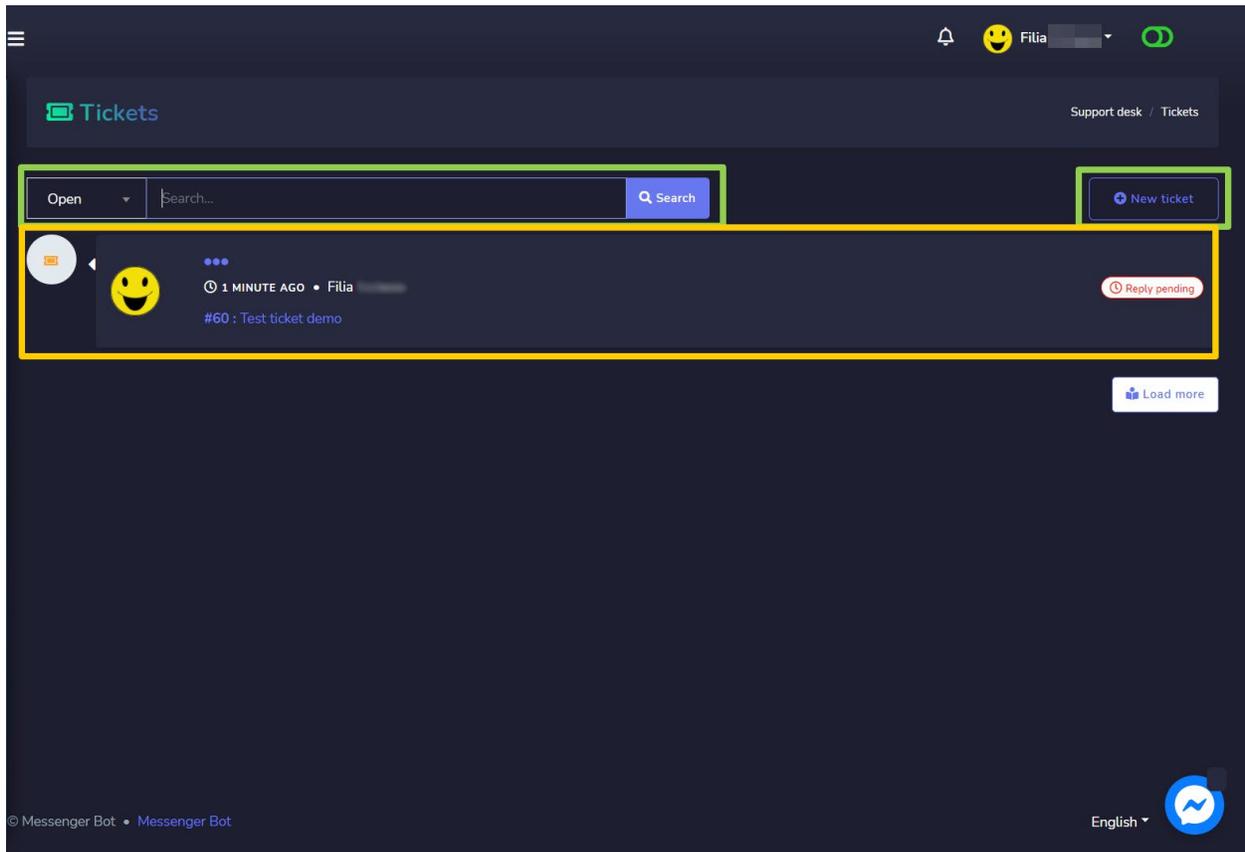
The Email Support feature allows you to manage all the **complaints** related to **billing, technical, or any query related**.

To view this section, navigate to **Customer Support** from the navigation menu located at the left and select **Email Support**.





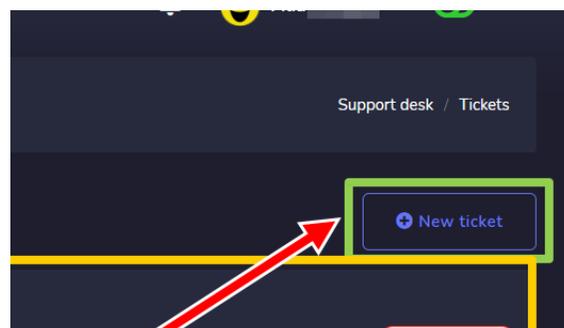
A **ticket screen** will appear. It **displays information** about the **time** when the **ticket was created**, the **person** who created the ticket, and the **status** of the ticket.



Create new ticket

To create the new ticket, follow the steps given below:

- 1) Select the **New ticket** option from the **Tickets screen**.



- 2) An **Open Ticket** will appear, you need to provide the ticket title.



messengerbot

Open ticket [Support desk / Open ticket](#)

Ticket title *
My test ticket

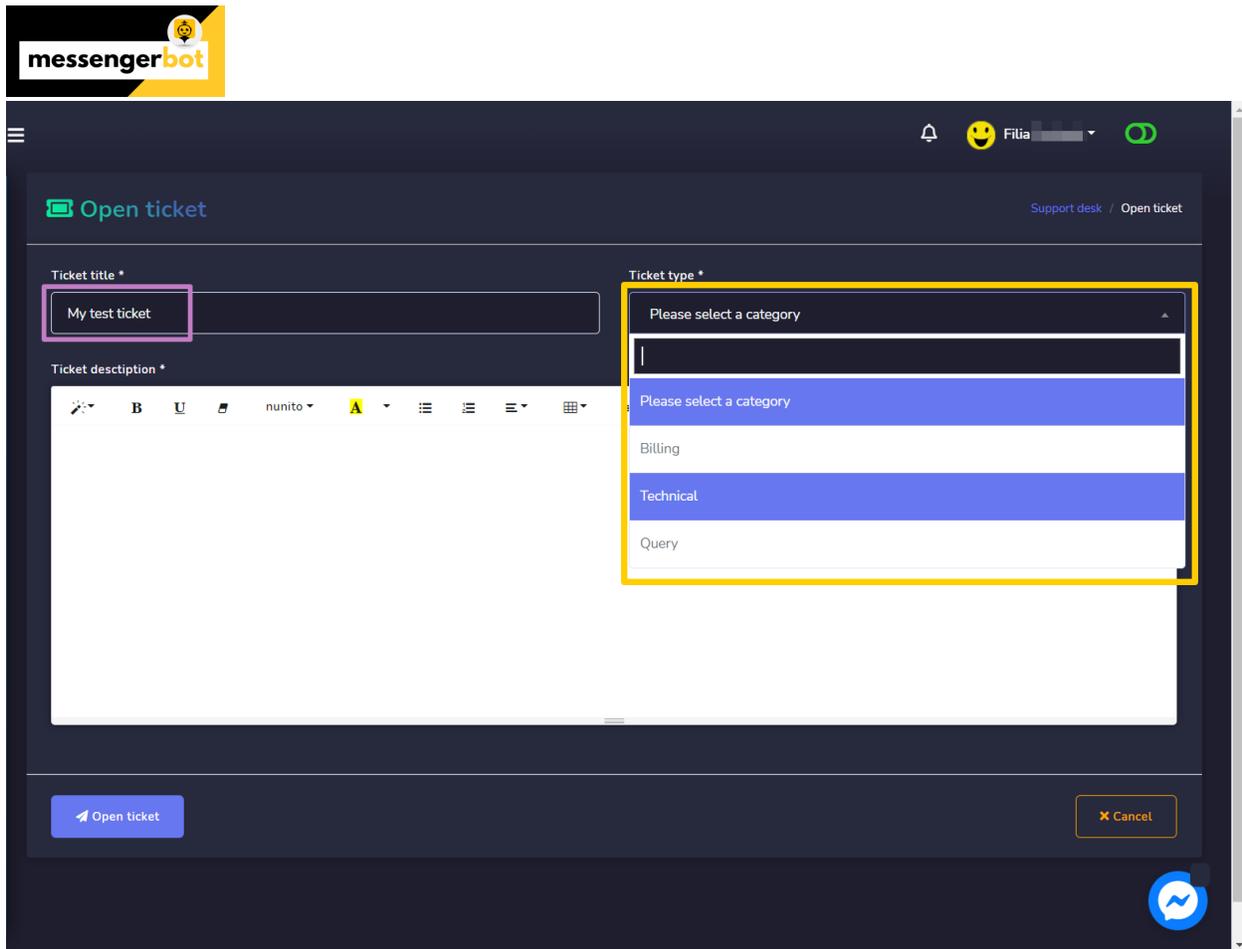
Ticket type *
Please select a category

Ticket description *

Open ticket Cancel

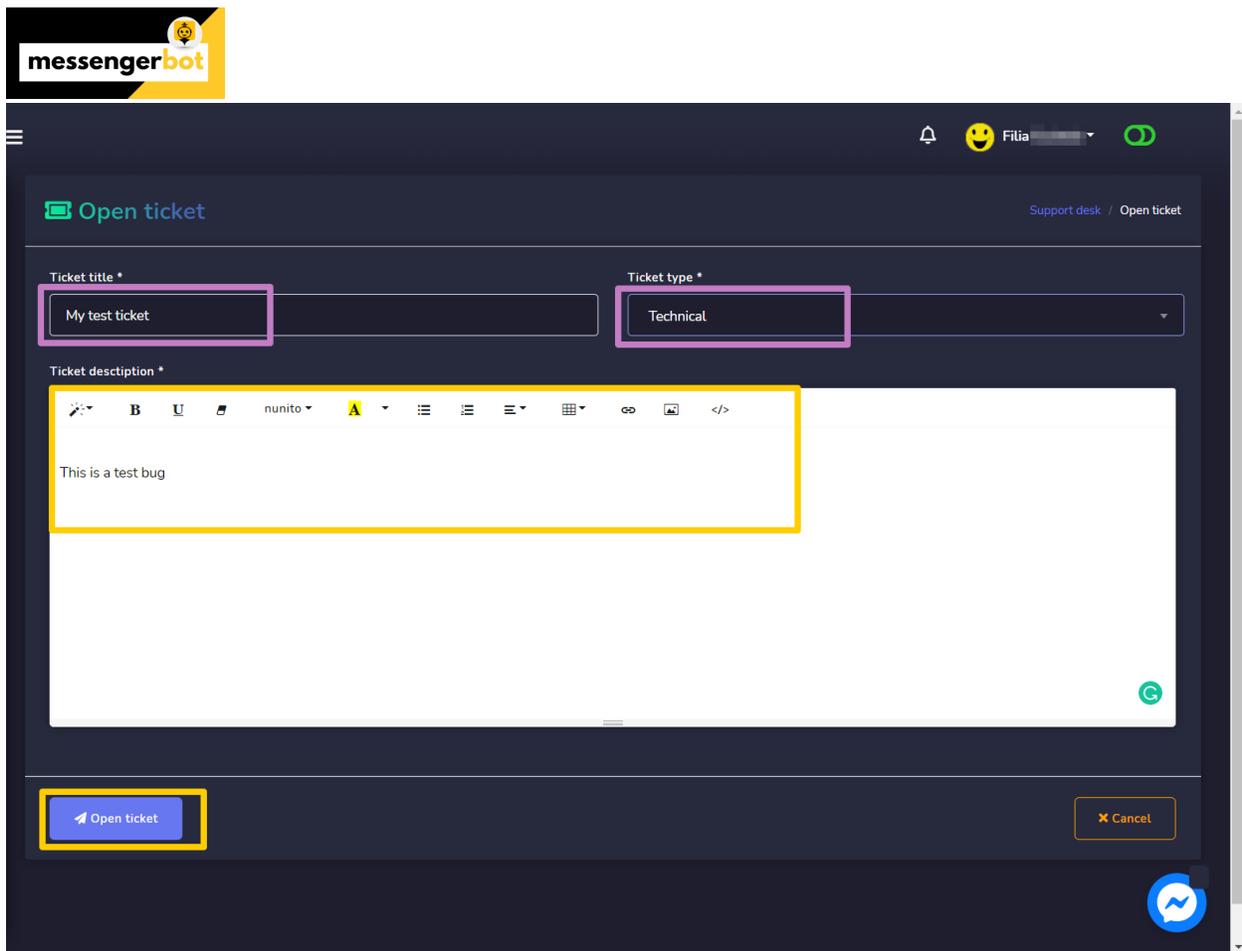
3) Select the **type** of ticket from the dropdown menu.



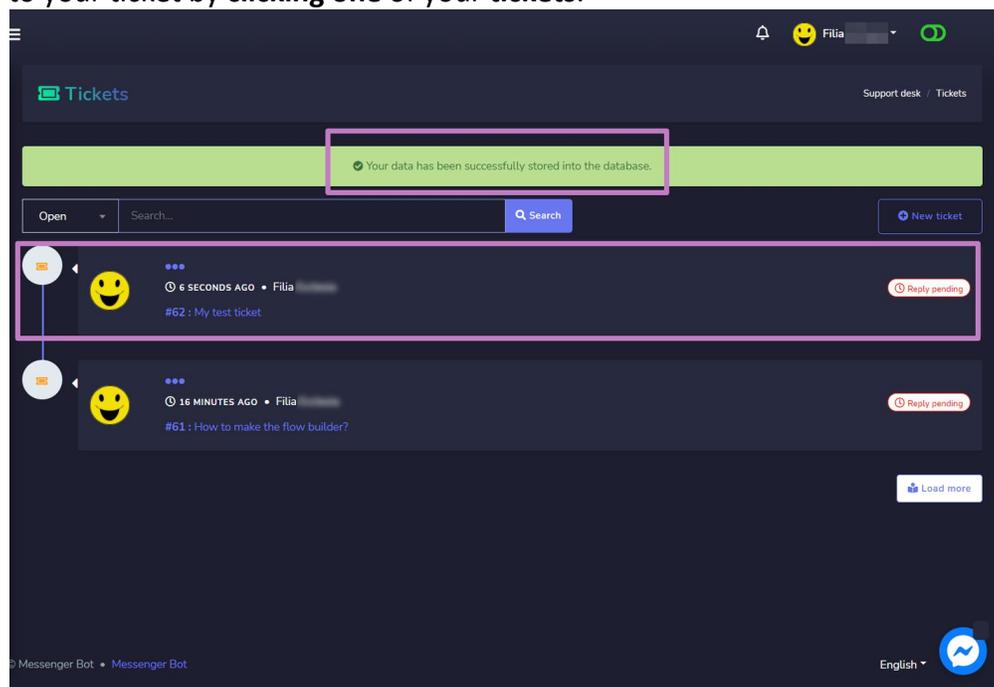


- 4) Provide the **Ticket description**.
- 5) Select the **Open ticket** option.



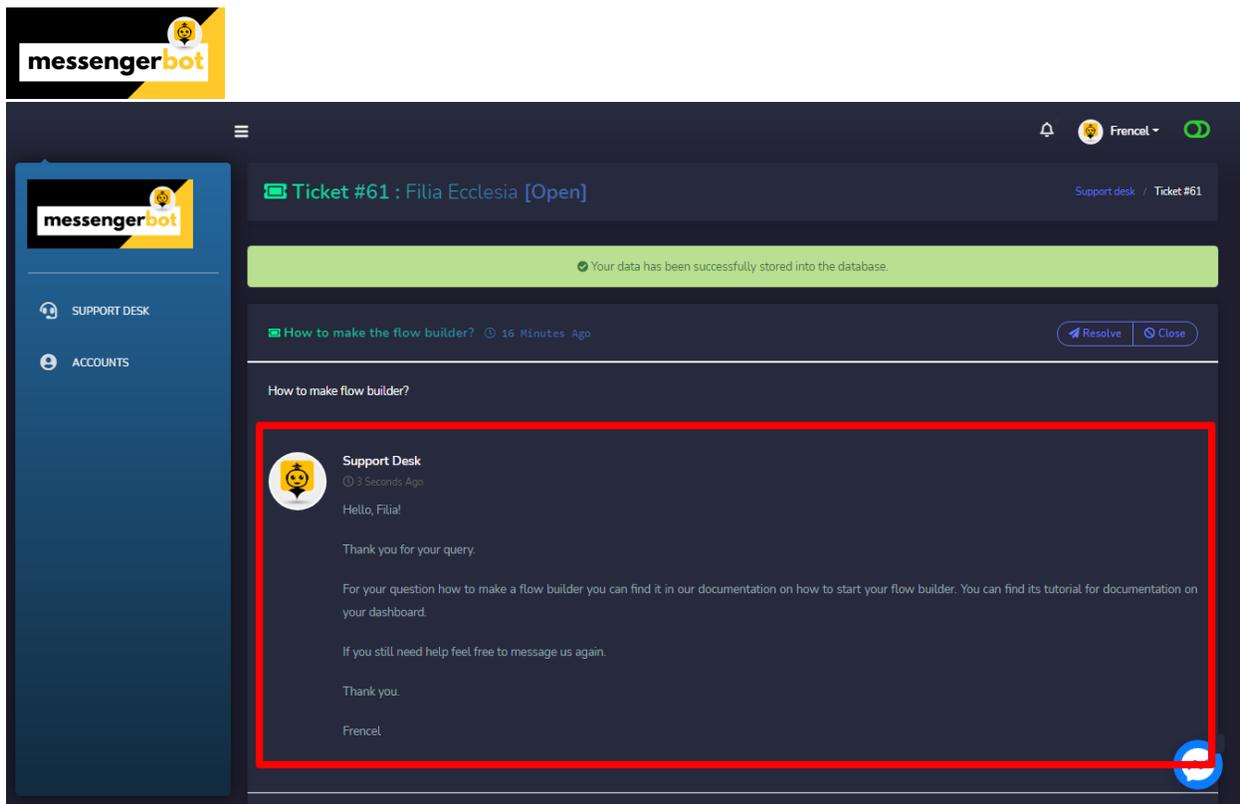


Your ticket will be created and respective **personnel will be notified**. You can check out if there is a reply to your ticket by **clicking one of your tickets**.



Here's an example of a **response** to your created ticket. if this resolves your issue, click **Resolve**.





Logout

You can logout by selecting the currently logged-in profile from the top right. A dropdown menu will appear on the screen. Now select **the Logout** option.

